# DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 113 926 FL 004 892

| | |
|---|---|
| AUTHOR | Hockett, Charles F.; Fang, Chaoying |
| TITLE | Spoken Chinese. Books One and Two. |
| PUB DATE | 44 |
| NOTE | 635p. |
| AVAILABLE FROM | Spoken Language Services, Inc., P.O. Box 783, Ithaca, N.Y. 14850 (HC $15.50, Guide Manual (in Chinese) $5.50, Records $42.50, Complete Course: Book 1 and Records $45.00, Accompanying Cassettes $50.50, Cassette Course: Book 1 and Cassettes $55.00) |
| EDRS PRICE | MF-$1.08 Plus Postage. HC Not Available from EDRS. |
| DESCRIPTORS | Autoinstructional Aids; *Chinese; Conversational Language Courses; Grammar; *Instructional Materials; *Language Instruction; Oral Communication; Pronunciation; *Second Language Learning; Speech Skills; *Textbooks; Uncommonly Taught Languages; Vocabulary |

ABSTRACT

This is one of a series of self-teaching textbooks initially prepared for the Armed Forces and now offered to the public. Book 1 is divided into two main sections, each consisting of five lessons and a review lesson. Each lesson is divided into several sections: basic sentences, word study, pronunciation practice, grammar and conversational situations. Each of the two main sections is followed by a check list containing all the vocabulary introduced in the lessons. The first twelve units, which comprise Book 1, are designed to be used with a native speaker of Chinese or with the accompanying recordings, or with both. Book 2 is divided into three main sections, each consisting of five learning units and one review unit. Each unit deals with some particular grammar point or area of vocabulary. The format of the units is similar to that of Book 1. A "finder list" follows each unit, containing the vocabulary introduced in the unit. Lessons in both books deal with practical aspects of daily life. The text concludes with an English-Chinese reminder list for vocabulary and a Chinese-English glossary. (CLK)

***********************************************************************
* Documents acquired by ERIC include many informal unpublished *
* materials not available from other sources. ERIC makes every effort *
* to obtain the best copy available. Nevertheless, items of marginal *
* reproducibility are often encountered and this affects the quality *
* of the microfiche and hardcopy reproductions ERIC makes available *
* via the ERIC Document Reproduction Service (EDRS). EDRS is not *
* responsible for the quality of the original document. Reproductions *
* supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made from the original. *
***********************************************************************

This is one of a series of self-teaching textbooks in more than thirty languages prepared under the Aegis of the American Council of Learned Societies and the Linguistic Society of America. There are four hours of recordings keyed to the printed text.

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Hockett, Charles Francis.
Spoken Chinese.

1. Chinese language—Conversation and phrase books.
I. Fang, Chao-ying, 1908- joint author. II. Title.

PL1125.E6H65 1976 495.1'8'3421 76-767

ISBN 0-87950-031-X

© Spoken Language Services, Inc. 1976
Published by
Spoken Language Services, Inc.
P.O. Box 783
Ithaca, New York 14850

No part of the material covered by these copyrights may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

EDUCATION MANUAL

# Spoken Chinese

## BASIC COURSE · UNITS 13–30

PUBLISHED FOR THE UNITED STATES ARMED FORCES INSTITUTE
BY THE LINGUISTIC SOCIETY OF AMERICA AND THE INTENSIVE LANGUAGE PROGRAM
AMERICAN COUNCIL OF LEARNED SOCIETIES

4

Copyright, 1945,
By Linguistic Society of America

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be produced in any form without written permission of the publishers.

---

The material presented herewith is for use as an aid in instruction in certain educational activities of the armed forces. The statements and opinions contained are those of the authors. This book is not available for sale by the Superintendent of Documents nor may it be sold or distributed in this form on the civilian market.

---

SEPTEMBER, 1967
WAR DEPARTMENT
Washington 25, D. C., 2 January 1945
[A. G. 300.7 (2 Jan. 45).]
3675006
DISTRIBUTION: x
(Additional copies should be requisitioned from USAFI, Madison, Wisconsin, or nearest Overseas Branch)

---

EDUCATIONAL SERVICES SECTION, STANDARDS AND CURRICULUM DIVISION, TRAINING,
BUREAU OF NAVAL PERSONNEL, NAVY DEPARTMENT, WASHINGTON. D. C.
2 January 1945 (Copies for Navy personnel should be requisitioned from Educational Services Section)

# INTRODUCTION

There are several languages in China, all of them often referred to as 'Chinese' without any indication of the differences. To be accurate, the terms *North Chinese* or *Mandarin* (or, using a Chinese term, *gwó·'ywŭ*), *Cantonese*, *Fukienese*, and *Wu* should be used. Cantonese is spoken in the city of Canton and in much of the southeast; Wu is spoken in and around Shanghai, and Fukienese-Hakka in the area north and east of the Cantonese region. North Chinese is the language of the rest of China, and is spoken by some three hundred million people. A speaker of Cantonese and one of North Chinese cannot understand each other any more than can a speaker of English and a speaker of German, although all the Chinese languages are related just as are English and German.

Even within North Chinese there are many different dialects. But the differences here are comparable rather to the differences between the English of Michigan, of South Carolina, and of England, than to the differences between English and German—speakers of the different dialects can understand each other without any trouble.

The language taught in this course is North Chinese; the variety of North Chinese taught is approximately that of the city of Peiping, though some of the features most peculiar to the speech of that city have been eliminated. A learner who goes through this entire course will be in a position comparable to that of a native speaker of Chinese from in or near Peiping; he will be able to understand some three hundred million people, and make himself understood by them, though of course he will not have attained the flexibility of expression that a native speaker gets through years of experience.

The course is designed primarily for students who have no access to an experienced teacher of language. The best results will be obtained if a group of not more than twelve, and not much fewer than ten, work together. One of the group, who need not know any more about the subject than the rest, is to serve as *Leader*. The Leader is not a 'teacher'; he is learning along with the rest, but it is his job to see that things are done at the right times, and with sufficient care.

If a *native speaker* of Chinese can be procured, he can serve as *Guide*. The function of the Guide is simply to say the proper expressions in Chinese for the learners to listen to and repeat; he is no more teacher than is the Leader. A *Guide's Manual* is supplied which gives him, in his own language, the information he needs about the course, and tells him what to say in Chinese. Therefore with little difficulty a Guide who knows no English can be used.

However, because of the many dialects of North Chinese, the selection of a Guide is not easy. Unless a Guide can be found who speaks the Chinese of Peiping or nearby, it is better to get along without one.

This is possible because a set of phonograph records are supplied which give what the Guide would give for the first twelve of the thirty Units into which the course is divided. Records, of course, cannot carry on a conversation with you, or answer questions, but they can give the same expression over and over again in exactly the same way without getting tired, thus giving a better chance for the learner to repeat and to learn by repeating. For this reason, even when a good Guide is available, it is a good idea to use the phonograph records too. By the end of the first twelve Units, the learner's ability to pronounce Chinese should be good enough that he can get along from then on, if necessary, with neither Guide nor records; but if a good Guide is available he can still be helpful.

Each of the thirty Units of the course, except the five review Units (VI, XII, XVIII, XIV, and XXX), is divided into six Sections. Generally speaking, one class period of fifty minutes should be enough to go through each Section. The time allotted should never be *less* than that, but sometimes, on certain Sections, it will be valuable to spend a longer time.

A few portions of the work can be done outside of class if desired. These portions are clearly indicated. They may also perfectly well be done at the regular class time and at the place where class-meetings usually are held. Even so, these portions should be done by each student working alone, not by the entire group working together.

To THE LEADER: As a learner, you must do everything that the other members of the group are told to do. In addition, you have the following tasks:

1. Prepare in advance for each group-meeting. Be sure the Guide is ready with his copy of the *Guide's Manual*, or that phonograph and records are at hand and in working order. Read through what you expect to cover in the particular class-meeting, and be clear about the procedure.

2. In class, keep the work moving along. Whenever anyone is to say something in Chinese, insist on his speaking loudly and clearly. Learn the expression *chǐng 'dà·shēng shwō* ('please speak up!') which is given in the first Unit, and use it often. When you have occasion to call on different members of the group, be sure to vary the order in which you call on them, so that no student can tell in advance when he is going to be called on and prepare just that part of the work.

3. The *Guide's Manual* is also an 'answer book'. Only you and the Guide should see it, and you should refer to it only when the whole group is stuck on some point. When that situation develops, as it sometimes will, you should refer

to the *Guide's Manual*, determine the answer to the problem, and then tell the rest of the group. You will not find it possible to simplify your own learning task by looking up answers in the book instead of working them out as the others must; if you try this, you will find that you simply do not learn as fast and as well as the others of the group.

This material for the learning of spoken North Chinese can of course be used when an experienced teacher of language *is* on hand to supervise the work. Such a teacher will make any modifications he sees fit, changing the sequence of presentation, changing forms, and so forth. Those who have prepared the material feel, however, that the results will be best if the plan used herein is followed pretty closely, additional material being given in definitely separate periods of instruction. Most important of all: *no attempt should be made to learn or teach the written language* until at least the first twelve units of this course have been thoroughly mastered.

# CONTENTS

PART ONE . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1
I. Greetings and Simple Phrases . . . . 1
II. Counting; Time and Money . . . . 20
III. Meeting People; Locating Things . . 34
IV. Family and Friends . . . . . . . . . 53
V. Handling Things . . . . . . . . 71
VI. Review . . . . . . . . . . . . 91
Check List for Part One . . . . . . 100

PART TWO . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 108
VII. Where Do You Work? . . . . . . . 108
VIII. A Place to Live . . . . . . . . . . 130
IX. Getting Cleaned Up . . . . . . . 150
X. Mǎy-ˈDūng·Shi-Chywù . . . . . . . 172
XI. ˈYì·Tyān-ˈDzwò-De-ˈShr̀ . . . . . . 192
XII. Review . . . . . . . . . . . 210
Check List for Part Two . . . . . . 219

Key to Exercises and Tests . . . . . A-U

# PART ONE

## UNIT I

## GREETINGS AND SIMPLE PHRASES

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

*(This introductory material is to be read to the group by the Leader or by someone he appoints.)*

In the list of Basic Sentences which follows, the English equivalents of the words and phrases are given at the left of the page. Opposite is a simplified spelling of the Chinese which will help you in getting the sounds. The Chinese themselves use a system of writing which is completely different from our way, and quite complicated. Your task is to learn to *speak* and *understand* the language; to try to learn traditional Chinese writing at the same time would slow you down a great deal.

The Leader of the study-group will first read the English Equivalent and pause for the Guide to speak the Chinese. On the records the English is given followed by the Chinese. All the members of the group repeat in unison right after the Guide (or record) imitating the pronunciation as closely as possible. The Guide will then say the Chinese a second time and everyone will repeat after him as before. The Leader will then go on to the next word or phrase. On the records too the Chinese is given twice with pauses so the group may repeat immediately after it.

During the repetitions, keep in mind the meaning of the Chinese. This will help you to memorize the sentences in class, almost without effort. But while you keep the meaning in your head and speak the Chinese, look at the spelling of the Chinese so that you will learn what the letters stand for. This will help you afterwards when you are practicing by yourself. But *whenever the spoken sound seems to be different from the writing, follow the spoken sound.*

No two languages ever have exactly the same sounds. Even when two languages have similar sounds, there is usually some difference. But you can master the sounds of Chinese if you try. Don't be afraid to let yourself go. You'll never learn if you don't plunge in for all you are worth and mimic even when what you hear sounds strange to you.

Never mind if you do make mistakes at first. The important thing is to try. Imitate your Guide with the same enthusiasm that you use to tell a joke in dialect or to imitate someone whose speech sounds strange. You will find that if you do this your Guide will not think you are making fun of him, but will be pleased because what you have said sounds to him like his own language.

As long as you have a Guide or records for the course, do not try to read ahead from the spelling, but wait until you have practiced the Basic Sentences with the pronunciation of the spoken Chinese as a model.

Here is a summary of what to do during the reading of the Basic Sentences:

1. Keep your eyes on the 'Aids to Listening' as you listen to the Chinese being spoken.
2. Repeat immediately what you have heard, imitating as closely as you can and saying it loud and clear.
3. Keep in mind the meaning of what you are saying. Remember, it is not just noise, but something that can be understood by 300,000,000 people.

The group Leader will try to help you by seeing that you follow these directions. He will:

1. Insist that everyone speak up so that all can hear.
2. Tell the Guide to repeat when your pronunciation is bad. The Guide should keep on repeating until he hears something that satisfies him.
3. Urge you to imitate to the limit every sound, every inflection, even the mannerisms of the Guide.
4. See that you all listen to the Guide and to each other to see how the Guide pronounces, and whether or not you can see the mistakes of the others.

### §1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP I). (Group Work.)

#### GREETINGS AND SIMPLE PHRASES

**Record 2B, beginning.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| you (one person) | *'nǐ* |
| well *or* OK | *'hǎw* |
| Good morning, good evening, hello, *or* how are you? | *Nǐ-'hǎw.* |
| I | *'wǒ* |
| very | *'hěn* |
| I'm fine. | *Wǒ-hěn-'hǎw.* |
| sir, Mr., gentleman, husband *or* teacher | *'shyān·sheng* |
| Mr. Wáng. | *'Wáng-shyān·sheng.* |
| How are you, sir? | *'Shyān·sheng 'hǎw?* |
| madam, Mrs., *or* wife | *'tày·tay* |
| Mrs. Lǐ. | *'Lǐ-tày·tay.* |
| How are you, Mrs. Lǐ? | *'Lǐ-tày·tay, nǐ-'hǎw.* |
| young lady, Miss, *or* daughter | *'shyáw·jye* |
| Miss Jāng. | *'Jāng-shyáw·jye.* |
| not | *'bū* |
| Is that OK? | *'Hǎw-bu·hǎw?* |
| *or* | *'Hǎw-ma?* |

10A

| | |
|---|---|
| That's OK. | *'Hăw.* |
| No, that's not OK. | *'Bù-hăw.* |
| to fit together | *'dwèy* |
| Is that right? | *'Dwèy-bu·dwèy?* |
| *or* | *'Dwèy-ma?* |
| That's right! | *'Dwèy·le.* |
| That's not right! | *Bú-'dwèy.* |
| to understand | *'dŭng* |
| Do you understand? | *'Dŭng-bu·dŭng?* |
| *or* | *'Dŭng-ma?* |
| I understand. | *'Dŭng·le.* |
| I don't understand. | *Bù-'dŭng.* |
| in *or* at | *'dzày* |
| where? | *'nă·li* |
| Where is it? | *Dzày-'nă·li?* |
| restaurant | *fàn-'gwăn·dz* |
| Where's a restaurant? | *Fàn-'gwăn·dz dzày-'nă·li?* |
| there | *'nà·li* |
| Over there! | *Dzày-'nà·li.* |
| It's not over there. | *'Bú-dzày-'nà·li.* |
| here | *'jè·li* |
| It's right here. | *Dzày-'jè·li.* |

**Record 3A, beginning.**

| | |
|---|---|
| hotel | *fàn·'dyàn* |
| Where's a hotel? | *Fàn·'dyàn dzày-'nă·li?* |
| train | *hwŏ-'chē* |
| railroad station | *hwŏ-chē-'jàn* |
| Where's the railroad station? | *Hwŏ-chē-'jàn dzày-'nă·li?* |
| The railroad station is right here. | *Hwŏ-chē-'jàn dzày-'jè·li.* |
| toilet | *tsè·'swŏ* |
| Where's the toilet? | *Tsè·'swŏ dzày-'nă·li?* |
| Thank you. | *'Shyè·shye.* |
| Please. | *'Chĭng.* |
| Please, may I ask you . . . ? | *Chĭng-'wèn.* |
| You're welcome. | *Bú-'kè·chi.* |
| Excuse me, I'm sorry, *or* forgive me. | *'Dwèy-bu·chĭ.* |

§2. Hints on Pronunciation. (Group Work.) The Leader, or some other member of the group, will read these Hints on Pronunciation aloud while the rest follow in their books. The Guide or records will give the practices. Repeat in unison as soon as you hear the Chinese. Each word is given only once, but the whole practice can be run through as many times as necessary to get a good imitation of the sounds. When you are sure of one practice, go on to the next.

You have probably noticed that Chinese seems to be sung, every syllable with a definite pitch, or rise or fall of pitch, of its own. These differences of tone are important, but not difficult if you imitate your Guide carefully. You use ups and downs of tone in speaking English, but for something quite different—surprise, question, exclamation. In Chi-

FL 004892

Charles F. Hockett and Chaoying Fang

# SPOKEN CHINESE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH,
EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
EDUCATION
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

## BOOK ONE

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL BY MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
Spoken Language Services, Inc.
TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE COPYRIGHT OWNER.

Spoken Language Services, Inc.

nese, however, each word must be said with its proper tone, not with a tone expressing how you feel about it.

In the Aids to Listening the syllables of a word are separated by a raised dot (·). Words which are spoken together without any pause are joined by hyphens (-). Syllables which sound *louder* than others are marked by a little vertical tick (ˈ) before them. Notice that this vertical tick does *not* mean that the syllable so marked is *higher in pitch* than those around it; a syllable which has to be spoken with a low pitch may nevertheless be louder than those next to it.

The little marks over the letters *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *r*, and *z* will remind you of the tones. Thus, a horizontal line over a letter (¯) stands for a *high level tone*. Listen to the Guide, and imitate him, in Practice One:

**Record 1A, beginning.**

Practice 1.

| | |
|---|---|
| *ˈ*shyān* | 'first, earlier' |
| *ˈ*shēng* | 'to be born' |
| ˈ*Jāng* | (a family name) |
| *ˈ*chē* | 'cart, any vehicle on wheels' |

A line rising to the right (ˊ) indicates a *high rising tone*.

**Record 1A, after first spiral.**

Practice 2.

| | |
|---|---|
| ˈ*Wáng* | (a family name) |
| *ˈ*chá* | 'tea' |
| *ˈ*jŕ* | 'straight' |
| *ˈ*yáng* | 'foreign' |

A little downward curve (ˇ) means a *low tone*.

**Record 1A, after second spiral.**

Practice 3.

| | |
|---|---|
| ˈ*wǒ* | 'I' |
| ˈ*nǐ* | 'you' |
| ˈ*hǎw* | 'well, OK' |
| ˈ*hěn* | 'very' |

Finally, a line falling from the left (ˋ) represents a *falling tone*.

**Record 1A, after third spiral.**

Practice 4.

| | |
|---|---|
| *ˈ*tày* | 'too' |
| ˈ*dwèy* | 'to match; correct' |
| ˈ*dzày* | 'in, at' |
| *ˈ*fàn* | 'food, especially rice' |

Not every syllable, however, has one of these four tones on it. When you see a syllable written without any of these marks over it that syllable is simply said quickly and quietly after those that precede it. Such a syllable is never used all alone, so in the following practice it is necessary to use expressions that have more than one syllable in them; it is the *last* syllable which you should be listening to most particularly.

---

* When a word in the practices is marked with an asterisk (*), it has not yet been presented to you in the Basic Sentences for you to learn. In such cases practice the pronunciation, but don't worry about remembering the meaning until the word is given to you as an item to be memorized.

**Record 1A, after fourth spiral.**

Practice 5.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'shyān·sheng* | 'Mr.' |
| *'shyáu·jye* | 'Miss' |
| *'dǔng·le* | 'I understand' |
| *'tày·tay* | 'Mrs.' |

§3. Practice on the Basic Sentences. (Group Work.) When you have gone through all the Hints on Pronunciation several times, go through the Basic Sentences (Group I) two or three more times, at first in unison, and then taking turns around the group with the repetition. While the Guide and the other members are speaking, listen carefully, keeping in mind the sound and the meaning of the Chinese. *During this practice don't say any Chinese expression except when you have just heard the Guide say it.*

§4. Check Yourself. Did you get the differences of tone in Chinese?

Did you imitate the Guide even if his pronunciation seemed different from that in the book?

Are you keeping in mind the meaning of each Chinese expression as you hear it or speak it?

Are you speaking loudly and clearly so that the other members of the group can hear you?

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

§1. Review of Basic Sentences covering the English. (Individual Study.) Work separately and quietly so as not to disturb the other members of the group. Turn back to the Basic Sentences (Group I) in Section A and cover the English. Read the Chinese to yourself and see how quickly you can call to mind the meaning of each expression. Put a check mark by those with which you have trouble, and go on through to the end before you look at the English to find out what the meanings are. Try the hard ones again before checking with the English. Then go through again, skipping about so that you come to them in a different order. Try to reach the point of recognizing the meaning of every Chinese expression instantly.

§2. Word Study. (Individual Study.) Still working separately, read carefully the following comments.

Point 1. Some Compound Words. Words like *bookcase*, *lighthouse*, *kindness*, are called *compound words*, since they are formed by putting smaller words together: *book* and *case*, *light* and *house*, *kind* and *-ness*. In the last example, *-ness* does not occur alone as a word in its own right, but it enters into many longer words, always with much the same meaning: *kindness*, *slyness*, *highness*, meaning 'the property of being kind', 'the property of being sly', 'the property of being high'. Sometimes a word is clearly a compound, yet has a meaning which is not very obviously related to the meanings of the parts: *awful*, for example, even though it is *awe* plus *full* (both spelled differently in the compound), need not mean 'filling with awe'—it can mean simply 'very', as in *awfully good.*

Chinese has many compound words like these. Whenever it will be of assistance to you in your job of learning the meanings and uses of words, compound words will be broken down. In your work so far you have had the following compound words:

*'shyān·sheng: shyān* is 'early, first, earlier', and *shēng* is 'to bear, to be born', so that literally the compound word means 'earlier born'; from this came the meanings 'teacher, sir, mister, gentleman', since to call some one 'earlier born'—earlier than you—is to indicate respect for him.

*'shyáw·jye: shyǎw* is 'small, little, young'; *jyě·* does not occur alone, but when doubled, *'jyě·jye*, means 'older sister'. The compound means 'young lady, daughter, Miss'.

*fàn-'gwǎn·dz:* 'food store'. *Fàn* means 'food', especially 'rice' or 'wheat products' such as noodles.

*hwǒ-'chē:* 'fire cart'—'train'. *Chē* is the term for any wheeled vehicle.

*hwǒ-chē-'jàn* 'fire cart stop'—'railroad station'.

POINT 2. COMMON EXPRESSIONS. Terms like 'how do you do?' in Chinese, as in English, are used so often that they do not really have the meaning which the parts of the expressions would suggest. For example:

*chǐng* is a verb meaning 'to request' or 'to invite'. Used all alone, it is the equivalent of English 'please'.

*chǐng-'wèn*, literally 'request ask', is what one says to a stranger or casual friend when one wishes to ask a question. It is about like 'Pardon me, might I ask you to tell me . . . ?'

*bú-'kè·chi* means literally 'Don't act like a guest'—*'kè·chi* is a verb meaning, approximately, 'to act like a guest'. So it is the common expression for 'you're welcome; don't apologize; don't act so grateful; it's all right; do as you wish; make yourself at home.'

*'dwèy-bu·chǐ. Dwèy* means basically 'to fit together', as two pieces of a broken plate fit together. The verbs *'dwèy-de·chǐ* and *'dwèy-bu·chǐ* mean, respectively, 'to be able to face as an equal' and 'to be unable to face as an equal'. The former is fighting talk; you would not say it to anyone except in anger. The latter is just the opposite; 'cannot face' is short for 'I cannot face you'—because of what I have done, or because of what I must now do; therefore 'excuse me', 'forgive me', 'pardon me'.

*'dwèy·le.* The *dwèy* in this expression is the same as in the foregoing. The element *·le* has, almost always, the effect of putting what is being said into past time. *'Dwèy·le* means, then, 'it has fitted together'—that is, 'what you say fits the situation, what you say is right, that's right'.

POINT 3. POSITION OF TITLES. Notice the following examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| Mr. Wáng | *'Wáng-shyān·sheng* |
| Mrs. Lǐ | *'Lǐ-tày·tay* |
| Miss Jāng | *'Jāng-shyáw·jye* |

In Chinese, words used as forms of address or as titles come *after* the person's name, not before it as in English.

**POINT 4. EXPRESSION OF 'I' AND 'YOU'.** Notice the following brief conversation:

| | |
|---|---|
| Do (you) understand? | *'Dǔng-bu-dǔng?* |
| (I) understand. | *'Dǔngle.* |

In ordinary conversation the words *wǒ* 'I' and *nǐ* 'you' are left out most of the time. The situation makes it clear who is being referred to, and it is actually a matter of politeness not to use these two words too often.

**POINT 5. TONE CHANGES.** In English the forms of words sometimes change depending on the words with which they are used, without any difference at all in meaning. For example:

*I am here.* or *I'm here.*
*They are here.* or *They're here.*

The word *am* can be reduced to *'m* after *I*, and the word *are* to *'re* (really just *r*) after *they*.

There are a few similar changes in Chinese, but they affect not the vowels and consonants of words, but the *tones*. Generally speaking the tones of words in Chinese do not change, and it is very important to pronounce Chinese words with the correct tones. Thus, though you have not had the words yet, the words for 'book' and 'tree' have exactly the same vowels and consonants, and are different only in tone. Nevertheless, there are a few regular changes which have to be learned.

Here is the first kind of change:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | *nǐ* | 'you' |
| | *hǎw* | 'OK' |
| but | | |
| | *ní-'hǎw* | 'How are you?' |

where the tone of the word for 'you' changes from third (ˇ) to second (ˊ) when the next syllable has the third tone (ˇ). Another example of the same kind of change:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | *wǒ* | 'I' |
| | *hěn* | 'very' |
| | *hǎw* | 'OK' |
| but | *Wǒ-hén-'hǎw.* | 'I'm fine' |
| or | *Wó-hén-'hǎw.* | 'I'm fine'. |

The tone of the word for 'very' changes from third to second when the next syllable has the third tone; then the tone of the word for 'I' can either remain what it normally is (third, ˇ)—since it is no longer followed by a third tone—or can change to second tone because the following word *basically* has the third tone, even though it has changed here.

This change is quite regular. Two syllables with third-tone never follow each other in immediate succession, unless there is a pause between them (indicated in writing by a comma or a period or some other punctuation mark). This means that in ordinary rapid speech the second and third tones are not nearly as clearly distinguished as either is from the first or second. If you learn a new word in a sentence, and in that sentence it has the second tone and is followed by a third-tone syllable, you cannot be sure until you hear it all alone whether it is *basically* second tone or *basically* third tone, changed to second because of the following third.

This is the only tone *change* of a general nature: it applies to every syllable that has basically the third tone. The other tone changes are few and far between and affect only a few isolated words. The chief of these is this:

| | |
|---|---|
| *bū* or *bù* | 'not' |
| *bù-'chī* | 'not eat' |
| *bù-hĕn-'hăw* | 'not very good' |
| *bù-'hăw* | 'not good' |
| *bú-'dwèy* | 'not right' |

in isolation the word for 'not' has either first (¯) or fourth (`) tone. Before a syllable which has first, second, or third tone (¯, ′, ˇ), the word for 'not' has always the fourth tone. But before a syllable which itself has the fourth tone (`), the word for 'not' has the second tone (′).

The one other word which changes its tone in this way will be presented to you in Unit II. After that there will be no more finagling about tones to worry you, except learning to pronounce them, which, let it be stressed again, is very important.

Some syllables of relatively little importance in the sentence frequently *lose* their tones in rapid speech. You will not need any comment on this in the word-study sections. When the tone of a syllable is usually completely lost, it is written, in the Basic Sentences, the Listening In, and elsewhere, with no tone mark at all. You will get onto this best simply by listening carefully to the Guide or records and imitating accurately.

POINT 6. ASKING QUESTIONS. There are three ways of asking questions in Chinese. One way is like our use of a *question-word* like *who?*, *where?*, and so on; you will get these question-words a bit later.

The second way is by adding *ma* to the end of the sentence:

*'Dŭng-ma?* 'Do you understand?'

This *ma* is about like the English *eh?* or *huh?*; it simply indicates that you are making a statement about which you are not sure and want confirmation. A variation on this is to use both *ma* and the word for 'not', *bū*;

*Bù-'dŭng-ma?* 'Don't you understand?'

—the implication being that 'I thought you would, and am surprised if you don't.'

The third way is like this:

*'Dŭng-bu·dŭng?* 'Do you understand?'

Literally this is 'understand (or) not understand?' In other words, the questioner gives two alternatives in what he says, and the person who is being asked the question is to indicate which of the alternatives is the case. You have had several examples already: *'dŭng-bu·dŭng?*, *'hăw-bu·hăw?*, *'dwèy-bu·dwèy?*.

There are no general words for 'yes' and 'no' in Chinese. Therefore the answers to questions have to be given using the verb of the question itself. For example, the answers to *'dŭng-bu·dŭng?* 'Do you understand?', or to *'dŭng-ma* with the same meaning, are:

*Dŭng.* or *'Dŭng·le.* 'I understand.'
*Bù-'dŭng.* 'I don't understand.'

§3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY? (Individual Study.). In the following, each English sentence is followed by several Chinese sentences. The English sentence describes a situation or makes a statement, and one or more, but usually not all, of the Chinese sentences are appropriate to the information given in English. Be sure first that you understand the meaning of all the Chinese sentences. Anything you are not clear about you can find in the Basic Sentences, or by referring back to the Word Study (§2) again. When you are sure of the meanings, decide which of the sentences fit the situation. Practice them aloud to yourself until you can rattle the Chinese off without hesitation.

1. You meet Miss Wáng and say:
    a. *'Wáng-tày·tay, nĭ-'hăw?*
    b. *'Wáng-shyáw·jye, nĭ-'hăw?*
    c. *'Wáng-shyáw·jye, 'dwèy-bu·chĭ.*
2. You say 'Where is the railroad station?':
    a. *Hwŏ-'chē dzày-'nă·li?*
    b. *Hwŏ-chē-'jàn dzày-'nă·li?*
    c. *Hwŏ-chē-'jàn dzày-'nà·li-ma?*
3. If you want to step back and let someone else go through a door first, you say:
    a. *Bú-'kè·chi.*
    b. *'Dwèy-bu·chĭ.*
    c. *'Chĭng.*
4. If the other person lets you go through first, you say:
    a. *Bú-'kè·chi.*
    b. *'Shyè·shye.*
    c. *'Chĭng.*
5. If you have to leave some people you have been talking with, you would say:
    a. *'Shyè·shye.*
    b. *Bú-'kè·chi.*
    c. *'Dwèy-bu·chĭ.*
6. If you accidentally step on someone's toes, you say:
    a. *Chĭng-'wèn.*
    b. *Bú-'kè·chi.*
    c. *'Dwèy-bu·chĭ.*
7. If you want to ask someone for some information, you would start your question by saying:
    a. *'Dwèy-bu·chĭ.*
    b. *Chĭng-'wèn.*
    c. *Tsè-'swŏ dzày-'nă·li?*
8. If you say 'The restaurant isn't here, it's over there', you say:
    a. *Fàn-'gwăn·dz 'bú-dzày-nà·li, dzày-'jè·li.*
    b. *Fàn-'gwăn·dz 'bú-dzày-jè·li, dzày-'nà·li.*
    c. *Fàn·'dyàn 'bú-dzày-jè·li, dzày-'nà·li.*

9. If you are greeted, you reply by:

   a. *Nǐ-'hǎw.*
   b. *Hěn-'hǎw, 'shyè·shye.*
   c. *'Bù-hǎw, 'shyè·shye.*

10. If you want to ask someone if what you have said is right, you say:

   a. *'Dwèy-bu·dwèy?*
   b. *'Hǎw-bu·hǎw?*
   c. *'Dwèy-ma?*
   d. *'Hǎw-ma?*

11. If you want to know whether someone understands what you have said, you ask him:

   a. *'Dǔng-bu·dǔng?*
   b. *'Dwèy-bu·dwèy?*
   c. *'Hǎw-bu·hǎw?*

12. If someone says that the restaurant is right by you, and you think it is further away, you say:

   a. *'Dwèy·le.*
   b. *Bú-'dwèy, dzày-'nà·li.*
   c. *'Bù-hǎw.*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY? (Group Work.) Work now with the group. Turn to the What Would You Say? The Leader will read the English statement and will ask you to give orally one of the sentences that you think satisfies what is asked, and to tell why you think so. You must know what all the other sentences mean too, and if others apply, say them. The Leader and the group will discuss the choices made and the reasons for the rejection of some of the possibilities. Then he will ask another student to give the sentence for the next English situation, and so on.

§5. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE. (Individual Study.) Working individually check once more your knowledge of the first group of Basic Sentences by covering the Chinese. Try to recall each Chinese expression as you read the English equivalents. Check those you can't get right away, and go back to them after finishing the group. Look at the Chinese only if absolutely necessary. Then skip around through the sentences to be sure you can still get the Chinese when you come to the English in a different order. If two of you can work together, taking turns giving each other the English equivalents, you will get a still better check on your learning.

## SECTION C: BASIC SENTENCES

§1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP II). (Group Work.) Go through the following Basic Sentences just as you did with those of Section A. The Guide or records will give each Chinese expression twice, and you will repeat after him in unison each time. Speak up, and imitate as closely as you can.

## SIMPLE PHRASES CONTINUED

**Record 3A, after spiral.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| towards | *'shyàng* |
| the right | *'yèw* |
| *or* | *'yèw·byan* |
| go *or* walk | *'dzĕw* |
| Go to the right. | *Shyàng-'yèw dzĕw.* |
| *or* | *Shyàng-'yèw·byan dzĕw.* |
| the left | *'dzwŏ* |
| *or* | *'dzwŏ·byan* |
| Go to the left. | *Shyàng-'dzwó dzĕw.* |
| *or* | *Shyàng-'dzwŏ·byan dzĕw.* |
| Left, right, left, right! | *'Dzwŏ, 'yèw, 'dzwŏ, 'yèw.* |
| straight ahead | *yì·'jŕ* |
| Go straight ahead. | *Yì·'jŕ dzĕw.* |
| to speak | *'shwō* |
| again | *'dzày* |
| Please repeat. | *Chĭng 'dzày-shwō.* |
| slow | *'màn* |
| a little slower | *'màn·yi·dyan* |
| Please speak slower. | *Chĭng 'màn·yi·dyan shwō.* |
| in a loud voice | *'dà·shēng* |
| Please speak up. | *Chĭng 'dà·shèng shwō.* |

**Record 3B, beginning.**

| | |
|---|---|
| this | *'jè* |
| is | *'shr̀* |
| what? | *'shém·me* |
| What's this? | *'Jè shr̀-shém·me?* |
| that | *'nà* |
| cigarettes | *'yān* |
| That's a cigarette. | *Nà-shr̀-'yān.* |
| thing | *'dūng·shi* |
| that thing | *'nà·ge-dūng·shi* |
| What's that thing? | *'Nà·ge-dūng·shi shr̀-shém·me?* |
| *or* | *'Nà shr̀ 'shém·me-dūng·shi?* |
| matches | *yáng·'hwŏ* |
| This thing is a match. | *'Jè·ge-dūng·shi shr̀-yáng·'hwŏ.* |
| to want *or* need | *'yàw* |
| What do you want? | *Nĭ-yàw-'shém·me?* |
| I want cigarettes. | *Wŏ-yàw-'yān.* |
| to eat | *'chr̄* |
| food, especially rice | *'fàn* |
| I want to eat. | *Wŏ-yàw-chr̄-'fàn.* |
| meat | *'rèw* |
| Do you want to eat some meat? | *Yàw-chr̄-'rèw-ma?* |
| *or* | *'Yàw-bu·yàw chr̄-'rèw?* |
| No. | *Bú-'yàw.* |
| to drink | *'hē* |
| tea | *'chá* |
| I want to drink some tea. | *Wŏ-yàw-hē-'chá.* |
| he *or* she | *'tā* |
| water | *'shwĕy* |
| Does he want water to drink? | *Tā-yàw-shwĕy 'hē-ma?* |
| liquor *or* wine | *'jyĕw* |

19

| | |
|---|---|
| He won't drink water, he'll drink wine. | *Tā-bù-hē-'shwěy, hē-'jyěw.* |
| to have *or* there is, there are | *'yěw* |
| Is there a restaurant here? | *'Jè·li yěw-fàn-'gwǎn·dz-ma?* |
| not to have, or there isn't, there aren't | *'méy·yěw* |
| Do you have any matches? | *'Yěw-méy·yew yáng·'hwǒ?* |
| *I* don't, but *he* does. | *'Wǒ 'méy·yěw, 'tā yěw.* |
| Goodbye. | *Dzày-'jyàn.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. (Group Work.) The Leader will choose one of the group to read aloud the following Hints on Pronunciation, and the Guide or the records will give the Chinese words in the Practices so that you can repeat them imitating the pronunciation. Go through each practice as often as you need to to get the pronunciation.

The first practice below will show you the contrast in sound between certain Chinese consonants and the nearest English consonants. The first three will show you that the *b*, *d*, and *g* of Chinese are not exactly like our English *b*, *d*, and *g* as in *boy*, *dirt*, and *girl*; in fact, they may remind you more of our English *p*, *t*, and *k*. At the beginning of an English word the sounds *p*, *t*, and *k* are followed by a little puff of breath. If you will hold a small piece of light-weight paper up to your mouth (a match-flame will do too) you will see it flutter slightly as you say such words as *put*, *tack*, *keep*. Now if you can say these same three words in such a way that the paper or flame does not flutter at all, but do this without

changing the first sounds of the words to *b*, *d*, and *g*, you will be saying something very like the *Chinese* *b*, *d*, and *g*. Take time out to try this now.

When you come to the Chinese *p*, *t*, and *k*, you will find that the only difference between them and our English *p*, *t*, and *k* sounds is that in Chinese the puff of breath after the consonant is much stronger than it usually is in English. Try it with the paper or match-flame again, and try to make the paper flutter very hard, or the match-flame go out. Then you will have the Chinese *p*, *t*, and *k* sounds.

In this first practice, the Leader (or the English voice on the record) will say an English word; then the Guide (or the Chinese voice) will say the Chinese word. Imitate only the Chinese, but notice the differences, and be sure you are making the Chinese sounds.

**Record 1A, after fifth spiral.**

PRACTICE 6.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *boo* | *'bŭ* | 'not' |
| *dough* | **'dòw* | 'all, both' |
| *gay* | **gěy* | 'give' |
| *pow* | **'pǎw* | 'run' |
| *tan* | **'tán* | 'converse' |
| *can* | **'kàn* | 'to look at' |

---

* Words in the practices on pronunciation marked with an asterisk (*) have not yet been given to you to learn; practice them here, but don't worry about trying to remember their meaning.

In the next practice these words are put together, as they often are in talking, so that both *p* and *b* are in the same expression, and *t* and *d*, *k* and *g* likewise. This time you will have a chance to notice, not the difference between Chinese sounds and English sounds, but between two similar Chinese sounds in each case. Do your best to imitate what you hear.

**Record 1A, after sixth spiral.**

PRACTICE 7.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'bù 'păw* | 'not run' |
| *'dĕw 'tán* | 'all converse' |
| *'gĕy 'kàn* | 'to present something to be looked at'. |

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES. (Group Work.) Go through the Basic Sentences (Group II) several more times, at first repeating in unison after the Guide as you did the first time, after that taking turns around the class repeating after him until everyone has had a chance. Think of the meaning as you hear and say each word or as the other members of the group speak. Note especially, as you listen and imitate, the tones, and the consonants you have just been practicing.

## SECTION D: WORD STUDY

§1. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP II). (Individual Study.) First make sure that you know the material of the Basic Sentences (Group II) by covering the English and seeing if you can remember the meaning of the Chinese. Check the ones that give you trouble and go back to them after you finish the list. Then skip around so that you take them in a different order. Finally go on to the Word Study, reading it carefully to yourself.

§2. WORD STUDY. (Individual Study.)

POINT 1. CHINESE WORDS AND ENGLISH WORDS. We have already seen that there are some changes of the forms of words in Chinese which are like the automatic, meaningless, but customary changes in English such as *I am* and *I'm*. English words change form in another way, a way which is not meaningless at all: thus *man*, *men*, *man's*, *men's*, or *go*, *goes*, *going*, *went*, *gone*, or *good*, *better*, *best*. This kind of change is found in Chinese only to a very slight degree, and what there is of it is completely regular—one never has to memorize long lists of words that change in one special way, and other long lists that change in another way. Thus a Chinese word like *shwō* can mean 'speak, speaks, speaking, spoke, spoken, to speak'; *wŏ* can mean 'I, me my, mine'; *hăw* can mean 'well, better, best, to be well, is well, am well, are well, was well', and so on.

This does not mean that Chinese is vague or indefinite, or that it is difficult to tell just what a Chinese sentence means even when one knows the meanings of the words in it. The *order of words* tells what word means what thing. This is true in English too: *John hit Bill* and *Bill hit John* are two entirely different sentences, though the same three words are found in both. And so in Chinese: *wŏ-'chĭng-nĭ chr̄-'fàn* and *nǐ-'chǐng-wǒ chr̄-'fàn* are composed of exactly the same words, yet because of the order of the words the meanings are quite distinct: 'I ask you to eat' and 'you ask me to eat'.

POINT 2. *Jè, Nà,* AND *Nǎ.* These three syllables can be used as independent words.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'Jè shr̀-shém·me?* | 'What's this?' |
| *'Nà shr̀-shém·me?* | 'What's that?' |

The meanings are 'this', 'that', and 'which?'. When one of the three is put before a noun, however, as in 'this book', 'that paper', 'which person?', there is a change:

| | |
|---|---|
| *'Jè·ge-dūng·shi shr̀-shém·me?* | 'What is this thing?' |
| *'Nà·ge-dūng·shi shr̀-shém·me?* | 'What is that thing?' |
| *'Nǎ·ge-dūng·shi?* | 'Which thing?' |

As you see, the syllable *·ge* is added when a noun follows. This is not the only syllable which is added to *jè, nà,* and *nǎ*; the others will be discussed in Unit II. The forms with *·ge* can also be used without a noun following:

| | |
|---|---|
| *'Jè·ge shr̀-shém·me?* | 'What's this?' |

The difference between, for example, *'jè shr̀-shém·me?* and *'jè·ge shr̀-shém·me?* is that the first, without *·ge* refers to practically anything, including ideas, affairs, states of mind, and so forth, whereas the one with *·ge,* is *more apt* to refer to something concrete that can be pointed at or handled. But this difference is not absolute.

With the addition of another syllable (not one of the set to which *·ge* belongs), the words refer to *places*:

| | |
|---|---|
| *Dzày-'nǎ·li?* | 'At what place?'—'Where?' |
| *Dzày-'jè·li.* | 'At this place.'—'Here.' |
| *Dzày-'nà·li.* | 'At that place.'—'There.' |

The element *lǐ·*, never used all alone, means 'the place in or at something'. It is quite important and further uses will be discussed later. Notice that when it is added to *jè, nà,* and *nǎ* it loses its tone completely.

(Speakers of Chinese from Peiping and nearby places frequently say *'jèy·ge, 'nèy·ge* and *'něy·ge* instead of *'jè·ge, 'nà·ge,* and *'nǎ·ge,* and *jèr, nàr* and *nǎr* instead of *'jè·li, 'nà·li,* and *'nǎ·li.* There is no difference in meaning. Also, many speakers say *shém·'mà* instead of *'shém·me,* once again with no difference in meaning.)

POINT 3. *Bū* AND *Méy.* These two words both mean 'not'. *Bū* is the *only* word for 'not' which is used with *shr̀* 'to be': *'bú·shr̀* 'is not, am not, are not, was not, were not, not to be.' *Méy* is the *only* word for 'not' which is used with *yěw* 'to have': *'méy·yěw* 'doesn't have, don't have, didn't have, not to have, there isn't, there aren't'.

With other verbs both *bū* and *méy* are used, with a difference in meaning. Until this point is discussed in detail, use *bū* with all verbs except *yěw*, and *méy* only with *yěw.*

POINT 4. *Yàw.* To say 'I'm not going to do so-and-so', or 'I won't do so-and-so', it is better to say, for example, *Wǒ-bù-chr̄-'fàn* 'I won't eat', than to say *Wǒ-bú-yàw-chr̄-'fàn.* The combination *'bú·yàw* is used, however, when telling someone *not* to do something: *'bú·yàw-chr̄-'fàn* 'Don't eat!'; *'bú·yàw-chr̄-'nà·ge-fàn* 'Don't eat that food!'

*Yàw* without *bū* is to be handled with care also. It is all right to say *Wǒ-yàw-chr̄-'fàn* 'I'm going to eat'; but an expression like *Wǒ-yàw-'fàn*, where the verb *yàw* is followed directly by a noun, rather than by another verb, sounds to a Chinese too much like begging.

In other words, neither *yàw* nor *bú-'yàw* is the exact equivalent of English 'want (to)' or 'not want (to)'. The meaning is a little different. You will catch onto it easily if you observe its use carefully in the sentences that are given to you.

POINT 5. *Shr̀*. Sentences which in English would have to have 'is', 'am', or 'are' in them frequently do *not* have *shr̀* in them in Chinese:

*Wó-'hǎw.* 'I (am) OK.'

*Fàn·'dyàn dzày-'yèw·byan.* 'The hotel (is) on the right.'

The word *shr̀* can be used, however, in sentences like these, to *emphasize* the fact being stated:

*Wǒ-'shr̀-hǎw.* 'I *am* OK.'

*Fàn·'dyàn 'shr̀-dzày-yèw·byan.* 'The hotel *is* on the right.'

§3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY? (Individual Study.) Still working by yourself, read the following and decide which Chinese sentences suit the situation described in English. Be sure you know what all the Chinese sentences mean, and practice them aloud.

1. You point to a building and ask someone what it is:
   a. *'Nà shr̀-shém·me?*
   b. *Nǐ-shwō-'shém·me?*
   c. *Jè-shr̀-fàn-'gwǎn·dz-ma?*
2. You are told that it is a restaurant:
   a. *Nà-shr̀-tsè·'swǒ.*
   b. *Wǒ-dzày-nà·li chr̄-'fàn.*
   c. *Nà-shr̀-fàn-'gwǎn·dz.*
3. You are hungry and say:
   a. *Wǒ-yàw-chr̄-'fàn.*
   b. *Wǒ-yàw-hē-'chá.*
   c. *Wǒ-yàw-hē-'shwěy.*
4. Someone asks you what you want to eat:
   a. *Chr̄-'fàn-ma?*
   b. *Chr̄-'shém·me-fàn?*
   c. *Chr̄-'rèw-ma?*
5. You say you want meat:
   a. *Yàw-'hǎw-fàn.*
   b. *Yàw-'hǎw-chá.*
   c. *Yàw-'rèw.*
6. You say meat is good to eat:
   a. *'Rèw 'bù-hén-hǎw-chr̄.*
   b. *'Rèw 'hěn-bù-hǎw-chr̄.*
   c. *'Rèw 'hén-hǎw-chr̄.*
7. You say 'This is not a restaurant':
   a. *'Jè 'bú·shr̀-fàn·'dyàn.*
   b. *'Jè 'bú·shr̀-fàn-'gwǎn·dz.*
   c. *Fàn-'gwǎn·dz 'bú-dzày-'jè·li.*

22

8. Someone asks you if you want cigarettes:
   a. *Yàw-'yān-ma?*
   b. *'Yàw-bu·yàw yáng·'hwǒ?*
   c. *'Yān dzày-'nǎ·li?*
9. You ask where the cigarettes are:
   a. *'Yān dzày-'jè·li-ma?*
   b. *'Yān bú-dzày-'nà·li-ma?*
   c. *'Yān dzày-'nǎ·li?*
10. You ask if something is a cigarette:
   a. *'Jè shr̀-yān-ma?*
   b. *'Jè·ge-dūng·shi shr̀-'yān-ma?*
   c. *'Nà 'shr̀-bu·shr̀-'yān?*
11. Someone says the matches are on the right:
   a. *Yáng·'hwǒ dzày-'dzwǒ·byan.*
   b. *Yáng·'hwǒ 'bú-dzày-dzwǒ·byan.*
   c. *Yáng·'hwǒ 'bú-dzày-yèw·byan.*
   d. *Yáng·'hwǒ dzày-'yèw·byan.*
12. Someone tells you to go to the right to get to a hotel:
   a. *Dzày-'yèw·byan.*
   b. *Fàn·'dyàn dzày-'yèw·byan.*
   c. *Shyàng-'yèw dzěw.*
   d. *Shyàng-'dzwó dzěw.*
13. You don't understand and ask him:
   a. *Chǐng 'màn·yi·dyǎn shwō.*
   b. *Chǐng 'dzày-shwō.*
   c. *Chǐng 'dà·shēng shwō.*
   d. *Chǐng 'bú·yàw-shwō.*
14. You ask someone if he has any cigarettes:
   a. *'Yěw-méy·yew 'yān?*
   b. *Yěw-'yān-ma?*
   c. *'Jè·li yěw-'yān-ma?*
   d. *'Yān dzày-'nǎ·li?*
   e. *Yàw-'yān-ma?*
15. He replies:
   a. *Yěw-yáng·'hwǒ, méy·yěw-'yān.*
   b. *Bú-'yàw, 'shyè·shye.*
   c. *'Wǒ méy·yěw, 'tā yěw.*

§4. What Did You Say? (Group Work.) Turn to the What Would You Say? The Leader will read the English statement and will ask you to give orally one of the sentences that you think satisfies what is asked, and to tell why you think so. You must know what all the other sentences mean too, and if others apply, say them. Discuss the various choices among yourselves. Then the Leader will call on some other member of the group for the second set of sentences, and so on.

§5. Review of Basic Sentences (Group II) covering the Chinese. (Individual Study.) Working by yourself, cover the Chinese and see how many expressions you can say while looking at the English. Refer to the Chinese only after you have been through the whole list. Try again the ones you marked that you did not know. If two of you can work together asking each other the expressions in turn, you will have a still better check on what you have learned.

## SECTION E: LISTENING IN

§1. Word Study Check-Up. (Group Work.) The Leader will ask various students to give the Chinese for the English equivalents in the two Word Studies (Section B, §2, and Section D, §2), and will ask you to explain the points discussed. For example, he will ask one of the group in what ways you can ask someone if he understands you. Remember that you only need to know *how* something is said; no one knows *why* people talk the way they do, in Chinese or any other language. But you may be asked to give the differences in meaning between two ways of saying something that are similar.

§2. Listening In. (Group Work.) Go through the following conversations with the group. Keep your books closed the first time through, and see how much you can understand as the Guide or record speaks. Nothing new occurs here. If you are sure of the Basic Sentences, you should have little trouble. The Leader will discuss with you the meaning of the conversations, and you can go through any one of them a second time if necessary. This is your first chance to practice trying to understand what is said in Chinese without any writing to follow.

Conversation 1. Mr. Ross and Mr. Wáng are on the street. Mr. Ross approaches a stranger and says:

**Record 4A, beginning.**

Ross: '*Shyān·sheng 'hăw?*
Stranger: '*Hăw, nĭ-'hăw.*
Ross: '*Hăw.*
*Chĭng-'wèn, fàn·'dyàn dzày-'nă·li?*
Stranger: *Fàn·'dyàn dzày-'yèw·byan. Shyàng-'yèw dzĕw.*
Ross: *Chĭng 'dzày-shwō.*
*Chĭng 'màn·yi·dyan shwō.*
Stranger: *Fàn·'dyàn dzày-'nà·li.*
*Shyàng-'yèw dzĕw.*
'*Dŭng-bu·dŭng?*
Ross: '*Dŭng·le.*
'*Shyè·shye.*

Conversation 2. *Wáng returns to Ross and says:

Ross: '*Tā-shwō, 'fàn·'dyàn dzày-'yèw·byan.'*
Wáng: *Bú-'dwèy!*
*Dzày-'dzwŏ·byan.*
Ross: *Dzày-'dzwŏ·byan-ma?*
*Tā-shwō fàn·'dyàn dzày-'yèw·byan, 'bú-dzày-'dzwŏ·byan.*
'*Nà bú·shr-fàn·'dyàn-ma?*
'*Nà bú·shr-dzày-'yèw·byan-ma?*
Wáng: '*Dwèy·le.*
*Fàn·'dyàn 'shr-dzày-'yèw·byan.*
Ross: *Nĭ-yàw-chr-'fàn-ma?*
Wáng: *Wŏ-'bù-chr-fàn.*
*Wŏ-yàw-hē-'jyĕw.*
Ross: '*Hăw.*

---

* The record has this on it, accidentally. It should be 'Ross returns to Wáng and says:'.

### Conversation 3. In the restaurant.

Waiter: *'Shyān·sheng 'hăw?*
*Chr̄-'shém·me?*
Wáng: *'Yĕw-shém·me?*
Waiter: *Yĕw-'fàn, yĕw-'ròw.*
Wáng: *'Hăw.*
*Tā-yàw chr̄-'fàn.*
Waiter: *'Hē-shém·me?*
Wáng: *Yĕw-'shwĕy-ma?*
Waiter: *'Bú·yàw-hē-'shwĕy.*
*'Shwĕy 'bù-hăw-hē.*
*Hē-'chá, 'hăw-bu·hăw?*
Wáng: *'Hăw.*
*Wŏ-yàw-hē-'jyĕw.*
*Yĕw-'jyĕw-ma?*
Waiter: *'Yĕw.*

### Conversation 4. While eating.

Wáng: *'Jè·ge-jyĕw bù-hăw-'hē.*
Waiter: *'Dwèy-bu·chĭ.*
*'Méy·yĕw-háw-'jyĕw.*
Wáng: *'Nă·li yĕw-háw-'jyĕw?*
Waiter: *Nà·ge-fàn·'dyàn yĕw-háw-'jyĕw.*
Ross: *'Jè shr̀-shém·me?*
Waiter: *Nà-shr̀-'yān.*
*Yàw-'yān-ma?*
Ross: *Bú-'yàw.*
Wáng: *'Wŏ 'yàw.*
*Yĕw-yáng·'hwŏ-ma?*

Waiter: *Yáng·'hwŏ dzày-'nà·li.*
Wáng: *Shr̀-'jè·ge-ma?*
Waiter: *'Bú·shr̀, shr̀-'nà·ge.*

### Conversation 5. After eating.

Ross: *'Jè·li yĕw-tsè·'swŏ-ma?*
Waiter: *'Yĕw.*
*Dzày-'nà·li, dzày-'dzwŏ·byan.*
Ross: *'Shyè·shye.*
Wáng: *Hwŏ-chē-'jàn dzày-'nă·li?*
Waiter: *Dzày-'nà·li; yì·'jŕ dzĕw.*
*Dzày-'jyàn.*

When you have listened to the conversations without your books and without imitating go through them again following in the book and repeating in unison after the Guide or phonograph records. Then try it again with individual repetition, one member of the group taking each part. You can best tell how your pronunciation is coming when you are the only one speaking. Do your best, speak loud and clear; try to imitate as exactly as you can. After you have followed with the text a couple of times you should be able to get along without it again, simply repeating after the Guide.

## SECTION F: CONVERSATION

§1. Vocabulary Check-Up. (Group Work.) The Leader will start the ball rolling on a final vocabulary check-up by asking one of the other students how to say something in Chinese—'restaurant', 'hotel', 'where is the toilet?' and so on. The student who gives the correct answer will ask a similar question of someone else. Keep on going around in this way until you have covered the material of all the Basic Sentences. Refer to them if you want to for ammunition (in English), but if you do be sure to cover the Chinese so that you see only the English.

§2. CONVERSATION. (Group Work.) Act out the conversations from Section E, different students taking parts and trying to act and speak as well as possible. In Section E you tested your understanding of the language; now test your speaking. Do it to the best of your ability. When you have been through the conversations, and everyone has had a chance to act, try conversations of your own on models like these that follow. Try to ask questions as well as answer them so that you keep it moving. Don't be afraid to bring in new sentences if you are sure of them, but keep within the words you know from the Basic Sentences.

A. ASKING INFORMATION. A approaches B, a stranger, and after greeting him, asks him the way to a restaurant, a railroad station, or a hotel. B gives the proper directions: to the right, to the left, or straight ahead. A, however, does not understand, and tells B so, asking him to speak more slowly. B repeats more slowly. He asks A if he understands. A says he does and thanks B. B says OK and they say good-bye.

B. AT A RESTAURANT. A sits down at a table and is waited on by B. B says hello, and A says hello in return. B asks A what he wants to eat. A orders something and says he would like some cigarettes too. B says OK, would he like some matches? A says he would. Soon B returns with the food and cigarettes and tells A the food is here. A thanks him and B says he's welcome.

C. ON THE STREET. You and a friend are walking along the street. You ask him where there is a toilet. He says there is a railroad station here, a restaurant to the right, and a hotel straight ahead. You ask him if he wants to eat; he says he does. You say the restaurant is there. He says the food is not good. You ask where they do have good food. He says the hotel has good food. You say that's right.

# UNIT II

## COUNTING; TIME AND MONEY

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

**To the Group Leader:** Here is a reminder of what you, as leader of the group, should do:

1. Before each meeting of the group read carefully and get clearly in mind the instructions for the sections of a Unit that you expect to cover in the group meeting.
2. Be sure that the Guide is available with his Manual for the Guide, or that the phonograph and records are ready.
3. Have the members of the group read together the instructions that precede each piece of work they are to do before they start work on it. Let one member read the instructions to them.
4. If there is anything that is not clear, take time to explain it before work begins.
5. Follow the instructions given the class, but in addition see that the members of the group speak loud enough so that everyone can hear them. Keep the work moving along. If it drags too much it is harder to keep at it.

Just as in the first Unit, the Leader will read the English and the Guide will then say the Chinese (or you will listen to the records) and you are to repeat in unison the Chinese as soon as you have heard it. Each word or phrase will be given twice for you to repeat. Imitate as accurately as you can. Speak up loud enough so that you can hear what you are saying, and make yourself say it as much like the Guide as possible.

### §1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP I.) (Group Work.)

#### COUNTING THINGS

**Record 4B, beginning.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| one | *'yī* |
| two | *'èr* |
| three | *'sān* |
| four | *'sz̀* |
| One, two, three, four! | *'Yī, 'èr, 'sān, 'sz̀.* |
| five | *'wǔ* |
| six | *'lyèw* |
| seven | *'chī* |
| eight | *'bā* |
| Five, six, seven, eight. | *'Wǔ, 'lyèw, 'chī, 'bā.* |
| nine | *'jyěw* |
| ten | *'shŕ* |

| | |
|---|---|
| eleven | *shŕ-'yī* |
| twelve | *shŕ-'èr* |
| Nine, ten, eleven, twelve. | *'Jyěw, 'shŕ, shŕ-'yī, shŕ-'èr.* |
| twenty | *'èr·shŕ* |
| twenty-four | *èr·shr-'sž* |
| a couple | *'lyǎng* |
| person *or* people | *'rén* |
| One person. | *'Yí·ge-rén.* |
| That person. | *'Nà·ge-rén.* |
| Two people. | *'Lyǎng·ge-rén.* |
| Twelve people. | *Shŕ-'èr·ge-rén.* |
| month | *'ywè* |
| Two months. | *'Lyǎng·ge-ywè.* |
| Eleven months. | *Shŕ-'yí·ge-ywè.* |
| February (that is, second month). | *'èr·ywè* |
| November (eleventh month) | *shŕ-'yí·ywè* |
| bowl | *'wǎn* |
| Three bowls. | *'Sān·ge-wǎn.* |
| Three bowls of rice. | *Sān·wǎn-'fàn.* |
| food other than rice | *'tsày* |
| Three bowls of other food. | *Sān·wǎn-'tsày.* |
| One rice-bowl, one teacup. | *Yí·ge-'fàn-wǎn,*<br>*yí·ge-'chá-wǎn.* |
| many, much, *or* more | *'dwō* |
| few, little, *or* less | *'shǎw* |
| There are many people, little food. | *'Rén 'dwō, 'fàn 'shǎw.* |
| how much *or* how many (expecting an answer more than ten) | *'dwō·shǎw* |
| money | *'chyán* |
| How much? | *'Dwō·shaw-chyán?* |
| a hunk *or* piece | *'kwày* |
| Three dollars | *'Sān·kway-chyan.* |
| a dime | *'máw* |
| Forty cents. | *'Sž·maw-chyan.* |

**Record 5A, beginning.**

| | |
|---|---|
| a cent | *'fēn* |
| Five cents. | *'Wǔ·fen-chyan.* |
| altogether | *yí·'gùng* |
| How much altogether? | *Yí·'gùng 'dwō·shaw-chyán?* |
| Six dollars and seventy cents. | *'Lyèw·kwày-'chī·maw-chyan.* |
| a few *or* how many (expecting an answer smaller than ten) | *'jǐ* |
| How many dollars? | *'Jǐ·kwày-chyan?* |
| Three or four dollars. | *'Sān-sž·kway-chyan.* |
| Between ten and twenty dollars. | *Shŕ-'jǐ·kway-chyan.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. (Group Work.) The Leader or one of the group whom he appoints will read aloud the English of this group of practices, and the Guide or the records will give each word of each practice once, for you to repeat. Go through each practice several times, until you are sure that you have the sounds.

The sounds written *s*, *dz*, and *ts* are somewhat like our English *s* and the *ts* in *cats*. But with the *dz* there is no puff of breath following the sound, and with the *ts* there is a great deal of breath following it. This is the same difference that you noticed between Chinese *p* and *b*, compared with English *p*. Try to imitate the Guide with special care to this difference in breath.

**Record 1A, after seventh spiral.**

Practice 8.

*'*sày* 'to compete'
*'*dzày* 'again'
'*tsày* 'food other than rice'

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *'*săn* | 'umbrella' | *'*dzăn* | 'to save, hoard' | *'*tsăn* | 'pitiful' |
| *'*swèy* | 'year of age' | *'*dzwèy* | 'most' | *'*tswèy* | 'brittle' |
| *'*săw* | 'to sweep' | *'*dzăw* | 'early' | *'*tsăw* | 'grass' |

The sound written *sh* before *y* or *i* is something like our English *s* and something like our *sh*; the tongue is held very far forward in the mouth so that the tip of the tongue touches the edges of the lower teeth. The *j* and *ch*, before *y* or *i*, are pronounced in this same position, but they are more like our *ch* in *cheat*. As with *dz* and *ts*, however, the *j* is pronounced without any puff of breath, and the *ch* with plenty of breath.

**Record 1A, after eighth spiral.**

Practice 9.

'*shyān* 'first, earlier'
*'*jyān* 'sharp, sharp tip'
*'*chyān* 'thousand'

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *'*shyăng* | 'to think' | *'*Jyăng* | (family name) | *'*chyăng* | 'to rob' |
| *'*shĭ* | 'to wash' | *'*jĭ* | 'how many' | *'*chĭ* | 'rise, start' |
| *'*shīn* | 'new' | *'*jīn* | 'gold' | *'*chīn* | 'kiss' |

When the letters *sh*, *j*, and *ch* are not followed by *y* or *i*, they represent quite different sounds. Instead of pushing the tongue forward you pull it back. The nearest English sounds are those at the beginning of the words *shrew*, *drew*, and *true* (represented by *shr*, *dr*, and *tr* in written English), but there is less *r*-sound in the Chinese consonants. Once again, of course, the one written *j* has no puff of breath after it, and the one written *ch* has a lot of it.

**Record 1A, after ninth spiral.**

Practice 10.

*'*shĕw* 'hand'
*'*jĕw* 'forearm'
*'*chĕw* 'ugly'

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *'*sháw* | 'ladle' | *'*jáw* | 'to contact' | *'*cháw* | 'tide; damp' |
| '*shăw* | 'few' | *'*jăw* | 'to hunt for' | *'*chăw* | 'to annoy with noise' |

In the next practice the sounds are the same as those already drilled on, but you are given a chance to compare

28A

them in a different order. First you will hear and imitate the three hissing sounds, then the three sounds with no puff of breath after them, then the three with a strong puff of breath after them. Remember to make the *sh*, *j*, and *ch* very far forward in your mouth when a *y* or *i* comes next, and to pull your tongue way back when there is no *y* or *i*.

**Record 1A, after tenth spiral.**

PRACTICE 11.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| '*sān* | 'three' | *'*shān* | 'mountain' | '*shyān* | 'first, earlier' |
| '*dzěw* | 'walk, go' | *'*jěw* | 'forearm' | '*jyěw* | 'wine, liquor' |
| *'*tsā* | 'to wipe' | *'*chā* | 'to use a fork' | *'*chyā* | 'to pinch' |

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES. (Group Work.) If you are uncertain about any of the points of pronunciation which have been discussed and practiced, ask your Guide to repeat the words and phrases you are having trouble with, and try to correct your pronunciation. When you and he are satisfied go through the first group of Basic Sentences of this Unit two or three more times, first in unison, then taking turns around the group imitating what is heard. When it is your turn to repeat the Chinese, speak up so that everyone can hear you clearly; when the others are repeating, keep quiet, but listen carefully. See if you think the other fellow's pronunciation is good, and try to fix in your mind the sound and the meaning of the Chinese you are hearing. *During this practice, don't say any Chinese expression except when you have just heard the Guide say it.*

§4. CHECK YOURSELF. Did you get the differences between *dz* and *ts*, *j* and *ch*, *s*, *sh*, and *shy*, and so on?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even if it seemed different from that shown in the book?

Are you keeping in mind the meaning of each word and phrase of the Basic Sentences as you say the Chinese? If you do so you will find that you have much of the list memorized before you sit down to study it.

Are you speaking loudly and clearly so that the Guide and the other members of the group can hear you?

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

§1. REVIEW THE BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE ENGLISH. (Individual Study.) Work separately and quietly so as not to disturb the other members of the group. Turn back to the Basic Sentences (Group I) in Section A and cover the English. Read the Chinese to yourself and see how quickly you can call to mind the meaning of each expression. Put a check mark by those with which you have trouble, and go on through to the end before you look at the English to find out what the meanings are. Try the hard ones again before checking with the English. Then go through again, skipping about so that you come to them in a different order. Try to reach the point of recognizing the meaning of every Chinese expression instantly.

§2. Word Study. (Individual Study.) Still working separately, read the following carefully to yourself.

Point 1. Nouns and Numbers. Most nouns, like *rén* 'person, people' '*dūng·shi* 'thing, things', *ywè* 'month, months', *rèw* 'meat', do not indicate, in themselves, whether you are speaking of one, or of more than one, of the things concerned. Thus, a sentence like '*Rén dzày-'jè·li.* may mean 'Men are here', or 'A man is here'. Frequently it does not matter whether one is talking about one or more of something; only the particular nature of the thing counts, not the quantity. At other times, the situation in which the sentence is uttered makes it clear what quantity is concerned, and so one doesn't have to waste words giving information that the listener can get without the words. But there are, of course, many times when it is necessary to tell how many or how much of something you are talking about.

Since in Chinese this cannot be done by changing the form of the word itself, as we do in English *man*, *men*, another device is used. A word like *nà* 'that', *jè* 'this', *nǎ* 'which', *jǐ* 'a few' (or 'how many?'), or one of the numerals *yī* 'one', *lyǎng* 'a couple', and so on, is put before the noun. Thus:

| | |
|---|---|
| *rén* | 'person, people' |
| '*nà·ge-rén* | 'that man.' |
| '*jè·ge-rén* | 'this man' |
| '*nǎ·ge-rén* | 'which person?' |
| '*yí·ge-rén* | 'one man' or 'a man' |
| '*lyǎng·ge-rén* | 'two men' |
| '*jǐ·ge-rén* | 'a few men' or 'how many men?' |

Point 2. Measures. Notice the syllable ·*ge* in the above examples. When using a number or a word like *nà*, *jè*, *nǎ*, *jǐ* before a noun, it is necessary to insert either this syllable ·*ge*, or another of a set of such syllables, after the first word and before the noun. Since these syllables make it possible to measure quantities of things named by nouns, they are called *measures*.

We have similar words in English: *a loaf of bread, a pound of butter, a sheet of paper, a head of cattle, thirty acres of land, two packs of cigarettes.* In these expressions, *loaf*, *pound*, *sheet*, *head*, *acre*, and *pack* function just like Chinese measures.

Some measures, like ·*ge*, have no definite meaning, but are used between a number and a noun when no other measure is appropriate. Others, on the other hand, have special meanings of their own. Thus, to say 'one bowl', you say '*yí·ge-wǎn*, with the measure ·*ge* and the noun *wǎn*; but to say 'one bowl of rice', you say *yì·wǎn-'fàn*, using *wǎn* 'bowl' as a measure of quantity for *fàn* 'rice'. Or, again, '*sān·ge-ywè* is 'three months', but '*sān·ywè* is 'the third month of the year'—'March'. The word *ywè* is used as a noun meaning 'month', and as a measure meaning 'month-of-the-year'.

Some combinations of measure and noun have special meanings. Thus *kwày* is a measure used with nouns that name things that come in hunks or odd-shaped pieces; you can say, for example, *yí·kwày-'rèw* 'one hunk of meat'. But with the noun *chyán* 'money', *kwày* has the special meaning of 'a dollar' (either a Chinese dollar, worth about five cents of American money at the present rate of exchange, or an American dollar). *'Yí·ge-chyán* may also have the specialized meaning of 'one cash', a cash being an old unit of exchange in China. But *'jè·ge-chyán* may simply mean 'this money'.

When the situation makes it clear what is being talked about, measures are frequently used without nouns. Thus to the question *Yàw-chr̄-'jǐ·wǎn-fàn?* 'How many bowls of rice are you going to eat?' the answer could be merely *'sān·wǎn* 'three bowls'.

You will be a bit disturbed at first at the number of different measures you have to learn. Later it will be easier, not only because you will be more used to the idea, but because it is the most common nouns, the ones that are presented first, that are most touchy about the measure which must be used with them. 'One man', 'one road', 'one horse', 'one cow', 'one pencil', 'one door', and 'one house', for example, all require different measures. Rarer nouns are easier, because with them the measure is usually just *·ge*.

POINT 3. *Yī*. This word undergoes the same changes of tone that *bū* 'not' does. That is, it is *yī*, with first tone, when alone; *yí*, with second tone, before a fourth tone syllable (ˋ); and *yì*, with fourth tone, before a first, second, or third-tone syllable (¯, ˊ, ˇ). For example:

| | |
|---|---|
| *'yí·kwày-chyán* | 'one dollar' |
| *'yì·fēn-chyán* | 'one cent' |
| *'yì·máw-chyán* | 'one dime' |
| *yì·wǎn-'fàn* | 'one bowl of rice' |

When *·ge* is added the result is *'yí·ge* 'one', because *·ge*, though usually toneless, has basically the fourth tone (*gè*).

POINT 4. *Èr* AND *lyǎng*. In speaking of *just two* (not twelve or twenty-two or a hundred and two) of anything, the number *lyǎng* 'a couple' is almost always used. A few measures, such as *ywè* 'month of the year', require *èr* for 'two' rather than *lyǎng*. A few other measures can be used with either *èr* or *lyǎng*. In larger numbers that have 2 as the last digit the form is always *èr*.

POINT 5. NUMBERS ABOVE TEN. The forms for 'eleven', 'twelve', and so on up to 'nineteen', are formed simply by saying 'ten-one', 'ten-two', and so on. 'Twenty' is 'two-ten', 'thirty' is 'three-ten', and so on. 'Twenty-one' is 'two-ten-one', 'thirty-four' is 'three-ten-four', and so on.

Forms like 'three or four' are made simply by omitting the 'or': *'sān-sz̀*.

The word *jǐ* 'a few' or 'how many?' (expecting a small answer), can be used just like two, three, four, and so on in these numerals:

| | |
|---|---|
| *shŕ-'jǐ* | 'ten and a few more', 'in the teens', 'ten and how many more?' |
| *èr·shr-'jǐ* | 'twenty-odd' |

POINT 6. *Fàn* AND *Tsày*. In a Chinese meal there are two chief types of food. One, the equivalent to our bread or potatoes, the 'backbone' of the meal, is plain boiled rice in the southern parts of China; the northerners prefer bread or noodles. In either case, the basic meaning of *fàn* is that type of food. (There are, of course, special words by which you

can distinguish between rice *fàn* and wheat *fàn* in its different forms.) All the other dishes, fancy or plain, are termed *tsày*: *yí·ge-'tsày* 'one type of dish other than rice', *yì·wǎn-'tsày* 'one bowl of some food other than rice'. Here, too, of course, there are special terms for the hundreds of different kinds of *tsày*.

§3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY? (Individual Study.) At the beginning of each of the following groups of Chinese sentences or words is a sentence or so of English which will tell you what to do, or serve as a clue in choosing between the Chinese forms given. Be sure that you know the meaning of all the Chinese forms; refer back to the Basic Sentences or the Word Study whenever necessary, but try hard first. Practice all the Chinese to yourself:

1. The even numbers up to ten are:
   a. *'Èr, 'sž, 'wǔ, 'chī, 'shŕ.*
   b. *'Èr, 'sž, 'lyèw, 'bā, 'shŕ.*
   c. *'Èr, 'sān, 'lyèw, 'jyěw, 'shŕ.*
2. The odd numbers smaller than ten are:
   a. *'Yī, 'sān, 'wǔ, 'chī, 'jyěw.*
   b. *'Yī, 'sān, 'sž, 'lyèw, 'jyěw.*
   c. *'Yī, 'sān, 'wǔ, 'bā, 'jyěw.*

3. On the left are given four pairs of numbers. The sum of each pair is given on the right, but not necessarily opposite the pair which adds up to give it. Indicate with a thin line which total goes with which pair, and be ready to read the numbers off in the correct order.

   a. *Shŕ-'sān, èr·shr-'wǔ*     *'jyěw·shŕ*
   b. *Sž·shr-'sž, 'wǔ·shŕ*     *sān·shr-'bā*
   c. *Jyěw·shr-'yī, chī*     *jyěw·shr-'bā*
   d. *'Chī·shŕ, 'èr·shŕ*     *jyěw·shr-'sž*

4. How many hours are there in a day?
   a. *Èr·shr-'sž.*
   b. *Shŕ-'èr.*
   c. *Èr·shr-'wǔ.*
5. How many months are there in a year?
   a. *Shŕ-'sān·ge-ywè.*
   b. *Shŕ-'èr·ge-ywè.*
   c. *Shŕ-'yí·ge-ywè.*
6. How many days are there in *'lyèw·ywè*?
   a. *Shŕ-'sān.*
   b. *'Sān·shŕ.*
   c. *Sān·shr-'yī.*

7. Your lunch-bill comes to a dollar and seventy-two cents, and you pay with a five. How much change should you receive?

   a. *'Sž·kwày-chyán.*
   b. *'Sž·kway-'yì·maw-'bā·fen-chyan.*
   c. *'Sž·kway-'bā·maw-'yì·fen-chyan.*
   d. *'Sān·kway-'èr·maw-'bā·fen-chyan.*

8. 'I was here in April':
   a. *Wǒ-'sž·ywè dzày-'jè·li.*
   b. *Wǒ-dzày-'jè·li 'sž·ge-ywè.*

9. You ask 'Is that bowl of rice good to eat?'.
   a. *'Nà·wǎn-fàn hǎw-'chr̄-ma?*
   b. *'Jè·wǎn-tsày 'hǎw-bu·hǎw-'chr̄?*
   c. *'Nǎ·wǎn-fàn hǎw-'chr̄?*

10. 'June, July, August' is:
   a. *'Wǔ·ywè, 'lyèw·ywè, 'chī·ywè.*
   b. *'Lyèw·ge-ywè, 'chī·ge-ywè, 'bā·ge-ywè.*
   c. *'Lyèw·ywè, 'chī·ywè, 'bā·ywè.*

11. You ask 'which food is good to eat?':
   a. *'Nà·ge-fàn hǎw-'chr̄-ma?*
   b. *'Nà·ge-fàn 'bú·shr̀-hǎw-'chr̄-ma?*
   c. *'Nà·ge-fàn 'hǎw-bu·hǎw-'chr̄?*
   d. *'Nǎ·ge-fàn hǎw-'chr̄?*

12. 'How much food do three men eat?':
   a. *'Sān·ge-rén chr̄-dwō·shaw-'rèw?*
   b. *'Sān·ge-rén chr̄-'fàn-ma?*
   c. *'Sān·ge-rén chr̄-'jr̆·wǎn-fàn?*

13. 'That's wrong!':
   a. *Bù-'dǔng.*
   b. *'Bú·shr̀.*
   c. *Bú-'dwèy.*

14. Which of these expressions refer to sums larger than ten dollars, smaller than twenty?
   a. *'Shŕ-jr̆·kwày-chyan.*
   b. *'Jr̆·kwày-chyan.*
   c. *Shŕ-'yí·kwày-'bā·maw-'chī·fen-chyan.*
   d. *Shŕ-'wǔ·kwày-jr̆·maw-chyan.*
   e. *'Èr·shr-kwày-chyán.*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY? (Group Work.) Turn to the What Would You Say? The Leader will read the English statement and will ask you to give orally one of the sentences that you think satisfies what is asked, and to tell why you think so. You must know what all the other sentences mean too, and if others apply, say them. The Leader and the group will discuss the choices made and the reasons for the rejection of some of the possibilities. Then he will ask another student to give the sentence for the next English situation, and so on.

§5. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE. (Individual Study) Working individually check once more your knowledge of the first group of Basic Sentences by covering the Chinese. Try to recall each Chinese expression as you read the English equivalents. Check those you can't get right away, and go back to them after finishing the group. Look at the Chinese only if absolutely necessary. Then skip around through the sentences to be sure you can still get the Chinese when you come to the English in a different order.

## SECTION C: BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the following Basic Sentences just as you did in Section A. The Guide or records will give each Chinese expression twice, and you will repeat after him in unison each time. Speak up and imitate as closely as you can.

## §1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP II). (Group Work.)

### TIME

**Record 5A, after spiral**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| time | *'shŕ·hew* |
| what time? | *'shém·me-shŕ·hew* |
| When do you eat? | *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew chr̄-'fàn?* |
| right now | *shyàn·'dzày* |
| Not right now. | *Shyàn·'dzày bù-'chr̄.* |
| to wait | *'dĕng* |
| Wait a bit. | *'Dĕng-yi·dĕng.* |
| What time is it right now? | *Shyàn·'dzày shr̀-'shém·me-shŕ·hew?* |
| *or* | *Shyàn·'dzày 'shém·me-shŕ·hew?* |
| clock | *'jūng* |
| a dot, bit, *or* mark | *'dyăn* |
| how many marks of the clock? | *'jĭ·dyăn-jūng* |
| What time is it? | *Shyàn·'dzày 'jĭ·dyăn-jūng?* |
| Two o'clock. | *'Lyáng·dyăn-jung.* |
| train | *hwŏ-'chē* |
| to leave *or* start | *'kāy* |
| When does the train leave? | *Hwŏ-'chē 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'kāy?* |
| quarter of an hour | *'kè* |
| At three-fifteen. | *'Sān·dyăn-yí·'kè.* |
| Not at three-fifteen. | *·Bú·shr̀-'sān·dyăn-yí·'kè.* |
| At three-forty-five. | *Shr̀-'sān·dyăn-'sān·kè.* |
| movies | *dyàn·'yĭng* |
| movie-theater | *dyàn·yĭng·'ywàn* |
| Where is the movie-theater? | *Dyàn·yĭng·'ywàn dzày-'nă·li?* |
| On the right. | *Dzày-'yèw·byan.* |
| streetcar | *dyàn-'chē* |
| streetcar stop | *dyàn-chē-'jàn* |
| The streetcar stop is on the left. | *Dyàn-chē-'jàn dzày-'dzwŏ·byan.* |
| **Record 5B, beginning.** | |
| When do the movies start? | *Dyàn·'yĭng 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'kāy?* |
| half | *'bàn* |
| Is it at four-thirty? | *'Shr̀-bu·shr̀ sz̀·dyăn-'bàn?* |
| a minute | *'fēn* |
| No, at four-forty. | *'Bú·shr̀, shr̀-'sz̀·dyăn-'sz̀·shr·fēn.* |
| When does the streetcar leave? | *Dyàn-'chē 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'kāy?* |
| At five to six. | *'Wŭ·dyăn-'wŭ·shr-'wŭ·fēn.* |
| day | *'tyān* |
| In one day there are twenty-four hours. | *Yì·'tyān yĕw-èr·shr-'sz̀·dyăn-jūng.* |
| In one hour there are sixty minutes. | *Yì·dyăn-'jūng yĕw-'lyèw·shr·fēn.* |
| See you later! | *'Dĕng·yi·dĕng 'jyàn.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. There are three vowel-sounds in Chinese which are not very much like anything found in English, and are therefore hard to get.

One of the difficult vowels is written with the letter *r*. If you are from the northern or western part of the United States (not from the east coast or the South), you probably have a sound very much like the Chinese *r* in such words as *her*, *hurt*, *burr*, *cur*, *were*. This sound occurs in Chinese as a whole syllable in itself, or preceded by *sh*, *j*, or *ch*, but nowhere else. For all these syllables, you pull your tongue well back in your mouth, and up towards the roof of the mouth. Also, your teeth should be together, not far apart as when you say 'ah-h-h' for the doctor.

**Record 1A, after eleventh spiral.**

PRACTICE 12.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'*r̀* | 'day, sun' |
| '*shr̀* | 'is' |
| '*jŕ* | 'straight' |
| '*chr̄* | 'eat' |

The second difficult vowel-sound sounds something like the *oo* of *book*, said with your lips pulled back tight instead of rounded into an O. Once again your teeth are close together. This sound is written with a *z*, and occurs in only three kinds of syllables:

**Record 1A, after twelfth spiral.**

PRACTICE 13.

| | |
|---|---|
| '*sz̀* | 'four' |
| *'*dz̀* | 'word' |
| *'*tsz̀* | 'thorn' |

The last of the three sounds is represented by the letters *yu* or *ywu*. It is something like the English *ee* of *feet*, pronounced with the lips rounded into an O as though you were saying the *oo* of *moon*. That is, it is like *ee* and *oo* pronounced at the same time. Your teeth should be close together.

**Record 1A, after thirteenth spiral.**

PRACTICE 14.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'*ywǔ* | 'rain' |
| *'*jywù* | 'sentence' |
| *'*chywù* | 'go' |
| *'*shywù* | 'preface' |
| *'*nywǔ* | 'female (of humans)' |
| *'*lywù* | 'green' |

This vowel-sound occurs only alone or after *j*, *ch*, *sh*, *n*, and *l*.

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES. (Group Work.) Go through the Basic Sentences (Group II) several more times, at first repeating in unison after the Guide as you did the first time, after that taking turns around the class repeating after him until everyone has had a chance. Think of the meaning as you hear and say each word or as the other members of the group speak. Note especially the vowels-sounds you have been practicing.

## SECTION D: WORD STUDY

§1. Review of Basic Sentences Covering the English. (Individual Study.) First make sure that you know the material of the Basic Sentences (Group II) by covering the English and seeing if you can remember the Chinese. Check the ones that give you trouble and go back to these after you finish the list. Then skip around so that you take them in a different order. Finally go on to the Word Study, reading it carefully to yourself.

§2. Word Study. (Individual Study.)

Point 1. Compound Words. Here are the 'breakdowns' of some more of the nouns you have had:

*yáng·'hwǒ* 'foreign fire'. *Yáng* is not used as an independent word.

*dyàn·'yǐng* 'electric shadow'; *yǐng* in the meaning 'shadow' is not used as an independent word, though there is an independent word *yǐng* which means the portrait made of a person when he dies.

*dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn* 'electric shadow court'; *ywàn* 'court, courtyard, public building' is not used alone; the independent word for 'garden' or 'court' is *'ywàn·dz*.

*dyàn-'chē* 'electric cart'.

*dyàn-chē-'jàn* 'electric-cart-stop'

*fàn-'wǎn* 'rice bowl'.

*chá-'wǎn* 'tea bowl, tea-cup'.

Point 2. *Tyān*. This word is a measure of time. It is a measure because you use it immediately after a number: *yì·'tyān* 'one day', *lyǎng·'tyān* 'two days'. Words which name periods of time, or distances, weights, areas, and the like, are usually, though not always, measures. *Yì·'tyān* also means 'a whole day' or 'all day'; *'yěw-yì·tyān* means 'there was a day', therefore 'once upon a time'.

§3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study.) Still working by yourself, read the following and treat the Chinese sentences in each group in the way suggested by the English sentence which comes first. Be sure you know what all the Chinese sentences mean. Practice them aloud to yourself.

1. You ask someone what time it is:
   a. *Shyàn·'dzày 'jǐ·dyǎn-jūng?*
   b. *Shyàn·'dzày 'lyǎng·dyǎn-jūng-ma?*
   c. *Shyàn·'dzày 'shém·me-shŕ·hew?*
   d. *Shyàn·'dzày shr̀-'jǐ·dyǎn-jūng?*
2. He says it is quarter to four:
   a. *'Sz̀·dyǎn-yí·'kè.*
   b. *'Sz̀·dyǎn-sān·'kè.*
   c. *'Sān·dyǎn-sān·'kè.*
3. You ask when the train starts:
   a. *Dyàn-chē-'jàn dzày-'nǎ·li?*
   b. *Hwǒ-chē-'jàn dzày-'nǎ·li?*
   c. *Hwǒ-'chē 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'kāy?*
   d. *Hwǒ-'chē dzày-'nǎ·li?*
   e. *Hwǒ-'chē dzày-'nà·li-ma?*
4. He says nine thirty:
   a. *Bā·dyǎn-'bàn.*
   b. *Jyěw·dyǎn-'bàn.*
   c. *Shŕ·dyǎn-'bàn.*

5. 'Goodbye' is:
   - a. *Shyàn·'dzày.*
   - b. *Dzày-'jyàn.*

6. 'Wait a minute!':
   - a. *'Děng-yi·děng.*
   - b. *'Dǔng-bu·dǔng?*

7. 'What did you say?':
   - a. *Nǐ-shwō-'shém·me?*
   - b. *Nǐ-yàw-'shém·me?*

8. 'Won't you have some tea?':
   - a. *Nǐ-yàw-'chá-ma?*
   - b. *Chǐng hē-'chá.*
   - c. *Nǐ-'yàw-bu·yàw 'chá?*

9. 'One clock' is:
   - a. *'Yì·dyǎn-jūng.*
   - b. *'Yí·kè-jūng.*
   - c. *Yí·ge-'jūng.*

10. On the left are some measures, on the right are some nouns. Indicate by a line connecting one or more on the left with each one on the right which measures are used with which nouns. Be sure you know the meaning of each combination:

a. *Yí·ge*
b. *Lyǎng·kè*
c. *Sān·fēn*
d. *Sz̀·kwày*
e. *Wǔ·máw*
f. *Lyèw·dyǎn*
g. *Chī·ywè*

*jūng*
*rén*
*ywè*
*rèw*
*fàn*
*chyán*

§4. Wʜᴀᴛ Dɪᴅ Yᴏᴜ Sᴀʏ? (Group Work.) The Leader will read the English statement at the beginning of the What Would You Say?, and will ask someone to give orally the Chinese sentence that he has selected. Talk over the meanings of all the possibilities and discuss why some are better choices than others. If you have a Guide, note especially any corrections he makes of your pronunciation or of that of the other members of the group.

§5. Rᴇᴠɪᴇᴡ ᴏғ Bᴀsɪᴄ Sᴇɴᴛᴇɴᴄᴇs Cᴏᴠᴇʀɪɴɢ ᴛʜᴇ Cʜɪɴᴇsᴇ. (Individual Study.) Working by yourself, cover the Chinese of the Second Group of Basic Sentences and see how many expressions you can say while looking at the English. Refer to the Chinese only after you have been through the whole list. Try again the ones you marked because you had difficulty with them. If two of you can work together asking each other the expressions in turn, you will have a still better check on what you have learned.

## SECTION E: LISTENING IN

§1. Wᴏʀᴅ Sᴛᴜᴅʏ Cʜᴇᴄᴋ-Uᴘ. (Group Work.) The Leader will ask various students to give the Chinese for the English equivalents in the two Word Studies, and will ask you to explain the points discussed. For example, he will ask someone to tell what a measure is, and give examples. Remember, once again, that you need not know *why* anything is said the way it is—no one knows that; the *how* is enough.

§2. Lɪsᴛᴇɴɪɴɢ Iɴ. (Group Work.) Go through the following conversations with the group. Keep your books closed the first time through, and see how much you can understand as the Guide or record speaks. Nothing new occurs here. If you are sure of the Basic Sentences and the Word Study, you should have little trouble.

CONVERSATION 1. TWO AMERICANS, MR. ROSS AND MR. WARD, GO INTO A RESTAURANT. MR. ROSS KNOWS SOME CHINESE.

**Record 5B, after spiral.**

Waiter: *Chr̄-shém·me-'tsày?*
Ross: *'Yěw-shém·me?*
Waiter: *'Tsày hěn-'dwō.*
Ross: *Yàw-'lyáng·wǎn-fàn, sz̀·ge-'tsày.*
*Yěw-'háw-jyěw-ma?*
Waiter: *'Yěw.*

CONVERSATION 2. AS THEY START TO EAT.

Ross: *'Fàn 'dwō, 'tsày 'shǎw.*
*'Dzày-yàw-lyǎng·ge-'tsày.*
Waiter: *'Yàw-bu·yàw 'rèw?*
Ross: *Jè·wǎn-'rèw hén-hǎw-'chr̄.*
*'Dzày-yàw-yì·wǎn.*
Waiter: *Hē-bu·hē 'chá?*
Ross: *'Wǒ 'hē, 'tā bù-'hē.*

CONVERSATION 3. AFTER EATING.

Ross: *Yěw-'yān-ma?*
Waiter: *'Dwèy-bu·chǐ, 'méy·yěw-yān.*
Ross: *'Fàn shr̀-'dwō·shaw-chyan?*
Waiter: *Lyáng·wǎn-'fàn shr̀-'lyǎng·máw-chyan.*
*Yí·ge-'tsày 'lyèw·maw-chyan.*
*'Chī·ge-tsày shr̀ 'sz̀·kwày-'èr·maw-chyan.*
*'Fàn, 'tsày, yí·'gùng shr̀-'sz̀ kwày-'sz̀·maw-chyan.*
Ross: *'Jè·ge-chyán 'dwèy-bu·dwèy?*
Waiter: *'Dwèy·le.*
*'Shyè·shye.*

CONVERSATION 4. ROSS ASKS FOR INFORMATION.

Ross: *Hwǒ-chē-'jàn dzày-'nǎ·li?*
Waiter: *Yì·'jŕ dzěw.*
*Fàn·'dyàn dzày-'dzwǒ·byan, hwǒ-chē-'jàn dzày-'yèw·byan.*
Ross: *Hwǒ-'chē 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'kāy?*
*'Shr̀-bu·shr̀ lyáng·dyǎn-'bàn?*
Waiter: *'Bú·shr̀.*
*Shr̀-lyáng·dyǎn-sān·'kè.*
Ross: *Shyàn·'dzày 'jǐ·dyǎn-jūng?*
Waiter: *Shyàn·'dzày 'lyáng·dyǎn 'shŕ·fēn.*
Ross: *'Shyè·shye. Dzày-'jyàn.*
Waiter: *Dzày-'jyàn.*

Open your books now, and go through these conversations again, following in your books and repeating after the Guide or record. Then discuss any points which you don't understand. Finally assign parts so that each member of the group will have a chance to repeat after the Guide or record all alone. Go through enough times that every student has a chance at this. You can best tell how your pronunciation is coming when you are the only one speaking. Do your best:

speak loudly and clearly, trying to imitate as exactly as you can.

## SECTION F: CONVERSATION

§1. Vocabulary Check-Up. (Group Work.) The Leader will give you a final vocabulary check-up on all the material of this Unit by asking you 'How do you say such-and-such in Chinese?', asking about various words and expressions that are given in this Unit and in the first. Whoever answers his first question then asks one of someone else, and so on until everyone has had several chances to ask and to answer. Try to cover all the material of the Unit, but do not take the words and expressions in any regular order.

§2. Carrying on Conversation. (Group Work.) Act out the conversations from Section E, different members of the group taking the parts and trying to act and speak as naturally as possible. In Section E you, tested your understanding of the language; now test your speaking-ability. Do not stick absolutely to the models given in Section E; introduce any variations that strike your fancy. Try to ask questions as well as answering them so that you keep the conversation going. Do as well as you can. You can get a good deal of variation with the material you have now learned; but remember that fluency with very simple phrases is more important than making up new phrases and having to hem and haw while you think of them.

# UNIT III

# MEETING PEOPLE: LOCATING THINGS

## SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

You will not find this Unit any more difficult than the first two—in fact, with the material of the first two Units mastered, this should be easier than they were. But this Unit is a little longer, and it deals with subjects of great importance. So take your time to it. Be especially sure to take enough time on Sections C and D to master them completely.

Start, as usual, by going through the following Basic Sentences just as you went through those in the first two Units, repeating after the Guide or records. Be sure to put plenty of life into your repetitions.

### §1. Basic Sentences (Group I). (Group Work.)

### Meeting People

**Record 6A, beginning.**

| English Equivalents | Aids to Listening |
|---|---|
| May I ask your name? | *Gwèy-'shìng?* |
| humble family-name | *'bì·shìng* |
| My name is Wáng. | *'Bì·shìng 'Wáng.* |
| His name is Jāng. | *'Tā-shìng 'Jāng.* |
| Pleased to meet you. | *Jyéw-'yǎng.* |
| for the sake of | *'gěy* |
| you (more than one person) | *'nǐ·men* |
| to introduce | *'jyè·shàw* |
| I'll introduce you. | *Wó-'géy-nǐ·men 'jyè·shaw.* |
| this honorable person | *'jè·wèy* |
| This is Mr. Hú. | *'Jè·wèy shr̀-'Hú-shyān·sheng.* |
| What country are you from? | *Gwèy·'gwó?* |
| humble country | *'bì·gwó* |
| the United States | *'Měy·gwo* |
| I'm from the United States. | *'Bì·gwó shr̀-'Měy·gwo.* |
| we | *'wǒ·men* |
| soldier | *'bīng* |
| We're American soldiers. | *Wǒ·men shr̀-'Měy·gwo-'bīng.* |
| China | *'Jūng·gwo* |
| person *or* people | *'rén* |
| Are you Chinese? | *Nǐ·men 'shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'Jūng·gwo-rén?* |
| speak | *'shwō* |
| England | *'Yīng·gwo* |
| speech *or* language | *'hwà* |

| | |
|---|---|
| We speak English. | *'Wǒ·men shwō 'Yīng·gwo-hwà.* |
| they | *'tā·men* |
| They're Englishmen. | *'Tā·men shr̀-'Yīng·gwo-rén.* |
| to know how to | *'hwèy* |
| Do you speak English? | *Nǐ·men-'hwèy-shwō Yīng·gwo-'hwà-ma?* |
| No. | *Bú-'hwèy.* |
| how | *'dzěm·me* |
| How do you say *cigarette* in Chinese? | *Jūng·gwo-'hwà cigarette 'dzěm·me-shwō?* |
| give | *'gěy* |
| a stick-like object | *'gēn* |
| Please give him a cigarette. | *Chíng 'gěy-tā yì·gēn-'yān.* |
| That cigarette is his. | *'Nà·gēn-yān shr̀-'tā·de.* |
| This is yours. | *'Jè·gēn shr̀-'nǐ·de.* |
| This is my cigarette. | *'Jè shr̀-'wǒ·de-yān.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. (Group Work.) In Section C of the second Unit you practiced the only difficult vowel-sounds of Chinese. Here you are given a chance to practice some of the other vowels. None of them are hard at all, but it is important to learn well which letters stand for which sounds in the Aids to Listening.

In the combination *yan*, the letter *a* stands for a sound about like the English *a* of *cat*. In the combination *ywan* it stands for a sound a little nearer the *a* of *father*, and in every other combination it represents a sound almost exactly like the *a* of *father*. Do not make the vowel of *yan* like the *e* of English *met*; it may sometimes sound a little like that to you, but it isn't. Listen very carefully and you will see the difference.

**Record 1B, beginning.**

PRACTICE 15.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'yān* | 'cigarette' |
| **myàn·'bāw* | 'bread' |
| *'shyān·sheng* | 'Mr.' |
| *dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn* | 'movie theater' |
| *'tā* | 'he, she' |
| *'hwà* | 'speech' |
| *'tày·tay* | 'Mrs.' |
| *'màn·yi·dyan* | 'a little slower' |

In English the difference between the vowel of *cat* and that of *father* helps us to keep words apart. Thus some people say the word *cot* with the vowel of *father*, and for these people the only difference between the words *cat* and *cot* is the vowel sound. But in Chinese this same difference is never used to distinguish two words: the sound like the *a* of *cat* occurs *only* after *y* and before *n*, and the sound like the *a* of *father* *never* occurs there. So it is not necessary to have two different letters in order to indicate the pronunciation accurately. The other letters in the syllable tell us quite definitely which way to pronounce the *a*.

The letter *e* stands for two different pronunciations in just the same way. At the end of a syllable, the combination *ye* sounds about like the English word *yeah*. The combination *ey* at the end of a syllable rhymes with the English *ey* of *they*. But *everywhere else* the letter *e* represents a sound about like the English *u* of *cup*. Listen carefully to the practice.

**Record 1B, after first spiral.**

PRACTICE 16.

| | |
|---|---|
| *ˈ*yě* | 'also' |
| ˈ*gěy* | 'give' |
| ˈ*Měy·gwo* | 'the United States' |
| ˈ*wèy* | 'honorable person' |
| ˈ*gwèy* | 'expensive, honorable' |
| *ˈ*gèw* | 'sufficient' |
| ˈ*rèw* | 'meat' |
| ˈ*yěw* | 'have' |
| ˈ*hē* | 'drink' |
| ˈ*chē* | 'cart' |
| ˈ*gēn* | 'with' |
| ˈ*jè* | 'this' |
| *ˈ*rè* | 'hot' |
| ˈ*rén* | 'person' |
| *ˈ*hwēn* | 'marriage contract' |

You will notice that the exact sound varies a little bit depending on what consonants are in the syllable. At the end of a syllable, *ew* sounds about like the English *ew* of *sew*, which we write in other English words with other letters—*no, dough, sow* (grain, not a pig). But this is just the influence of the final *w*; the vowel is really the same.

You will find the letter *o* written only after *w* at the end of a syllable. It would really be just as accurate to write *e* there, since *e* with any other pronunciation never occurs after *w*; but the sound strikes the ears of an English-speaking person as so different that the use of a different letter is helpful. The sound of *wo* is just about like the beginning of the English word *walk*, with the final *k*-sound left off. Be careful not to say either *wah*, with the *a*-sound of *father*, or *woe*.

**Record 1B, after second spiral.**

PRACTICE 17.

| | |
|---|---|
| ˈ*wǒ* | 'I' |
| *gwèy·ˈgwó* | 'honorable country' |
| *yáng·ˈhwǒ* | 'match' |
| *hwǒ-ˈchē* | 'train' |

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES. (Group Work.) If you are uncertain about any of the points of pronunciation which have been discussed, ask your Guide to repeat the words with which you are having trouble, or play the proper record again, and try to correct your pronunciation. Then go through the Basic Sentences of this Section two or three more times, first in unison, then taking turns around the group repeating after the Guide or record.

§4. Check Yourself. Did you get the different sounds of *a*, *e*, and *o*?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even if it seemed different from that shown in the book?

Are you keeping in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you say the Chinese? If you do so you will find that you have much of the list memorized before you sit down to study it.

Are you speaking loudly and clearly so that the Guide and the other members of the group can hear you?

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

§1. Review Basic Sentences Covering the English. (Individual Study.) Work separately and quietly so that you won't disturb other members of the group. Turn back to the Basic Sentences (Group I) in Section A and cover the English. Read the Chinese to yourself and see how quickly you can call to mind the meaning of each expression. Put a check mark by those with which you have trouble, and go on through to the end before you look at the English. Then go through again, skipping here and there so that you come to them in a different order.

§2. Word Study. (Individual Study.) Still working separately, read the following paragraphs carefully.

Point 1. Compound Words.

*gwèy-'shìng* 'honorable family-name'. *Gwèy* is 'honorable, expensive'; *shìng* is 'family name, surname'.

*gwèy·'gwó* 'honorable country'. *Gwó* is not used as a separate word.

*'bì·shìng* 'humble family-name'. *Bì* 'humble' is not used as a separate word.

*'bì·gwó* 'humble country'.

*'Jūng·gwo* 'middle country'. Because in earlier days China was thought by the Chinese to be at the center of the world, their country was called this. *Jūng* is not used as an independent word.

*Měy·gwo* '(A)me(rica) country'.

*'Yīng·gwo* 'Eng(land) country'. The first syllables of these words are selected simply because they sound like one of the important syllables in the English words.

*jyěw-'yǎng*. *Jyěw* means 'for a long time'; it is not used very often except in this expression, but you will see it again. *Yǎng*, means 'to look up'. So the combination means literally '(I have) for a long time looked up to (your name and reputation)'.

Point 2. Pronouns. Here are all the words that mean 'I', 'you', 'he', and so forth:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *wǒ* | *'wǒ·de* | *'wǒ·men* | *'wǒ·men·de* |
| *nǐ* | *'nǐ·de* | *'nǐ·men* | *'nǐ·men·de* |
| *tā* | *'tā·de* | *'tā·men* | *'tā·men·de* |

*Wǒ* is 'I, me my'; *nǐ* is 'you (one person), your'; *tā* is 'he, him, his, she, her'.

When speaking of *more than one person*, the forms with *men* are used. Thus '*wǒ·men* is 'we, us', '*nǐ·men* is 'you (more than one person)', and '*tā·men* is 'they, them'.

The forms with *de* added are the usual ones for 'my, mine', 'our, ours', 'your, yours', 'his, her, hers', and 'their, theirs'. But the shorter words, without *de*, are used under certain conditions with these meanings, as you will learn later.

In English the words *they* and *them* do not tell you whether men, women, or things, are involved. The situation in which the word *they* or *them* is used, however, makes it clear—if it matters at all. So the fact that in Chinese neither *tā* nor '*tā·men* tells you whether a male or a female or a thing is being talked about does not make any trouble.

Point 3. Polite Expressions for 'your' and 'my'. You may be a little surprised at first at the extent to which the common phrases used by Chinese in addressing each other seem to belittle the speaker and praise the person spoken to. Do not be misled by the literal translations of the crystallized forms of address, such as 'honorable family-name' for 'May I ask your name?', or 'humble country' for 'the country I come from'. These are ways of *talking*, not of *feeling* about things. The literal meanings aren't really felt, any more than when you say 'please' to someone he thinks you are begging him on bended knee. He simply knows that you are being polite, and the same holds for talking Chinese.

It *is* all right, however, to say *wǒ-shìng 'Wáng* 'I family-name Wáng' instead of '*bì·shìng 'Wáng* 'humble family-name Wáng'. But don't change the others around, or you will make unfortunate mistakes.

Point 4. Measures. Here are the measures which you have had so far, with some notes on their meanings and uses:

*·ge*. This is the most important measure of all. It is used with all nouns that refer to people, and with many other words. In a pinch you can use it with just about any noun and be understood, though it is better to use other measures for certain words. The meaning is simply 'individual, unit of': '*yí·ge-rén* 'one individual man', *lyǎng·ge-'bīng* 'two individual soldier', *nà·ge-'jūng* 'that individual clock', *sz̀·ge-'tsày* 'four unit-of food'—that is, 'four kinds of food'.

*wèy*. This counter is substituted for *·ge* when referring to persons and wishing to be especially polite: *sān·wèy-'bīng* 'three honorable soldiers'.

*dyǎn*. 'a speck, dot, bit, mark' of anything. *yì·dyǎn-'chá* 'a bit of tea'. With the noun *jūng* 'clock', the meaning is 'o'clock' or 'hour.'

*fēn*. 'a division'. With the noun *chyán* 'money' this means 'cent'; with *jūng* 'clock', or in expressions of time where this noun is understood, it means 'minute'.

*kè*. 'a carved mark'. With *jūng* 'clock' this means a quarter-hour.

*kwày*. 'a hunk, piece, clod'. With *chyán* 'money' the meaning is 'dollar'.

*máw*. With *chyán* 'money' the meaning is 'dime'.

*ywè*. Used as a measure, the meaning is 'month of the year'—January, February, and so on. As a *noun*, with the measure *·ge*, it means simply 'month'.

*tyān*. A measure of time meaning 'day'.

***gēn.*** ‘stick-like thing’. Used with certain nouns that name stick-like things: *yì·gēn-'yān* ‘one cigarette’, *lyǎng·gēn-yáng·'hwǒ* ‘two matches’.

***wǎn.*** As a measure, means ‘bowlful’; as noun, with the measure *·ge*, the meaning is ‘bowl’.

POINT 5. *Dzěm·me.* This word means ‘how’, ‘in what way’, ‘how is it that’. For example:

*Jūng·gwo-'hwà cigarette 'dzěm·me-shwō?* ‘How do you say *cigarette* in Chinese?’

*Tā-'dzěm·me bù-shwō-'hwà?* ‘How is it that he doesn’t speak?’

§3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY? (Individual Study.) After each English sentence there are several Chinese expressions. Sometimes the English sentence asks you a question about what the Chinese sentences say. Read aloud to yourself all the Chinese sentences and if necessary look back at the Basic Sentences and the Word Study to find out what they mean. Then decide which sentences satisfy the statement or the question in English.

1. You meet a stranger and ask him his name:
   a. *Gwèy-'shìng?*
   b. *Gwèy·'gwó?*
   c. *Bì·'shìng.*
2. ‘Please introduce us’ is:
   a. *Chǐng 'gěy-tā·men 'jyè·shàw.*
   b. *Gwèy-'shìng?*
   c. *'Tā-shìng 'shém·me?*
   d. *Chǐng 'gěy-wǒ·men 'jyè·shàw.*
3. Which of these sentences is true?
   a. *'Měy·gwo-rén shwō-'Yīng·gwo-hwà.*
   b. *'Jūng·gwo-rén shwō-'Měy·gwo-hwà.*
   c. *'Yīng·gwo-rén shwō-'Jūng·gwo-hwà.*
4. If you can’t talk Chinese much, you say:
   a. *Bú-'hwèy-shwō Yīng·gwo-'hwà.*
   b. *'Bù-shwō-Jūng·gwo-'hwà.*
   c. *Bú-'hwèy-shwō Jūng·gwo-'hwà.*
5. Which two of these sentences would be all right in pointing to something and asking what it is?
   a. *'Nà shr̀-'shém·me-dūng·shi?*
   b. *'Nà·ge-dūng·shi shr̀-'shém·me?*
   c. *Jūng·gwo-'hwà cigarette 'dzěm·me-shwō?*
6. To say you don’t understand Chinese you would say:
   a. *Bù-'dǔng Jūng·gwo-'hwà.*
   b. *Wǒ·men-bù-'dǔng Yīng·gwo-'hwà.*
   c. *Dǔng-'Jūng·gwo-hwà-ma?*
7. ‘Please give him a cigarette’:
   a. *Chíng-nǐ 'gěy-wǒ yì·gēn-'yān.*
   b. *Chíng 'gěy-tā·men yì·gēn-'yān.*
   c. *Chíng 'gěy-tā yì·gēn-'yān.*
8. ‘I don’t want a cigarette’:
   a. *Bú-'yàw-yān.*
   b. *Wǒ·men 'méy·yěw-yān.*
   c. *Wǒ-bú-'yàw 'tā·de-yān.*

9. It is dangerous to drink water in China unless it has first been boiled. Tea, of course, is always made with boiling water. For this reason, which of these would be a wise request to make?

a. *Wǒ-yàw-'chá hē.*
b. *Wǒ·men-yàw-'shwěy hē.*
c. *Chǐng 'géy-wǒ·men 'shwěy hē.*

10. 'This soldier's name is Lǐ.' (two ways)

a. *Jè·wèy-'bīng shř-'Lǐ-shyān·sheng.*
b. *Nà·wèy-'bīng shìng-'shém·me?*
c. *Tā-shř-'bīng. Tā-shìng 'Lǐ.*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY? (Group Work.) Turn to the What Would You Say?. The Leader will read an English statement and will ask you to give aloud your answer. Be ready to give the reason for your answer. With the group you will discuss the meaning of all the possibilities. Then the Leader will call on someone for the next statement.

§5. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE. (Individual Study.) Working individually check once more your knowledge of the first group of Basic Sentences of this Unit by covering the Chinese. Try to recall each Chinese expression as you read the English Equivalents. Check the ones you cannot get right away, and go back to them. Look at the Chinese only if absolutely necessary. Then skip around through the sentences to be sure you can get the Chinese when you come to the English in a different order.

## SECTION C: BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the following Basic Sentences just as you did with Section A. The Guide or the records will give each Chinese expression twice, and you will repeat it after him in unison each time. Speak up and imitate as closely as you can.

### §1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP II). (Group Work.)

### LOCATING THINGS

**Record 6B, beginning.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| who? | *'shwéy* |
| Who has some cigarettes? | *'Shwéy yěw-yān?* |
| also | *'yě* |
| You don't; I don't either; he has. | *'Nǐ 'méy·yěw, 'wó-yě-méy·yěw, 'tā-yěw.* |
| pack *or* package | *'bāw* |
| How many packs has he? | *Tā-yéw 'jǐ·bāw-yān?* |
| Three packs. | *'Sān·bāw-yān.* |
| How many cigarettes are there in one pack? | *Yì·'bāw-yān yěw-'dwō·shaw gēn?* |
| There are twenty in one pack. | *Yì·'bāw yěw-'èr·shr·gēn.* |
| table | *'jwō·dz* |
| top side of anything | *'shàng* |
| The cigarettes are on the table. | *'Yān dzày-'jwō·dz-shàng.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| There is no table here. | *'Jè·li 'méy·yĕw-jwŏ·dz.* |
| room | *'wū·dz* |
| inside of anything | *'lĭ* |
| There's a table inside the room. | *'Wū·dz-li yĕw-'jwŏ·dz.* |
| to, *or* to arrive | *'dàw* |
| come | *'láy* |
| Come over here! | *Dàw-'jè·li-láy.* |
| from | *'tsúng* |
| go | *'chywù* |
| go away from here | *tsúng-'jè·li 'chywù* |
| We're coming from the United States. | *Wŏ·men tsúng-'Mĕy·gwo-láy.* |
| Are you going to China? | *Dàw-'Jūng·gwo chywù-ma?* |
| to use as a means of transportation | *'dzwò* |
| Are you going by train? | *Dzwò-hwŏ-'chē 'dzĕw-ma?* |
| boat | *'chwán* |
| airplane | *fēy·'jī* |
| We're going by boat and plane, not by train. | *Dzwò-'chwán, dzwò-fēy·'jī, bú-dzwò-hwŏ-'chē.* |
| We come from the United States. | *Wŏ·men tsúng-Mĕy·gwo láy-de.* |
| When did you arrive? | *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'dàw-de?* |
| He doesn't come from the United States. | *'Tā 'bú·shr-tsúng-'Mĕy·gwo láy-de.* |
| leading | *'dày* |
| Please take me over there. | *Chĭng 'dày-wŏ dàw-'nà·li-chywu.** |
| with *or* and | *'gēn* |
| Please go over there with me. | *Chĭng 'gēn-wŏ dàw-'nà·li-chywu.* |

§2. Hints on Pronunciation. (Group Work.) In this section you finish up the Chinese vowels. You will remember that in Unit II, Section C, you were told about the pronunciation of the three vowels written *r*, *z*, and *ywu*. It was pointed out for each of these that the teeth are held close together, rather than far apart as when you say 'ah-h-h' for a doctor. There are two other vowel-sounds for which you keep the teeth close together, but they are very easy.

The first is the one written *i*. At the end of a syllable this is like the English *ee* of *feet*. In the groups *in* and *ing* it is more like the English *i* of *pit*: the groups sound about like the ends of the English words *sin* and *sing*.

**Record 1B, after third spiral.**

Practice 18.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'yī* | 'one' |
| *'chī* | 'seven' |
| *'nĭ* | 'you' |

---

* The first repetition of this sentence on the record is by mistake given with *wŏ·men* instead of *wŏ*. The accidental form, of course, means 'Please take *us* over there' instead of 'please take *me* over there'.

47

'*bì·gwó* 'humble country'
'*bīng* 'soldier'
'*Yīng·gwo* 'England'

Sometimes you will hear a little *y*-sound between the consonant at the beginning of a word and this vowel, as though you started with the consonant and then said *yee* instead of just *ee*. Imitate it when you hear it.

The second is the sound written with the letter *u*—when *not* preceded by *yw*. When final in a syllable, this is like the *oo* of *boo!*; when followed by *n* or *ng* it is more like the *oo* of *book*.

**Record 1B, after fourth spiral.**

PRACTICE 19.

'*bù* 'not'
'*wǔ* 'five'
'*dǔng* 'understand'
'*Jūng·gwo* 'China'

Here, also, you may sometimes hear a little *w*-sound between the consonant and the *u*, as though the initial consonant were followed by *woo* instead of by just *oo*. Imitate it when you hear it.

To fix in your mind the contrast between these two fairly easy vowels and the three other vowels made with the teeth close together, go back and practice them again too.

Take *ywu* first. Remember that it is pronounced like saying *ee* and *oo* at the same time.

**Record 1A, after thirteenth spiral.**

PRACTICE 14.

*'*ywǔ* 'rain'
*'*jywù* 'sentence'
'*chywù* 'go'
*'*shywù* 'preface'
*'*nywǔ* 'female (of humans)'
*'*lywù* 'green'

Then take *z*. Remember that it is pronounced like saying the *oo* of *book* with the lips spread back tight.

**Record 1A, after twelfth spiral.**

PRACTICE 13.

'*sż̀* 'four'
*'*dż̀* 'word'
*'*tsż̀* 'thorn'

Then take *r*. Remember that it is like your vowel in *her*, *cur*—if you come from the right part of the United States—but with a less clear *r*-sound to it.

**Record 1A, after eleventh spiral.**

PRACTICE 12.

*'*r̀* 'day, sun'
'*shr̀* 'is'
'*jŕ* 'straight'
'*chr̄* 'eat'

There are a few things in the way we all write English that may make a little trouble in learning to recognize Chinese words as they are written for you in the Aids to Listening. As you know very well by now, the sounds of different languages are never quite the same; so letters *have* to be used with different meanings. One source of trouble for you may be that in English the writings *ay* and *aw* represent sounds that have very little to do with the sound represented by *a* alone. Compare, for instance: *father*, *ah*, *bat*, but *say*, *lay*, *pay*, *saw*, *law*, *raw*.

In Chinese you must remember that the sound of *a* does not change in this way. When you see *ay*, it represents a Chinese sound about like the *a* of *father* followed by a very brief *ee*-sound; similarly, *aw* stands for the *a-of-father* sound followed by a very brief *oo*-sound. To fix this in your mind, go through this next practice, observing how the vowel-letter and the *y* or *w* most always be taken as two different things.

**Record 1B, after fifth spiral.**

PRACTICE 20.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'láy* | 'come' |
| *'táy·tay* | 'Mrs.' |
| *'máw* | 'dime' |
| *'hǎw* | 'OK' |
| *'gěy* | 'give' |
| *'rèw* | 'meat' |
| *'yěw* | 'have' |
| *'wèy* | 'honorable person' |

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES. (Group Work.) Go through the Basic Sentences (Group II) several more times, at first repeating in unison after the Guide as you did the first time, after that taking turns around the class repeating after him until everyone has had a chance. Think of the meaning as you hear and say each word or as the other members of the group speak.

## SECTION D: WORD STUDY AND REVIEW

§1. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE ENGLISH. (Individual Study.) Make sure that you know the material of the second group of Basic Sentences by covering the English and seeing if you can remember the meaning of the Chinese. Check the ones that give you trouble and go back to these after you finish the list. Then skip around so that you come to them in a different order. Finally go to the Word Study and read it carefully to yourself.

§2. WORD STUDY. (Individual Study.)

POINT 1. COMPOUNDS.

*fēy·'jī* 'flying machine'. *Fēy* is the verb 'to fly'. *Jī* means 'machine', but is used only in compounds.

POINT 2. *Lǐ* AND *Shàng* ADDED TO NOUNS. Notice the following examples:

*'jwō·dz* 'table'; *'jwō·dz-shang* 'top of the table'
*'wū·dz* 'room'; *'wū·dz-li* 'the inside of the room'
*fàn-'gwǎn·dz* 'restaurant'; *fàn-'gwǎn·dz-li* 'the inside of the restaurant'

The two words *lǐ* 'inside of something' and *shàng* 'top side of something' are added to nouns which name any object, the combination referring to that particular part of the object.

**Point 3.** *Yěw* and *Dzày* in Expressions of Place. The two most common ways of giving *location* are:

(1) Such-and-such a place *has* (*yěw*) such-and-such a thing.

(2) Such-and-such a thing *at* (*dzày*) such-and-such a place.

The first can be compared, in meaning, to the English sentence *There are books on the table*, while the second means rather *The books are on the table.* In the first sentence, in either language, the thing of central interest is what it is that is to be found at a certain place; in the second sentence, in either language, the thing of central interest is where it is that certain things are to be found. In Chinese, the words that specify the point of central interest are put at the *end* of the sentence. If it is the place that comes here, then the verb *dzày* 'to be in, at' is used; if it is the things that come at the end of the sentence, then the verb *yěw* 'have, contain', is used.

Here are some examples. Notice particularly that it is not necessary to translate the 'is' or 'are' which you find in the English equivalents:

*Nà·ge-'jwō·dz-shang yěw-'yān.* 'There are cigarettes on top of that table.'

*'Yān dzày-nà·ge-'jwō·dz-shang.* 'The cigarettes are on top of that table.'

*'Nà·ge-jwō·dz yěw-'rén.* 'There are people at that table'—that is, the table is occupied.

**Point 4.** *Láy*, *Chywù*, and *Dzěw* at the Ends of Sentences. In many sentences which talk about motion you will find one of the three verbs *láy* 'come', *chywù* 'go', or *dzěw* 'to be moving' at the end. These verbs are found in the middle of sentences too, but with a little difference in the meaning. *Dzěw*, at the end of a sentence, means 'to be moving, to be in motion', without any indication, in the word itself, as to the direction of the motion, or else it means 'to depart'. If *láy* or *chywù* is found at the end of a sentence, *láy* indicates that the motion is *towards the person speaking*, and *chywù* that the motion is *not* towards the person speaking. From this you can easily figure out the differences in meaning between these four expressions:

*dàw-'jè·li-láy*
*dàw-'nà·li-chywù*
*tsúng-'nà·li-láy*
*tsúng-'jè·li-chywù*

*Láy* is frequently used in the following way when talking to waiters in restaurants or clerks in stores:

*'Dzày-láy-yì·wǎn-'fàn!* 'Again come one-bowl rice'—'Bring another bowl of rice.'

**Point 5.** *Dàw* and *Shyàng*. The difference between *dàw* and *shyàng*, 'to' and 'towards', is that *dàw* implies getting there, whereas *shyàng* simply indicates the direction. *Dàw* is also used as a verb, meaning 'to arrive':

*Dàw·le-'nà·li, shyàng-'yèw·byan dzĕw.* 'Arriving there, go to the right.'

*Nĭ-'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'dàw-de?* 'When did you arrive?'

*Tā-dzwò-'chwán yì·'jŕ-dàw-'Yīng·gwo.* 'He went straight through to England by boat.'

POINT 6. *De.* This little syllable is one of the most important words in Chinese. The basic meaning of *de* cannot be given by a simple translation, but by showing how it works. When *de* is added to one word or group of words, it indicates that that word or word-group *describes* or *modifies* the next word or word-group. For example:

*'Jè shr̀-'wŏ·de-yān.* 'This is my cigarette.' (*wŏ* 'I' is made to describe *yān* cigarette')

*'Nà-shr̀ 'jwō·dz-shàng-de-yān.* 'That is the cigarette which is on the top of the table.' (*'jwō·dz-shang* table's top' is made to describe *yān*)

*Nà-shr̀-'nă·li·de-yān?* 'That is the cigarette which was at what place?' (*'nă·li* 'where' is made to describe *yān*)—'Where is that cigarette from?'

In some cases the meaning is clear even if one does not include the word or word-group after the *de.* In such cases the second word or word-group is frequently omitted:

*Tā-chr̄-de-'fàn hĕn-'dwō.* 'The food that he eats is a great deal.'—'He eats a great deal of food'. (Here *tā-'chr̄* 'he eats' is made to describe *fàn* 'food')

*Tā-'chr̄-de hĕn-'dwō.* 'He eats a great deal.' (What one eats is always food, so the word for food is simply left out)

*Tā-shwō-de-'hwà shr̀-'Jūng·gwo-hwà.* 'What he speaks is Chinese.' (Here *tā-'shwō* 'he speaks' is made to modify *hwà* 'speech')

*Tā-'shwō-de shr̀-'Jūng·gwo-hwà.* 'What he speaks is Chinese.' (The only thing that one speaks is language, so the word for language is simply left out)

*'Rén hĕn-'dwō, 'hăw-rén hén-'shăw.* 'People are numerous, but good men are few.' (Here *hăw* 'good, OK' describes *rén* 'people')

*'Rén hĕn-'dwō, 'hăw·de(-rén) hén-'shăw.* 'People are numerous, but good ones are few'. (Here the addition of *de* to *hăw* indicates clearly that it is describing something, and the *rén*, having been in the sentence once, can be understood without putting it in again)

*'Tsày hĕn-'dwō: 'méy·yĕw-hén-hăw-'chr̄-de-tsày.* 'The food is plentiful, (but) there isn't any very good to eat.' (Here the word-group *hén-hăw-'chr̄* 'very good to eat' is made to describe *tsày* 'food other than rice')

*'Tsày hĕn-'dwō: 'méy·yĕw-hén-hăw-'chr̄-de.* 'There is a lot of food, but none that is very good to eat.' (The second *tsày* is omitted and understood)

The end result of this habit of omitting the second word is to make a group of words ending in *de* function like a *noun*, whatever the words of the group may be taken individually. Thus *tā-'chr̄-de* 'what he eats', *tā-'shwō-de* 'what he speaks' or 'what he says', *hén-'hăw-de* 'a very good (thing or person)', *hĕn-hăw-'chr̄-de* 'something very good to eat'.

The group to which *de* is added may be even longer:

*tsúng-'Mĕy·gwo-láy-de(-rén)* '(people) who come from America'

*dzwò-fēy·'jī-láy-de(-rén)* '(people) who come by plane'

*'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'dàw-de(-rén)* '(people) who arrive at what time?'

In groups like this the *rén* is usually omitted. Sentences are built up like this:

*Nĭ-(shr̀) 'shém·me-shŕ·hew-'dàw-de?* 'When did you arrive?'

*Wŏ·men (shr̀)-dzwò-fēy·'jī-láy-de.* 'We came by plane.'

*Tā-'bú·shr̀-tsúng-'Mĕy·gwo-láy-de.* 'He didn't come from the United States.'

The *shr̀* 'is' of these sentences is almost always omitted, but the *'bú·shr̀* is never left out.

Notice that the translation of these sentences is in past time—'When *did* you arrive?', 'We *came* by plane.', 'He *didn't come* from the United States.' If 'I am a person who came from the United States', then obviously 'I came from the United States'.

To summarize, from the one basic meaning of *de* three general types of usage are developed:

(1) Indication that one word or word-group modifies another (the basic meaning of *de*).

(2) Formation of a noun-form from almost any group of words, by omitting an obvious second word or word-group.

(3) Indication of past time, by using a group of wor[illegible] *de* in the second part of the sentence.

Here are some more sentences showing the use of *de*. Study them carefully:

*Tā-'chr̄-de hĕn-'hăw.* 'He eats well.' ('What he eats is very good.')

*'Jè·li yĕw-hĕn-'dwō-'chr̄·de, 'hē·de.* 'There is a lot to eat and drink here.'

*Wŏ·men-'chr̄-de shr̀-'Jūng·gwo-fàn, 'bú·shr̀-'Mĕy·gwo-fàn.* 'What we eat is Chinese food, not American.'

*'Wŏ·men·de shr̀-'Jūng·gwo-fàn.* 'Ours is Chinese food.'

*Wŏ·men dzwò-'chwán-láy-de.* 'We came by boat.'

*Wŏ·men-'dzwò-de shr̀-'chwán.* 'What we came by is by boat.' (not by other means)

*Wŏ·men shr̀-dzwò-'chwán-de.* 'We are (the people) on the boat.'

*Wŏ·men dzwò-yì·'tyān·de-hwŏ-'chē.* 'We take a day's ride on the train.'

*Wŏ·men-dzwò-de-fēy·'jī shr̀-'Mĕy·gwo·de.* 'The plane we rode in was American.'

§3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY? (Individual Study.) Still working by yourself, read the following sentences and decide what Chinese sentences suit the situation described in English. Be sure you know what all the Chinese sentences mean. Practice them aloud.

1. 'There are eight cigarettes on the table.'
   a. *'Jwō·dz-shàng yĕw-'yān.*

b. *'Chī·gēn-yān dzày-'jwō·dz-shàng.*
c. *'Jwō·dz-shang yěw-'bā·gēn-yān.*

2. 'How many matches are there on the table?'
a. *'Jwō·dz-shang yěw-yáng·'hwǒ-ma?*
b. *'Jwō·dz-shang yéw-'jǐ·gēn·yáng·'hwǒ?*

3. 'He has no money.'
a. *Tā-'méy·yěw-chyán.*
b. *Tā-yěw-'chyán-ma?*
c. *Tā-yěw-'dwō·shaw-chyán?*

4. 'I have two packs of cigarettes, you have three packs, and he has none.'
a. *Wó-yéw-'lyǎng·bāw-yān, ní-yěw-'sān·bāw, tā-yěw-'sž·bāw.*
b. *Wó-yéw-'lyǎng·gēn-yān, ní-yěw-'sān·gēn, tā-'méy·yěw-yān.*
c. *Wó-yéw-'lyǎng·bāw-yān, ní-yěw-'sān·bāw, tā-'méy·yěw-yān.*

5. Three soldiers have a total of one pack of cigarettes. Which of the following distributions are possible?
a. *'Yí·ge-bīng yěw-'bā·gēn-yān, yí·ge-yěw-'chī·gēn, yí·ge-yéw-'wǔ·gēn.*
b. *'Yí·ge-bīng yěw-'shŕ·gēn-yān, yí·ge-yěw-'lyèw·gēn, yí·ge-yěw-'chī·gēn.*
c. *'Yí·ge-bīng yěw-yì·'bāw-yān, 'lyǎng·ge-bīng 'méy·yěw-yān.*

6. If asked where the toilet is, which of these answers are possible?
a. *Tsè·'swǒ-li yěw-fàn·'dyàn.*
b. *Nà·ge-fàn·'dyàn-li yěw-tsè·'swǒ.*
c. *'Méy·yěw-tsè·'swǒ.*

7. Which of these are possible?
a. *'Wū·dz-li yěw-'jwō·dz, 'jwō·dz-shang yěw-'yān.*
b. *'Jwō·dz-shang yěw-'wū·dz.*
c. *'Yān dzày-'jwō·dz·shang, 'jwō·dz 'bú-dzày-'wū·dz-li.*

8. If there are five objects on the table, either cigarettes or matches, which of these situations are possible?
a. *Yěw-sān·gēn-'yān, lyǎng·gēn-yáng·'hwǒ.*
b. *Yěw-yì·gēn-'yān, wǔ·gēn-yáng·'hwǒ.*
c. *Yéw-wǔ·gēn-'yān, 'méy·yěw-yáng·'hwǒ.*

9. 'There is a restaurant in the hotel.'
a. *Hwǒ-chē-'jàn-li yěw-fàn-'gwǎn·dz.*
b. *Fàn-'gwǎn·dz dzày-fàn·'dyàn-li.*
c. *Fàn·'dyàn-li yěw-fàn-'gwǎn·dz.*

10. 'He is coming toward us.'
a. *Tā-shyàng-'wǒ·men-jè·li-láy.*
b. *Tā-dàw-'wǒ·men-jè·li-láy-de.*
c. *Tā-tsúng-'nà·li-láy.*

11. 'We are going into the restaurant.'
a. *Wǒ·men dàw-fàn-'gwǎn-dz-li-chywù.*
b. *Wǒ·men dàw-fàn-'gwǎn·dz-chywù-de.*
c. *Wǒ·men shyàng-fàn-'gwǎn·dz-nà·li-chywù.*

12. 'Where are you coming from right now?'
a. *Nǐ-shyàn·'dzày dàw-'nà·li-chywù.*
b. *Nǐ-shyàn·'dzày dzwò-'shém·me dzěw?*

c. *Nĭ-tsúng-'nă·li-láy-de?*
d. *Nĭ-shyàn·'dzày tsúng-'nă·li-láy?*

13. 'Please take me to the railroad station.'
a. *Chĭng 'gēn-wŏ dàw-hwŏ-chē-'jàn-chywù.*
b. *Chĭng 'dày-wŏ dàw-hwŏ-chē-'jàn-chywù.*
c. *Chĭng 'gēn-wŏ dzwò-hwŏ-'chē dzĕw.*

14. 'Where does the train go?'
a. *Hwŏ-'chē shyàng-'nă·li dzĕw?*
b. *Hwŏ-'chē dàw-'nà·li-chywù-ma?*
c. *Hwŏ-'chē shr̆-dàw-'nà·li-chywù-de-ma?*
d. *Hwŏ-'chē dàw-'nă·li-chywù?*

15. Which of these statements are true?
a. *Mĕy·gwo-'bīng dàw-'Jūng·gwo-chywù.*
b. *'Yīng·gwo-bīng dàw-'Jūng·gwo-chywù.*
c. *'Jūng·gwo 'méy·yĕw-'Mĕy·gwo-bīng.*

16. If you are at a restaurant and I am at the railroad station (and the restaurant is not at the railroad station), in which of these ways can we get together?
a. *'Nĭ dàw-'wŏ-jè·li-láy.*
b. *'Wŏ dàw-'nĭ-nà·li-chywù.*
c. *'Nĭ shyàng-hwŏ-chē-'jàn-láy, 'wŏ shyàng-fàn-'gwăn·dz-chywù.*
d. *'Nĭ dàw-fàn·'dyàn-chywù, wó-'yĕ-dàw-fàn·'dyàn-chywù.*

17. Who arrived first, if all have gone from the same place to the same place?
a. *Tā·men dzwò-hwŏ-'chē dzĕw-de.*
b. *Nĭ·men dzwò-fēy·'jī dzĕw-de.*
c. *Wŏ·men dzwò-'chwán dzĕw-de.*

18. 'When does the train leave?'
a. *Hwŏ-'chē 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'kāy?*
b. *Hwŏ-'chē 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'dàw-de?*
c. *Hwŏ-'chē 'lyáng·dyăn-jūng 'kāy-ma?*
d. *Hwŏ-'chē dzày-'nă·li?*

19. 'Is this train going straight to Chicago?'
a. *'Jè·ge-hwŏ-chē shr̀-yì·'jŕ tsúng-'Chicago láy-de-ma?*
b. *'Jè·ge-hwŏ-chē shr̀-shyàng-'Chicago 'dzĕw-de-ma?*
c. *'Jè·ge-hwŏ-chē shr̀-yì·'jŕ-dàw-'Chicago-chywù-de-ma?*

20. 'He is coming by train.'
a. *Tā-tsúng-hwŏ-chē-'jàn-láy.*
b. *Tā-dzwò-hwŏ-'chē-láy.*
c. *Tā-dàw-hwŏ-chē-'jàn-láy.*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY? (Group Work.) The Leader will read the English statement of each set of the What Would You Say?, and will ask someone to give orally the Chinese sentences that he has selected. Talk over the meanings of all the possibilities and discuss why some are better choices than others. If you have a Guide, note especially any corrections he makes of your pronunciation or of that of the other members of the group.

§5. REVIEW BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP II) COVERING THE CHINESE. (Individual Study.) Working by yourself, cover the Chinese and see how many expressions you can say while looking at the English. Refer to the Chinese only after you have been through the whole list. Try again the ones you marked because you could not remember them. If two of you can work together asking each other the expressions in turn, you will have a still better check on what you have learned.

## SECTION E: LISTENING IN

§1. **Word Study Check-Up.** (Group Work.) The Leader will ask various members of the group to give the Chinese expressions for various English sentences in the two Word Studies, and will ask you to explain the points that are discussed there. For example, he will ask one of the group to tell the literal meaning of *Jūng·gwo*. Remember that you only need to know *how* something is said; no one knows *why* a thing is said one way rather than another.

§2. **Listening In.** (Group Work.) Go through the following conversations with the group. Keep your book closed the first time through, and see how much you can understand as the Guide or record speaks. Nothing new occurs here. If you are sure of the Basic Sentences, you should have little trouble.

Conversation 1. Two American soldiers, Johnson and Ward, meet a Chinese soldier named Wáng.

**Record 7A, beginning.**

Johnson: *Gwèy-'shìng?*
Wáng: *Bì·shìng 'Wáng.*
*Gwèy-'shìng?*
Johnson: *Bì·shìng 'Johnson.*
Wáng: *Nǐ-yěw-'Jūng·gwo-shìng-ma?*
Johnson: *'Yěw.*
*Wǒ-shìng 'Jāng.*
Wáng: (points to the other American soldier)
*'Nà·wèy gwèy-shìng?*
Johnson: *Tā-shìng 'Ward.*
*Tā-bú-'hwèy shwō-Jūng·gwo-'hwà.*
Wáng: *Gwèy·'gwó?*
Johnson: *Wǒ·men shr̀-Měy·gwo-'bīng.*

Conversation 2. They continue talking.

Wáng: *Shyàn·'dzày tsúng-'nǎ·li-láy?*
Johnson: *Tsúng-dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn-láy.*
*Chǐng-'wèn, dàw-hwǒ-chē-'jàn-chywu 'dzěm-me-dzěw?*
Wáng: *Tsúng-'jè·li yì·'jŕ-dzěw·dàw-'nà·li.*
*Tsúng-'nà·li, shyàng-'yèw·byan dzěw.*
*Fàn·'dyàn dzày-'dzwǒ·byan.*
*Hwǒ-chē-'jàn dzày-'yèw·byan.*
Johnson: *Chǐng·'dày-wǒ·men-chywù, 'hǎw-ma?*
Wáng: *'Hǎw, wǒ-'gēn-nǐ·men-chywù.*

Conversation 3. On the way Wáng learns where and when they came to China.

Wáng: *Nǐ·men tsúng-'nǎ·li láy-de?*

Johnson: *Wŭ-shr̀-tsúng-'Mĕy·gwo láy-de.*

Wáng: *'Ta yĕ-shr̀-tsúng-'Mĕy·gwo láy-de-ma?*

Johnson: *'Bú·shr̀.*

*Tā-shr̀ tsúng-'Yīng·gwo láy-de.*

Wáng: *Mĕy·gwo-'bīng dzĕm·me-tsúng-'Yīng·gwo-láy?*

Johnson: *'Yīng·gwo 'yĕ-yéw-Mĕy·gwo-bīng.*

Wáng: *Yĕw-'dwō·shăw?*

Johnson: *Hĕn-'dwō.*

Wáng: *Nĭ-tsúng-'Mĕy·gwo dzwò-'shém·me láy-de?*

Johnson: *Dzwò-'chwán láy-de.*

Wáng: *Nĭ-'jĭ·ywè 'dàw-de?*

Johnson: *Wŏ-'èr·ywè dàw-de.*

### CONVERSATION 4. WÁNG ASKS WHERE THE SOLDIERS ARE GOING.

Wáng: *Shyàn·'dzày 'shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'yàw-chywù-dzwò-hwŏ-'che?*

Johnson: *'Shr̀.*

Wáng: *Dàw-'nă·li-chywù?*

Johnson: *Dàw-'Yīng·gwo-chywu.*

Wáng: *Dzwò-hwŏ-'chē yì·'jŕ dàw-'Yīng·gwo-ma?*

Johnson: *'Bú·shr̀.*

*Tsúng-'jè·li dzwò-yì·'tyān·de-hwŏ-'chē.*

*'Dzày-dzwò-fēy·'jĭ dzĕw.*

(pointing to Ward he says)

*'Tā-shwō, tā-yàw-dàw-tsè·'swŏ-chywù.*

Wáng: *'Jè·li 'méy·yĕw-tsè·'swŏ.*

*Hwŏ-chē-'jàn-li yĕw.*

### CONVERSATION 5. AT THE STATION THEY HAVE TIME TO EAT, SO THEY GO INTO THE RESTAURANT AND TALK TO THE WAITER.

Record 7B, beginning.

Waiter: *'Shyān·sheng 'hăw?*

*'Jĭ·wèy?*

Johnson: *'Lyăng·wèy.*

Waiter: *Chĭng 'gēn-wŏ-láy.*

Johnson: *Wŏ-yàw dàw-'nà·ge-jwō·dz-chywù.*

Waiter: *'Nà·ge-jwō·dz yĕw-'rén.*

*'Jè·ge jwō·dz hăw-ma?*

Johnson: *'Yé-hăw.*

Waiter: *Lyăng·'wèy 'chr̄-shém·me?*

Johnson: *Yéw-'Mĕy·gwo-fàn-ma?*

Waiter: *'Méy·yĕw, yĕw-'Jūng·gwo-fàn.*

*Yàw-'jĭ·ge-tsày?*

Johnson: *'Sz̀·ge-tsày, lyáng·wăn-'fàn.*

### CONVERSATION 6. WHILE EATING.

Johnson: *Jè·ge-'tsày-li méy·yew-'rèw.*

Waiter: *'Dzày-láy-yì·wăn-'rèw, 'hăw-bu·hăw?*

Johnson: *'Hăw.*

*'Bú·yàw-dzĕw!*

*'Dĕng-yi·dĕng.*

Waiter: *'Shr̀.*

Johnson: *Yéw-'Mĕy·gwo-'yān-ma?*

Waiter: *'Méy·yĕw.*

*Yĕw-'Jūng·gwo-yān.*

Johnson: *'Jūng·gwo-yān 'yé-hăw.*

Waiter: *Yàw-'jĭ·bāw?*

Johnson: *'Lyăng·bāw.*

Waiter: *Yàw-yáng·'hwǒ-ma?*
Johnson: *Yě-'yàw.*

CONVERSATION 7. AFTER EATING.

Johnson: *Yí·'gùng 'dwǒ·shaw-chyan?*
Waiter: *'Yān shr̀-'wǔ·máw-chyan yì·'bāw.*
*Lyǎng·'bāw shr̀-yí·'kwày-chyan.*
*'Fàn shr̀-'sān·kwày-'èr.*
*Yí·'gùng 'sz̀·kwày-'èr.*
Johnson: *'Jè-shr̀ 'sz̀·kwày-'èr·maw-chyán.*
*'Dzày-gěy-ni 'bàn·kwày-chyan.*
Waiter: *'Shyè·shye.*
Johnson: *Shyàn·'dzày 'shém·me-shŕ·hew?*
Waiter: *Jyéw·dyǎn-'bàn.*
Johnson: *Hwǒ-'chē 'jyéw·dyǎn-'sz̀·shr·fēn 'kāy, 'dwèy-bu·dwèy?*
Waiter: *'Dwèy·le.*
Johnson: *Dzày-'jyàn.*
Waiter: *Dzày-'jyàn.*

After the first time through, open your books and follow in them, repeating after the Guide or records. Discuss any points you don't understand. Then go through with parts assigned for each conversation, and continue until everyone has had a chance. Do your best: speak loudly and clearly; try to imitate as accurately as you can.

## SECTION F: CONVERSATION

§1. VOCABULARY CHECK-UP. (Group Work.) The Leader will give you a final vocabulary check-up on all the Basic Sentences of this Unit by asking you: *Jūng·gwo-'hwà cigarette 'dzěm·me-shwō?*, and so on, substituting other English words or phrases for *cigarette*. The student who answers the first question should ask the next of someone else and so on until everyone has had a chance to answer and ask. Do not take the words and expressions in any regular order.

§2. CARRYING ON CONVERSATION. (Group Work.) Act out the conversations from Section E, different students taking the parts and trying to act and speak as well as possible. In Section E you tested your understanding of the language; now test your speaking. Do it to the best of your ability. When you have been through the conversations, and everyone has had a chance to act, try conversations of your own on models like those given below. Try to ask questions as well as answering them so that you keep the conversation going. Don't be afraid to put in new material besides what is suggested here, but keep within the phrases you are sure of from the Units you have studied.

A. MEETING PEOPLE. A and B meet for the first time and ask each other their names, where they are from, and so on. Make up a Chinese name for yourself—it doesn't have to be what the Chinese would call you if they gave you one—using, for example, *Jāng* for *Johnson*, *Wǔ* for *Wilson*, *Lǐ* for *Reed*, *Sz̀* for *Smith*. Also remember that in just practicing conversation you don't have to stick to statements that are really true about yourself: you can pretend to be a Frenchman who has seventeen children if you want to.

B. **Introducing People.** A introduces B to C, who then ask each other where they come from and so on.

C. **At a Restaurant.** A goes into a restaurant and asks for a table. B, the waiter, tells him which table to take. A gives his order. After eating and drinking he asks how much, the waiter tells him, he pays and leaves.

# UNIT IV

## FAMILY AND FRIENDS

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the following Basic Sentences just as you have before, repeating after the Guide or records. Be sure to get plenty of life into your repetition of the sentences.

§1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP I). (Group Work.)

MR. WÁNG AND MR. ROSS MEET EACH OTHER.

**Record 8A, beginning.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | MR. WÁNG: |
| to sit | *'dzwò* |
| Mr. Ross! Let's sit here! OK? | *'Lwó-shyān·sheng! Dzày-'jè·li 'dzwò, 'hăw-bu·hăw?* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| OK. | *'Hăw.* |
| to talk | *'tán* |
| Let's talk a bit. | *Wǒ·men 'tán-yi·tán 'hwà-ba.* |
| | MR. WÁNG: |
| to draw in *or* inhale | *'chēw* |
| Do you smoke? | *Chēw-'yān-ma?* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| I don't. | *Bú-'hwèy.* |
| home *or* family | *'jyā* |
| Who is there in your family? | *Nǐ-'jyā-li yěw-'shém·me-rén?* |
| | MR. WÁNG: |
| mother | *'mŭ·chin* |
| child | *'háy·dz* |
| My mother, wife, and children. | *Yěw-wǒ-'mŭ·chin, 'tày·tay, gēn-'háy·dz·men.* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| place | *'dì·fang* |
| father | *'fù·chin* |
| Where's your father? | *Nǐ-'fù·chin dzày-shém·me-'dì·fang?* |
| | MR. WÁNG: |
| In the United States. | *Dzày-'Měy·gwo.* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| When did he go there? | *'Shém·me-shŕ-hew 'chywù-de?* |
| | MR. WÁNG: |
| Last year. | *'Chywù·nyan.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Mr. Ross:** | |
| Did he go there from China? | *'Shr̀-bu·shr̀ tsúng-'Jūng·gwo chywù-de?* |
| **Mr. Wáng:** | |
| No. | *'Bú·shr.* |
| before *or* ago | *yǐ·'chyán* |
| Germany | *'Dé·gwo* |
| He was in Germany before. | *Tā-yǐ·'chyán dzày-'Dé·gwo.* |
| France | *'Fà·gwo* |
| Three years ago he came from Germany to France. | *'Sān·nyán-yǐ·chyán tsúng-'Dé·gwo dàw-'Fà·gwo.* |
| Last year he arrived in America. | *'Chywù·nyan dàw-de-'Měy·gwo.* |
| **Mr. Ross:** | |
| Where in the United States? | *Dzày-'Měy·gwo shém·me-'dì·fang?* |
| **Mr. Wáng:** | |
| to stay, stop, *or* live | *'jù* |
| He lives in Chicago. | *Tā-'jù·dzay Jr̄·jyà·'gē.* |
| some | *'yěw·de* |
| Sometimes he goes to New York and stays there a few days | *Yěw·de-'shŕ·hew dàw-Nyěw·'ywē chywù-'jù-jǐ·tyān.* |
| **Mr. Ross:** | |
| How many children have you? | *Nǐ-yéw-jǐ·ge-'háy·dz?* |
| **Mr. Wáng:** | |
| I have four. | *Yěw-'sz̀·ge.* |

Record 8B, beginning

| | |
|---|---|
| male | *'nán·de* |
| female | *'nywǔ·de* |
| Two boys and two girls. | *Lyǎng·ge-'nán·de, lyǎng·ge-'nywǔ·de.* |
| **Mr. Ross:** | |
| brothers | *'dì·shyung* |
| sisters | *'jyě·mèy* |
| Have you any brothers or sisters? | *'Yěw-méy·yew 'dì·shyung 'jyě·mèy?* |
| **Mr. Wáng:** | |
| younger brother | *'dì·di* |
| older brother | *'gē·ge* |
| I have one younger brother, four older brothers. | *Yěw-'yí·ge-'dì·di, 'sz̀·ge-'gē·ge.* |
| still *or* furthermore | *'háy* |
| younger sister | *'mèy·mey* |
| I have two younger sisters too. | *'Háy-yéw-lyǎng·ge-'mèy·mey.* |
| but | *'kě·shr̀* |
| older sister | *'jyě·jye* |
| But I don't have any older sisters. | *Kě·shr 'méy·yéw-'jyě·jye.* |

§2. Hints on Pronunciation. (Group Work.) The one feature of the pronunciation of Chinese that you must work hardest of all on—even if you don't feel that it is very difficult—is the tones. If you have a natural way of speaking so far as the tones are concerned, you can make a good many mistakes with vowels and consonants and still be understood; but if you have all the vowels and consonants perfectly and miss the tones, you may easily be misunderstood. Every group of Basic Sentences that you work on is practice on pronunciation, of course, as is every Listening In. You should *always* be striving for a better pronunciation, not just when you are in the sections of the course that are devoted especially to that.

The following five practices will give you a good review of the four tones. The first four give six syllables each for the first tone, the second, the third, and the fourth, respectively. The last practice will show you quite clearly how important it is to get the tones right, as it will bring out what great differences in meaning can result from a change of tone.

### Record 1B, after seventh spiral.

PRACTICE 21.

| | |
|---|---|
| '*tā* | 'he, she' |
| '*hē* | 'drink' |
| '*sān* | 'three' |
| '*chī* | 'seven' |
| '*bā* | 'eight' |
| '*kāy* | 'start, open, begin, drive' |

### Record 1B, after eighth spiral.

PRACTICE 22.

| | |
|---|---|
| '*chá* | 'tea' |
| '*shí* | 'ten' |
| '*rén* | 'person' |
| '*chyán* | 'money' |
| '*láy* | 'come' |
| '*tsúng* | 'from' |

### Record 1B, after ninth spiral.

PRACTICE 23.

| | |
|---|---|
| '*wǔ* | 'five' |
| '*jyěw* | 'nine', 'wine' |
| '*jǐ* | 'how many?, a few' |
| '*gěy* | 'give, for the sake of' |
| '*yě* | 'also' |
| '*yěw* | 'have' |

### Record 1B, after last spiral.

PRACTICE 24.

| | |
|---|---|
| '*èr* | 'two' |
| '*sz̀* | 'four' |
| '*lyèw* | 'six' |
| '*hwà* | 'speech, language' |
| '*dàw* | 'to' |
| '*chywù* | 'go' |

### Record 2A, beginning.

PRACTICE 25.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'*yēw*, *'*yéw*, '*yěw*, *'*yèw* | 'swing; oil; have; again' |
| '*bā*, *'*bá*, *'*bǎ*, *'*bà* | 'eight; pull up; taking; strong and evil man' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **'shū, *'shú, *'shǔ, *'shù* | 'book; redeem; office; tree' |
| *'fēn, *'fén, *'fěn, *'fèn* | 'minute; tomb; powder; manure' |

Sometimes people from other countries come to the United States and do not learn to pronounce English too well. It may be hard to tell, for example, whether a particular word they say is supposed to be *tin* or *din*, *ten* or *den*, *pig* or *big*, *coal* or *goal*. The difference between *t* and *d*, *p* and *b*, *c* and *g* is used in English to distinguish between different words, and if a foreigner learning English happens not to have these particular differences of sound in his own language, and does not learn to make the differences in English, the result is that he cannot communicate with us clearly.

We who learn Chinese are in the same kind of position. The English word *shoe* means the same thing whether we say it with our voice going up, or down, or level, or high or low in pitch. But the Chinese syllable *shu* means very different things depending on how it is sung, as you have just seen in Practice 25: with the four different tones it is four completely different words. The singing is one of the devices used in Chinese to keep words apart. So we *must* learn to 'sing' right if we want to make ourselves understood by native speakers of the language.

§3. Practice on the Basic Sentences. (Group Work.) Go through the Basic Sentences of this Section three or four more times, first in unison, then taking turns around the group with the repetition, until everyone has had a chance.

§4. Check Yourself. Did you practice the tones seriously?

Have you followed the pronunciation you heard even when it seemed different from that shown in the book?

Are you keeping in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you say the Chinese?

Are you speaking loudly and clearly so that the other members of the group can hear you?

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

§1. Review of Basic Sentences Covering the English. (Individual Study.) Work separately, and quietly so that you won't disturb other members of the group. Turn back to the Basic Sentences (Group I) in Section A and cover the English. Read the Chinese to yourself and see how quickly you can call to mind the meaning of each expression. Put a check mark by those with which you have trouble, and go on through the entire list before you look at the English. Then go through again, skipping here and there so that you come to them in a different order.

§2. Word Study. (Individual Study.)

Point 1. Relatives. Notice these words and their meanings:

| | |
|---|---|
| *'dì·di* | 'younger brother' (one or more) |
| *'gē·ge* | 'older brother' (one or more) |

*'dì·shyung* 'brothers' (all of them, and there must be more than one)

*'jyĕ·jye* 'older sister' (one or more)

*'mèy·mey* 'younger sister' (one or more)

*'jyĕ·mèy* 'sisters' (all of them, and there must be more than one)

*'fù·chin* 'father'

*'mŭ·chin* 'mother'

*'fù·mŭ* 'parents' (both of them)

POINT 2. *Shwō* AND *Tán*. The verb *shwō* means 'to speak', and the verb *tán* means 'to talk'. Thus:

*shwō-Jūng·gwo-'hwà* 'to speak Chinese'

*shwō-'hwà* 'to speak'

*tán-'hwà* 'to talk, to converse'

POINT 3. *Chēw*. The verb *chēw* means 'to draw in' or 'to inhale'. The noun *yān* means both 'smoke', in general, 'tobacco smoke' in particular, and, an even more special meaning, 'cigarette'. In the latter meaning it is much like the use of the word *smoke* in English when we ask someone 'Would you like a smoke?' So the expression *chēw-'yān* 'to draw in smoke' has come to be the ordinary way of saying 'to smoke (a cigarette)'. Some people in China say *chr̄-'yān* 'to eat smoke' with the same meaning.

POINT 4. USE OF *wŏ* FOR *'wŏ·de*. With the word *jyā* 'home', and with words naming different relatives, the words for 'my', your', and 'his, hers' are simply *wŏ*, *nĭ*, and *tā* without the *de* added:

*wŏ-'jyā* 'my home'

*nĭ-'fù·chin* 'your father'

*tā-'gē·ge* 'his (or her) older brother'

POINT 5. USE OF *men* WITH NOUNS. As you know, the forms for 'we', 'you (more than one person)', and 'they' are made from the words for 'I', 'you (one person)', and 'he, she' by adding the syllable *men*:

| | |
|---|---|
| *wŏ* | *'wŏ·men* |
| *nĭ* | *'nĭ·men* |
| *tā* | *'tā·men* |

This same syllable is used with a few nouns, to mean the group of all the people named by that noun:

*'háy·dz* 'child *or* children': *'háy·dz·men* 'the children (all of them)'

When a number, or *jè* 'this', *nà* 'that', *nă* 'which', is used before a noun, the *men* is *not* used:

*'sān·ge-háy·dz* 'three children'

Do not use *men* with a noun unless you have heard it used with that particular noun.

POINT 6. *Ma* AND *Ba*. These two words are used at the ends of sentences, and give a particular feeling to the whole sentence. *Ma* makes a statement into a question:

*Yàw-'yān* 'I want cigarettes.'

*Yàw-'yān-ma?* 'Do you want cigarettes?'

*'Bú-yàw-yān-ma?* 'Don't you want cigarettes?'

*Ba* makes a statement into a *request*, *plea*, or *suggestion*:

*Wŏ·men-tán-'hwà-ba.* 'Let's talk.'

*Wŏ·men-'dzŏw-ba.* 'Let's go.'

(*Nĭ·men*) *'dzŏw-ba.* 'Scram!'

*'Dzěw-ba!* said in a situation in which one is obviously telling someone else to scram is of course not polite. But if you mean that you, too, should go, then it is not impolite, but just a suggestion.

Now contrast the two:

*Jè-shr̀-'tā·de-ma?* 'Is this his?'

*Jè-shr̀-'tā·de-ba.* 'This seems to be his' (not someone else's)

*'Jè bú·shr-'tā·de-ma?* 'Isn't this his?'

*Jè-'bú·shr̀-tā·de-ba.* 'This doesn't seem to be his.'

Point 7. *Shr̀*. The verb *shr̀* 'is, are, am' is frequently put into a sentence to stress the statement being made; and in turn, when such stress is not needed, *shr̀* is frequently dropped where it might be expected.

*Fàn·'dyàn 'shr̀-dzày-'yèw·byan.* 'The hotel is, indeed, on the right.'

*Fàn·'dyàn dzày-'yèw·byan.* 'The hotel's on the right.'

Sometimes there is a difference in emphasis between a question with *'shr̀-ma* and one with *'shr̀-bu·shr̀*:

*Jè-'shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'rèw?* 'Is this meat?'

*Jè-shr̀-'rèw-ma?* 'Would you call this meat?' (implying that you don't think it's a very good specimen of meat)

Point 8. Repetition of a Verb with *yi* inserted. This device is very common in Chinese. The meaning can be gathered from the following examples:

*děng* 'to wait for (someone)'; *'děng-yi·děng* 'wait a minute'.

*shwō* 'to speak (a language)'; *'shwō-yi·shwō* 'to speak seriously about something for a while, to explain, to try to say something'.

*tán* 'to talk'; *'tán-yi·tán* 'to converse for a while, to carry on a conversation'.

*dzěw* 'to walk'; *'dzěw-yi·dzěw* 'to take a walk'.

Point 9. Words Borrowed from Other Languages. In the Basic Sentences in Section A there were several more examples of words borrowed in whole or in part from other languages. Thus 'Chicago' is called *Jr̄·jyā·'gē*, 'New York' is *Nyěw·'ywē*. *'Fà·gwo* is 'F(r)a(nce) country', *'Dé·gwo* is 'De(utschland) country', in each case from the native (French or German) word for the country.

§3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study.) After each of the English sentences below which describes a situation, there are several Chinese sentences. Sometimes the English sentence asks you a question which you cannot answer except by reading all the Chinese sentences of the group. Read aloud to yourself all the Chinese sentences and, if necessary, look back at the Basic Sentences and the Word Study to find out what they mean. Then decide which sentence or sentences satisfy the English conditions given. Whenever possible, answer the question, if there is one, in Chinese.

1. You are asked if you have any children. You say:
    a. *'Bú·shr̀-háy·dz.*
    b. *'Méy·yěw-háy·dz.*

2. You are asked how many brothers you have. If you have five, which of these answers are possible?

a. *Yéw-'lyǎng·ge-'gē·ge, 'sān·ge-'dì·di.*
b. *Yéw-'wǔ·ge-'gē·ge, 'sān·ge-'jyě·jye.*
c. *Yěw-'sān·ge-'gē·ge, 'lyǎng·ge-'dì·di.*
d. *Yéw-'wǔ·ge-'dì·di.*

3. You are asked how many children you have:

a. *Yěw-'shém·me-háy·dz?*
b. *Yéw-'jǐ·ge-háy·dz?*
c. *Yěw-'dwō·shaw-háy·dz?*

4. You ask your friend what the Chinese word *'dì·shyung* means. He says:

a. *'Jyě·jye gēn-'mèy·mey shr̀-'dì·shyung.*
b. *'Gē·ge gēn-'dì·di shr̀-dì·shyung.*
c. *'Mèy·mey gēn-'dì·di shr̀-'dì·shyung.*

5. You say both your parents are Americans:

a. *Wǒ-'fù·mǔ dzày-'Měy·gwo.*
b. *Wǒ-'fù·chin shr̀-'Měy·gwo-rén, 'mǔ·chin 'yě-shr̀-Měy·gwo-rén.*
c. *Wǒ-'fù·mǔ shr̀-'Měy·gwo-rén.*

6. Can you put the right words in these sentences to finish them?

a. *'Fù·chin gēn-'mǔ·chin shr̀*——(parents).
b. *'Dì·di gēn-'gē·ge shr̀*——.
c. *'Jyě·jye gēn-'mèy·mey shr̀*——.

7. Which of these could be answers to the question *Nǐ-'jyā-li yěw-'shém·me-rén?*

a. *Yéw-wǒ-'tày·tay gēn-'háy·dz·men.*
b. *Yéw-wǒ-'tày·tay gēn-'sz̀·ge-'háy·dz.*
c. *Yéw-wǒ-'bā·ge-'tày·tay gēn-'bā·ge-háy·dz.*
d. *Yéw-wǒ-'fù·chin gēn-'mǔ·chin.*
e. *Yěw-'sān·ge-'dì·di, 'lyǎng·ge-'jyě·jye, 'yí·ge-'gē·ge.*

8. Which of these are likely?

a. *Wǒ-bù-chēw-'yān.*
b. *Wǒ-bù-hē-'chá.*
c. *Wǒ-bù-hē-'jyěw.*
d. *Wǒ-bù-chr̄-'rèw.*
e. *Wǒ-bù-shwō-'hwà.*
f. *Wǒ-bù-chr̄-'fàn.*

9. Can you change one of these sentences so that the family described is possible?

a. *Wó-'mǔ·chin yěw-'lyèw·ge-'háy·dz.*
b. *Yéw-'lyǎng·ge-'nán·de, 'sz̀·ge-'nywǔ·de.*
c. *Wó-yěw-'yí·ge-'jyě·jye, 'lyǎng·ge-'mèy·mey, 'lyǎng·ge-'gē·ge, 'yí·ge-'dì·di.*

10. What relation are you and I? (take all the sentences together, and answer in Chinese).

a. *Wǒ-'fù·chin yěw-'yí·ge-dì·di.*
b. *Tā-'dì·di yéw-'mǔ·chin.*
c. *'Dì·di·de-mǔ·chin yéw-'lyǎng·ge-'háy·dz.*
d. *'Yí·ge-háy·dz shr̀-'nǐ-fù·chin.*
e. *Wǒ-'fù·chin 'bú·shr̀-'nǐ-fù·chin-de-'gē·ge.*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY? (Group Work.) Turn to the What Would You Say? The Leader will read the English statement for each group and will ask you to give aloud your answer. Be prepared so that you do not have to read from the book, and be ready to justify your answer. With the group you will discuss the meaning of all the possibilities. Then the Leader will call on someone for the next group.

§5. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE. (Individual Study.) Working individually check once more your knowledge of the first group of Basic Sentences of this Unit by covering the Chinese. Try to recall each Chinese expression as you read the English equivalents. Check the ones you cannot get right away, and go back to them. Look at the Chinese only if absolutely necessary. Then skip around through the sentences to be sure you can get them when you come to them in a different order.

## SECTION C: BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the following Basic Sentences just as you did with Section A. The Guide or the records will give each Chinese expression twice, and you will repeat it after him in unison each time. Speak up and imitate as closely as you can.

§1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP II). (Group Work.)

MR. ROSS VISITS THE WÁNG HOME, AND IS RECEIVED BY MRS. WÁNG.

**Record 8B, after spiral.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | MR. ROSS: |
| Is Mr. Wáng home? | *'Wáng-shyān·sheng dzày-'jyā-ma?* |
| | MRS. WÁNG: |
| No. | *'Bú-dzày-jyā.* |
| to exit | *'chū* |
| He's gone out. | *'Chū·chyẁ·le.* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| to return | *'hwéy* |
| When'll he be back? | *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'hwéy·lay?* |
| | MRS. WÁNG: |
| right away | *'jyèw* |
| Wait a minute; he'll be right back. | *'Děng-yi·děng jyèw-'hwéy·lay.* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| to be permissible | *'ké·yi* |
| May I wait for him here? | *Wǒ-'ké·yi dzày-'jè·li 'děng-ta-ma?* |
| | MRS. WÁNG: |
| Certainly. | *'Ké·yi.* |
| to enter | *'jìn* |
| Please come in and sit down. | *Chǐng 'jìn·lay dzwò.* |
| Is Mrs. Ross here? | *'Lwó-'tày·tay dzày-'jè·li-ma?* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | MR. ROSS: |
| She didn't come. | *Tā-méy-'láy.* |
| I came to China alone. | *Wǒ-'yí·ge-rén dàw-'Jūng·gwo láy-de.* |
| | MRS. WÁNG: |
| to be married | *jyē·'hwēn* |
| How many years have you been married? | *Nǐ·men jyē·'hwēn 'dwō·shaw-nyán-le?* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| Fifteen years. | *Shŕ-'wǔ·nyán-le.* |

**Record 9A, beginning.**

| | |
|---|---|
| | MRS. WÁNG: |
| Have you any children? | *'Yěw-méy·yěw 'háy·dz?* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| daughter | *'nywǔ·ér* |
| son | *'ér·dz* |
| We have five children; four daughters and a son. | *Yěw-'wǔ·ge-háy·dz, 'sż·ge-nywǔ·ér, 'yí·ge-ér·dz.* |
| | MRS. WÁNG: |
| this year | *'jīn·nyan* |
| all *or* both | *'dēw* |
| year of age | *'swèy* |
| How old are they? | *'Jīn·nyan 'dēw-jǐ·'swèy-le?* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| most *or* topmost | *'dǐng* |
| young *or* small | *'shyǎw* |
| The youngest is a boy. | *Dǐng-'shyǎw-de shr̀-'nán·de!* |
| He is six years old this year. | *Jīn·nyan 'lyèw·swèy.* |
| old *or* big | *'dà* |
| girl | *'nywǔ-'háy·dz* |
| The oldest girl is twelve. | *Dǐng-'dà-de-nywǔ-'háy·dz shŕ-'èr·swèy.* |
| The second is ten. | *Dì-'èr·ge 'shŕ·swèy.* |
| The third is nine. | *Dì-'sān·ge 'jyěw·swèy.* |
| The fourth is seven. | *Dì-'sż·ge 'chī·swèy.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. (Group Work.) An isolated syllable in Chinese always has one of four different tones—as you well know by now. But when two syllables come together, there are nineteen different possibilities for the combinations of tone. Four times four is sixteen; but the third tone is never preceded by itself, which makes fifteen; and the second of two syllables may have no tone at all, which makes a total of nineteen. In the following two practices there is one example of each possible combination, so that you can limber up your voice on them all.

**Record 2A, after first spiral.**

PRACTICE 26.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'kāy-'chē* | 'drive a car' |
| *'hē-'chá* | 'drink tea' |
| *'hē-'shwěy* | 'drink water' |
| *'chr̄-'fàn* | 'eat food' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *'chá 'hē* | 'tea to drink' |
| *'méy-'láy* | 'hasn't come' |
| *yáng·'hwǒ* | 'matches' |
| *shŕ-'lyèw* | 'sixteen' |
| *hwǒ-'chē* | 'train' |
| *wǒ-'láy* | 'I come' |
| *wǒ-'chywù* | 'I go' |
| **mydn·'bāw* | 'bread' |
| *'yàw-'chá* | 'want tea' |
| *'yàw-'dzěw* | 'want to leave' |
| *'dzày-'jyàn* | 'so long!' |

**Record 1A, after fourth spiral.**

PRACTICE 5.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'shyān·sheng* | 'Mr.' |
| *'shyáw·jye* | 'Miss' |
| *'dǔng·le* | 'I understand' |
| *'tày·tay* | 'Mrs.' |

If you rehearse the above groups of two syllables very carefully, until the twists of the voice are all easy, then whenever you come to a new word of two syllables, or group of two one-syllable words, you will be able to put the right tones on it with very little trouble.

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES. (Group Work.) Go through the Basic Sentences (Group II) several more times, at first repeating in unison after the Guide as you did the first time, after that taking turns around the class repeating after him until everyone has had a chance. Think of the meaning as you hear and say each word or as other members of the group speak.

## SECTION D: WORD STUDY

§1. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE ENGLISH. (Individual Study.) Make sure that you know the material of the second group of Basic Sentences by covering the English and seeing if you can remember the meaning of the Chinese. Check the ones that give you trouble and go back to these after you finish the list. Then skip around so that you take them in a different order. Finally go to the Word Study and read it carefully to yourself.

§2. WORD STUDY. (Individual Study.)

POINT 1. ALONE. To say 'I did it alone', 'he did it alone', you say actually 'I one man did it', or 'he one man did it':

*Wǒ-'yí·ge-rén dzày-'Jūng·gwo.* 'I am alone in China' (that is, my family is not with me).

POINT 2. *Nán* AND *Nywǔ*. The syllables *nán* and *nywǔ* mean 'male' and 'female', for human beings (not for animals). Observe the following examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| *'nán·de* | 'a male human being' |
| *'nywǔ·de* | 'a female human being' |
| *'nán-háy·dz* | 'male child' |
| *'nywǔ-háy·dz* | 'female child' |
| *'nywǔ·ér* | 'daughter' (compare *'ér·dz* 'son') |

The two words are used as independent words only when

68

some particular noun, like *'háy·dz*, follows immediately. The forms with *de* added are nouns, and can be used as such. The two words also enter into compounds: *'nywǔ·ér* 'daughter' is an example of this. You will see these two elements in many other expressions later on.

POINT 3. *Nyán* AND *Swèy*. These two words are both measures of time; *nyán* means 'year', and *swèy* means 'year of age',

| | |
|---|---|
| *'sān·nyán* | 'three years' |
| *'sān·swèy* | 'three years old' |

The two words cannot be interchanged; in asking a person's age you must use *swèy*, not *nyán*.

*Nyán* also occurs in the words for 'this year', *'jīn·nyan*, and 'last year', *'chywù·nyan* (literally, 'gone year').

POINT 4. ASKING AGES. In asking the age of a child who is probably less than ten, you use the expression *'jǐ·swèy* 'how many years old?'. If the child is definitely in the teens, then you should say *shŕ-'jǐ·swèy* 'ten and how many more years old?'. For an older person, if you ask at all, the expression should be *'dwō·shaw-swèy* 'many-few years-old?'—'how old?'. The word *jǐ* implies that the number is definitely small, while *'dwō·shǎw* does not imply that. For really old people there are still more polite ways of expressing the question, but you needn't worry about them now. Remember, in connection with questions of this kind, that age is highly respected in China; an older person has had more experience and is therefore looked up to. An old person does not object, therefore, to being asked about his age, so long as the *form* of the question is correct.

POINT 5. MORE ON *de*. In the last group of Basic Sentences you had more examples of the use of *de* to make one group of words modify another, and to make a group of words into a noun:

*díng-'shyǎw-de-'nywǔ-háy·dz* 'the youngest girl' (*díng-'shyǎw* 'most young' is made to modify *'nywǔ-háy·dz* 'girl')

*díng-'shyǎw-de* 'the youngest (person)', or 'the smallest (person or thing)'.

When a descriptive word like *shyǎw* 'young, small', is used *alone* to describe a noun which comes after it, *de* is not usually used: *shyǎw-'háy·dz* 'small child'. When the descriptive word is itself preceded by a word like *dǐng* 'most, topmost', *bū* 'not', *hěn* 'very', then *de must* be used: *'hén-shyǎw-de-'háy·dz* 'a very small child'.

POINT 6. MORE ABOUT NUMBERS. Words for 'the first', 'the second', and so on, are formed simply by putting the element *dì-* before the word for 'one', 'two', and so on:

*yī* 'one'; *dì-'yī* 'the first'
*èr* 'two'; *dì-'èr* 'the second'
*jǐ* 'a few', or 'how many?' *dì-'jǐ* 'which one?' (of a series)

'The second' is always made with *èr*, never with *lyǎng*. Measures are used with these numbers just as with the simple ones:

| | |
|---|---|
| *dì-'yí·ge-rén* | 'the first person' |
| *dì-'wǔ·ge-'bīng* | 'the fifth soldier' |

*dǐ-'jǐ·wǎn-'tsày* 'which bowl of food?' (of a series being eaten or served)

*dǐ-'jǐ·ge-'háy·dz* 'which one of the children?' (that is, the oldest, the second, and so on)

Pᴏɪɴᴛ 7. *Le.* In Unit I the meaning of *'Dwèy·le!* was explained to you. The verb *dwèy* means 'to match things together', as two pieces of a cracked plate, for example, can be matched; the element *le* has the effect of making the sentence refer to something that has already happened, something that happened in the past. Therefore *'Dwèy·le!* means literally 'it has matched together', and so '(what you said) has fitted (the situation)', 'what you said was right'.

*Le* always comes, in a sentence, either immediately after a verb, or else at the end of the sentence (if the verb is last, then of course these two positions are the same). The meaning is always, to the Chinese way of thinking, this idea of putting the reference of the sentence into the past. Here is an example:

*Tā-'chū·chywu.* 'He goes out, he's going out'.

*Tā-'chū·chywu·le.* 'He's gone out.'

The negative form of this—the form that says that such-and-such an event *has not* happened, or *did not* take place some time in the past—does not use *le*. Instead, one puts either *'méy·yěw* 'have not, has not' or just *méy* before the verb:

*Tā-bù-'chū·chywu.* 'He's not going out.'

*Tā-'méy(·yěw)-'chū·chywu.* 'He hasn't gone out', 'he didn't go out.'

Since the *yěw* can be dropped, the result is that either *bū* or *méy* can be used with verbs other than *shř* (which takes only *bū*) and *yěw* (which requires *méy*), with a contrast in meaning:

*Tā-'bù-láy.* 'He isn't coming.'

*Tā-'méy-láy.* 'He didn't come, he hasn't come.'

This is the second way you have learned to talk about the past. The two are not quite the same. Here is an example to show the difference:

*Tā-'bú·shř 'chywù·nyan láy-de.* 'He didn't come last year.'

The reference is to a *definite event* in the past, and the emphasis is on the fact that his coming did not occur *last year.*

*Tā-'chywù·nyan 'méy-láy.* 'He didn't come last year.'

The reference is not to a definite past event, but just in general to past time; the emphasis is on the fact that his coming didn't occur, not on the particular time at which it didn't occur.

Or take the positive forms:

*Tā-'chywù·nyan láy-de.* 'He came *last year.*' Stress again on the definite occurrence and definite time of occurrence: he is probably still here.

*Tā-'chywù·nyan láy·le.* 'He *came* last year.' Stress again on the occurrence, but not on the specific time: he is probably not here any more.

Pᴏɪɴᴛ 8. Tʜᴇ Vᴇʀʙ *Dzày.* Compare the following two sentences:

*Nǐ-'tày·tay dzày-'jè·li-ma?* 'Is your wife here?'

*Nĭ-'tày·tay 'dzày-bu·dzày?* 'Is your wife in (the universe)?'—that is, 'Is your wife living?'

The answers to the first question are:

*'Bú-dzày-'jè·li.* 'She isn't here.'

*Dzày-'jè·li.* 'She is here.'

The answers to the second question are:

*Dzày. or Háy-'dzày.* 'She's (still) living.'

*Bú-'dzày-le.* 'She isn't living.'

When no name of a place is put after the verb *dzày*, it has the special meaning of being in the universe, that is, of being alive. So you must be careful not to answer a question like the first one above with an answer which is appropriate to the second question; you may put across the wrong idea entirely.

In the answer *Bú-'dzày·le*, the *le* is added not to the verb *dzày* 'to be in (the universe)', but to the *group* of words *bú-'dzày* 'not to be in (the universe)'. The meaning, therefore, is literally, 'has (started being) not in the universe'—'has died'. Whenever you find *le* added to a sentence containing *bū*, the meaning is comparable to this: *bù-'hăw-le* 'to have started to be not OK', and so on.

POINT 9. ADVERBS. In Chinese words like *hĕn* 'very', *yĕ* 'also', *dēw* 'both, all', *háy* 'moreover, yet, still', *dzày* 'again' always come immediately before a verb or descriptive word, or are separated from the verb or descriptive word only by *bū* or *méy* 'not'. They may be called *adverbs*. Here are some sentences to bring out their meanings:

*Wŏ-'láy.* 'I come'.

*Tā-'yĕ-láy.* 'He also comes.'

*Wŏ·men-'dēw-láy.* 'We both come.'

*'Ní-yĕ-'láy.* 'You come too.'

*Wŏ·men-'sān·ge-rén 'dēw-láy.* 'We all three come.'

*Wŏ-bù-'láy.* 'I don't come.'

*Tā-'yĕ-bù-'láy.* 'He doesn't come either.'

*Wŏ·men 'dēw-bù-láy.* 'We all don't come'—'None of us comes.'

*Wŏ·men bù-'dēw-láy.* 'We don't all come' (but maybe some of us do)

*Wó-yĕ-'chr̄ yĕ-'hē.* 'I both eat and drink.'

*Wó-yĕ-'yàw yĕ-bú-'yàw.* 'I both want to and don't want to'—'I can't decide.'

*'Yé-hăw.* 'That's all right too.' (It isn't what I want, but I'll accept it anyway)

For *dzày* 'again':

*Wŏ-'dzày-yàw yì·gēn-yáng·hwŏ.* 'I want another match.'

*Wŏ-dzày-yàw yì·gēn-yáng·'hwŏ.* 'I also want a match.'

(notice how the difference in meaning is made by stressing one part of the sentence or another. Chinese is very much like English in this: we san say '*I* think so', 'I *think* so', or 'I think *so*', with three shades of meaning.)

*Nĭ-'dzày-láy wŏ-jyèw-'dzĕw.* 'If you come again I'll immediately leave.'

*Tā-'méy-dzày-láy.* 'He hasn't yet come again.' (since the first time)

*Tā-'bú-dzày-láy-le.* 'He won't come again'.

*Tā-'dzày-bù-láy-le.* He won't ever come again.'

*Tā-'dzày-méy-láy.* 'He never came another time.'

For *'háy* 'moreover, yet, still':

*Tā-háy-'láy-ma?* 'Is he still coming?'

*Tā-yěw-'yí·ge-'dì·di, háy-yěw-'yí·ge-'jyě·jye.* 'He has a younger brother, also an older sister.'

*Tā-'jyā-li 'háy-yěw-'shwéy?* 'Who else is there in his family?'

*Tā-'háy-méy-láy.* 'He hasn't come yet.'

*Tā-'háy-bù-láy.* 'He still isn't coming!'

*Tā-dzěm·me-'háy-méy-láy?* 'How is it that he hasn't come yet?'

*Tā-dzěm·me-'háy-bù-láy?* 'How is it that he still isn't coming?'

§3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY? (Individual Study.) Still working by yourself, read the following groups of sentences and do, in each case, what the English heading suggests. Be sure you know what all the Chinese sentences mean. Practice them aloud, and prepare to give the proper answers in Chinese when you are called on. Do not write anything down. Practice your answers enough so that you don't have to.

1. Someone invites you to carry on a conversation with him, by saying:

a. *Wǒ·men-shwō-'hwà, 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*
b. *Wǒ·men-tán-'hwà-ba.*
c. *Wǒ·men-shwō-'Jūng·gwo-hwà, 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*
d. *Nǐ-'yàw-bu·yàw 'gēn-wǒ 'tán-'hwà?*
e. *Wǒ·men-'tán-yi·tán, 'hǎw-ma?*

2. If you were alone in China, your family (if any) being in the U. S. A., which of these statements might be true?

a. *Wǒ-'yí·ge-rén dzày-'Jūng·gwo.*
b. *Wǒ-'tày·tay-'yí·ge-rén dzày-'Měy·gwo.*
c. *Wǒ-'tày·tay bú-'dzày-le.*
d. *Wǒ-'méy·yěw-'táy·tay.*
e. *Wǒ-bú-'dzày-le.*

3. If you see a child of about eight, how would ask its parents how old it is? Under what conditions would you use the other two questions given here?

a. *Tā-'jīn·nyan shŕ-'jǐ·swèy-le?*
b. *Tā-'jīn·nyan 'jǐ·swèy-le?*
c. *Tā-'jīn·nyan 'dwō·shaw-swèy-le?*

4. If you ask someone if he can talk Chinese, which of these sentences do you use?

a. *Nǐ-'ké·yi-bù-ké·yi shwō-'Jūng·gwo-hwà?*
b. *Nǐ-'hwèy-bu·hwèy shwō-'Jūng·gwo-hwà?*
c. *Nǐ-'yàw-bu·yàw shwō-'Jūng·gwo-hwà?*

5. See if you can figure out the meaning of the two or three words or word-groups in the first four sentences which you have not had yet. Test yourself by checking the proper forms in e and f.

a. *Wǒ-'fù·chin shr̀-'dà-rén.* (New word *'dà-rén*)
b. *Wǒ-'dì·di 'bú·shr̀-'dà-rén.*

c. *Wŏ-'fù·chin shr̀-'nán-rén, 'mŭ·chin shr̀-'nywŭ-rén.*
('nán-rén, 'nywŭ-rén)

d. *Wŏ-'dì·di shr̀-'nán-rén, 'mèy·mey shr̀-'nywŭ-rén.*

*shr̀-*
e. *'Háy·dz 'bú'shr̀- 'dà-rén.*

*'nán-rén.*
f. *Wŏ-'ér·dz shr̀- 'nywŭ-rén.*

6. Who has been in China the longest?
a. *Tā-dzày-'Jūng·gwo 'sān·nyán.*
b. *Nĭ-dzày-'Jūng·gwo shŕ-'èr·ge-ywè.*
c. *Wŏ-dzày-'Jūng·gwo 'sān·shr·ge-ywè.*

7. Here is a riddle. The question is in e. Answer it in Chinese.
a. *Yéw-'lyăng·ge-'Mĕy·gwo-rén.*
f. *'Yí·ge-shr̀-'dà-rén, yí·ge-shr̀-'shyăw-'háy·dz.*
c. *Shyăw-'háy·dz shr̀-'dà-rén-de-'ér·dz.*
d. *'Dà-rén 'bú·shr̀-shyăw-'háy·dz-de-'fù·chin.*
e. *Tā-shr̀-'shwéy?*

8. Here is another riddle.
a. *Wŏ-'fù·chin yéw-'lyăng·ge-'háy·dz.*
b. *'Yí·ge-'nán·de, 'yí·ge-'nywŭ·de.*
c. *'Yí·ge-shr̀-'nĭ, 'yí·ge-shr̀-'wŏ.*
d. *Wŏ-shr̀-'nán·de.*
e. *Nĭ-shr̀-'fù·chin·de-'shém·me-rén?*

9. Here is another.
a. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng-de-'fù·chin yéw-'wŭ·ge-'háy·dz.*
b. *'Sān·ge-'nán·de, 'lyăng·ge-'nywŭ·de,*
c. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng shr̀-dì-'sān·ge.*
d. *Tā-yĕw-yí·ge-'gē·ge, yí·ge-'dì·di.*
e. *Tā-yéw-'jĭ·ge-'jyĕ·jye, 'jĭ·ge-'mèy·mey?*

10. Here is another.
a. *Wó-yĕw-'sz̀·ge-'gē·ge, 'yí·ge-'jyĕ·jye, 'lyăng·ge-mèy·mey.*
*Wŏ·men·de-'fù·mŭ yí·'gùng-yéw-'jĭ·ge-háy·dz?*

11. How much money did I have before I gave some away?
a. *Wó-'gĕy·le-tā 'lyèw·kway-chyan.*
b. *'Gĕy·le-nĭ 'sz̀·kway-'wŭ·máw-chyan.*
c. *Wŏ-shyàn·'dzày 'háy-yéw-'jyĕw·kwày-'wŭ·máw-chyan.*

12. Another riddle.
a. *Wó-yĕw-'shŕ·kwày-chyan.*
b. *Wŏ-'gē·ge 'yé-yĕw-shŕ·kwày-chyan.*
c. *Wŏ-'dì·di yĕw-shŕ-'wŭ·kwày-chyan.*
d. *Wŏ·men-'dì·shyung-'sān·ge-rén yí·'gùng-yĕw-'dwō·shaw-chyán?*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY? (Group Work.) Turn to the What Would You Say? The Leader will read the English statement for each group and will ask one of you to give aloud his answer. Be ready to justify your answer. Then the Leader will call on someone for the next group.

§5. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE. (Individual Study.) Working individually, check once more your knowledge of the second group of Basic Sentences of this Unit by covering the Chinese. Try to recall each Chinese expression as you read the English equivalents. Check the ones you cannot get right away, and go back to them. Look at the Chinese only if absolutely necessary. Then skip around through the sentences to be sure you can get the meaning when you come to them in a different order.

## SECTION E: LISTENING IN

§1. WORD STUDY CHECK-UP. (Group Work.) The Leader will call on various members of the group to explain and demonstrate points covered in the two word studies.

§2. LISTENING-IN. (Group Work.) Go through the following conversations with the group. Keep your books closed the first time through, and see how much you can understand just from listening. If you are sure of the Basic Sentences, and have paid attention to the Word Studies, you should have little trouble.

CONVERSATION 1. MR. ROSS MEETS MR. WÁNG AT A TEAPARTY, IN THE GARDEN OF THE HOST'S HOUSE.

**Record 9A, after spiral.**

Ross: *'Wáng-shyān·sheng, ní-'hăw?*
Wáng: *'Lwó-shyān·sheng!*
*Dàw-'jè·li-láy!*
*Dzày-'jè·li 'dzwò, 'hăw-bu·hăw?*
Ross: *'Hăw.*
*'Wáng-'tày·tay 'láy·le-ma?*
Wáng: *'Méy-láy; dzày-'jyā-li.*
Ross: *Tā-'dzĕm·me-bù-láy?*
Wáng: *'Jyā-li yéw-shyăw-'háy·dz.*
Ross: *Jĭ·'swèy·le?*
Wáng: *'Lyăng·swèy.*
Ross: *Shr̀-'nán·de, shr̀-'nywŭ·de?*
Wáng: *Shr̀-'nán·de.*

CONVERSATION 2. THE CONVERSATION CONTINUES.

Ross: *Ní-yéw-'nywŭ·ér-ma?*
Wáng: *Yéw-'lyăng·ge.*
Ross: *'Wó-yĕw-'sz̀·ge.*
Wáng: *Yĕw-'ér·dz-ma?*
Ross: *Yĕw-'yí·ge.*
Wáng: *Ní-'yĕw-méy·yĕw 'dì·shyung?*
Ross: *Yĕw-yí·ge-'gē·ge, yí·ge-'dì·di.*
*Wó-'mŭ·chin yéw-'wŭ·ge-háy·dz,*
*sān·ge-'nán·de, lyăng·ge-'nywŭ·de.*
Wáng: *'Nĭ shr̀-dì-'jĭ·ge?*
Ross:* *Wŏ-shr̀-dì-'sān·ge.*

CONVERSATION 3. MR. WÁNG ASKS ABOUT MR. ROSS'S SISTERS.

**Record 9B, beginning.**

Wáng: *Nĭ-'háy·yĕw-yí·ge-'jyĕ·jye, yí·ge-'mèy·mey, 'dwèy·bu·dwèy?*
Ross: *'Dwèy·le.*

---

* This word was by accident left off the record.

**Wáng:** *Ní-'jyě·jye gēn-'mèy·mey dēw-dzày-'Měy·gwo-ma?*
**Ross:** *Bù-'dēw-dzày-Méy·gwo.*
*'Jyě·jye dzày-'Yīng·gwo.*
**Wáng:** *Tā-'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'chywù-de?*
**Ross:** *'Chywù·nyan-'chī·ywè.*
**Wáng:** *Tā-dzwò-'shém·me 'chywù-de?*
*Shr̀-dzwò-'chwán 'chywù-de-ma?*
**Ross:** *'Bú·shr̀.*
*Dzwò-fēy·'jī 'chywù-de.*
*'Mèy·mey yě-yaw-'chywù.*
*Kě·shr dàw-'Yīng·gwo-chywù-de rén hěn-'dwō.*
*Fēy·'jī-shàng 'méy·yěw-tā-dzwò-de-'dì·fang.*
**Wáng:** *Tā-děng·le 'dwō·shaw-shŕ·hew-le?*
**Ross:** *Děng·le jǐ·ge-'ywè-le.*

### Conversation 4. After talking a while Mr. Ross wants some tea.

**Ross:** *Dzěm·me-'méy·yěw-rén 'géy-wǒ·men 'chá hē?*
**Wáng:** *'Chá dzày-'wū·dz-li-de 'jwō·dz-shang.*
*Wǒ·men dàw-'wū·dz-li-chywù 'hē-ba.*
**Ross:** *'Hǎw.*
*Jè·ge-'dì·fang 'rén dwō, 'wū·dz-li 'rén shǎw.*
*Wǒ·men 'ké·yi dzày-'wū·dz-li tán 'hwà.*
(they enter the room)
*'Chá dzày-'nǎ·li?*
**Wáng:** *'Nà 'bú·shr-dzày-'jwō·dz-shang-ma?*
*Nǐ-hē-'jè·wǎn.*
**Ross:** *Jè·ge-'chá 'hěn-hǎw-hē.*
**Wáng:** *'Jè-shr̀ 'hěn-hǎw-de-chá.*
*'Yàw-bu·yàw 'chr̄-yì·dyǎn-'dūng·shi?*
**Ross:** *Shyàn·'dzày bù-chr̄.*

### Conversation 5. Mr. Wáng asks about Mr. Ross's parents.

**Wáng:** *Nǐ-'fù·mǔ dēw-'dzày-ma?*
**Ross:** *'Fù·chin bú-'dzày-le.*
*'Mǔ·chin háy-'dzày.*
**Wáng:** *'Jīn·nyan 'dwō·shǎw-'swèy-le?*
**Ross:** *Wǔ·shr-'jyěw.*
*Nǐ-'fù·chin dzày-Měy·gwo shém·me-'dì·fang?*
**Wáng:** *Dzày-Jr̄·jyā·'gē.*
**Ross:** *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'hwéy·lay?*
**Wáng:** *Tā-'jīn·nyan bù-'hwéy·lay, yàw-dàw-'Yīng·gwo-chýwù.*
**Ross:** *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'chywù?*
**Wáng:** *'Jyěw·ywè-li dzwò-'chwán chywù.*

### Conversation 6. They say goodbye.

**Ross:** *Yěw-'chwán-ma?*
**Wáng:** *'Yěw, kě·shr dzwò-'chwán-de dēw-shr̀-'bīng.*
*Tā-yàw-'děng-yí·ge 'méy·yew-'bīng-de-chwán chywù.*
**Ross:** *'Dwèy-bu·chǐ, shyàn·dzày lyèw·dyǎn-'bàn-le.*
*Wǒ-yàw-dàw-fàn-'gwǎn·dz-chywù chr̄-'fàn.*
**Wáng:** *Nǐ-'yí·ge-rén 'chywù-ma?*
**Ross:** *'Bú·shr̀; wǒ-gēn-'Jāng-shyān·sheng-chywù.*
*Nǐ-'ké·yi 'gēn-wǒ·men 'chywù-ma?*

**Wáng:** *'Dwèy-bu·chǐ, wǒ-shyàn·'dzày děy-hwéy-'jyā-chywù.*[*]
*Dzày-'jyàn.*

After the first time through for comprehension, go through these conversations again with your books open, repeating after the records or Guide. Then discuss anything you don't understand. Then assign parts and go through with individual repetition, until everyone has had a chance. Speak as naturally as you can.

## SECTION F: CONVERSATION

§1. VOCABULARY CHECK-UP. (Group Work.) The Leader will start a final vocabulary check-up by speaking to some member of the group using the sentence *Jūng·gwo-'hwà cigarette 'dzěm·me-shwō?*, but substituting some other English word or expression for *cigarette*. Whoever answers his question will ask a similar one of someone else, and so on until the vocabulary of this Unit has been covered and everyone has had a chance. Do not take the words and expressions of the Unit in any regular order.

§2. CARRYING ON CONVERSATION. (Group Work.) As with the previous Units, your final job is to carry on conversation of your own using the material you have had so far. You can take your cues from the conversations in Section E, or you can return to any of the conversations given in previous Units and be more complete in them because of the words and expressions you have since learned. Do not follow any model exactly, though; use your imagination, and ask or answer whatever comes to your head, so long as you know the Chinese expressions for it or can make yourself understood with a new expression based on the old ones. Make it as lively as you can. Be sure everyone gets a chance. If you have a Guide, he will check your pronunciation or your expressions from time to time, and perhaps tell you a better way to say something if you make up an expression that isn't the one usually used.

---

[*] This sentence was recorded this way by accident. You have not yet had the word *'děy*; it means 'must, need, have to', so that the sentence means 'Excuse me, right now I have to go back home.' If you don't want to deal with a new word just now, substitute *'yàw* for *'děy*, and the sentence will mean 'Excuse me, right now I want (or need) to go back home.'

# UNIT V

# HANDLING THINGS

## SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the Basic Sentences just as you have before, repeating after the Guide or records. The sentences are a little longer in this Unit. Take your time, going over them as often as necessary.

### §1. Basic Sentences (Group I). (Group Work.)

**Record 10A, beginning.**

| English Equivalents | Aids to Listening |
|---|---|
| foreign country | *'wày·gwo* |
| friend | *'péng·yew* |
| I have a friend who is a foreigner. | *Wó-yĕw-yí·ge-'wày·gwo-péng·yew.* |
| measure for houses | *'swŏ* |
| house | *'fáng·dz* |
| He has a house. | *Tā-yĕw-yì·swŏ-'fáng·dz.* |
| garden *or* yard | *'ywàn·dz* |
| The house has two gardens. | *'Jè·swŏ-fáng·dz yĕw-lyăng·ge-'ywàn·dz.* |
| front side | *'chyán·byan* |
| back side | *'hèw·byan* |
| One is in front, one is in the rear. | *Yí·ge-dzày-'chyán·byan, yí·ge-dzày-'hèw·byan.* |
| The one in front is big, the one in the rear is small. | *'Chyán·byan·de 'dà, 'hèw·byan·de 'shyăw.* |
| measure for trees | *'kē* |
| tree | *'shù* |
| In the big garden there's a tree. | *'Dà-ywàn·dz-li yĕw-yì·kē-'shù.* |
| flowers | *'hwā* |
| There are flowers on the tree. | *'Shù-shang yĕw-'hwā.* |
| under side | *'dĭ·shya* |
| chair | *'yĭ·dz* |
| measure for chairs | *'bă-* |
| measure for tables | *'jāng* |
| There are two chairs and a table under the tree. | *'Shù-dĭ·shya yĕw-'lyáng·bá-'yĭ·dz, yì·jāng-'jwō·dz.* |
| today | *'jīn·tyan* |
| Today I went out to take a walk. | *'Jīn·tyan wŏ-tsúng-'jyā-li 'chū·chywu 'dzĕw-yi·dzĕw.* |
| to know | *'jr̄·dàw* |
| I didn't know where to go. | *Wŏ-bù-'jr̄·dàw dàw-'nă·li 'chywù.* |
| to think | *'shyăng* |

| | |
|---|---|
| I thought for a minute. | *Wó-'shyǎng·le-yi·shyǎng.* |
| to have to | *'děy* |
| to look at *or* see | *'kàn* |
| ‘I must go visit this friend of mine.’ | *‘Wó-'děy-chywù 'kàn-yi·kàn wǒ-'jè·wèy-'péng·yew.’* |
| I entered his garden. | *Wǒ-'jìn·dàw-tā·de-'ywàn·dz-li.* |
| to run | *'pǎw* |
| He ran out of his house. | *Tā-tsúng-'fáng·dz-li 'pǎw·chū·lay.* |

**Record 10B, beginning.**

| | |
|---|---|
| the inside | *'lǐ·byān* |
| to be hot | *'rè* |
| He said ‘It's very hot inside the house.’ | *Tā-shwō, “'fáng·dz-lǐ·byan hěn-'rè.’* |
| outside | *'wày·byān* |
| ‘Let's sit a while outside.’ | *‘Dzày-'wày·byan 'dzwò-yi·dzwò-ba.’* |
| We sat down on the chairs under the tree, talked, and looked at the flowers. | *Wǒ·men-'dzwò·dzày-'shù-dǐ·shya-de 'yǐ·dz-shàng, tán-'hwà, kàn-'hwā.* |
| to be able | *'néng* |
| He said ‘Can you stay for dinner?’ | *Tā-shwō, ‘nǐ-'néng-bu·néng dzày-'jè·li chr̄-'fàn?’* |
| I said ‘Sorry, today I can't.’ | *Wǒ-shwō, “'dwèy-bu·chǐ, 'jīn·tyan 'bù-néng.’* |
| tomorrow | *'míng·tyan* |
| He said ‘How about tomorrow?’ | *Tā-shwō, “'míng·tyan-ne?”* |
| I said ‘Yes, I can tomorrow.’ | *Wǒ-shwō, “'míng·tyan 'kě·yi.’* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. (Group Work.) In the following four practices you are given a chance to drill on groups of *three* syllables with different sequences of tones on them. Just as with groups of two syllables, if you get these down pat you will be able to transfer that ease of pronunciation to other groups as you learn them.

**Record 2A, after second spiral.**

PRACTICE 27.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'Jūng·gwo-'bīng* | ‘Chinese soldiers’ |
| *'Dé·gwo-'bīng* | ‘German soldiers’ |
| *'Měy·gwo-'bīng* | ‘American soldiers’ |
| *'Fà·gwo-'bīng* | ‘French soidiers’ |
| *'Jūng·gwo-'rén* | ‘Chinese people’ |
| *'Dé·gwo-'rén* | ‘German people’ |
| *'Měy·gwo-'rén* | ‘American people’ |
| *'Fà·gwo-'rén* | ‘French people’ |

**Record 2A, after third spiral.**

PRACTICE 28.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'Jūng·gwo-*'bǐ* | ‘Chinese pens’ |
| *'Dé·gwo-*'bǐ* | ‘German pens’ |

| | |
|---|---|
| *'Měy·gwo-*'bǐ* | 'American pens' |
| *'Fà·gwo-*'bǐ* | 'French pens' |
| *'Jūng·gwo-'hwà* | 'Chinese language' |
| *'Dé·gwo-'hwà* | 'German language' |
| *'Měy·gwo-'hwà* | 'American language' |
| *'Fà·gwo-'hwà* | 'French language' |

In the next two you will notice that it is very difficult to hear the difference between *tsúng*, that begins the last four of the first practice, and *gēn*, that begins the first four of the second practice—difficult, that is, to hear any difference in tone; the vowels and consonants are clear enough. Notice also that these syllables are *not stressed*—that is, they are not very loud. The loudest syllables are the second syllable of each group, as indicated by the little mark ('). *This is generally true*: syllables with first-tone and syllables with second-tone are practically identical when they are not stressed. But they are still pronounced quite differently than either the third or the fourth tone under the same unstressed conditions. Here, as always, let your ear be the chief guide; if you hear something different than you see, follow what you hear.

**Record 2A, after fourth spiral.**

PRACTICE 29.

| | |
|---|---|
| *dzày-'Jūng·gwo* | 'in China' |
| *dzày-'Dé·gwo* | 'in Germany' |
| *dzày-'Měy·gwo* | 'in the United States' |
| *dzày-'Fà·gwo* | 'in France' |
| *tsúng-'Jūng·gwo* | 'from China' |
| *tsúng-'Dé·gwo* | 'from Germany' |
| *tsúng-'Měy·gwo* | 'from the United States' |
| *tsúng-'Fà·gwo* | 'from France' |

**Record 2A, after last spiral.**

PRACTICE 30.

| | |
|---|---|
| *gēn-'Jūng·gwo* | 'with China' |
| *gēn-'Dé·gwo* | 'with Germany' |
| *gēn-'Měy·gwo* | 'with the United States' |
| *gēn-'Fà·gwo* | 'with France' |
| *gěy-'Jūng·gwo* | 'for China' |
| *gěy-'Dé·gwo* | 'for Germany' |
| *géy-'Měy·gwo* | 'for the United States' |
| *gěy-'Fà·gwo* | 'for France' |

Notice also in the next to the last phrase how the tone of *gěy* automatically jumps up from third to second when the next syllable has the third tone.

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES. (Group Work.) Go through the Basic Sentences again two or three times, first in unison, then taking turns around the group imitating what is heard.

§4. CHECK YOURSELF. Did you practice the tone-groups as indicated?

shifted to the second syllable: *bù-jr̄·'dàw* or *bù-'jr̄·dàw* 'not to know'.

Point 4. Question-Words. Notice the following examples:

*Tsúng-'nǎ·li-láy?* 'Where are you coming from?'

*Wǒ-bù-jr̄·'dàw dàw-'nǎ·li-chywù.* 'I don't know where to go.'

*Wǒ-'bú-dàw-nǎ·li-chywù.* 'I'm not going anywhere in particular.'

The use of the word *'nǎ·li* does not necessarily imply a question. The meaning may be indefinite, as in the second and third examples. The same is true of the other 'question-words' of Chinese. Thus, with *shwéy* 'who?':

*Nà-shr̀-'shwéy?* 'Who is that?'

*Shwéy-'jr̄·dàw?* 'Who knows?'

*'Shwéy dēw-'jr̄·dàw.* 'Everybody knows.'

*'Shwéy dēw-bù-'jr̄·dàw.* 'Nobody knows.'

And with *'shém·me* 'what?':

*Nà-shr̀-'shém·me?* 'What is that?'

*Wó-yě-bù-'jr̄·dàw-shém·me.* 'I also don't know something.'—that is, 'There are things I don't know either.'

*Tā-'shém·me-dēw-bù-jr̄·'dàw.* 'He doesn't know anything.'

*Tā-'shém·me-dēw-'jr̄·dàw.* 'He knows everything.'

Point 5. *Dzěw.* At the end of a sentence, the verb *dzěw* may mean 'to depart', or simply 'to be in motion, to proceed'. In the middle of a sentence it is apt rather to mean 'to walk':

*Shyàng-'yèw dzěw.* 'Go to the right.'

*Wǒ·men-'dzěw·dàw-'nà·li-chywù.* 'We walk to that place.'

Point 6. *Chywù* and *Láy.* At the ends of sentences about motion, *láy* 'come' may mean nothing more definite than that the motion talked about is *towards the speaker*, and *chywù* 'go' may mean nothing more definite than that the motion talked about is *not* towards the speaker. For example:

*Wǒ·men-'dzěw·dàw-'nà·li-chywù.* 'We walk to that place.'

*Tā·men-'dzěw·dàw-'jè·li-láy.* 'They walk to this place.'

But *chywù* and *láy* may be followed by more words in the same sentence. When this is the case, the meaning of *chywù* is usually 'to go (in order) to do so-and-so', and of *láy* 'to come (in order) to do so-and-so'. For example:

*Wǒ-chywù-'kàn-wǒ·de-'péng·yew.* 'I go to see my friend.'

*Wǒ-dàw-'ywàn·dz-li-chywù kàn-'hwā.* 'I go into the garden to see the flowers.'

Point 7. Word-Order with *Tsúng* and *Dàw.* A group of words starting with *tsúng* 'from' or *dàw* 'to', to tell the starting-place or ending-place of some motion, must come in a particular place in the sentence. Here are some examples which will bring this out. Read each line from left to right, but notice how the vertical columns are arranged:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Wŏ-* | *tsúng-'nà·li* | *'păw* | | *lay.* |
| 'I | from that place | run | | come.' |
| *Tā-* | *tsúng-'fáng·dz-li* | *'chū·* | | *chywu.* |
| 'He | from house-inside | exit | | go.' |
| *Wó-* | | *'păw* | *dàw-'jè·li-* | *láy.* |
| 'I | | run | to this place | come.' |
| *Tā-* | | *'jìn·* | *dàw-'fáng·dz-li-* | *chywù.* |
| 'He | | enter | to house-inside | go.' |
| *Wŏ-* | *tsúng-'nà·li* | *'păw* | *dàw-'jè·li-* | *láy.* |
| 'I | from that place | run | to this place | come.' |

As you see, the group which begins with *tsúng* 'from' must come *before* the main verb of motion, while the group beginning with *dàw* comes *after* it, the *dàw* hitching right onto the main verb of motion to make a single compound verb. The position of *láy* or *chywù* at the end of the whole expression is not altered.

POINT 8. COMPOUND VERBS. As just illustrated, verbs of motion like *păw* 'run, move fast', *dzĕw* 'walk', *chū* 'exit', *jìn* 'enter', tend to cluster together into longer compound verbs. The combinations are very easy to figure out, since the meaning of each of the parts is retained. Here are some of the important combinations of this kind, including only parts that you have had, but including some combinations that you have not seen yet. Certain of the groups require that there should be a *láy* or *chywù* later in the sentence; this is indicated by putting those words in parentheses after the group.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'dzĕw·dàw (láy, chywù)* | 'to walk to' |
| *'păw·dàw (láy, chywù)* | 'to run to, move fast to' |
| *'jìn·dàw (láy, chywù)* | 'to enter, go into' |
| *'păw·jìn (láy, chywù)* | 'to run into' |
| *'dzĕw·jìn (láy, chywù)* | 'to walk into' |
| *'păw·chū (láy, chywù)* | 'to run out of' |
| *'dzĕw·chū (láy, chywù)* | 'to walk out of' |
| *'dzĕw·lay* | 'to come walking' |
| *'păw·lay* | 'to come running' |
| *'jìn·lay* | 'to come in' |
| *'chū·lay* | 'to come out' |
| *'dzĕw·chywu* | 'to go, walking' |
| *'păw·chywu* | 'to go, running' |
| *'jìn·chywu* | 'to go in' |
| *'chū·chywu* | 'to go out' |
| *'dzwò·dzày* | 'to sit in or at' |
| *'jù·dzày* | 'to stay *or* live in or at' |
| *'dzwò·shya* | 'to sit down' |

Notice that it is always the first syllable of the compound which is stressed (spoken loudest). The second part frequently loses its tone altogether.

You will also notice that *dzĕw* 'walk' and *păw* 'run' are used in just the same way in these compounds—wherever there is a compound with *dzĕw*, *păw* can be substituted for it. The word *fēy* 'to fly' can be used in the same compounds too (remember *fēy·'jī* 'airplane'): *'fēy·dàw* 'to fly to', and so on.

POINT 9. PLACE-WORDS. In Chinese there is a whole set of nouns which are specialized for giving the location of things relative to each other. These may be called *place-words*. Here are the ones you have had so far:

| | |
|---|---|
| *lǐ* | 'inside' |
| *'lǐ·byān* | 'inside' |
| *wày* | 'outside' |
| *'wày·byān* | 'outside' |
| *shàng* | 'top side' |
| *'jè·li* | 'here' |
| *'nà·li* | 'there' |
| *'nǎ·li* | 'where' |
| *shém·me-'dì·fang* | 'where?' |
| *'dzwǒ·byan* | 'left side' |
| *'yèw·byan* | 'right side' |
| *'chyán·byan* | 'front side' |
| *'hèw·byan* | 'rear side' |
| *'dǐ·shya* | 'under side' |

Two of these, *-lǐ* and *-shàng*, are added directly onto a noun:

| | |
|---|---|
| *'jwō·dz-shang* | 'top of the table' |
| *'wū·dz-li* | 'inside of the room' |

The others are simply put next after a noun; the syllable *de* may be added to the noun to make it clear what the connection is:

| | |
|---|---|
| *'fáng·dz(·de)-chyán·byan* | 'front side of the house' |
| *'shù(·de)-dzwǒ·byan* | 'left side of the tree' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *wǒ-'jè·li* | 'here where I am' |
| *tā·men-'nà·li* | 'there where they are'. |

If it is clear what house, or tree, or person or thing reference is made to, then that word can be omitted. Thus, if you know that you are talking about places relative to a particular house, you can say simply *'chyán·byan* for 'the front side (of the house)'.

Many of these words have *byān* as second syllable. *Byān* is a measure of place, meaning approximately 'side'; thus you can say *'yì·byān* 'one side', *'lyǎng·byān* 'two sides (e.g., of a table)', *'jè·byān* 'this side', *'nà·byān* 'that side', *'nǎ·byān* 'which side?', and so forth.

The place-words *chyán* 'front', *hèw* 'rear', *dzwǒ* 'left', *yèw* 'right', *wày* 'outside' and *lǐ* 'inside', are used without the added *byān* in cases like these:

| | |
|---|---|
| *shyàng-'yèw dzěw* | 'go to the right' |
| *shyàng-'hèw dzěw* | 'go to the rear' |

POINT 10. USE OF PLACE-WORDS. With words like *dàw* 'to', *tsúng* 'from', *dzày* 'at, in', *shyàng* 'towards', place-words are very important. Compare the meanings of the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| *dàw-fàn-'gwǎn dz* | 'to the restaurant' |
| *dàw-fàn-'gwǎn·dz-li* | '*into* the restaurant' |

Words referring to persons cannot be used alone after *dàw* 'to' and the other words of that set. That is, you cannot say *dzày-'wŏ* 'at me' or *dàw-'péng·yew* 'to my friend'. You have to use a place-word too: *dzày-'wŏ-jè·li* 'at this place where I am'; *dàw-'péng·yew-nà·li* 'to the place where the friend is', 'to the friend's place'.

§3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY? (Individual Study.) Study the following groups of Chinese sentences by yourself as usual. The English clues will tell you what should be done in each case. Be sure, of course, that you know the meaning of every Chinese sentence.

1. If you want to introduce a good friend of yours to someone, you could say:

    a. *'Jè·wèy shr̀-wŏ·de-'hăw-péng·yew.*
    b. *Wŏ-'géy-nĭ·men 'jyè·shàw.*
    c. *Wŏ·de-'péng·yew yĕw-yì·swŏ-'fáng·dz.*

2. If there is a tree behind a house, which of these statements are correct?

    a. *Fáng·dz-'chyán·byan yĕw-yì·kē-'shù.*
    b. *Fáng·dz-'dzwŏ·byan yĕw-yì·kē-'shù.*
    c. *'Shù dzày-fáng·dz-'hèw·byan.*
    d. *Fáng·dz-'hèw·byan yĕw-yì·kē-'shù.*
    e. *'Shù dzày-fáng·dz-'yèw·byan.*

3. If you are standing outside the door of a friend's house, and he, standing inside, invites you in, he says:

    a. *Chĭng 'jìn·lay.*
    b. *Chĭng jìn·chywu.*
    c. *Chĭng-'dzwò.*

4. If you and a friend are in his yard and he invites you to enter the house, he says:

    a. *Chĭng 'jìn·lay.*
    b. *Chĭng 'jìn·chywu.*
    c. *Chĭng-'dzwò.*

5. If you are in your house and a friend, standing outside, asks you to join him, he says:

    a. *Chĭng 'jìn·lay.*
    b. *Chĭng 'chū·lay.*
    c. *Chĭng 'chū·chywu.*

6. If you are in a friend's house with him and he wants the two of you to be in the yard, he says to you:

    a. *Chĭng 'chū·lay.*
    b. *Wŏ·men 'chū·chywu, 'hăw-ma?*
    c. *Chĭng 'chū·chywu.*

7. Which of these is more customary?

    a. *Wŏ·men 'dzwò·dzay-'jwŏ·dz-shang.*
    b. *Wŏ·men 'dzwò·dzay-'yĭ·dz-shang.*
    c. *Wŏ·men 'dzwò·dzay-'shù-shang.*
    d. *Wŏ·men 'dzwò·dzay-'fáng·dz-shang.*

8. Are these all likely?

    a. *Wŏ-chywù-'kàn-wŏ·de-'péng·yew.*
    b. *Wŏ·men chywù-'kàn-dyàn·'yĭng.*
    c. *Wŏ·men chywù-'kàn-tsè·'swŏ.*
    d. *Wŏ·men chywù-'kàn-dyàn·yĭng·'ywàn.*
    e. *Wŏ·men dàw-fàn·'dyàn-chywù kàn-dyàn·'yĭng.*

9. What are the differences in meaning between these?

    a. *Wŏ-néng-kàn-'hwā.*
    b. *Wŏ-kĕ·yi-kàn-'hwā.*
    c. *Wŏ-hwèy-kàn-'hwā.*

d. *Wǒ-yàw-kàn-'hwā.*
e. *Wó-děy-kàn-'hwā.*
f. *Wó-shyǎng-kàn-'hwā.*

10. Which of these are possible?
a. *Wǒ·men tsúng-'Měy·gwo dzwò-fēy·'jī dàw-'Jūng·gwo-chywù.*
b. *Wǒ·men tsúng-'Měy·gwo dzwò-'chwán dàw-'Jūng·gwo-chywù.*
c. *Wǒ·men tsúng-'Měy·gwo dzwò-'dyàn-chē dàw-'Jūng·gwo-chywù.*

11. How many times does the soldier enter the hotel?
a. *Yí·ge-'bīng tsúng-fàn·'gwǎn·dz-li 'dzěw·chu·lay.*
b. *Tā-'pǎw·daw-fàn·'dyàn-chywù.*
c. *Tā-'pǎw·jin-fàn·'dyàn-li-chywù.*
d. *Tā-tsúng-fàn·'dyàn 'dzěw·daw-hwǒ-chē-'jàn-chywù.*
e. *Tā-tsúng-hwǒ-chē-'jàn-li 'pǎw·chu·lay.*
f. *Tā-tsúng-hwǒ-chē-'jàn dzwò-dyàn-'chē dàw-fàn·'dyàn-chywù.*
g. *Fàn·'dyàn·de-chyán·byan yěw-yì·kē-'shù.*
h. *Nà·ge-'bīng 'dzwò·dzay-shù-'dǐ·shya.*

12. Here is a riddle; answer the questions in e, f, and g:
a. *Wǒ-shr̀-'Wáng-shyān·sheng.*
b. *Wó-yěw-'yí·ge-'gē·ge, 'yí·ge-'dì·di.*
c. *Wǒ-'háy-yěw-yí·ge-'mèy·mey.*
d. *Wǒ-'fù·mǔ yí·'gùng-yěw-'bā·ge-háy·dz.*
e. *Wó-yěw-'jǐ·ge-'jyě·jye?*
f. *Wǒ·men-'jyā yí·'gùng-yěw-'jǐ·ge-'nán-rén, 'jǐ·ge-'nywǔ-rén?*
g. *Yí·'gùng shr̀-'dwō·shaw-rén?*

13. Another riddle:
a. *Wǒ·de-'péng·yew hěn-'dwō.*
b. *'Lyǎng·ge shr̀-'Yīng·gwo-rén.*
c. *'Sān·ge shr̀-'Měy·gwo-rén.*
d. *'Yí·ge shr̀-'Fà·gwo-rén.*
e. *'Yí·ge shr̀-'Dé·gwo-rén.*
f. *'Wǔ·ge shr̀-'Jūng·gwo-rén.*
g. *Wǒ-yí·'gùng yěw-'dwō·shaw-péng·yew?*
h. *'Jǐ·ge shr̀-'Jūng·gwo-rén, 'jǐ·ge-'bú·shr̀-Jūng·gwo-rén?*

14. Another riddle:
a. *Wǒ-shr̀-'Měy·gwo-rén.*
b. *Wó-yěw-yí·wèy-'Yīng·gwo-péng·yew.*
c. *'Háy-yěw-'shŕ·wèy-'Měy·gwo-péng·yew, 'lyǎng·wèy-'Jūng·gwo-péng·yew.*
d. *Wǒ·men dēw-dzày-'Měy·gwo.*
e. *Wǒ·de-'péng·yew-li yéw-'jǐ·ge shr̀-'wày·gwo-rén?*
f. *Wǒ·men yí·'gùng-shr̀-'dwō·shaw-rén?*

15. Another riddle:
a. *'Lyèw·ge-rén chr̄·le-'shŕ·wǎn-'fàn.*
b. *'Lyèw·ge-rén-li yěw-'dà-rén, yé-yéw-shyǎw-'háy·dz.*
c. *'Yí·ge-dà-rén néng-chr̄-'lyáng·wǎn-fàn.*
d. *'Yí·ge-shyǎw-'háy·dz néng-chr̄-'yì·wǎn-fàn.*
e. *Yí·'gùng yéw-'jǐ·ge-'dà-rén, 'jǐ·ge-shyǎw-'háy·dz?*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY? (Group Work.) Working as a group, and under the direction of the Leader, go through the sentences of the What Would You Say?, and figure out together the solutions to each one.

§5. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE. (Individual Study.) Working individually again, check your knowledge of the first group of Basic Sentences by covering the Chinese and calling the Chinese expressions to mind as you read the English. Look at the Chinese only if absolutely necessary. Follow the regular plan which you used in the first four Units.

## SECTION C: BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the following Basic Sentences just as you have done with the previous groups.

§1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP II). (Group Work.)

**Record 10B, after spiral.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| self | *'dz̀·jĭ* |
| This friend of mine lives by himself in a big house. | *Wŏ-jè·wèy-'péng·yew 'dz̀·jĭ-'jù·dzày-yì·swŏ-'dà-'fáng·dz-li.* |
| He has lived there three years. | *Tā-dzày-'nà·li 'jù·le 'sān·nyán-le.* |
| yesterday | *'dzwó·tyan* |
| Yesterday we didn't sit in the house, we sat in the garden. | *'Dzwó·tyan wŏ·men 'méy-dzày-'wū·dz-li-dzwò, shr̀-dzày-'ywàn·dz-li 'dzwò-de.* |
| because of | *'wèy* |
| ‘Why didn't you go into the house to sit?’ | *‘Wèy-'shém·me bú-dàw-'wū·dz-li-chywu 'dzwò?’* |
| because | *'yīn·wèy* |
| too | *'tày* |
| cool and comfortable | *'lyáng·kwày* |
| Because it was too hot inside; the garden was cool and comfortable. | *Yīn·wèy 'wū·dz-li tày-'rè, 'ywàn·dz-li 'lyáng·kway.* |
| cold | *'lĕng* |
| ‘Was it cold?’ | *‘'Lĕng-bu·lĕng?’* |
| It was cool, but not cold. | *'Lyáng·kway, kĕ·shr bù-'lĕng.* |

**Record 11A, beginning.**

| | |
|---|---|
| to bring *or* take | *'ná* |
| He brought a couple of chairs out from the room. | *Tā-tsúng-'wū·dz-li 'ná·chu-lyáng·bá-'yĭ·dz-lay.* |
| grasping *or* considering | *'bă* |
| to put in *or* at | *'gē·dzay* |
| He put one chair on the farther side of the table. | *Tā-bă-'yì·bá-'yĭ·dz 'gē·dzay·'jwō·dz-de 'nà·byan.* |
| again | *'yèw* |
| to hand something to | *'dì·gĕy* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Then he passed the other chair to me. | *Yèw-bǎ-'nà-yì·bá-'yǐ·dz 'dì·gey-wǒ.* |
| to sit down | *'dzwò·shya* |
| We sat down on the chairs. | *Wǒ·men dzày-'yǐ·dz-shang 'dzwò·shya.* |
| He said 'I'll get some cigarettes for you.' | *Tā-shwō 'wǒ-'géy-nǐ ná-'yān-lay.'* |
| to stand up | *'jàn·chi·lay* |
| He got up from his chair, and walked into the room. | *Tā-tsúng-'yǐ·dz-shang 'jàn·chi·lay, 'dzěw·jìn-'wū·dz-li-chywu.* |
| boxful | *'hé* |
| After waiting a minute, he brought out two packs of cigarettes, and a box of matches, | *'Děng·le-'yì·fēn-jūng, tā-'ná·lay 'lyǎng·bāw-'yān, yì·hé-yáng·'hwǒ.* |
| and put them all on the table. | *'dēw-'gē·dzay-'jwō·dz-shang.* |
| He picked up one pack of cigarettes. | *Tā-'ná·chi-'yì·bāw-yān-lay.* |
| From this pack he took out two cigarettes, | *Tā-tsúng-'jè·bāw-'yān-li 'ná·chu·lay-'lyǎng·gēn,* |
| and gave me one. | *'dì·gey-wǒ 'yì·gēn.* |
| box | *'hé·dz* |
| Then he took a match from the box. | *Yèw-tsúng-'hé·dz-li 'ná·chu-yì·gēn-yáng·'hwǒ-lay.* |
| to ignite *or* light | *'dyǎn* |
| He was going to light my cigarette. | *Tā-yàw-'géy-wo dyǎn-'yān.* |
| I said 'I'll light it myself.' | *Wǒ-shwō 'wǒ-'dz̀·jí-'dyǎn-ba.'* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. (Group Work.) Only five consonants can come at the end of a syllable in Chinese: *r*, *n*, *ng*, *w*, and *y*. *m* occurs at the end of the syllable in just two words: *'shém·me* and *'dzěm·me*, and so should be counted too, but it is rare and easy. Words like *shr̀*, *dz̀*, of course, end with a vowel, not a consonant; the *letters r* and *z* are consonant-*letters* in English writing, but they are used for vowel-sounds in words of this kind.

The final *r* will be easy for you unless you come from a part of the United States (the east coast or the South) where such words as *are*, *year*, *for* have no final *r*-sound. In any case, listen a few more times to the most important word which ends in this consonant in Chinese, and imitate it until you are sure you have it right.

**Record 1B, after last spiral.**

PRACTICE 24.

*'èr* 'two'

(skip the other five words of this practice)

The final *n* and *ng* are sometimes a little difficult to tell apart. The *ng* must be pronounced like the *ng* of *singer*, not like the *ng* of *finger* or *linger* or *longer*. If you come from New York City or nearby and do not make any difference between the *ng* sounds in these words, listen with especial care.

**Record 1A, after tenth spiral.**

Practice 11.
*'sān*, *'*shān*, '*shyān* 'three; mountain; first'
(skip the rest)

**Record 1A, after eighth spiral.**

Practice 9.
'*shyān* 'first, earlier'
*'*jyān* 'sharp, sharp tip'
*'*chyān* 'thousand'
'*shyǎng*, *'*Jyǎng*, *'*chyǎng* 'think; (name); to rob'
(skip the rest)

The final *n* of a syllable is particularly tricky when the next syllable begins with *y*. Ordinarily in saying *n* in either English or Chinese the tip of the tongue touches the roof of the mouth just behind the teeth. Say *tin*, *din*, *man*, *fun*, *next*, *now*, and you will see that this is true. The same is true for some other English sounds, such as *d*: try *did*, *bad*, *dig*. The difference is that in saying *n* air is going out through the nose, whereas in saying *d* no air is getting out of your mouth and throat at all—until you take the tip of your tongue away and let it out. When a Chinese syllable ends with *n* and the next syllable begins with *y*, as in *dyàn·'yǐng* 'movie', or '*màn·yi·dyan* 'a little slower', the tip of the tongue does *not* touch the roof of the mouth as usual, but air *is* going out the nose as well as out the mouth, giving a nasal 'twang' to the vowel before the *n*. It is also perfectly all right to make a full-fledged *n*-sound in cases like this; no Chinese will misunderstand you, or even think you have a foreign accent, if you do so. Here are two cases of this for you to listen to:

**Record 1B, beginning.**

Practice 15.
(skip first three words)
*dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn* 'movie theater'
(skip next three words)
'*màn·yi·dyan* 'a little slower'

The *y*- and *w*-sounds at the ends of syllables are easy and you need no special practice on them.

§3. Practice on the Basic Sentences. (Group Work.) Go through the Basic Sentences (Group II) several more times, at first repeating in unison, and then individually. Try to fix the meanings of all the words and expressions firmly in your minds.

## SECTION D: WORD STUDY

§1. Review of Basic Sentences Covering the English. (Individual Study.) Make sure that you know the material of the second group of Basic Sentences by reviewing it, working alone, with the English covered. Then read the following Word Study carefully to yourself.

§2. Word Study. (Individual Study.)

Point 1. More on *le*. The element *le* is sometimes used twice in a single sentence. This is done particularly often when the sentence ends with an expression of time. Here are some cases which will show the difference in meaning:

*Tā-dzày-'nà·li 'jù·le 'sān·nyán.* 'He lived there for three years.' (but does not live there any more)

*Tā-dzày-'nà·li 'jù·le 'sān·nyán-le.* 'He has been living there for three years'. (and is still there)

Point 2. *Tyān* and *Nyán*. The two measures of time *tyān* 'day' and *nyán* 'year' are used in almost, but not quite, the same ways. You will see the one difference in the following:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *'yì·nyán* | 'one year' | *'yì·tyān* | 'one day' |
| *'lyǎng·nyán* | 'two years' | *'lyǎng·tyān* | 'two days' |
| *'jīn·nyan* | 'this year' | *'jīn·tyan* | today' |
| *'chywù·nyan* | 'last year' | *'dzwó·tyan* | 'yesterday' |
| *'míng·nyan* | 'next year' | *'míng·tyan* | 'tomorrow' |

It is only in the compound words for 'last year' and 'yesterday' that *tyān* and *nyán* do not parallel each other. 'Last year' is literally 'gone year'; 'yesterday' has as its first element a syllable which is found only in this word and in a few other words all meaning 'yesterday'.

Point 3. Bring and Take. The combination *ná . . . lay* means 'bring' (towards the person speaking), and the combination *ná . . . chywu* means 'take' (not towards the person speaking). For example:

*Ná-'yān-lay.* 'Bring cigarettes.'

*Ná-'yān-chywu.* 'Take cigarettes.'

Point 4. Use of *Bǎ* with *Ná*. If the thing being handled is something definite that has been mentioned already or can be seen, or when there is a definite indication of *from where* or *to where* the bringing or taking takes place, then one uses the word *bǎ* 'grasping', 'taking into consideration', and puts the name of the thing being handled after it. The word *ná* is still used; the word-group beginning with *bǎ* must come *before* the word *ná*. Examples:

*Bǎ-'yān 'ná·lay.* 'Bring those cigarettes' (that we know about)

*Bǎ-'yān 'ná·chywu.* 'Take those cigarettes' (that we know about)

Point 5. Use of *Tsúng*. An indication of *from where* the thing is taken or brought can be made by using *tsúng* 'from' and the name of a place. This must also come somewhere before the word *ná*. Examples:

*Bǎ-'yān tsúng-'jwō·dz-shang 'ná·lay.* 'Bring the cigarettes from the top of the table.'

*Tsúng-'hé·dz-li bǎ-'yān 'ná·chywu.* 'Take the cigarettes out of the box.'

These examples also show that the group of words beginning with *tsúng* can come either before or after the group beginning with *bǎ*.

Point 6. Use of *Dàw*. An indication of *to where* the bringing or taking takes place can be made by using *dàw* 'to' and the name of a place. This must come *after* the word *ná*; *ná* and *dàw* then join into a compound word just as *dàw* hooks onto verbs of motion like *pǎw*, *dzěw*, and so on.

*Bǎ-'jwō·dz 'ná·daw-'wū·dz-li-chywù.* 'Take the table into the room.'

POINT 7. USE OF *Gěy*. An indication of *for whom*, or *for whose benefit*, the action is performed can be made by using *gěy* 'for the sake of' and a word referring to someone. This must come before the word *ná*.

*Bǎ-'yān 'géy-wǒ 'ná·lay.* 'Bring me the cigarettes.'

*'Géy-wó bǎ-'yān tsúng-'nà·ge-hé·dz-li 'ná·chu·lay 'gē·dzay-'jè·ge-hé·dz-li.* 'Take the cigarettes out of that box and put them in this box for me.'

In other words, there are three things which, if present in the sentence at all, must come *before ná*: the *gěy*-group, the *tsúng*-group, and the *bǎ*-group. These three, however, can come in any position relative to each other.

POINT 8. *'Dz̀·jǐ.* *'Dz̀·jǐ* 'self' is used with *wǒ*, *nǐ*, *tā*, etc., much as the English word *self* is used with *my*, *your*, *him*.

*wǒ-'dz̀·jǐ* 'I myself'

*nǐ·men-'dz̀·jǐ* 'you yourselves'

*tā-'dz̀·jǐ-de-'háy·dz* 'his own child'

*Tā·men dēw-kàn-dyàn·'yǐng-chywù-le. Wǒ-dz̀·'jǐ 'méy-chywù.* 'They all went to a movie. I myself (and of my own will) didn't go.' Or *Wǒ-'yí·ge-rén 'méy-chywù.* 'I was the only one who didn't go.'

*Wǒ-bú-'dz̀·jǐ-chywù.* 'I won't go by myself.'

*Wǒ-'dz̀·jǐ 'bú-chywù, 'déy-yěw-rén 'gēn-wǒ-chywù.* 'I won't go alone; there must be someone to go with met.'

*Shr̀-wǒ-dz̀·'jǐ bú-'chywù, 'bú·shr̀-tā·men bú-'dày-wǒ-chywu.* 'It is of my own will that I am not going; it isn't that they won't take me.'

*Tā-dz̀·'jǐ háy-méy·yěw-'chyán-ne. 'Dzěm·me-néng-yěw-'chyán géy-'nǐ?* 'He doesn't even have any money himself. How can he have any to give you?'

*'Jè 'bú·shr-tā·de-'háy·dz. Tā-bú-'dày-tā-'dz̀·jǐ-de-háy·dz chywù-kàn-dyàn·'yǐng.* 'This isn't his child. He doesn't take his own child to see the movies.'

*Jè-shr̀-tā·men-'dz̀·jǐ-de-'fáng·dz.* 'This is their own house.'

POINT 9. COMPOUND VERBS. Verbs of handling, like those of motion, tend to cluster into compounds, though each part retains its own meaning. In the following list you will find some parts which occur *only* in groups, never alone: *dì·* of *'dì·gěy* 'to hand something to', for example. A few more compound verbs of motion are included too.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'ná·lay* | 'bring something' |
| *'ná·chywu* | 'take something away' |
| *'ná·dàw* (*láy*, *chywù*) | 'take something to, bring something to' (a place) |
| *'ná·chū* (*láy*, *chywù*) | 'take out, bring out' |
| *'ná·jìn* (*láy*, *chywù*) | 'take in, bring in' |
| *'ná·chū* (*láy*, *chywù*) | 'take out, bring out' |
| *'ná·jìn* (*láy*, *chywù*) | 'take in, bring in' |
| *'ná·chǐ* (*láy* only, never *chywù*) | 'pick up' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *'chǐ·lay* | 'get up, rise' |
| *'jàn·chi·lay* | 'stand up' |
| *'jàn·dzày* | 'stand on *or* at' |
| *'dzwò·chi·lay* | 'sit up (from a reclining position)' |
| *'gē·dzày* | 'put at *or* in' |
| *'gē·shya* | 'put something down' |
| *'dì·gěy* | 'hand something to (a person)' |

Point 10. Use of *'Dì·gěy*, *'Gē·shya*, and *'Gē·dzày*. In using these three verbs (the meanings of which have just been given), the name of the object being handled is almost always put after the word *bǎ*, earlier in the sentence:

*Bǎ-'yān 'dì·gey-wǒ.* 'Hand me those cigarettes.'

*Bǎ-yān 'gē·shya.* 'Put the cigarettes down.'

*Bǎ-'yān 'gē·dzay-'jwō·dz-shang.* 'Put the cigarettes on the table.'

With the second and third of these, an indication of the person for whose benefit the action is performed can be made by using *gěy* and a word referring to that person:

*Bǎ-'yān 'géy-wǒ 'gē·shya.* 'Put the cigarettes down for me.'

*'Géy-wó bǎ-'yān 'gē·dzay-'jwō·dz-shang.* 'Put the cigarettes on the table for me.'

Point 11. Another use of *Jè*, *Nà*, *Nǎ*. Notice the following examples:

*'Jè-yì·hé-yáng·'hwǒ shř-'wǒ·de.* 'This box of matches is mine.'

*'Nà-yì·hé shř-'nǐ·de.* 'That box is yours.'

*'Nǎ-yì·hé shř-'tā·de?* 'Which box is his?'

In these sentences the words *jè* 'this', *nà* 'that', and *nǎ* 'which?' are not followed immediately by a measure, but by the word *yī* 'one', which in turn has a measure added to it. This usage serves the purpose of emphasizing that only *one* box (or whatever else is involved) is being talked about.

You can also put *jè*, *nà*, or *nǎ* before a larger number:

*'Jè-sān·ge-bīng yěw-'yí·ge-nywǔ-péng·yew.* 'These three soldiers have one girl-friend.'

(Many speakers of Chinese from Peiping say *jèy*, *nèy*, and *něy* instead of *'jè-yī*, *'nà-yī*, and *'nǎ-yī*, as well as instead of *jè*, *nà*, and *nǎ*. For such speakers there is no distinction, for example, between *jè·ge-'bīng* and *jè-yí·ge-'bīng*, since both become *jèy·ge-'bīng*.)

§3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study.) Go through the following by yourself and figure out each group in the usual manner.

1. 'Please pass me the cigarettes':
    a. *Chǐng ná-'yān-láy.*
    b. *Chǐng bǎ-'yān 'dì·gey-wǒ·men.*
    c. *'Chíng-ní bǎ-'yān 'dì·gey-wǒ.*
2. If you were very hungry, which of these would you prefer to do?
    a. *Dzwò·dzay-shù-'dǐ·shya, chēw-'yān, kàn-'hwà.*
    b. *'Dzwò·dzay-yí·ge-fàn·'dyàn-li, shwō-'hwà, hē-'chá.*
    c. *'Dzwò·dzay-yí·ge-fàn-'gwǎn·dz-li, chr̄-'fàn, hē-'chá.*

d. *'Dzwò·dzay-yí·ge-fàn-'gwăn·dz-li, chēw-'yān, hē-'jyĕw.*

3. If you are out in the bright sunshine with a friend, which of these would be the practical suggestion to make to get cooler?

a. *'Chíng-ní bă-nà·kē-'shù 'ná·dàw-'jè·li-láy, 'hăw-ma?*

b. *Wŏ·men 'jìn·dàw-jè·ge-'lyáng·kway·de-'fáng·dz-li-chywù, 'hăw-ma?*

c. *Wŏ·men chēw-yì·bāw-'yān, 'hăw-ma?*

d. *Wŏ·men 'chywù-kàn-dyàn-'yĭng, 'hăw-ma?*

e. *Wŏ·men 'chywù-kàn-wŏ·men·de-'hăw-péng·yew-'Jāng-shyān·sheng, 'hăw-ma?*

4. If you have a cigarette but no matches, which of these requests might get you a match?

a. *Chíng 'géy-wŏ yáng·'hwŏ.*

b. *Ní-yĕw-yáng·'hwŏ-ma?*

c. *'Chíng-ní bă-'nà·hé-yáng·'hwŏ 'gĕ·shya.*

d. *'Chíng-ní bă-'nà·gēn-yáng·'hwŏ gĕ·dzay-'hé·dz-li.*

5. If you want to sit in the yard, which of these would you do?

a. *Wŏ-'jìn·dàw-'fáng·dz-li-chywù bă-'jwō·dz 'ná·chu·lay.*

b. *Wŏ-'jìn·dàw-'fáng·dz-li-chywù bá-'yĭ·dz 'ná·chu·lay.*

c. *Wŏ-dzày-'ywàn·dz-li-de-'yĭ·dz-shang 'dzwò·shya.*

6. If you want to know which chair to sit in, you say:

a. *'Nà-yì·bá-'yĭ·dz shr̀-'shwéy·de?*

b. *'Nă-yì·bá-'yĭ·dz shr̀-'nĭ·de?*

c. *Nĭ-yàw wŏ-tsúng-'wū·dz-li bá-'nă-yì·bá-'yĭ·dz 'ná·chu·lay?*

d. *Nĭ-yàw wŏ-'dzwò·dzay-'nă-yì·bá-'yĭ·dz-shang?*

7. How many times does he have the match in his hand?

a. *'Yí·ge-rén bă-yì·gēn-yáng·'hwŏ tsúng-'hé·dz-li ná·chu·lay.*

b. *'Nà·ge-rén 'bă-tā 'gĕ·shya.*

c. *Tā-'bă-tā 'ná·chi·lay.*

d. *Yèw-gĕ·dzay-'jwō·dz-shang.*

e. *Wó-bă-'nà·gēn-yáng·hwŏ tsúng-'jwō·dz·shang 'ná·chi·lay, 'dì·gey-tā.*

8. How many chairs are there in all?

a. *'Wū·dz-li yĕw-'yì·jāng-'jwō·dz.*

b. *Háy-yĕw-'lyăng·bá-'yĭ·dz.*

c. *'Ywàn·dz-li yĕw-yì·kē-'shù.*

d. *Shù-'chyán·byan yĕw-'yì·bá-'yĭ·dz*

e. *'Hèw·byan yĕw-'sż̀·bá-yĭ·dz.*

9. Are the matches in the room at the end of the story?

a. *'Wū·dz-li yĕw-'jwō·dz.*

b. *'Jwō·dz-shang yĕw-'hé·dz.*

c. *'Hé·dz-li yĕw-'yān.*

d. *'Hé·dz·de-'lyăng·byān yĕw-yáng·'hwŏ.*

e. *Wó-bă-'hé·dz tsúng-'jwō·dz-shang ná·chi·lay, gĕ·dzay-'yĭ·dz-shang.*

f. *Yèw-bă-'jwō·dz ná·dàw-'ywàn·dz-li-chywù.*

g. *Yáng·'hwŏ 'háy-dzày-'jwō·dz-shang.*

10. Match up these measures and nouns by drawing a line from each one on the left to each of those on the right with which it can go:

a. *'Yì·swǒ* *'yǐ·dz*
b. *'Yì·bǎ* *'rén*
c. *'Yí·ge* *'yān*
d. *'Yì·gēn* *yáng·hwǒ*
e. *'Yì·bāw* *'fáng·dz*
f. *'Yì·hé* *'jwō·dz*
g. *'Yì·jāng*

11. Who is finally sitting in the chair?

a. *Shù-'dǐ·shya yěw-yì·bǎ-'yǐ·dz.*
b. *Wǒ·de-'péng·yew dzwò·dzày-'yǐ·dz-shang, 'gēn-wǒ tán-'hwà.*
c. *Tā-tsúng-'yǐ·dz-shang 'jàn·chi·lay, 'dzěw·dàw-'wū·dz-li-chywù.*
d. *Wǒ-dzày-tā·de-'yǐ·dz-shang 'dzwò·shya.*
e. *Tā-tsúng-'wū·dz-li 'dzěw·chu·lay.*
f. *Wǒ-'jàn·chi·lay.*
g. *Tā-shwō, 'Bú·yàw-'kè·chi. Chǐng-'dzwò.'*
h. *Wǒ-'yèw-'dzwò·shya.*

12. How many times did Mr. Jāng cross the ocean?

a. *'Jāng-shyān·sheng shr̀-tsúng-'Jūng·gwo láy-de.*
b. *Tā-shr̀-'sān·nyán-yǐ·chyán dàw-'Měy·gwo láy-de.*
c. *Tā-dzày-'Měy·gwo 'jù·le 'yì·nyán.*
d. *'Lyǎng·nyán-yǐ·chyán tā-hwéy-'Jūng·gwo chywù-le.*
e. *'Chywù·nyan tā-'yèw-tsúng-'Jūng·gwo dàw-'Měy·gwo láy-le.*
f. *Tā-shyàn·'dzày dzày-Nyěw·'ywē.*

13. Which of these statements are true?

a. *'Lyèw·ywè-li Nyěw·'ywē hén-'lěng.*
b. *Shŕ-'èr·ywè-li Jr̄·jyā·'gē hěn-'rè.*
c. *San Francisco yì·'nyán-li 'yě-bù-'léng 'yě-bú-'rè.*
d. *Wó-yéw-'lyǎng·bāw-'yān. Wǒ-ké·yi-'géy-nǐ 'sż̀·shr-'wǔ·gēn.*
e. *Wó-yěw-'sān·bāw-yān. Wǒ-ké·yi-'géy-nǐ 'sż̀·shr-'wǔ·gēn.*
f. *'Méy·yěw hwèy-shwō-'Jūng·gwo-hwà-de 'Měy·gwo-rén.*
g. *Hwèy-shwō-'Jūng·gwo-hwà-de-'Měy·gwo-rén hén-'shǎw.*

14. Which of these are sensible answers to the question *Nǐ-'tày·tay wèy-'shém·me méy-'gēn-nǐ dàw-'Jūng·gwo-láy?*

a. *'Yīn·wèy 'Jūng·gwo tày-'rè.*
b. *'Yīn·wèy tā-bú-'dzày-le.*
c. *Wó-'méy·yěw-'tày·tay.*
d. *'Yīn·wèy tā-yěw-yí·ge-shyǎw-'háy·dz.*
e. *'Yīn·wèy tā-'bù-néng-dzwò-'chwán.*
f. *'Yīn·wèy 'bīng·de-tày·tay 'bù-néng-dàw-'wày·gwo-láy.*
g. *'Yīn·wèy tā-'mǔ·chin shr̀-'Fà·gwo-rén.*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY? (Group Work.) Working as a group, under the direction of the Leader, go through the

What Would You Say?, telling what choices or decisions you made and why.

§5. Review of Basic Sentences Covering the Chinese. (Individual Study.) Working individually again, cover the Chinese of the second group of Basic Sentences and check your ability to recall the Chinese expressions when you look at the English Equivalents.

## SECTION E: LISTENING IN

§1. Word Study Check-Up. (Group Work.) The Leader will ask various students to give the Chinese for the English equivalents in the two Word Studies, and will ask for an explanation of the points discussed. For example, he will ask someone to tell how one says 'bring' and 'take' in Chinese, and to give examples.

§2. Listening In. (Group Work.) Go through the following conversations with the group. Keep your books closed the first time through, to see how much you can understand just from hearing it. Nothing new occurs here. If you are sure of all the Basic Sentences and all the Word Studies thus far, you should have no trouble.

Conversation 1. Wáng meets Jāng on the street. Afer some polite greetings Wáng says:

**Record 11B, beginning.**

Wáng: *'Jyā-li dēw-'hǎw-ma?*
Jāng: *'Shyè·shye, dēw-'hǎw.*
Wáng: *Dàw-shém·me-'dì·fang 'chywù?*
Jāng: *'Bú-dàw-shém·me-'dì·fang-chywù.*
*'Chū·lay 'dzěw-yi·dzěw.*
Wáng: *Wǒ-yàw-chywù 'kàn-yí·wèy-'péng·yew.*
Jāng: *Shr̀-'Jūng·gwo-rén, shr̀-'wày·gwo-rén?*
Wáng: *Shr̀-'Měy·gwo-rén.*
*Shìng 'Lwó.*
*Nǐ-'gēn-wǒ dàw-tā-'jyā-chywù, 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*
Jāng: *Wó-shyáng-wǒ-bú-'chywù-ba.*
Wáng: *Wèy-'shém·me-ne?*
Jāng: *'Yīn·wey 'lyèw·dyǎn-jūng wó-děy-dzày-'jyā-li déng-wǒ-'tày·tay.*
Wáng: *Tā-dàw-'nǎ·li-chywù-le?*
Jāng: *Tā-'kàn-tā-'mǔ·chin-chywù-le.*
Wáng: *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'chywù-de?*
Jāng: *Sż-wǔ·'tyān-yǐ·'chyán.*
Wáng: *Shyàn·'dzày 'háy-bú-dàw-'sż·dyǎn-jūng.*
*Wǒ·men ké·yi 'lyèw·dyǎn-jūng-yǐ·'chyán 'dzěw.*
Jāng: *'Hǎw-ba. Wǒ-'gēn-nǐ chywù-'dzwò-yi·dzwò.*

Conversation 2. At Ross's house, a servant greets them.

Wáng: *'Lwó-shyān·sheng dzày-'jyā-ma?*
Servant: *'Lwó-shyān·sheng 'chū·chywu·le.*
*Jè-'shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'Wáng-shyān·sheng?*
Wáng: *'Shr̀.*
Servant: *'Lwó-shyān·sheng-shwō, tā-jyòw 'hwéy·lay.*
*Tā-shwō chǐng-'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'děng-tā.*
Wáng: *'Hǎw.*

Servant: *Chǐng-'lyǎng·wèy dàw-'wū·dz-li-chywu 'dzwò.*

Wáng: *'Wū·dz-li tày-'rè.*
*Dzày-'ywàn·dz-li dzwò, 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*

Jāng: *'Yě-hǎw.*

Servant: *Wǒ-chywù ná-'yǐ·dz-láy.*

Jāng: *Jè·ge-'ywàn·dz hěn-'dà.*

Wáng: *Yěw-'shŕ-jǐ·kē-'shù.*

Jāng: *Nǐ-'kàn-'jè·kē-shù.*
*'Jè·byān yěw-'hwā, 'nà·byān 'méy·yěw.*

Wáng: *Jè·jāng-shyǎw-'jwō·dz hěn-hǎw-'kàn.*

Jāng: *Wǒ·men dzày-'jè·li 'dzwò-ba.*

CONVERSATION 3. BRINGING THE CHAIRS OUT THE SERVANT ASKS WHERE TO PUT THEM.

Servant: *'Shyān·sheng yàw-dzày-'jè·li 'dzwò-ma?*

Wáng: *'Dwèy·le.*
*Bá-'yǐ·dz gē·dzay-'jwō·dz·de-'lyǎng·byān.*

Jāng: *Nǐ-'kàn, 'jè·byān yéw-hěn-'dwō-de-'shwěy.*

Wáng: *'Nà·byān 'méy·yew-shwěy.*
*Děw-'gē·dzày-jwō·dz·de-'nà·byān-ba.*

Servant: *'Shr̀.*
*Chǐng-'dzwò.*
*Shyān·sheng hē-'chá hē-'shwěy?*

Wáng: *Shyàn·'dzày 'děw-bù-hē.*
*Yěw-'yān-ma?*

Servant: *'Jwō·dz-shàng nà·ge-'hé·dz-li yěw-'yān.*

Jāng: *Wó-'géy-nǐ 'ná-yì·gēn.*

Wáng: *'Shyè·shye.*

CONVERSATION 4. MR. ROSS COMES BACK. THE SERVANT BRINGS OUT ANOTHER CHAIR AND SOME TEA.

**Record 12A, beginning.**

Ross: *'Dwèy-bu·chǐ.*
*Nǐ-'děng·le 'dwō·shaw-'shŕ·hew?*

Wáng: *Bú-dàw-'wǔ·fēn-jūng.*
*Wǒ-'géy-nǐ·men 'jyè·shàw.*
*'Jè·wèy shr̀-'Jāng-shyān·sheng.*
*'Jè·wèy shr̀-'Lwó-shyān·sheng.*

Ross: *Jyéw-'yǎng.*

Jāng: *Jyéw-'yǎng.*

Ross: *'Dzwò·shya 'tán-yi·tán.*
*Chǐng hē-'chá.*

CONVERSATION 5. THEY CONTINUE TALKING.

Jāng: *'Jè·li hěn-'lyáng·kway.*

Ross: *'Dwèy·le. 'Shù-dǐ·shya 'lyáng·kway.*

Wáng: *'Jāng-shyān·sheng gēn-Mister Ward shr̀-'péng·yew.*

Ross: *'Shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'nà·wèy-Měy·gwo-'bīng?*

Jāng: *'Dwèy·le.*

Ross: *Tā-'hwèy-bu·hwèy shwō-Jūng·gwo-'hwà?*

Jāng: *Háy-bú-'hwèy-ne.*

Wáng: *Tā·de-'péng·yew Johnson 'hwèy.*

Ross: *Hwèy-shwō-Jūng·gwo-'hwà-de-'Měy·gwo-rén hén-'shǎw.*

Wáng: *'Bù-shǎw.*
*Wǒ-'jr̄·dàw-de yěw-'shŕ-jǐ·ge-rén.*
*Kě·shr 'nǐ 'shwō-de 'díng-hǎw.*

Ross: *'Bù-hǎw.*

*Wǒ-dzày-'Jūng·gwo 'jù·le 'wǔ·nyán-le.*

*Yěw-hěn-dwō-de-'hwà wǒ-'háy-bú-'hwèy-shwō.*

*'Yěw·de-'hwà 'shwō·de yě-bú-'dwèy.*

Jāng: *Nǐ-hwèy-shwō-'Dé·gwo-hwà-ma?*

Ross: *'Hwèy.*

*Wó-yě-hwèy-shwō-'Fà·gwo-hwà.*

*Kě·shr 'děw-'shwō-de 'bù-hǎw.*

CONVERSATION 6. THE GUESTS LEAVE.

Jāng: *'Dwèy-bu·chǐ.*

*Shyàn·'dzày shr̀-'wú·dyǎn 'sż̀·shr-fēn.*

*Wó-děy-'dzěw-le.*

Ross: *Dzày-'jè·li chr̄-'fàn, 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*

Jāng: *'Shyè·shye.*

*Wó-děy-hwéy-'jyā-chywù.*

Ross: *'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'néng-bu·néng 'gēn-wǒ chr̄-'fàn?*

Wáng: *Wó-'yé-děy-hwéy-'jyā-chywù.*

Ross: *'Míng·tyan 'lyǎng·wèy 'děw-láy-chr̄-'fàn, 'hǎw-ma?*

Wáng: *Wǒ-'míng·tyan néng-'láy.*

*'Nǐ-ne?*

Jāng: *'Wó-yě-néng-'láy.*

Ross: *'Jǐ·dyǎn-jūng?*

*Lyèw·dyǎn-'bàn, 'kě·yi-ma?*

Wáng and Jāng: *'Kě·yi.*

*'Míng·tyan 'jyàn.*

Ross: *'Míng·tyan 'jyàn.*

After the first time through, open your books and follow through with repetition. Then check on any points you don't understand. Then go through with individual repetition.

## SECTION F: CONVERSATION

§1. VOCABULARY CHECK-UP. (Group Work.) The Leader will start a final vocabulary check-up by speaking to some member of the group with the same sentence used in Units III and IV, asking how to say something in Chinese. Try to cover all of the expressions of this Unit in this way, but don't take them in any regular order.

§2. CARRYING ON CONVERSATION. (Group Work.) As with the previous Units, your final job is to carry on conversation of your own using the material you have had so far. Let your ingenuity be your guide; if it fails, use the conversations of section E of this Unit and of the previous Units, but make the earlier ones more complete because of the new material you have learned. But use your imagination, and keep it going. Two or three should try at a time, taking turns until everyone has had a chance.

96

# UNIT VI

# REVIEW

## SECTION A: WORD-REVIEW

§1. How Would You Use These Words? (Individual Study.) Below are given a number of groups of words. The words in each group are similar in some way. If you know the meaning of a particular word, prove it to yourself by thinking of a sentence in which that word is used. If you don't remember the meaning of a particular word, check in the Check-List of Words for Part One, and then think of a sentence using it. Work this out by yourself; then working as a group you will be able to check on the sentences you thought of.

Group 1. One of the following words obviously does not belong with the rest. Pick it out; use it in a sentence, and use one or more of the others in sentences, but not necessarily all of them: *'bā·shr*, *'chī·shr*, *'èr·shr*, *'jyěw·shr*, *'kě·shr*, *'lyèw·shr*, *'sān·shr*, *'sž·shr*, *'wǔ·shr*.

Group 2.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *jè* | *'jè·byān* | *'jè·gc* | *'jè·li* |
| *nǎ* | *'nǎ·byān* | *'nǎ·ge* | *'nǎ·li* |
| *nà* | *'nà·byān* | *'nà·ge* | *'nà·li* |

Group 3.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *nǐ* | *'nǐ·de* | *'nǐ·men* | *'nǐ·men·de* | *'dž·jǐ* |
| *tā* | *'tā·de* | *'tā·men* | *'tā·men·de* | |
| *wǒ* | *'wǒ·de* | *'wǒ·men* | *'wǒ·men·de* | |
| *shwéy* | *'shwéy·de* | | | |

Group 4.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *yáng·'hwǒ* | *hwǒ-'chē* | *hwǒ-chē-'jàn* | |
| | *dyàn-'chē* | *dyàn-chē-'jàn* | |
| | *dyàn-'yǐng* | | *dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn*<br>*'ywàn·dz* |

97

**GROUP** 5. *'Dì·shyung, 'jyě·mèy, 'fù·mǔ, 'dì·di, 'gē·ge, 'jyě·jye, 'mèy·mey, 'fù·chin, 'mǔ·chin.*

**GROUP** 6.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *rén* | *'nán-rén* | *'nywǔ-rén* | *'dà-rén* | |
| *'ér·dz* | | *'nywǔ·ér* | | |
| | *'nán·de* | *'nywǔ·de* | | |
| *'háy·dz* | *nán-'háy·dz* | *nywǔ-'háy·dz* | | *shyǎw-'háy·dz* |
| *'péng·yew* | *nán-'péng·yew* | *nywǔ-'péng·yew* | | |

**GROUP** 7.

| | |
|---|---|
| *bì·'gwó* | *bì·'shìng* |
| *gwèy·'gwó* | *gwèy-'shìng* |
| *'Dé·gwo* | |
| *'Fà·gwo* | |
| *'Jūng·gwo* | |
| *'Měy·gwo* | |
| *'Yīng·gwo* | |

**GROUP** 8.

| | |
|---|---|
| *nyán* | *tyān* |
| *'chywù·nyan* | *'dzwó·tyan* |
| *'jīn·nyan* | *'jīn·tyan* |
| *'míng·nyan* | *'míng·tyan* |

**GROUP** 9.

| | |
|---|---|
| | *byān* |
| *chyán* | *'chyán·byan* |
| *dzwǒ* | *'dzwǒ·byan* |
| *hèw* | *'hèw·byan* |
| *lǐ* | *'lǐ·byan* |
| *wày* | *'wày·byan* |
| *yèw* | *'yèw·byan* |

Group 10. Here is a list of measures. Use these in a sentence with no noun following the measure:

*nyán* *swèy* *tyān* *ywè* *byān*

Use these in sentences with nouns also:

*bǎ* *bāw* *dyǎn* *fēn* *·ge* *gēn* *hé*
*jāng* *kē* *kè* *kwày* *máw* *swǒ* *wǎn*
*wèy*

Group 11.

| | |
|---|---|
| *děng* | *'děng-yi·děng* |
| *dzěw* | *'dzěw-yi·dzěw* |
| *shwō* | *'shwō-yi·shwō* |
| *shyǎng* | *'shyǎng-yi·shyǎng* |
| *tán* | *'tán-yi·tán* |
| *wèn* | *'wèn-yi·wèn* |

Group 12.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *dzwò* | *'dzwò·chi·lay* | *'dzwò·dzày* | *'dzwò·shya* |
| | | *'gē·dzày* | *'gē·shya* |
| | *'jàn·chi·lay* | *jàn·dzày* | |
| *jù* | | *'jù·dzày* | |

Group 13.

| | *láy* | *chywù* | *'chǐ·lay* | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *chū* | *'chū·lay* | *'chū·chywù* | | | | |
| *dzěw* | *'dzěw·lay* | *'dzěw·chywù* | | *'dzěw·chū* | *'dzěw·dàw* | *'dzěw·jìn* |
| *hwéy* | *'hwéy·lay* | *'hwéy·chywù* | | | | |
| *jìn* | *'jìn·lay* | *'jìn·chywù* | | | *'jìn·dàw* | |
| *ná* | *'ná·lay* | *'ná·chywù* | *'ná·chi·lay* | *'ná·chū* | *'ná·dàw* | *'ná·jìn* |
| *pǎw* | *'pǎw·lay* | *'pǎw·chywù* | | *'pǎw·chū* | *'pǎw·dàw* | *'pǎw·jìn* |

§2. How Did You Use the Words? (Group Work.) Work together under the direction of the Leader. He will select some or all of the words in each of the above groups and will call on some member of the class to give a sentence in which the word is used. If time is limited he may not choose to go through the entire list, but you should be prepared for all of them because he may select or reject any one of them. If you have a Guide, he can correct your sentences if necessary; otherwise, check up on each other. If you have been working hard and carefully since the beginning of the course, you will not find it very difficult to devise acceptable sentences for all of the above words.

## SECTION B: SENTENCE-REVIEW

§1. Preparation. (Individual Study.) Working alone, go through the following English sentences and figure out how you would say each one in Chinese. *Do not write anything down*, but say the Chinese equivalents out loud and practice them out loud until you can rattle them off the moment you hear the English, with no hesitation at all.

1. How are you, Miss Hú?
2. Come in!
3. Please sit down.
4. Do you smoke?
5. Do you want to smoke now?
6. What country are you from?
7. My country is the United States.
8. Will you have some tea?
9. Thank you.
10. You're welcome.

11. May I ask your name?
12. My name is Jāng.
13. May I ask you please, where is the railroad station?
14. I don't know.
15. When does the train start?
16. I beg your pardon, I don't understand.
17. Please speak slower; please repeat.

18. I'll introduce you.
19. This is Mr. Wáng.
20. Pleased to meet you.

21. Where is the movie theater?
22. Please take me to the restaurant.
23. May I wait for him here?
24. Don't go! Wait a minute!
25. I must leave now. So long!
26. See you tomorrow.
27. See you later.
28. Let's go!
29. How much (money)?
30. What is that thing?
31. How do you say 'airplane' in Chinese?
32. Is what I say right?
33. Right!

34. That man has two younger brothers.
35. The three brothers are all adults.
36. His older sister is married.
37. His younger sister is thinking of getting married.
38. His older brother is grown-up, but he is still a child.
39. His family consists of eight people.

40. His parents have both passed away.
41. He wants to go to China by plane.
42. We came by boat, not by plane.
43. We are the passengers (people) on the boat.
44. There is a lot to eat and drink on the boat.
45. Don't eat that food!
46. I don't drink liquor.
47. He eats a great deal of food.
48. The language that he speaks is Chinese.
49. The plane we rode in was American.

50. I am alone in China.
51. This room is very big; it contains two tables and eight chairs.
52. This table is too small.
53. Come on out!
54. Let's sit here and look at the flowers.
55. He and I are both soldiers.
56. He lights his own cigarette.

57. A day has twenty-four hours.
58. An hour has sixty minutes.
59. It's seven-fifteen.
60. It's two-thirty.
61. It's half-past-twelve.
62. It's eight-twenty.

63. One bowl of rice is ten cents.
64. Three bowls of rice is thirty cents.
65. Four tsay is three dollars and twenty cents.
66. Altogether it's three-sixty.
67. I have no money.

68. I have one son, two daughters.
69. How old is your youngest child this year?
70. He is seven years old today.
71. One pack of cigarettes contains twenty cigarettes.
72. I am the oldest, he is the second.
73. There are altogether eighty-three soldiers here.
74. Germany has many soldiers.
75. His son has twenty-three good friends.

§2. GROUP DRILL. (Group Work.) Working as a group, all except the Leader will close their books. The Leader will give one of the English sentences above to a member of the group, who is to give the Chinese as quickly as he can. The Leader may not take them in the order in which they are given above, though; he may skip around. If the Guide is present he will listen and correct your pronunciation and your expressions whenever necessary.

## SECTION C: SENTENCE-REVIEW

§1. Preparation. (Individual Study.) This Section is just like Section C. Working alone, go through the following list of English sentences and drill yourself in saying the Chinese equivalents, *without writing anything down.* Drill until you can rattle off the Chinese the moment you hear or look at the English.

1. He walks out of the house.
2. He runs over here.
3. Here is the streetcar stop.
4. Shall we go by streetcar?
5. I won't go to a movie (theater) by myself.
6. I myself won't go to a movie theater.
7. I'll be right back.
8. I'm going to my friend's home to see him.
9. I have many men friends, few women friends.
10. Of your friends, how many are foreigners?
11. He went out.
12. He walked to that house.
13. He ran into that house.
14. He stood up, then I (immediately) sat down.
15. I came out to take a walk.
16. It's very cold today.
17. It's cool-and-comfortable in the room.
18. He hasn't arrive yet.
19. How is it that he doesn't come?
20. He can't come today.
21. How about tomorrow?
22. I'm coming; he's coming too; we're both coming.
23. You're coming too; we're all coming.
24. We're not all coming.
25. None of us are coming.
26. Did you come by boat?
27. I'm going to China.
26. I arrived last year.
29. Next year my friend is returning to England.
30. Next year his wife is coming back to China.
31. I arrived in March.
32. Why does he give me ten dollars?
33. How come?
34. Do you understand the English that he speaks?
35. I can't speak French.
36. Where are you living right now?
37. Go straight ahead; then go to the right.
38. The hotel is on the left.
39. The hotel is on the left.
40. There are nine trees in the garden, but there are eight which have no flowers.
41. Is your child a boy or a girl?
42. Which cigarette is his?
43. Which cigarette is hers?
44. Is that a cigarette?
45. Isn't this a cigarette?
46. Would you call that a cigarette!?
47. Formerly I was a soldier; now I am not.
48. (In a restaurant) I want a bowl of meat.

49. (In a restaurant) Bring us another bowl of tsày.
50. Who put the box under the table?
51. Please put it on the table.
52. Please put that box down.
53. Please put this small box in that large box.
54. Give him a box of matches.
55. Hand the two packs of cigarettes on the table to him.
56. Bring the bowl of rice from the top of the table and hand it to me.
57. Please take this chair away.
58. Hand that chair to me.
59. We'll put these chairs on both sides of the table.
60. The garden is in front of the house.
61. The house is behind the garden.
62. To the left of the restaurant is a good hotel.

§2. GROUP-DRILL. (Group Work.) Working as a group, as in the last Section, with books closed (except the Leader's), give the Chinese for the above sentences as the Leader gives them to you in English. He will skip around, but will give every one of the sentences to someone. The Guide, if present, will check on your pronunciation and on your expressions.

## SECTION D: LISTENING REVIEW

§1. TRUE-FALSE QUIZ. (Group Work.) Prepare for this quiz by taking a sheet of paper and writing down the numbers from 1 through 21. When this is done, the Guide or the records will say twenty-one statements for you. Each one will be given by number, and will be spoken twice. As you hear each statement, decide whether it is usually true or usually false. Don't go into particular cases, but just decide whether the statement would *ordinarily* be true or false. If it is true, mark a T by the number corresponding to the statement; if it is false, mark an F by that number.

Thus, for example, suppose you heard this: 'Statement seventeen '*Jūng·gwo* '*mėy·yew*-'*Jūng·gwo-rén*. (pause, and repeated)' You would mark an F by number seventeen on your piece of paper, since the statement is obviously false. Of course, this is *not* the seventeenth statement, but just an example.

If you understand the Chinese, you will have no trouble at all deciding whether to mark down T or F.

After taking the quiz, go over the sentences and find out how many you got right. The Leader has access to them all written out, with their English equivalents, for you to check with *after* taking the test.

TO THE LEADER: The Record to play is number 12B, from the beginning. There is a spiral after the first statement; lift the needle after this one and ask the group if they all understand how to go about it. If there is any question, go over the above instructions again. If you have a Guide who is to give the statements, you should precede each one by saying 'Statement one', 'Statement two', and so on. Let the Guide say each one twice, with a little pause after each time. Be sure not to lose count. Do not go through the test a second time until the results have been scored. Let each person score his own paper as you read the answers from the *Guide's Manual*.

§2. TEST ON LISTENING. (Group Work.) Now the Guide, or the records, is going to recite for you twelve short conversations. They are conversations which you have already had in previous Units. This time, however, you will not repeat after the Guide or records, but simply listen. First listen to the first conversation, with your books closed. After hearing it once, open your books to this place and read to yourself the three statements written below. Each of these statements is about the conversation you have just heard, and if you understood the conversation you will know whether each of the statements is true or not. If a statement is true, mark it with a T; otherwise, mark it with an F.

It will take you a minute or so to listen to each conversation, and fifteen or twenty seconds to read the three true-false statements that apply to that conversation and decide whether they are true or false. When you have marked them, the Guide or records will give you the next short conversation, after which you will read the three statements for that conversation. And so on through the twelve.

Remember to *keep your books closed* as you listen to each conversation, and *do not* read the true-false statements for a conversation until *after* you hear the conversation.

To THE LEADER: The first six conversations are on Records 9A (after the spiral) and 9B. The other six are on Records 11B and 12A. There are no spirals between the conversations, so you will have to watch carefully to see where you pick the needle up as each one finishes, and try to start it the same place. A few false-starts won't hurt anything, but if you can investigate in advance and get a feel for the right placing, it will be a little better.

If the Guide is to give the conversations, they are those in the Listening-Ins of Units four and five.

*Do not* play any conversation twice. Once through is enough; any replaying or repetition by the Guide will spoil the value of the test. Allow about fifteen or twenty seconds for marking the statements after each conversation.

After going through them all, refer to the *Guide's Manual* for the answers and let each member of the group score himself, as before.

GROUP 1

FOR CONVERSATION 1.

1. *'Wáng-'tày·tay gēn-'Wáng-'shyān·sheng dēw-'láy·le.*
2. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng yěw-yí·ge-shyǎw-'nán-háy·dz.*
3. *Shyǎw-'háy·dz 'sān·swèy.*

FOR CONVERSATION 2.

1. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng-de-'mǔ·chin yěw-'wǔ·ge-háy·dz.*
2. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng shř-dǐng-'dà-de.*
3. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'méy·yéw-'nywǔ·ér.*

FOR CONVERSATION 3.

1. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng-de-'jyě·jye dzày-'Yīng·gwo.*
2. *Tā-dzwò-'chwán chywù-de.*
3. *Dàu-'Yīng·gwo-chywù-de-'Měy·gwo-rén hěn-'dwō.*

FOR CONVERSATION 4.

1. *'Méy·yěw-'rén gěy-'Lwó-shyān·sheng gēn-'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'chá hē.*
2. *Tā·men-'dž·jǐ dàw-'wū·dz-li-chywù hē-'chá.*
3. *'Jwō·dz-shang-de-'chá hěn-'bù-hǎw-hē.*

FOR CONVERSATION 5.

1. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng-de-'fù·mǔ dēw-bú-'dzày-le.*
2. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng-shwō tā-'fù·chin shyàn·'dzày dzày-'Yīng·gwo.*

3. 'Wáng-shyān·sheng-de-'fù·chin 'jīn·nyan yǎw-hwéy-'Jūng·gwo-láy.

FOR CONVERSATION 6.

1. Shyàn·'dzày 'háy-yěw-tsúng-'Měy·gwo dàw-'Yīng·gwo-chywù-de 'chwán.
2. 'Lwó-shyān·sheng děy-'yí·ge-rén dàw-fàn-'gwǎn·dz chywù-chr̄-'fàn.
3. 'Wáng-shyān·sheng děy-hwéy-'jyā-chywù chr̄-'fàn.

GROUP 2.

FOR CONVERSATION 1.

1. 'Wáng-shyān·sheng yàw-dàw-'Jāng-shyān·sheng-'jyā-chywù.
2. 'Jāng-tày·tay kàn-tā-'mǐ·chin-chywù-le.
3. 'Jāng-tày·tay 'míng·tyan 'hwéy·lay.

FOR CONVERSATION 2.

1. 'Lwó-shyān·sheng-de-'ywàn·dz-li 'méy·yěw-'shù.
2. 'Ywàn·dz-li yěw-yì·jāng-hén-hǎw-'kàn-de-shyǎw-'jwō·dz.
3. 'Lwó-shyān·sheng 'chū·chywu·le.

FOR CONVERSATION 3.

1. 'Wáng gēn-'Jāng dēw-dzày-'ywàn·dz-li hē-'chá.
2. Ywàn·dz-li-de-'jwō·dz-shang yěw-'yān, 'méy·yěw-yáng·'hwǒ.
3. 'Wáng 'yě-méy·yěw-yáng·'hwǒ.

FOR CONVERSATION 4.

1. Jè-'lyǎng·wèy-'Jūng·gwo-rén děng-'Lwó-shyān·sheng, 'děng·le bú-dàw-'wǔ·fēn-jūng.
2. 'Wáng gěy-'Jāng gēn-'Lwó 'jyè·shàw.
3. 'Lwó 'chǐng-tā·men hē-'chá.

FOR CONVERSATION 5.

1. 'Lwó dzày-'Jūng·gwo 'jù·le 'shŕ·nyán-le.
2. 'Wáng-shwō tā·de-hwèy-shwō-'Jūng·gwo·hwà-de-'wày·gwo-péng·yew-li 'Lwó 'shwō-de 'dǐng-hǎw.
3. 'Lwó-shwō tā-shwō-de-'Fà·gwo-hwà, 'Dé·gwo-hwà, dēw-'shwō-de 'hén-hǎw.

FOR CONVERSATION 6.

1. 'Jāng 'bù-néng dzày-'Lwó·de-'jyā-li chr̄-'fàn, 'yīn·wèy tā-'děy hwéy-'jyā-chywù.
2. 'Wáng 'yě-bù-néng dzày-'Lwó-jyā chr̄-'fàn.
3. Tā·men-'sān·ge-rén dēw-shwō "'míng·tyan 'jyàn.'

After you have listened to all the conversations and marked all these statements as true or false, your Leader will go over them with you and tell you which are true and which are false. If there is any question in your mind, you can listen to the proper conversation again and check up.

If you got through Sections A, B, and C with considerable ease, and got most of the true-false statements of this Section right, it means that you have learned well the material of the first five Units of the Chinese Course. You have learned both to understand what you hear, and to express what you yourself want to say. If you have had considerable trouble, *now* is the time to go back and go over some of the material again. If your chief trouble is understanding what you hear, listen to the Basic Sentences and the Listening In material of the first five Units again, and read again the various Word

Studies. If you understand all right, but have trouble expressing things yourself, do the same thing, concentrating on repeating what you hear, until you reach the point of rattling the sentences off your tongue without a moment's hesitation. If your main trouble is making the sounds, even when you know what you want to say, spend more time with the Hints on Pronunciation. *Do not go beyond* this point until you are really fluent with the material contained in the first five Units. Going slowly enough now will make it possible for you to go much faster later on.

## CHECK LIST FOR PART ONE

This list of words includes all those presented in the Basic Sentences or the Word Studies of the first five Units (there are no new words in Unit VI). Words given in the Hints on Pronunciation which are not discussed elsewhere are not included. To help you use this list, a capital letter has been put after most of the words, telling what kind of a word it is. The letters used and their meanings are as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| A | descriptive word (‘adjective’): *hǎw* ‘to be OK’ |
| H | adverb: *bū* ‘not’, *hěn* ‘very’. |
| I | ‘intransitive verb’—verbs like *dzwò* ‘to sit’, *'dzwò·shyà* ‘to sit down’, *pǎw* ‘to run’. |
| J | conjunction: *'kě·shr̀* ‘but’. |
| K | words like *gēn* ‘with’, *dàw* ‘to’. In Chinese these words are often called ‘coverbs’. |
| M | measures: *·ge*. |
| N | nouns: *fàn* ‘food’. |
| P | place-words (a kind of noun): *'chyán·byān* ‘front side’. |
| T | time words (another kind of noun): *'míng·tyan* ‘tomorrow’. |
| V | transitive verbs: *kàn* ‘look at, see’. |

If a word belongs to more than one of these classes, it is put in more than once, with the differences of meaning indicated.

Words of more than one syllable are marked as follows:

(1) If the stress is indicated on the *second syllable* of a two-syllable word, it may in some sentences shift to the first syllable but the tones of both syllables are kept. Thus *dyàn-'chē* ‘streetcar’ is usually pronounced that way, but sometimes it will be *'dyàn-chē* or *dyàn-chē* with no stress at all.

(2) If the stress is indicated on the *first syllable* of a two-syllable word, but a tone is written on the second syllable, the tone of the second syllable frequently drops. Thus: *'bā·shŕ* ‘eighty’ is frequently spoken, in sentences, as *'bā·shr*, or as *bā·shr* with no stress.

(3) If the stress is indicated on the first syllable of a two-syllable word, and no tone is written on the second syllable, then the second syllable is always toneless. For example: *'ér·dz* ‘son’ may lose the stress and become *ér·dz*, but the second syllable never has a tone.

## B

*bā* 'eight'
*'bā·shí* 'eighty'
*bǎ* M (for *'yǐ·dz* 'chair')
*bǎ* K 'taking, considering'
*ba* at end of a sentence, gives a feeling of request, with sometimes slight impatience.
*bàn* 'half'
*bāw* M 'package, pack'
*'bì·gwó* N '(my) humble country'
*'bì·shìng* N '(my) humble family-name'
*bīng* N 'soldier'
*bū* (alone)
*bú* (alone *or* before ˋ) } H 'not' (not used with *yěw* 'have')
*bù* (before ˉ, ˊ, ˇ)
*Bú-'kè·chi.* 'Don't act like a guest.'—'You're welcome.'
*byān* M of P 'side'

## C

*chá* N 'tea'
*chá-'wǎn* N 'teacup'
*chē* N 'cart, any wheeled vehicle'
*chēw* V 'to inhale, draw in'
*chī* 'seven'
*'chī·shí* 'seventy'
*'chǐ·láy* I 'to rise up, get up'
*chǐng* V 'to request, invite'
*Chǐng.* 'Please.'
*Chǐng-'wèn.* 'May I please ask you?'
*chr̄* V 'to eat'
*chū* V 'to go out of, exit'
*'chū·chywù* I 'to go out'
*'chū·láy* I 'to come out'
*chwán* N 'boat, ship'
*chyán* N 'money'
*chyán* P 'front'
*'chyán·byān* P 'front side'
*chywù* I 'go'
*'chywù·nyan* T 'last year'

## D

*dà* A 'large, big, adult'
*'dà-rén* N 'adult'
*'dà·shēng* H 'in a loud voice'
*dàw* K 'to (a place)', 'at *or* before (a time)'
*dàw* V 'to arrive at'
*dàw* I 'to arrive'
*dày* K 'leading, taking (a person)'
*de* added to one group of words, means (1) that this group modifies or describes the next, (2) that the group is being used as a noun, or (3) that the thing being talked about happened in the past.
*'Dé·gwo* N, P 'Germany'
*děng* V 'to wait for'
*'děng-yi·děng* I 'to wait a minute'
*dēw* H 'all, both, altogether'

*děy* V 'to have to, must'
'*dǐ·shyà* P 'the under side or space'
*dì-* put before a numeral makes it mean 'the first', 'the second', and so on.
*dì·di* N 'younger brother'
'*dì·fang* P 'place'
'*dì·gěy* V 'to hand something to (a person)
'*dì·shyung* N 'brothers'
*dǐng* H 'most, topmost'
'*dūng·shi* N 'thing'
*dǔng* V 'to understand'
*dwèy* A 'right, correct'
'*Dwèy-bu·chǐ.* 'Forgive me.' 'I'm sorry.' 'I beg your pardon.'
*dwō* A 'much, many, more'
'*dwō·shǎw* N 'what quantity *or* number?'
*dyǎn* M 'a speck, bit, dot of'; with *jūng* 'clock' means 'o'clock' or 'hour'.
*dyǎn* V 'to light (a fire, a cigarette)'
*dyàn* N 'electricity'
*dyàn-'chē* N 'streetcar'
*dyàn-chē·'jàn* N 'streetcar-stop'
*dyàn·'yǐng* N 'moving picture'
*dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn* N 'movie theater'
*dz̀·'jǐ* 'self'
*dzày* K 'at, in'
*dzày* V 'to be at, in'
*dzày* H 'again, then'
*Dzày-'jyàn!* 'So long!'
'*dzěm·me* H 'how?', 'how is it that?'
*dzěw* I 'to walk, go', 'to depart'
'*dzěw·chū* V 'to walk out of'
'*dzěw·chywù* I 'to walk away'
'*dzěw·dàw* V 'to walk to (a place)'
'*dzěw·jìn* V 'to walk into (a place)'
'*dzěw·láy* I 'to come walking'
'*dzěw-yi·dzěw* 'to take a walk'
*dzwǒ* P 'left'
'*dzwǒ·byān* 'left side'
*dzwò* I 'to sit'
*dzwò* K 'using as a means of transportation'
*dzwò* V 'to use as a means of transportation, to go by'
'*dzwò·chǐ·láy* I 'to sit up' (from a reclining position)
'*dzwò·dzày* V 'to sit on, in, at'
'*dzwò·shyà* I 'to sit down'
'*dzwò-yi·dzwò* 'to sit a while and visit with each other'

### E

'*ér·dz* N 'son'
*èr* 'two'
'*èr·shŕ* 'twenty'

### F

'*Fà·gwo* N, P 'France'
*fàn* N 'food; rice, staple wheat-products'
*fàn·'dyàn* N 'hotel' (western style)

*fàn-'gwǎn·dz* N 'restaurant'
*fàn-'wǎn* N 'rice-bowl'
*'fáng·dz* N 'house'
*fēn* M; for money, 'cent'; for time, 'minute'
*fēy* I 'to fly'
*'fēy·chū* V 'to fly out of
*'fēy·chyù* I 'to fly away'
*'fēy·dàw* V 'to fly to (a place)'
*fēy·'jī* N 'airplane'
*'fēy·jìn* V 'to fly into (a place)'
*'fēy·láy* I 'to come flying'
*'fù·chin* N 'father'
*'fù·mǔ* N 'parents'

## G

*·ge* M used for people and many other things; vague meaning of 'individual unit of'
*'gē·dzày* V 'to put something in, on (a place)'
*'gē·ge* N 'older brother'
*'gē·shyà* I 'to put something down'
*gēn* M for certain stick-like objects
*gēn* K 'with, and, following'
*gěy* K 'for the sake of (a person)'
*gěy* V 'to give'
*'gwǎn·dz* N 'shop, store'
*gwèy* A 'expensive (things); honorable (people)'
*Gwèy·'gwó?* '(What is your) honorable country?'
*Gwèy-'shìng?* '(What is your) honorable family-name?'

## H

*hǎw* A 'OK, good'
*háy* H 'yet, still'
*'háy·dz* N 'child'
*hē* V 'drink'
*hé* M 'boxful'
*'hé·dz* N 'box'
*hěn* H 'very'
*hòw* P 'back'
*'hòw·byān* P 'rear side'
*hwā* N 'flower'
*hwà* N 'language, speech, words'
*hwéy* V 'to return to'
*'hwéy·chyù* I 'to go back'
*'hwéy·láy* I 'to come back'
*hwèy* V 'to have learned how to, to know how to'
*hwǒ* N 'fire'
*hwǒ-'chē* N 'train'
*hwǒ-chē-'jàn* N 'railroad station'

*jàn* I 'to stand'
*'jàn·chǐ·láy* I 'to stand up' (from a reclining or sitting position)
*'jàn·dzày* V 'to stand at, on'
*jāng* M for *'jwō·dz* 'table', and other flat things
*jè* 'this'
*'jè·byān* P 'this side'

*'jè·ge* ‘this’
*jè·li* P ‘here’
*jèr* Peiping form of *'jè·li*
*jèy* Peiping form of *jè* or *'jè-yī*
*jĭ* ‘a few’; ‘how many?’ (expecting a small answer, not more than about ten)
*'jīn·nyan* T ‘this year’
*'jīn·tyan* T ‘today’
*jìn* V ‘to enter’ (a place)
*'jìn·chywù* I ‘to go in’
*'jìn·dàw* V ‘to enter into’ (a place)
*'jìn·láy* I ‘to come in’
*'jr̄·dàw* (*bù-jr̄·'dàw*) V ‘to know, know how to’
*jù* I ‘to live, reside, stay, stop’
*'jù·dzày* V ‘to live in, at’ (a place)
*jūng* N ‘clock’
*'Jūng·gwo* N, P ‘China’
*'jwō·dz* N ‘table’
*jyā* N ‘home, family’
*jyē·'hwēn* I ‘to be married’
*'jyĕ·jye* N ‘older sister’
*'jyĕ·mèy* N ‘sisters’
*'jyè·shàw* V ‘to introduce’ (people)
*Jyéw-'yăng.* (I have) long respected (your name and reputation)’—‘Pleased to meet you.’
*jyĕw* H ‘for a long time’
*jyĕw* ‘nine’
*jyĕw* N ‘wine, liquor’
*'jyĕw·shŕ* ‘ninety’
*jyèw* H ‘immediately then; forthwith; so’

## K

*kàn* V ‘look at, see; visit with’
*kāy* V ‘open, start, leave, begin, drive (a car)’
*kē* M for *shù* ‘tree’
*'ké·yĭ* V ‘be permitted to, able to’
*'kĕ·shr̀* J ‘but’
*kè* M for time, ‘quarter-hour’
*kwày* M ‘a hunk, piece, clod’; for money, ‘dollar’

## L

*láy* I ‘come’
*le* added to verbs, or at the end of a sentence, implies that the event being talked about has taken place sometime in the past.
*lĕng* A ‘cold’
*lĭ* P ‘inside’
*'lĭ·byān* P ‘inside’
*'lyáng·kwày* A ‘cool and comfortable’
*lyăng* ‘a couple, two’
*lyèw* ‘six’
*'lyèw·shŕ* ‘sixty’

## M

*ma* at the end of a sentence makes it into a question.
*màn* A ‘slow’

'*màn·yi·dyan* H 'a little slower'
*máw* M with money, 'dime'
·*men* added to personal pronouns to mean more than one; added to a few nouns, which refer to people, to mean the whole group of people to which that noun refers.
*méy* H 'not' (not used with *shr̀* 'to be')
'*Měy·gwo* N, P 'the United States'
'*mèy·mey* N 'younger sister'
'*míng·nyan* T 'next year'
'*míng·tyan* T 'tomorrow'
'*mǔ·chin* N 'mother'

## N

*ná* V 'take, bring'
'*ná·chǐ* V 'to pick up'
'*ná·chū* V 'to take out of (some place)'
'*ná·chywù* I 'to take something away'
'*ná·dàw* V 'to take something to' (a place)
'*ná·jìn* V 'to take something into' (a place)
'*ná·láy* I 'to bring something'
*nǎ* 'which?'
'*nǎ·byān* P 'which side?'
'*nǎ·ge* 'which'
*nǎ·li* P 'where?'
*nǎr* Peiping form of '*nǎ·li*
*nà* 'that'
'*nà·byān* P 'that side'
'*nà·ge* 'that'
'*nà·li* P 'there'
*nàr* Peiping form of '*nà·li*
*nán-* A 'male' (of humans)
'*nán·de* N 'a male human being'
*ne* at end of a sentence gives it a feeling of irritated or surprised questioning, of hesitation, or of doubt.
*néng* V 'to be able to'
*něy* Peiping form of *nǎ* or '*nǎ-yī*
*nèy* Peiping form of *nà* or '*nà-yī*
*nǐ* 'you (one person)'
'*nǐ·de* 'your yours (one person's)'
'*nǐ·men* 'you (more than one person)'
'*nǐ·men·de* 'your, yours (more than one person's)'
*nyán* M of T 'year'
*nywǔ-* V 'female' (of humans)
'*nywǔ·de* N 'a female human being'
'*nywǔ·ér* N 'daughter'

## P

*pǎw* I 'run, go fast'
'*pǎw·chū* V 'to run out of' ( place)
'*pǎw·chywù* I 'to go away, runing' (not 'to run away' in the sense of escaping from authority)
'*pǎw·dàw* V 'to run to' (a place)
'*pǎw·jìn* V 'to run into' (a place)
'*pǎw·láy* I 'to come running'
'*péng·yew* N 'friend'

### R

*rè* A 'hot'
*rén* N 'person'
*ròw* N 'meat, flesh'

### S

*sān* 'three'
'*sān·shŕ* 'thirty'
*shàng* P 'top side'
*shǎw* A 'few, little, less'
'*shém·me* 'what?'
*shìng* N 'surname, family name'
*shŕ* 'ten'
'*shŕ-hew* T 'time'
*shr̀* V 'to be, to be equal to'
*shù* N 'tree'
*shwéy* 'who?'
'*shwéy·de* 'whose?'
*shwěy* N 'water'
*shwō* V 'to speak, say'
'*shwō-yi·shwō* I 'to talk for a while, to explain, to talk seriously'
'*shyān·sheng* N 'sir, Mister, husband, gentleman, teacher'
*shyàn·'dzày* T 'right now'
*shyǎng* V 'to think, to have the opinion that'
'*shyǎng-yi·shyǎng* I 'to think for a minute, to stop and think'
*shyàng* K 'towards'
'*shyáw·jye* N 'Miss, young lady, daughter'
*shyǎw* A 'small, young'
*Shyè·shye* 'Thank you.'
*swèy* M of T 'year of age'
*swǒ* M for '*fáng·dz* 'house'
*sz̀* 'four'
'*sz̀·shŕ* 'forty'

### T

*tā* 'he, she; him, her, it; them (things only)'
'*tā·de* 'his, hers, her'
'*tā·men* 'they, them'
'*tā·men·de* 'their, theirs'
*tán* V 'to talk, converse'
'*tán-yi·tán* V 'to converse a bit'
*tày* H 'too'
'*tày·tay* N 'wife, Mrs., madam'
*tsày* N 'food other than rice or wheat staples, eaten for taste and interest'
*tsè'swǒ* N 'toilet'
*tsúng* K 'from' (a place')
*tyān* M of T 'day'

### W

*wǎn* M 'bowlful'
*wǎn* N 'bowl'
*wày* P 'outside'
'*wày·byān* P 'outside'

'*wày·gwo* N, P 'foreign country'
*wèn* V 'to ask' (a person)
'*wèn-yi·wèn* I 'to ask a question'
*wèy* M replaces ·*ge* when referring to people with a feeling of politeness.
*wèy* K 'because of'
*wǒ* 'I, me'
'*wǒ·de* 'my, mine'
'*wǒ·men* 'we, us'
'*wǒ·men·de* 'our, ours'
'*wū·dz* N 'room'
*wǔ* 'five'
'*wǔ·shŕ* 'fifty'

## Y

*yān* N 'smoke; cigarette'
*yáng·'hwǒ* N 'match'
*yàw* V 'to be going to, to need to, to have to, to want'
*yě* H 'also'
*yěw* V 'to have, possess, contain; there is, there are'
'*yěw·de* A, N 'some'
*yèw* H 'once again, in turn, moreover, again'
*yèw* P 'right'
'*yèw·byān* P 'right side'
*yī* (alone) }
*yí* (before ˋ) } 'one'; 'the whole'
*yì* (before ˉ, ˊ, ˇ) }
*yǐ·'chyán* T 'earlier, ago'
'*yǐ·dz* N 'chair'
*yì·'jŕ* H 'straight'
'*yīn·wèy* J 'because'
'*Yīng·gwo* N, P 'England'
'*ywàn·dz* N 'courtyard, court, yard, garden'
*ywè* M 'month of the year'
*ywè* N 'month'

# PART TWO

## UNIT VII

## WHERE DO YOU WORK?

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

Units VII through XI are constructed just like Units I through V. You have read and re-read the directions for the various parts of a Unit, so that you no longer need for those directions to be printed each time. If there is any doubt in your mind as to procedure, refer back to the equivalent part of the first or second Unit.

### §1. Basic Sentences (Group I).

Mr. Ross and Mr. Wáng discuss Mr. Wáng's work.

**Record 13A, beginning.**

| English Equivalents | Aids to Listening |
|---|---|
| Mr. Wáng: | |
| the western calendar | *shī·'lì* |
| What year is it by the western calendar? | *'Jīn·nyan shr̀-'shī·lì-'shém·me-nyán?* |
| Mr. Ross: | |
| thousand | *'chyān* |
| hundred | *'bǎy* |
| Nineteen forty-three. | *'yì·chyān 'jyéw·bǎy 'sz̀·shr 'sān·nyán.* |
| Mr. Wáng: | |
| You can also say ‘one-nine-four-three year.’ | *Nǐ-yě-'kě·yi-shwō ‘'yī 'jyěw 'sz̀ 'sān 'nyán.* |
| Mr. Ross: | |
| (Chinese) Republic | *'Mín·gwó* |
| What year of the Chinese Republic is it? | *Shr̀-'Mín·gwó-'dwō·shǎw-nyán?* |
| Mr. Wáng | |
| It's the thirty-second year of the Republic. | *'Mín·gwó sān·shr-'èr·nyan.* |
| day of the month | *'hàw* |
| What's the date today? | *'Jīn·tyan jr̀·'ywè-jr̀·'hàw?* |

**Mr. Ross:**

| | |
|---|---|
| July thirty-first. | *'Chī·ywè sān·shr-'yí·hàw.* |
| Tomorrow will be the first of August. | *'Míng·tyan shr̀-'bā·ywè-'yí·hàw.* |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| to do *or* make | *'dzwò* |
| work *or* business | *'shr̀* |
| Where do you work? | *Nǐ-dzày-'nǎ·li dzwò-'shr̀?* |

**Mr. Wáng:**

| | |
|---|---|
| teacher | *'jyàw·ywán* |
| I'm a teacher. | *Wǒ-shr̀-'jyàw·ywán.* |
| school | *shywé·'shyàw* |
| to teach | *'jyāw* |
| books | *'shū* |
| I teach in a school. | *Wǒ-dzày-yí·ge-shywé·'shyàw-li jyāw-'shū.* |

**Mr. Ross:**

| | |
|---|---|
| student | *'shywé·sheng* |
| Do you have any women students? | *Nǐ·de-'shywé·sheng-li yěw-'nywǔ-shywé·sheng-ma?* |

**Mr. Wáng:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Yes, but not many. | *'Yěw, kě·shr-bù-'dwō.* |

**Mr. Ross:**

| | |
|---|---|
| to like to do something | *'dy* |
| to read out loud *or* study | *'nyàn* |
| Do your students like to study? | *Nǐ·de-'shywé·sheng dy-nyàn-'shū-ma?* |

**Mr. Wáng:**

| | |
|---|---|
| They don't like to study, they like to see movies. | *Tā·men-'bú-ày-nyàn-'shū, ày-kàn-dyàn·'yǐng.* |

**Mr. Ross:**

| | |
|---|---|
| to learn | *'shywé* |
| What do they study with you? | *Tā·men 'gēn-nǐ shywé-'shém·me?* |

**Record 13B, beginning.**

**Mr. Wáng:**

| | |
|---|---|
| geography | *dì·'lǐ* |
| I teach them geography. | *Wǒ-'jyāw-tā·men dì·'lǐ.* |

**Mr. Ross:**

| | |
|---|---|
| How many hours a day do you teach? | *Yì·'tyān-jyāw 'jǐ·dyǎn-jūng?* |

**Mr. Wáng:**

| | |
|---|---|
| It depends. (It's not definite.) | *Bù-yí·'dìng.* |
| Sometimes more, sometimes less. | *'Yěw·de-shŕ·hew 'dwō, 'yěw·de-shŕ·hew 'shǎw.* |

**Mr. Ross:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Did you go to school yesterday? | *'Dzwó·tyan dàw-shywé·'shyàw 'chywù-le-ma?* |

**Mr. Wáng:**

| | |
|---|---|
| to be sick | *'bìng* |
| therefore | *'swó·yǐ* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Yesterday I was sick, so I didn't go. | *'Dzwó·tyan wǒ-'bìng·le, 'swó·yǐ méy-'chywù.* |
| already | *yǐ·'jīng* |
| [But] I'm already well [again] today, [so] I'll be there for sure. | *'Jīn·tyan wó-yǐ·'jīng-'hǎw·le, yí·'dìng-'chywù.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. This part of the work is mostly review in the present Unit; you are to go through the Practices on the vowels written *a*, *e*, and *o* again. However, here are two other things to watch for:

POINT 1. The sound at the beginning of a syllable which is written with an *h* is not quite like our English *h* in *hand*, *home*, *honey*, and so on. It is 'stronger' than our English *h*, sounding some times almost like the sound we make when clearing our throat to spit. You have probably caught this already, but if not, look out for it in the following. It occurs in these Practices in the words *hwà* 'speech', *hē* 'to drink', *hwēn* 'marriage contract', *yáng·'hwǒ* 'match', and *hwǒ-'chē* 'train'.

POINT 2. The sound at the beginning of a syllable which is written with *r* is very much like our English *r* in *red*, *run*, *raw*, but there is a slight difference. If you will say these English words, you will find that your tongue curls back towards the roof of your mouth, and that at the same time your lips protrude, at least a little. Both of these things happen when pronouncing the Chinese *r* too, but the tongue pushes a little closer to the roof of the mouth, so that as the air passes through the passage that is left, there is a little friction. It is almost as though you were saying *r* and *zh* (the consonant found in the middle of the word *vision*) at the same time. But don't make too much friction; it is only slight. The *r*-sound occurs in the following in the words *rèw* 'meat', *rè* 'hot', and *rén* 'person'.

Go through the following practices once listening mainly for the *r*- and *h*-sounds. Then go through again to practice your pronunciation of everything—consonants, vowels, and tones.

**Record 1B, beginning.**

PRACTICE 15.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'yān* | 'smoke, cigarette' |
| **myàn·'bāw* | 'bread' |
| *'shyān·sheng* | 'Mr.' |
| *dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn* | 'movie theater' |
| *'tā* | 'he, she' |
| *'hwà* | 'speech, language' |
| *'tày·tay* | 'Mrs.' |
| *'màn·yi·dyan* | 'a little slower' |

**Record 1B, after first spiral.**

PRACTICE 16.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'yě* | 'also' |
| *'gěy* | 'give' |
| *'Měy·gwo* | 'the United States' |
| *'wèy* | 'honorable person' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *'gwèy* | 'expensive, honorable' |
| *'gèw* | 'sufficient' |
| *'rèw* | 'meat' |
| *'yěw* | 'have' |
| *'hē* | 'to drink' |
| *'chē* | 'cart' |
| *'gēn* | 'with' |
| *'jè* | 'this' |
| *'rè* | 'hot' |
| *'rén* | 'person' |
| *'hwēn* | 'marriage contract' (you've had this in *jyē·'hwēn* 'to be married') |

**Record 1B, after second spiral.**

PRACTICE 17.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'wǒ* | 'I' |
| *'gwèy·gwó* | 'honorable country' |
| *yáng·'hwǒ* | 'match' |
| *hwǒ-'chē* | 'train' |

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES.

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

§1. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE ENGLISH.

§2. WORD STUDY.

POINT 1. COMPOUND WORDS.

*jyàw·'ywán* 'teach personnel'—'teacher'. The independent word 'to teach', as you know, is *jyāw* with first tone. The second element of this compound is not used alone.

*shywé·'shyàw* 'learn place'—'school'. *Shywé* is the independent verb 'to learn', *shyàw* is found only in compounds.

*'shywé·sheng* 'learn person'; *·sheng* is not used alone in this meaning, but is found in a number of compounds to mean a person who does the kind of thing indicated by the first part of the compound.

*dì·'lǐ* 'ground principle'. *Dì* means 'earth, ground, field', sometimes 'floor' *Lǐ* is a word meaning 'reason, principle'. In olden times *dì·'lǐ* meant 'geomancy'—the art of putting the doors of houses, the gates of cities, and so forth, in the right places to please the spirits. Nowadays *dì·lǐ·'shywé* means 'the study of geography', but in schools one shortens this simply to *dì·'lǐ*.

*yí·'dìng* 'one settle'—'certainly'. *Dìng* is rare as a separate word, but does occur with the meaning 'to settle something', 'to steady something'.

*shī·'lì* 'west calendar'. *Shī* is the word for 'west'; *lì* is found only in compounds, with the meaning 'calendar'.

POINT 2. THE CALENDAR. Before 1911 the Chinese used a lunar calendar, by which there were regularly twelve months of 29 or 30 days in each year, so that the fifteenth of each month corresponded to full moon. This necessitated an intercalary month from time to time; some years therefore had thirteen months, and there were about seven intercalary months each nineteen years. In this old system, the first month of a year was called *'Jēng·ywè*, and the last month

'*Là·ywè*; an intercalary month was called '*rwèn·ywè*; all the rest were numbered as you have learned—'*Èr·ywè* for the second, and so on. The first ten days of each month were not numbered with the measure *hàw*, as in '*yí·hàw* 'first day of the month', but by a different system: *chū-'yī*, *chū-'èr*, *chū-'sān*, and so on up to ten. The years themselves were numbered by a system within the reign of a particular emperor.

In 1911, with the founding of the Chinese Republic, the lunar calendar was abandoned for all official purposes. All the terms pertaining to the lunar calendar have since been dying out of use, though of course in some rural districts they will still be heard. The years themselves were numbered from the founding of the Republic, thusly: '*Jūng·hwá-'Mín·gwó-'èr·nyán* 'second year of the Chinese Republic', and so on; but in ordinary conversation the term *Jūng·'hwá* 'China' (another term, in addition to '*Jūng·gwo*) is usually dropped. The months are numbered throughout, including the first and the last of the year; there are no longer any intercalary months; and the forms *chū-'yī* and so on for the first ten days of the month were also dropped.

The Western Calendar, of course, inevitably creeps into national affairs. Just as a date given in terms of the founding of the Republic is preceded by the term '*Mín·gwó* 'Republic', so a date given in terms of the Western Calendar is given with the term *shì·'lì* at the start—unless it is clear which is meant, in which case both of these special terms can be dropped.

The first day of the first year of the Chinese Republic was the 1st of January, 1912. On that day Sun Yat Sen was proclaimed president of the Provisional Government of the Chinese Republic at Nanking. Because of this correlation, the date in terms of the Republic can always be determined if the date in the Western Calendar is known simply by subtracting eleven from the last two digits of the date in the Western Calendar.

In giving the complete date by either calendar, the year is always put first, then the month, and then the day.

Point 3. *Chyān* and *Bǎy*. The words for 'thousand' and 'hundred' work both as numbers and as measures. Thus you can say '*yì·bǎy-rén* 'one hundred men', using *bǎy* as a measure meaning a group of one hundred individuals; or you can say *yì·chyān-'bīng* 'one thousand soldiers', using *chyān* similarly. But you also say *yì·báy·wǎn-'fàn* 'one hundred bowls of rice', where the measure is *wǎn* 'bowlful', and *yì·bǎy·'tyān* 'a hundred days', where *tyān* is a measure of time.

Point 4. *Nyàn* and *Kàn*. *Nyàn* means basically 'to read out loud'; *kàn* means basically 'to look at'. Since formerly in Chinese schools one studied by reading books out loud, the expression *nyàn-'shū* means not only 'to read books out loud', but also 'to study'—even if the studying is by more modern methods and involves less noise. But when you want to say 'read a book', meaning not out loud and not especially for purposes of learning, the expression is *kàn-'shū* 'to look at books'.

Observe the following different meanings of *kàn*—all somehow related to the basic meaning:

*kàn-'hwā* 'to look at flowers'

*kàn·dyàn·'yǐng* 'to look at a movie'. This is the common expression which would be used where we would say 'go to a movie'.

*kàn-'péng·yew* 'to look at a friend'—to visit a friend'.

*kàn-'bìng* 'to look at illness'—'to treat illness'.

POINT 5. *Bìng* AND *Hǎw·le.* *Bìng* means either 'sick, ill', or 'to be ill', or 'sickness, illness'. That is, it is used either as a descriptive word or as a noun. For example:

*Wó-yěw-'bìng.* 'I have sickness'—'I'm sick'.

*'Bìng-rén hěn-'dwō.* 'The sick people are numerous.'

*Wǒ-'dzwó·tyan 'bìng·le.* 'I yesterday (was) sick'.

The expression *'hǎw·le* is used to refer to recovery from illness; this is simply *hǎw* 'to be OK' plus the element *le* which has been discussed before:

*Tā-bìng-'hǎw·le.* 'He has recovered.'

*Wó-yǐ·'jīng 'hǎw·le.* 'I'm already well.'

POINT 6. *Lǐ.* Compare the following sentences:

*Fàn-'gwǎn·dz-li yěw-'jwō·dz.* 'There are tables in the restaurant.'

*Wǒ·de-'péng·yew-li yěw-sān·ge-'Fà·gwo-rén.* 'There are three Frenchmen among my friends.'

In the first case, the meaning of the *lǐ* which is added to the word *fàn-'gwǎn·dz* is purely local—it means literally 'restaurant's inside-part'. In the second case, the addition of *lǐ* to *wǒ·de-'péng·yew* 'my friends' does not mean literally 'inside my friends'—in their bodies—, but rather '*among* my friends'. This transferred, not specifically local, meaning of *lǐ* is quite common.

POINT 7. QUESTIONS.

*Nǐ·de-'shywé·sheng-li 'yěw-méy·yew 'nywǔ-shywé·sheng?*

*Nǐ·de-'shywé·sheng-li yéw-'nywǔ-shywé·sheng 'méy·yěw?*

(Both meaning 'Are there any women students among your students?')

*Nǐ-'shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'Měy·gwo-rén?*

*Nǐ-shr̀-'Měy·gwo-rén bú·shr?*

(Both meaning 'Are you an American?')

*Nǐ-'yàw-bu yàw chr̄-'fàn?*

*Nǐ-yàw-chr̄-'fàn bú-yàw?*

(Both meaning 'Do you want to eat?' or 'Are you going to eat?')

Any question that can be asked by repeating the verb with *bū* or *méy* 'not' between, can also be asked by using the verb only once in the middle of the sentence and putting the negative form of the verb at the end. Thus, in the first sentence, *'yěw-méy·yew* 'have (or) not have?' occurs in the middle of the sentence; in the second only *yěw* 'have' is found in the middle of the sentence, and the *'méy·yěw* is tacked on at the end. Similarly with the second and third pairs of sentences. There is no detectable difference in meaning between the two ways of asking a question.

But notice the following also:

*Nǐ-chr̄-'fàn-le méy·yew?* 'Have you eaten or not?'

*Nǐ-chr̄-'fàn-le-ma?* 'Have you eaten or not?'

If *le* comes in the sentence, then the verb cannot be doubled with *bū* or *méy* between in order to ask a question. There are two ways to ask a question in this case: put '*méy·yěw* at the end of the sentence, or put *ma* at the end of the sentence.

POINT 8. DESCRIPTIVE WORDS. With a pair of descriptive words of opposite meaning, like *dwō* 'much, many, more', and *shǎw* 'little, few, less', and a few helping words (adverbs) like *bū* 'not' and *hěn* 'very', you can make a great many phrases with slightly differing meanings:

*'hěn-dwō* '*very* many'
*hěn-'dwō* 'very many'
*'hěn-bù-shǎw* '*very* very many'
*hěn-'bù-shǎw* 'quite a number'
*hěn-bù-'shǎw* 'a good many'
*dwō* 'many'
*'bù-shǎw* 'not just a few'
*'bù-hěn-dwō* 'not so very many'
*'bù-hén-shǎw* 'not so very few'
*'bù-dwō* 'not a great many'
*shǎw* 'a few'
*'hén-shǎw* '*very* few'
*hén-'shǎw* 'very few'

Here are some sentences with some of these:

*'Nywǔ-shywé·sheng 'hěn-bù-shǎw.* 'There are a great many coeds.'

*'Nán-shywé·sheng 'bù-hěn-dwō.* 'There aren't so very many men students (though there are a quite a number, even so.)'

*Yěw-'hěn-dwō-de 'shywé·sheng.* 'There are certainly a lot of students.'

POINT 9. WORDS THAT SOUND THE SAME. You may have been a bit disturbed by cases of words which sounded the same and were written out in the same way in the Aids to Listening, but which had different meanings. This is a familiar enough thing in English, though: *ear* (to hear with) and *ear* (of corn); *corn* (grain) and *corn* (on the toe); sometimes we do spell words differently when they have such different meanings, as with *meat* and *meet*, or *would* and *wood*, but they *sound* just the same anyway, and in most of our use of our language we aren't going by anything but the sound—we talk much more than we read or write.

'Words that sound the same', of course, must sound *completely* the same to count. We may feel at first that *shū* 'book' and *shù* 'tree' sound the same, but of course they have different tones, which means that they are really as different as English *tin* and *din*;it is just a matter of learning to hear the difference.

But there are a great many examples of words that sound exactly alike in Chinese—more examples than can be found in English: *dzày* 'again', 'at, in', 'to be at, in'; *dzwò* 'to sit', 'to be using as a means of transportation,' 'to go by (a means of transportation)', 'to make, do'; *dzěw* 'to walk', 'to go', 'to depart'.

Have you ever had the experience in English of misunderstanding someone because he used a word that sounded just like some other word? Of course you have had this experience—but it is rare, and not very troublesome. Exactly the same thing is true in Chinese. Very, very rarely a sentence will be ambiguous, but usually the other words in the sentence make quite clear which of the words that sound alike is being used. Thus, with *dzwò*:

(a) if it is followed by a noun which is not the name of a vehicle, it means 'to do, make':

*dzwò-'shr̀* 'to do work, to work'
*dzwò-'fàn* 'to do food'—'to cook'
*dzwò-'rén* 'to make a man'—in the same sense that we use the English word *make* in a sentence like *He'll never make a football player.*

(b) if it is followed by a noun which *is* the name of a vehicle, it means 'to go by means of' that vehicle:

*dzwò-fēy·'jī* 'by plane', 'to go by plane'.

(c) if it is followed by the name of something a person can reasonably sit on, or if it is compounded with another element, it means 'to sit':

*'dzwò·dzày-'yǐ·dz-shang* 'to sit on a chair'
*dzày-'yǐ·dz-shang 'dzwò* 'to sit on a chair'
*'dzwò·shya* 'to sit down'
*Chǐng-'dzwò.* 'Please sit down.'

POINT 10. *Shr̀* AND *'Dūng·shi.* The word *'dūng·shi* 'thing', refers to a material object—something that can be seen, felt, tasted, and so on. We use the English word *thing* also in an abstract way, meaning an affair, matter, piece of business, something to do, something to be concerned about. For this latter general meaning, the Chinese word is *shr̀* 'affair, matter, piece of business'. Remember: a *'dūng·shi* is always something that can be touched, physically; a *shr̀* is always something abstract.

POINT 11. TIME-WHEN AND TIME-DURING-WHICH. First look at the following sentences:

*'Sān·nyán-yǐ·chyán wǒ-'jù·dzày-'Měy·gwo.* 'Three years ago I was living in the United States.'
*Wǒ-'sān·nyán-yǐ·chyán 'jù·dzày-'Měy·gwo.* (same meaning)
*Wǒ-dzày-'Měy·gwo 'jù·le 'sān·nyán.* 'I lived in the United States for three years.'
*Wǒ-dzày-'Měy·gwo 'jù·le 'sān·nyán-le.* 'I have been living in the United States for three years.'
*Wǒ-'jyāw·le 'sān·nyán-'shū-le.* 'I have been teaching for three years.'
*Wǒ-jyāw-'shū 'jyāw·le 'sān·nyán-le.* (same meaning)

Notice the following points about these sentences:

(1) An indication of time put *before* the verb (the first two sentences) tells the *time-when* the action referred to took place.

(2) An indication of time put *after* the verb (all the other sentences) tells the *length of time during which* the action referred to took place.

(3) In the next to the last example, the literal translation might be 'I teach-have three-years-books-have.' The literal translation of the last example is 'I teach-books teach-have three-years-have.' These are the two ways of indicating the length of time during which an action took place.

§3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY? Go through the following as usual. Some of them are in a style you haven't seen before: English and Chinese are given in parallel columns, the English sentences with letters and the Chinese with numbers. Your task is to pair the English and the Chinese off properly. This can be done by drawing a light line between English sentence *a* and the Chinese sentence which translates it, or by putting the number of the proper Chinese sentence by each English sentence.

1. To the question 'Do you have a girl friend?' which of the following answers are possible?

a. *'Méy·yěw.*
b. *'Yěw.*
c. *Hěn-'dwō.*
d. *'Sān·sž·ge.*
e. *Wó-yǐ·'jīng jyē·'hwēn·le.*
f. *Wǒ-shr̀-dzwò-'fàn-de.*
g. *Yǐ·'chyán-yěw, shyàn·'dzày 'méy·yěw.*
h. *Nǐ-'géy-wǒ 'jyè·shàw-yí·wèy, 'hǎw-ma?*
i. *Wǒ·de-'nywǔ-péng·yew 'dzwó·tyan láy-'kàn-wǒ.*

2. You want to know which year of the Chinese Republic this is. You say:

a. *'Jīn·nyan shr̀-'Mín·gwó-'jǐ·nyán?*
b. *'Jīn·nyan shr̀-shī·'lì-'shém·me-nyán?*
c. *Yì·'nyán yěw-dwō·shaw-tyān?*

3. If this is the 22nd year of the Chinese Republic, which year is it in the western calendar?

a. *'Yī-'jyěw-'yī-'sān.*
b. *'Yī-'jyěw-'èr-'sān.*
c. *'Yī-'jyěw-'sān-'sān.*
d. *'Yī-'jyěw-'sž-'sān.*
e. *'Yī-'jyěw-'sān-'sž.*

4.

| What work do you want to do? | *Nǐ-yàw-dzwò-'shém·me-shr̀?* |
|---|---|
| a. I want to teach. | 1. *Yàw-nyàn-'shū.* |
| b. I want to study. | 2. *Yàw-kàn-'shū.* |
| c. I want to read books. | 3. *Yàw-dzwò-'shywé·sheng.* |
| d. I want to be a teacher. | 4. *Yàw-jyāw-'shū.* |
| e. I want to be a teacher. | 5. *Yàw-dzwò-'fàn.* |
| f. I want to be a student. | 6. *Yàw-dzwò-'jyàw·ywán.* |
| g. I want to cook. | 7. *Yàw-dzwò-jyāw-'shū-de.* |

5.

| Do you like to study?<br>(or) | *Nǐ-ày-nyàn-'shū-ma?*<br>*Nǐ-'ày-bu·ày nyàn-'shū?* |
|---|---|
| a. I like to. | 1. *'Bú-'ày, kě·shr 'děy-nyàn-'shū.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| b. I don't like to. | 2. *Bù-yí·'dìng; wǒ-ày-shywé-dì·'lǐ.* |
| c. I both like to and don't like to. | 3. *'Bú-ày.* |
| d. It's not definite; I like to study geography. | 4. *'Yěw·de-shŕ·hew 'ày, 'yěw·de-shŕ·hew 'bú-ày.* |
| e. Sometimes I like to, sometimes I don't. | 5. *Wó-yě-'ày yě-bú-'ày.* |
| f. I don't like to, but I have to. | 6. *'Ày.* |

6.

| | |
|---|---|
| How's your health? | *Nǐ-'hǎw-bu·hǎw?* |
| a. I'm fine, thanks. | 1. *Wǒ-'bù-hǎw.* |
| b. I'm not well. | 2. *'Dzwó·tyan wǒ-'bìng·le.* |
| c. I'm a little sick. | 3. *'Jīn·tyan hěn-'rè, 'swó·yi wó-yěw-'bìng.* |
| d. Yesterday I was sick. | 4. *'Jīn·tyan tày-'rè, wǒ-yí·'dìng yàw-'bìng.* |
| e. Today I'm already OK again. | 5. *Wǒ-hěn-'hǎw, 'shyè·shye.* |
| f. It's very hot today, therefore I'm ill. | 6. *Yěw-yì·dyǎn-'bìng.* |
| g. Because it's very hot today, I'm ill. | 7. *'Jīn·tyan wó-yǐ·'jīng 'hǎw·le.* |
| h. It's too hot today; I shall certainly be sick. | 8. *'Yīn·wèy 'jīn·tyan hěn-'rè, 'swó·yi wó-yěw-'bìng* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Where do you live?<br>(or) | *Nǐ-'jù·dzày-shém·me-'dì·fang?*<br>*Nǐ-dzày-'shém·me-dì·fang'jù?* |
| a. In a hotel. | 1. *Dzày-wǒ-'jyā-li.* |
| b. In that hotel. | 2. *Yě-ké·yi-'jù, yě-ké·yǐ-chī-'fàn.* |
| c. At home. | 3. *Ké·yi-dzày-shywé·'shyàw-li 'jù-ma?* |
| d. At the school. | 4. *Dzày-nà·ge-fàn·'dyàn-li.* |
| e. Is it possible to live at the school? | 5. *Dzày-fàn·'dyàn-li.* |
| f. One can both live and board there. | 6. *Dzày-shywé·'shyàw-li.* |

8.

| | |
|---|---|
| How many months have you lived there? | *Dzày-'nà·li 'jù·le 'jǐ·ge-ywè-le?* |
| a. Three months. | 1. *Wǒ-'háy-yàw-dzày-'nà·li 'jù 'sż·ge-ywè.* |
| b. Altogether one year. | 2. *Chywù·nyan wǒ-dzày-'nà·li 'jù·le 'sż·ge-ywè.* |
| c. Last year I stayed there four months. | 3. *'Jīn·nyan 'jù·le 'bā·ge-ywè-le.* |
| d. This year I have stayed there eight months. | 4. *'Sān·ge-ywè-le.* |
| e. I shall stay there four months more. | 5 *Yí·'gùng-yì·'nyán-le.* |

### §4. What Did You Say?

### §5. Review of Basic Sentences Covering the Chinese.

## SECTION C: BASIC SENTENCES

### §1. Basic Sentences (Group II).

Mr. Ross and Mr. Hú are talking.

**Record 13B, about 1 ¼ inch from outside.***

| English Equivalents | Aids to Listening |
|---|---|
| Mr. Hú: | |
| to till (the soil) | *'jùng* |
| soil *or* ground | *'dì* |
| My older brothers are all farmers. | *Wǒ-'gē·ge 'dēw-shr̀-jùng-'dì-de.* |
| to be called *or* to call | *'jyàw* |
| agricultural people | *'núng·rén* |
| Farmers are also called 'agricultural people'. | *Jùng-'dì-de yě-'jyàw-'núng·rén.* |
| to buy | *'mǎy* |
| to sell | *'mày* |
| buying and selling business | *'mǎy·mày* |
| My younger brother and I are both business men. | *Wǒ-'dì·di 'gēn-wǒ 'dēw-shr̀-dzwò-'mǎy·mày-de.* |
| merchants | *'shāng·rén* |
| People who do buying and selling are also called 'merchants'. | *Dzwò-'mǎy·mày-de yě-jyàw-'shāng·rén.* |
| Mr. Ross: | |
| What kind of business are you in? | *Dzwò-'shém·me-'mǎy·mày?* |
| Mr. Hú: | |
| Nanking | *'Nán·jīng* |
| automobiles | *chì-'chē* |
| I used to sell automobiles in Nanking. | *Wó-yǐ·'chyán dzày-'Nán·jīng mày-chì-'chē.* |
| Mr. Ross: | |
| Are you from Nanking? | *Nǐ-shr̀-'Nán·jīng-rén-ma?* |
| Mr. Hú: | |
| No. | *'Bú·shr̀.* |
| father's father* | *dzǔ·'fù* |
| Szechwan | *Sz̀·'chwān* |
| Peiping | *'Běy·píng* |
| My grandfather went from Szechwan to Peiping to work. | *Wó-dzǔ·'fù tsúng-Sz̀·'chwān dàw-'Běy·píng chyù-dzwò-'shr̀.* |

**Record 14A, beginning.**

| | |
|---|---|
| starting | *'chǐ* |
| Starting in 1902, | *Tsúng-'yī-'jyěw-'líng-'èr-nyán-'chǐ,* |

---

* Usually, as you know, a spiral is put on a record between major parts. On this record it was omitted. You will be able to find the beginning of the second group of Basic Sentences easily enough, however: try to find the place where the English voice says 'Basic Sentences. Group II.'

* The English voice accidentally says 'father' instead of 'father's father'.

| | |
|---|---|
| our family lived in Peiping. | *wǒ·men-'jyā 'jù·dzày-'Běy·píng.* |
| We lived there straight through for more than thirty years. | *Yì·'jŕ 'jù·le 'sān·shr-dwō-nyán.* |
| later on | *'hèw·lay* |
| Later we transferred our business to Nanking, | *'Hèw·lay wǒ·men dàw-'Nán·jīng chywù-dzwò-'mǎy·mày,* |
| and we haven't lived in Peiping since. | *jyèw-'bú-dzày-'Běy·píng 'jù·le.* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| Since when (literally, 'from what year starting') have you lived in Nanking? | *Tsúng-'nǎ-yì·'nyán-chǐ dzày-'Nán·jīng 'jù?* |

Mr. Hú:

| | |
|---|---|
| It was 1934. | *'Nà-shr̀ 'yī-'jyěw-'sān-'sz̀·'nyán.* |
| Japan | *R̀·'běn* |
| to strike *or* hit | *'dǎ* |
| war *or* battle | *'jàng* |
| When we were in Nanking, | *Wǒ·men dzày-'Nán·jīng-de shŕ·hew,* |
| Japan and China were not yet at war. | *R̀·'běn gēn-'Jūng·gwo háy-'méy-dǎ-'jàng.* |
| Later they started fighting. | *'Hèw·lay 'dǎ·chǐ-'jàng-lay-le.* |
| enemy | *'dí·rén* |
| east | *'dūng* |
| west | *'shī* |
| Before the enemy fought up to Nanking, | *'Dí·rén 'dǎ·dàw-'Nán·jīng yǐ·'chyán,* |
| we had to go (literally ran) from east to west. | *wǒ·men 'jyèw-tsúng-'dūng shyàng-'shī 'pǎw.* |
| first | *'shyān* |
| Hankow | *'Hàn·kěw* |
| Chungking | *Chúng·'chìng* |
| First we went to Hankow, | *Shyān-'pǎw·daw-'Hàn·kěw,* |
| later we came on to Chungking. | *'hèw·lay 'yèw-'pǎw·dàw-Chúng·'chìng.* |
| afterwards *or* after | *yǐ·'hèw* |
| to open *or* start | *'kāy* |
| bookstore | *shū·'pù* |
| After we arrived in Chungking, | *'Dàw·le-Chúng·'chìng yǐ·'hèw,* |
| I opened a bookstore and sold books. | *wǒ-'kāy·le-yí·ge-shū·'pù, mày-'shū.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. Review the Practices on the different vowels made with the teeth close together—*i*, *u*, *ywu*, *r*, and *z*.

**Record 1B, after third spiral.**

PRACTICE 18.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'yī* | 'one' |
| *'chī* | 'seven' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *'nǐ* | 'you' |
| *'bì·gwó* | 'humble country' |
| *'bīng* | 'soldier' |
| *'Yīng·gwo* | 'England' |

**Record 1B, after fourth spiral.**

PRACTICE 19.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'bū* | 'not' |
| *'wǔ* | 'five' |
| *'dǔng* | 'understand' |
| *'Jūng·gwo* | 'China' |

**Record 1A, after eleventh spiral.**

PRACTICE 12.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'r̀* | 'day, sun' (you've had this now in *R̀·běn* 'Japan') |
| *'shr̀* | 'is' |
| *'jŕ* | 'straight' |
| *'chr̄* | 'eat' |

**Record 1A, after twelfth spiral.**

PRACTICE 13.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'sz̀* | 'four' |
| **'dz̀* | 'word' |
| **'tsz̀* | 'thorn' |

**Record 1A, after last spiral.**

PRACTICE 14.

| | |
|---|---|
| **'ywǔ* | 'rain' |
| **'jywù* | 'sentence' |
| *'chywù* | 'go' |
| **'shywù* | 'preface' |
| *'nywǔ* | 'female' (of humans) |
| **'lywù* | 'green' |

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES.

## SECTION D: WORD STUDY

§1. REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE ENGLISH.

§2. WORD STUDY.

POINT 1. COMPOUNDS AND NAMES OF PLACES.

*'núng·rén* 'agriculture people'. *Núng* means 'agriculture', but is not used as a separate word.

*'shāng·rén* 'commerce people'—'merchants'. *Shāng* 'commerce' occurs in compounds but is not used as a separate word.

*'dí·rén* 'enemy people'. *Dí* 'enemy' is also used only in compounds—*'dí·gwó* 'enemy country'.

*'mǎy·mày* 'buy sell'—'trading, business of buying and selling, commerce'.

*chì-'chē* 'gas cart'—'automobile'. *Chì* 'gas' is an independent noun.

*dzǔ·'fù* 'ancestor father'—'grandfather' (on father's side). *Dzǔ* is an independent noun meaning 'ancestor'. *Fù* does not occur alone, but only in words like *'fù·chin* 'father' and *'fù·mǔ* 'parents'.

*'hèw·láy* 'late come'—'later on'. Both words are used independently; see point 7 for *hèw*.

*shū·'pù* 'book store'. The independent word for 'store' is *'pù·dz*.

*'Nán·jīng* 'South Capital'. *Jīng* 'Capital' is only used in compounds. The city was named this in 1403 when the third Emperor of the Ming dynasty moved his capital to Peiping. From 1645 to 1927 the place had other names, but people persisted in calling it *'Nán·jīng* anyway. In 1927 the Nationalist party established the central government of China there and the name *'Nán·jīng* again became official.

*'Běy·píng* 'North peace'. *Píng* is used as a separate word in a different but related meaning, 'to be level, smooth'. The city was called this from the seventh to the eleventh centuries. Before and after that there were other names. In 1403 it became the capital of the Ming dynasty and was then called *'Běy·jīng* 'North Capital'; it is from this name that we get the English form of the name as *Peking*. In 1927 the old name *'Běy·píng* was restored. In the English form of the name, Peking (from *'Běy·jīng*), the *k* represents either a Cantonese pronunciation, or is used because some centuries ago the syllable *jīng* was pronounced *gīng* and the person who devised the English spelling knew about the history of the word. In modern Chinese, except in Cantonese and other dialects in the southeast, a syllable *gīng*, with the sound that starts the word *gěy* followed by the vowel *i*, never occurs.

*Sz̀·'chwān* 'Four Rivers'—name of a province through which flow four large rivers. *Chwān* is no longer the independent word for 'river'.

*Chúng·'chìng* 'Revived Celebration'—a city in the eastern part of *Sz̀·'chwān* which in 1938 became the temporary capital of China. The name is from literary Chinese and neither part is used in anything like the meaning it has here in modern conversation.

*'Hàn·kěw* '*Hàn* mouth'—*Hàn* being the name of a river. *Kěw* is used for 'mouth' in some expressions.

*R̀·'běn* 'Sun source'—'Japan'. Both parts occur in other compounds, but not as separate words. In compounds, *r̀* also means 'day'.

POINT 2. *De* IN COMPOUND NOUNS. The use of the element *de* has already been discussed (Unit 3, Section D, point 6). A number of important compound nouns in Chinese end in this element:

*jùng-'dì-de* 'till soil -er'—'farmer' (same as *'núng·rén*)
*jyāw-'shū-de* 'teach book -er'—'teacher' (same as *'jyàw·ywán*)
*mày-'shū-de* 'sell book -er'—'bookseller'
*dzwò-'mǎy·mày-de* 'do buy-sell -er'—'merchant' (same as *'shāng·rén*)
*dzwò-'fàn-de* 'make food -er'—'cook' (this is not the polite term used in speaking to a person who specializes in cooking, however)

If one thinks of the *de* as a noun-making element, like the English *-er*, then these compounds are easy to get. Notice, however, that the equivalent of 'bookseller' is in Chinese 'sellbooker'. In English one who sells *books* is a *book*seller—the order of the verb and the noun is changed when *-er* is added. In Chinese the same order is kept that occurs when the words are separate: *mày-'shū* 'to sell books'.

Point 3. New Uses for some Old Words. In the following sentences you will find some words that you already know used in slightly different ways than those you are familiar with:

*Yì·'jŕ 'jù·le 'sān·shŕ-dwō-nyán.* '(We) lived (there) straight through for more than thirty years.'

*Tsúng-'nǎ-yì·'nyán-chǐ 'jù·dzày-nǎ·li?* 'Beginning in what year did you live there?'

In the first sentence *yì·'jŕ* is used to mean 'straight through' (some period of time); heretofore you have had this word only in the meaning 'straight ahead' (in space, direction).

In the first sentence *'sān·shŕ-dwō-nyán* means 'more than thirty years'—literally 'thirty more years', but this must be understood to mean 'thirty *and* more years', rather than what we might mean by 'thirty more years' in English.

In the third sentence *tsúng* is used to mean 'from' (a point in time); before this you have had the word only in the sense of 'from' (a *place*). *Dàw* can be used for time also: *tsúng-'dzwó·tyan dàw-'míng·tyan* 'from yesterday to (and including) tomorrow.'

Point 4. Directions. You have had *dūng* 'east', *shī* 'west', and also, in place-names, *běy* 'north ('*Běy·píng*), *nán* 'south' ('*Nán·jīng*). Any of these words can add *byān* 'side':

*Shyàng-'nán (-'běy, -'dūng, -'shī) dzěw.* 'Go south (north, east, west).'

*Tā-shr̀-'běy·byān-rén.* 'He is a northerner', (or *'nán·byān, 'dūng·byān, 'shī·byān* 'southern, eastern, western' -er).

Point 5. *Jyàw* and *Chǐng*. *Jyàw* means both 'to call, to be called', and also 'to call, let, order'. For example:

*Jūng·gwo-'hwà 'jè·ge-jyàw-'shém·me?* 'What is this called in Chinese?'.

*'Jūng·gwo-rén 'jyàw-tā 'Jāng-shyān·sheng.* 'The Chinese call him Mr. Jāng.' (e.g., of an American whose name is Johnson.)

*'Jyàw-tā 'láy.* 'Let him come.'

*Shwéy-'jyàw-tā ná-'yǐ·dz-láy-de?* 'Who told him to bring the chair?'

*Jyàw-tā 'jìn·láy.* 'Have him come in.'

*Jyàw-tā 'bú·yàw-shwō-'hwà.* 'Make him keep quiet.'

*'Bú·yàw-jyàw-tā shwō-'hwà.* 'Don't let him talk.'

In these last sentences, the politer form would be *chǐng* 'to request':

*Chǐng-tā 'bú·yàw-shwō-'hwà.* 'Ask him to keep quiet.'

*Chǐng-tā 'jìn·láy.* 'Ask him to come in.'

Point 6. *Líng* in Numbers. *Líng* means 'zero'. In numbers above 100 and less than 110, above 200 but less than 210, and so forth, the zero digit in the tens-place is given by *líng*:

*'Yì·bǎy-líng-'èr·ge-'bīng* 'One hundred and two soldiers'

In numbers over a thousand, if there are two zeros between the number of thousands and the number of units, *líng* is used, but only once despite the two zeros:

*'Yì·chyān-líng-'sān·ge-'bīng* 'One thousand and three soldiers'

In talking about money, *'líng-chyán* means either the change that you receive when you pay with a unit of money larger than the price, or 'small change' (less than a dollar), or petty cash in general.

Also in talking about money, *líng* is used between dollars and dimes, or dollars and cents, or dimes and cents, when the word *chyán* money is omitted entirely or when it comes after the *first* mention of an amount:

*'sān·kwày-chyán líng-'sān·máw* '$3.30'
*'sān·kwày líng-'sān·máw* '$3.30'

Here, again, it is not used twice in one expression:

*'yì·băy-líng-'èr·kwày-'sān·máw* '$102.30'

POINT 7. *Shyān, Hèw,* AND *'Hèw·láy.* *'Hèw·láy* 'later on', is simple in its use and need not be illustrated here. *Shyān* 'first (before others, or before doing something else)', and *hèw* 'later (after others, or after doing something else)', can be illustrated as follows:

*Wŏ-'shyān-dzĕw.* 'I'll go first.' (before you folks)
*Wŏ·men-'shyān dàw-Nyĕw·'ywē, 'dzày-dàw-'Boston-chywù.* 'We go first to New York, then to Boston.'
*Wŏ·men-'shyān 'dàw-de.* 'We arrived first.' (before the others)
*Tā·men-'hèw 'dàw-de.* 'They came later.' (after we did)
*Shyān-'dàw-de shyān-'chr̄.* 'The first to arrive are the first to eat.'—'First come, first served.'
*'Hèw-'dàw-de 'méy·yĕw-de-'chr̄.* 'Late comers have nothing to eat.'
*Tsúng-'Jūng·gwo dàw-'Mĕy·gwo-chywù yàw-'shyān-dàw-'Hawaiian 'Islands.* 'To go from China to the United States, it is necessary (*yàw*) first to come to Hawaii.'
*Wŏ·men dzày-'Mĕy·gwo-de-shŕ·hew, shyān-dzày-Nyĕw·'Ywē 'jù, 'hèw·láy dzày-Jr̄·jyā·'gē 'jù.* 'When we were in America, first (we) lived in New York, later on we lived in Chicago.'

POINT 8. *Chĭ* AND *'Chĭ·láy.* In expressions of time, when the expression means that such and such an event took place starting at a certain time, the normal way of putting the words together is as follows:

*tsúng-'míng·tyan-chĭ,* . . . 'from tomorrow starting'—that is, 'beginning tomorrow'
*tsúng-'nă-yì·nyán-chĭ,* . . . 'from which one year starting'—that is 'beginning in what year?'

*Chĭ* means both 'start' and 'rise, rise up'. In the second meaning you have already seen it in words like *'jàn·chĭ·láy* 'to stand up', and *'ná·chĭ·láy* 'to pick (something) up'. In this second word the parts may be broken up:

*Bă-nà·ge-'dūng·shi 'ná·chĭ·láy.* 'Pick that thing up.'
*Ná·chi-nà·ge-'dūng·shi-láy.* 'Pick that thing up.'

The expression *'chǐ·láy* is also added to various verbs with this same meaning of starting to do something:

*R̀·'běn gēn-'Jūng·gwo dá·chi-'jàng-láy-le.* 'Japan and China started to fight.' (*dǎ-'jàng* 'wage war')

*Wǒ·men 'jyèw-tán·chi·'hwà-láy-le.* 'We immediately started to converse.' (*tán-'hwà* 'to converse')

**Point 10. Expressions for When, Before, and After.** Notice the following three sentences:

*Wǒ·men chr̄-'fàn-de 'shŕ·hew, bú-kàn-'shū.* 'When we eat, we don't read books.'

*Wǒ·men chr̄-'fàn yǐ·'chyán, kàn-'shū.* 'Before we ate, we read books.'

*Wǒ·men chr̄-'fàn yǐ·'hèw, kàn-'shū.* 'After we ate, we read books.'

In the first, an expression meaning 'when so-and-so happened' is made by adding *de* to the whole expression and putting *'shŕ·hew* 'time' after it. In the second, an expression meaning 'before so-and-so happened' is made by putting *yǐ·'chyán* after the expression; in the third, the meaning 'after so-and-so happened' is expressed by putting *yǐ·'hèw* after the expression. Notice that *de*, in its usual function of making one group of words modify or describe another, must be put before *'shŕ·hew*, but is not used with the other two words.

*Yǐ·'chyán* and *yǐ·'hèw* are also used in two other ways:

(a) *'Sān·nyán-yǐ·chyán wǒ-dzày-'Měy·gwo.* 'Three years ago (or three years earlier) I was in America.

*'Sān·nyán-yǐ·hèw wǒ-hwéy-'Měy·gwo-chywù.* 'Three years from now (or three years later) I return to America.'

Here *yǐ·'chyán* or *yǐ·'hèw* is used after the name of a definite period of time, with the meaning shown. *Yǐ·'chyán* can, *in this use only*, be shortened to *chyán*:

*'Sān·nyán-chyán wǒ-dzày-'Měy·gwo.*

(b) *Wó-yǐ·'chyán dzày-'Měy·gwo.* 'I was in America formerly.'

*Wó-yǐ·'hèw hwéy-'Měy·gwo-chywù.* 'I will return (or I returned) to America later on.'

Here the two words are used by themselves as adverbs, with the meaning indicated.

### §3. What Would You Say?

1. If today is the 10th day of June of the 33rd year of the Chinese Republic, which of the following statements are correct?

a. *'Jīn·tyan shr̀-'Mín·gwó-'sān·shr-'sān·nyán 'lyèw·ywè-'shŕ·hàw.*

b. *'Jīn·tyan shr̀-'yī-'jyěw-'sz̀-'sān-'nyán 'lyèw·ywè-·'shŕ·hàw.*

c. *'Dzwó·tyan shr̀-'yī-'jyěw-'sz̀-'èr-'nyán 'lyèw·ywè-'jyěw·hàw.*

d. *'Míng·tyan shr̀-'yī-'jyěw-'sz̀-'sz̀-'nyán 'lyèw·ywè-shŕ-'yí·hàw.*

e. *'Míng·nyan shr̀-'yī-'jyěw-'sz̀-'wǔ-'nyán.*

f. *'Shŕ·nyán-yǐ·chyán shr̀-'yī-'jyěw-'sān-'sz̀.*

g. *'Yì·bǎy·nyán-yǐ·'chyán shr̀-'yī-'bā-'sz̀-'sān.*

h. *Yì·'chyān·nyán-yì·'chyán shr̀-'jyěw·bǎy-'sz̀·shr-'sz̀·nyán.*
i. *'Lyèw·shr·nyán-yì·'hèw shr̀-'èr·chyān-líng-'sān·nyán.*

2. If you give the cashier in a restaurant a five dollar bill and the meal costs $3.95, you should get what change back?
a. *'Lyǎng·kwày-chyán.*
b. *'Yí·kwày-'jyěw·máw-'wǔ.*
c. *'Lyǎng·kwày-líng-'wǔ·fēn.*
d. *'Yí·kwày-líng-'wǔ·fēn.*
e. *'Yí·kwày-'yì·máw-'wǔ.*

3. If today were December 7th, 1943, which of the following statements would be true?
a. *'Měy·gwo gēn-R̀·'bén 'dǎ·le 'sān·nyán-'jàng-le.*
b. *'Měy·gwo gēn-R̀·'bén 'dǎ·le 'lyǎng·nyán-'jàng-le.*
c. *'Měy·gwo gēn-R̀·'bén 'dǎ·le 'yì·nyán-'jàng-le.*
d. *Tsúng-'lyǎng·nyán-chyán-'chǐ, 'Měy·gwo gēn-R̀·'bén dǎ-'jàng.*

4. If today were July 7, 1943, on which day, in 1937, the Sino-Japanese war began, which of the following statements would be true?
a. *'Jūng·gwo gēn-R̀·'bén dǎ-'jàng yǐ·'jǐng-yěw-'sān·nyán-le.*
b. *'Jūng·gwo gēn-R̀·'bén dǎ-'jàng yǐ·'jǐng-yěw-'lyèw·nyán-le.*
c. *'Jūng·gwo gēn-R̀·'bén dǎ-'jàng yǐ·'jǐng-yěw 'lyèw·nyán líng-'yì·tyān-le.*
d. *'Lyèw·nyán-chyán-le-'jīn·tyan, R̀·'běn gèn-'Jūng·gwo dá·chi·'jàng-láy-le.*

5. If your friend wants to know what your profession is, he might say:
a. *Nǐ-shr̀-shém·me-'dì·fang-de-rén?*
b. *Nǐ-dzwò-'shém·me-shr̀?*
c. *Nǐ-jyāw-'shū 'jǐ·nyán-le?*

6. If you are a merchant, you might answer by saying:
a. *Méy·yěw-'shr̀.*
b. *Shr̀-jùng-'dì-de.*
c. *Shr̀-'núng·rén.*
d. *Shr̀-'shāng·rén.*
e. *Shr̀-dzwò-'mǎy·mày-de.*
f. *Shr̀-jyāw-'shū-de.*
g. *Shr̀-'jyàw·ywán.*
h. *Shr̀-'shywé·sheng.*
i. *Shr̀-'shyān·sheng.*
j. *Shr̀-dzwò-'fàn-de.*

7.

| How should we go to get to the hotel? | *Dàw-fàn·'dyàn 'dzěm·me-dzěw?* |
|---|---|
| a. Go north. | 1. *Fàn·'dyàn·de-'chyán·byan shyàng-'nán.* |
| b. The hotel faces south. | 2. *Shyàng-'shī dzěw.* |
| c. Go straight ahead (two ways). | 3. *Shyàng·'dzwó dzěw.* |
| d. Go east. | 4. *Shyàng-'hèw dzěw.* |

e. Go west.
f. Go left.
g. Go right.
h. Go to the rear.
i. The hotel is east of us.
j. The restaurant is west of the hotel.
k. The railroad station is north of the hotel.
l. The hotel is south of the railroad station.

5. *Fàn-'gwǎn·dz dzày-fàn·'dyàn·de-'shī·byan.*
6. *Fàn·'dyàn dzày-hwǒ-chē-'jàn-le-'nán·byan.*
7. *Shyàng-'běy dzěw.*
8. *Yì·'jŕ dzěw.*
9. *Shyàng-'dūng dzěw.*
10. *Shyàng-'yèw dzěw.*
11. *Fàn·'dyàn dzày-wǒ·men·de-'dūng·byan.*
12. *Shyàng-'chyán dzěw.*
13. *Hwǒ-chē-'jàn dzày-fàn·'dyàn·de-'běy·byan.*

## 8.

a. How long have you lived here?
b. Since when have you lived in Chungking?
c. More than thirty years.
d. Thirty-odd years.
e. We've been living here straight through.
f. Since thirty-odd years ago.

1. *'Sān·shr-dwō-nyán-le.*
2. *Tsúng-'sān·shr-dwō-nyán-chyán.*
3. *'Sān·shr-jǐ·nyán-le.*
4. *Nǐ-dzày-'jè·li 'jù·le 'dwō·shaw-shŕ·hew-le?*
5. *Tsúng-'shém·me-shŕ·hew-chǐ, nǐ-dzày-Chúng·'chìng 'jù·le?*
6. *Wǒ·men yì·'jŕ 'jù·dzày-'jè·li.*

## 9.

Why hasn't he come?
a. He's started to cook.
b. He's started to eat.
c. He's started to study.
d. He's started to read a book.

*Tā-'dzěm·me-háy-'méy-láy?*
1. *Tā-kàn·chi-'shū-láy-le.*
2. *Tā-dzwò·chi-'fàn-láy-le.*
3. *Tā-chr̄·chi-'fàn-láy-le.*
4. *Tā-nyàn·chi-'shū-láy-le.*

## 10.

a. When we eat, you don't.
b. You eat after we do.
c. You eat before we do.
d. When we eat, they study.
e. After we eat, they study.
f. Before we eat, they study.
g. Before the Japanese had fought up to Peiping, my grandfather had run away.

1. *Wǒ·men chr̄-'fàn-de 'shŕ·hew tā·men nyàn-'shū.*
2. *Wǒ·men chr̄-'fàn yǐ·chyán tā·men nyàn-'shū.*
3. *Ř·'běn-rén 'dǎ·dàw-'Běy·píng yǐ·hèw, wǒ-dzǔ·'fù 'pǎw·chū·láy·le.*
4. *Tā-'shyān-dàw-de-Chúng·'chìng, wǒ-'fù·chin 'hèw-dàw-de.*
5. *Wǒ·men chr̄-'fàn-de 'shŕ·hew 'nǐ·men bù-chr̄.*
6. *Wǒ·men chr̄-'fàn yǐ·'chyán 'nǐ·men 'shyān-chr̄.*
7. *Wǒ·men chr̄-'fàn yǐ·'hèw tā·men nyàn-'shū.*

| | |
|---|---|
| h. After the Japanese had fought to Peiping, my grandfather ran away. | 8. *Tā-'shyān-dàw-'Nán·jīng-chywù-le, 'hèw·lay 'yèw-dàw-Chúng·'chìng-chywù-de.* |
| i. He went first to Nanking, later on to Chungking. | 9. *Wǒ·men chr̄-'fàn yǐ·'hèw 'nǐ·men jyèw-chr̄.* |
| j. He came to Chungking first, my father came later on. | 10. *R̀·'běn-rén 'dǎ·dàw-'Běy·píng yǐ·'chyán, wó-dzǔ·'fù 'pǎw·chū·láy·le.* |
| 11. | |
| a. I'm thinking of opening a store. | 1. *Kāy-shū·'pù.* |
| b. What kind of a store? | 2. *Yàw-mày-'shū-ma?* |
| c. A bookstore. | 3. *Wǒ-bù-'jr̄·dàw.* |
| d. You want to sell books, eh? | 4. *Kāy-'shém·me-pù-dz?* |
| e. Who will buy your books? | 5. *Wǒ-shyǎng-kāy-'pù·dz.* |
| f. I don't know. | 6. *Shwéy-'máy-nǐ·de-'shū-ne?* |
| 12. | |
| a. Don't let him come in. | 1. *'Jyàw-tā 'bú·yàw-'jìn·láy.* |
| b. Let him not come in. | 2. *Nǐ-'shyān-dzěw, wǒ-'hèw-dzěw.* |
| c. Ask him not to come in. | 3. *Wǒ·men 'chū·chywù-ba.* |
| d. We'll go out. | 4. *'Bú·yàw-jyàw-tā 'jìn·láy.* |
| e. You go first, I'll go after. | 5. *'Chǐng-tā 'bú·yàw-jìn·lay.* |

### §4. What Did You Say?

### §5. Review the Basic Sentences Covering the Chinese.

## SECTION E: LISTENING IN

### §1. Word-Study Check-Up.

### §2. Listening-In.

Conversation 1. Mr. Ross visits Mr. Wáng at the latter's home in Chungking.*

**Record 14B, beginning.**

Wáng: *'Lwó-shyān·sheng, chǐng 'jìn·lay dzwò.*
Ross: *'Shyè·shye.*
Wáng: *Wǒ-'gěy-·nǐ 'jyè·shàw jǐ·wèy-'péng·yew, 'hǎw-ma?*
Ross: *'Hǎw.*
Wáng: *'Jè·wèy shr̀-'Lwó-shyān·sheng.*
*'Jè·wèy shr̀-'Jāng-shyān·sheng.*
*'Jè·wèy shr̀-'Hú-shyān·sheng.*

---

* The 'local color' in this Listening-In, and in other material from now on, is by no means always accurate. Things are changing rapidly in China and it would be impossible, for instance, to be sure that the price of a pair of shoes given in one of these stores would be correct by the time you were reading and studying. But the right words are taught, so that if you happen to be on the scene you can very easily say the absolutely correct statements by combining the Chinese you learn in this course with your observations of what is going on at the moment.

Ross, Hú, Jāng: *Jyéw-'yăng.*
Wáng: *'Tā·men-lyăng·wèy shr̀-wŏ·de-'shywé·sheng.*
Ross: *Lyăng·wèy hwèy-shwō-'Yīng·gwo-'hwà-ma?*
Hú: *'Hwèy, kĕ·shr 'shwō-de 'bù-hăw.*
Ross: *Nĭ·men dzày-shywé·'shyàw-li 'jù-ma?*
Jāng: *'Wŏ dzày-shywé·'shyàw-li jù.*
*Tā-dzày-'jyā-li jù.*
Hú: *'Wáng-shyān·sheng, wŏ·men déy-'dzĕw-le.*
*Tā-yàw-hwéy-shywé·'shyàw-chywu.*
*Wó-dĕy-hwéy-'jyā chywù-nyàn-'shū.*
Wáng: *Bú-chywù-kàn-dyàn·'yĭng?*
Jāng: *'Wáng-shyān·sheng!*
*Wŏ·men bù-'dĕw-shr-ày-kàn-dyàn·'yĭng-de!*
*Yé-yĕw-nyàn-'shū-de.*

### Conversation 2. After the students leave, Ross and Wáng continue to talk.

Ross: *Nĭ-'jè·wèy-shìng-'Jāng-de-'shywé·sheng hĕn-hwèy-shwō-'hwà.*
Wáng: *Tā-'fù·mŭ 'dĕw-bú-'dzày-le.*
*Tā-'jyā-li yĕ-'méy·yĕw-'chyán.*
*Tā-bú-dzwò-'shr̀, bù-néng-nyàn-'shū*
*Yīn·wey tā shr̀-'hăw-'shywé·sheng,*
*swó·yĭ-shywé·'shyàw-li 'gĕy-tā hĕn-'dwō-de-'shr̀ dzwò.*
Ross: *'Jè·ge-'shywé·sheng 'hén-hăw,*
*Wó-shyáng-'gĕy-tā 'wŭ·shr·kwày-'chyán.*
*Kĕ·shr nĭ-'bú·yàw-shwō shr̀-wó-'gĕy-de.*
*Bú·yàw-'jyàw-tā 'jr̄·dàw*
*gĕy-ta-'chyán-de-rén shr̀-'shwéy.*

Wáng: *Wó-shyăng-'kĕ·yi.*
Ross: *'Nà hén-hăw.*
*'Míng·tyan wó-bă-'chyán 'ná·lay 'géy-nĭ.*
*Nĭ-dzày-'gĕy-ta.*
Wáng: *'Hăw-ba.*

### Conversation 3. They talk about the other student.

Ross: *'Nà·wèy-shìng-'Hú-de shr̀-shwéy?*
Wáng: *Tā-'fù·chin kāy-shū·'pù.*
Ross:* *'Shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'nà·wèy-tsúng-'Bĕy·píng-láy-de?*
Wáng; *'Shr̀-tā.*
*Tā-yĭ·'chyán dzày-'Nán·jīng mày-chì-'chē.*
Ross: *'Dzwó·tyan wŏ-'gēn-tā tán-'hwà.*
*Tā-shwo r̀·bĕn-'bīng dă·dàw-'Nán·jīng-de 'shŕ-hew,*
*tā-tsúng-'nà·li 'păw·chu·lay-le.*

**Record 15A, beginning.**

Wáng: *Wŏ·men 'dēw-shr̀-dă-'jàng-yĭ·'hèw dàw-Chúng·'chìng láy-de.*
Ross: *Dă-'jàng-yĭ·'chyán nĭ-dzwò-shém·me-'shr̀?*
Wáng: *Wŏ-dzày-'Bĕy·píng jyāw-'shū.*
*R̀·'bĕn-rén 'láy·le, wŏ-'bù-néng-bù-'dzĕw.*
*Jyèw-gēn-sān·shr-dwō·ge-'shywé·sheng*
*tsúng-'Bĕy·píng 'dzĕw·daw-'jè·li-láy.*
Ross: *'Dzĕw·le 'dwō·shaw-shŕ·hew?*
Wáng: *Dzĕw·le 'wŭ·ge-dwō-ywè, bú-dàw-'bàn·nyán.*
Ross: *Nĭ-'nă-yì·nyán 'dàw-de?*
Wáng: *'Yī-'jyĕw-'sān-'bā.*

---

* This word was accidentally omitted from the record.

Conversation 4. Mr. Ross asks Mr. Wáng to tutor a friend of his in Chinese.

**Ross:** *Mr. Ward yàw-'gēn-nĭ-'shywé Jūng·gwo-'hwà.*
**Wáng:** *'Shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'nà·wéy-Mĕy·gwo-'bīng?*
**Ross:** *'Dwèy·le.*
**Wáng:** *Tā-wèy-'shém·me 'méy-dzày-'Mĕy·gwo shywé?*
**Ross:** *Tā-yĭ·'chyán bù-'jr̄·dàw yàw-dàw-'Jūng·gwo-láy.*
*'Hèw·lay 'jr̄·dàw·le,*
*yĭ·'jīng 'méy·yĕw-'shŕ·hew nyàn-'shū-le.*
*Tā-'jyàw-wŏ 'wèn-nĭ, 'néng-bu·néng 'jyāw-tā.*
**Wáng:** *Wŏ·de-'shr̀ tày-'dwō.*
*Yì·'tyān dàw-shywé·'shyàw-li-chywù jyāw-'shū.*
*Hwéy·dàw-'jyā-li háy-dĕy-'nyàn-shū.*
*Wó-shyáng wŏ-'bù-néng-'jyāw-tā.*
*Wŏ-'jyè·shàw yí·ge-'shywé·sheng jyāw-tā, 'hăw-ma?*
**Ross:** *Shr̀-'nĭ·de-'shywé·sheng-ma?*
**Wáng:** *'Shr̀.*
*Yĕw-yí·ge-'nywŭ-shywé·sheng shyăng-'dzwò-yì·dyăn-'shr̀.*
*Wŏ-'jr̄·dàw tā-yí·'dìng 'jyāw-de 'hăw.*
**Ross:** *'Nà hén-hăw.*
*Tsúng-'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'chĭ-ne?*
**Wáng:** *'Déng-wŏ 'míng·tyan 'gēn-tā 'shwō-yi·shwō.*
**Ross:** *'Míng·tyan 'jĭ·hàw?*
**Wáng:** *'Jīn·tyan shr̀-'sān·ywè-'shŕ·hàw.*
*'Míng·tyan shr̀-shŕ-'yí·hàw.*

Conversation 5. They plan to have dinner and go to the movies.

**Ross:** *'Jīn·tyan 'gēn-wŏ-chywù-chr̄-'fàn, 'hăw-bu·hăw?*
**Wáng:** *'Hăw. Dàw-'shém·me-dì·fang-chywù?*
**Ross:** *Dàw-Chúng·'chìng-fàn·'dyàn-chywù chr̄-'wày·gwo-fàn,*
*'hăw-ma?*
**Wáng:** *'Hăw. 'Shyān-chywù chr̄-'fàn.*
*Chr̄-'fàn-yĭ·'hèw chywù-'kàn-dyàn·'yĭng.*
**Ross:** *'Bú·yàw-kàn-dyàn·'yĭng-ba!*
*Nĭ-'bú-jyàw-'shywé·sheng kàn-dyàn·'yĭng.*
*Nĭ-'dz̀·jĭ 'dzĕm·me-néng-'kàn?*
**Wáng:** *'Shyān·sheng ké·yĭ-'kàn, 'shywé·sheng dĕy-nyàn-'shū.*

## SECTION F: CONVERSATION

§1. Vocabulary Check-Up.

§2. Carrying on Conversation. Pair off, and let each pair take a turn at carrying on conversation while the rest of the group listen and note any corrections. See if you can begin the practice of having each pair which is to give a conversation prepare for it in advance. You have lots of things to talk about now. If you want to, you can pattern your conversations on those of Section E, but you should be able to vary from those models a good deal. Be sure, as always, to ask plenty of questions in your conversations, so that you will have experience both at answering and at asking.

# UNIT VIII

# A PLACE TO LIVE

## SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

§1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP I).

MR. ROSS TELLS MR. WÁNG ABOUT HIS HARDSHIPS. MR. WÁNG HELPS HIM OUT.

**Record 15B, beginning.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| Haven't seen you in a long time! | *'Háw-jyěw-méy-'jyàn!* |
| How are you? | *Nǐ-'hǎw-ma?* |
| MR. ROSS: | |
| to hunt for | *'jǎw* |
| Lately I've been looking for a place to live. | *Wǒ-'jè-jǐ·tyān jǎw-'jù·de-dì·fang.* |
| to hunt for and be unable to find | *'jǎw-bu·jáw* |
| No matter how I hunt I can't find anything. | *'Dzěm·me-jǎw yé-'jǎw-bu·jáw.* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| Isn't that house of yours all right? | *Nǐ-'nà·swǒ-'fáng·dz bú·shr·hén-'hǎw-ma?* |
| to move (one's home) | *'bān* |
| Why do you want to move (your home)? | *Wèy-'shém·me yàw-bān-'jyā-ne?* |
| MR. ROSS: | |
| to destroy by bombing | *'jà·'hwày* |
| Well, darn it, | *Hāy!* |
| a few days ago the Jap airplanes | *'Chyán-jǐ·tyān R̀·'běn-fēy·'jī* |
| bombed my house and destroyed it. | *'bá-wǒ·de-'fáng·dz jà·'hwày-le.* |
| day before yesterday | *'chyán·tyan* |
| measure for rooms | *'jyān* |
| Day before yesterday at the Chungking Hotel, | *'Chyán·tyan dzày-Chúng·'chìng-Fàn·'dyàn* |
| I found a room. | *'jǎw·jáw·le yì·jyān-'wū·dz.* |
| window | *'chwāng·hu* |
| It was small and had no windows. | *Yèw-'shyǎw, yèw-'méy·yew-'chwāng·hu.* |

136

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| truly | *'jēn* |
| That's really too bad. | *'Nà jēn-'bù-hǎw.* |
| weather | *'tyān·chi* |
| so | *'jè·me* |
| The weather is so hot, | *'Tyān·chi jè·me-'rè,* |
| how can anybody live in a windowless room? | *méy·yew-'chwāng·hu-de-'wū·dz 'dzěm·me-néng-'jù-ne?* |

MR. ROSS:

| | |
|---|---|
| And that isn't all. | *'Háy-yěw-ne.* |
| from | *'lí* |
| to be far | *'ywǎn* |
| The hotel is quite far from the place where I work. | *Fàn·'dyàn lí-wǒ-dzwò-'shr̀-de dì·fang 'hén-ywǎn.* |

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| How far is it? | *Yěw-'dwō-ywǎn?* |

**Record 16A, beginning.**

MR. ROSS:

| | |
|---|---|
| Chinese mile | *'lǐ* |
| English mile | *'Yīng·lǐ* |
| to convert (from one system of measure to another) | *'swàn·chéng* |
| Five English miles. | *Wǔ-'Yīng·lǐ.* |
| Converting to Chinese miles its fifteen or sixteen. | *'Swàn·chéng-'Jūng·gwo-lǐ, yěw-shŕ-'wǔ·lyèw·lǐ.* |

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| There's a room here at my place. | *Wǒ-'jè·li yěw-yì·jyān-'wū·dz.* |
| It isn't very good, but it does have windows. | *Bù-'hěn-hǎw, kě·shr 'háy-yěw-'chwāng·hu.* |
| be willing to | *'ywàn·yì* |
| Would you be willing to come and stay here? | *Nǐ-'ywàn·yi láy-'jù-ma?* |

MR. ROSS:

| | |
|---|---|
| That's really swell. | *'Nà jēn-'hǎw.* |
| to be close-by | *'jìn* |
| Your place here is very close to where I work. | *Nǐ-'jè·li 'lí-wǒ-dzwò-'shr̀-de-dì·fang hěn-'jìn.* |

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| First take a look at this room. | *Nǐ-shyān-'kàn-yi·kàn jè·jyān-'wū·dz.* |
| door | *'mén* |
| Wait while I open the door, and we'll go in and take a look. | *'Děng-wǒ-'kāy·kāy-'mén, wǒ·men-'jìn·chywu 'kàn-yi·kàn.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. Review the Practices that give you a chance to drill on the various consonants found at the beginning of syllables.

**Record 1A, after fifth spiral.**

PRACTICE 6. (contrasting English and Chinese sounds)

*boo* *'bù* 'not'

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *dough* | *'dĕw* | 'all, both' |
| *gay* | *'gĕy* | 'give' |
| *pow* | *'pǎw* | 'run' |
| *tan* | *'tán* | 'to converse' |
| *can* | *'kàn* | 'to look at' |

**Record 1A, after sixth spiral.**

PRACTICE 7. (contrasting Chinese *p* : *b*, *t* : *d*, *k* : *g*)

| | |
|---|---|
| *'bù-'pǎw* | 'not run' |
| *'dĕw-'tán* | 'all converse' |
| *'gĕy-'kàn* | 'to give to somebody for him to look at' |

**Record 1A, after seventh spiral.**

PRACTICE 8. (contrasting *s*, *dz*, *ts*)

| | |
|---|---|
| **'sày* | 'to compete' |
| *'dzày* | 'again' |
| *'tsày* | 'food other than rice' |
| **'sǎn, *'dzǎn, *'tsǎn* | 'umbrella; to hoard; pitiful' |
| *'swèy, *'dzwèy, *'tswèy* | 'year of age; most; brittle' |
| **'sǎw, *'dzǎw, *'tsǎw* | 'to sweep; early; grass' |

**Record 1A, after eighth spiral.**

PRACTICE 9. (contrasting *shy*, *jy*, *chy*)

| | |
|---|---|
| *'shyān* | 'first, earlier' |
| **'jyān* | 'sharp, sharp tip' |
| *'chyān* | 'thousand' |
| *'shyǎng *'Jyǎng, *'chyǎng* | 'to think; (name); to rob' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **'shǐ, 'jǐ, 'chǐ* | 'wash; how many?; rise, start' |
| **'shīn, *'jīn, *'chīn* | 'new; gold; kiss' |

**Record 1A, after ninth spiral.**

PRACTICE 10. (contrasting *sh*, *j*, *ch*)

| | |
|---|---|
| **'shĕw* | 'hand' |
| **'jĕw* | 'forearm' |
| **'chĕw* | 'ugly' |
| **'sháw, 'jáw, *'cháw* | 'ladle; to contact; tide, damp' |
| *'shǎw, 'jǎw, *'chǎw* | 'few; to seek for; to annoy with noise' |

**Record 1A, after tenth spiral.**

PRACTICE 11. (contrasting *s* : *sh* : *shy*, *dz* : *j* : *jy*, *ts* : *ch* : *chy*)

| | |
|---|---|
| *'sān, *'shān, 'shyān* | 'three; mountain; first, earlier' |
| *'dzĕw, *'jĕw, 'jyĕw* | 'walk; forearm; wine' |
| **'tsā, *'chā, *'chyā* | 'to wipe; to use a fork; to pinch' |

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES.

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

§1. REVIEW BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE ENGLISH.

§2. WORD STUDY.

POINT 1. COUMPOUND WORDS.

*'tyān·chì* 'sky air'. *Tyān* is the measure 'sky, day'; *chì* means 'air, atmosphere, gas'—as in *chì-'chē* 'gas cart'—'automobile'. *'Jīn·tyan 'tyān·chì 'hén-hǎw.* 'Today's weather is very good.'

*'Yīng·lĭ* 'English mile'; *lĭ* is the measure meaning 'mile'; *Yīng* does not occur alone but you have learned it in *'Yīng·gwo* 'England'.

There are two crystallized expressions in the first group of Basic Sentences:

*'Háw-jyěw-měy-'jyàn!* 'Haven't seen you in a long time!'—literally 'good long-time have-not seen.' You have had all the parts of this before: *'hǎw* 'to be OK', *jyěw* 'long time' in *jyéw-'yǎng* '(I have) long respected (your name and reputation)'; *měy* 'not, not to have (done something)'; *jyàn* in *dzày-'jyàn* 'So long (again see)' or in *'děng-yi·děng 'jyàn* 'see you presently'.

*'Háy-yěw-ne.* 'That isn't all'—literally 'still there-has' with the element *ne* tacked on, meaning 'still there-is (more)'.

POINT 2. *Lí* AND *Tsúng*. Both *lí* and *tsúng* have been translated to mean 'from'; *tsúng* is used in giving descriptions of *motion*, and *lí* in giving statements of *distance*.

*Wǒ-tsúng-wǒ-dzwò-'shř-de-dì·fang 'chywù.* 'I go from the place where I work.'

*Wǒ-'jyā lí-wǒ-dzwò-'shř-de-dì·fang 'bù-ywǎn.* 'My home is not far from where I work.'

POINT 3. DISTANCE. The words *ywǎn* and *jìn* mean respectively 'to be far away' and 'to be nearby'. They work like other descriptive words—*hǎw* 'to be OK', *dwō* 'to be much, more, many', *dà* 'to be big', and so forth.

*Lí* is a measure meaning 'mile'—either the Chinese 'mile', which is about one third of ours, or the English (and American) mile. The two can be distinguished by calling them *'Yīng·lĭ* 'English mile', and just *lĭ* or else *'Jūng·gwo-lĭ* for 'Chinese mile'.

POINT 4. AN IMPORTANT USE OF *Dwō*. The descriptive word *dwō* 'much, more, many' is also used as an adverb before other descriptive words, with the meaning 'to what extent?, how much?', or else, without implying a question, 'to such an extent, so much'. Examples:

*'Nà·ge-wǎn 'dwō-dà?* 'How big is that bowl?'

*'Jīn·tyan 'tyān·chì 'dwō-rè?* 'How hot is it today?'

These sentences can also be made by putting *yěw* before the *dwō*:

*'Nà·ge-wán yěw-'dwō-dà?* 'This bowl has what big(ness)?'

*'Jīn·tyan 'tyān·chì yěw-'dwō-rè?* 'Today the weather has what hot(ness)?'

The compound *'dwō·shǎw*, however, is not like the above; it is on the pattern of asking questions by presenting alternatives to the hearer: 'much (or) little?'.

POINT 5. *'Ywàn·yì*, *Yàw*, *Ày*, AND *Shyǎng*. Compare the meaning of the following four sentences:

*Tā-'ywàn·yì-láy.* 'He is willing to come.' (meaning that he is *really* willing to, not just agreeable despite a desire not to come).

*Tā-'ày-láy.* 'He likes to come, he loves to come, he would like to come.' (Here his desire to come is emphasized; it can be said in annoyance with a person who comes too often.)

*Tā-'shyǎng-láy.* 'He is thinking of coming, he is planning to come, he would like to come.' (the emphasis is on his plan and desire to come, but is not so strong as with *dy*.)

*Tā-ydw-'láy*. 'He's going to come.' (The emphasis is one the fact that is going to take place, not on his attitude towards it, though the sentence may also be used to indicate that he, of his own volition and desire, is definitely going to come.)

Notice also the following:

*'Ày-láy bù-'láy!* 'I don't care whether you want to come or not!' (A phrase which would be said in anger, and would mean that the speaker really cared a great deal.)

*Tā-'dy-láy jyèw-'jydw-tā 'láy*. 'If he wants to come then let him come.'

Words like these never mean quite the same things in different languages, and it is hard to describe the precise shades of feeling that each carries. The above examples should help; watch carefully in the Basic Sentences and the Listening In sections to develop a 'feel' for them.

POINT 6. *Yěw* IN EXPRESSIONS OF TIME AND DISTANCE. The verb *yěw* is frequently put at the beginning of expressions of time or distance:

*Tā-dzày-'jè·li (yěw-)'sān·sż·tyān*. 'He was here three or four days.'

*Tā-dzày-'jè·li jù·le (yěw-)'sān·sż·tyān*. 'He was here three or four days (and is no longer here).'

*Tā-dzày-'jè·li jù·le (yěw-)'sān·sż·tyān-le*. 'He has been here three or four days (and is still here).'

*Yěw-'dwō-ywǎn?* 'How far is it?'

*Yěw-shŕ-'wŭ·lyèw·lĭ*. 'Fifteen or sixteen miles.'

In the first three cases the *yěw* can be included or omitted without making any difference in meaning.

POINT 7. SOME EXPRESSIONS OF TIME. You have seen how the words *tyān* 'day' and *nyán* 'year' are used in almost the same way. Here are some more forms:

*'chyán·tyan* 'day before yesterday'; *'chyán·nyan* 'year before last'

*dà-'chyán·tyan* 'day before day before yesterday'; *dà-'chyán·nyan* 'year before year before last'.

*'hèw·tyan* 'day after tomorrow'; *'hèw·nyan* 'year after next'

*dà-'hèw·tyan* 'day after day after tomorrow'; *dà-'hèw·nyan* 'year after year after next'.

*'chyán-jĭ·tyān* 'a few days ago'; *'chyán-jĭ·nyán* 'a few years ago'.

In these words, the *chyán* and *hèw* are the elements that occur also in *yĭ·'chyán* and *yĭ·'hèw* 'before' and 'after', which you have already had. The *dà* is the descriptive word meaning 'big' which you have also already had.

POINT 8. A TYPE OF VERB COMPOUND. Notice the following sentences with the verb *'jǎw·jdw* in this or some similar form:

*'Chyán·tyan dzày-Chúng·'chìng-Fàn·'dyàn 'jǎw·jdw·le*

*yì·jyān-'wū·dz.* 'Day before yesterday I found a room in the Chungking Hotel.'

*Wó-'jǎw-bu·jáw yì·jyān-'wū·dz.* 'I can't find a room.'

*Wó-'jǎw-de·jáw yì·jyān-'wū·dz.* 'I can find a room.'

*'Hǎw-'wū·dz 'jǎw-bu·jáw.* 'Good rooms can't be found.'

*'Hǎw-'wū·dz shr̀-'jǎw-bu·jáw-de.* 'Good rooms aren't to be found.'

*Wǒ-méy-'jǎw·jáw-'wū·dz.* 'I didn't find a room.'

The forms with which we are concerned are:

| | |
|---|---|
| *jǎw* | 'to hunt for, look for' |
| *'jǎw·jáw* | 'to hunt for and find, to find, to have found' |
| *méy-'jǎw·jáw* | 'not to have found' |
| *'jǎw-bu·jáw* | 'to hunt without finding; to be unable to find' |
| *'jǎw-de·jáw* | 'to hunt for and succeed in finding; to be able to find' |

The syllable *de* which occurs in this last form of the verb is not the *de* which marks one word or word-group as modifiying the next, but a different element, occasionally used as a separate word *dé* 'to get to, to succeed, to have to'.

This type of compound verb is very important in Chinese. We need a name for it. Since *'jǎw·jáw*, for example, means 'to hunt for something in such a way that, *as a result* of the hunting, it is found', this type of verb may be called a *resultative compound.* We also need a term for the second part of such resultative compounds—*jáw* in this case—since each one of them is apt to occur, with somewhat the same meaning, in quite a number of different verbs of the kind. Since the second element, *jáw* in this case, comes *after* a main verb (*jǎw* in tbis case), we may simply call them *postverbs.*

Other examples of resultative compounds are:

| | |
|---|---|
| *mǎy* | 'to buy' |
| *'mǎy·jáw* | 'to succeed in buying' |
| *méy-,'mǎy·jáw* | 'to have failed to buy' |
| *'mǎy-de·jáw* | 'to be able to buy (because a thing is for sale)' |
| *'mǎy-bu·jáw* | 'to be unable to buy (because a thing is not for sale)' |
| *dyǎn* | 'to light' (a lamp, a cigarette) |
| *'dyǎn·jáw* | 'to light "at" something until it is lit' |
| *méy-'dyǎn·jáw* | 'not to have gotten something lit' |
| *'dyǎn-bu·jáw* | 'to be unable to light' |
| *'dyǎn-de·jáw* | 'to be able to light' |

In these three cases the postverb is *jáw*, which, used as a postverb, means more or less generally *success* in the effort indicated by the main verb which precedes it. *Jáw* is also used as a main verb, meaning 'to be burning': *Hwǒ-'jáw·le.* 'the fire is burning'.

| | |
|---|---|
| *kàn* | 'to look at' |
| *'kàn·jyàn* | 'to look at and see—to see' (the postverb *jyàn* is also used as a separate verb meaning 'to perceive, be in touch with', but mainly in special phrases like *dzày-'jyàn* 'see you again') |
| *méy-'kàn·jyàn* | 'not to have seen' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *'kàn-bu·jyàn* | 'to be unable to see' |
| *'kàn-de·jyàn* | 'to be able to see' |
| *jà* | 'to bomb' |
| *'jà·hwày* | 'to destroy by bombing' |
| *méy-'jà·hwày* | 'not to have destroyed by bombing' |
| *'jà-bu·hwày* | 'to be unable to destroy by bombing' |
| *'jà-de·hwày* | 'to be able to destroy by bombing' |

The postverb *hwày* is used as a descriptive word 'to be broken-down, bad'. A watch or an electrical apparatus can be *'hwày·le* 'broken', in the sense of not working, not in the sense of being broken up into pieces.

| | |
|---|---|
| *'dwèy-bu·chǐ* | 'to be unable to face' |
| *'dwèy-de·chǐ* | 'to be able to face' |

These last examples illustrate a special feature of certain resultative compounds: for some, the forms with *bu* or *de* exist, but not any of the other forms listed above—there is no form *'dwèy·chǐ*, for example.

All the compound verbs which you learned in Part I are resultative compounds. Thus, in addition to the form *'pǎw·chū·láy* 'to come running out', one can say *'pǎw-bu·chū·láy* 'to try to come running out and not succeed', *'pǎw-de·chū·láy* 'to be able to come running out', and so on.

POINT 9. USE OF VERB COMPOUNDS. Here are two interesting and important ways in which some of the above verb compounds are used:

*Wó-'jǎw·láy-'jǎw·chywù 'jǎw-bu·jáw 'hǎw-'wū·dz.* 'I hunted high and low but couldn't find a good room.'

*'Jǎw·láy-'jǎw·chywù* 'hunt-come hunt-go' is one of the equivalents of our expression of the kind 'hunt high and low'.

*Wó-'dzěm·me-jǎw yé-'jǎw-bu·jáw.* 'No matter how I hunt I can't find (any).'

Another example of each:

*Wǒ-'kàn·láy-'kàn·chywù 'kàn-bu·jyàn 'nà·ge-rén.* 'I looked high and low but couldn't see that man.'

*Wó-'dzěm·me-kàn yě-kàn-bu·'jyàn.* 'No matter how I look I can't see (it, him).'

POINT 10. *Swàn* AND *'Swàn·chéng*. *Swàn* means 'to calculate (something), to figure out (something)', *'Swàn·chéng* means to figure out the equivalent in a different system, say Chinese miles corresponding to a certain number of English miles:

*Nǐ-'swàn-yi·swàn yí·'gùng shŕ-'dwō·shǎw-chyán?* 'You figure out how much money it is altogether.'

*Wǔ-'yīng·lǐ swàn·chéng-'Jūng·gwo-lǐ, yěw-shŕ-'wǔ·lyèw·lǐ.* 'Five English miles converted to Chinese miles is fifteen or sixteen miles.'

## §3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1.

| | |
|---|---|
| Did the Japanese airplanes destroy the railroad station? | *R̀·běn-fēy·'jī bá-hwǒ-chē-'jàn jà·'hwày·le-ma?* |
| a. Yes. | 1. *Yì·'dyán yě-méy-jà·'hwày.* |
| b. No. (Two ways) | 2. *'Dēw-jà·'hwày·le.* |

c. Not even a little bit.

d. Demolished three rooms.

e. All destroyed.

f. The Japanese intended to destroy it.

g. But no matter how they bombed it, they couldn't destroy it.

h. That station can't be destroyed by bombing.

i. They can't destroy it (two ways).

3. *Kè·shr 'dzěm·me-jà yě-'méy-bǎ-tā jà·'hwày·le.*
4. *Tā·men bù-'néng-bǎ-tā jà·'hwày·le.*
5. *'Nà·ge-hwǒ-chē-'jàn jà-bu·'hwày.*
6. *R̀·'běn-rén 'shyáng-bǎ-tā jà·'hwày-le.*
7. *Jà·'hwày·le sān·jyān-'wū·dz.*
8. *'Méy-jà·hwày.*
9. *Jà·'hwày·le.*
10. *'Méy·yěw.*
11. *Tā·men jà-bu·'hwày-tā.*

## 2.

Where did you find that thing?

*'Nà·ge-dūng·shi dzày-'shém·me-dì·fang 'jǎw·jáw-de?*

a. In that room (two ways).

b. In Peiping.

c. In Chungking.

d. In Hankow.

e. In Nanking.

1. *Dzày-Chúng·'chìng.*
2. *Dzày-'Měy·gwo.*
3. *Dzày-'Wáng-shyān·sheng-de-'jyā-li.*
4. *Dzày-'Lwó-shyān·sheng-chr̄-'fàn-de-dì·fang.*
5. *Dzày-mén-'shī·byan-de nà·ge-'chwāng·hu-li.*

f. In the United States.

g. In that house.

h. In Mr. Wang's home.

i. Under that tree.

j. On the table in the room.

k. At the place where Mr. Ross eats.

l. In New York.

m. At the place that the planes bombed.

n. In the house east of the station.

o. At the window west of the door.

p. Under the table.

q. South of Chicago.

r. North of the front door.

6. *Dzày-'chyán-mén-de-'běy·byan.*
7. *Dzày-'nà·jyān-'wū·dz-li 'jǎw·jáw-de.*
8. *Dzày-Jr̄·jyā·'gē-de-'nán·byan.*
9. *Dzày-hwǒ-chē-'jàn-'dūng·byan-de nà·swǒ-'fáng·dz-li.*
10. *Dzày-'wū·dz·de-'jwǒ·dz-shang.*
11. *Dzày-'nà·swǒ-'fáng·dz-li*
12. *Dzày-'Nán·jīng.*
13. *Dzày-'Běy·píng.*
14. *Dzày-'nà·jyān-'wū·dz-li.*
15. *Dzày-'Hàn·kěw.*
16. *Dzày-Nyěw·'ywē.*
17. *Dzày-'nà·kē-'shù-'dǐ·shya.*
18. *Dzày-fēy·'jī-jà·'hwày·le-de-dì·fang.*
19. *Dzày-'jwǒ·dz-'dǐ·shya.*

3.

When did you see him?

a. Yesterday.

b. A few days ago.

c. Haven't seen him these few days.

d. Not long ago (two ways).

e. Not many days ago (two ways).

f. Probably day before yesterday.

g. Probably the year before the year before last.

h. A long time ago (two ways).

i. Many days ago.

j. When I was in Nanking.

k. At that time I was still in Nanking.

l. After I left Nanking.

*Nǐ-'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'kàn·jyàn-tā-de?*

1. *Hěn-'dwō-shŕ·hew-yǐ·'chyán.*
2. *Wǒ-dzày-'Nán·jīng-de 'shŕ·hew.*
3. *Wǒ-tsúng-'Nán·jīng 'dzěw·le yǐ·'hèw.*
4. *'Dzwó·tyan 'kàn·jyàn-de.*
5. *'Jè-jǐ·tyān 'méy-kàn·jyàn-tā.*
6. *Bù-'dwō-de-shŕ·hew-yǐ·'chyán.*
7. *'Bù-dwō-'jǐ·tyān-yǐ·'chyán.*
8. *'Yě·shywǔ-shr̀ dà-'chyán·nyan.*
9. *Hěn-'dwō-tyān-yǐ·'chyán.*
10. *'Nà·ge-shŕ·hew wǒ-'háy-dzày-Nán·'jīng.*
11. *'Chyán-jǐ·tyān 'kàn·jyàn-de.*
12. *Yǐ·'chyán bù-'dwō-de-shŕ·hew.*
13. *'Méy·yěw-jǐ·tyān yǐ·'chyán.*
14. *'Yě·shywǔ-shr̀ 'chyán·tyan.*
15. *'Háw-jyěw-yǐ·'chyán.*

4.

What are you doing tomorrow?

a. I'll have nothing to do (two ways).

b. A lot (two ways).

c. Going to the movies.

d. I think I'll go see a movie (two ways).

e. I'll be home.

f. I'll be home the whole day.

g. It may be very hot tomorrow.

h. So I'll not go out.

i. It will definitely be very cold tomorrow.

j. So I don't think I'll go out at all.

k. It will definitely be pleasantly cool tomorrow.

l. So don't look for me at my home.

m. I'll be out the whole day.

*'Míng·tyan dzwò-shém·me-'shr̀?*

1. *Wǒ-'shyǎng kàn-dyàn·'yǐng-chywù.*
2. *Wǒ-dzày-'jyā-li.*
3. *'Míng·tyan 'yě·shywǔ-hěn-'rè.*
4. *'Míng·tyan yí·'dìng-hěn-'lěng.*
5. *'Míng·tyan yí·'dìng-hěn-'lyáng·kwày.*
6. *Wǒ-yì·'tyān dēw-'bú-dzày-'jyā-li.*
7. *Swó·yi 'bú·yàw-dàw-wǒ-'jyā-li-láy 'jáw-wǒ.*
8. *Swó·yi wǒ-yì·'dyǎn yě-'bù-shyǎng-'chū·chywù.*
9. *Swó·yi wǒ-bù-'chū·chywù.*
10. *Wǒ-yì·'tyān dzày-'jyā-li.*
11. *Wǒ-'shyǎng-chywù kàn-dyàn·'yǐng.*
12. *Dàw-dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn-chywù.*
13. *'Míng·tyan wǒ-yàw-'dzwò-de-'shr̀ hěn-'dwō.*

14. *Hěn-'dwó.*
15. *'Bú-dzwò-shém·me-'shr̀.*
16. *'Méy·yěw-shr̀ dzwò.*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY?

§5. REVIEW BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE.

## SECTION C: BASIC SENTENCES

§1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP II).

MR. WÁNG HAS JUST BROUGHT MR. ROSS INTO THE ROOM IN MR. WÁNG'S HOUSE WHERE MR. ROSS IS TO STAY FOR A WHILE.

**Record 16A, after spiral.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| MR. ROSS: | |
| Do you want the door open? | *'Yàw-bu·yàw 'kāy·je-mén?* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| to close | *'gwān·shang* |
| Better close it. | *'Gwān·shang 'hǎw.* |
| I'm just going to open the window. | *Wǒ-'jyèw-chywù bǎ-'chwāng·hu 'kāy·kāy.* |
| But I can't get this window open! | *Jè·ge-'chwāng·hu wǒ-'kāy-bu·kāy!* |
| MR. ROSS: | |
| to push | *'twēy* |
| maybe | *'yě·shywǔ* |
| Push at it, maybe then you can open it. | *Nǐ-'twēy-yi·twēy, 'yě·shywu jyèw-'kāy·kay·le.* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| still *or* but | *'háy·shr* |
| I've pushed, but I still can't open it. | *'Twēy·le, 'háy·shr 'kāy-bu·kāy.* |
| upwards | *shyàng-'shàng* |
| outwards | *shyàng-'wày* |
| This window opens up, | *Jè·ge-'chwāng·hu shr̀-shyàng-'shàng-kāy-de,* |
| not out. | *'bú·shr-shyàng-'wày-kāy-de.* |

**Record 16B, beginning.**

| | |
|---|---|
| MR. ROSS: | |
| therefore *or* in that case | *'nà·me* |
| In that case push upwards. | *'Nà·me shyàng-'shàng 'twēy.* |
| to give assistance | *'bāng-máng* |
| I'll come and help. | *Wǒ-láy-'bāng-máng.* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| to pull | *'lā* |
| While I'm pushing, you pull. | *Wǒ-'twēy·je nǐ-'lā.* |
| OK, it's open. | *'Hǎw, 'kāy·kay·le.* |
| wind | *'fēng* |
| to blow | *'chwēy* |
| This window faces north*; | *'Jè·ge-'chwāng·hu shyàng-'nán;* |

---

* Recorded by accident. Should be *south*, to correspond to the Chinese *nán*.

| | |
|---|---|
| there is a breeze that will blow in. | *yĕw-'fēng 'chwēy·jìn·lay.* |

MR. ROSS:

| | |
|---|---|
| You said it! | *Kĕ-bù-'shr̀-ma!* |
| wall | *'chyáng* |
| picture | *'hwàr* |
| to move *or* shake | *'dùng* |
| Look, the pictures on the wall have started to shake in the wind. | *Nĭ-'kàn, fēng-'chwēy-de chyáng-shang-de-'hwàr 'dùng·chi·lay·le.* |

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| to paint (a picture) | *'hwà* |
| It's been three hundred years since that picture was painted. | *Nà·jāng-'hwàr 'hwà·le yĕw-'sān·băy·'nyán-le.* |
| front-side *or* face | *'shàng·tew* |
| written words | *'dz̀* |
| There are words on it. | *'Shàng·tew yĕw-'dz̀.* |
| Can you see them? | *'Kàn-de·'jyàn-ma?* |

MR. ROSS:

| | |
|---|---|
| black *or* dark | *'hēy* |
| The room is too dark. | *'Wū·dz 'tày-hēy.* |
| I can't see. | *'Kàn-bu·'jyàn.* |
| electric light | *'dyàn-dēng* |
| Can we turn on the electric light? | *Kĕ·yi-kāy-dyàn-'dēng-ma?* |

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| light switch | *'dyàn-mén* |
| The light switch is broken, we can't turn the light on. | *'Dyàn-mén 'hwày·le, 'bù-néng-'kāy.* |
| oil light | *'yéw-dēng* |
| Let me light an oil lamp. | *Wŏ-láy-dyăn-'yéw-dēng.* |

MR. ROSS:

| | |
|---|---|
| to be able to light something | *'dyăn-de·'jáw* |
| Can you get it lit? | *'Dyăn-de·'jáw-ma?* |

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| difficult | *'nán* |
| easy | *'rúng·yì* |
| It's not hard, it's very easy. | *Bù-'nán, hĕn-'rúng·yì.* |
| Just touch it [with a match] and it lights up right away. | *Yì-'dyăn jyèw-'jáw·le.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. Review the Practices on tones in single syllables.

**Record 1B, after sixth spiral.**

PRACTICE 21. (first tone)

| | |
|---|---|
| *'tā* | 'he, she' |
| *'hē* | 'drink' |
| *'sān* | 'three' |
| *'chī* | 'seven' |
| *'bā* | 'eight' |
| *'kāy* | 'start, drive, open, turn on' |

**Record 1B, after seventh spiral.**

Practice 22. (second tone)

| | |
|---|---|
| '*chá* | 'tea' |
| '*shŕ* | 'ten' |
| '*rén* | 'person' |
| '*chyán* | 'money' |
| '*láy* | 'come' |
| '*tsúng* | 'from' |

**Record 1B, after eighth spiral.**

Practice 23. (third tone)

| | |
|---|---|
| '*wŭ* | 'five' |
| '*jyĕw* | 'nine' |
| '*jĭ* | 'how many? a few' |
| '*gĕy* | 'give' |
| '*yĕ* | 'also' |
| '*yĕw* | 'have' |

**Record 1B, after last spiral.**

Practice 24. (fourth tone)

| | |
|---|---|
| '*èr* | 'two' |
| '*sz̀* | 'four' |
| '*lyèw* | 'six' |
| '*hwà* | 'speech' |
| '*dàw* | 'to' |
| '*chywù* | 'go' |

**Record 2A, beginning.**

Practice 25. (contrast of the four tones)

| | |
|---|---|
| *'*yēw*, '*yéw*, '*yĕw*, '*yèw* | 'swing; oil; have; again' |
| '*bā*, *'*bá*, '*bă*, *'*bà* | 'eight; pull up; taking; strong and evil man' |
| '*shū*, *'*shú*, *'*shŭ*, '*shù* | 'book; redeem; office; tree' |
| '*fēn*, *'*fén*, *'*fĕn*, *'*fèn* | 'minute; tomb; powder; manure' |

§3. Practice on the Basic Sentences.

## SECTION D: WORD STUDY

§1. Review Basic Sentences Covering the English.

§2. Word Study.

Point 1. New and Old Place-Words. You are already familiar with place-words like *shàng* 'upper part or surface of something', *wày* 'outside', *lĭ* 'inside', and with combinations of these with *byān* 'side'—'*wày·byān*, '*lĭ·byān*, and so on. In the latest group of Basic Sentences was the word '*shàng·téw* 'surface of something'—used to refer to the surface of a painting. The word *téw* means a *point* or *end*; it is used in many compounds, such as *hwŏ-chē-'téw* 'fire-cart-end'—'locomotive'—and in a good many place-words. Here are some of them, with the forms in *byān* given also by way of contrast:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *chyán* | '*chyán·byān* | '*chyán·téw* |
| 'front' | 'front side' | 'front end' |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *hèw* | *'hèw·byān* | *'hèw·téw* |
| 'rear' | 'rear side' | 'rear end' |
| *lǐ* | *'lǐ·byān* | *'lǐ·téw* |
| 'inside' | 'inside' | 'inside' |
| *'wày* | *'wày·byān* | *'wày·téw* |
| 'outside' | 'outside' | 'outside' |
| *shàng* | *'shàng·byān* | *'shàng·téw* |
| 'top side' | 'top side' | 'top side or end' |
| *shyà* | *'shyà·byān* | *'shyà·téw* |
| 'underneath' | 'under side' | 'under end or side' |
| *'dzwǒ* | *'dzwǒ·byān* | |
| 'left' | 'left side' | |
| *'yèw* | *'yèw·byān* | |
| 'right' | 'right side' | |

Any of the single-syllable words in the first column can be used after *shyàng* 'towards', to indicate direction. *Shàng* and *lǐ* are added to nouns; *shyà* is in a few special cases only. Except for these cases, the forms in the second and third columns are more often used than those in the first. For 'outside' and 'inside', the forms with *téw* are a bit more common than those with *byān*. The forms with *téw* are used more often than those with *byān* in Peiping and nearby; elsewhere those with *byān* are somewhat more common.

POINT 2. NEW COMPOUND WORDS.

*dyàn-'dēng* 'electric light'. Both parts are used separately as nouns.

*yéw-'dēng* 'oil light'. Both parts are used separately.

*dyàn-'mén* 'electric door'—'electric switch'. Both parts are used separately.

*chì-'yéw* 'gas oil'—'gasoline'.

The word *mén* means 'door' or 'gate'. Here are some compounds which use this word:

*dà-'mén* 'big gate'—the main gate in the fence around a house and accompanying garden in China.

*'chyán-mén* 'front door or gate' (*yǐ·'chyán*, *'chyán·byan*, and so on)

*'hèw-mén* 'back door or gate' (*yǐ·'hèw*, *'hèw·byan*, and so on)

*'fáng·mén* 'house door' (*'fáng·dz* 'house')

*'wū·mén* 'room door' (*'wū·dz* 'room')

There is one crystalized phrase in the Basic Sentences:

*Kě-bú-'shr̀-ma!* 'Isn't it so, though!' The first element, *kě*, you have had in *'kě·shr* 'but, though'.

POINT 3. *Jè·me* AND *Nà·me*. *Jè·me* means 'so, such, like this', *nà·me* means 'so, such, like that; then, in that case',

*'Jè·ge-dūng·shi jè·me-'dà, wǒ-'yí·ge rén ná-bu·'dùng.* 'This thing is so big (that) I alone can't move it.'

*'Jè·ge-dūng·shi 'jè·me-'dà!* 'How large this thing is!'

*'Nà·me-'dà·de-dūng·shi wǒ-ná-bu·'dùng.* 'I can't move a thing that big.'

*'Nà·me nǐ-kě·yi-'jìn·láy.* 'In that case you may come in.'

POINT 4. *Bān* AND *Dùng*. *Bān* means to move something—a heavy thing that uses much strength or that more than one person must help with. *Ná* 'to take, bring' is used, on the other hand, for something light which can be moved with one or two hands, without much strength. Thus you can say *bān-'jyā* 'to move one's home', *bān-'dà-jwō·dz* 'to move a big table', but *ná-'yān* 'bring (take) cigarettes'; *ná-'shyăw-jwō·dz* 'bring (take) a small table'.

*Dùng* means 'to be moving around in the same place, shaking, trembling, quivering, etc':

*'Nà·jāng-hwàr 'dùng.* 'That picture is moving'. (for example, swaying as a breeze hits it)

*Hwŏ-'chē 'dùng·le.* 'The train is moving'—meaning, just as in English when we see a train in a station just about to pull out, that it has started to move, not that it is really going from one place to another.

*Hwŏ-'chē 'dùng·chĭ·láy·le.* 'The train has started to move.'

*Bă-nà·jāng-'hwàr 'dùng-yi·dùng.* 'Move that picture a little.'

*Dùng* is also used as a postverb in resultative compounds:

*'ná-de·dùng, 'ná-bu·dùng* 'to be able (to be unable) to move a thing' (for small things that could be taken in one or both hands with little effort)

*'bān-de·dùng, 'bān-bu·dùng* (same, for things that take more effort to move)

*'chwēy·dùng* 'to make something move by blowing on it (as the wind)' *'chwēy-de·dùng, 'chwēy-bu·dùng* 'to be able (to be unable) to move something by blowing on it'.

*'twēy·dùng* 'to move by pushing'; *'twēy-de·dùng, 'twēy-bu·dùng* 'to be able (to be unable) to move something by pushing'.

*'lā·dùng* 'to move by pulling'; *'lā-de·dùng, 'lā-bu·dùng* 'to be able (to be unable) to move something by pulling.'

*'dzĕw-de·dùng, 'dzĕw-bu·dùng* 'to be able (to be unable) to move oneself by walking, to be able (unable) to walk' (as of an old man).

POINT 5. OTHER RESULTATIVE COMPOUNDS. Here are some other resultative compounds that you have had, or that you have had the parts of:

*kāy* 'to open, turn on, start, drive (a car)'; *'kāy·kāy* 'to open something to the state of being opened—to succeed in opening'; *'kāy-de·kāy, 'kāy-bu·kāy* 'to be able (unable) to open'.

*gwān* 'to close, turn off'; *'gwān·shàng* 'to close something shut, to succeed in closing or turning off'; *'gwān-de·shàng, 'gwān-bu·shàng* 'to be able (unable) to close, turn off'.

*twēy* 'to push'; *'twēy·kāy* 'to open by pushing'; *'twēy-de·kày, 'twēy-bu·kāy* 'to be able (unable) to open by pushing'.

*lā* 'to pull'; *'lā·kāy* 'to pull something open'; *'lā-de·kāy, 'lā-bu·kāy* 'to be able (unable) to pull something open'.

*chwēy* 'to blow'; *'chwēy·kāy* 'to blow something open (as the wind blowing a door open)'; *'chwēy-de·kāy, 'chwēy-bu·kāy* 'to be able (unable) to blow something open'.

*'chwēy·hwày* 'to blow a thing to pieces'—as the wind

might, not an explosion; *'chwēy-de·hwày, 'chwēy-bu·hwày* 'to be able (unable) to blow a thing to pieces'.

*'twēy·hwày* 'to spoil or break a thing by pushing'; *'twēy-de·hwày, 'twēy-bu·hwày.*

*'lā·hwày* 'to spoil or break a thing by pulling'; *'lā-de·hwày, 'lā-bu·hwày.*

Point 6. *Yī. . .jyèw.* Two statements are frequently connected by putting *yī* 'once' before the verb of the first, and *jyèw* 'then' before the verb of the second.

*Yí-'kàn jyèw-'jr̄·dàw·le.* 'Once he saw it immediately he knew it'—'He knew it the moment he saw it'.

*Yì-'shwō jyèw-'dǔng·le.* 'He understood the moment it was said.'

*Yì-'dyǎn jyèw-'jáw·le.* 'As soon as (you) lit it it immediately started to burn.'

*'Nà·ge-rén ày-dàw-wǒ-'jyā-li-láy tán-'hwà. Yí-'dzwò jyèw-shr̀-'yì·tyān.* 'That man likes to come to my home and talk. Once he sits down it's a whole day (that he stays).'

Point 7. *'Háy·shr* and *Háy.* *'Háy·shr* 'still, yet' is simply a more emphatic form of *háy*:

*Wǒ-'háy·shr bù-'dǔng.* 'I *still* don't understand.'

Point 8. *'Bāng-máng.* *Bāng* and *máng* are used separately like this:

*Wǒ-'bāng-nǐ dzwò-shr̀.* 'I'll help you work.'

*Wǒ-'bāng·le-tā 'shŕ·kwày-chyán.* 'I helped him (by giving him) ten dollars.'

*Wǒ·men-hěn-'máng.* 'We're very busy.'

When the two are used together, *máng* works like a noun 'busy-ness' (not 'business'), and the group means 'to help':

*Wǒ·men·de-'shr̀ hěn-'dwō. Déy-'jǎw-rén-láy 'bāng-wǒ·men·de-'máng.* 'We have a great deal of work to do. (We) must hunt for a man to come and help us.'

Point 9. *Je.* Compare the following two sentences:

*Wǒ·men chr̄·le-'fàn kàn-'shū.* 'After eating we read books.'

*Wǒ·men chr̄·je-'fàn kàn-'shū.* 'While eating we read books.'

In a sentence like the second, adding *je* to the first verb means that *while* doing such-and-such, you do something else. Another example:

*Nǐ-'twēy·je wǒ-'lā.* 'While you push I'll pull.'

In other types of sentences the meaning is a little different; it means that the action talked about is going on at the time of speaking:

*'Yàw-bu·yàw 'kāy·je-'mén?* 'Do you want the door open?'—that is, for the door to be and stay open. (Compare *Chǐng kāy-'mén.* 'Please open the door.')

In one special type of sentence *je* is added to the word *láy* at the end of the sentence:

*Nǐ-dzwò-'shém·me láy·je?* 'What have you just been doing?' (That is, 'you do what are-coming?'—'you from doing what are-now-coming?')

*Wǒ-nyàn-'shū láy·je.* 'I've just been studying.'

**POINT 10. THREE OTHER WORDS.** (a) *Jēn-* is used as a descriptive word or as an adverb, meaning 'true' or 'truly':

*'Nà jēn-'hǎw.* 'That's really swell.'
*'Nà jēn-bù-'hǎw.* 'That's really too bad.'
*Tā-shwō jēn-'hwà.* 'He speaks true words.'
*Tā-'shwō-de jēn-'dwèy.* 'What he says is really right.'

*Jēn·de* is a noun, 'truth, true thing'; its chief use is in this expression:

*'Jēn·de-ma?* 'Really?' ('Truth, eh?')
*'Jēn·de.* 'Yes, that's really so.' ('Truth.')

(b) The measure *jyān* (*yì·jyān-'wū·dz* 'one room') means basically 'a partition, a separation'. The Chinese house is usually made up of several units, each unit being partitioned into a number of rooms, most commonly three. Thus 'one-partition room' means one room.

(c) *Hāy!* is about like a hopeless shrug of the shoulders—an exclamation used to imply that nothing can be done about a bad situation.

## §3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1.

There are so many books, how can you sell them all?

*'Jè·me-'dwō-de-'shū, 'dzěm·me-néng-dēw-'mày·le-ne?*

a. Very easy.
b. Very hard.
c. I haven't thought of selling them all.
d. I don't know how to sell books.
e. I don't know how to sell books.
f. What would you say about that?
g. Isn't it so, though!
h. More readers, more books sold.
i. There aren't many people who like to buy books.
j. When the planes were bombing, not a single person came to buy books.
k. I think I can find some.
l. No one is helping me now.
m. Those who helped me to sell books in the bookstore have all left.
n. The one whose name is Jāng has also left.

1. *Kě-bú-'shr̀-ma!*
2. *Fēy·'jī-láy-'jà-de shŕ·hew, 'yí·ge-'láy-mǎy 'shū-de-rén yě-'méy·yěw.*
3. *Wó-shyǎng wó-'jǎw-de·jáw 'jǐ·ge-rén.*
4. *'Nà·ge-shìng-'Jāng-de yé-'dzěw·le.*
5. *Hěn-'rúng·yì.*
6. *Wǒ-bú-'hwèy-mày-'shū.*
7. *Nyàn-'shū-de-rén 'dwō, shū jyèw-'mày-de 'dwō.*
8. *Wó-děy-'jáw-jǐ·ge-rén láy-'bāng-, wǒ 'mày.*
9. *Shyàn·'dzày 'méy·yěw-rén 'bāng-wǒ.*
10. *Hěn-'nán.*
11. *'Nǐ shwō-ne.*
12. *'Ǎy-mǎy-'shū-de-rén bù-'dwō.*
13. *Shū·'pù-li 'bāng-wǒ-mày-'shū-de-rén dēw-'dzěw·le.*
14. *Wǒ-'méy-shyáng-bǎ-tā 'dēw-'mày-le.*

2.

When was this painting painted?

*'Jè·jāng-'hwàr 'hwà-de yěw-'dwō·shǎw-nyán?*

a. I don't know.

b. Nobody knows.

c. Which one?

d. Is it that one?

e. Is it this one?

f. Mr. Wang knows.

g. He says that it was painted 202 years ago.

h. It was done 202 years ago.

i. This is 1943.

j. So it must have been painted in 1743.

k. No, it was 1741.

l. Gee! I calculated wrong.

### 3.

### What man were you talking about?

a. I was talking about that American. (two ways)

1. *Bú-'dwèy. Shr̀-'yī-'chī-'sz̀-'yī.*
2. *'Jīn·nyan shr̀-'yī-'jyěw-'sz̀-'sān.*
3. *Tā-shwō, 'hwà·le yěw-'èr·bǎy-'líng·'èr-nyán-le.*
4. *Shr̀-'jè-yì·jāng-ma?*
5. *'Nǎ-yì·jāng?*
6. *Wǒ-bù-jr̄·'dàw.*
7. *Hāy! Wǒ-'swàn-de bú-'dwèy.*
8. *Swó·yi yí·'dìng-shr̀-'yī-'chī-'sz̀-'sān-'nyán 'hwà-de.*
9. *Jè-shr̀-'èr·bǎy-'líng-'èr·nyán-yì·'chyán 'hwà-de.*
10. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'jr̄·dàw.*
11. *Shr̀-'nà-yì·jāng-ma?*

*Nǐ-'shwō-de shr̀-'nǎ·ge-rén?*

1. *Kàn-'hwàr-de nà·ge-rén.*
2. *'Kāy-bu·kāy-'chwāng·hu-de nà·ge-rén.*

b. That American whose name is Ross.

c. That Chinese named Hú, who sells books.

d. The one who came in by the door.

e. The one who is standing in front of the wall.

f. The one who is standing up from that chair.

g. The one who is standing to the right of that woman.

h. The one who is looking at the paintings.

i. The one who opened the window.

j. The one who was able to open that window.

k. The one who couldn't open that window.

l. The one who couldn't see the words on the painting.

m. The one who didn't know how to light an oil lamp.

n. The one who couldn't light the oil lamp, try as he did.

3. *'Dzěm·me-dyǎn-yě·'dyǎn bu·jáw-yéw-'dēng-de nà·ge-rén.*
4. *Nà·ge-'Měy·gwo-rén.*
5. *Nà·ge-tsúng-'mén-li-'jìn·lay-de-rén.*
6. *Dzày-nà·ge-'nywǔ-rén-'yèw·byan 'jàn·je-de nà·ge-rén.*
7. *'Kāy-de·kāy-'chwāng·hu-de nà·ge-rén.*
8. *Bú-'hwèy-dyǎn-yéw-'dēng-de nà·ge-rén.*
9. *Wǒ-'shwō-de shr̀-nà·ge-'Měy·gwo-rén.*
10. *Nà·ge-shíng-'Hú-de-mày-'shū-de-'Jūng·gwo rén.*
11. *Tsúng-'nà·bá-'yǐ·dz-shang-'jàn·chi·lay-de nà·ge-rén.*
12. *'Kāy·kāy·le-'chwāng·hu-de nà·ge-rén.*
13. *'Kàn-bu·jyàn-'hwàr-shang-de-'dz̀-de nà·ge-rén.*
14. *'Dyǎn·láy-'dyǎn·chywù-'dyǎn-bu·jáw-yéw-*

o. The one who tried and tried to light the oil lamp and couldn't.

'*dēng-de nà·ge-rén.*
15. *'Nà·ge-shìng-'Lwó-de-'Měy·gwo-rén.*
16. *Nà·ge-dzày-'chyáng-'chyán·byan-'jàn·je-de-rén.*

How does this window open?

*'Jè·ge-'chwāng·hu dzěm·me-'kāy?*

a. Push outwards.
b. Pull inwards.
c. Push upwards.
d. Pull downwards.
e. Give it one push and it's open.
f. You push while I pull, then it can be opened.
g. Still it won't open.
h. Still it won't push open.
i. Still it won't pull open.
j. I still can't pull it open. (two ways).

1. *'Háy·shr-'kāy-bu·kāy.*
2. *Shyàng-'shyà lā.*
3. *Shyàng-'wày twēy.*
4. *'Háy·shr 'lā-bu·kāy.*
5. *Wǒ-'lā·je nǐ-'twēy, jyèw-'kāy de·kāy-le.*
6. *Shyàng-'shàng twēy.*
7. *Wǒ-'háy·shr bù-'néng-'bǎ-tā 'kāy·kāy.*
8. *'Háy·shr 'twēy-bu·kāy.*
9. *Yì-'twēy jyèw-'kāy·kāy-le.*
10. *Shyàng-'lǐ lā.*
11. *Wǒ-'háy·shr 'bǎ-tā 'lā-bu·kāy.*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY?

§5. REVIEW BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE.

## SECTION E: LISTENING IN

§1. WORD-STUDY CHECK-UP.

§2. LISTENING-IN.

CONVERSATION 1. MR. ROSS AND MR. HÚ ARE ON THE STREET.

**Record 17A, beginning.**

Hú: *'Lwó-shyān·sheng! 'Háw-jyěw-méy-'jyàn!*
Ross: *Wǒ-shyàn·'dzày dzày-'Wáng-shyān·sheng-'jyā jù.*
Hú: *'Nǎ-yì·tyān 'bān·chywù-de?*
Ross: *'Chyán·tyan 'bān-de.*
Hú: *Háy-'hǎw-ma?*
Ross: *Nǐ-'shwō-de shr̀-wǒ·de-'wū·dz ma?*
Hú: *'Shr̀.*
Ross: *Hén-'hǎw.*
*Yěw-'lyǎng·ge-shyàng-'nán-de-'chwāng·hu.*
*Hěn-'lyáng·kway.*
*'Wū·dz yě-'dà.*
*'Chyáng-shang 'háy-yěw-jǐ·jāng-'hwàr, 'hwà·de hén-hǎw-'kàn.*
*'Yěw-yì·jāng, 'Wáng-shyān·sheng shwō, 'hwà·le yěw-'sān·bǎy·'nyán-le.*
Hú: *'Shwéy 'hwà-de?*
Ross: *Wǒ-bù-jr̄·'dàw.*
Hú: *Nǐ·'ké·yi 'wèn-yi·wèn 'Wáng-shyān·sheng.*
Ross: *'Jè-jǐ·tyān 'Wáng-shyān·sheng hěn-'máng.*
*Děng tā-bù-'máng-de-shŕ·hew wǒ-'wèn-tā.*

### CONVERSATION 2. THEY DISCUSS THE OLD PICTURE.

Hú: *'Hwàr-shàng yěw-'dž méy·yew?*
*'Yěw.*
*'Nà-yì·tyān tày-'hěy·le.*
*Wǒ-'kàn-bu·'jyàn shř-shém·me-'dž.*
*'Hèw·lay dyǎn·'jáw·le 'yéw-děng.*
*wǒ·men 'máng·je bān-'jwō·dz, méy-'dzày-'kàn.*
*Wǒ-'jīn·tyan 'hwéy·chywu yí·'dìng 'kàn-yi·kàn.*
Hú: *'Wáng-jyā bú·shr-yěw-'dyàn-děng-ma?*
*Wèy-'shém·me dyǎn-'yéw-děng-ne?*
Ross: *'Dyàn-mén 'hwày·le.*
Hú: *'Dzěm·me-'hwày·le?*
Ross: *Bù-jř·'dàw.*
*'Jīn·tyan 'hwéy·chywu 'kàn-yi·kàn, jyèw-'jř·dàw·le.*

### CONVERSATION 3. THE SUBJECT CHANGES.

Hú: *Wǒ-'ér·dz shwō tā-'chyán-jǐ·tyān 'kàn·jyàn-nǐ-le.*
Ross: *'Shř·le.*
*'Nà-yì·tyān tā-gēn-yí·wèy-shìng-'Jāng-de dzày-'Wáng-shyān·sheng-'jyā-li tán-'hwà.*
*Wǒ-'dàw·le 'jǐ·fēn-jūng tā·men jyèw-'dzěw·le.*
Hú: *Tā-shyàn·'dzày 'bú-nyàn-'shū-le.*
Ross: *'Shwéy bú-nyàn-'shū-le?*
Hú: *Wǒ-'ér·dz.*
*Tā-yàw-dzày-wǒ·de-shū·'pù-li 'shywé·je dzwò-'mǎy·mày.*
*Tā-shwō tā-shyǎng 'shywé-jǐ·nyán-'mǎy·mày, 'dzày-chywù-nyàn-'shū.*
*Shū·'pù-li 'bāng-wǒ-de-rén 'dzěw·le.*
*Wó-'jǎw-bu·jáw 'rén láy-'bāng-máng.*
*Swó·yi yěw-tā-'bāng-máng 'yé-hǎw.*
Ross: *Shyàn·'dzày jǎw-'rén hěn-'nán.*
*Nǐ·de-'ér·dz 'jīn·nyan dwō-'dà-le?*
Hú: *Shŕ-'lyèw·swèy.*
Ross: *Tā-'gēn-nǐ shywé-'mǎy·mày yí·'dìng shywé-de 'hǎw.*
Hú: *'Wó-yě-bú-'hwèy-shém·me.*
*Wǒ·'jř·dàw dzěm·me-'này-chì-'chē.*
*Mày-'shū-de-shř wó-yǐ 'chyán bù-'dǔng.*

### CONVERSATION 4. THEY DISCUSS BUSINESS CONDITIONS.

**Record 17B, beginning.**

Ross: *Shyàn·'dzày nǐ·de-'mǎy·mày hén-'hǎw-ba.*
Hú: *Bú-'hwày, kě·shr bú-'tày-hǎw.*
*Mày-'shū hěn-'nán.*
*'Déy-yěw-'rén láy-'mǎy.*
*'Nyàn-shū-de-rén 'dwō, 'shū jyèw-'mày-de 'dwō.*
Ross: *Dzwò-'mǎy·mày bú·shr-rúng·'yì-de-'shř.*
*'Méy·yěw-rén-'mǎy, dzěm·me-néng-'mày?*
Hú: *'Chyán-jǐ·tyān Ř·běn-fēy·'jī láy-'jà-Chúng·'chìng.*
*'Nà·ge-shŕ·hew 'yí·ge-mǎy-shū-de-rén yě-'méy·yěw.*
Ross: *Fēy·'jī 'jà-de-shŕ·hew shwéy-néng-chū·lay mǎy-'shū-ne?*

### CONVERSATION 5. MR. ROSS ASKS MR. HÚ FOR SOME INFORMATION.

Ross: *Chǐng-'wèn, 'shém·me-dì·fang yěw-'mày-chì-'yéw-de?*
*Wǒ-'jè-jǐ·tyān 'jǎw·láy-'jǎw·chywù 'jǎw-bu·jáw yí·ge-mày-chì-'yéw-de.*

Hú: *Yĭ·'chyán nĭ-dzày-shém·me-'dì·fang măy-chì-'yéw?*

Ross: *'Nà·ge-'pù·dz yĭ·'jīng jà·'hwày·le.*

Hú: *Lí-wŏ-'jè·li 'bù-ywăn, yĕw-yí·ge-'pù·dz mày-chì-'chē.*
*'Tā·men yé·shywu yĕw-chì-'yéw mày.*

Ross: *Jè·ge-'pù·dz dzày-'shém·me-dì·fang?*

Hú: *Hĕn-'jìn.*
*Tsúng-'jè·ge-dì·fang shyàng-'yèw dzĕw.*
*Bú-dàw-'shŕ·fēn-jūng jyèw-'dàw·le.*

Ross: *Nĭ-'shwō-de-shr̀ 'dzĕw·je-'chywù.*
*Dzwò-chì-'chē-ne?*

Hú: *Nĭ-kāy-'chē 'láy-de-ma?*
*'Nà·me yéw-'lyăng·sān·fēn-jūng jyèw-'dàw·le.*

Ross: *Jè·ge-'pù·dz-de-'dà-mén shyàng-'nán, shyàng-'bĕy?*

Hú: *Dzày-'nán·byan, shyàng-'bĕy.*
*Shyàng-'nán-de shr̀-yí·ge-mày-'hwàr-de-pù·dz.*

Ross: *Wŏ-'jr̄·dàw·le.*
*Nà·ge-mày-'hwàr-de 'shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'yĕ-shìng-'Hú?*

Hú: *'Dwèy·le. Tā-dzŭ·'fù gēn-wó-dzŭ·'fú shr̀-'dì·shyung.*

Ross: *'Chyán-jĭ·tyān dzày-'tā-nà·li măy·le-'shŕ-jĭ·jāng-'hwàr.*

CONVERSATION 6. ROSS TELLS HÚ HE INTENDS TO VISIT THE LATTER'S BOOKSTORE.

Ross: *'Míng·tyan wó-shyăng dàw-nĭ·de-shū·'pù-chywu.*

Hú: *'Hăw. 'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'chywù?*

Ross: *Bù-yí·'dìng. 'Nĭ shwō-ne?*

Hú: *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew dēw-'ké·yi.*
*'Míng·tyan wŏ-yì·'tyān dēw-dzày-'pù·dz-li.*

Ross: *Dàw-'nĭ·de-'pù·dz-chywù 'dzĕm·me-dzĕw?*

Hú: *Nĭ-'jr̄·dàw Chúng·'chìng-Fàn·'dyàn-ma?*

Ross: *'Jr̄·dàw.*

Hú: *Tsúng-'nà·li shyàng-'nán dzĕw, bú-dàw-'bàn·lĭ jyèw-'dàw·le.*

Ross: *Fàn·'dyàn lí-'Wáng-jyā hén-'ywăn.*
*Wŏ-kāy-'chē-chywù-ba.*

Hú: *'Míng·tyan nĭ-'ké·yi-bù-'ké·yi 'dày-wŏ-chywù?*

Ross: *'Ké·yi. Wŏ-'míng·tyan 'shyān-dàw-nĭ-'jè·li-láy.*

## SECTION F: CONVERSATION

§1. VOCABULARY CHECK-UP.

§2. CARRYING ON CONVERSATION.

# UNIT IX

## GETTING CLEANED UP

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

§1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP I).

EARLY IN THE MORNING, MR. ROSS ARRIVES AT HIS NEW QUARTERS.

**Record 18A, beginning.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| early | *'dzǎw* |
| to get up | *'chǐ·láy* |
| Mr. Ross! You've gotten up very early. | *'Lwó-shyān·sheng! Nǐ-'chǐ·láy-de 'hěn-dzǎw.* |
| just | *'tsáy* |
| It's just seven thirty now. | *Shyàn·'dzày tsáy-'chī·dyǎn-'bàn.* |
| to finish *or* pass over | *'gwò* |
| breakfast | *dzǎw-'fàn* |
| Have you had breakfast? | *'Chr̄·gwo-dzǎw-'fàn-le-ma?* |
| MR. ROSS: | |
| Yes, I've eaten. | *Chr̄·'gwò·le.* |
| baggage | *'shíng·li* |
| I've brought my baggage. | *Wó-bǎ-'shíng·li 'bān·lay-le.* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| old *or* long-standing | *'lǎw* |
| I'll get Old Jēw to come and move the baggage. | *Wǒ-jyàw-Lǎw-'Jēw láy-bān-'shíng·li.* |
| MR. ROSS: | |
| servant | *'yùng·ren* |
| Old Jēw is your servant? | *Lǎw-'Jēw shr̀-nǐ·de-'yùng·ren-ma?* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| Yes. | *'Shr̀.* |
| fix up *or* clean up | *'shēw·shr* |
| to be clean | *'gān·jing* |
| Your room has already been cleaned up. | *Nǐ·de-'wū·dz yǐ·'jīng 'shēw·shr-'gān·jing-le.* |

**MR. ROSS:**

| | |
|---|---|
| fast | *'kwày* |
| How did you clean it up so quickly? | *Dzěm·me-'shēw·shr-de 'jè·me-'kwày?* |

**MR. WÁNG:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Very easy. | *Hěn-rúng·'yì.* |
| evening, after six o'clock | *'wǎn·shang* |
| Yesterday evening after you left,* | *'Dzwó·tyan-'wǎn·shang ní-'dzěw·le yì·'hèw,* |
| I got Old Jēw and Jàw, the maid, to clean it up. | *wǒ-jyàw-Lǎw-'Jēw gēn-'Jàw-Mā 'shēw·shr-de.* |
| to sweep | *'sǎw* |
| First they swept the floor. | *Tā·men-'shyān bǎ-'dì 'sǎw-le.* |
| to finish | *'wán* |
| to use | *'yùng* |
| cloth | *'bù* |
| to rub | *'tsā* |
| When the floor was swept, | *'Sǎw·wán·le-'dì,* |
| they cleaned the tables with a cloth. | *yùng-'bù bǎ-'jwō·dz tsā-'gān·jing-le.* |
| even including | *'lyán* |
| glass | *'bwō·li* |
| They even cleaned the window-panes. | *Lyán-'chwāng·hu-shang-de-'bwō·li yě-'tsā-le.* |

Record 18B, beginning.

**MR. ROSS:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Thanks a lot. | *Dwō-'shyè.* |
| to be bright *or* light | *'lyàng* |
| This room is very bright. | *Jè·jyān-'wū·dz hěn-'lyàng.* |
| to be dark | *'àn* |
| Last evening it was too dark, and I couldn't see. | *'Dzwó·tyan-'wǎn·shang tày-'àn, 'kàn-bu·chū·'láy.* |
| morning | *'dzǎw·chen* |
| Not until this morning did I see how bright it is. | *'Dzǎw·chen tsáy-'kàn-de·chū dwō·me-'lyàng-lay.* |

**MR. WÁNG:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Is the table all right here? | *'Jwō·dz gē·dzay-'jè·li 'hǎw-ma?* |

**MR. ROSS:**

| | |
|---|---|
| in this way | *'jè·me-yàng* |
| This way is fine. | *'Jè·me-yàng 'hěn-hǎw.* |
| to fix *or* repair | *'shyēw·li* |
| Was the electric light fixed? | *Dyàn-'dēng 'shyēw·li·le-ma?* |

**MR. WÁNG:**

| | |
|---|---|
| It's already been fixed up. | *Yǐ·jǐng 'shyēw·li-'hǎw-le.* |
| It wasn't the light switch that was broken. | *'Bú·shr-'dyàn-mén 'hwày·le.* |
| light bulb | *dyàn-dēng-'pàwr* |
| It was the bulb that was no good. | *Shr̀-dyàn-dēng-'pàwr 'hwày·le.* |
| to change | *'hwàn* |

---

* On the records this and the following entry are given without pause in English but the Chinese is broken into two parts as indicated.

| | |
|---|---|
| As soon as the bulb was changed then it went on. | *'Hwàn·le-yí·ge-dyàn-dēng-'pàwr jyèw-'lyàng·le.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. Review the practices of groups of two syllables with different sequences of tones.

**Record 2A, after first spiral.**

PRACTICE 26. (groups of two syllables with tones on both)

| | |
|---|---|
| *'kāy-'chē* | 'drive a car' |
| *'hē-'chá* | 'drink tea' |
| *'hē-'shwěy* | 'drink water' |
| *'chr̄-'fàn* | 'eat food' |
| *'chá 'hē* | 'tea to drink' |
| *'méy-'láy* | 'has not come' |
| *'yáng·'hwǒ* | 'matches' |
| *'shŕ-'lyòw* | 'sixteen' |
| *hwǒ-'chē* | 'train' |
| *wǒ-'láy* | 'I come' |
| *wǒ-'chywù* | 'I go' |
| *'myàn·'bāw* | 'bread' |
| *'yàw-'chá* | 'want tea' |
| *'yàw-'dzěw* | 'want to leave' |
| *'dzày-'jyàn* | 'see you again' |

**Record 1A, after fourth spiral.**

PRACTICE 5. (two-syllables, second toneless)

| | |
|---|---|
| *'shyān·sheng* | 'Mr.' |
| *'shyáw·jye* | 'Miss' |
| *'dǔng·le* | 'I understand' |
| *'tày·tay* | 'Mrs.' |

Even if you get a bit tired of going over these same practices, don't skip them. The exercise will do your pronunciation more good than you realize. In a way it is like calisthenics every morning; one may never enjoy such calisthenics too much, but the exercise is taking its good effect on one's muscles just the same.

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES.

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

§1. REVIEW THE BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE ENGLISH

§2. WORD STUDY.

POINT 1. COUMPOUND WORDS.

*'Shíng·li* 'luggage'. *Shíng* occurs also in a few compounds meaning things pertaining to travel: *'shíng·rén* 'a traveller'; *shíng-'chē* (in a railroad station) 'a train which is scheduled to go from this station to somewhere else.' The measure for *'shíng·li* is *jyàn*: *sān·jyàn-'shíng·li* 'three pieces of baggage.'

*'yùng·ren* 'use people'—'servants'. There are various other names, such as *'dǐ·shya·rén* 'under people' (*'dǐ·shya* 'the space under anything'), or *'shyà·rén* (same).

*'shēw·shr* 'receive pick-up'. *Shēw* is used in other compounds: *Wǒ-'shēw·dàw·le tā-'gěy-wǒ-de-'yān* 'I re-

ceived the cigarettes he gave me.', with '*shēw·dàw*; *Bǎ-'yān 'shēw·chǐ·láy* 'Put away the cigarettes' with *shēw·chǐ·láy* 'to put away, to hide' *Shŕ* 'to pick up' is used as a separate verb: *Wǒ-dzày-'ywán·dz-li 'shŕ·le-yí·kwày-'chyán* 'I picked up a dollar in the garden'. So '*shēw·shr* means 'to clean up' in the sense of picking things up and putting them in the right places.

'*shyēw·li* 'to repair'; *shyēw* is used alone meaning 'to build, repair (something extensive)'—e.g., *shyēw-'chē* 'to repair an automobile, a train car'.

'*gān·jing* 'dry and clear'—'clean'. *Gān* means 'to be dry', *jìng* means 'to be clean, clear' (as of glass); both are perfectly ordinary descriptive words like *hǎw*, *màn*, *kwày*. The meaning of the compound '*gān·jing* is now simply 'clean', so that even something that is not dry (*gān*) can still be '*gān·jing*.

*dyàn-dēng-'pàwr* 'electric light bulb'. *Pàwr* as a separate word means 'bubble'.

POINT 2. *Dzǎw* AND *Wǎn*. *Dzǎw* means 'to be early', *wǎn* means 'to be late' or 'to get late':

*Tā-'láy-de 'dzǎw.* 'He comes early.'

*Nǐ-láy-'wǎn·le, wǒ·men bǎ-'fàn dēw-'chř-le.* 'You have come late, we've eaten all the food.'

*Tā-'jīn·tyan dzěm·me-'háy-méy-láy? Yǐ·jǐng-'shŕ·dyǎn-jūng-le.* 'How come he still hasn't come today? Already it's ten o'clock.' *Tā-'dzwó·tyan shwō·le, tā-'jīn·tyan yěw-'shr̀, bù-'néng-'dzǎw-láy, yé·shywu-dàw-de hěn-'wǎn.* 'He said yesterday that he had some business today and couldn't come early, and might arrive very late.'

Both of these words come in compounds also:

'*dzǎw·chen* 'early morning'; *chén* in the meaning 'morning' occurs only in compounds.

*dzǎw-'fàn* 'early food'—'breakfast'.

'*wǎn·shang* 'late on'—'evening'. The second syllable is *shàng*, which you have added to nouns meaning the top side of a thing.

*wǎn-'fàn* 'late food'—'evening meal'.

POINT 3. *Tsáy* AND *Jyèw*. Compare the following sentences:

(a) *Tā-'tsày-'láy.* 'He has just come'.

(b) *Tā-'jyèw-'láy.* 'He'll be here right away.'

(a) *Sz̀·dyǎn-'bàn-le tā-tsáy-'dàw-de.* 'He arrived when it was already four thirty; he arrived only at four thirty.'

(b) *Sz̀·dyǎn-'bàn tā-jyèw-'dàw·le.* 'He arrived when it was only four thirty; he arrived immediately at four thirty.'

(a) '*Děng-tā 'láy·le, 'wǒ·men-tsáy-'dzěw.* 'Wait until he has come, only then will we leave.'

(b) *Tā-'láy·le wǒ·men-jyèw-'dzěw.* 'When he has come we'll immediately leave.'

(a) *Tā-yǐ·jǐng 'láy·le, wǒ·men tsáy-'dzěw-de.* 'Only when he had come did we leave.'

(b) *Tā-yì-'láy·le wǒ·men jyèw-'dzěw-de.* 'As soon as he came, we left.'

In all these sentences *tsáy* carries the meaning of 'then and not before', whereas *jyèw* carries the meaning of 'then immediately'. The first emphasizes that a thing is *not* done *until* a certain time, whereas the second emphasizes that the thing *is* done *at* a certain time.

You can also use both in a single sentence:

*Wǒ·men-'tsáy-chr̄·le-fàn, tā-jyèw-'láy·le.* 'When we had barely eaten he arrived.'

*Wǒ·men-'tsáy-kàn·'wán·le-dyàn·'yǐng, dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn jyèw-'jáw·chi-hwǒ-láy·le.* 'When we had scarcely finished seeing the movie, the theater started to burn.'

POINT 4. *Lǎw* AND *Mā*. *Lǎw-'Jēw*, ' "old" Jēw', is the usual way of addressing a man servant. Students also frequently address each other familiarly by using *lǎw* followed by the family name. In these uses the word *lǎw* doesn't really mean old—it's like the English 'old fellow' or 'old friend'. *Lǎw* also means 'to be old' or 'to get old' in the literal sense: *tā-'lǎw·le* 'He has gotten old'; *Nà·ge-'lǎw-rén shr̀-'shwéy?* 'Who is that old man?'. It also is used as an adverb meaning 'for a long time': *Tā-'lǎw-bù-láy* 'For a long time he hasn't come.'

*'Jàw-Mā*, on the other hand, is the normal way of addressing a *woman* servant—the family name, in this case *Jàw*, followed by the word *Mā*. *Lǎw-'mā·dz* is 'a maidservant'. *'Mā·ma* is 'mama'. *Wǒ·de-'mā-yā!* 'Oh my mama!' is an exclamation not generally used any more—in any case it would be used only in a case of real emergency, such as when you suddenly saw a tiger jumping at you.

POINT 5. *Lyán . . . yě.* By putting *lyán* at the beginning of a sentence and *yě* before the verb, the meaning of 'even including such-and-such' is produced: *Lyán-'chwāng·hu-shang-de-'bwō·li yě-'tsā-le.* '(They) even-to the window's glass also rubbed.'—'They even cleaned the glass in the window.'

POINT 6. *Yàng.* The word *yàng* itself is a measure meaning 'kind, sort of': *sān·yàng-'tsày* 'three kinds of food other than rice.' *'Yàng·dz* means 'shape, form, model, likeness'. The combinations *'dzěm·me-yàng*, *'jè·me-yàng*, and *'nà·me-yàng* are adverbs, meaning 'in what way?', 'in this way', and 'in that way':

*'Jè·ge-fàn 'bú·shr-jè·me-yàng-'dzwò-de.* 'This food is not cooked this way.'

*'Dzěm·me-yàng-dzwò-ne?* 'In what way then?'

*Yàw-shyān-'jǔ* (boil), *hèw-'kǎw* (roast). 'First you want to boil it, then roast it.'

*'Nà·me-yàng-dzwò jyèw-hǎw-'chr̄-le.* 'Do it that way and it'll be delicious.'

*Nǐ-'kàn, 'jè·me-yàng-dzwò!* 'Look! Do it like this!'

*Tā-'jè·me-yàng 'dzwò·je.* 'He is sitting like this.'

By adding *de*, the words can be used to modify or describe a noun:

*Tā-'nà·me-yàng-de-rén 'háy-shyǎng-jyē·'hwēn-ma?* 'A man like that still thinks of getting married?'

*Tā-shr̀-'dzěm·me-yàng-de-rén?* 'What sort of man is he?'

POINT 7. MORE RESULTATIVE COMPOUNDS. The word *wán*, used as a verb itself, means 'to finish':

*Wǒ·de-'shr̀ 'wán·le.* 'My work is done.'

*Wǒ·de-'shr̀ 'méy-wán.* 'My work isn't done.'

But *wán* is also used as a postverb in resultative compounds. Almost any main verb can precede it. The meaning can be gathered from the following examples:

*Wǒ-'chr̄-de·wán jè·wǎn-'fàn.* 'I can finish eating this bowl of rice.'

*Wǒ-'hē-bu·wán jè·wǎn-'chá.* 'I can't finish drinking this cup of tea.'

*Wǒ-'méy-kàn·wán-'shū.* 'I haven't finished reading the book.'

*'Chr̄·wán·le-wǎn-'fàn wǒ·men jyèw-'chywù-kàn-dyàn·'yǐng.* 'When the evening meal has been finished (has been eaten up) we'll go to a movie.'

Here is another set of resultative compounds which you have either had in the Basic Sentences, or else for which you have had the parts:

*'kàn-de·chū, 'kàn-bu·chū* 'to be able (unable) to see something'—because you can't see through the darkness. Or, in a different sense, 'to be unable to see through' and get the answer to a problem, because it is so difficult. *Chū* used as postverb usually is followed by *láy* at the end of the sentence. If nothing follows the resultative compound, then the *láy* is hooked right on: *Wǒ-'kàn-bu·chū·láy.* 'I can't see.'

*'tsā* 'to rub, stroke', is used in resultative compounds as follows: *'tsā-gān·jìng* 'to rub something clean'; *'tsā-bu·gān·jìng, 'tsā-de·gān·jìng* 'to be unable (able) to rub something clean.'

*sǎw* 'to sweep', is used with the same postverb: *'sǎw-gān·jìng* 'to sweep (a place) clean'; *'sǎw-de·gān·jìng, 'sǎw-bu·gān·jìng* 'to be able (unable) to sweep clean.'

*'shēw·shr* 'to clean (a place) up', is used with the same postverb and with another: *'shēw·shr-'gān·jìng* 'to clean a place up until it is clean', *'shēw·shr-de·'gān·jìng, 'shēw·shr-bu·'gān·jìng*; *shēw·shr-hǎw* 'to clean a place until it is fixed up right', *'shēw·shr-de·hǎw, 'shēw·shr-bu·hǎw.* (Since the meaning with *de* and *bu* is always 'to be able to' and 'to be unable to' do the thing, the translations do not need to be supplied.)

*'shyēw·li* 'to repair, fix up' is used with postverb *hǎw*: *'shyēw·li-hǎw* 'to fix "at" a thing until it is all right again'; *'shyēw·li-de·hǎw, 'shyēw·li-bu·hǎw.*

Hereafter when a verb is a resultative compound that fact will be indicated by putting (RC) after it in the word-study. You will find this in the very next Point. Thus when you see (RC) after *'dzěw-gwò·láy* 'to walk over (this way)', you know automatically that there are also the forms *'dzěw-bu·gwò·láy* and *'dzěw-de·gwò·láy*, meaning 'to be unable (or to be able) to walk over (in this direction)'.

POINT 8. *Gwò.* This word is used in several different ways. First, it is a verb, meaning 'pass over, pass through':

*Wǒ·men gwò-'jè·ge-dì·fang 'yàw-yùng-'sān·dyǎn-jūng.* 'To pass through this place we'll have to use three hours.'

*Yàw-dàw-'nà·li-chywù, 'dĕy-gwò-Chúng·'chìng.* 'If we want to go there we'll have to pass through Chungking.'

*Yàw-tsúng-'Chicago dàw-'New-York-chywù, dĕy-gwò-'Cleveland.* 'If you want to go from Chicago to New York, you have to pass through Cleveland.'

"*Gwò·láy* means 'to come over':

*Wŏ-'méy·yĕw-shr̀, 'gwò·láy 'kàn-yi·kàn.* 'I have nothing to do, I'll come over and take a look' (or 'and see you a while.')

"*Gwò·láy·de-rén* or '*gwò·láy-rén* are those who have lived through a particular experience, depending on what is being talked about. If you are talking about war, then this term refers to a man who has fought in the war or experienced it; if marriage, the same.

'*Gwò·chywù* 'to go over':

*Wŏ-'gwò·chywù 'kàn-yi·kàn tā-dzwò-'shém·me-ne.* 'I'll go over and take a look to see what he's doing.'

*Tā-'gwò·chywù·le.* 'He passed away'—a polite way, in both English and Chinese, to say that a man has died.

There are also compounds: '*dzĕw-gwò·láy* (RC) 'to walk over (this way)'; '*dzĕw-gwò·chywù* (RC) 'to walk over (not towards here)'; '*păw-gwò·láy* (RC) 'to run over', '*păw-gwò·chywù* (RC) 'to run over'; '*ná-gwò·láy* (RC), '*ná-gwò·chywù* (RC) 'to bring over', 'to take over'; '*bān-gwò·láy* (RC), '*bān-gwò·chywù* (RC) 'to move (a heavy object) over'.

*Gwò* is also added to verbs just as *le* is, sometimes with practically the same meaning, sometimes with a slightly different meaning—and both can be used with the same verb at the same time, the *gwò* coming first:

*Wŏ-'kàn·gwo 'jè·ge-dyàn·'yĭng.* 'I have seen this movie already'—sometime in the past I have seen it, it is an experience which I have had. This is the same as *Wŏ-'kàn·le-'jè·ge-dyàn·'yĭng-le*, with a *le* after the verb and another at the end of the sentence.

*Wŏ-'dàw·gwo-'Yīng·gwo.* 'I have been to England.'

*Nĭ-'dàw·gwo-R̀·'bĕn-ma?* 'Have you ever been to Japan?'

*Wŏ-'nyàn·gwo-'shŕ·nyán-'shū.* 'I have studied ten years.'

*Wŏ-chr·le-'fàn-le.* or *Wŏ-chr̄·gwo-'fàn-le.* I have eaten already.'

*Nĭ-'chr̄·gwo 'jè·ge-'tsày-ma?* 'Have you ever eaten this dish (before)?'

*Nĭ-'chr̄·le jè·ge-'tsày-le-ma?* 'Did you eat this dish?' 'Have you eaten this dish?'

*Wŏ-'méy-dàw·gwo-'Jūng·gwo.* 'I've never been to China.'

*Wŏ-'méy-dàw-'Jūng·gwo-chywù.* 'I didn't go to China. (that is, as part of a trip that I have just made)

Point 9. *Yùng.* Here are examples of the use of the word *yùng* 'to use, spend, utilize':

*yùng-'bīng dă-'jàng* 'use soldiers to fight a war'

*yùng-'chyán măy-'dūng·shi* 'use money to buy things'

*Tā-'hwèy-yùng-'chyán.* 'He knows how to use money'—he is a skillful or careful spender.

*Tā-'ày-yùng-'chyán.* 'He likes to spend money.'

*Jè·ge-'dūng·shi yĕw-'yùng.* 'This thing is useful.'

*'Nà·ge-dūng·shi 'méy·yěw-'yùng.* 'That thing is of no use.'

## §3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

### 1.

When did he come?

a. This morning.
b. Yesterday morning
c. Yesterday evening.
d. The day before yesterday in the evening.
e. I came first, he came after me.
f. He came very early.
g. He came very late.
h. This morning at seven o'clock.
i. This morning after we ate breakfast.
j. This morning after he ate breakfast.
k. This evening only after he had eaten dinner.
l. This evening as soon as he had eaten dinner.
m. It was only seven when he came.
n. He must have gotten up before six.
o. He must get up before six; only then can he arrive at seven.

*Tā-'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'láy-de?*

1. *Tā-'láy-de hěn-'wăn.*
2. *'Jīn·tyan-'dzăw·chen tā-'chr̄·le-dzăw-fàn-yĭ·'hèw 'láy-de.*
3. *'Jīn·tyan-'wăn·shang tā-'chr̄·le-wăn-fàn-yĭ·'hèw, jyèw-'láy·le.*
4. *Tā-yí·'dìng-shr̀ 'lyèw·dyăn-jūng-yĭ·'chyán 'chĭ·láy-de.*
5. *'Jīn·tyan-'dzăw·chen.*
6. *'Dzwó·tyan-'wăn·shang.*
7. *Wǒ-'shyān-láy-de, tā-dzày-wó-yĭ·'hèw láy-de.*
8. *'Jīn·tyan-'dzăw·chen-'chī·dyăn-jūng.*
9. *'Jīn·tyan-'wăn-shang tā-'chr̄·le-wăn-fàn yĭ·'hèw, tsáy-'láy-de.*
10. *'Jīn·tyan-'dzăw·chen wǒ·men-'chr̄·le-dzăw-fàn-yĭ·'hèw, tā-'láy-de.*
11. *'Dzwó·tyan-'dzăw·chen.*
12. *'Chyán·tyan-'wăn·shang.*
13. *Tā-'láy-de hěn-'dzăw.*
14. *Tsáy-'chī·dyăn-jūng tā-jyèw-'láy·le.*
15. *Tā-'děy-dzày-'lyèw-dyăn-jūng-yĭ·'chyán 'chĭ·láy, 'tsáy-néng-dzày-'chī·dyăn-jūng 'dàw-jè·li.*

### 2.

What places have you been to?

a. Nowhere.
b. Many places.
c. England and France.
d. China and Japan.
e. I have been to Peiping, Nanking, and Chungking.
f. I first went to Peiping.
g. Stayed there for three years.
h. Then I went to Nanking.
i. When the war broke out, I hurried west to Chungking.

*Nĭ-'dēw-dàw·gwo-'shém·me-dì·fang?*

1. *Dàw·gwo-'Yīng·gwo, 'Fà·gwo.*
2. *Wǒ-dàw·gwo-Běy·píng, Nán·jīng, Chúng·'chìng.*
3. *'Jù·dzày-'nà·li 'jù·le 'sān·nyán-le.*
4. *Dá·chĭ-'jàng-láy-le, shyàng-'shī 'pǎw·dàw-Chúng·'chìng-chywù-le.*
5. *'Shém·me-dì·fang 'yě-méy-'dàw·gwo.*
6. *Dàw·gwo-'Jūng·gwo, R̀·'běn.*

j. So I have been to all these places.

### 3.

Where is the man to fix the electric light?

a. He came and then went right away.
b. Before he had the lights repaired, he went away.
c. He had barely come in when he went away.
d. He'll be here only after eight.
e. He fixed the light, then went right away.
f. Only after he had fixed the light did he go away.

### 4.

How is he as human beings go?

7. *Wǒ-'shyān-dàw-de-Běy·'píng.*
8. *'Hèw·lay dàw·le-Nán·'jīng.*
9. *'Swó·yi 'jè·ge-dì·fang wǒ-'dēw-'dàw·gwo.*
10. *Dàw·gwo-hěn-'dwō-dì·fang.*

*Shyēw·li-dyàn-'dēng-de dzày-'nǎ·li?*

1. *Tā-'bā·dyǎn-jūng-yǐ·'hèw tsáy-'láy-ne.*
2. *Tā-'tsáy-láy jyèw-'dzěw·le.*
3. *Tā-bǎ-dyàn-'dēng shyēw·li-'hǎw-le tsáy-'dzěw-de.*
4. *Tā-'láy·le jyèw-'dzěw·le.*
5. *Tā-bǎ-dyàn-'dēng shyēw·li-'hǎw-le jyèw-'dzěw·le.*
6. *Tā-háy-'méy-bǎ-dyàn-'dēng 'shyēw·li-hǎw, jyèw-'dzěw·le.*

*'Tā-dzwò-'rén 'dzwò-de 'dzěm·me-yàng?*

a. Very good.
b. Alas! Not so good!
c. Very bad.
d. His way of being a man is very easy.
e. He knows how to make use of people.
f. His way of being a man makes no friends.
g. His way of being a man makes people like to work for him.
h. His servants are willing to do things for him.
i. No one is willing to do things for him.
j. His way of being a man is very hard.
k. The right way of being a man is not his way.

### 5.

How would you like to have the room cleaned?

a. First sweep the floor.
b. Wipe the window-panes

1. *Tā·de-'yùng·'ren 'ywàn·yi 'gěy-tā dzwò-'shř.*
2. *Tā-hwèy-yùng-'rén.*
3. *Hén-'hǎw.*
4. *Hāy! 'Bù-hén-hǎw.*
5. *Tā-'nà·me-yàng dzwò-'rén shř-bù-'néng-yěw-'péng·yew-de.*
6. *'Hěn-bù-hǎw.*
7. *'Méy·yěw-rén 'ywàn·yi 'gěy-tā dzwò-'shř.*
8. *Dzwò-'rén bú·shr-'tā-nà·me-yàng 'dzwò-de.*
9. *Tā-'nà·me-yàng dzwò-'rén 'jyàw-rén ày-'gěy-tā dzwò-'shř.*
10. *Tā-'nà·me-yàng dzwò-'rén hěn-'nán.*
11. *Tā-'nà·me-yàng dzwò-'rén hěn-'rúng·yì.*

*Ní-shyáng-bǎ-'wū·dz 'dzěm·me-yàng 'shēw·shr-ne?*

1. *Dzày-bǎ-'jwō·dz, 'yǐ·dz, yě-tsā-'gān·jing-le.*

clean with water and cloth.

c. Then wipe the tables and chairs clean.

d. When everything is done, close the doors and windows.

e. Even close that window.

6.

Can you see the words in the book?

a. It's too dark here, I can't see.

b. Are they Chinese characters?

c. I can't see well enough to tell.

d. Yes, they are.

e. In that case I can't read them.

f. Turn on the light.

g. It's light; I can see, but I still can't recognize them as Chinese characters.

2. *Lyán-'nà·ge-chwāng·hu yĕ-'gwān·shang.*
3. *Shyān-bă-'dì 'săw-yi·săw.*
4. *Dēw-'wán·le, bă-'mén gēn-'chwāng·hu dēw-'gwān·shang.*
5. *Bă-'chwāng·hu-shang-de-'bwō·li yùng-'shwĕy gēn-'bù tsā-'gān·jing-le.*

*Nĭ-'kàn-de·jyàn 'shū-li-de-'dž-ma?*

1. *'Shr̀.*
2. *Chĭng kāy-'dēng.*
3. *Chíng bă-'jè-jĭ·ge-'dž 'géy-wo 'nyàn-chū·láy.*
4. *Jè·li tày-'àn, wŏ-'kàn-bu·chū·láy.*
5. *Wŏ-'kàn-bu·chū·láy.*
6. *'Nà·me wŏ-'nyàn-bu·chū.*
7. *Hĕn-'lyàng; wŏ-kàn-de·'jyàn, kĕ·shr háy-'kàn-bu·chū 'shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'Jūng·gwo-dž.*
8. *'Bú·yàw 'nyàn-de 'nà·me-yàng 'kwày.*

h. Please read out these few characters for me.

i. Don't read so fast.

9. *Shr̀-'Jūng·gwo-dž-ma?*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY?

§5. REVIEW BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE.

## SECTION C: BASIC SENTENCES

### §1. BASIC SENTENCES (GROUP II).

OLD JĒW IS HELPING ROSS FIX UP HIS ROOM.

**Record 18B, after spiral.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| LǍW JĒW: | |
| you (polite form) | *'nín* |
| Mr. Ross, I've brought your luggage. | *'Lwó-shyān·sheng, nín·de-'shíng·li 'ná·láy·le.* |
| MR. ROSS: | |
| bedding | *'pū·gay* |
| bed | *'chwáng* |
| Put the bedding on the bed. | *Bă-'pū·gay 'gē·dzày-'chwáng-shang.* |
| trunk *or* suitcase | *'shyāng·dz* |
| Put the luggage on the floor. | *Bă-'shyāng·dz gē·dzày-'dì-shang.* |
| LǍW JĒW: | |
| to break open | *'dă·kāy* |
| to spread out | *'pū·hăw* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Shall I unpack your bedding and make the bed for you? | *Wó-gĕy-'nín bă-'pū·gay 'dă·kāy, 'pū·hăw·le, 'hăw-bu·hăw?* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| OK. | *'Hăw.* |
| clothes | *'yī·shang* |
| measure for some clothing (that is, certain types) | *'jyàn* |
| to wash | *'shĭ* |
| I have some clothes that need washing. | *Wó-yéw-'jĭ·jyàn-'yī·shang yàw-'shĭ.* |

**Record 19A, beginning.**

Lăw Jĕw:

| | |
|---|---|
| paper | *'jr̆* |
| Take the number of pieces there are in all, | *Yí·'gùng-'dwō·shăw-'jyàn-'yī·shang,* |
| and write it down on a piece of paper. | *'shyĕ·dzay-yì·jāng-'jr̆-shang.* |
| I'll get Jàw, the maid, to wash them for you. | *Wŏ-jyàw-'Jàw-Mā 'gĕy-nín 'shĭ.* |
| a set of | *'tàw* |
| to hang up | *'gwà* |
| I'll hang up these suits of clothes on the wall for you. | *'Jè-jĭ·'tàw-'yī·shang wó-'gĕy-nín 'gwà·dzày-'chyáng-shang.* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| to dry-clean | *'gān·shĭ* |
| This suit [of foreign clothes] needs to be dry-cleaned. | *Jè·tàw-'wày·gwo-'yī·shang yàw-'gān·shĭ.* |

Lăw Jĕw:

| | |
|---|---|
| to send | *'sùng* |
| laundry | *shĭ·yī·'dyàn* |
| I'll send it to the laundry to be cleaned for you. | *Wó-'gĕy-nín 'sùng·dàw-shĭ·yī·'dyàn-chywù 'shĭ.* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| When will they be brought back? | *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'ná·hwey·lay?* |

Lăw Jĕw:

| | |
|---|---|
| Right now the laundry is very busy. | *Shyàn·'dzày shĭ·yī·'dyàn hĕn-'máng.* |
| You have to wait three or four days before you can get them back. | *Yàw-dĕng 'sān·sz̀·tyān tsáy-néng-'ná·hwéy·láy.* |

(Mr. Wáng comes in)

Mr. Wáng:

| | |
|---|---|
| Is everything fixed up all right? | *'Dēw-'shēw·shr-'hăw-le-ma?* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| Everything's OK. | *'Hăw·le.* |
| as compared with | *'bĭ* |
| It's much better here than at the hotel. | *'Jè·li bĭ-fàn·'dyàn 'hăw-de 'dwō.* |
| measure for books | *'bĕn* |
| Say, where'll I put these books? | *Nĭ-shwō, 'jè-jí·bĕn-'shū dzĕm·me-'gē-ne?* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | MR. WÁNG: |
| Put them on the table. | *'Gē·dzày 'jwō·dz-shang-ba.* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| a small group of | *'shyē* |
| Where'll I hang those pictures? | *Nà·shyē-'hwàr dzěm·me-'gwà-ne?* |
| | MR. WÁNG: |
| Have Old Jēw hang them on the wall for you. | *Jyàw-Lǎw-'Jēw géy-ni 'gwà·dzay-'chyáng-shang.* |
| | MR. ROSS: |
| There are already Chinese pictures on the wall. | *'Chyáng-shang yǐ·'jīng-yěw-'Jūng·gwo-'hwàr-le.* |

§2. HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION. Review the Practices on sequences of three syllables with different combinations of tones.

**Record 2A, after second spiral.**

PRACTICE 27. (second syllable no tone, third syllable first or second tone)

| | |
|---|---|
| *'Jūng·gwo-'bīng* | 'Chinese soldiers' |
| *'Dé·gwo-'bīng* | 'German soldiers' |
| *'Měy·gwo-'bīng* | 'American soldiers' |
| *'Fà·gwo-'bīng* | 'French soldiers' |
| *'Jūng·gwo-'rén* | 'Chinese people' |
| *'Dé·gwo-'rén* | 'German people' |
| *'Měy·gwo-'rén* | 'American people' |
| *'Fà·gwo-'rén* | 'French people' |

**Record 2A, after third spiral.**

PRACTICE 28. (same with third or fourth tone on last syllable)

| | |
|---|---|
| *'Jūng·gwo-*'bǐ* | 'Chinese pens' |
| *'Dé·gwo-*'bǐ* | 'German pens' |
| *'Měy·gwo-*'bǐ* | 'American pens' |
| *'Fà·gwo-*'bǐ* | 'French pens' |
| *'Jūng·gwo-'hwà* | 'Chinese language' |
| *'Dé·gwo-'hwà* | 'German language' |
| *'Měy·gwo-'hwà* | 'American language' |
| *'Fà·gwo-'hwà* | 'French language' |

**Record 2A, after fourth spiral.**

PRACTICE 29. (last syllable no tone; fourth and second on first syllable)

| | |
|---|---|
| *dzày-'Jūng·gwo* | 'in China' |
| *dzày-'Dé·gwo* | 'in Germany' |
| *dzày-'Měy·gwo* | 'in the United States' |
| *dzày-'Fà·gwo* | 'in France' |
| *'tsúng-'Jūng·gwo* | 'from China' |
| *tsúng-'Dé·gwo* | 'from Germany' |
| *tsúng-'Měy·gwo* | 'from the United States' |
| *tsúng-'Fà·gwo* | 'from France' |

**Record 2A, after last spiral.**

PRACTICE 30. (same, with first and third tone on first syllable)

| | |
|---|---|
| *gēn-'Jūng·gwo* | 'with China' |
| *gēn-'Dé·gwo* | 'with Germany' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *gēn-'Měy·gwo* | 'with the United States' |
| *gēn-'Fà·gwo* | 'with France' |
| *gěy-'Jūng·gwo* | 'for China' |
| *gěy-'Dé·gwo* | 'for Germany' |
| *géy-'Měy·gwo* | 'for the United States' |
| *gěy-'Fà·gwo* | 'for France' |

This is the last time that any special mention will be made of pronunciation in this course. You can still refer to any of these thirty practices whenever you feel the need to, and if you feel that you are still weak on certain points, then that is the thing to do. Your practicing of pronunciation, however, is by no means over. Every group of Basic Sentences that you go through with the records or Guide, and every Listening In, is a guided session in pronunciation; you must *never* let down your efforts to imitate accurately. And every other minute of your contact with the course, even if you are just reading the Word-Studies to yourself, or going through a What Would You Say?, is a chance to practice pronunciation. There is no such thing as too much drill on pronunciation. Even when you are sure that you are good, and find it pretty easy, keep trying.

§3. PRACTICE ON THE BASIC SENTENCES.

### SECTION D: WORD STUDY

§1. REVIEW THE BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE ENGLISH.

§2. WORD-STUDY.

POINT 1. COMPOUNDS.

*'yī·shang* 'clothing'; originally *yī* meant upper garments, and *shāng* meant pants or skirts; now the compound is the simple word for clothing in general. *yī* is used in other compounds also: *shàng·'yī* 'coat', with *shàng* 'upper side'; *dà·'yī* 'greatcoat'—'overcoat', with *dà* 'big'; *lǐ·'yī* 'an undergarment', with *lǐ* 'inside'.

*shǐ·yī·'dyàn* 'laundry'—'wash clothes store'. The last syllable occurs in *fàn·'dyàn* 'hotel'. *Dyàn* is one of the terms used referring to a place where you buy something; there are others, such as *'gwǎn·dz* 'shop'.

*'pū·gay* 'bedding.' *Pū* means 'to smooth, to lay out': a mattress is a *'pū·de-dūng·shi* 'a thing that you spread out'. *Pū-'chwáng* 'to smooth out a bed' means to make a bed. The second part of *'pū·gay* is *gày*, which means 'to cover': *'gày·shàng* (RC) 'to cover something', as in *bǎ-'hé·dz 'gày·shang* 'cover the box' or *yùng-'shū bǎ-'hé·dz 'gày·shang* 'cover the box with this book.' A blanket is considered to be a *'gày·de-dūng·shi* 'a thing you cover something else with', since it goes above the mattress. Since the mattress and the blanket are the essential items of Chinese bedclothing, and since one is a *'pū·de-dūng·shi*, the other a *'gày·de-dūng·shi*, the compound *'pū·gay* for 'bedding' is not difficult to understand. *Gày·dz* in a noun, meaning the cover of a trunk or coffin; for smaller objects the word for 'cover' is *gàr*: *hé·dz-'gàr* 'box cover', *shyāng·dz-'gàr* 'suitcase-cover'—the part that folds back, the lid.

*gān·'shǐ* 'to dry-clean', or the noun 'dry-cleaning'. You know both parts: the first is 'dry', the second is 'to wash, clean.'

Point 2. *Nín.* When Lǎw Jēw calls Mr. Ross *nín* instead of *nǐ*, he marks himself as having come from Peiping. *Nín* is there the polite form of address to one person, as when a student addresses his teacher, a child his parents, or a salesman his customers, or anyone a stranger. Elsewhere in China there are various other polite forms: you may hear *'nǐ-jyā*, which is a contraction for *'ní-lǎw-rén-jyā* 'your old-age-ship'; this is natural when you remember that the Chinese used to respect age more than anything else. You yourself can get along using *'shyān·sheng*, or occasionally *nín*, and whenever possible not using any pronoun at all. The plural *'nín·men* is not used; just say *'nǐ·men*.

Point 3. Some New Measures. The measure *jyàn* is used with *'yī·shang* to mean 'one piece of clothing', such as a coat, a pair of pants (regarded as one thing, not two, in Chinese), a shirt. It is used with some of the words naming specific articles of clothing, which you will learn later. It is also used with *shr̀* 'business, affairs, stuff to do', to mean 'a matter, an affair': *Ní-bǎ-'jè·jyàn-shr̀ gěy-'tā 'dzwò.* 'Turn this matter over to him to do.'

The measure *tàw* used with *'yī·shang* means 'a suit of clothes'; with other nouns it means 'a set' of some established kind. Thus a number of tables and chairs which match is called *yí·tàw-jwō·'yǐ* 'a set of furniture' (*'jwō(·dz)* plus *'yǐ(·dz)* gives *'jwō·yǐ*, just as *'fù(·chin)* plus *'mǔ(·chin)* gives *'fù·mǔ*). The Chinese used to have a suit of clothes appropriate to each season, each being called *yí·tàw-'yī·shang*; now a suit of western-style clothes is called by this term.

The measure *běn* is used with *shū* 'book' to mean 'one book' or 'one volume'. Used with *jř* it means 'a pad of paper'. The word *'běn·dz* is used for certain types of books or bound papers, such as a telephone book, or *jŕ-'běn·dz*, which also means 'a pad of paper'.

The measure *tyān* means 'day', as you know. As a noun, the same word means 'sky', in contrast to *dì* 'earth, ground, floor'. Thus *'tyān-shàng* means 'in the sky' ('sky's upper-part'); *tyān-'shyà* means 'under the sky', therefore the entire universe, everything that exists. *'Dì-shàng* 'on the ground' and *'dì-shyà* 'under the ground' are both used, however, to refer to the ground itself, the choice being determined by the nature of the motion that lands an object on the ground. The Chinese use *tyān* in the derived sense of 'heaven' just as we do, saying even *'Tyān jr̄·dàw!* 'Heaven (only) knows!'

The measure *shyē* is used to mean a small group of anything. Sometimes it is used as a numeral instead of a measure, another measure following, as in the second example following: *'jè·shyē-rén* 'these (few) men'; *'jè-shyē·tàw-'yī·shang* 'these (few) suits of clothes.'

Point 4. *Bǐ.* The word *bǐ* means 'rather than' or 'as compared with':

*'Jè·li bǐ-fàn·'dyàn 'hǎw.* 'Here as-compared-with the hotel is good.'—therefore, 'It is better here than at the hotel.'

*'Jè·ge-bīng bǐ-'nà·ge 'dà.* 'This soldier as compared with that one is old.'—'This soldier is older than that one.'

*Nĭ-'dzĕw-de bĭ-wó-'dzĕw-de 'kwày.* 'The way you walk as compared with the way I walk is fast.'—'You walk faster than I do.'

*'Jè·li bĭ-fàn·'dyàn 'hăw-de 'dwō.* Here take the *de* as added to everything that goes before it, meaning then, up through *de*, 'the degree to which it is better here than at the hotel.' Then the *dwō* added to the end makes the whole sentence mean 'The degree to which it is better here than at the hotel is much.'—that is, 'It is much better here than at the hotel.'

*Bĭ* can also be used as a verb meaning 'to compare', in a sentence like the following:

*'Jè·li gēn-fàn·'dyàn dzĕm·me-'bĭ-ne?* 'How can this place be compared with the hotel!?'

Point 5. Resultative Compounds.

*'pū·hăw* 'to spread a thing out in such a way that it is fixed up satisfactorily'—'to make a bed right, to fix bedding right.' *'Pū-de·hăw, 'pū-bu·hăw.*

*'dă·kāy* 'to strike a thing open, to open a thing'; *'dă-de·kāy, 'dă-bu·kāy. Dă* means basically 'to strike, hit', but is used in a great many derived meanings also, in particular groups of words. Opening certain things uses this word: *'dă·kāy 'chwāng·hu* 'to open a window', if the window is of the variety that has hinges at the top so that you push the lower part out; *'dă·kāy-'shū* 'to open a book'; *'dă·kāy-yān·'bāw* 'to open a pack of cigarettes.' If you definitely have to pull at a thing, such as a drawer, the word used is *'lā·kāy* 'to pull open'; if you have to push, as with doors sometimes, the word is *'twēy·kāy* 'to push open'.

*Shyĕ* 'is to write, to draw', as in *shyĕ-'dz̀* 'to write words', especially Chinese characters. *'Shyĕ·dzày* 'to write something on': *'shyĕ·dzày-yì·jāng-'jr̆-shang* 'to write on a piece of paper'.

*Gwà* 'to hang something' (not a person, for which a different word is used), as in *gwà-'yī·shang* 'to hang clothes up'. *Gwà·dzày* 'to hang something on', as in *'gwà·dzày-'chyáng-shang* 'to hang something on the wall'. *'Gwà·shàng* (RC) 'to hang something up'; *'gwà-chĭ(·láy)* 'to hang something up.'

*Gē* 'to arrange something', like furniture in a room or silverware on a table: *'Jè·shyē-'dūng·shi dzĕm·me-'gē-ne?* 'How'll I arrange these things?' You are already familiar with the compounds that have this as first element: *'gē·dzày* 'to put something on or in', *'gē·shyà* (RC) 'to put something down.'

*Sùng* 'to send or give something': *wŏ-'sùng-nĭ yì·bĕn-'shū* 'I'll send you a book,' or 'I'll give you a book.' Compounds: *'sùng·dàw* (RC) 'to send something to', as in *bă-'yī·shang 'sùng·dàw-shĭ·yī·'dyàn-chywù* 'take the clothes and send them to the laundry.'

*Shĭ* 'to wash, clean'; with postverb *hăw*: *'shí·hăw* (RC) 'to wash something until it is all right (that is, clean)'; *'shĭ-de·hăw, 'shĭ-bu·hăw* 'to be able (unable) to wash something until it is clean'.

Point 6. Use of *le* with Descriptive Words. Sometimes the presence or absence of *le* makes a difference in the meaning of a descriptive word which seems quite marked to us, even though within the operations of the Chinese language it is not particularly out of the ordinary. Here are some examples:

'*Nà·ge-dūng·shi 'hǎw.* 'That thing is good.'

'*Nà·ge-rén 'hǎw·le.* 'That man has recovered, is well (again).' The force of the *le* is to mean that the man *has started* to be OK again. This, as you know, is the regular expression for getting better after an illness.

'*Nà·ge-dūng·shi 'hwày.* 'That thing is bad.'

'*Nà·ge-'jūng 'hwày·le.* 'That clock (has become) out-of-order.', therefore, 'That clock is broken.'—in the sense of not running, not in the sense of broken up into pieces.

'*Wū·dz hěn-'lyàng.* 'The room is very bright.'

'*Tyān 'lyàng·le.* 'The day (has gotten) light.'

The opposites of these statements show that the type without *le* is made negative by using *bū*, the type with *le* by dropping the *le* and putting in *méy*:

'*Nà·ge-dūng·shi 'bù-hǎw.* 'That thing isn't good.'

'*Nà·ge-dūng·shi bú-'hwày.* 'That thing isn't bad.'

'*Wū·dz bú-'lyàng.* 'The room isn't light.'

'*Nà·ge-rén háy-'méy-hǎw.* 'That man hasn't gotten well yet'.

'*Nà·ge-'jūng méy-'hwày.* 'That clock isn't broken.'—it is still running all right.

'*Tyān háy-méy-'lyàng.* 'The day hasn't gotten light yet.'—it is still dark.

POINT 7. DESCRIPTIVE WORDS OF LIMITED USE. The ordinary descriptive word, like *hǎw* 'OK', has three main uses:

(1) '*Rén 'hǎw.* 'The man is all right.'
(2) '*Méy·yǒw 'hǎw-rén.* 'There are no good men.'
(3) '*Méy·yǒw 'hǎw·de.* 'There are no good ones.'

In the first use, the descriptive word is put in the second part of the sentence and means '*is* good, *are* good, *were* good, *was* good', and so forth, depending of course on what the basic meaning of the word is. In the second use, the descriptive word is put before a noun and means just 'good' (or 'bad' or 'black' and so forth), without the 'is' idea. In the third use a *de* is added and the meaning is 'good things'. 'good people', 'good ones'—the form with the *de* added is itself a noun.

Many descriptive words can also be used as adverbs. For instance, *hǎw* is used as an adverb (a word which modifies or describes a verb or another adverb) in the following expressions:

(4) '*Háw-jyěw-méy-'jyàn!* 'Haven't seen you for a long time!', where *hǎw* is used to make the meaning of *jyěw* 'for a long time', stronger.

'*Nà·ge-tsày hǎw-'chr̄.* 'That food is good to eat' is a free translation which gets the meaning of the whole sentence over, but literally it means 'That food well is-eaten.'—that is, *hăw* is modifying the verb *chr̄* 'to eat'.

Now there are a few rather important descriptive words which do *not* have the first use given above. They may or may not have the last use—many otherwise ordinary descriptive words are not used as adverbs—but their peculiarity is that they are not used in the way first given above. Here are some cases which you have already had:

*nán-* 'male' (for humans): *'nán·de* 'male human being'; but no form used to mean '*is* male, *are* male, *was* male, *were* male.'

*nywŭ-* 'female' (for humans): *'nywŭ·de* 'female human being'; but no form used to mean '*is* female, *are* female,' and so on.

*lăw-* 'old, long-standing', only in uses (2) and (4), or with *méy* or *le*, 'to get old', a verb (see Point 6).

*jēn-* 'true, truly', uses (2) and (4); *'jēn·de* in use (3).

You will have others like these later on.

Point 8. *Dz* and *R*. It cannot possibly have escaped you that many nouns end in *dz*: *'jwō·dz* 'table', *'yĭ·dz* 'chair', *'ywán·dz* 'garden', *'wū·dz* 'room', *'fáng·dz* 'house', *'ér·dz* 'son', *'gwăn·dz* 'shop', *'hé·dz* 'box', and so on. If you are wondering what the *dz* means, the answer is very simple: it means that the word which ends with it *is a noun*, but it means nothing else whatsoever. The specific meaning of the word is carried by the first part, and the first parts are in almost every case found in compounds with the *dz* gone—though sometimes the form with the *dz* is found in compounds also. Thus you have already had some of the above first-parts in other compounds: *'jwō·yĭ* 'tables and chairs', *dyàn·yĭng·'ywàn* 'movie theater', *'wū·mén* 'room door', *'fáng·mén* 'house door, house-gate', *'nywŭ·ér* 'daughter', *hé* (measure) 'boxful'. Except for the fact that *dz* always marks a word as being a noun (the reverse, of course, is not true; there are many nouns which do *not* end in *dz*), it can be compared to such an English element as *-er*, which recurs at the end of many English words such as *butter*, *father*, *mother*, *brother*, *sister*, *matter*, *leather*, *finger*, and so on, but carries no meaning in itself.

There is another important ending, which may be written as *r*. This is more tricky, since it does not stand as a second distinct syllable, but is fused right on to the syllable that precedes it. This ending is used more in Peiping and nearby than anywhere else. Not every word ending in *r* is a noun—witness *èr* 'two'—but many are, and it is true that *no verb* ends in *r*.

You need not try to remember the rule for the addition of *r* to a syllable that is about to be given. However, if you will at least read it through and notice the examples, you will be better equipped to understand someone from Peiping or nearby when he uses it more often than you would otherwise hear it. There is no need for you to try to use it yourself except whan a word ending in *r* is given to you in the Basic Sentences.

Syllables ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *u*, *w*, or *ng* (except *ing*) simply tack the *r* on at the end:

*hwà* 'to paint'; *hwàr* 'a painting, picture'

*dà-'hé·dz* 'big box'; *shyăw-'hér* 'small box'
*dà-'shù* 'big tree'; *shyăw-'shùr* 'small tree'
*pàw* 'to soak'; *pàwr* 'a bubble-shaped thing'
*dà-'fáng·dz* 'big house'; *shyăw-'fángr* 'small house'

Syllables ending in *o* change that to *e* and add the *r* (you will remember that *o* is the letter used for a vowel usually written *e*, when it occurs at the end of a syllable after *w*, because of the particular 'color' the vowel has in that position):

*yáng·'hwŏ* and *yáng·'hwĕr* 'matches'

Syllables ending in *n* or in *y* drop the *n* or *y* when *r* is added:

*sān* 'three'; *sār* 'the third child born in a family'
*dà-'bĕn·dz* 'large volume'; *shyáw-'bĕr* 'small volume'
*gày* 'to cover'; *hé·dz-'gàr* 'box lid'

Syllables ending in *-ing* keep the *ng*, but change the *i* to *ye*, when *r* is added:

*'míng·tyan* and *myéngr·ge* 'tomorrow'

When a word ending in *r* is a noun, the effect is in general to make it refer to a relatively small thing. This is by no means absolute, but you couldn't say *dà-'shùr* for 'big tree', while *shyăw-'shùr* for 'little tree' is quite ordinary.

## §3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

### 1.

In what way do you want your room cleaned up?

*Nĭ-shyáng-bă-'wū·dz 'dzĕm·me-yàng 'shēw·shr-ne?*

a. First make the bed.
b. Hang up the clothes.
c. Take the foreign clothes out to be dry-cleaned.
d. Take away the several pieces of clothing that should be washed.
e. Let the maid wash them.
f. Wait until they are dry, then bring them right back.
g. These clothes which she washed are not clean.
h. Take them away and let her wash them again.

1. *Dĕng-'gān·le, jyèw-'ná·hwéy·láy.*
2. *Shyān-bă-'chwáng 'pū·hăw-le.*
3. *Bă-dĕy-'shĭ-de-jĭ·jyàn-'yī·shang 'ná·chywù.*
4. *Tā-'shĭ-de-jè·jyàn-'yī·shang bù-'gān·jìng.*
5. *Bă-'yī·shang 'gwà·chĭ·láy.*
6. *Jyàw-lăw-'mā·dz 'shĭ.*
7. *'Ná·chywù 'jyàw-tā 'dzày-shĭ.*
8. *Bă-'wày·gwo-'yī-shang 'ná·chū·chywù 'gān·shĭ.*

### 2.

a. Open the suitcase.
b. Open the box.
c. Open the door.
d. Push the window open.
e. Pull the window open.
f. The wind has blown open the door.
g. This bed can't be made.
h. I can't make this bed (two ways).
i. Can this clock be fixed?
j. I myself can't fix it.

1. *Jè·ge-'jūng 'shyēw·li-de·'hăw-ma?*
2. *Jè·jāng-'jwō·dz-shang-de-dūng·shi 'shēw·shr-de·'gān·jìng-ma?*
3. *Jè·jāng-'jwō·dz-shang-de-'dūng·shi 'shēw·shr-de 'hăw-ma?*
4. *Bă-'hé·dz 'kāy·kāy.*
5. *Bă-'chwāng·hu 'twēy·kāy.*
6. *'Fēng bă-'mén 'chwēy-*

**k.** Can the things on this table be straightened out (two ways)?
l. Are the things on this table straightened out all right (two ways)?

*käy-le.*
7. *Wǒ-'pū-bu·hǎw jè·ge-'chwáng.*
8. *Jè·jāng-'jwō·dz-shang-de-'dūng·shi 'shēw·shr-de·'hǎw-ma?*
9. *Jè·jāng-'jwō·dz-shang-de-'dūng·shi 'shēw·shr-de 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*
10. *Bǎ-'shyāng·dz 'dǎ·kāy.*
11. *Bǎ-'mén 'kāy·kāy.*
12. *Bǎ-'chwāng·hu 'lā·kāy.*
13. *'Jè·ge-'chwáng 'pū-bu·hǎw.*
14. *'Jè·ge-chwáng wǒ-'pū-bu·hǎw.*
15. *Wǒ-dž·'jǐ 'shyēw·li-bu·'hǎw.*

### 3.

What are you doing?
a. Nothing. (two ways)
b. I'm writing.
c. I'm writing on paper.
d. I'm writing on a sheet of paper.
e. Cleaning up the room.
f. Changing the light bulb.
g. Changing clothes.

*Dzwò-'shém·me-ne?*
1. *Shyě-'dž-ne.*
2. *Jyāw-'shywé·sheng shyě-'dž-ne.*
3. *Nǐ-'kàn! Tā-dzày-shù-'chyán·byan 'dzwò·je-ne.*
4. *'Méy·yew-shř.*
5. *Hwàn-'yī·shang-ne.*

h. Watching the students write.
i. Teaching the students to write.
j. Looking for my youngest child.
k. Looking for my grandfather.
l. I've looked high and low and can't find him.
m. Look! He's sitting in front of the tree.
n. I think he's reading a book.
o. No matter how I look I I can't find him.

6. *Jáw-wó-dzǔ·'fù.*
7. *'Dzěm·me-'jǎw yě-'jǎw-bu·'jáw.*
8. *'Shēw·shr-'wū·dz-ne.*
9. *Dzày-'jř-shang shyě-'dž-ne.*
10. *Kàn-'shywé·sheng shyě-'dž-ne.*
11. *Hwàn-dyàn-dēng-'pàwr-ne.*
12. *Wó-shyǎng tā-kàn-'shū-ne.*
13. *Dzày-yì·jāng-'jř-shang shyě-'dž-ne.*
14. *'Méy-dzwò-shém·me.*
15. *Jáw-wó-díng-'shyǎw-de-'háy·dz.*
16. *'Jǎw·láy-'jǎw·chywù 'jǎw-bu·jáw.*

### 4.

Do you know how to use the word "bǐ" which you learned yesterday?
a. This table is larger than that.
b. This child is older than that.
c. This person is a few years older than that one.

*Nǐ-'hwèy-yùng 'dzwó·tyan-'shywé-de nà·ge-'bǐ-dž-ma?*
1. *'Tā-dzwò-de-shř bǐ-'shém·me-rén dēw-'dwō.*
2. *'Tā·de-'chyán bǐ-'wǒ·de 'dwō.*
3. *'Jè·ge-lǎw-'mā·dz bǐ-'nà·ge-lǎw-'mā·dz shǐ-*

d. Roosevelt is a few years younger than Churchill.
e. Roosevelt is eight years younger than Churchill.
f. To wash the floor uses more water than to wash the windows.
g. This book is smaller than that.
h. There are more students than teachers.
i. The teachers know more than the students.
j. This year's students are fewer than last year's.
k. He eats more than I do. (two ways)
l. He does more work than anyone. (two ways)
m. Airplanes are faster than trains.
n. To go by car is faster than to walk.
o. His money is more than mine.
p. He has more money than I.
q. He speaks better French than I.
r. This maid washes clothes cleaner than that one.
s. This man does better work than that one.
t. He can write better-looking characters than I can.
u. China is further from the United States than from England. (two ways)
v. China is further from the United States than England is. (two ways)
w. These soldiers are more useful than those.
x. When war is on, these soldiers are much more useful than those.

*yī·shang shǐ-de 'gān·jing.*
4. *'Jūng·gwo lí-'Měy·gwo bǐ-'Jūng·gwo lí-'Yīng·gwo 'ywǎn.*
5. *'Jūng·gwo bǐ-'Yīng·gwo lí-'Měy·gwo lí-de ywǎn.*
6. *'Jè·jāng-'jwō·dz bǐ-'nà·jāng 'dà.*
7. *'Roosevelt bǐ-'Churchill 'shyáw jǐ·'swèy.*
8. *'Shywé·sheng bǐ-'shyān·sheng 'dwō.*
9. *'Tā-bí-wǒ 'chr̄-de 'dwō.*
10. *Fēy·'jī bí-hwǒ-'chē 'kwày.*
11. *'Tā-bǐ-'wó yěw-'chyán.*
12. *'Jè·ge-rén bǐ-'nà·ge-rén dzwò-'shr̀ dzwò-de 'hǎw.*
13. *'Jūng·gwo lí-'Méy·gwo bǐ-'Yīng·gwo lí-de 'ywǎn.*
14. *'Jè·shyē-'bīng bǐ-'nà·shyē yěw-'yùng.*
15. *'Jè·ge-'háy·dz bǐ-'nà·ge 'dà.*
16. *'Roosevelt bǐ-'Churchill 'shyǎw 'bā·swěy.*
17. *'Shyān·sheng bǐ-'shywé·sheng 'jr̄·dàw-de 'dwō.*
18. *Tā-'chr̄-de 'bí-wǒ 'dwō.*
19. *Dzwò-'chē-chywù bí-'dzěw·je 'kwày.*
20. *Tā-'bí-wó shyě-'dz̆ shyě-de hǎw-'kàn.*
21. *'Jūng·gwo lí-'Měy·gwo bǐ-'Yīng·gwo lí-'Měy·gwo 'ywǎn.*
22. *Dǎ-'jàng-de shŕ·hew, 'jè·shyē-'bīng bǐ-'nà·shyē yěw-'yùng-de 'dwō.*
23. *'Jè·ge-rén bǐ-'nà·ge 'da jǐ·'swèy.*
24. *Shǐ-'dì bí-shǐ-'chwāng·hu yùng-de-'shwěy 'dwō.*
25. *'Jè·běn-'shū bǐ-'nà·běn 'shyǎw.*
26. *'Jīn·nyan 'shywé·sheng bǐ-'chywù·nyan 'shǎw.*
27. *'Tā-dzwò-de-shr̀ bǐ-'shwéy dēw-'dwō.*
28. *Tā-'bí-wǒ 'hwèy-shwō-'Fà·gwo-hwà.*

§4. What Did You Say?

§5. Review Basic Sentences Covering the Chinese

## SECTION E: LISTENING IN

§1. Word-Study Check-Up.

§2. Listening In.

Conversation 1. Mr. Ross puts Old Jēw to work.

**Record 19B, beginning.**

Ross: *Jè·ge-dyàn-'dēng 'yèw-'hwày·le.*
*Dzĕm·me-'kăy yĕ-bú-'lyàng.*

Jēw: *'Bú·shr̀-'hwàn·le-yí·ge-dyàn-dēng-'pàwr-ma?*
*Dzĕm·me-'yèw-bú-'lyàng-le-ne?*

Ross: *Nĭ-'hwèy-'shyēw·li-ma?*

Jēw: *Bú-'hwèy.*
*Déng wŏ-'chywù 'jyàw-yí·ge-'shyēw·li-dyàn-'dēng-de-láy.*

Ross: *Déy-'dzăw-'chywù.*
*Dàw·le-'wăn·shang jyèw-'wăn·le.*

Jēw: *'Shr̀; wŏ-jyèw-'chywù.*
*Nín-'háy-yĕw-shém·me-'shr̀?*

Ross: *Dàw-shĭ·yī·'dyàn-chywù 'kàn-yi·kàn, nà-'gān·shĭ·de-'yī·shang shí·'hăw·le 'méy·yew.*
*Shĭ-'yí·tàw-'yī·shang yàw-'dwō·shăw-chyán?*

Jēw: *'Yí·kwày-'èr·máw-'wŭ.*

Ross: *'Jè shr̀-'wŭ·kwày-chyán.*
*Dzày-gĕy-wó măy-yì·bāw-'yān, yì·hé-yáng·'hwŏ.*

Jēw: *'Nín chēw-'shém·me-yān?*

Ross: *'Măy-de·jáw 'Mĕy·gwo-'yān-ma?*

Jēw: *'Jè·li 'măy-bu·jáw.*
*Yàw-dàw-fàn·'dyàn tsáy-'măy-de·jáw.*

Ross: *'Nà '[illegible]·ywăn-le.*
*'Yĕw-méy·yew 'Yīng·gwo-yān?*

Jēw: *'Yĕw.*

Conversation 2. Jēw comes back with a pack of cigarettes and a box of matches, but no suit.

Jēw: *'Yān gēn-yáng·'hwĕr, yí·'gùng shr̀-'wŭ·máw-chyán.*
*'Jè-shr̀ 'sz̀·kwày-'wŭ·máw-chyán.*

Ross: *'Yī·shang-ne?*

Jēw: *Shĭ·yī·'dyàn·de-rén shwō, 'yī·shang 'háy-méy-'shí·hăw.*
*Dĕng-'míng·tyan 'shí·hăw·le 'sùng·lay.*

Ross: *'Hăw-ba.*
*Nĭ-jyàw-'Jàw-Mā shĭ-de-'yī·shang-ne?*

Jēw: *Háy-méy-'gān-ne.*
*'Jè-jĭ·tyān 'tyān·chi 'bù-hăw.*
*Shĭ·le-'yī·shang 'gān-de hĕn-'màn.*

Ross:* *Nĭ-jyàw-'Jàw-Mā gĕy-wó bă-'wū·dz shēw·shr-'gān·jing-le.*
*Bă-'dì 'săw-yi·săw.*
*Bă-'chwáng 'pū·'hăw-le.*
*Bă-'yĭ·dz, 'jwō·dz dēw-tsā-'gān·jing-le.*
*Bă-'yī·shang 'gwà·chi·lay.*

Jēw: *'Shr̀, wŏ-jyèw-'jyàw-tā láy.*
*'Háy-yĕw-'shr̀-ma?*

Ross: *'Yĕw; 'jè·ge-'yān wŏ-'chēw·gwo, 'bù-hăw-chēw.*
*'Yĕw-méy·yew bĭ-'jè·ge 'hăw-de-yān?*

Jēw: *'Yĕw.*

Ross: *'Néng-bu·néng chywù-'hwàn?*

Jēw: *'Néng; wó-gĕy-nín 'hwàn-chywù.*

Conversation 3. Mr. Ross visits Mr. Johnson and they decide to test their ability to speak Chinese.

---

* This word was accidentally omitted from the record.

176

**Record 20A, beginning.**

Johnson: '*Jīn·tyan wŏ·men yùng-'Jūng·gwo-hwà tán-'hwà,*
*'hăw-bu·hăw?*

Ross: *'Hăw; 'dēw-yùng-Jūng·gwo-'hwà.*
*Shwéy-shwō-yí·ge-'wày·gwo-dz̆, shwéy-jyèw-dĕy-*
*'ná·chū-'bàn·kway-'chyán-lay.*

Johnson: *Jè·ge-'chyán dzwò-shém·me-'yùng-ne?*

Ross: '*Jè·me-yàng-ba:*
*Wŏ·men 'yùng-jè·ge-'chyán chywù-chr̄-'fàn, 'hăw-bu·hăw?*

Johnson: *'Hăw.*
*'Nĭ·de-jè·tàw-'yī·shang bù-'gān·jing.*
*Dĕy-'ná·chū·chywù 'shĭ-yi·shĭ.*

Ross: *'Ná·dàw-shém·me-'dì·fang-chywù 'shĭ?*

Johnson: '*Jè·li yéw-shĭ·yī·'dyàn-ma?*

Ross: '*Yĕw; 'lí·je hén-'ywăn.*

Johnson: *Lí-'shém·me-dì·fang 'ywăn?*

Ross: *Lí-'nĭ-'jù-de-dì·fang ywăn.*

Johnson: *Yĕw-'dwō-ywăn?*

Ross: *Two miles.*

Johnson: *Ah! That's one dollar!*

Ross: *'Dwèy·le.*
*Kĕ·shr 'nĭ shwō·le 'wŭ·ge-'wày·gwo-dz̆.*
*Dĕy-'ná·chū-lyăng·kwày-'wŭ-láy.*

Johnson: *Hāy!*

Conversation 4. They continue talking.

Ross: *'Nà·jāng-'hwàr shr̀-shwéy-'hwà-de?*

Johnson: *Nĭ-'shwō-de shr̀-'nă-yì·jāng?*

Ross: *'Nà·jāng 'gwà·dzày-'chyáng-shang-de.*

Johnson: *'Nà-shr̀-wŏ·de-'péng·yew-'hwà-de.*
*Tā-'hwà-de hén-'hăw.*
*Shr̀ modernistic school.*

Ross: *'Ná-yí·kwày-'chyán-láy!*

Johnson: *Wèy-'shém·me-ne?*

Ross: *Nĭ-'shwō·le 'modernistic', háy-'shwō·le 'school'.*
*'Nà-bú·shr-'lyăng·ge-'wày·gwo-'dz̆-ma?*

Johnson: *'Ní-yĕ-'shwō·le 'nà-'lyăng·ge-'dz̆-le.*
*Ní-'yé-dĕy-'ná·chu-yí·kwày-'chyán-láy.*

Ross: '*Swàn-yi·swàn, yí·'gùng shr̀-'dwō·shăw-chyán-le?*

Johnson: *Yí·'gùng-shr̀ wŭ·kwày-'wŭ.*

Ross: *Shyàn·'dzày chywù-chr̄-'fàn-ba.*
*Wŏ-'méy·yew-'chyán-le.*

Johnson: '*Chyán háy-'tày-shăw.*

Ross: *Wŭ·kwày-'wŭ háy-'shăw-ma?*
*Ní-'shyăng-chr̄-'shém·me?*

Johnson: *Ha-ha!*
'*Bú·shr̀-'chyán shăw.*
*Shr̀-'nĭ-'ná·chū·láy-de-chyán bí-'wŏ-ná-de 'shăw.*

Ross: '*Shr̀-ma?*
*Wŏ-'swàn-yi·swàn.*
*'Nĭ-'ná·chū·lay-de shr̀-'sān·kwày-'wŭ.*
*'Dwèy·le. Nĭ-'bí-wŏ 'dwō-'ná·chū-yí·kwày-'wŭ-láy.*

Johnson: '*Bú·yàw-'swàn-le. 'Dzĕw-ba!*

## SECTION F: CONVERSATION

§1. Vocabulary Check Up.

§2. Carrying on Conversation.

# UNIT X

## MǍY-'DŪNG·SHI-CHYWǓ

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

(Group I)

After the first time through these sentences, if you still feel the need for practice on certain points of pronunciation, turn back to any of the Hints on Pronunciation you want to and go through them. If not, come back immediately and go through the Basic Sentences some more.

Mr. Wáng and Mr. Ross are talking.

**Record 20B, beginning.**

| English Equivalents | Aids to Listening |
|---|---|
| Mr. Wáng: | |
| one street | *yì·tyáw-'jyē* |
| I'm going downtown to buy some things. (literally, 'onto the street') | *Wǒ-yàw dàw-'jyē-shang-chywù mǎy-'dūng·shi.* |
| Mr. Ross: | |
| Where downtown? (literally, 'to what street?') | *Dàw-'nǎ·tyáw-'jyē-chywù?* |
| Mr. Wáng: | |
| new | *'shīn* |
| mouth *or* intersection | *'kěw* |
| To New Street. | *Dàw-Shīn·jyē·'kěw-chywù.* |
| Mr. Ross: | |
| What're you going to buy there? | *Chywù-'mǎy-shém·me?* |
| Mr. Wáng: | |
| shoes | *'shyé* |
| I'm going to buy some shoes. | *Mǎy-'shyé-chywù.* |
| leather | *'pí* |
| There's a shoestore that's just been opened there. | *Yěw-yí·ge 'shīn-'kāy-de pí·shyé·'pù.* |
| others | *'byé·de* |
| cheap | *'pyán·yì* |
| They sell better and cheaper shoes than they sell anywhere else. | *Bǐ-'byé·de-shyé·pù-'mày-de-'shyé yèw-'hǎw yèw-'pyán·yi.* |
| Mr. Ross: | |
| to tell *or* inform | *'gàw·su* |
| Who told you so? | *Shwéy 'gàw·su-nǐ-de?* |
| Mr. Wáng: | |
| to be acquainted with | *'rèn·shr* |
| manager | *'jīng·lǐ* |

| | |
|---|---|
| I know the manager of the shoestore. | *Wǒ-'rèn·shr jè·ge-shyé·'pù-de-'jīng·lǐ.* |
| He told me. | *Shř-'tā 'gàw·su-wǒ-de.** |

MR. ROSS:

| | |
|---|---|
| right now | *'jèng·dzày* |
| a pair | *'shwāng* |
| I've just been thinking of buying a new pair of shoes too. | *Wǒ-'jèng·dzày 'shyáng-mǎy yì·shwāng-'shīn-shyé.* |
| to pass through *or* wear | *'chwān* |
| old | *'jyèw* |
| This old pair I'm wearing is going to wear out soon. | *Wǒ-'chwān-de-jè·shwāng-'jyèw-shyé 'yàw-'hwày·le.* |

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| together | *'yì·túng* |
| Let's go together. | *Wǒ·men-'yì·túng-'chywù-ba.* |

(THEY ENTER A SHOESTORE)

MANAGER:

| | |
|---|---|
| Welcome, Mr. Wáng! | *'Wáng-shyān·sheng láy·le!* |

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| Mr. Jīn! (literally, 'Jīn manager!') | *'Jīn-'jīng·lǐ!* |
| We want to buy some shoes. | *Wǒ·men 'yàw-mǎy-'shyé.* |

MANAGER:

| | |
|---|---|
| Please sit down. | *Chǐng-'dzwò.* |
| clerk | *'hwǒ·ji* |
| to try | *'shř-yi·shř* |
| I'll get the clerk to bring some shoes for you to try on. | *Wǒ-jyàw-'hwǒ·ji nà-'shyé-láy 'shř-yi·shř.* |

**Record 21A, beginning.**

CLERK:

| | |
|---|---|
| which number | *jǐ·'hàw* |
| What size do you wear? | *'Chwān-jǐ·'hàw·de?* |

MR. ROSS:

| | |
|---|---|
| In America I wear eight-and-a-halfs. | *Dzày-'Měy·gwo chwān-'bā·hàw-'bàn-de.* |

CLERK:

| | |
|---|---|
| Try these [illegible] pairs. | *'Chwān·shang 'jè-lyǎng·shwāng 'shř-yi·shř.* |

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| This isn't a pair. | *'Jè 'bú·shr-yì·'shwāng.* |
| one of a pair | *'jr̄* |
| This one is bigger than that. | *'Jè·jr̄ bǐ-'nà·jr̄ 'dà.* |

CLERK:

| | |
|---|---|
| How about this pair? | *'Jè·shwāng-ne?* |

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| to fit *or* be suitable | *hé·'shř* |
| This pair fits very well. | *'Jè·shwāng hěn-hé·'shř.* |

MR. ROSS:

| | |
|---|---|
| This pair of mine fits too. | *'Wǒ·de-jè·shwāng 'yě-hé·'shř.* |

---

* This may sound like *'gàw·sung-wǒ* to you. In former times the word for 'I', was pronounced *ngwǒ*, with the same sound at the beginning which occurs at the end of such a word as *Wáng*. The word is still so pronounced in the South. In the particular sequence *'gàw·su-wǒ* this *ng* sound is sometimes still pronounced by northerners too. You may put it in or leave it out as you like.

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

### §1. Review Basic Sentences Covering the English.

### §2. Word Study.

Point 1. Street Names. Chinese street names often have only historical meaning. For example, a street newly opened a hundred years ago and called *Shīn-'jyē* 'New Street' at that time, may still be called by the same name despite its age. The word *jyē-'kěw* or *jyē-'kěwr* 'street mouth' (compare the name of the city *'Hàn·kěw* 'Han-river mouth') means most specifically the place where one street runs into another. Thus *Shīn·jyē·'kěw* or . . .*-'kěwr* 'New-street mouth' would originally be the term for the place where New Street runs into some other street, or crosses it, but because this intersection is the business part of the vicinity and the most important part of New Street, the whole street may come to be known by the term originally applied only to the intersection. It seems that every large Chinese city has a *Shīn·jyē·'kěwr*. Other terms which are found in many different cities are *Shīn·kāy·'lù* 'newly opened road' (with *lù*, a term for 'road'), *Lǎw·'jyē* 'old street', and others like these.

Streets also have names deriving from some conspicuous stream or hill or building by which they pass, or from some important family that has lived there, either the local gentry or settlers from another province. As time goes by the landmark may change, or the people may move away, and the street name persist.

There are still many walled cities in China, and the main streets are usually either near one gate or else lead from one gate to another. A gate may have a fancy name, but more usually it is named by direction: *Dūng-'mén* 'East gate', *Shī-'mén* 'West gate'. The streets are often named-after the gates, giving such street-names as *Nán-mén Dà-'jyē* 'South Gate Main-(big) Street', or *Béy-shyǎw·'jyē* 'North side-(small) street', and so forth.

Newly developed districts have streets names such as *Jūng·yí·'lù* 'Center first road', *Běy·sān·'lù* 'North third road', and so forth. Some streets recently have been named after famous people.

Point 2. Leather, Cloth, and Footwear. *Pí* or *'pí·dz* means 'skin, leather'; *bù* means 'cloth' (except wool cloth). *Pí·'yī* and *bù·'yī* (with the *yī* of *yī·shang* 'clothing') are 'fur clothes' (with the hide of the animal included) and 'cloth clothes'. The Chinese wear cotton clothes, to which the term *bù·'yī* basically applies, and those who can afford to do so wear silk. Most woolen clothes are imported, for there are few textile factories in China making woolen goods. *Bí-'shyé* or *(yùng-)'pí·dz-dzwò-de-'shyé* is 'leather shoes'; *bù-'shyé* are shoes of some cloth material. One can also say *Jè·shwāng-'shyé shř-'pí·dz-dzwò-de.* 'This pair of shoes is made of leather.'

*Shū·'bāw* 'book package' (with the *bāw* of *yì·bāw-'yān* 'a pack of cigarettes') is the term for 'briefcase'. So *'pí·dz-dzwò-de-shū·'bāw* or *'pí-shū·'bāw* is a leather briefcase. *Chyán·'bāw* 'money package' is the term for a billfold or purse: *'nywŭ-rén-'yùng-de pí-chyán·'bāw* 'a purse made of leather which women use.'

From the above and the words *'pù·dz* 'shop', *shū·'pù* 'bookshop', the terms *shyé·'pù* and *pí·shyé·'pù* are easy to understand.

The Chinese used to wear shoes made of cloth, with soles made of layers of cloth pasted together and strengthened with hemp thread. Sometimes silk was used on the outside. These resembled our slippers and were not durable. The shoes for the two feet were the same shape, not distinguished for left and right. In spite of this, since the material is soft and pliable they were not uncomfortable. Now western-style leather shoes are used also, but many Chinese still prefer the old style shoe. Soldiers and porters usually wear shoes made of straw, which give a sure footing because they are not slippery. The size of shoes is not standardized in China as in the United States. When you buy shoes, you have to have the pair made to fit your own feet after measurements have been taken.

Point 3. *Chwān.* The basic meaning of *chwān* is 'to go through', in the sense that a train goes through a tunnel. This verb is used for 'to put on' certain articles of clothing only—a coat, a pair of trousers, a pair of shorts, a shoe. In putting on any of these some part of the body 'goes through' the garment. For other articles of clothing, such as a hat, necktie, belt, glove, and spectacles, insignia, and ornaments, a different verb is used. The postverb *shàng* is used with *chwān* to give a resultative compound *'chwān·shang*, *'chwān-de·shàng*, *'chwān-bu·shàng*. Notice also the following expressions:

| | |
|---|---|
| *'chwān·je 'dà* | 'when worn is (too) big' |
| *'chwān·je 'shyǎw* | 'when worn is (too) small' |
| *'chwān·je hé·'shr̀* | 'when worn it fits' |
| *'chū·chywù-'chwān-de* | 'worn for going out—formal' |
| *dzày-'jyā-li-'chwān-de* | 'worn at home—informal' |

Point 4. Descriptive Words. In Chinese, as in English, words like 'good', 'bad', 'clean', 'dirty', and so forth, tend to group into pairs of opposites. Here is a complete list of the descriptive words you have had so far, with opposites given when you have had them:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *byé-* | 'other' | | |
| *dà* | 'big, adult' | *shyǎw* | 'small, young' |
| *dwèy* | 'right, correct' | | |
| *dwō* | 'much, many, more' | *shǎw* | 'few, little, less' |
| *dzǎw* | 'early' | *wǎn* | 'late' |
| *gān* | 'dry' | | |
| *'gān·jing* | 'clean' | | |
| *gwèy* | 'honorable' | *bì-* | 'humble' |
| *gwèy* | 'expensive' | *'pyán·yì* | 'cheap' |
| *hǎw* | 'well' | *bìng* | 'sick' |
| *hǎw* | 'OK' | *hwày* | 'bad' |
| *hēy-* | 'black, dark' | | |
| *jēn-* | 'true' | | |
| *jìng* | 'clear' (as of glass) | | |
| *kwày* | 'fast' | *màn* | 'slow' |
| *lǎw* | 'old, long-standing' | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *lyáng* | 'cool' | | |
| *'lyáng·kwày* | 'cool and comfortable' | | |
| *lyàng* | 'bright, light' | *àn* | 'dark' |
| *máng* | 'busy' | | |
| *nán-* | 'male' (of humans) | *nywǔ-* | 'female' (of humans) |
| *nán* | 'difficult' | *'rúng·yì* | 'easy' |
| *rè* | 'hot' | *lěng* | 'cold' |
| *shīn* | 'new' | *jyèw* | 'old' |
| *wán* | 'finished' | | |
| *ywǎn* | 'far away' | *jìn* | 'nearby' |

Some of these are frequently used as adverbs, as follows: *dà* 'greatly', *dwō* 'how greatly, how much, to what extent?', *dzǎw* 'early', *wǎn* 'late', *hǎw* 'to quite an extent', *jēn* 'truly', *kwày* 'quickly', *màn* 'slowly', *lǎw* 'for a long time', *shīn* 'newly'.

As adjectives, the following are used only before nouns (that is, not in the second parts of sentences like *tā 'hǎw* 'he is good') : *byé-* 'other', *bì-* 'humble', *hēy-* 'black', *nán-* 'male', *nywǔ-* 'female'. All of these except *bì-* can be made into nouns by adding *de*: *'byé·de* 'others', *'hēy·de* 'black thing, black things', *'nán·de* 'male human being', *'nywǔ·de* 'female human being'.

Some of them are used as verbs: *'wǎn·le* 'to have gotten late' (*méy-'wǎn* 'not to have gotten late'), *'gān·le* 'to have gotten dry', *hǎw·le* 'to have gotten well', *'bìng·le* 'to have gotten sick', *'hwày·le* 'to have gotten out of order', *'hēy·le* 'to have gotten dark (of the day)', *'lǎw·le* 'to have grown old', *'lyáng·le* 'to have gotten cool', *'lyàng·le* 'to have gotten light', *wán·le* 'to have been finished'.

The two words *lǎw* and *jyèw* do not mean quite the same thing. *Lǎw* is used chiefly for persons, *jyèw* for things: *jyèw-'shyé* 'old shoes', *lǎw-'rén* 'old man', *lǎw-'péng·yew* 'old (long-standing) friend'. But there are the expressions *jyèw-'rén* 'an old employee in an office or shop', as opposed to *shīn-'rén* 'a new employee'—but this latter expression also means 'bride' or 'bridegroom'.

Certain of the pairs of descriptive words join together into compounds which are basically nouns, not descriptive words. One of these you have already had: *'dwō·shǎw* 'what quantity, what number?'. Here are some others:

| | |
|---|---|
| *dà·'shyǎw* | 'size, what size?' |
| *hǎw·'hwày* | 'quality, what quality?' |
| *kwày·'màn* | 'speed, what speed?' |
| *dzáw·'wǎn* | 'at what time?' (earliness or lateness) |

Examples in sentences:

*'Jè·shwāng-shyé-de-dà·'shyǎw 'jèng-hé·'shr̀.* 'The size of this pair of shoes is just exactly right.'

*'Jè·shwāng-shyé dà·'shyǎw?* 'What is the size of this pair of shoes?'

*Jè·ge-'dūng·shi-de-hǎw·'hwày wǒ-'kàn-bu·chu·lay.* 'I can't figure out the quality of this thing.'

*Nǐ-'shwō jè·ge-'tsày 'hǎw·hwày.* 'Say whether this food is good or bad.'

*Wǒ-bù-jr̄·'dàw jè·ge-'jūng-de kwày·'màn.* 'I don't know the speed of this clock'—whether it is running fast or slow.

*Jè·ge-'jūng 'dzěw-de 'kwày·màn?* 'Is this clock going fast or slow?'

*'Tyān dàw-'jè·dzáw·'wǎn-le, tā-'háy-bù-láy.* 'The day has gotten this late, and still he doesn't come.'

*Tā-'láy-de 'dzáw·wǎn?* 'Did he arrive early or late?'

This last word (*'dzáw·wǎn*) is also used as an adverb meaning 'sooner or later':

*Tā-'dzáw·wán děy-'láy.* 'Sooner or later he must come.'

POINT 5. A NEW ADVERB. The difference between *yí·'gùng* and *'yì·túng* is shown in the following examples:

*Wǒ·men 'yì·túng 'chywù-ba.* 'Let's go together.'

*Wǒ·men yí·'gùng yěw-'dwō·shaw-chyán?* 'How much money have we altogether?'

*Túng*, the second part of *'yì·túng*, can be used like *gēn*:

*Wǒ-'túng-nǐ 'chywù.* or *Wǒ-'gēn-nǐ 'chywù.* 'I'll go with you.'

In poker, *túng-'hwār* 'same flower' is a flush—all of the same suit. *Sān·'túng* and *lyǎng·'túng* 'three same' and 'two same' are just what you would expect. A specific pair, for instance a pair of sevens, is *'lyǎng·ge-'chī.*

POINT 6. SOME NEW VERBS. (a)

*Chǐng-'gàw·su-wǒ, 'nà·wèy gwèy-'shìng?* 'Please tell me, what is that honorable person's honorable surname?'

*Chǐng-'jyàw-tā láy.* 'Please tell him to come.'

The first verb, *'gàw·su*, means 'to tell' in the sense of to give information, whereas *jyàw* means 'to tell' in the sense of giving instructions.

(b)

*Wǒ-bù-jr̄·'dàw 'dzěm·me-shyě-'Jūng·gwo-dz̀.* 'I don't know how to write Chinese characters (words).'

*Wǒ-bú-'rèn·shr 'Jūng·gwo-dz̀.* 'I'm not familiar with Chinese characters.'

Both verbs (*'jr̄·dàw* and *'rèn·shr*) means 'to know', the first in the sense of having information about, the second in the sense of being acquainted or familiar with. *Rèn*, the first part of *'rèn·shr*, is sometimes used with the same meaning: *rèn-'dz̀* 'to recognize characters', *'rèn-yi·rèn 'nà·ge-rén* 'try to recognize that man', and with the resultative compound *'rèn·chū, wǒ-'rèn-bu·chū 'nǎ·ge shr̀-'wǒ·de.* 'I can't tell which is mine.'

(c)

*'Chwān·shang 'shr̀-yi·shr̀.* 'Put them on and try them a bit.'

The verb *shr̀* 'to try' (not the same as *shr̀* 'to be') is used mostly in this doubled form *'shr̀-yi·shr̀.*

(d) *Hé·'shr̀* 'to fit, to be suitable', and *jyē·'hwēn* 'to be married', are similar expressions, in that each is actually a verb plus a noun. The first means 'to fit, or suit (*hé*) the shape or model (*shr̀*)'; the second means 'to tie (*jyē*) a marriage contract (*hwēn*)'. Both are used simply as descriptive words.

The first part of *hé·'shr̀* means 'to fit, suit, fit onto', mostly in resultative compounds such as are used in the following sentences:

*Bǎ-hé·dz-'gàr 'hé·shang.* 'Fit the box-cover on.' (with *'hé·shàng* RC)

*Bǎ-'shū 'hé·chi·lay.* 'Close the book.' (with *'hé-chǐ·lày* RC)

*Jè·ge-'gàr hé-bu·'shàng.* 'This cover won't fit on.'

The second part, *shr̀*, does not occur all alone. *'Yàng·shr*, *'shr̀·yang*, and *'yàng·dz* (with the *yàng* of *'jè·me-yàng*) all mean 'model, pattern, shape. style.' *Shīn-'shr̀·de* is 'a new style, new-style', *lǎw-'shr̀·de* and *jyèw-'shr̀·de* are 'old-style'; *shī-'shr̀·de* is 'Western-style'—non-oriental.

Point 7. Some Measures. (a) For *'pù·dz* and other kinds of shops the measure used is frequently *jyā*, though *·ge* is often used:

*'Jè·jyā-shyé·'pù 'hǎw.* 'This shoestore is good.'

*'Jè·ii-de-shyé·'pù 'nǎ-yì·jyā 'hǎw?* 'Of the shoestores in this place, which is good (or best)?'

*'Jè·jyā-fàn-'gwǎn·dz yéw-'hǎw-'tsày.* 'This restaurant has good food.'

(b) *Tyáw* is the measure for certain long belt-like things: a snake, a necktie, a belt, a road (*lù*), a street (*jyē*). *Shēw·'tyáw* is a 'receipt', with *shēw* of *'shēw·dàw* (RC) 'to receive'.

(c) *Hàw* is a measure used for the members of various ordered sets, such as days of the month, different sizes of a kind of clothing, numbered houses on a street, and some other things. *Jyē* 'street' is used as a measure when the streets running one way in a city are numbered successively. The element *dì-*, as found in *dì-'èr·ge-rén* 'the second person', is sometimes used:

*Wǒ-'jyā dzày-(dì-)shŕ-'èr·jyē (dì-)'yì·bǎy-líng-'chī·hàw.*
'My home is on twelfth-street, number 107.'

(d) *Jr̄* and *shwāng*. *Shwāng* means 'a pair', for certain objects which are exactly or almost exactly alike and which come usually in pairs. *Jr̄* is the measure used for just one of such a pair. There is another measure, *dwèy* which is used for some paired objects; in general if *dwèy* is used then the objects are not exactly alike but rather are mirror-images of each other, opposing each other in space.

In ancient China the problem of giving a person some article by which he could identify himself and claim certain rights was solved by taking a piece of jade and breaking it in two; one part was given to the person to be identified, much as a soldier gets dog-tags, and the other was kept at the proper place. The holder of such a piece of jade could, for example, obtain admission into a certain palace by presenting his piece of jade and proving that it matched the piece held by the guard at the gate; or a military messenger would carry such identification in order to get into a particular military post. Later on, the jade gave way to a piece of wood on which certain characters in Chinese writing had been written, and which was then broken into two smaller pieces. The process of matching two pieces to see if they fit was called *dwèy*—now *'dwèy-yi·dwèy*.

From this older use of the word the modern uses seem quite natural:

*'yí·dwèy-'yǐ·dz* 'a pair of matching chairs'
*'yí·dwèy-'kings* 'a pair of kings' in poker
*'yí·dwèy-'dēng* 'a pair of matching lamps'
*'dwèy·dz* 'a pair', as in poker, or matching scrolls used as ornaments.
*lyǎng·'dwèy* 'two pairs' (poker)
*'dwèy·le, bú-'dwèy* 'it matches', 'it doesn't match'; therefore, 'that's right', 'that's not right'
*'dwèy-mén* 'the gate (of the house) which faces this one'
*'dwèy·je 'dzwò·je* 'sitting facing each other'
*'dwèy-de·chǐ, 'dwèy-bu·chǐ* '(I) can face (you)'; '(I) can't face (you)'

*Dwèy*, then, is the measure for 'a pair of' earrings, matching chairs, and other things of that kind. *Shwāng*, in the other hand, is used for shoes (which, as pointed out, were formerly made the same for both feet in China), socks, chopsticks, sometimes gloves. When speaking of both hands, or both feet, or both ears, or both eyes, usually one uses the term *lyǎng·'jr̄*, with the measure for a *single* member of a matched pair.

## §3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1.

a. How nice-looking your new shoes are!
b. Aren't they, though!
c. Oh! They aren't new.
d. They are newly polished.
e. The shoepolish makes them bright.
f. They are old shoes, not new.
g. I've just bought them.
h. I haven't paid for them yet.

1. *'Gāng·tsáy 'mǎy-de.*
2. *Shì-shyé-'yéw 'jyàw-tā 'lyàng.*
3. *'Háy-méy-gěy-'chyán-ne.*
4. *'Èw! 'Bú·shr̀-'shīn·de.*
5. *Nǐ·de-'shīn-'shyé 'dwō·me-hǎw-'kàn!*
6. *Kě-bú-'shr̀-ma!*
7. *Shr̀-'shīn-tsā-de-'yéw.*
8. *Shr̀-'jyèw-shyé, bú·shr-'shīn·de.*

2.

Where did you buy them?
a. I forget. (two ways)
b. I bought them at a newly-opened shoestore.
c. I bought them at the shoestore on the street.
d. I bought them at the shoestore on New Street Corner.
e. I bought them at one of the shoestores on New Street Corner.
f. I bought them at the shoestore which is called the Chinese-American shoestore.
g. I didn't buy them at that shoestore which is called the Chinese-Western shoestore.

*Dzày-'nǎ·li 'mǎy-de?*
1. *Dzày-Shīn·jyē·'kěwr-de-shyé·'pù 'mǎy-de.*
2. *'Bú·shr̀-dzày-'nà·ge-jyàw 'Jūng·'shī-de-shyé·'pù 'mǎy-de.*
3. *Dzày-yí·ge-'shīn-'kāy-de-shyé·'pù 'mǎy-de.*
4. *Dzày-Shīn·Jyē·'Kěwr-de yí·ge-shyé·'pù 'mǎy-de.*
5. *'Wàng·le.*
6. *Dzày-'jyē-shang-de-shyé·'pù 'mǎy-de.*
7. *'Wàng·ji·le.*
8. *Dzày-nà·ge-jyàw-'Jūng·'Měy-de-shyé·'pù 'mǎy-de.*

185

3.

Can she wear your shoes?

*or*

- a. Yes (to first form of question).
- b. Yes (to second form of question).
- c. When I wear her shoes they fit, so I think she can wear mine.
- d. Let her try them on.
- e. Ask her to try them on.
- f. No, I don't think so (to first form of question).
- g. No, I don't think so (to second form of question).
- h. Certainly not (to first form of question).
- i. Certainly not (to second form of question).
- j. She wears seven-and-one-halfs; I wear fives.
- k. It'll be somewhat difficult.
- l. My shoes are smaller than hers.
- m. How can she wear my shoes?

*Tā-'néng-bu·néng chwān-nĭ·de-'shyé?*

*Tā-'chwān-de·shàng 'nĭ·de-'shyé-ma?*

1. *'Jyàw-tā 'shr̀-yi·shr̀.*
2. *Wó-'shyăng 'bù-néng.*
3. *Yí·'dìng bù-'néng.*
4. *Yĕw-yì·'dyăn-'nán.*
5. *Tā-'dzĕm·me-néng chwān-'wŏ·de-'shyé-ne?*
6. *'Néng.*
7. *Wŏ-'chwān-'tā·de-'shyé 'hĕn-hé·'shr̀, 'swó·yi wó-shyăng tā-'yĕ-néng-chwān-'wŏ·de.*
8. *'Chĭng-tā 'shr̀-yi·shr̀.*
9. *Yí·'dìng chwān-bu·'shàng.*
10. *'Wŏ·de-'shyé bĭ-'tā·de 'shyăw.*
11. *'Chwān-de·shàng.*
12. *'Wó-shyăng 'chwān-bu·'shàng.*
13. *'Tā-chwān-'chī·hàw-'bàn-de, 'wŏ-chwān-'wŭ·hàw·de.*

4.

- a. Who's that guy?
- b. Which one?
- c. Is it the one who is more talkative than the others?
- d. The one who is eating?
- e. I don't know his family name.
- f. I don't know him.
- g. My older brother knows him.
- h. I've seen him before.
- i. He's the one who lives in that large house.
- j. He's good-for-nothing.
- k. Let me think a bit.
- l. Think as I may I still can't recall his name.
- m. Sooner or later I'll be able to tell you.
- n. Even I don't know.
- o. Nobody knows.
- p. What use is there in knowing?
- q. In my opinion, you shouldn't ask.
- r. In my opinion, you'd better not ask.

1. *Wó-'shyăng-yi·shyăng.*
2. *Wó-'dzáw·wăn néng-'gàw·su-nĭ.*
3. *Shwéy yĕ-bù-'jr̄·dàw.*
4. *Wŏ-'kàn, nĭ-'bú·yàw-'wèn-ba.*
5. *Wèy-'shém·me nĭ-bú-'dz̀·jĭ-chywù 'wèn-tā?*
6. *Nĭ-'shwō-de shr̀-'nă-yí·ge?*
7. *'Nà·ge-rén shr̀-'shwéy?*
8. *'Shr̀-bu·shr̀ bĭ-'byé-rén ày-shwō-'hwà-de nà·ge-rén?*
9. *Wŏ-bù-jr̄·'dàw tā-'shìng-shém·me.*
10. *Wŏ-'yē·ge 'rèn·shr-tā.*
11. *Tā-'jyèw-shr̀-dzày-'nà·swŏ-'dà-'fáng·dz-li 'jù-de.*
12. *Shr̀-'jèng·dzày-chr̄-'fàn-de nà·ge-ma?*
13. *Wŏ-bú-'rèn·shr-tā.*
14. *Wó-yĭ·'chyán 'kàn·jyàn·gwo-tā.*
15. *'Tā·shr̀-méy·yĕw-'yùng-de.*
16. *'Dzĕm·me-'shyăng yé-*

s. Why don't you ask him yourself?
t. Which one are you talking about?
u. Heaven only knows!

'shyǎng-bǐ·chǐ tā-'shìng-shén·me-láy.
17. Lyán-'wó yě-bù-jr̄·'dàw.
18. 'Jr̄·dàw·le 'yěw-yěw-shém·me-'yùng?
19. 'Tyān jr̄·dàw!
20. 'Nǎ·ge-rén?
21. Wǒ-'kàn, nǐ-'háy·shr 'bú·yàw-'wèn-ba.

### §4. WHAT DID YOU SAY?

### §5. REVIEW BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE.

## SECTION C: BASIC SENTENCES

(Group II)

MR. ROSS AND MR. WÁNG PAY FOR THEIR NEW SHOES, AND CONTINUE THEIR SHOPPING.

**Record 21A, after spiral.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| MR. ROSS: | |
| to forget | *'wàng·ji* |
| Gee! I forgot to bring any money. | *Ā·'yà! Wǒ-'wàng·ji dày-'chyán-láy-le.* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| to be important | *'yàw·jǐn* |
| Never mind. | *Bú-'yàw·jǐn.* |
| to lend | *'jyè·gey* |
| I can lend you some. | *Wǒ-kě·yi-'jyè·gey-nǐ.* |
| MR. ROSS: | |
| to be sufficient | *'gèw* |
| Have you enough? | *Nǐ·de-'chyán 'gèw-ma?* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| Yes. | *'Gèw.* |
| MR. ROSS: | |
| instead of | *'tì* |
| payment for shoes | *'shyé-chyan* |
| In that case you pay for the shoes for me. | *'Nà·me nǐ-'tì-wo gěy-'shyé-chyan.* |
| to return *or* pay back | *'hwán* |
| When we get back home I'll pay it back. | *Děng-'hwéy·dàw-'jyā-li 'hwán-nǐ.* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| OK. | *'Hǎw-ba.* |
| How much for the two pairs together? | *'Lyǎng·shwāng yí·'gùng-'dwō·shaw-chyán?* |
| CLERK: | |
| Nineteen dollars. | *Shŕ-'jyěw·kwày.* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| bill | *'pyàw·dz* |
| Here are two ten-dollar bills. | *'Jè-shr̀ 'lyǎng·jāng-'shŕ·'kwày·de-'pyàw·dz.* |
| CLERK: | |
| Here's your dollar change. | *Jè-shr̀ 'jǎw·hwéy·'láy·de-yí·'kwày-chyán.* |

(THEY GO OUTSIDE AGAIN)

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| a little while ago *or* 'just now' | *'gāng·tsáy* |
| brown *or* yellow | *'hwáng* |
| Were the shoes I bought just now brown or black? | *'Gāng·tsáy wó-'mǎy-de-'shyé shř-'hwáng·de shř-'hēy·de?* |

**Record 21B, beginning.**

Mr. Wáng:

| | |
|---|---|
| The ones I bought are brown. | *Wó-'mǎy-de shř-'hwáng·de.* |
| to be the same | *yí·'yàng* |
| I think yours and mine are the same. | *Wó-shyáng 'nǐ·de gēn-'wǒ·de yí·'yàng.* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| shoepolish | *shyé-'yéw* |
| I have some black shoepolish, but no brown. | *Wó-yěw-'hēy-shyé-yéw, 'méy·yěw-'hwáng-shyé-yéw.* |

Mr. Wáng:

| | |
|---|---|
| to forget | *'wàng* |
| I forgot to buy shoepolish too. | *'Wó-yě-'wàng·le mǎy-shyé-'yéw.* |
| tooth | *'yá* |
| brush | *'shwā·dz* |
| powder | *'fěn* |
| My wife wants me to buy a toothbrush and some toothpowder too. | *Wǒ-'tày·tay 'háy-yàw wó-'mǎy-yá-'shwā·dz, yá-'fěn.* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| Let's buy them in this store. | *Jyèw-dzày-'jè·ge-pù·dz 'mǎy-ba.* |

Mr. Wáng:

| | |
|---|---|
| most | *'dzwèy* |
| It would be best go to to that big store to buy them. | *'Dzwèy-hǎw shř-dàw-nà·ge-'dà-pù·dz-chywù 'mǎy.* |
| price | *'jyà-chyan* |
| The prices are a bit high, but they do have fixed prices. | *'Jyà-chyan 'gwèy·yi·dyar, 'kě·shr yěw-yí·'dìng·de-'jyà-chyan.* |
| to bargain | *hwán-'jyà* |
| You don't have to bargain. | *'Bú-yùng hwán-'jyà.* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| That's fine. | *'Nà 'hǎw-de hěn.* |
| We can buy things faster. | *Wǒ·men kě·yi 'mǎy-de 'kwày.* |

Mr. Wáng:

| | |
|---|---|
| That's so. | *'Shř-a.* |
| to be necessary *or* advisable | *'yīng·gāy* |
| We've got to get our shopping done very fast. | *'Yīng·gāy kwày·'kwáy·de 'mǎy.* |
| otherwise | *'bù·rán* |
| to fear | *kǔng·'pà* |
| Otherwise I'm afraid it'll get dark. | *Bù·'rán kǔng·pà 'tyān yàw-'hēy·le.* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| It doesn't matter if it does get dark. | *Tyān 'hēy·le bú-'yàw·jin.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| bus | *gūng·'yùng-chì-'chē* |
| We can go back by bus. | *Ké·yi dzwò-gūng·gùng-chì-'chē 'hwéy·chywù.* |

## SECTION D: WORD STUDY

### §1. REVIEW BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE ENGLISH.

### §2. WORD STUDY.

### POINT 1. NEW COMPOUND NOUNS.

*gūng·'gùng-chì-'chē* 'public automobile'; *gūng·'gùng* 'public', is *gūng* 'public' plus *gùng* 'together'; the two-syllable group is used in many recent words, of which the word for 'bus' is one. This term refers to a bus in a city or a suburban bus, not normally to one which goes from one city to another.

*'pyàw·dz, chyán-'pyàw·dz, chyán-'pyàwr* 'bill' (money). *Pyàw* itself means 'ticket': *hwǒ-chē-'pyàw* 'railroad ticket'; *dyàn-chē-'pyàw* 'streetcar ticket'; *Kàn-dyàn·'yíng děy-'shyān mǎy-'pyàw* 'To see the movie you must first buy a ticket.'

*'jyà-chyan* 'the price asked for an article'; *jyà* also means 'price' in certain sentences, for which see later on in this word study. The money given for a meal can be called *'fàn-chyan*, for a pair of shoes *'shyé-chyan*, and any other purchased article by the name of that article plus *chyán*.

*shyé-'yéw* 'shoepolish' is simply 'shoe oil', with *yéw* 'oil' as in *yéw-'dēng* 'oil light', *chì-'yéw* 'gasoline', and so on.

*yá-'shwā·dz, yá-'fěn* 'toothbrush, toothpowder', are just like the English words to which they are equivalent. *Shwā* is 'to brush'—*shwā-'yá* 'to brush the teeth'.

### POINT 2. SOME OTHER COMPOUNDS.

*gāng·'tsáy* 'just now, just a little while ago, a few minutes ago'. *Tsáy* you have already had, as an adverb meaning 'then and only then'; *gāng* is another adverb which means about the same thing.

*bù·'rán* 'otherwise, if not, if the conditions previously stated are not met, then . . . *Rán* is a literary word for 'to be', so that the literal meaning is 'not is'.

*'yīng·gāy* 'to need to, have to, must' can be used about like *děy*. *Děy* is used more in the North than elsewhere, and is not used with *bū* before it. *'Yīng·gāy* is used quite generally and can be used with *bū*: *Tā-'yīng·gāy-'láy* 'He should come'; *Tā-'yīng·gāy-bù-'láy* 'He shouldn't come'; *Tā-bù-'yīng·gāy-láy* 'He isn't under obligation to come (though he may)'; *Tā-bù-'yīng·gāy bù-'láy* 'He is obliged to come.'

*kǔng·'pà* 'to be afraid that, to fear that', in the more or less polite manner of making a suggestion; if you mean really 'to be afraid of' someone or of doing something, the word is *pà*; *Wǒ-'pà-tā* 'I fear him'; *Wǒ-'pà-dzwò-hwǒ-'chē* 'I am afraid of going by train'; *Wǒ-bú-'pà-tā* 'I'm not afraid of him.'; *'Bú·yàw-'pà* 'Don't be afraid.' With *kǔng·'pà* usually the person who is doing the fearing isn't mentioned explicitly: *Kǔng·'pà tā-bù-'láy* '(I) fear he won't come.'

*'yàw·jǐn* 'to be of importance'; *'Jè·jyàn-shr̀ hěn-'yàw·jǐn* 'This affair (of business) is very important'; *Wǒ-shyàn·'dzày yěw hěn-'yàw·jǐn-de-'shr̀* 'Right now I have some very important business.' From this comes the expression *Bú-'yàw·jǐn* 'It isn't important', therefore 'Don't worry about it; take it easy', and so forth. *Jǐn* means 'to be urgent, close, tight': *Jè·jyàn-'shr̀ tā-'yàw-de 'jǐn* 'He needs this matter urgently' (so do it quickly). *'Nà·jyàn yàw-de 'bù-jǐn, 'kě·yi 'děng-jǐ·tyān dzày-'dzwò.* 'That one is not needed urgently, so you can wait a few days and then do it.' *Wǒ·de-'shyé tày-'jǐn.* 'My shoes are too tight.'

*'jèng·dzày, shyàn·'dzày*; both 'right now'; but they can be used in contrast, *'jèng·dzày* then meaning 'right now, right this minute', and *shyàn·'dzày* meaning 'at present, in this period of days or weeks'. *Jèng* can be used alone: *Tā-'jèng-'chr̄·je-'fàn* 'Right at the moment he's eating.'

Point 3. *Dày* and *Ná*. Compare the following:

*Bǎ-'chyán 'ná·dàw-'jyē-shang-chywù.* 'Take the money to the street' (that is, 'downtown').

*Dày-'chyán dàw-'jyē-shang-chywù.* 'Take some money downtown.'

With *ná* the meaning is that the hands are used—'taking' in the sense of picking up or grasping in one or both hands, though it may not be left there. *Dày* also means take or bring, but does not imply use of the hands. Thus you can say *Chǐng 'dày-wǒ-chywù* 'Please take me along', but not *Chǐng 'ná-wǒ-chywù*.

Point 4. Borrowing and Returning.

*Wǒ-'gēn-nǐ 'jyè-'yí·kwày-chyan.* 'I borrow a dollar from you'.

*'Jyè·gey-wǒ 'yí·kwày-chyan.* 'Lend me a dollar.'

*Tā-bǎ-'chyán dēw-'jyè·gey-wǒ.* 'He loaned me all his money.'

*'Hwán-nǐ 'jè·kwày-chyán.* 'I return this dollar to you.'

*Bǎ-'jè·kwày-chyán 'hwán-nǐ.* 'I take this dollar and repay you.'

*'Hwán·gey-nǐ 'jè·kwày-chyán.* 'I return this dollar to you.'

*Wó-bǎ-'jè·kwày-chyán 'hwán·gey-tā.* 'I return this dollar to him.'

Thus: *jyè* means 'to borrow' (something); *'jyè·gey* means 'to lend' (somebody something); *hwán* means 'return' (to somebody, something); *'hwán·gey* is the same as *hwán*.

Here is a jingle about borrowing and returning:

*Yěw-'jyè yěw-'hwán,*
*'dzày-jyè bù-'nán.*

'Borrow but return; when you borrow again it won't be difficult.'

Point 5. *Tì*. The meaning of this word can be gathered from the following examples:

*Tā-'tì-wǒ 'chywù·le.* 'He went in my place.'

*Tā-'tì-wó gěy-'chyán.* 'He is forking over the money instead of me.'

8

*Tā-'jīn·tyan 'tì-wǒ jyāw-'shū.* 'He is substituting for me in teaching today.'

POINT 6. PAYING AND GETTING CHANGE. Giving money for things uses the verb *gěy* 'to give', as might be expected. Getting back change, however, uses the verb *jǎw* which you have learned in another meaning, 'to hunt for'.

*Wó-'jǎw·gey-nǐ 'chyán.* 'I'll give you your change.'

*'Háy-yéw 'jǎw·gey-nǐ-de-'chyán.* 'Wait. Here's your change.'

*'Jè shr̀-'jǎw·hwey·láy·de-'chyán.* 'This is your change.'

*Jyà* means 'price'. *Gěy-'jyà* 'to give a price' is to name a price; *hwán-'jyà* 'to return a price' is to counter with a different suggestion. Thus the customer and the salesman bargain back and forth until an agreement is reached. For this reason *hwán-'jyà* is used also as the expression for 'to bargain'. But 'This is a bargain' is expressed as 'This is very cheap': *'Jè·ge hěn-'pyán·yì.*

POINT 7. REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING.

*Wǒ-'wàng·ji dày-'chyán láy·le.* 'I forgot to bring any money.'

*Wǒ-'wàng·le dày-'chyán láy·le.* 'I forgot to bring any money.'

*'Bú·yàw-'wàng(-le).* 'Don't forget!'

*Wǒ-'méy-wàng.* 'I haven't forgotten.'

*Tā-'jì·de bǎ-'chyán 'dày·láy·le.* 'He remembered to bring the money.'

*Tā-'jì·de nǐ-'shwō-de-'hwà.* 'He remembered what you said.'

*Wǒ-'gāng·tsáy 'shyáng·chi·lay·le.* 'Just a moment ago I remembered.'

*Wó-'shyǎng-bu·chi·lay.* 'I can't remember.'

*'Wàng·ji* and *wàng* both mean 'to have forgotten'. *Jì*, in *'wàng·ji*, means 'to remember', so that *'wàng·ji* means 'to forget to remember'. The independent word for remember, in the sense of 'keep in mind, not cease to remember', is *'jì·de* (not the *de* of *wǒ·de*, but another element with the same sound); but remember in the sense of 'call back to mind, think of anew', is *'shyáng-chǐ·láy* (RC).

POINT 8. *A*. The small word *a*, like *ma*, *ba*, and *ne*, is added at the ends of sentences. It may make a polite question, or a polite reply, or simply be a sign of hesitation at that point.

POINT 9. *Bàn*. The word for 'half' has a peculiarity. When used alone, it is followed by a measure just as is any numeral:

| | |
|---|---|
| *bàn·gēn-'yān* | 'half a cigarette' |
| *bàn·bāw-'yān* | 'half a pack of cigarettes' |

When added to another number, as in 'three and a half' of something, *bàn* comes *after* the measure:

| | |
|---|---|
| *'sān·bāw-'bàn-'yān* | 'three and a half packs of cigarettes' |
| *sān·dyǎn-'bàn (-jūng)* | 'three thirty' |

*Bàn* is also used as a measure, meaning 'half of':

| | |
|---|---|
| *yí·'bàn·de-rén* | 'half of the men' |
| *yí·'bàn·de-yān* | 'half of the cigarettes' |

POINT 10. MORE ABOUT DESCRIPTIVE WORDS. *Gèw* is a

new descriptive word which you have just had. It is used also as an adverb.

*Nǐ-'chī-de 'gèw-ma?* 'Did you eat enough.'

*'Gèw·le.* 'Yes.'—it was enough

*Bú-'gèw.* 'No.'—it's not enough

Here are some things that you will want to be able to say in Chinese, and the ways to say them:

(a) 'a little slower', 'a little faster', and so on:

*Chǐng 'màn·yi·dyan shwō.* or *Chǐng 'màn·yi·dyar shwō.* 'Please speak slower.'

*'Chíng-ni 'dzěw 'kwày·yi·dyar.* Please walk a little faster.'

*'Tā-bí-'wó 'dzěw-de 'màn·yi·dyar.* 'He walks a little slower than I.'

*'Wǒ·de-'shyé bí-'nǐ·de 'hwáng·yi·dyan.* 'My shoes are a little browner than yours.'

*Děng 'tyān 'lyàng·yi·dyar dzày-'dzěw-ba.* 'Wait until it gets a little lighter and then we'll leave.'

In other, words, add *yi·dyan* or *yi·dyar* to the descriptive word. It doesn't matter which; the form with *-r* is most used in Peiping.

(b) 'much slower', 'much faster', and so forth:

*'Tā-bí-'wó 'dzěw-de 'màn-de 'dwō.* 'He walks much slower than I.'

*'Wǒ·de-'shyé bí-'nǐ·de 'tsā-de 'lyàng-de 'dwō.* 'My shoes are shined much brighter than yours.'

That is, *make the whole sentence into a noun* by adding *de*, and then use *dwō* 'much'.

You can put *bū* before *dwō* in a sentence like this:

*Tā-'bi-wó 'dzěw-de 'màn-de 'bù-dwō.* 'He doesn't walk much slower than I do.'

(c) 'too fast', 'too slow', and so forth:

*Ní-'dzěw-de tày-'kwày.* 'You walk too fast.'

That is, just use *tày* like we use *too* in English.

(d) 'not fast enough', 'not slow enough', and so forth:

*Ní-'dzěw-de bú-gèw-'kwày.* 'You don't walk fast enough.'

That is, use *bú-'gèw* as an adverb before the descriptive word in question.

(e) 'very fast', 'very slow', and so on:

*Ní-'dzěw-de dǐng-'kwày.* 'You walk very fast.'

*Ní-'dzěw-de dzwèy-'kwày.* 'You walk very fast', or 'You walk fastest of all.'

That is, use *dǐng* or *dzwèy* as an adverb before the descriptive word in question.

There is also another way:

*Tā-kwày·'kwáy·de 'dzěw.* 'He walks very fast.'

*Màn·'mán·de 'dzěw.* 'Go very slow!'

*Hǎw·'háw·de.* or *Háw·'hǎw·de.* 'Very very good!'

*Hwáng·'hwáng·de.* 'Very yellow.'

*Hēy·'hēy·de.* 'Very black, very dark.'

In other words, you repeat the descriptive word and add *de*; the result is either an adverb or itself a descriptive word, with the meaning desired. In the process there are certain quite regular tone changes on the second syllable—the second repetition—which always, incidentally, is the one more stressed. The second syllable of the group has the ***second*** *tone* (´), whatever the tone of the original word. However, if the original word has the third tone, then the sequence may optionally be second followed by third, as demonstrated above.

(f) 'the same':

'*Nĭ·de-'shyé gēn-'wŏ·de-shyé yí·'yàng.* 'Your shoes and mine are the same.'

'*Nĭ·de-'shyé gēn-'wŏ·de 'hwáng-de yí·'yàng.* 'Your shoes and mine are the same degree of yellow (brown).'

'*Nĭ·de-'shyé gēn-'wŏ·de yí·'yàng 'hwáng.* 'Your shoes and mine are the same degree of yellow.'

. . . *kĕ·shr bù-yí·'yàng 'dà.* '. . . but not equally big.'

That is, you use *yí·'yàng* either as a descriptive word or as an adverb 'equally'. The word *túng·'yàng* can be used exactly the same way.

## §3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1\.

How is this shop compared with that?

'*Jè·ge-pù·dz bĭ-'nà·ge 'dzĕm·me-yàng?*

a. Much better.
b. Much worse.
c. A little better.
d. A little worse.
e. The prices are higher.
f. Much more expensive than that one.
g. The same.
h. Just as expensive.
i. It sells more goods than that one.
j. The prices here are cheaper.
k. Much more reasonable (cheap).
l. They don't sell the same kind of goods.
m. How can this store be compared with that?
n. Can't be compared.
o. The two stores are of the same size.
p. Compare them this way and that, they're still the same.
q. Formerly that one was better.
r. Now this store has changed its manager and clerks.
s. It's better managed than that one.
t. That store has no fixed prices.
u. You have to bargain.

1. '*Jè·li·de-'jyà-chyan 'pyán·yì.*
2. '*Mày·de-'dūng·shi bù-yí·'yàng.*
3. '*Bù-néng-'bĭ.*
4. '*Bĭ·láy-'bĭ·chywù 'háy·shr yí·'yàng.*
5. *Shyàn·'dzày 'jè·jyà-pù·dz-de-'jīng·lĭ gēn-'hwŏ·ji dēw-'hwàn·le.*
6. '*Nà·jyà-'pù·dz 'méy·yĕw-'yí·'dìng·de-'jyà-chyan.*
7. '*Jè·jyà-'pú·dz bĭ-'byé·de dēw-'hăw.*
8. *Jè-'lyăng·ge-'pù·dz dēw-'bù-hăw.*
9. '*Hăw-de 'dwō.*
10. '*Hăw·yi·dyar.*
11. '*Jyà-chyan 'gwèy·yi·dyar.*
12. *Yí·'yàng.*
13. *Bĭ-'nà·ge mày·de-'dūng·shi 'dwō.*
14. '*Pyán·yì·de 'dwō.*
15. '*Jè·ge-'pù·dz 'dzĕm·me-'néng-gēn-'nà·ge 'bĭ-ne?*
16. *Jè-'lyăng·jyà-'pù·dz dà·shyăw yí·'yàng.*
17. *Yĭ·'chyán shr̀-'nà·jyà-pù·dz 'hăw.*
18. '*Jīng·lĭ·de bĭ-'nà·ge 'hăw.*
19. *Dĕy-hwán-'jyà.*
20. '*Jè-shr̀-'jè·li-'dzwèy-hăw-de-'pù·dz.*
21. '*Hăw-de 'dēw-dzày-'byé·de-'jyē-shang.*

v. The women who sell things here are better-looking than the ones who sell things there.
w. This store is better than all the others.
x. This one is the best store here.
y. The better ones are on another street.
z. These two stores are both no good.
aa. The best one is on the street south of this one.

22. *'Dzwèy-hǎw-de dzày-'jè·tyáw-'jyē-'nán·byan-de 'nà·tyáw-'jyē-shang.*
23. *'Hwày·de 'dwō.*
24. *Bĭ-'nà·ge 'gwèy·de dwō.*
25. *Yí·'yàng·de 'gwèy.*
26. *'Hwày·yi·dyar.*
27. *'Jè·jyà-'pù·dz mày-'dūng·shi-de-'nywŭ-rén bĭ-'nà·jyà-pù·dz-de hǎw-'kàn.*

## 2.

Would you like to live in this house?

a. Yes.
b. No.
c. Too large.
d. Too small.
e. Too few rooms.
f. Not enough (room) for me to live in.
g. Too expensive to live here.
h. If I lived here it would be very suitable.
i. This house is a new-style.
j. It doesn't suit me to live in a new-style house.
k. I must see it first.
l. This house is the same as the one I am living in.
m. Gee! This house is really big!
n. Among the houses I have seen, this is the largest.
o. I'm afraid that there is no larger.
p. I'm afraid half of this house is enough for me to live in.
q. Is there any other house?
r. There are too few windows.
s. It's too dark inside.
t. There should be some more windows on the south side.

*Nĭ-'ywàn·yì dzày-'jè·swǒ-'fáng·dz-li 'jù-ma?*

1. *Ā·'yà! Jēn-'dà!*
2. *Wó-'děy-shyān-'kàn-yi·kàn.*
3. *'Jè·swǒ-'fáng·dz-shr̀-'shīn-'shr̀·de.*
4. *'Jù·dzày-'jè·li yùng-'chyán tày-'dwō.*
5. *'Wū·dz tày-'shǎw.*
6. *Tày-'dà·le.*
7. *'Ywàn·yì.*
8. *'Lĭ·byan tày-'àn.*
9. *'Háy-yěw-'byé·de-'fáng·dz-ma?*
10. *Kŭng·'pà 'méy·yew-bĭ-'jè·ge dzày-'dà-de-le.*
11. *Kŭng·'pà 'jè·ge-fáng·dz-de-yí·'bàn jyèw-'gèw-wǒ-'jù·de-le.*
12. *Wó-'kàn·jyàn·gwo-de-'fáng·dz-li, 'jè-shr̀-dĭng-'dà-de.*
13. *'Jè·swǒ-fáng·dz gēn-wǒ-shyàn·'dzày-'jù-de yí·'yàng.*
14. *'Shīn-'shr̀-de-fáng·dz wǒ-'jù·je bù-hé·'shr̀.*
15. *Wǒ-'jù·dzày-'jè·li hěn-hé·'shr̀.*
16. *'Nán·byan 'yīng·gāy 'háy yéw-jĭ·ge-'chwāng·hu.*
17. *'Chwāng·hu tày-'shǎw.*
18. *Tày-'shyǎw·le.*
19. *Bú-'ywàn·yì.*
20. *Bú-'gèw-wǒ-'jù-de.*

3.

What are you going to buy?

a. Sixteen bowls.
b. Some flowers.
c. A good toothbrush.
d. Two packs of toothpowder.
e. A pair of shoes.
f. Some cloth.
g. A chair.
h. A desk.
i. An electric lamp.
j. Gasoline.
k. The things my baby needs.
l. Some powder for my wife.
m. Some useless things.
n. Nothing.
o. Gee! I forgot to ask.
p. How could I have forgotten!
q. Please tell me again.
r. I remember! It's to buy some pictures to hang on the walls that I came.
s. The money I brought with me is not enough to buy all these things.
t. I must borrow from you.
u. Will you lend it to me?

*Mǎy-'shém·me-chywù?*

1. *'Mǎy-shŕ-'lyèw·ge-'wǎn-chywù.*
2. *'Máy-'hǎw-yá-'shwā·dz-chywù.*
3. *Mǎy-'bù-chywù.*
4. *Mǎy-chì-'yéw-chywù.*
5. *Āy·'yà! Wǒ-wàng·ji 'wèn-le!*
6. *Nǐ-'jyè·gey-wǒ-ma?*
7. *Máy-'lyǎng·bāw-yá-'fěn-chywù.*
8. *'Máy-wǒ·de-shyǎw-'háy·dz-'yàw-de-dūng·shi-chywù.*
9. *Mǎy-'hwā-chywù.*
10. *'Mǎy-yì·shwāng-'shyé-chywù.*
11. *'Shém·me děw-bù-'mǎy.*
12. *'Jyè-chyan 'rúng·yì, 'hwán-chyán 'nán.*
13. *Wǒ-'gēn-nǐ 'jyè-'yì·dyǎr-'chyán.*
14. *'shyáng·chǐ·láy·le! Shr̀-mǎy-'chyáng-shang-'gwà-de-'hwàr láy-de.*
15. *Wǒ-dày·láy-de-'chyán bú-'gèw-máy-'jè·shyē-'dūng·shi-de.*

v. If you don't, I'll borrow from him.
w. Even if you lend it to me now, I won't take it.
x. It's easy to borrow but hard to pay back.

16. *Nǐ-bú-'jyè, wǒ-'jyèw-gēn-'tā 'jyè.*
17. *Géy-wǒ-'tày·tay máy-'fěn-chywù.*
18. *Shyàn·'dzày nǐ-jyèw·shr 'jyè-gey-wǒ, 'wó-yě-bú-'yàw-le.*
19. *Chǐng 'dzày-'gàw·su-wǒ.*
20. *Wó-'dzěm·me-néng-'wàng·ji-ne!*
21. *'Mǎy-méy·yěw-'yùng-de-'dūng·shi-chywu.*
22. *Mǎy-dyàn-'dēng-chywù.*
23. *Mǎy-shū·'jwō-chywù.*
24. *Mǎy-yì·bá-'yǐ·dz-chywù.*

§4. What Did You Say?

§5. Review Basic Sentences Covering the Chinese.

## SECTION E: LISTENING IN

§1. Word-Study Check-Up.

§2. Listening-In.

Conversation 1. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng gēn-'Wáng-shyān·sheng dàw-'jyē-shang. mǎy-'dūng·shi-chywu.*

**Record 22A, beginning.**

Ross: *'Jè·tyáw-'jyē-shang 'pù·dz hěn-'dwō.*
*Wǒ-'méy-dàw-'jè·li 'láy·gwo.*

Wáng: *Dzày-'jè·tyáw-'jyē-shang 'shém·me-dūng·shi dēw-'mǎy-de·jáw.*

Ross: *Wó-shyáng-'mǎy-yì·shwāng-'shyé.*

Wáng: *Nǐ-'chwān-de jè·shwān-shyé bú·shr-'shīn-'mǎy-de-ma?*

Ross: *'Bú·shr̀-'chū·chywù-chwān-de-shyé, shr̀-dzày-'jyā-li-chwān-de.*

Wáng: *'Nà·me mǎy-'Jūng·gwo-'bù-shyé bí-mǎy-'pí-shyé hǎw.*

Ross: *'Dwèy·le.*
*'Jè·ge-pù·dz mày-'shyé.*

Wáng: *'Na shr̀-mày-'pí-shyé-de.*
*'Yé·shywú 'yě-mày-'bù-shyé.*
*'Jìn·chywu 'wèn-yi·wèn.*

CONVERSATION 2. *Dzày-'pù·dz-li.*

Manager: *Lyǎng·wèy-shyān·sheng yàw-mǎy-'shyé-ma?*

Wáng: *'Yěw-méy·yěw 'bù-shyé?*

Manager: *'Yěw. 'Hwǒ·ji! Ná-'bù-shyé-lay!*

Clerk: *Chǐng 'chwān·shang 'shr̀-yi·shr̀.*

Ross: *'Jè·shwāng 'tày-'shyǎw, chwān-bu·'shàng.*

Clerk: *'Jè·shwāng-ne?*

Ross: *'Jè·shwāng hé·'shr̀.*

Wáng: *Nǐ-'jàn·chi·lay, 'dzěw-yi·dzěw.*

Ross: *'Dzěw·je 'yé-hěn-hé·'shr̀. 'Dwō·shaw-chyan?*

Clerk: *Sān·kwày-'wǔ.*

Ross: *'Jè shr̀-'wǔ·kwày-chyán-de-'pyàw·dz.*

Clerk: *'Jè shr̀-gěy-nín-'jǎw·hwéy·láy-de yí·kwày-'wǔ.*

CONVERSATION 3. *'Hày-dzày-'nà-yí·ge-pù·dz-li.*

Wáng: *Wó-shyáng-'mǎy-yí·ge-shū·'bāw.*

Clerk: *Yàw-'pí·de, yàw-'bù·de?*

Wáng: *'Dēw-shr̀-shém·me-'jyà-chyan?*

Clerk: *'Pí·de 'lyèw·kwày, 'bù·de 'sān·kwày.*

Wáng: *'Ná·lay 'kàn-yi·kàn.*

Clerk: *'Jè shr̀-'pí·de, jè-shr̀-'bù·de.*

Wáng: *Ké·yi hwán-'jyà-ma?*

Clerk: *Wǒ·men·de-'jyà-chyan shr̀-yí·'dìng·de, 'bù-néng-hwán-'jyà.*
*Nín-'kàn, jè·ge-'pí·dz dwō·me-'lyàng.*

Wáng: *Jè-shyē 'hēy·de; yěw-'hwáng·de méy·yew?*

Clerk: *'Yěw; 'jè shr̀-'hwáng·de.*

Wáng: *Ā·'yà, wǒ-,'wàng·ji bǎ-'chyán 'dày·láy-le.*

Ross: *Bú-'yàw·jǐn, 'wó-yěw.*
*'Dwō·shaw-chyán?*

Clerk: *'Lyèw·kwày.*

Ross: *'Hǎw, 'jè shr̀-'lyèw·kwày-chyan.*

Wáng: *Dwō-'shyè.*

CONVERSATION 4. *Tsúng-'pù·dz-'chū·láy-yǐ·'hèw, 'Wáng gēn-yí·wèy-'byé·de-'péng·yew 'tán·le-yi·tán 'hwà. 'Lwó 'wèn-tā shwō, "'nà·ge-rén shr̀-'shwéy?"*

Ross: *Gāng·tsáy 'gēn-nǐ shwō-'hwà-de shr̀-'shwéy?*

Wáng: *'Nà shr̀-wǒ-shīn-'rèn·shr-de yí·ge-'péng·yew.*
*Tā-shìng 'Jàw.*
*Tā-yǐ·'chyán dzày-'Hú-shyān·sheng-de-shū·'pù-li 'bāng-máng.*

Ross: *Shyàn·'dzày-ne?*

Wáng: *Shyàn·'dzày tā-'dž·jǐ 'kāy·le-yí·ge-shū·'pù.*

196

**Record 22B, beginning.**

*Tā-'mày-de shr̀-'shīn-shū.*
*'Hú-shyān·sheng-'mày-de shr̀-'jyèw-shū.*
Ross: *Jè·ge-shìng-'Jàw-de mày-'wày·gwo-shū-ma?*
Wáng: *'Mày.*
Ross: *Wó·'shyǎng dàw-tā·de-shū·'rù-chywù 'kàn-yi·kàn.*
Wáng: *'Míng·tyan 'dzày-chywù-ba.*
*Shyàn·'dzày wǒ-'háy-děy-'chywù mǎy-'byé·de-dūng·shi.*
Ross: *Háy-yàw-'mǎy-shém·me?*
Wáng: *'Shyān-mǎy yá-'shwā·dz, yá-'fěn.*
*Dzày-dàw-shǐ·yī·'dyàn-chywù ná-'shǐ·de-'yī·shang.*
*'Ní-děy-'tì-wó gěy-'chyán.*
Ross: *'Bú-yàw·jǐn.*
*'Jè shr̀-'wǔ·kwày-chyán.*
*Shyān-'ná·chywù 'yùng.*
*Hwéy-'jyā dzày-'hwán-wǒ.*
Wáng: *Yí·'gùng 'gēn-nǐ 'jyè·le shŕ-'yí·kwày-chyán.*

Conversation 5. *Dzày-shǐ·yī·'dyàn-li.*

Wáng: *'Chyán-jǐ·tyān wǒ-'sùng·láy·le 'lyǎng·tàw-'wày·gwo-'yī·shang.*
Laundryman: *Shr̀-'gān·shǐ·de-ma?*
Wáng: *'Shr̀; yí·tàw 'hēy·de, yí·tàw-'hwáng·de.*
Laundryman: *Shí·'hǎw·le.*
Wáng: *Wǒ-'wàng·le dày-shēw·'tyáw-láy-le.*
Laundryman: *Bú-'yàw·jǐn.*
*'Jè 'shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'Wáng-shyān·sheng?*
Wáng: *'Shr̀.*
Laundryman: *'Chǐng dzày-jè·jāng-'jr̆-shang 'shyě nín-'jīn·tyan-shēw·'dàw·le-'lyǎng·tàw-'yī·shang.*
Wáng: *'Hǎw.*
Laundryman: *'Nín 'jù·dzày-shém·me-dì·fang, yé-'shyě·shàng.*
Wáng: *'Jūng·'èr·'lù 'lyèw·bǎy-'sān·shr·'hàw.*
*'Jīn·tyan-shr̀ 'Mín·gwó-'sān·shr-'èr·nyán, 'jyěw·ywè 'èr·shr-'jyěw·hàw.*
*Shēw·'dàw 'Jūng·'shī-'Shǐ·'yī·'dyàn 'shī·yī 'lyǎng·'tàw.*
*'Háy-shyě-shém·me?*
Laundryman: *'Gèw·le.*

Conversation 6. *'Wáng tsúng-shǐ·yī·'dyàn-li-'chū·láy.*

Ross: *Nǐ-'ná·de-dūng·shi tày-'dwō.*
*Wǒ-'tì-nǐ 'ná-yí·'jyàn-ba.*
Wáng: *'Bù-dwō, wǒ-'dž·jǐ 'néng·ná.*
*'Tyān kwày-'hēy·le.*
*Wǒ·men dzwò-gūng·gùng-chì-'chē 'hwéy·chywu-ba.*
Ross: *'Hǎw.*
Wáng: *'Jè-shr̀ chì-chē-'jàn.*
*Dzày-'jè·li 'děng-yi·děng.*
Ross: *Nǐ-'kàn, chē 'láy·le.*
Wáng: *'C[illegible]·shang 'rén hěn-'dwō.*
Ross: *Bú-'yàw·jǐn.*
*Nǐ-'ná·je-'dūng·shi.*
*Wǒ-'ná·chū-'líng-chyan-láy mǎy-chē-'pyàw.*

## SECTION F: CONVFRSATION

§1. Vocabulary Check-Up.

§2. Carrying on Conversation.

# UNIT XI

## 'YĪ·TYĀN-'DZWÒ-DE-'SHR̀

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

(Group I)

MR. WÁNG ASKS MR. ROSS ABOUT HIS DAY'S WORK.

**Record 23A, beginning.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| every | *'mĕy* |
| Tell me about what you do every day. | *'Gàw·su-wŏ, ní-'mĕy·tyān 'dēw-dzwò-shém·me-'shr̀?* |
| MR. ROSS: | |
| Monday | *lĭ·bày-'yī* |
| From Monday through Saturday, | *Tsúng-lĭ·bày-'yī dàw-lĭ·bày-'lyèw,* |
| I get up at six thirty in the morning. | *wó-'dzăw·chen lyèw·dyăn-'bàn-'chĭ·láy.* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| if | *'rè·shr* |
| to wake up | *'shĭng* |
| What if you don't wake up? | *'Rè·shr shĭng-bu·'lyăw-ne?* |
| MR. ROSS. | |
| alarm-clock | *'nàw-jūng* |
| When the time comes, the alarm-clock wakes me up. | *Dàw·le-'shŕ·hew, nàw-'jūng-'bá-wŏ 'nàw·shĭng·le.* |
| to go to sleep | *'shwèy* |
| Even if I want to go to sleep again, I can't. | *'Jyèw·shr 'shyăng 'dzày-shwèy, yĕ-'shwèy-bu·'jáw·le.* |
| MR. WÁNG: | |
| What do you do after you get up? | *'Chĭ·láy-yĭ·'hèw dzwò-'shém·me-ne?* |
| MR. ROSS: | |
| I brush my teeth (with a toothbrush). | *Yùng-yá-'shwā·dz shwā-'yá.* |
| together with | *'hé* |
| soap | *'yí·dz* |
| hands | *'shĕw* |
| face | *'lyăn* |
| I wash my hands and face with soap and water. | *Yùng-'yí·dz hé-'shwĕy shí-'shĕw, shí-'lyăn.* |
| to scrape | *'gwā* |

| | |
|---|---|
| knife | *'dāw* |
| hair on the face | *'hú·dz* |
| I shave with a razor. | *Yùng-gwā-lyăn-'dāw gwā-'hú·dz.* |
| towel | *'shĕw·jīn* |
| I dry myself with a towel. | *Yùng-'shĕw·jīn tsā·'gān·le.* |
| to take off | *'twō* |
| Then I take off my pajamas. | *Yĭ·'hèw bă-'shwèy·yī 'twō·shyà·chywu.* |
| trousers | *'kù·dz* |
| socks | *'wà·dz* |
| shirt | *chèn·'shān* |
| I put on my trousers, socks, shoes, and shirt. | *'Chwān·shang 'kù·dz, 'wà·dz. 'shyé, chèn·'shān.* |
| to put on | *'dày* |
| necktie | *lĭng·'dày* |
| I put on my necktie. | *'Dày·shang lĭng·'dày.* |
| radio | *wú·shyàn-'dyàn* |
| I turn on the radio. | *Bă-wú·shyàn-'dyàn 'kāy·kay.* |

**Record 23B, beginning.**

| | |
|---|---|
| to listen to | *'tīng* |
| news | *shīn·'wén* |
| So that while I'm eating breakfast I can listen to the news. | *'Wèy·de-shr̀ 'chr̄·je-dzăw-'fàn kĕ·yi 'tīng-shīn·'wén.* |
| newspaper | *'bàw* |
| Sometimes I take a look at the paper too. | *Yĕw·de-'shŕ·hew yĕ-'kàn·kan-'bàw.* |

Mr. Wáng:

| | |
|---|---|
| What do you eat for breakfast? | *Dzăw-'fàn dēw-shr̀ 'chr̄-'shém·me?* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| egg | *jī-'dàn* |
| bread | *myàn·'bāw* |
| I eat eggs, bread, and butter. | *'Chr̄·de-shr̀ jī-'dàn, myàn·'bāw, hwáng-'yéw.* |
| cow's milk | *nyéw-'năy* |
| I drink milk and coffee. | *'Hē·de-shr̀ nyéw-'năy, jyā·'fēy.* |
| hat | *'màw·dz* |
| When it's all done, I get into my coat and overcoat, and put on my hat. | *'Dēw-'wán·le, 'chwān·shang-'shàng·yī, 'dà·yī, 'dày·shang-'màw·dz.* |
| office | *gūng·shr̀·'fáng* |
| I walk from my home to the office. | *Tsúng-'jyā-li 'dzĕw·dàw-gūng·shr̀·'fáng-chywù.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

§1. Review Basic Sentences Covering the English.

§2. Word Study.

1. The Week. We are so accustomed to think in terms of a seven-day cycle which we call 'the week' that we forget that the week was an invention, not a discovery. The

199

month, of course, and the year, are units of time based on astronomical facts: the circulation of the earth around the sun and of the moon around the earth. But the *seven-day* week was invented, somewhere in the near east, in relatively recent times. The Jewish, Christian, and Mohammedan religions have been the chief agents in the spread of the seven-day week to other parts of the world. Elsewhere—as in China earlier and in parts of China even now—there were various cycles of a few days, usually certain days of the month.

The Chinese had the term *lǐ·'bày* 'to worship', for the worship of Buddha or of deified heroes. *Lǐ* and *bày* are separate words; *lǐ* means 'to worship', also 'ceremony, rites, manners', and *bày* means 'to worship', especially to express respect by kneeling and bowing. The Christian missionaries introduced the week and chose the word *lǐ·bày-'r̀* 'ceremony-worship day' for 'Sunday'; then the week as a whole (and also the special day, Sunday) came to be called *'yí·ge-lǐ·'bày*, and the days from Monday through Saturday were named by adding the numerals from one through six to this basic form. The Christian missionaries also used the term *dzwò-lǐ·'bày* 'to make, do worshipping' for the act of going to church.

The Chinese also use another term: *shīng·'chī* 'star cycle', then calling Sunday *shīng·chī-'r̀* 'star-cycle day', and numbering the other six days in just the same way as with *lǐ·'bày*. The source of this term is that the year was calculated by the cycle of the sun and the month (the lunar month, formerly used) by the cycle of the moon; only the stars were left for a third cycle, even if there was no real astronomical connection.

'This week' and 'this month' are made by prefixing the element *běn* 'source, origin' (compare *R̀·'běn* 'sun source'—'Japan'): *bén·lǐ·'bày* 'this week', *běn·'ywè* 'this month'. 'Next week' and 'next month' are made by prefixing *shyà* (compare *'dǐ·shyà* 'underside'): *shyà·lǐ·'bày* 'next week', *shyà·'ywè* 'next month'. 'Last week' and 'last month' are made by prefixing *shàng* (compare *'hé·dz-shang* 'above the box, top of the box'): *shàng·lǐ·'bày* 'last week', *shàng·'ywè* 'last month'. Then 'Sunday of last week', 'Tuesday of next week', and so on, are *'shàng·lǐ·bày-'r̀*, *'shyà·lǐ·bày-'èr*, and so on.

POINT 2. DOUBLING A VERB. You are already familiar with the habit of doubling a verb with *yi* between: *'kàn-yi·kàn* 'take a look' and so on. Verbs are also doubled without the *yi*: *'kàn·kan* 'to look for a while'. Here are some examples:

*Nǐ-'shwō·shwo 'gěy-wǒ-'tīng.* 'You talk a while for me to listen.'

*Wǒ-'tīng·ting nǐ-'shwō-de 'dwèy-bu·dwèy.* 'I'll listen to see if what you say is right.'

The two forms, one with *yi* between and one without, frequently have much the same meaning. But sometimes the use of the *yi* implies *trying, making an effort,* a feeling which does not accompany the form without *yi*.

POINT 3. *Měy.* *Měy* means 'every':

*'měy·tyān* or *'měy-yì·tyān* 'every day'

*'měy·ge-rén* or *'měy-yí·ge-rén* 'every person'

*měy-'sān·tyān* 'every three days'

POINT 4. *Hé, Túng, Gēn.* The three sentences

*Wǒ-'hé-tā·men 'chywù.*

*Wǒ-'túng-tā·men 'chywù.*

*Wǒ-'gēn-tā·men 'chywù.*

mean exactly the same thing: 'I go with them'. Some speakers use one most of the time, some another; it is purely a matter of personal preference.

POINT 5. *'Jyèw·shr* AND *Lyán.*

*Jyèw·shr-'chwāng·hu-shang-de-'bwō·li yě-'tsā·le.* '(They) even scrubbed the glass in the windows.'

*Lyán-'chwāng·hu-shang·de-'bwō·li yě-'tsā·le.* (same)

*'Jyèw·shr* or *lyán* both can mean 'even', if *yě* comes later in the sentence.

*Jyèw·shr shyǎng-'dzày-shwèy yě-'shwèy-bu·'jáw·le.* 'Even if (I) think of going to sleep again I can't.'

*'Jyèw·shr . . . yě* also means 'even if . . . nevertheless'; in this meaning *lyán . . . yě* cannot be used.

*Lyán-'tā háy-bú-'chywù-ne.* 'Even he doesn't go.'

*Tā-lyán-'nǐ dēw-bú-'rèn·shr.* 'He doesn't recognize even you'.

*Lyán. . . háy* or *lyán . . . dēw* are about like *lyán. . . yě.*

POINT 6. *'Wèy·de-shr̀.* 'For, in order to, in order that'. *Wèy* is the word 'for the reason that, for the purpose that', that you have in *wèy-'shém·me* 'why?'. *'Wèy·de*, then, with the element *de* making a noun out of it, means 'reason' or 'purpose' (though not used freely as a word with that meaning); and *'wèy·de-shr̀*, with *shr̀* 'is', means simply 'the reason (or purpose) is (that) . . .'.

POINT 7. NEW NOUNS.

*(yì·bǎ-)gwā-lyǎn-'dāw* '(one) razor'. Literally, 'scrape face knife'; 'knife' as a separate word is either *dāw*, *'dāw·dz*, or *'dāwr*: *'dà-dāw* 'sword'.

*(yì·tyáw-)'shěw·jīn* '(one) towel'. Literally, 'hand-towel', but the second part is not now used alone in this meaning.

*wú·shyàn-'dyàn* 'radio'—'without wire electricity'. *(Yì·tyáw-)'shyàn* is '(a) wire, thread'; *dyàn-'shyàn* is 'electric wire', wire for electric currents. The element *wú* 'without' is not used alone, only in compounds. To turn a radio on and off one uses the verbs *'kāy·kay* and *'gwān·shang*, as for a door and an electric light.

*gūng·shr̀·'fáng* 'public-office'; *gūng·'shr̀* 'public affairs' (with *gūng* of *gūng·'gùng-chì-'chē* 'bus' and *shr̀* 'affairs, business, work, matters'), and *fáng* of *'fáng·dz* 'house'. *Jè-shr̀-'yàw·jǐn·de-gūng·'shr̀, děy-'kwày-dzwò.* 'This is an important matter (document, piece of correspondence pertaining to governmental affairs), it must be done quickly.'

*shīn·'wén* 'news'. *Shīn* is 'new'; *wén* is a verb meaning 'to hear' or 'to smell' (but not any of the other senses), now no longer used with the former meaning (for which the verb is now *tīng*) except in certain compounds. In the sense of 'to smell': *Nǐ-'wén-yi·wén.*

'Take a sniff at it.'; *Wǒ 'wén-bu·'jyàn.* 'I can't smell anything.'; *hǎw-'wén* 'good to smell, having a good odor.' *Shīn·wén-'jř* 'new hearing paper' and *bàw-'jř* 'report paper' are both used for 'newspaper'; but usually the term is simply *bàw.*

*myàn·'bāw* 'bread'. *Myàn* means 'noodles' or other things made of wheat; *myàn-'fàn* refers to wheat foods—bread, noodles, cake, and so forth—as opposed to those made of rice for which there is another term. *Bāw* is the element of *yì·bāw-'yān* 'a pack of cigarettes', *shū·'bāw* 'briefcase'.

*jī-'dàn* 'egg'. *Jī* is 'chicken', particularly for the female or the small chicken: *jī-'rèw* is 'chicken meat'. *Dàn* is either 'egg' or any round or ovoid object; *shyà-'dàn* is 'to lay an egg'.

*hwáng-'yéw* 'butter'—'yellow oil'. Also called *nyéw-'yéw* 'cow oil'.

*nyéw-'nǎy* 'cow milk'; *nǎy* itself refers to any kind of milk.

*jyā·'fēy* is simply two syllables that sound something like the English 'coffee', French 'café', and so on. Coffee is not a Chinese drink at all—nor are dairy products, butter and milk, used in genuine Chinese foods. Coffee can simply be called by the English word and you will usually be understood.

*shwèy·'yī* 'sleep clothes'; with *yī* of *'yī·shang*, as in *dà·'yī* and so on.

*lǐng·'dày* 'necktie': *'lǐng·dz* 'collar'; *'dày·dz* 'belt' or any other long narrow thing; *kù·'dày* 'belt for trousers'. All these words use the measure *tyáw.*

Articles of clothing either take the measure *jyàn*, or, in the case of the long more-or-less belt-like articles, *tyáw.* *Kù·dz* 'trousers' is considered to be one piece of clothing in Chinese (not 'a pair of' trousers as in English), and the measure is *tyáw.* *'Wà·dz* 'socks, stockings', coming in a pair of identical pieces, is *jř* for one, *shwāng* for the pair.

POINT 8. NEW VERBS.

*dày* 'to put on'; *'dày·shàng* (RC) is used for hats, gloves, belts, neckties, ornaments, and so on, as opposed to *chwān* (*'chwān·shang* RC) for any piece of clothing that some part of the body goes through.

*'twō* 'to take off'; *twō·shyà* (RC) for any article of clothing which is 'put on' with the verb *chwān.*

*'tsā·gān* (RC) 'to rub dry'

*shwèy* 'to go to sleep'; *shwèy·jáw* (RC) 'to get to sleep'. *'Shwèy·dàw* (RC) 'to sleep until (a time)'.

*shǐng* 'to wake up'

*nàw* 'to be noisy': *'Bú·yàw-'nàw!* 'Don't bother me!'—'Don't be noisy!' *Tā-'nàw·de wǒ-'bù-néng-'shwèy.* 'He's noisy and I can't sleep.' Also *'rè·nàw*, literally 'hot and noisy', therefore 'busy, bustling with crowds and noises': *Times Square hěn-'rè·nàw.* *Nàw-'jūng* 'alarm clock.'

*nàw·shǐng* (RC) 'to wake someone up by making noise'.

POINT 9. *Lyǎw.* This form is used as a postverb with almost any verb as main verb. It is similar to the postverb *wán* which you have already learned.

*Tā-'chr̄-bu·lyǎw.* 'He can't finish eating (it).'

*Tā-'bí-wǒ 'dà-bu·lyǎw 'sān·swèy.* 'The excess of his age over mine can't be as much as three years.'

*Tsúng-'jè·tyáw-'jyē 'dzěw, 'jìn-le·lyǎw 'yì·lǐ-'dwō.* 'If you go by this street it can be shorter by more than a mile.'

*'Měy·gwo 'dǎ-de·lyǎw R̀·'běn.* 'The U. S. can beat Japan.'

*Lyán-R̀·'běn dēw-'dǎ-bu·lyǎw, yàw-'jè·me-dwō-de-'bīng yěw-'shém·me-'yùng?* 'If she couldn't even beat Japan, what use would there be for so many soldiers?'

*Hwǒ-'chē 'dzěw-de 'jè·me-yàng-'màn, 'jīn·tyan 'dàw-de·lyǎw-ma?* 'If the train goes this slowly, is it possible to arrive today?'

*'Jè·jyàn-'shr̀ tày-'nán, wǒ-'kàn tā-'dzwò-bu·lyǎw.* 'This matter is too hard; I see that he can't do it.'

The forms with *lyǎw* always have either *de* or *bu*, never just the main verb plus *lyǎw*.

## §3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1.

When do you get up each morning?

a. I get up at seven.
b. I wake up at 6:30 but I get up at seven.
c. I wake up at 6:30 but do not get up until 7.
d. I wake up at 6:30 but do not get up until half an hour later.
e. It's not regular.
f. Sometimes early, sometimes late.
g. I sleep until the time when my wife wakes me up.
h. I don't wake until the time when my wife wakes me up.
i. Even my wife can't wake me. (two ways)
j. Every morning the alarm-clock wakes me up.
k. Every morning the children wake me up.
l. Even after I am awakened, I don't want to get up.
m. But I have to get up. (two ways)
n. I got up after I had slept enough.
o. I'll get up after I've slept enough.
p. As soon as I've slept enough

*Nǐ-'měy·tyān-'dzǎw·chen 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'chǐ·láy?*

1. *Jyèw·shr wǒ-'tày·tay 'yě-jyàw-bu·'shíng-wǒ.*
2. *'Shwèy·dàw-wǒ-'tày·tay bá-wǒ 'jyàw·shǐng·le-de 'shŕ·hew.*
3. *Bù-yí·'dìng.*
4. *Jyèw·shr wó-'shǐng·le yǐ·'hèw, wó-yě-bú-'ywàn·yì 'chǐ·láy.*
5. *Wǒ-yī-'shwèy(-de) 'gèw·le jyèw-'chǐ·láy.*
6. *'Chī·dyǎn-jūng 'chǐ·láy.*
7. *Dàw·le-'shŕ·hew, wǒ-'tày·tay jyèw-yí·'dìng 'jyàw-wó 'chǐ·láy.*
8. *Wǒ-'shwèy(-de) 'gèw·le jyèw-'chǐ·láy·le.*
9. *Lyèw·dyǎn-'bàn 'shǐng, kě·shr 'chī·dyǎn tsáy-'chǐ·láy.*
10. *Lyèw·dyǎn-'bàn 'shǐng, kě·shr 'bú-dàw-'bàn·dyǎn-jūng-yǐ·'hèw wǒ-bù-'chǐ·láy.*
11. *'Bú-dàw-wǒ-'tày·tay 'bá-wǒ 'jyàw·shǐng·le-de shŕ·hew, wǒ-bù-'shǐng.*
12. *Wǒ-yī-'shwèy(-de) 'gèw·le jyèw-'chǐ·láy·le.*
13. *Kě·shr wǒ-'bù-néng-bù-'chǐ·láy.*

I'll get up.
q. As soon as I had slept enough I got up.
r. When it's time my wife will certainly make me get up.

2.

What do you do from the time you get up to the time you to go work?
a. What I do every day.
b. Why do you ask me?
c. I won't tell you.
d. I'll tell you all I know.
e. Whatever I know I'll tell you.
f. I go to wash my hands and face.

14. *Lyèw·dyăn-'bàn 'shĭng, kĕ·shr 'bú-dàw-'chī·dyăn bù-'chĭ·láy.*
15. *Kĕ·shr wó-'déy-'chĭ·láy.*
16. *'Yĕw·de-,shŕ·hew 'wăn, 'yĕw·de-shŕ·hew 'dzăw.*
17. *Jyèw·shr wŏ-'tày·tay yĕ-'bá-wŏ 'jyàw-bu·'shĭng.*
18. *Wŏ-'shwèy(-de) 'gèw·le jyèw-'chĭ·láy.*
19. *'Mĕy·tyān-'dzăw·chen nàw-'jūng bá-wo 'nàw·shĭng·le.*
20. *'Mĕy·tyān-'dzăw·chen 'háy·dz·men bá-wo 'nàw·shĭng·le.*

*Tsúng-ní-'chĭ·lay dàw-nĭ-'chywù-dzwò-'shr̆-de shŕ·hew, nĭ-dzwò-shém·me-'shr̆?*
1. *Wŏ-chywù shí-'shĕw, shí-'lyăn.*
2. *Wŏ-yùng-gwā-lyăn-'dāw gwā-'lyăn.*
3. *Wŏ-yùng-gwā-lyăn-'dāw bă-'hú·dz 'gwā-shyà·chywù.*

g. I use soap and water to wash my face.
h. I use a toothbrush to brush my teeth.
i. I shave with a razor.
j. I shave my beard with a razor.
k. I shave my beard off with a razor.
l. I put on my shoes.
m. My shoes fit.
n. My shoes don't fit.
o. I take off my nightclothes.
p. I put on my going-out clothes.
q. I put on my trousers, socks, shirt, and hat.
r. Go out of my house.
s. Go out of my front door,
t. into the street.
u. I've told you whatever I know.

4. *Dzwò-'mĕy·tyān-dzwò-de-'shr̆.*
5. *Wŏ-'jr̄·dàw-de dēw-'gàw·su-nĭ-le.*
6. *Nĭ-wèy-'shém·me 'wèn-wŏ?*
7. *'Chwān·shang wŏ-'chū·chywù-chwān-de-'yī·shang.*
8. *Wŏ·de-'shyé hé·'shr̆.*
9. *Wŏ-yùng-'yí·dz hé-'shwĕy shí-'lyăn.*
10. *Wó-bă-shwèy·'yī 'twō·shyà·chywù.*
11. *Tsúng-'chyán-mén dzĕw·chū·chywu.*
12. *'jìn·dàw-'jyē-li.*
13. *Wŏ-yùng-gwā-lyăn-'dāw gwā-'hú·dz.*
14. *Wŏ-'jr̄·dàw-shém·me jyèw-'gàw·su-nĭ shém·me.*
15. *Tsúng-'fáng·dz-li 'chū·chywù.*
16. *Wŏ-'chwān·shang-'shyé.*
17. *Wŏ-bú-'gàw·su-nĭ.*
18. *Wŏ-yùng-yá-'shwā·dz shwā-'yá.*

### 3.

What else do you do before you go out?

a. Oh! I forgot to say that I also have breakfast at home.

b. I eat eggs, bread, and butter.

c. I drink milk, water, and coffee.

d. In the morning nobody drinks wine.

e. I listen to the radio while eating breakfast.

f. I eat breakfast while listening to the radio.

g. While eating breakfast I don't listen to the radio, nor do I read the morning paper.

h. I listen to the radio only after I've finished eating breakfast.

19. *'Chwān·shang 'kù·dz, 'wà·dz, chèn·'shān, 'dày·shang 'màw·dz.*

20. *Wǒ-'jř·dàw-de dēw-'gàw·su-nǐ.*

21. *Wǒ·de-'shyé bù-hé·'shř.*

*'Chū·chywù-yǐ·'chyán, 'háy-dzwò-'shém·me-ne?*

1. *'Dzǎw·chen 'shwéy dēw-bù-hē-'jyěw.*

2. *Wǒ-'yì-chř·wán·le-dzǎw-'fàn 'jyèw-tīng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn.*

3. *Wǒ-chř·'wán·le-,dzǎw-'fàn, tsáy-tīng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn.*

4. *'Èw! Wǒ-'wàng·le-shwō wǒ-'háy-dzày-'jyā-li chř-dzǎw-'fàn.*

5. *Bú-dàw chř·'wán·le dzǎw-'fàn-de shŕ·hew, wǒ-bù-'kāy·kay-wú·shyàn-'dyàn.*

6. *Wǒ-chř-jī-'dàn, myàn·'bāw, hé-hwáng-'yéw.*

i. After I've finished eating breakfast, then I listen to the radio right away.

j. Right after I eat breakfast I listen to the radio.

k. Don't listen to the radio right after breakfast!

l. I don't turn on the radio until after I've had breakfast. (two ways)

### 4.

a. Don't go away with the radio on! (two ways)

b. Turn off the radio and then leave.

c. The news from the radio is the same as that in the newspapers.

7. *'Tsáy-chř·'wán·le dzǎw-'fàn, 'bú·yàw 'jyèw-tīng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn.*

8. *Wǒ-'tīng·je-wú·shyàn-'dyàn chř-dzǎw-'fàn.*

9. *Wǒ-'hē-nyéw-'nǎy, 'shwěy, hé-jyā·'fēy.*

10. *Bù-chř·'wán·le dzǎw-'fàn wǒ-bù-'kāy·kay wú·shyàn-'dyàn.*

11. *Wǒ-'chř·je-dzǎw-'fàn tīng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn.*

12. *'Chř·je-dzǎw-'fàn-de shŕ·hew, wǒ-'bù-tīng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn, 'yě-bú-kàn-dzǎw-'bàw.*

13. *Wǒ-'chř·'wán·le dzǎw-'fàn jyèw-tīng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn.*

1. *Wú·shyàn-'dyàn-lǐ-de-shīn·'wén bǐ-'bàw-shàng-de 'láy-de 'dzǎw.*

2. *'Yīn·wèy yì-yěw-'shř jyèw-'kě·yi yùng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn 'gàw·su-rén.*

d. The news from the radio comes earlier than that in the newspapers.
e. The news from the radio comes faster than that in the newspapers.
f. Because as soon as there is an event you can use a radio to tell people.
g. The radio is much faster than the newspaper.
h. I have read through the newspaper.
i. There is enough time. I can finish reading the newspaper.
j. I shouldn't talk about radio and newspaper any more.
k. I must get back to talking about what I do every morning.
l. After everything is done, I go to the office.

3. *Wǒ-yīng·gāy 'hwéy·láy-'dzày-shwō wó-'měy·tyān-'dzǎw·chen 'dzwò-de-'shr̀.*
4. *Shŕ·hew hěn-'gèw. Wǒ-'ké·yi bǎ-'bàw 'kàn·wán·le.*
5. *'Bú·yàw-'kāy·je-wú·shyàn-'dyàn jyèw-'dzěw.*
6. *Wú·shyàn-'dyàn-li-de-shīn·'wén gēn-'bàw-shang-de yí·'yàng.*
7. *'Dēw-wán·le, wǒ-jyèw-dàw-gūng·shr̀·'fáng chywù-le.*
8. *Wú·shyàn-'dyàn-li-de-shīn·'wén bǐ-'bàw-shang-de 'láy-de 'kwày.*
9. *'Kāy·je-wú·shyàn-'dyàn-de shŕ·hew 'bú·yàw-'dzěw.*
10. *Wú·shyàn-'dyàn bǐ-'bàw 'kwày-de 'dwō.*
11. *Wó-bǎ-'bàw kàn·'wán·le.*
12. *'Gwān·shang wú·shyàn-'dyàn dzày-'dzěw.*
13. *Wǒ-'bù-yīng·gāy 'dzày-shwō wú·shyàn-'dyàn gēn-'bàw-de-'shr̀-le.*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY?

§5. REVIEW BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE.

## SECTION C: BASIC SENTENCES

(Group II)

MR. ROSS CONTINUES HIS DESCRIPTION OF HIS DAILY ROUTINE.

**Record 23B, after spiral.**

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| MR. ROSS: | |
| I leave home very early every day. | *'Měy·tyān tsúng-'jyā-li 'chū·láy-de hén-'dzǎw.* |
| I walk slowly to the office. | *Màn·'mán·de-'dzěw·dàw-gūng·shr̀·'fáng-chywù.* |
| a building | *'léw* |
| third floor | *'sān·tséng-léw* |
| The office is on the third floor. | *Gūng·shr̀·'fáng dzày-'sān·tséng-léw-shang.* |
| to ascend *or* get on | *'shàng* |
| to descend *or* get off | *'shyà* |
| stairsteps | *léw·'tī* |
| Going upstairs or downstairs, you have to use the stairway. | *Shàng-'léw, shyà-'léw, 'dēw-déy-'dzěw-léw·'tī.* |

Mr. Wáng:

| | |
|---|---|
| How many hours' work do you do a day? | *Yì·'tyān dzwò-'jǐ·dyǎn-jūng-de-'shr̀?* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| It depends. | *Bù-yí·'dìng.* |
| A. M. | *'shàng·wǔ* |
| mostly | *dwō-'bàn* |
| Most mornings I'm in the office. | *'Shàng·wǔ dwō-'bàn-dzày-gūng·shr̀·'fáng-li.* |

**Record 24A, beginning.**

| | |
|---|---|
| telegram | *dyàn-'bàw* |
| return wire *or* answer | *hwéy-'dyàn* |
| If I get telegrams, I have to send answers. | *'Rè·shr shēw·'dàw·le dyàn-'bàw, jyèw-déy-'dǎ-hwéy-'dyàn.* |
| times | *'tsz̀* |
| telephone message | *dyàn-'hwà* |
| I often make telephone calls too. | *Yě-'dá hěn-'dwō 'tsz̀ dyàn-'hwà.* |
| typewriter | *dǎ·dz̀·'jī* |
| letters | *'shìn* |
| Sometimes I write letters on the typewriter. | *'Yěw·de-'shŕ·hew yùng-dǎ·dz̀·'jī shyě-'shìn.* |
| noon | *'shǎng·wu* |
| downstairs | *léw-'shyà* |
| At noon I go downstairs and eat a Chinese meal. | *'Shǎng·wu dàw-léw-'shyà-chywù chr̄-Jūng·gwo-'fàn.* |
| often | *'cháng·cháng* |
| shredded pork with fried rice | *rèw-'sz̄ chǎw-'fàn* |
| I often eat pork with fried rice. | *'Cháng·cháng-chr̄ rèw-'sz̄ chǎw-'fàn.* |
| fish fried in a sauce | *húng·shāw-'ywú* |
| Sometimes I eat fried fish. | *'Yěw·de-'shŕ·hew chr̄-húng·shāw-'ywú.* |

Mr. Wáng:

| | |
|---|---|
| to have charge of, *or* to manage | *'gwǎn* |
| What sort of work are you in charge of at the office? | *Nǐ-dzày-gūng·shr̀·'fáng-li 'gwǎn-shém·me-'shr̀?* |

Mr. Ross:

| | |
|---|---|
| photography | *jàw·'shyàng* |
| a section *or* part | *'bù·fen* |
| I'm in charge (of the business) of the photography section. | *Wó-gwǎn-jàw·'shyàng yí·'bù·fen·de-'shr̀.* |
| I work for an American newspaper-publisher | *Wó-'gěy 'Měy·gwo·de yì·jyā-bàw·'gwǎn dzwò-'shr̀.* |
| When something important takes place in China, I take photographs of it. | *'Jūng·gwo yěw-shém·me-'yàw·jǐn·de-'shr̀, wó-'bǎ-tā 'jàw·shya·lay.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| developed and printed pictures | *shyàng·'pyàn* |
| post office | *yéw·jèng-'jywú* |
| to mail | *'jì* |
| I take the printed pictures and mail them from the post office to the United States. | *Bǎ-shyàng·'pyàn tsúng-yéw·jèng-'jywú 'jì·dàw-'Měy·gwo-chywù.* |

**Record 24B, beginning.**

MR. WÁNG:

| | |
|---|---|
| daytime | *'báy-tyān* |
| You've described what you do in the daytime, | *'Báy-tyān-de-'shř nǐ-'dēw-'shwō·le.* |
| nighttime | *'yè-li* |
| How about in the evening and at night? | *'Wǎn·shang gēn-'yè-li-ne?* |

MR. ROSS:

| | |
|---|---|
| public park | *gūng·'ywán* |
| In the evening after eating dinner I go to the park and take a walk. | *'Wǎn'shang 'chř·wán·le-'fàn dàw-gūng·'ywán-chywù 'dzěw-yi·dzěw.* |
| rain | *'ywǔ* |
| If it's raining, I stay home and listen to the radio. | *Rè·shr 'shyà-'ywǔ, jyèw-dzày-'jyā-li tīng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn.* |

## SECTION D: WORD STUDY

§1. REVIEW BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE ENGLISH.

§2. WORD STUDY.

POINT 1. UPSTAIRS AND DOWNSTAIRS. Any dwelling or office building of more than one story is a *léw.* Chinese houses, especially in North China where the wind is strong and it is cold in winter, are usually of one floor; there are more houses of two floors in South China. A 'stairway' is *léw·'tī*; compare *'tī·dz* 'ladder', *dyàn·'tī* (*dyàn* 'electricity'), 'elevator'. 'To go up a stairway' or 'to go up a ladder' is *'shàng-léw·'tī*, *'shàng-'tī·dz*; 'to go down a stairway' is *'shyà-léw·'tī*; 'to walk on a stairway' is *'dzěw-léw·'tī*.

'Upstairs' and 'downstairs' are *léw-'shàng* and *léw-,'shyà*. 'To go upstairs' is either *dàw-léw-,'shàng-chywù* or *shàng-'léw*; 'to go downstairs' is either *dàw-léw-,'shyà-chywù* or *shyà-'léw*. *Yùng-dyàn·'tī shàng-'léw* 'to go upstairs on an elevator.'

*Tséng* is a measure meaning 'layer, story': *'lyǎng·tséng·de-'léw* 'two-story building', but *'èr·tséng-léw* 'second floor of a building', the latter can also be *dì-'èr·tséng-léw.*

POINT 2. *Shàng* AND *Shyà.* These two words which you have had in other connections are used as verbs in certain combinations.

(1) For getting onto and off of a means of conveyance: *shàng-'chē* 'to get on a wheeled vehicle'; *shàng-dyàn-'chē* 'to get on a streetcar'; *shyà-hwǒ-'chē* 'to get off a train'.

(2) *Shàng* is used for *dàw* 'to go to', or for *dàw . . . chywù*: *Shàng-Nyēw·'Ywē* 'to go to New York'; *shàng-'jyē* 'to go to

the street' (business-part of town); *shàng-'shywé* 'to go to school'.

(3) *Shyà* is used in the combination *shyà-'ywǔ* 'to be falling rain'—'to be raining', and in a similar combination for 'to be snowing': *shyà-'dàn* 'to lay an egg'.

(4) Both are used as described in point 1, for going upstairs and downstairs.

POINT 3. TIMES OF DAY. 'Noon' is *'shǎng·wu*. The first element is not often used alone; the second, *wǔ*, is found in other combinations: *wǔ·'fàn* 'noon meal'; *wǔ·'bàw* 'a newspaper which comes out at noon' (compare *wǎn-'bàw* 'evening paper', *dzǎw-'bàw* 'morning paper'). *'Shàng·wǔ* and *'shyà·wǔ* are terms for 'AM' or 'morning' and 'PM' or 'afternoon-evening'; other terms for the same are *'shàng·ban·tyan* 'upper half of the day' and *shyà·ban·tyan* 'lower half of the day'. 'Daytime', as opposed to the dark part of the twenty-four hours, is called *'báy-tyān*, with *báy* 'white, light'; 'nighttime' is *'yè-li*, often made *hēy-'yè·li* 'dark nighttime' to contrast with the use of *báy* 'light' for daytime.

POINT 4. FOODS. The two terms for kinds of food given in the Basic Sentences were *húng·shāw-'ywú* 'fish fried in a sauce', and *rèw-'sž chǎw-'fàn* 'pork slices with fried rice'. *Shāw* means 'to burn': *Jè·swǒ-'fáng·dz jáw·le-'hwǒ; méy·yěw 'yì·dyǎn-jūng jyèw-'shāw·wán·le.* 'This house caught fire; in less than an hour it burned down.' *Húng* is 'red', used just like *hwáng* 'yellow', *hēy* 'black', and *báy* 'white'. *Húng·'shāw* is a verb meaning to cook in a certain way; first you roast the meat over a fire until it is red, then add a sauce and let it simmer. *Ywú* is 'fish'.

Since the Chinese eat pork a great deal, *rèw* 'meat', if not otherwise indicated, is taken to mean pork; *jī-'rèw* is 'chicken meat', *nyéw-'rèw* 'beef'. *Sž* means 'silk fiber, silk thread'; as a cooking term it means long and narrow thread-like slices of something, as *rèw-'sž* 'long narrow slices of meat, or of pork'; *jī-'sž* 'long narrow slices of chicken'. A flat slice of pork would be *rèw·'pyàn* or *rèw·'pyàr* (compare *shyàng·'pyàn* 'developed and printed photograph'); the word *pyàn* refers to the flat shape.

*Chǎw* is 'to fry'; thus *chǎw-'myàn* 'fried noodles', our Chow Mein; *chǎw-'fàn* 'fried rice'; *yùng·'yéw chǎw-'fàn* 'to fry rice with oil'; *chǎw-ywú·'pyàr* 'fried fish slices.'

POINT 5. POST OFFICE. The word *yéw·jèng-'jywú* 'Post Office' is *yéw·'jèng* 'Postal Administration' plus *jywú* 'office, bureau'—compare *dyàn-bàw-'jywú* 'telegraph office', *dyàn-hwà-'jywú* 'telephone station' (place where there is an exchange, or a set of phones which can be used). *Yéw·'jèng* is *yéw* (not used alone) 'to mail', plus *jèng* (also not used alone) 'government, political administration.'

To mail a letter is *jì-'shìn*; *Bǎ-'jè·shyē-'shìn 'jì·dàw-'Měy·gwo-chywù.* 'Mail these letters to the United States.'; *Wǒ-yàw-gěy-'gē·ge 'jì-yì·bāw-'chr̄·de.* 'I'm going to mail a package of eatables to my older brother.'

A stamp is *yéw·'pyàw*, with the *yéw* just given above, and *pyàw* as in *chyán-'pyàw·dz* 'bill (money)'. A three-cent stamp: *'sān·fēn·de-yéw·'pyàw* (*'sān·fēn-'chyán-de-yéw·'pyàw*).

POINT 6. TAKING PHOTOGRAPHS. *Jàw·'shyàng* is 'photography, photograph'; *jàw-'shyàng* is 'to take a picture'. *Jàw* means 'to shine', 'to throw light on an object' (literally, not by explaining it): *Dyàn-'dēng bǎ-'wū·dz 'jàw-de hěn-'lyàng.* 'The electric light has lighted the room and made it very light.'; *Yùng-shěw-dyàn-'dēng* ('hand electric light'—'flashlight') *'jàw-yi·jàw.* 'To use a flashlight and shine it on something.' *Shyàng* is used as a noun meaning 'likeness, portrait, photograph': *'Jàw-yì·jāng-'shyàng* 'to take a picture'; but *yì·jāng-jàw·'shyàng* 'a photograph'. *'Jàw-shyà(·láy)* (RC) 'to make a photographic report on something, to "shoot it up"'. A 'camera' is *jàw·shyàng·'jī*, with *jī* 'machine'.

POINT 7. TELEGRAPH, TELEPHONE, TYPEWRITER. A telegraph message is *dyàn-'bàw* 'electric report'; a telephone message or conversation is *dyàn-'hwà* 'electric talk'. *Dyàn·bàw·'jī* and *dyàn·hwà·'jī*, with *jī* 'machine' (as in *fēy·'jī* 'airplane') are 'telegraph apparatus' and 'telephone'. An answering message on telegraph or telephone is *hwéy-'dyàn* 'return electricity'.

'To typewrite' is *dǎ-'dż* 'to strike words'; a typewriter, then, is *dǎ·dż·'jī* 'strike word machine.' This verb *dǎ* means originally 'to strike', but it is used in many combinations in which the meaning is not 'strike' at all; the specific meaning derives from the words with which it is used. Thus: *dǎ-dyàn-'bàw* 'to send a telegram'; *dǎ-dyàn-'hwà* 'to send a phone message, to use a telephone'; *dǎ-hwéy-'dyàn* 'to send a return message by telegraph, or to phone someone back'; *dǎ-'bāw* 'to make up a package'; *dá-'shwěy* 'to draw water'; *dǎ·kāy-'bāw* 'to open a package'; *dǎ-'pū·gay* 'to roll up bedding'; *dǎ-'ywú* 'to fish'; *dá-'jyěw* 'to buy wine'; *dǎ-'mén* 'to knock on a door'; *dǎ·'swàn* 'to calculate, to plan'; *dǎ-'jàng* 'to wage war, fight'.

POINT 8. *Bù·fen.* This word is a measure meaning 'a section, part, division', of a business or enterprise; *jàw·'shyàng-yí·'bù·fen* 'that section which deals with photography'.

*Bù* means 'a section, part, ministry': *běy·'bù* 'northern region' (*'běy·byān* means rather 'north border'); *'Měy·gwo-jūng·'bù* 'the central region of the United States'; *Shāng·'bù* 'ministry of commerce' (*'shāng·rén* 'merchant'); *Núng·'bù* 'ministry of agriculture' (*'núng·rén* 'farmer'); *Núng·shāng·'bù* 'ministry of commerce and agriculture.'

*Fēn* is a verb meaning 'to divide into parts': *'fēn·kāy* (RC) 'to push apart'.

POINT 9. *Tsż.* This is a measure meaning 'time, occurrence'. *Tā-'láy·gwo 'yí·tsż.* 'He has come once.' *Tā-'láy·gwo 'sān·tsż.* 'He has come three times'. *'Jè·tsż tā-'bù-néng-bù-gěy-'chyán jyèw-'dzěw.* 'This time he can't just walk off without paying.' *'Nà·tsż tā 'méy-gěy-chyán jyèw-'dzěw·le.* 'That time he went away without paying.' *'Shàng·tsż tā-'láy-de-shŕ·hew 'tyān háy-'lěng-ne.* 'Last time when he came it was still cold.' *'Shyà·tsż 'bú·yàw-jyàw-tā 'chū·chywù.* 'Next time don't let him out.' There are also forms like *shàng·'lyǎng·tsż* 'the last two times', *shyà·'sān·tsż* 'the next three times', and so on.

POINT 10. *Bàw·gwǎn.* This word means 'newspaper publisher' or 'newspaper publishing company'. The *gwăn* is the one which occurs in *fàn-'gwăn·dz* 'restaurant'; the meaning is 'establishment, enterprise' in general; *'gwăn·dz* is 'small establishment, inn'. *jàw·shyàng·'gwăn* 'photographers' shop.'

## §3. WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1.

What do you do in the daytime?

*Nĭ-'báy·tyān 'dēw-dzwò-'shém·me-'shr̀?*

a. I work in the office.
b. I teach half a day in school.
c. Before noon I teach in a school.
d. In the afternoon I study at home.
e. I am manager of a small store.
f. I am in charge of six clerks.
g. I go out to take photographs.
h. I drive a car.
i. I pilot an airplane.
j. I work in the Post Office.
k. I'm a mail man.
l. I'm in charge of writing letters.
m. I sell stamps.

1. *Wŏ-kāy-fēy·'jī.*
2. *Wó-gwán-shyĕ-'shìn.*
3. *Wŏ-'hwèy-dă-'dz̆.*
4. *'Shàng·wŭ gēn-'shyà·wŭ 'dēw-dzwò-'fàn.*
5. *'Yĕw·de-shŕ·hew wŏ-dàw-gūng·'ywán-chywù 'dzĕw-yi·dzĕw.*
6. *Wŏ-dzwò-de-'shr̀ hĕn-yàw·'jĭn.*
7. *Dzày-yí·ge-shywé·'shyàw-li jyāw-'bàn·tyān·de-'shū.*
8. *Wŏ-dzày-yí·ge-shyăw-'pù·dz-li dzwò-jīng·'lĭ.*
9. *Wŏ-kāy-'chē.*
10. *Wŏ-shr̀ sùng-'shìn-de.*

n. I use a typewriter to write letters.
o. I can type.
p. I can type very fast.
q. I cook.
r. I cook morning and afternoon.
s. I cook before noon and also in the afternoon.
t. I till the land.
u. Occasionally I go to the park to take a walk.
v. I'm busy the whole day.
w. I do very important work. (two ways)
x. A busy man does not necessarily do important work.

11. *Wŏ-mày-yéw·'pyàw.*
12. *Wó-dă-'dz̆ 'dă-de hĕn-'kwày.*
13. *Wŏ-'shàng·wŭ dzwò-'fàn, 'shyà·wú 'yĕ-dzwò-'fàn.*
14. *Wŏ-'yì·tyān dēw-'máng.*
15. *'Máng-rén-dzwò-de-'shr̀ bù-yí·'dìng-shr̀-yàw·'jĭn·de.*
16. *'Shàng·wú wŏ-dzày-shywé·'shyàw-li jyāw-'shū.*
17. *Wó-gwăn-'lyèw·ge-'hwŏ·ji.*
18. *Wŏ-dzày-Yéw·jèng-'jywú dzwò-'shr̀.*
19. *Wŏ-yùng-dă·dz̆·'jī shyĕ-'shìn.*
20. *Wŏ-dzwò-'fàn.*
21. *Wŏ-jùng-'dì.*
22. *Wŏ-dzwò-hĕn-'yàw·jĭn-de-'shr̀.*
23. *Wŏ-dzày-gūng·shr̀·'fáng-li dzwò-'shr̀.*
24. *'Shyà·wú wŏ-dzày-'jyā-li nyàn-'shū.*
25. *Wŏ-'chū·chywù jàw-'shyàng.*

### 2.

What do you eat at noon?

a. Every day I eat the same kind of food.
b. I eat two bowls of rice.
c. I eat fried rice with pork shreds.
d. I eat fried rice with beef shreds.
e. I eat fried rice with chicken shreds.
f. I eat fried pork shreds.
g. I eat eggs.
h. I eat pork slices.
i. I eat slices of fish.
j. I eat roast beef.
k. I eat roast chicken.
l. Roast fish is better to eat than roast beef.
m. You shouldn't compare beef with fish.
n. Beef should not be compared with fish.
o. Beef can't be compared with fish.
p. How can beef be compared with fish?

*Nǐ-'shǎng·wu chr̄-'shém·me?*

1. *Chr̄-jī-'dàn.*
2. *Chr̄-nyéw-rèw-'sž-chǎw-'fàn.*
3. *'Měy·tyān 'chr̄-de dēw-yí·'yàng.*
4. *Yùng-'ywú-chǎw-de-jī-'dàn 'dzwèy-hǎw-'chr̄.*
5. *Nyéw-'rèw bù-yīng·gāy ná·láy gēn-'ywú 'bǐ.*
6. *Chr̄-húng·shāw-'jī.*
7. *Chr̄-rèw·'pyàr.*
8. *Chr̄-'jī-'sž-chǎw-'fàn.*
9. *Chr̄-'lyáng·wǎn-'fàn.*
10. *Wǒ-'chr̄-bu·lyǎw.*
11. *Nyéw-'rèw 'bù-néng-gēn-'ywú 'bǐ.*
12. *Húng·shāw-'ywú bǐ-húng·'shāw-nyéw-'rèw hǎw-'chr̄.*
13. *Chr̄-ywú·'pyàr.*
14. *Chr̄-'chǎw-rèw-'sž.*
15. *Chr̄-rèw-'sž-chǎw-'fàn.*
16. *Wǒ-'chr̄-bu·wán.*
17. *Bù-yīng·gāy ná-'ywú gēn-nyéw-'rèw 'bǐ.*

q. Eggs fried with fish is best to eat.
r. I can't eat it all. (two ways)

18. *Chr̄-húng·shāw-nyéw-'rèw.*
19. *Nyéw-'rèw 'dzěm·me-néng-gēn-'ywú 'bǐ-ne?*

### 3.

What is he coming to do?

a. To operate an elevator.
b. To go upstairs on an elevator
c. To go downstairs on an elevator.
d. To do photography.
e. To photograph that pretty house.
f. To photograph this pretty girl.
g. To cook food which is good to eat.
h. To look at you.
i. To look at good photographs.
j. To look at the photographs which you took.
k. To look at the photograph of you.
l. To look at that photograph which you gave me.
m. To look at that photograph which you took of me.

*'Tā-láy dzwò-'shém·me?*

1. *Láy 'kàn-nǐ-'géy-wǒ-de 'nà·jāng-shyàng·'pyàn.*
2. *Láy 'kàn-'hǎw·de-shyàng·'pyàn.*
3. *Láy 'kàn-nǐ.*
4. *Láy 'gěy-jè·ge-hǎw-'kàn-de-nywǔ-'háy·dz jàw-'shyàng.*
5. *Láy jàw-'shyàng.*
6. *Láy dzwò-dyàn·'tī shàng-'léw.*
7. *Láy jì-'shìn.*
8. *Láy 'dǎ-dyàn-'bàw.*
9. *Láy 'shyēw·li tā·de-jyèw-'shyé.*
10. *Láy 'shr̀-yi·shr̀ shīn-'yī·shang.*
11. *Láy kàn-'nǐ-géy-wǒ 'jàw-de 'nà·jāng-'shyàng.*
12. *Láy 'kàn-nǐ-'jàw-de-'shyàng.*
13. *Láy dzwò-hǎw-'chr̄-de-*

212

n. To try on the new shoes.
o. To try on the new suit.
p. To see if his pants fit or not.
q. To have his old shoes repaired.
r. To see if his old shoes have been repaired.
s. To send telegrams.
t. To send a reply by telegraph.
u. To mail some letters.

'*fàn.*

14. *Láy gĕy-nà·swó-hăw-'kàn-de-'fáng·dz jàw-'shyàng.*
15. *Láy dzwò-dyàn·'lĭ shyà-'léw.*
16. *Láy kāy-dyàn·'lĭ.*
17. *Láy 'dă-hwéy-'dyàn.*
18. *Láy 'kàn·kan tā·de-jyèw-'shyé shyēw·li-'hăw-le mĕy·yĕw.*
19. *Láy 'kàn·kan tā·de-'kù·dz hé·'shr̀-bù-hé·'shr̀.*
20. *Láy 'shr̀-yi·shr̀ shīn-'shyé.*
21. *Láy 'kàn-nĭ·de-shyàng·'pyàn.*

§4. WHAT DID YOU SAY?

§5. REVIEW BASIC SENTENCES COVERING THE CHINESE.

## SECTION E: LISTENING IN

§1. WORD-STUDY CHECK-UP.

§2. LISTENING; IN.

CONVERSATION 1. ONE MORNING MR. ROSS TELLS MR. WÁNG ABOUT HIS FRIEND MR. DAVID.

**Record 24B, after spiral.**

Ross: *Jīn·tyan-'shyà·wŭ 'máng-bu·máng?**
Wáng: '*Bù-máng.*
'*Jīn·tyan shr̀-lĭ·bày-'sān.*
'*Shyà·wŭ bú-yùng-dàw-shywé·shyàw-chywù.*
Ross: '*Nà·me, 'néng-bu·néng dày-'yí·ge-rén chywù-măy-'dūng·shi?*
Wáng: '*Shwéy-a? Wŏ-'rèn·shr-tā-ma?*
Ross: *Wó-'shyáng nĭ-bú-'rèn·shr-tā.*
*Shr̀-yí·ge-'Mĕy·gwo-rén, shìng-'David.*
'*Jūng·gwo-shìng shr̀-'Dày.*
Wáng: *Tā 'jù·dzày-shém·me-'dì·fang?*
Ross: *Yí·ge-fàn·'dyàn-li.*
*Tā-shr̀ 'chyán-jī·tyān 'dàw-de.*
*Dzwó·tyan-'wăn·shang tā-géy-wo dă-dyàn-'hwà-lay.*
*Tā-shwō 'jīn·tyan yàw-chywù măy-'dūng·shi.*
'*Wèn-wŏ 'néng-bu·néng 'dày-tā dàw-'jyē-shang-chywu.*
*Wŏ-shwō wŏ-'néng-chywù.*
*Kĕ·shr-'jīn·tyan wó-yĕw-'byé·de-shr̀,*
*bù-'néng-gēn-ta-'chywù-le.*
*Swó·yi chíng-'nĭ 'dày-ta-chywù.*
Wáng: *Dàw-shém·me-'dì·fang-chywù 'jăw-tā-ne?*
Ross: *Wŏ-'gēn-nĭ 'dàw-tā-'jù-de-fàn·'dyàn-chywu.*
*Dzày-'nà·li 'géy-nĭ·men 'jyè·shàw.*
Wáng: '*Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'chywù?*
Ross: '*Chr̄·wán·le-wŭ·'fàn chywù.*

---

* This sentence is accidentally repeated in the record.

CONVERSATION 2. THAT AFTERNOON ABOUT TWO, AFTER INTRODUCING THEM, MR. WÁNG SAYS:

**Record 25A, beginning.**

**Wáng:** *'Dày-shyān·sheng shwō-de Jūng·gwo-'hwà gēn-'Lwó-shyān·sheng 'shwō-de yí·'yàng hǎw.*

**David:** *'Dēw-'wàng·le.*
*Yǐ·'chyán dzày-'Jūng·gwo-de shŕ·hew,*
*wǒ-'ày-tīng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn.*
*Wú·shyàn-'dyàn-li-'shwō-de-'hwà wǒ-'dēw-dǔng.*
*'Dzwó·tyan tīng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn-de shŕ·hew,*
*yěw-hěn-'dwō-de-'hwà wǒ-'bù-dǔng-le.*

**Ross:** *Nǐ-'jè·li yěw-wú·shyàn-'dyàn-ma?*

**David:** *'Wǒ-'méy·yěw, fàn·'dyàn·de-'jīng·lǐ-yěw.*
*'Dzwó·tyan shr̀-dàw-léw-'shyà 'jīng·lǐ·de-'wū·dz-li 'tīng-de.*

**Ross:** *'Dày-shyān·sheng yǐ·'chyán dzày-'Běy·píng jyāw-'shū.*
*'Jyāw·gwo 'wǔ·lyèw·'nyán.*
*'Hèw·lay hwéy-'Měy·gwo-chywù-le.*

**Wáng:** *'Nǎ-yì·nyán 'hwéy·chywù-de?*

**David:** *'Mín·gwó èr·shr-'lyèw·nyán 'sān·ywè.*
*'Nà·ge-shŕ·hew R̀·'běn gēn-'Jūng·gwo 'háy-méy-dǎ-'jàng-ne.*

**Ross:** *'Dwèy-bu·chǐ, wó-déy-'dzěw·le.*
*Lǐ·bày-'r̀ wǒ-láy-'kàn-nǐ.*
*'Wáng-shyān·sheng, 'děng-yi·děng 'chíng-nǐ gēn-'Dày-shyān·sheng mǎy-'dūng·shi-chywu.*

CONVERSATION 3. MR. WÁNG ASKS MR. DAVID WHAT HE WANTS TO BUY.

**Wáng:** *Dēw-shr̀-mǎy-'shém·me?*

**David:** *Wǒ-yàw-'mǎy shí-'lyǎn-'yùng-de-dūng·shi.*
*Háy-yàw-mǎy-'pí·bāw, chá-'wǎn, shìn-'jř, yéw·'pyàu hé-jī·shwāng-'wà·dz.*

**Wáng:** *Yéw·'pyàw děy-dàw-Yéw·jèng-'jywú-chywu 'mǎy.*
*'Byé·de-'dūng·shi dzày-yì·jyā-shīn-'kāy-de-'dà-pù·dz-li jyèw-'dēw-'mǎy·le.*
*Jè·ge-'pù·dz shr̀-yí·ge-'sān·tséng·de-'léw.*
*Dì-'yì·tséng mày-'shěw·jīn, 'yí·dz, hé-'chwān·de-'yī·shang, 'dày·de-'màw·dz.*
*Dì-'èr·tséng mày-'wǎn hé-'pí·dz-dzwò-de-dūng·shi.*
*Dì-'sān·tséng shr̀-chr̄-'fàn-de-dì·fang.*
*Wǒ·men 'shyān-dàw-Yéw·jèng-'jywú chywù-'mǎy-yéw·'pyàw.*
*'Mǎy·le-yéw·'pyàw jyèw-dàw-'jè·ge-'pù·dz chywù-mǎy-'dūng·shi.*
*Mǎy·'wán·le, wǒ-'chíng-nǐ chr̄-'fàn.*

**David:** *'Bú·yàw-'kè·chi.*
*'Jīn·tyan wǒ-chíng-'nǐ-ba.*

**Wáng:** *Jè-shr̀-dì-'yí·tsz̀, 'wǒ-chíng-'nǐ.*
*Yǐ·'hèw nǐ-'dzày-chíng-wǒ.*
*Jè·ge-fàn-'gwǎn·dz-li dzwò-'fàn-de shr̀-'Běy·píng láy-de.*

214

*'Nǐ-chr̄-'Bĕy·píng-'fàn-ma?*

David: *'Nà jēn-hăw.*
*Wó-hĕn-'dwō-nyán 'méy-chr̄-'Bĕy·ping-'fàn-le.*
*'Hén-shyăng-'chr̄.*

## SECTION F: CONVERSATION

### §1. Vocabulary Check-Up.

### §2. Carrying on Conversation.

# UNIT XII

## REVIEW

### SECTION A: WORD-REVIEW

§1. How Would You Use These Words? Below are given a number of groups of words. The words in each group are similar in some way. If you know the meaning of a particular word, prove it to yourself by thinking of a sentence in which that word is used. If you can't remember what some of the words mean, check in the Check-List of Words for Part Two, or if necessary go back to the Check-List of Words for Part One, and then think of a suitable sentence. Work this out by yourself; then, working as a group, you will be able to check on the sentences you thought of.

Group 1. Time-words.

*'báy-tyān* *'yè-li*
*'dzǎw·chen* *'shǎng·wu* *'wǎn·shang*
*'shàng·wǔ* *'shyà·wǔ*
*'shàng·ban·tyan* *'shyà·ban·tyan*
*lǐ·bày·'sān* *'bén·lǐ·bày·'sān* *'shàng·lǐ·bày·'sān* *'shyà·lǐ·bày·'sān*
*'běn·ywè* *'shàng·ywè* *'shyà·ywè*
*'chyán·tyan* *'chyán·nyan*
*dà·'chyán·tyan* *dà-'chyán·nyan*
*'hèw·tyan* *'hèw·nyan*
*dà-'hèw·tyan* *dà-'hèw·nyan*
*'chyán-jǐ·tyān* *'chyán-jǐ·nyán*

Group 2. Place-Words and some related words.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *dūng* | *'dūng·byān* | *dūng·'bù* | |
| *shī* | *'shī·byān* | *shī·'bù* | *shī·'lǐ* |
| *nán* | *'nán·byān* | *nán·'bù* | *'Nán·jīng* |
| *běy* | *'běy·byān* | *běy·'bù* | *'Běy·píng* |
| | | *jūng·'bù* | |

Group 3. *Gūng·'gùng-chì-'chē, gūng·'shr̀, gūng·shr̀·'fáng, gūng·'ywán.*

Group 4. *Rèw·'pyàn, shyàng·'pyàn.*

Group 5. *Léw, léw·'tī, léw-'shàng, léw-'shyà.*

Group 6. *Rén, 'nán-rén, 'nywǔ-rén, 'dà-rén, 'dí·rén, 'núng·rén, 'shāng·rén, 'shíng·rén, 'yùng·ren, 'shyà·ren, 'dǐ·shyà·ren, 'jyèw-rén, 'shīn-rén.*

Group 7. *Hēy, báy, hwǎng, húng.*

Group 8. *Shī-'shr̀·de, jyèw-'shr̀·de, lǎw-'shr̀·de, shīn-'shr̀·de.*

Group 9. *Fàn·'dyàn, shǐ·yī·'dyàn; 'pù·dz, shū·'pù, shyé·'pù, pí·shyé·'pù; fàn-'gwǎn·dz, bàw·'gwǎn, jàw·shyàng·'gwǎn.*

Group 10. *'Yī·shang, dà·'yī, lǐ·'yī, pí·'yī, bù·'yī, shàng·'yī, shwèy·'yī.*

Group 11. *Mén, fáng·'mén, wū·'mén, dyàn-'mén, dwèy-'mén, hèw-'mén, chyán-'mén, dà-'mén, dūng-'mén, shī-'mén, běy-'mén, nán-'mén.*

Group 12. *Dyàn-'bàw, dyàn-'chē, dyàn-'dēng, dyàn-'hwà, dyàn-'shyàn, dyàn·'tī, dyàn·'yǐng, shěw-dyàn-'dēng, hwéy-'dyàn, wú·shyàn-'dyàn.*

Group 13. *Dyàn·bàw·'jì, dyàn·hwà·'jì, fēy·'jì, jàw·shyàng·'jì, dǎ·dz·'jì.*

Group 14. *Dyàn-bàw-'jywú, dyàn-hwà-'jywú, yéw·jèng-'jywú.*

Group 15. *Dyàn-chē-'pyàw, dyàn·yǐng-'pyàw, hwǒ-chē-'pyàw, chē-'pyàw, chì-chē-'pyàw, yéw·'pyàw, chyán-'pyàw·dz.*

Group 16.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *dày* | *'dày·láy* | *'dày·chywù* | | | |
| *gwò* | *'gwò·láy* | *'gwò·chywù* | | | |
| *sùng* | *'sùng·láy* | *'sùng·chywù* | *'sùng·dàw* | | |
| *gwà* | | | | *'gwà·dzày* | |
| *hwéy* | | | *'hwéy·dàw* | | |
| *jì* | | | *'jì·dàw* | | |
| *shwèy* | | | *'shwèy·dàw* | | |
| *shyě* | | | | *'shyě·dzày* | *'shyě·shang* |
| | | | *shēw·'dàw* | | |

Group 17. *'Dì·gěy, 'jyè·gěy, 'jáw·gěy, 'hwán·gěy.*

Group 18. *'Chwēy-de·kāy* (or *'chwēy-bu·kāy*, and so with the rest of these), *'dǎ-de·kāy, 'fēn-de·kāy, 'kāy-de·kāy, 'lā-de·kāy, 'twēy-de·kāy.*

Group 19. Each of the following with *-de·dùng* or *-bu·dùng* added: *bān, chwēy, dzěw, lā, ná, twēy.*

Group 20. Each of the following with *-de·hwày* or *-bu·hwày* added: *chwēy, lā, twēy, jà.*

Group 21. Each of the following with *-de·shàng* or *-bu·shàng* added: *dày, chwān, gày, gwà, gwān, hé.*

Group 22. Each of the following with *-de·jáw* or *-bu·jáw* added: *jǎw, mǎy, shwèy, dyǎn.*

§2. How Did You Use the Words? Work together under the direction of the Leader. He will select some or all of the words in each of the above groups and will call on some member of the class to give a sentence in which the word is used. If time is limited he may not choose to go through the entire list, but you must be prepared on all as you can't tell which he may choose. This, of course, gives you the practice that you need. If you have a Guide, he will correct any sentences which do not sound to him like natural Chinese; if you have no Guide, check each other.

## SECTION B: SENTENCE-REVIEW

§1. Preparation. Working alone, go through the following English Sentences and figure out how you would say each one in Chinese. *Do not write anything down*, but say the Chinese equivalents out loud and practice them out loud until you can rattle them off the moment you hear the English, with no hesitation at all.

1. (Give the date today in terms of the Chinese Republic —year, month, and day-of-the-month.)
2. (Give the year, month, and day-of-the-month in the western calendar.)
3. (Give the day of the week.)
4. Where do you work?
5. I teach in a school.
6. The students learn to speak English (speech) from me.
7. I opened a large shoe-store yesterday.
8. Mr. Jāng is now manager of the bookstore.
9. That bookstore was formerly Mr. Hú's.
10. Mr. Jēw and his son are both farmers, but his older brother is a merchant.
11. He is a photographer who wants to go to China.
12. He is the salesman who is often very busy.
13. He does important work in a large store because he is in charge of twenty-five men.
14. Mr. Lwó works for an American Newspaper (Publishing Company).
15. If you want to know the news, you may go to ask him.
16. He takes darned good pictures.
17. He also knows the people who sell things used for photography.
18. They sell things to him cheaper than to others.
19. Ask him to buy photographic supplies for you.
20. He also knows how to write letters on a typewriter.
21. I must move (my home) because here I can't get to sleep at night.
22. This trunk is too big. I can't move it by myself.
23. Every morning when I get up I wash my hands and face, and brush my teeth with a toothbrush.
24. Then I call my servant to sweep the floor and wipe the desk clean.
25. "Lǎw Jēw, send these two suits of clothes out to be dry-cleaned."
26. The laundry also washes my shirts and socks.
27. This morning I told Lǎw Jēw to polish all my shoes with shoe polish.
28. I put on my clothes for outside wear, put on my hat, and go out for a walk in the park.
29. I have lived in this house for three years.
30. I don't like to live alone.
31. He stayed in New York for a hundred days.
32. The Empire State Building (don't translate) has 110 stories.
33. *This two-storied building has a front door and a back* door.
34. There are four large rooms on the first floor and five small ones on the second.
35. Leave the door open but close the window.
36. I want a room with electric light and telephone.
37. I take off my night clothes and put on my trousers, socks, shoes, shirt, coat, and overcoat.
38. I also put on my necktie and hat.
39. Put the old clothes away in the trunk; don't hang them up.

40. These windows face south; the wind is blowing in.
41. Can you repair the camera and the alarm clock?
42. This room has windows on three sides, so is very bright.
43. But it is too near the street. It is also too far from where I work.
44. I stay at home evenings and nights, but not during the daytime.
45. When I return home at evening it is still light.
46. It is easy to walk up the stairway to the third floor, but to go to the fiftieth floor one must use the elevator.
47. There are no buildings of fifty stories yet in China, so don't worry ('fear').
48. You go up first, I'll be right up too.
49. I'm in charge of the correspondence-section.
50. In July it is cooler in this part of China than in other places.
51. In the southern part of the United States the speech is not the same as that spoken in the northern part.

§2. Group-Drill. Working as a group, all except the Leader will close their books. The Leader will give one of the English sentences above to a member of the group, who is to give the Chinese as quickly as he can. The Leader may not take the sentences in the order in which they are given above; he may skip around. Nor will he call on the different members of the group in any regular order. If the Guide is present he will listen and correct your pronunciation and your expressions whenever necessary.

## SECTION C: SENTENCE-REVIEW

§1. Preparation. This Section is just like Section B. Prepare, working alone, in just the same way.

### Going Out

1. I'm going to the Post Office.
2. I'm going there to buy stamps and mail letters.
3. How far is it from this place to the Post Office?
4. My home is three miles from the Post Office.
5. Converting to Chinese mileage it is more than nine li.
6. The Post Office is on the opposite side of the street from the telegraph office. (Post Office at Telegraph Office's opposite-door.)
7. To go by bus one must buy tickets.
8. Every day I take the bus to go to the park for a walk.
9. It's too far. I'm not willing to walk that far.
10. I'm going to stay there for three days.
11. I should take my baggage.
12. Please tell him that I'm going by airplane.
13. Going by plane is the fastest.
14. (To the ticket-seller): I want to go to ——. How much?

### Making Purchases

1. How can I get to New Street from here?
2. I know it is very far. I'm going to take the bus.
3. Is this New Street? I must get off (the bus) here.

4. May I ask you where the Jüng·shī shoe-shop is?
5. To the left? Thank you.
6. I want to buy a pair of leather shoes.
7. This pair is too small. Bring a pair of shoes larger than these (for me to) try on.
8. This pair fits, but I don't like black shoes.
9. Oh! Twenty-five dollars? The price is too high (big).
10. Is the price unchangeable? There here are three ten-dollar bills.
11. Let me see. You should give me five dollars change.
12. That's correct.
13. Where can I buy some soap and a tooth brush? At the place opposite? (At the opposite-door) That small shop? Goodbye.
14. I want two pieces of soap, two towels, a package of tooth-powder, two packs of American cigarettes, and a razor.
15. Oh! I forgot to buy a suitcase. I must go back to the shoe shop.
16. I want a suitcase made of good leather.
17. I can't take it back (home) today. Give me a receipt. I'll come tomorrow afternoon.

### EATING

1. The food at the hotel is not good. Every evening I go out and eat in a Chinese restaurant.
2. At the restaurant the waiter says 'Please sit at this table near the window. It's cool here.'
3. Bring a roast chicken, a fried egg with meat slices, and a bowl of rice.
4. What was the tsày I ate yesterday? That was delicious.
5. The waiter says 'That was fish. We don't have fish today.'
6. I think I'd better go fishing tomorrow in order to have fish at supper.
7. How much time do I use everyday for eating?
8. Breakfast takes half an hour, noon meal three quarters of an hour, and supper more than an hour.
9. Even if I spend a great deal of money I still can't get good meals here.

### MISCELLANEOUS

1. When I received his telegram I immediately went to the telegraph office and sent an answer.
2. This electric-light-bulb is out of order; it needs to be changed.
3. Phone me tomorrow afternoon; we'll discuss this matter then.
4. In the morning it rained, and in the afternoon it was very cold.
5. In China one does not drink milk for breakfast.
6. Sooner or later he will wake up; don't be noisy.

7. The door of the house is at the west end of the room, and a room-door is at the east end.
8. Divide this money up for us.
9. Tell me, who is that man you were just now conversing with?
10. Sit on the suitcase-cover and perhaps I can close the suitcase.
11. That's enough!
12. It still isn't clean enough; send it back to the laundry again.
13. This (official) letter isn't urgent; wait until day after tomorrow to do it.
14. You have a beard this morning; how come you didn't use your razor?
15. Turn off the light; the Japanese planes are coming.
16. What is the quality of this shirt?
17. That's not all!
18. This box is very attractive. The box *itself* is black; the cover is brown and red.
19. First he went from western China to Hankow; later on he came to Chungking.
20. I'll return the photograph to you when we eat lunch together tomorrow noon.
21. The theater has caught fire!
22. I mailed him a photograph of you yesterday.
23. The manager of the hotel has a radio in his own room.
24. The Chinese don't drink coffee; that's why they use the English word 'coffee'.

§2. GROUP-DRILL. Working as a group, do as with Section B.

## SECTION D: LISTENING-REVIEW

§1. TEST ON LISTENING: I. The Guide, or a record, is going to recite nine conversations for you. They are all conversations which you have had in previous Units. Do not repeat after him. Keep your books closed as you listen to each one; try simply to understand as completely as possible what is said.

After hearing each conversation once, turn to this place in the book and answer the three true-false statements by marking each one with T or F. Thus if in a conversation Mr. Wáng says that he has no shoes to wear when going out, and one of the true-false statements is that Mr. Wáng says he has no shoes to wear when going out, you will mark that statement with a T. Take one conversation at a time, answering the three statements in the book immediately after hearing it. *Do not look at the true-false statements below until you have listened to the conversation.*

TO THE LEADER: The Conversations for this test are on records 22A, 22B, 24B after the spiral, and 25A.

GROUP 1.

FOR CONVERSATION 1.

1. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng-shwō tā-ˈméy-dàw-ˈjè·tyáw-ˈjyē-shang ˈláy·gwo.*

2. *'Lwó-'chwān-de-'pí-shyé 'bú·shr̀-dzày-'jyā·li-chwān-de.*
3. *'Wáng 'gàw·su-'Lwó 'mǎy-yì·shwāng-'Jūng·gwo-'bù-shyé dzày-'jyā-li-chwān.*

**For Conversation 2.**

1. *'Hwǒ·ji-'ná·láy-de dì-'yì·shwāng-'bù-shyé 'Lwó-'chwān-je hěn-hé·'shr̀.*
2. *Dì-'èr·shwāng tā-'chwān·je 'bù-hé·'shr̀.*
3. *'Shyé-de-'jyà·chyan shr̀-'sān·kwày-'wǔ.*

**For Conversation 3.**

1. *'Hwǒ·ji shwō 'ké·yǐ-hwán-'jyà.*
2. *Shyé·'pù-li yěw-'hwáng-'pí·dz-dzwò-de-shū·'bāw, 'yé-yěw 'hēy-pí·dz-dzwò-de.*
3. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng 'wàng·ji·le bǎ-'chyán 'dày·láy·le.*

**For Conversation 4.**

1. *'Jàw-shyān·sheng hé-'Hú-shyān·sheng 'dēw-mày-'jyèw-shū.*
2. *'Lwó shyǎng-dàw-'Jàw·de-shū·'pù-chywù 'kàn-yi·kàn.*
3. *'Wáng 'háy-yàw-mǎy-shwā-'yá-'yùng-de-dūng·shi.*

**For Conversation 5.**

1. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'méy-dày-shěw·'tyáw dàw-shĭ·yī·'dyàn-láy.*
2. *'Swó·yi tā-'bù-néng-'ná-tā-'lyǎng·tàw-'gān·shĭ·de-'yī·sheng.*
3. *Shĭ·yi·'dyàn jyàw-'Jūng·'shī-Shĭ·yī·'dyàn.*

**For Conversation 6.**

1. *'Wáng-'ná-de-'dūng·shi 'tày-dwō, tā-ná-bu·'dùng.*
2. *Tā·men dàw-chì-chē-'jàn láy-de shŕ·hew, 'chē jyèw-'láy·le.*
3. *Shr̀-'Lwó-'mǎy-de chē·'pyàw.*

**Group 2.**

**For Conversation 1.**

1. *Lǐ·bày·'sān-'shyà·wǔ 'Wáng bú-'yùng-dàw-shywé·'shyàw-chywù.*
2. *'Dày-shyān·sheng shr̀-'chyán-jǐ·nyán 'dàw-de.*
3. *'Wáng shwō tā-'néng-dày-'Dày-shyān·sheng 'chywù-mǎy-'dūng·shi.*

**For Conversation 2.**

1. *'Dày-shyān·sheng shwō tā-shyàn·'dzày 'tīng-wú·shyàn-'dyàn-de shŕ·hew, yéw-hěn-'dwō-'hwà tā-'tīng-bu·dǔng.*
2. *Tā-'jù·dzày-yí·ge-yěw-wú·shyàn·'dyàn-de-'wū·dz-li.*
3. *'Dày-shyān·sheng yǐ·'chyán tsúng-'Jūng·gwo hwéy-'Měy·gwo 'chywù-de shŕ·hew, R̀·'běn gēn-'Jūng·gwo 'háy-méy-dǎ-'jàng.*

**For Conversation 3.**

1. *'Dày 'ywàn·yi-'mǎy-de shr̀-shyě-'shìn-'yùng-de-dūng·shi, 'háy-yěw 'byé·de-dūng·shi.*
2. *Tā·men 'děy-dàw-'lyǎng·ge-dì·fang chywù-mǎy-'dūng·shi.*
3. *'Shyān-dàw-yì·jyā-shīn-'kāy-de-'dà-'pù·dz-li-chywù.*

After you have listened to all the conversations and marked the statements as true or false, your Leader will go over them and tell you which are true and which are false. If there is

any question in your mind, you can listen to the proper conversation again and check up.

§2. TEST ON LISTENING. II. You will now hear, two or three times, a story which uses words you have had, and will follow what you hear by reading it as given below. Do not listen to it more than once. Listen carefully, and after having heard it once, turn to the list of statements which are given just after the story in the book and mark each one true or false, just as above. If you listen carefully and read the statements carefully, you will have no trouble marking the statements properly,

**Record 25B, beginning.**

*'Wáng-shyān·sheng dzày-yí·ge-shywé·'shyàw-li jyāw-'shū. 'Yěw-yì·tyān-'dzǎw·chen tā-děy-hěn-'dzǎw-de dàw-shywé·'shyàw-chywù, yīn·wey tā-yěw-yí·'jyàn-hěn-'yàw·jǐn·de-'shř. 'Jè·jyàn-'shř yí·'dìng yàw-dzày-'shàng·wǔ-[illegible] jūng-yǐ·'chyán dzwò·'wán·le. 'Swó·yǐ 'tā 'wú·dyǎn-jūng jyèw-'chǐ·láy·le; 'chwān·shang-'yī·shang, 'chwān·shang-'shyé, 'dày·shang-'màw·dz, 'jyèw-tsúng-'jyā-li 'dzěw-le.*

*Tā-yěw-'lyǎng·shwāng-'shyé, yì·shwāng-'hwáng·de, yì·shwāng-'hēy·de. 'Jè·tyān tā-'chwān-'shyé-de shŕ·hew, tyān háy-méy-'lyàng. Yīn·wey 'wū·dz-li hěn-'àn, tā-'kàn-bu·chū·lay shř-'hwáng-shyé shř-'hēy-shyé. Tā-'chwān·le yì·jř-'hwáng-shyé, yì·jř-'hēy-shyé, jyèw-'dzěw·le.*

*'Dàw·le-shywé·'shyàw-de 'shŕ·hew, 'tyān yǐ·jīng-'lyàng·le. Shywé·'shyàw-li yěw-yí·ge-sǎw-'dì-de, shìng-'Jāng. 'Shwéy dēw-'jyàw-tā 'Lǎw-'Jāng'. 'Wáng-shyān·sheng jìn-'wū·dz-de shŕ·hew, Lǎw-'Jāng 'jèng·dzày sǎw-'dì. Lǎw-'Jāng 'kàn·jyàn 'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'jìn·láy·le, jyèw-'shwō, 'Nín-'láy-de 'jè·me-dzǎw. Nín-'kàn-yi·kàn, nín-'chwān-de-'lyǎng·jř-'shyé 'bú·shř-yì·'shwāng.' 'Jè·ge-shŕ·hew, 'Wáng-shyān·sheng yě-'kàn·chū·lay·le. Tā-'chwān-de-'shyé shř-yì·jř-'hwáng·de, yì·jř-'hēy·de. Tā-shwō 'Kě-bú-'shř-ma! Jè-'bú·shř-yì·'shwāng. Wǒ-shyàn·'dzày yěw-'yàw·jǐn·de-'shř, bù-néng-hwéy-'jyā-chywù 'hwàn.' Tā-'shyǎng·le-yi·shyǎng, jyèw-gēn-Lǎw-'Jāng-shwō 'Nǐ-'sǎw·wán·le-'dì, 'háy-dzwò-shém·me-'shř?' Lǎw-'Jāng shwō "Sǎw·wán·le-'dì jyèw-'méy·yěw-'shř-le.' 'Wáng-shyān·sheng shwō "Nà·me, nǐ-'néng-bu·néng dàw-wǒ-'jyā-chywù, 'géy-wo bǎ-'shyé 'ná·láy? Wó-děy-dzày-'jè·li hwàn-'shyé.' Lǎw-'Jāng shwō "Ké·yi. Kě·shr wó-děy-'shyān-sǎw-'dì. Děng-wó-'sǎw·wán·le-'dì jyèw-chywù.' 'Wáng-shyān·sheng shwō "Hǎw-ba.'*

*Dàw·le-'chī·dyǎn-dwō-jūng, Lǎw-'Jāng 'pǎw·hwéy·láy·le. 'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'kàn·jyàn tā-'shěw-li 'méy·yew-'shyé. Jyèw-'wèn-tā shwō, 'Wǒ·de-'shyé nǐ-'ná·láy·le méy·yěw?' Lǎw-'Jāng shwō "Méy·yěw.' 'Wáng-shyán·sheng shwō 'Nǐ-'dzěm·me 'bù-gěy-wo bǎ-'shyé 'ná·láy?' Nǐ-'kàn, jè-yǐ·'jīng shř-chī·dyǎn-'bàn-le. Wǒ-'háy-děy-'dż·jǐ hwéy-'jyā-chywù 'hwàn-'shyé.'*

*Lǎw-'Jāng màn·'mán·de shwō, "Wáng-shyān·sheng, nín-'bú·yùng-hwéy-'jyā-le. 'Hwéy·chywù 'yě-shř-'méy·yěw-'yùng.' 'Wáng-shyān·sheng shwō "Dzěm·me-ne?' Lǎw-'Jāng shwō, 'Nín-'jyā-li-de 'nà·'shwāng-shyé, 'yě-shř yì·jř-'hwáng·de, yì·jř-'hēy·de.'*

Here are the true-false statements for the above story. Mark each one with a T or an F depending on whether, according to the story, it is true or false.

1. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng shr̀-jyàw·'ywán.*
2. *Tā-'wǎn·shang 'wú·dyǎn-jūng dàw-shywé·'shyàw-chywù.*
3. *Tā-'chwān·je-shyé, kě·shr 'méy-dày-'màw·dz.*
4. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'chwān·je-'lyǎng·shwāng-'shyé 'dzǒw-de.*
5. *Tā-'chwān·je 'lyǎng·jr̄-'shyé 'dzǒw-de.*
6. *Tā-'chwān-de shr̀-yì·jr̄-'hwáng-shyé, yì·jr̄-'hēy-shyé.*
7. *Tā-chwān-'shyé-de shŕ·hew 'tyān yǐ·'jīng 'lyàng·le.*
8. *Lǎw-'Jāng shr̀ shywé·'shyàw-li-de 'yùng·ren.*
9. *Tā-'gàw·su-'Wáng-shyān·sheng shwō, tā-'chwān-de-'shyé 'bú·shr̀-yì·'shwāng.*
10. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng shwō, 'Jè-shr̀-shīn-'shr̀·de-shyé, yì·jr̄-'hwáng, yì·jr̄-'hēy.'*
11. *Tā-'yàw-shwō, "Wǒ-děy-hwéy-'jyā-chywù hwàn-'shyé."*
12. *Tā-gēn-Lǎw-'Jāng shwō 'Nǐ-'sǎw-de-'dì bù-'gān·jìng.'*
13. *'Wáng-'dz̀·jǐ 'bù-néng hwéy-'jyā, swó·yi 'chǐng-Lǎw-'Jāng chywù-'bǎ-tā·de-'shyé 'ná·láy.*
14. *Lǎw-'Jāng bǎ-'Wáng-shyān·sheng-de-shyé 'ná·láy-le.*
15. *Tā-'yīng·gāy gěy-'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'ná·láy yì·'jr̄-'hēy-shyé, kě·shr tā-'méy-ná.*
16. *'Wáng-shyān·sheng yàw-'dz̀·jǐ hwéy-'jyā-chywù hwàn-'shyé.*
17. *Lǎw-'Jāng 'gàw·su-'Wáng-shyān·sheng bú-'yùng hwàn-'shyé.*
18. *Tā-shwō, 'jyā-li-de-'nà·shwāng-'shyé 'yě-shr̀ yì·jr̄-hwáng·de, yì·jr̄-'hēy·de.*

Your leader will go over these with you and tell you which are true, which are false; if there is any discussion, you can listen to the story again.

The first three Sections of this Unit tested your ability to say things for yourself in Chinese; the last Section tested your ability to understand Chinese when you hear it. You can easily tell for yourself whether you are doing well or not; if you got most of the points of these four sections right, then you are doing well; but if you made a good many mistakes, then you need more practice. If you are having trouble, the reason is more than likely that you have been trying to go too fast; if you take the work slowly enough, and spend enough time on each point, you will get it.

Therefore, *do not go beyond this point until you have a thorough* command of what has been given so far. Go back and review as many things as necessary—if necessary, skip through all of Units VII–XI again, probably going faster, but doing everything that you were told to do the first time. When you have a thorough command of what has been given in the first twelve Units, you are well on the way to having a good control of spoken Chinese; the remaining Units will extend your vocabulary, give you much more practice at the important little things, and in general make you more fluent.

## CHECK-LIST FOR PART TWO

The capital letters put after words in the following list have the same meaning as in the Check-List for Part One. However, you will also find 'RC', meaning that the word is a resultative compound. Thus when you see *'kàn·jyàn* RC, you will understand that the forms *'kàn-de·jyàn* and *'kàn-bu·jyàn* are used too.

This list also indicates the measures used with some nouns. It does not indicate the measure for every noun: the name of a food, for example, is hardly usable with a counter unless the counter be *wăn* 'bowlful', or something of that kind.

The list includes words mentioned only in passing in the Word-Studies, as well as those of the Basic Sentences. You need not feel that you are falling behind if you fail to recognize a good many of the words listed here. But if you can learn them as you go on, do so. Many of them are compound words with parts that you will know very well, so that the list isn't quite so formidable as it seems.

### A

*a* final particle indicating hesitation, polite interrogation, or polite answer.
*ā·'yà* 'Oh!' 'Gee!'
*àn* A 'dark'
*ày* V 'to like, to like to'

### B

*bān* V 'to move' (a heavy thing, or one's residence)
*'bān·chywù* RC 'to go away, moving something'
*'bān·dùng* RC 'to move'
*'bān-gwò·chywù* RC 'to move something over, going'
*'bān-gwò·láy* RC 'to move something over, coming'
*'bān·láy* RC 'to come moving something'
*bāng* V 'to help (someone) do (something)'; 'to loan (someone money)'
*bāng . . . máng* 'to help someone in his work'
*bàw* N 'report, message, newspaper'
*bàw·'gwăn* N 'newspaper publisher'
*bàw-'jr̆* N 'newspaper; news-paper' M *jāng* 'sheet'
*báy* A 'white, light, pale'
*'báy-tyān* T 'daytime'
*băy* M and numeral 'hundred'
*bén·lĭ·'bày* T 'this week'
*'bén·lĭ·bày-'r̀* T 'Sunday of this week'
*'bén·lĭ·bày-'yī*, -*'èr*, etc., T 'Monday of this week, Tuesday of this week', etc.
*bĕn* M 'volume', with *shū* 'book' etc.
*'bĕn·dz* N 'pad of paper; (telephone) book'
*bĕn·'ywè* T 'this month'

*bĕr* N 'small volume, pad'
*bĕy* P 'north'
*bĕy·'bù* P 'northern region'
'*bĕy·byān* P 'north side, north border'
*Bĕy·'jīng* N, P 'north capital', old name of *Bĕy·'píng*
*Bĕy·'píng* N, P 'north peace', Peiping.
*bĭ* V 'to compare'
*bĭ* K 'as compared with'
*bìng* I 'to get sick'
*bìng* N 'sickness'
*bù* N 'cloth' (not wool)
'*bù·fen* M 'division, part, section' (of a business, for example)
*bù·'rán* J 'otherwise'
*bù·'yī* N 'clothing made of cloth' (but not of wool)
'*bwō·li* N 'glass'
*byé-* A 'other'
'*byé·de* N 'another, others'

## C

'*cháng·cháng* H 'often'
*chăw* V 'to fry' (not in deep fat)
*chèn·'shān* N 'shirt'; M *jyàn*
*chĭ* I 'start' (in time): *tsúng-'míng·tyan-chĭ* 'starting tomorrow'
'*chĭ·láy* RC 'to get up, rise'
*chì* N 'gas'
*chì-'chē* N 'automobile'
*chì-chē-'jàn* N for *gūng·'gùng-chì-chē-'jàn* 'bus stop'
*chì-'yéw* N 'gasoline'
*chū-'yī, -'èr* T for the first ten days of the month by the old lunar calendar.
*Chúng·'chìng* N, P 'revived celebration', Chungking.
*chwān* V 'to pass through; to put on' (certain clothing)
'*chwān·shàng* RC 'to put on' (certain clothes)
'*chwāng·hu* N 'window'
*chwáng* N 'bed'
*chwēy* I 'to blow' (of the wind)
'*chwēy·dùng* RC 'to move by blowing'
'*chwēy·hwày* RC 'to blow a thing to pieces'
'*chwēy-jìn(·láy)* RC 'to blow in'
'*chwēy·kāy* RC 'to blow open'
*chyān* M and numeral: 'thousand'
*chyán* N 'money'; added to the name of an article, as in '*shyé-chyan* means 'the price paid *for*' that article, in this case 'shoes'.
*chyán·'bāw* N 'purse, wallet'
'*chyán-jĭ·nyán* T 'a few years ago'
'*chyán-jĭ·tyān* T 'a few days ago'
'*chyán-mén* N 'front door, front gate'
'*chyán·nyan* T 'year before last'
'*chyán·téw* P 'front end'
'*chyán·tyan* T 'day before yesterday'
*chyáng* N 'wall'

## D

*dǎ* V 'to strike, hit', and also many meanings determined by the following words.
*'dǎ·dàw* V 'to fight up to' (a place)
*dǎ·dz̀·'jī* N 'typewriter'
*'dǎ·kāy* RC 'to open' a suitcase, a book, a window that swings open on hinges at the top.
*dǎ·'swàn* V 'to calculate, plan'
*dà-'chyán·nyan* T 'year before year before last'
*dà-'chyán·tyan* T 'day before day before yesterday'
*dà-'dāw* N 'sword' M *bǎ*
*dà-'hèw·nyan* T 'year after year after next'
*dà-'hèw·tyan* T 'day after day after tomorrow'
*dà-'jyē* N 'main street'
*dà-'mén* N 'the main door or gate to a residence or establishment'
*dà·'shyǎw* N 'size', 'what size?'
*dà·'yī* N 'overcoat' M *jyàn*
*dàn* N a round or oval object, 'egg'
*dāw* N 'knife' M *bǎ*
*'dāw·dz* N 'knife' M *bǎ*
*'dāwr* N 'knife' M *bǎ*
*dày* V 'bring, take'
*dày* V 'to put on' (hat, gloves, etc.)
*'dày·chywù* RC 'to take something away'
*'dày·dz* N 'belt' M *tyáw*
*'dày·láy* RC 'to bring something'
*'dày·shàng* RC 'to put on' (hat, gloves, etc.)
*dēng* N 'light, lamp'
*'dí·gwó* N 'enemy country'
*'dí·rén* N 'enemy (person)'
*'dǐ·shyà·ren* N 'servant'
*dì* N 'ground, earth, soil, floor'
*'dì-shàng* P 'on the earth, in the world'
*'dì-shyà* P 'on the ground'
*dì·'lǐ* N 'geography'
*dūng* P 'east'
*dūng·'bù* P 'eastern region'
*'dūng·byān* P 'eastern edge, border'
*dǔng* used as postverb means 'understand': *'tīng-bu·dǔng* 'to listen but not be able to understand'
*dùng* I 'to move, shake, quiver'
*dwō* H 'how?, to what extent?'
*dwō-'bàn* H 'mostly, most of the time'
*'dwō·me* H 'how, to such an extent'
*Dwō-'shyè!* 'Many thanks!'
*dwèy* M for a pair of matching articles
*dwèy* V 'to match' (*'dwèy-yi·dwèy*)
*'dwèy·dz* N 'a pair' (poker); 'a pair of matching objects or ornaments'
*dwèy-'mén* N 'the gate or door which faces this one'
*'dyǎn·jáw* RC 'to succeed in lighting' (a lamp, a cigarette)
*dyàn* N 'electricity'
*dyàn-'bàw* N 'telegram'
*dyàn·bàw·'jī* N 'telegraph apparatus'

*dyàn-bàw-'jywú* N 'telegraph office'
*dyàn-'dēng* N 'electric light'
*dyàn-dēng-'pàwr* N 'electric light bulb'
*dyàn-'hwà* N 'telephone message'
*dyàn·hwà·'jī* N 'telephone'
*dyàn-hwà-'jywú* N 'telephone office, station'
*dyàn-'mén* N 'electric switch'
*dyàn-'shyàn* N 'electric wire' M *tyáw*
*dyàn·'tī* N 'elevator' (electric)
*dyǎr* M same as *dyǎn* M
*dz̀* N 'written word; character' (the unit of Chinese writing)
*'dzáw·wǎn* H 'sooner or later'
*dzáw·'wǎn* N 'lateness, what lateness?'
*dzǎw* A 'early'
*dzǎw* H 'early'
*dzǎw-'bàw* N 'morning newspaper'
*'dzǎw·chen* T 'morning'
*dzǎw-'fàn* N 'breakfast'
*'dzěm·me-yàng* N 'what kind?'
*'dzǒw-de·dùng* RC (or *bu*) 'to be able (unable) to walk' (as of an old man)
*'dzǒw-gwò·chywù* RC 'to walk over'
*'dzǒw-gwò·láy* RC 'to come over, walking'
*dzǔ·'fù* N 'paternal grandfather'
*dzwèy* H 'most'
*dzwò* V 'to make, do'
*dzwò-'fàn-de* N 'chef, cook'
*dzwò-'mǎy·mày-de* N 'trader, merchant'

### E

*èw* 'oh!'

### F

*fáng·'mén* N 'house door'
*fángr* N 'house' (Peiping for *'fáng·dz*)
*fēn* V 'to divide'
*'fēn·kāy* RC 'to divide up'
*fěn* N 'powder'
*fēng* N 'wind'

### G

*gān* A 'dry'
*gān* I 'to get dry'
*'gān·jing* A 'clean'
*gān·'shǐ* N 'dry-cleaning'
*gān·'shǐ* V 'to dry-clean'
*gāng* H 'just now, a minute ago'
*gāng·'tsáy* H 'right now, just now, a moment ago'
*gàr* N 'cover'
*'gàw·su* V 'to tell, explain to' (with *wǒ* 'I' after it, this frequently is pronounced *'gàw·su-ngwǒ*)
*'gày·dz* N 'cover' (for a trunk or coffin only)
*'gày·shàng* RC 'to cover something'
*gē* V 'to put, arrange, be arranged'

*gèw* A 'to be sufficient'

*gèw* I 'to become sufficient'

*gèw* H 'sufficiently'

*gūng·'gùng* A 'public'

*gūng·'gùng-chì-'chē* N 'bus' (city or suburban)

*gūng·'shr̀* N 'public work, document or letter about governmental matters' M *jyàn*

*gūng·shr̀·'fáng* N 'business office' M *swǒ*

*gūng·'ywán* N 'public yard, garden'

*gwā* V 'to scrape'

*gwā-'fēng* 'to blow wind'—'to be windy'

*gwā-lyǎn-'dāw* N 'razor' M *bǎ*

*'gwā-shyà·chywù* RC 'to scrape something off'

*gwà* V 'to hang up'

*'gwà·chǐ(·láy)* RC 'to hang something up'

*'gwà·dzày* RC 'to hang something on or at'

*'gwà·shàng* RC 'to hang something up'

*gwān* V 'to close, turn off'

*'gwān·shàng* V 'to close, turn off'

*gwǎn* V 'to manage, be in charge of'

*gwò* V 'to pass over, through, by'

*gwo* added to a verb indicates that the thing has been experienced sometime in the past; or, with *méy*, that it has never been experienced.

*'gwò·chywù* RC 'to go over'

*'gwò·láy* RC 'to come over'

# H

*Hàn·'kěw* N 'Hangkow'

*'Háw-jyěw-méy-'jyàn!* 'Haven't seen you in a long time!'

*hǎw·'hwày* N 'quality; what quality?'

*hàw* M 'number' (of a house on a street, or a day of the month, or of a shoe-size, etc.)

*Hāy!* 'What a shame!'

*'háy·shr* H 'still, yet'

*'Háy-yěw-ne.* 'That's not all!'

*hé* K 'with, and'

*'hé-chǐ·láy* RC 'to fit something onto something as a cover'

*'hé·shàng* RC 'to put on' (as a cover)

*hé·'shr̀* A 'comfortable, suitable, fit'

*hér* N same as *'hé·dz* 'box' (Peiping)

*'hèw·lay* T 'later, later on'

*'hèw-mén* N 'back door, back gate'

*'hèw·nyan* T 'year after next'

*'hèw·tew* T 'rear end'

*'hèw·tyan* T 'day after tomorrow'

*hēy* A 'black, dark'

*hēy* I 'to get dark'

*'hú·dz* N 'hair on face, moustache, beard'

*húng* A 'red'

*húng·'shāw* V 'to cook by roasting until the thing cooked is red, then adding a sauce and simmering'

*hwà* V 'to paint, draw, depict'

*hwán* V 'to return (something borrowed) to'

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *'hwán gěy* | V | 'to return (something borrowed) to' |
| *hwán-'jyà* | | 'to bargain' |
| *hwàn* | V | 'to change (something) for (something)' |
| *hwáng* | A | 'yellow, brown' |
| *hwáng-'yéw* | N | 'butter' |
| *hwàr* | N | 'portrait, painting' |
| *hwày* | A | 'bad' |
| *hwày* | I | 'to get out of fix' |
| *'hwéy·dàw* | RC | 'to return to' (a place) |
| *hwéy-'dyàn* | N | 'an answering telegram or telephone message' |
| *hwǒ-chē-'téw* | N | 'locomotive' |
| *'hwǒ·ji* | N | 'clerk, salesman, waiter in a restaurant' |

## J

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *jà* | V | 'to bomb' |
| *jà-'dàn* | N | 'a bomb' |
| *'jà·hwày* | RC | 'to bomb and destroy' |
| *jàng* | N | 'battle, fighting', used almost exclusively in *dǎ·'jàng* 'to wage war, fight' |
| *jáw* | I | 'to be burning' |
| *'jáw·gěy* | V | 'to give (change) to' |
| *jǎw* | V | 'to hunt for; to give change back to a purchaser' |
| *'jǎw-hwéy·láy* | RC | 'to return change to a person' |
| *'jǎw·jáw* | RC | 'to hunt for and find' |
| *jàw* | V | 'to shine, shine on'; 'to take a photograph' |
| *'jàw-shyà·láy* | RC | 'to make a photographic report of some event; to "shoot up" an occurrence' |
| *jàw·'shyàng* | N | 'photography, photograph' |
| *jàw-'shyàng* | | 'to take a photograph' |
| *jàw·shyàng·'gwǎn* | N | 'photographer's shop' |
| *jàw·shyàng·'jī* | N | 'camera' |
| *je* | | added to verbs indicates that the act being talked about is going on at the time of speaking. |
| *'jè·me* | H | 'so, to such an extent' |
| *'jè·me-yàng* | H | 'in this way' |
| *'jè·me-yàng* | A | 'of this kind' |
| *jēn* | H | 'truly' |
| *jēn-* | A | 'true' |
| *jēn·de* | N | 'truth' |
| *'jēng·ywè* | N | 'the first month of the lunar year' |
| *'jèng·dzày* | T | 'right now' |
| *jī* | N | 'chicken' |
| *jī-'dàn* | N | 'egg' |
| *jì* | V | 'to send something by mail' |
| *'jì·dàw* | RC | 'to mail something to' |
| *'jì·de* | V | 'to remember' (keep in mind) |
| *jìn* | A | 'nearby' |
| *jǐn* | A | 'tight; urgent' |
| *jīng·'lǐ* | N | 'manager' |
| *'jīng·lǐ* | V | 'to manage' |
| *jìng* | A | 'clean, clear' (as of glass) |
| *jr̄* | M | for one of any object for which *shwāng* is used for a pair. |
| *jř-'běn·dz* | N | 'a pad of paper' |
| *jř* | N | 'paper' M *jāng* 'sheet' |

*jūng·'bù* P 'central region'
*Jūng·'hwó* N 'China' (in certain official expressions)
*'Jūng·měy* N 'China and the United States'
*'Jūng·shī* N 'China and the west'
*jùng* V 'to till'
*jùng-'dì-de* N 'farmer'
*jwō·'yǐ* N 'tables and chairs'
*jyā* M for shops
*jyā·'fēy* N 'coffee'
*jyà* N 'price' (the price suggested for a purchase)
*'jyà-chyan* N 'price' (actually paid)
*jyān* M for *'wū·dz* 'room'
*jyàn* M for some articles of clothing, and for s[illegible] 'affairs'
*jyāw* V 'to teach'
*jyāw-'shū-de* N 'teacher'
*jyàw* V 'to name call, tell, let; to be named, called'
*'jyàw·shǐng* RC 'to wake someone up by calling them'
*jyàw·'ywán* N 'teacher'
*jyē* N 'street' M *tyáw*
*jyē* M 'first street', 'second street', etc.
*jyē-'kěw(r)* N 'street intersection', or the place where one street runs into another
*jyè* V 'to borrow'
*'jyè·gěy* V 'to lend something to'
*jyèw* A 'old' (mainly of things)
*'jyèw-rén* N 'an employee of long-standing'
*'jyèw·shr* J 'even if'
*jyèw-'shr̀·de* N 'old-style, old-fashion'

## K

*'kàn·chū(·láy)* RC 'to see through (darkness, a difficult problem) and see (something, the solution)'
*'kàn·jyàn* RC 'to see'
*kāy* V 'to open, turn on, drive (a car), start, leave, begin'
*'kāy·kāy* RC 'to open, turn on'
*Kě-bú-'shr̀-ma!* 'Isn't that so, though!'
*kěw(r)* N 'mouth' (of a river)
*kù·'dày* N 'trousers belt' M *tyáw*
*'kù·dz* N 'pants, trousers' M *tyáw*
*kǔng·'pà* V 'to be afraid that' (not in the sense of really fearing)
*kwày* A 'fast'
*kwày* H 'rapidly'
*kwày·'màn* N 'what speed?, speed'

## L

*lā* V 'to pull at'
*'lā·dùng* RC 'to move by pulling'
*'lā·hwày* RC 'to spoil or destroy by pulling'
*'lā·kāy* RC 'to pull open'
*'là·ywè* T 'last month of the lunar year'
*lǎw* A 'old' (people or things, but mainly people)
*lǎw* H 'for a long time'
*lǎw* I 'to get old'
*lǎw-'mā·dz* N 'a woman servant'
*lǎw-'shr̀·de* N 'old style'

*léw* N 'building'
*léw-'shàng* P 'upstairs'
*léw-'shyà* P 'downstairs'
*léw·'tī* N 'stairs, stairway'
*lí* K 'from' (in giving distances)
*lí* V 'to be separated from'
*lǐ* M 'Chinese mile' (about ⅓ English mile)
*lǐ·'bày* T 'week'
*lǐ·bày-'yī, '-èr*, etc.; T 'Monday, Tuesday', etc.
*lǐ·bày-'r̀* T 'Sunday'
*'lǐ·tew* P 'inside'
*lǐ·'yī* N 'undergarments' M *jyàn*
*líng* stands for '0' in giving numbers
*'líng-chyán* N 'change, small-change, petty-cash'
*lǐng·'dày* N 'necktie' M *tyáw*
*'lǐng·dz* N 'collar' M *tyáw*
*lù* N 'road' M *tyáw*
*lù* M 'road number one, road number two', etc.
*lyán* K 'even, even including' (usually with *yě*, *dēw*, or *háy* before verb)
*lyǎn* N 'face'
*lyáng* A 'cool'
*'lyáng·kwày* A 'cool and comfortable'
*lyǎng·'dwèy* 'two pairs' (at poker)
*lyǎng·'túng* 'pair' (at poker)
*lyàng* A 'light, bright'
*lyàng* I 'get light'

*lyǎw*: *-de·lyǎw* and *-bu·lyǎw* are added to almost any verb to give resultative compounds meaning 'can finish doing so-and-so' and 'can't finish doing so-and-so'.

## M

*mā* title added to family name in addressing female servants.
*máng* A 'busy'
*'màw·dz* N 'hat'
*mǎy* V 'buy'
*'mǎy·jáw* RC 'to buy; to be able (or unable) to buy because a thing is for sale (or not for sale)'
*'mǎy·mày* N 'buying and selling; trade'
*mày* V 'sell'
*mày-'shū-de* N 'bookseller'
*mén* N 'door, gate'
*měy* 'every'
*'Mín·gwó* N 'the (Chinese) Republic'
*myàn* N 'noodles or other wheat-foods'
*myàn·'bāw* N 'bread' M *kwày* for a loaf or piece
*myàn-'fàn* N 'wheat foods'
*myéngr·ge* T 'tomorrow' (Peiping for *'míng·tyan*)

## N

*'ná·dùng* V 'to move with the hands' (something light)
*'ná-gwò·chywù* RC 'to take something over to a place'
*'ná-gwò·láy* RC 'to bring something over'
*'nà·me* H 'so, to that extent'
*'nà·me* J 'then, in that case'

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *'nà·me-yàng* | H | 'in that way' |
| *'nà·me-yàng* | A | 'of that kind' |
| *nán* | A | 'difficult' |
| *nán* | P | 'south' |
| *nán·'bù* | P | 'southern region' |
| *'nán·byān* | P | 'southern side or border' |
| *Nán·'jīng* | N, P | 'Nanking' ('south capital') |
| *nàw* | A | 'to be noisy' |
| *nàw-'jūng* | N | 'alarm clock' |
| *'nàw·shǐng* | RC | 'to wake someone up by being noisy' |
| *nǎy* | M | 'milk' |
| *'nǐ-jyā* | | a polite form, in central and southwestern China, for 'you' (one person) |
| *nín* | | a polite form, in northern China, for 'you' (one person) |
| *núng·'bù* | N | 'ministry of agriculture' |
| *'núng·rén* | N | 'farmer' |
| *núng·shāng·'bù* | N | 'ministry of agriculture and commerce' |
| *nyàn* | V | 'to read out loud, to study' |
| *'nyàn-chū(·láy)* | N | 'to read something out, to be able (unable) to read something out' |
| *nyéw* | N | 'cow, bull, ox' |
| *nyéw-'nǎy* | N | 'cow's milk' |
| *nyéw-'yéw* | N | 'butter' |

## P

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *pà* | V | 'to fear, be afraid of, be afraid to' |
| *'pǎw-gwò·chyù* | RC | 'to run over' |
| *'pǎw-gwò·láy* | RC | 'to run over here' |
| *pàwr* | N | 'bubble-shaped object' |
| *pí* | N | 'skin, leather' |
| *pí·'bāw* | N | 'a leather case, container' |
| *'pí·dz* | N | 'leather, skin' |
| *pí·shyé·'pù* | N | 'store that sells leather shoes' |
| *pí·'yī* | N | 'skin clothing' (with the fur left on) |
| *píng* | A | 'level, smooth' |
| *pū* | V | 'to spread something out under something else' |
| *'pū·gay* | N | 'bedding' |
| *'pū·hǎw* | RC | 'to make a bed; to spread something smoothly' |
| *pù·dz* | N | 'store' M *jyā* or *·ge* |
| *'pyán·yì* | A | 'cheap' |
| *pyàw* | N | 'ticket' |
| *'pyàw·dz* | N | 'bill' (paper money, not something to be paid) M *jāng* |
| *pyàwr* | | same as *'pyàw·dz* (Peiping) |

## R

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Rì·'běn* | N, P | 'Japan' |
| *'rè·nàw* | A | 'hot and noisy, bustling with voices and crowds' |
| *'rè·shr* | J | 'if, providing' |
| *rèn* | V | 'to recognize' |
| *'rèn·shr* | V | 'to be acquainted with' |
| *rèw·'pyàn* | N | 'slices of meat, particularly pork' |
| *rèw·'pyàr* | N | same as *rèw·'pyàn* (Peiping) |
| *'rúng·yì* | A | 'easy' |
| *'rwèn·ywè* | T | 'intercalary month in the lunar year' |

## S

*sān·'túng* N 'three of a kind' (poker)
*sār* N (Peiping) 'the third child born in a family'
*săw* V 'to sweep'
*'săw-gān·jing* RC 'to sweep a place clean'
*shāng·'bù* N 'ministry of commerce'
*'shāng·rén* N 'merchant'
*'shăng·wu* T 'noon'
*shàng* V 'to get into or onto, to rise on' (only in certain combinations)
*'shàng·ban·tyan* T 'morning, AM'
*shàng·lĭ·'bày* T 'last week'
*'shàng·lĭ·bày-'r̀* T 'Sunday of last week'
*'shàng·lĭ·bày-'yī, -'èr*, etc. T 'Monday of last week, Tuesday of last week,' etc.
*'shàng·téw* P 'the space above anything, the face of a thing' (e. g., a painting)
*shàng·'tsz̀, shàng·'lyăng·tsz̀*, etc. T 'last time, last two times', etc.
*shàng·'wŭ* T 'morning, AM'
*shàng·'yī* N 'coat' M *jyàn*
*shàng·'ywè* T 'last month'
*shāw* V 'to burn, to heat up'
*'shēw·chĭ·láy* RC 'to put something away, hide something'
*'shēw·dàw* RC 'to receive'
*'shēw·shr* V 'to fix, rearrange and clean up'
*'shēw·shr-gān·jing* RC 'to clean something up thoroughly'
*'shēw·shr-hăw* RC 'to finish in cleaning something up right'
*shēw·'tyáw* N 'receipt'
*shĕw* N 'hand'
*shĕw-dyàn-'dēng* N 'flashlight'
*'shĕw·jīn* N 'towel'
*shī* P 'west'
*shī·'bù* P 'western region'
*'shī·byān* P 'western edge, border'
*shī·'lì* N 'western calendar'
*shī-'shr̀·de* N 'western style'
*'shí·hăw* RC 'to finish cleaning or washing'
*shĭ* V 'to wash, clean'
*shĭ·yī·'dyàn* N 'laundry'
*shīn* A 'new'
*shīn* H 'newly'
*'shīn-rén* N 'new employee', 'bride, bridegroom'
*shīn-'shr̀·de* N 'modern style'
*shīn·'wén* N 'news'
*shīn·wén-'jr̀* N 'newspaper'
*shìn* N 'letter'
*shìn-'jr̆* N 'letter paper'
*shīng·'chī* T 'week'
*shīng·chī-'r̀* T 'Sunday'
*shīng·chī-'yī, -'èr*, etc. T 'Monday, Tuesday', etc.
*shíng-'chē* N 'a train scheduled to leave for elsewhere', a 'departure', as listed in a railroad station
*'shíng·li* N 'baggage' M *jyàn*
*'shíng·rén* N 'traveller'
*shĭng* I 'to wake up'

*shŕ* V 'to pick up'
*shr̀* N 'things, business, matters' M *jyàn*
*shr̀* V 'to try', particularly in '*shr̀-yi·shr̀* 'to take a try, to try on some clothes'
'*shr̀·de* N 'style' (in *shīn-'shr̀·de* 'modern style', etc.)
'*shr̀·yang* N 'model, pattern'
*shū* N 'book' M *bĕn*
*shū·'bāw* N 'briefcase'
*shū·'jwō* N 'desk'
*shū·'pù* N 'bookstore'
*shùr* N 'little tree' (Peiping)
*shwā* V 'to brush'
'*shwā·dz* N 'a brush'
*shwāng* M 'pair', for paired objects which are for all intents and purposes identical, like socks, Chinese shoes, etc.
*shwèy* I 'to go to sleep'
'*shwèy·dàw* RC 'to sleep until' (a time)
'*shwèy·jáw* RC 'to get to sleep'
*shwèy·'yī* N 'nightclothes, pajamas'
*shyà* V 'to get off of, leave, go away from' (in certain combinations only); *shyà-'ywŭ* 'to rain', *shyà-'dàn* 'to lay an egg'
'*shyà·ban·tyan* T 'PM, afternoon and evening'
*shyà·lĭ·'bày* T 'next week'
'*shyà·lĭ·bày-'r̀* T 'Sunday of next week'
'*shyà·lĭ·bày-'yī*, -'*èr*, etc. T 'Monday of next week, Tuesday of next week', etc.
'*shyà·ren* N 'servant'
'*shyà·téw* P 'under side or end'
*shyà·'tsz̀*, *shyà·'lyăng·tsz̀*, etc.; T 'next time, next two times', etc.
*shyà·'wŭ* T 'PM, afternoon and evening'
*shyà·'ywè* T 'next month'
*shyān* H 'first, earlier'
*shyàn* N 'string, thread, wire' M *tyáw*
'*shyāng·dz* N 'trunk or suitcase'
*shyáng-chĭ·láy* RC 'to recall, think of'
*shyàng* V 'to face towards'
*shyàng* N 'resemblance, copy, photograph, portrait'; M *jāng*, 'photograph, picture'
*shyàng·'pyàn* N 'developed and printed photograph'
*shyăw-'jyē* N 'side street'
*shyē* M or numeral; 'a small group of'
*shyé* N 'shoe' M *jr̄*, *shwāng*
*shyé·'pù* N 'shoestore'
*shyé-'yéw* N 'shoe polish'
*shyĕ* V 'write'
'*shyĕ·dzày* V 'to write something on'
'*shyĕ·shàng* RC 'to write something down'
*shyēw* V 'to build, repair'
'*shyēw·li* V 'to fix up'
'*shyēw·li-hăw* RC 'to fix something up right'
*shywé* V 'to study, to learn'
'*shywé·sheng* N 'student'
*shywé·'shyàw* N 'school'

*sùng* V ‘to send, give’
'*sùng·chywù* RC ‘to have something sent away’
'*sùng·dàw* RC ‘to send something to’
'*sùng·láy* RC ‘to have something sent here’
*swàn* V ‘to calculate, figure out’
'*swàn·chéng* V ‘to figure out the equivalent in another system’ (of currency, measure, etc.)
'*swàn·shr* V ‘to estimate something to be, take something to be’
'*swó·yi* J ‘therefore’
*sz̄* N ‘a thin, thread-like slice’
*Sz̀·'chwān* N ‘Szechwan province’

T

*tàw* M for a suit of clothing; for a set of separate volumes forming a book; a set of matching furniture; etc.
*tów(r)* M ‘end’
'*tī·dz* N ‘ladder’
*tì* K ‘in place of, substituting for’ (a person)
*tīng* V ‘to listen to’
'*tīng·dŭng* RC ‘to listen to and understand’
'*tīng·jyàn* RC ‘to hear’
*tsā* V ‘to rub, scrape, scrub’
'*tsā·gān* RC ‘to wipe dry’
'*tsā-gān·jing* RC ‘to rub a thing clean’
*tsáy* H ‘only then’
*tséng* M ‘floor of a building’
*tsz̀* M ‘time, occurrence, event’
*túng* K ‘with, and, together with’
*túng·'hwār* N ‘flush’ (poker)
*túng·'yàng* A ‘same’
*túng·'yàng* H ‘equally’
*twēy* V ‘to push’
'*twēy·dùng* RC ‘to move by pushing’
'*twēy·hwày* RC ‘to break by pushing’
'*twēy·kāy* RC ‘to push open’
*twō* V ‘to take off’ (clothes, providing they are those for which one uses the verb *chwān* for putting them on)
'*twō·shyà* RC ‘to take off’ (clothes)
'*tyān·chì* N ‘weather’
'*tyān-shàng* P ‘in the sky’
*tyān-'shyà* P ‘under the sky’—‘in the world’
*tyáw* M for street, road, trousers, and other long, narrow, curving, sometimes flexible, things.

W

'*wà·dz* N ‘socks, stockings’ M *jr̄*, *shwāng*
*wán* A ‘completed’
*wán* I ‘to become finished’
*wán*, *-de·wán*, *-bu·wán*, are all used to make resultative compounds, with any verb as main verb; the meaning is ‘to finish doing so-and-so’, ‘to be able (or unable) to finish doing so-and-so’.
*wăn* A ‘late’
*wăn* I ‘get late’
*wăn-'bàw* N ‘evening newspaper’

*wǎn-'fàn* N 'evening meal'
*'wǎn·shang* T 'evening'
*wàng* V 'to forget, to forget to'
*'wàng·ji* V 'to forget, to forget to'
*'wày·téw* P 'outside'
*wén* V 'to smell at'
*'wén·jyàn* RC 'to smell'
*'wèy·de-shr̀* J 'the purpose is to . . .'
*Wǒ·de-'mā-yā!* 'Oh my mama!', an exclamation used only in case of extreme trouble.
*wū·'mén* N 'door of a room'
*wú·shyàn-'dyàn* N 'radio'
*wǔ·'bàw* N 'a newspaper that appears at noon'
*wǔ·'fàn* N 'noon meal'

## Y

*yá* N 'tooth'
*yáng·'hwěr* N 'matches' M *gēn* (Peiping form for *yáng·'hwǒ*)
*yàng* M 'kind of, sort of'
*yàng* H 'in a way'
*'yàng·dz* N 'model, pattern'
*'yàng·shr* N 'model, pattern'
*'yàw·jǐn* A 'important'
*'yé·shywǔ* H 'perhaps'
*'yè-li* N 'nighttime'
*yéw* N 'oil, grease'
*yéw-'dēng* N 'oil lamp'
*yéw·'jèng* N 'postal administration'
*yéw·jèng-'jywú* N 'post office'
*yéw·'pyàw* N 'postage stamp'
*·yi·dyan, ·yi·dyar* added to a descriptive word, means 'a bit more so'
*'yī·shang* N 'clothes' M *jyàn, tàw* 'suit'
*yí·'dìng* A 'settled, certain'
*yí·'dìng* H 'certainly, without doubt'
*yí·'dwèy* N 'a pair' (poker)
*'yí·dz* N 'soap'
*yí·'yàng* A 'the same'
*yí·'yàng* H 'to the same degree, in the same way'
*yǐ·'hèw* T 'the time after something'
*yǐ·'hèw* H 'later, later on'
*yǐ·'jǐng* H 'already'
*'yì·túng* H 'together'
*'yīng·gāy* V 'want to, need to, be obliged to'
*Yīng·'lǐ* M 'English mile'
*yùng* V 'use'
*yùng* K 'using, with'
*'yùng·ren* N 'servant'
*ywǎn* A 'far, distant'
*'ywàn·yì* V 'to be willing to'
*ywú* N 'fish' M *tyáw*
*ywú·'pyàn* N 'fish slices'
*ywú·'pyàr* N same as *ywú·'pyàn* (Peiping)
*ywǔ* N 'rain'

# ANSWERS TO THE "WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?" SECTIONS

## UNIT I

### SECTION B, §3, page 9

1. b
2. b
3. c
4. a
5. c
6. c
7. b
8. b
9. a *or* b
10. a *or* c
11. a
12. b

## UNIT I

### SECTION D, §3, page 15

1. a
2. c
3. a
4. b
5. c
6. c
7. b
8. a
9. c
10. a, b, *or* c
11. d
12. c
13. a, b, *or* c
14. a *or* b
15. a *or* b

## UNIT II

### SECTION B, §3, page 26

1. b
2. a
3. a-b; b-d; c-c; d-a
4. a
5. b
6. b
7. b
8. a
9. a
10. c
11. d
12. c
13. c
14. a, c, *and* d

## UNIT II

### SECTION D, §3, page 30

1. a, c, *or* d
2. c
3. c
4. b
5. b
6. a
7. a
8. b
9. a
10. a with a, b, c
    b with a
    c with a, f
    d with d, f
    e with f
    f with a
    g alone

## UNIT III

### SECTION B, §3, page 39

1. a
2. d
3. a
4. c
5. a *or* b
6. a
7. c
8. a
9. a
10. a *or* c

# UNIT III

## SECTION D, §3, page 47

1. c
2. b
3. a
4. c
5. a *or* c
6. b *or* c
7. a *and* c
8. a *or* c
9. b *or* c
10. a
11. a
12. d
13. b
14. d
15. a *and* b
16. a, b, c *or* d
17. b
18. a
19. c
20. b

# UNIT IV

## SECTION B, §3, page 58

1. b
2. a, c, *or* d
3. b
4. b
5. b *and* c
6. a. *'fù·mŭ*
   b. *'dì·shyung*
   c. *'jyĕ·mèy*
7. a, b, d, e
8. a, b, c, d
9. Change a number in c, *or else* in a and b
10. Brothers, sisters, *or* brother and sister

# UNIT IV

## SECTION D, §3 page 66

1. b, d, *or* e
2. a, b, c, *or* d
3. b

C

4. b
5. *'dà-rén* 'adult'; *'nán-rén* 'male human being'; *'nywǔ-rén* 'female human being'
  e. *shr̀-*
  f. *'nán-rén*
6. a
7. *Tā-shr̀ 'shyǎw-háy·dz-de 'mǔ·chin.*
8. *Wǒ-shr̀ 'fù·chin·de-'nywǔ-háy·dz (-'nywǔ·ér).*
9. *Tā-yěw 'yí·ge-'jyě·jye, 'yí·ge-'mèy·mey.*
10. *Tā·men-yěw 'bā·ge-háy·dz.*
11. *Yěw-'èr·shr· kwày-chyán.*
12. *Yěw-'sān·shr-'wǔ· kwày-chyán.*

# UNIT V

## SECTION B, §3, page 78

1. a *or* b
2. c *and* d
3. a
4. b
5. b
6. b
7. b, *perhaps* a
8. a *and* b *are likely*
9. a. It is a possibility that I will look at the flowers.
10. b. It is permissible for me to look at the flowers.
  c. I know how to look at the flowers.
  d. I am going to look at the flowers.
  e. I must look at the flowers.
  f. I'm thinking of looking at the flowers.
10. a, b *(in peacetime)*.
11. Once.

12. e. *'Sz̀·ge-'jyě·jye.*
    f. *'Sz̀·ge-'nán-rén, 'lyèw·ge-'nyǔ-rén.*
    g. *'Shŕ·ge-rén.*
13. g. *Shŕ-'èr·ge.*
    h. *'Wǔ·ge shr̀-'Jūng·gwo-rén, 'chī·ge 'bú·shr-'Jūng·gwo-rén.*
14. e. *Yěw-'sān·ge shr̀-'wày·gwo-rén.*
    f. *Yí·'gùng-shr̀-shŕ-'sz̀·ge-rén.*
15. *Yěw-'sz̀·ge-'dà-rén, 'lyǎng·ge-shyǎw - 'háy ·dz.*

## UNIT V

### SECTION D, §3, page 85

1. c
2. c
3. b
4. a *or* b
5. b *or* c
6. d, *possibly* b
7. Three times
8. Seven
9. No
10. a with e
    b with a
    c with b
    d with c
    e with c (*or* d)
    f with d
    g with f
11. I am
12. Three times
13. c, d, e, g
14. b, c, d, f; *possibly* e

## UNIT VII

### SECTION B, §3, page 116

1. a, b, c, d, e, g, h
2. a
3. c
4. a-4; b-1; c-2; d-6; e-7; f-3; g-5

5. a-6; b-3; c-5; d-2; e-4; f-1
6. a-5; b-1; c-6; d-2; e-7; f-3; g-8; h-4
7. a-5; b-4; c-1; d-6; e-3; f-2
8. a-4; b-5; c-2; d-3; e-1

## UNIT VII

### SECTION D, §3 page 124

1. a, d, e, f, h
2. d
3. b, d
4. b, d
5. b
6. d, e
7. a-7; b-1; c-8; c-12; d-9; e-2; f-3; g-10; h-4; i-11; j-5; k-13; l-6
8. a-4; b-5; c-1; d-3; e-6; f-2
9. a-2; b-3; c-4; d-1
10. a-5; b-9; c-6; d-1; e-7; f-2; g-10; h-3; i-8; j-4
11. a-5; b-4; c-1; d-2; e-6; f-3
12. a-4; b-1; c-5; d-3; e-2

## UNIT VIII

### SECTION B, §3, page 136

1. a-9; b-8, b-10; c-1; d-7; e-2; f-6; g-3 h-5; i-4, i-11
2. a-7, a-14; b-13; c-1; d-15; e-12; f-2; g-11; h-3; i-17; j-10; k-4; l-16; m-18; n-9; o-5; p-19; q-8; r-6
3. a-4; b-11; c-5; d-6, d-12; e-7, e-13; f-14;

g-8; h-1, h-15; i-9; j-2; k-10; l-3

4. a-15, a-16; b-13, b-14; c-12; d-1, d-11; e-2; f-10; g-3; h-9; i-4; j-8; k-5; l-7; m-6

## UNIT VIII

### SECTION D, §3 page 145

1. a-5; b-10; c-14; d-6; (e *is included by accident*); f-11; g-1; h-7; i-12; j-2; k-3; l-9; m-13; n-4 (*Chinese sentence* 8 *has no English equivalent*)
2. a-6; (b *has no equivalent in Chinese*); c-5; d-11; e-4; f-10; g-3; h-9; i-2; j-8; k-1; l-7
3. a-4, a-9; b-15; c-10; d-5; e-16; f-11; g-6; h-1; i-12; j-7; k-2; l-13; m-8; n-3; o-14
4. a-3; b-10; c-6; d-2; e-9; f-5; g-1; h-8; i-4; j-7, j-11

## UNIT IX

### SECTION B, §3, page 157

1. a-5; b-11; c-6; d-12; e-7; f-13; g-1; h-8; i-10; j-2; k-9; l-3; m-14; n-4; o-15
2. a-5; b-10; c-1; d-6; e-2; f-7; g-3; h-8; i-4; j-9
3. a-4; b-6; c-2; d-1; e-5; f-3
4. a-3; b-4; c-6; d-11; e-2; f-5; g-9; h-1; i-7; j-10; k-8
5. a-3; b-5; c-1; d-4; e-2
6. a-4; b-9; c-5; d-1; e-6; f-2; g-7; h-3; i-8

## UNIT IX

### SECTION D, §3, page 167

1. a-2; b-5; c-8; d-3; e-6; f-1; g-4; h-7
2. a-10; b-4; c-11; d-5; e-12; f-6; g-13; h-7, h-14; i-1; j-15; k-2, k-8; l-3, l-9
3. a-4, a-14; b-1; c-9; d-13; e-8; f-11; g-5; h-10; i-2; j-15; k-6; l-16; m-3- n-12- o-7

R. a-6; b-15; c-23; d-7; e-16; f-24; g-25; h-8; i-17; j-26; k-9, k-18; l-1, l-27; m-10; n-19; o-2; p-11; q-28; r-3; s-12; t-20; u-4, u-13; v-5, v-21; w-14; x-22

## UNIT X

### SECTION B, §3, page 179

1. a-5; b-6; c-4; d-7; e-2; f-8; g-1; h-3
2. a-5, a-7; b-3; c-6; d-1; e-4; f-8; g-2
3. a-6; b-11; c-7; d-1; e-8; f-2; g-12; h-3; i-9; j-13; k-4; l-10; m-5
4. a-7; b-20; c-8; d-12; e-9; f-13; g-10; h-14; i-11; j-15; k-1; l-16; m-2; n-17; o-3; p-18; q-4; r-21; s-5; t-6; u-19

## UNIT X

### SECTION D, §3, page 187

1. a-9; b-23; c-10; d-26; e-11; f-24; g-12; h-25; i-13; j-1; k-14; l-2; m-15; n-3; o-16; p-4; q-17; r-5; s-18; t-6; u-19; v-27; w-7; x-20; y-21; z-8; w-22

2. a-7; b-19; c-6; d-18; e-5; f-20; g-4; h-15; i-3; j-14; k-2; l-13; m-1; n-12; o-10; p-11; q-9; r-17; s-8; t-16
3. a-1; b-9; c-2; d-7; e-10; f-3; g-24; h-23; i-22; j-4; k-8; l-17; m-21; n-11; o-5; p-20; q-19; r-14; s-15; t-13; u-6; v-16; w-18; x-12

## UNIT XI

### SECTION B, §3, page 197

1. a-6; b-14; c-9; d-10; e-3; f-16; g-2; h-11; i-1, i-17; j-19; k-20; l-4; m-13, m-15; n-8; o-18; p-5; q-12; r-7
2. a-4; b-6; c-17; d-20; e-14; f-1; g-9; h-18; i-2; j-13; k-3; l-16; m-8; n-21; o-10; p-7; q-19; r-15; s-11; t-12; u-5
3. a-4; b-6; c-9; d-1; e-11; f-8; g-12; h-3; i-13; j-2; k-7; l-5, l-10
4. a-5, a-9; b-12; c-6; d-1; e-8; f-2; g-10; h-11; i-4; j-13; k-3; l-7

## UNIT XI

### SECTION D, §3, page 205

1. a-23; b-7; c-16; d-24; e-8; f-17; g-25; h-9; i-1; j-18; k-10; l-2; m-11; n-19; o-3; p-12; q-20; r-4; s-13; t-21; u-5; v-14; w-6, w-22; x-15
2. a-3; b-9; c-15; d-2; e-8; f-14; g-1; h-7; i-13, j-18; k-6; l-12; m-17; n-5; o-11; p-19; q-4; r-10, r-16
3. a-16; b-6; c-15; d-5; e-14; f-4; g-13; h-3; i-2; j-12; k-21; l-1; m-11; n-20; o-10; p-19; q-9; r-18; s-8; t-17; u-7

## SECTION D, §1, page 97

F. 1. *Wǒ·men-dzày-dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn chr̄-'fàn.* We eat in the theater.

F. 2. *Fàn-'gwǎn·dz dzày-'jyā-li.* The restaurant is at home.

F. 3. *'Rén bù-hē-'shwěy.* People don't drink water.

F. 4. *'Yīng·gwo 'méy·yew-hwǒ-'chē.* England has no railroad trains.

F. 5. *'Dì·di 'jyěw·swèy, 'gē·ge 'bā·swèy.* The younger brother is nine years old, the older brother is eight.

T. 6. *Wǒ-'jyě·jye shr̀-'nywǔ-de.* My older sister is a girl.

T. 7. *'Fù·chin gēn-'mǔ·chin shr̀-'fù·mǔ.* Father and mother are parents.

F. 8. *Wǒ·de-'nán-háy·dz shr̀-wǒ·de-'nywǔ·ér.* My male child is my daughter.

T. 9. *Yì·'tyān yěw-'èr·shr-'sz̀·dyǎn-'jūng.* In one day there are twenty-four hours.

T. 10. *Dì-'yī·ge-háy·dz shr̀-dǐng-'dà-de.* The first child is the oldest.

F. 11. *'Jūng·gwo-rén 'dēw-bú-hwèy-shwō-Jūng·gwo-'hwà.* No Chinese know how to speak Chinese.

T. 12. *Yěw-jǐ·ge-'Měy·gwo-rén hwèy-shwō-Jūng·gwo-'hwà.* There are a few Americans who know how to speak Chinese.

T. 13. *'Yěw·de-rén 'hē-jyěw, 'yěw·de-rén 'bù-hē.* Some people drink liquor, some people don't drink.

F. 14. *Fàn-'gwǎn·dz dzày-tsè·'swǒ-li.* The restaurant is in the toilet.

F. 15. *'Nywǔ-rén 'dēw-shr̀-'tày·tay.* All women are wives.

F. 16. *Dzày-'Měy·gwo dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn bù-'dwō.* There aren't many movie-theaters in the United States.

F. 17. *'Yīng·gwo-rén bù-dúng-'Měy·gwo-rén-shwō-de-'hwà.* Englishmen can't understand what Americans say.

F. 18. *'Měy·gwo-'bīng bú-dàw-'Jūng·gwo-chywù.* American soldiers don't go to China.

F. 19. *'Měy·gwo-'bīng dēw-dzwò-'chwán dàw-'Jūng·gwo-chywù.* All American soldiers go to China by boat.

T. 20. *Dzày-'Jūng·gwo yéw-'Měy·gwo-fēy·'jī.* There are American planes in China.

T. 21. *Wǒ-'shwō-de shr̀-'Jūng·gwo-hwà.* I am speaking Chinese.

### For Conversation 1

F. 1. Mr. and Mrs. Wáng both came.
T. 2. Mr. Wáng has a small son.
F. 3. The son is three years old.

### For Conversation 2

T. 1. Mr. Ross's mother has five children.
F. 2. Mr. Ross is the oldest.
F. 3. Mr. Wáng has no daughter.

### For Conversation 3

T. 1. Mr. Ross's older sister is in England.
F. 2. She went by boat.
T. 3. There are many Americans going to England.

### For Conversation 4

T. 1. There is no one to give Mr. Ross and Mr. Wáng any tea to drink.
T. 2. They themselves go inside to drink some tea.
F. 3. The tea on the table is very poor.

L

#### For Conversation 5

F 1. Mr. Ross's parents are both dead.
F. 2. Mr. Wáng says his father is at present still in England.
F. 3. Mr. Wáng's father intends to return to China this year.

#### For Conversation 6

T. 1. At present there are still boats running from the United States to England.
F. 2. Mr. Ross has to go alone to the restaurant to eat.
T. 3. Mr. Wáng has to go back home to eat.

### §2. Group 2, page 99

#### For Conversation 1

F. 1. Mr. Wáng is going to Mr. Jāng's home.
T. 2. Mrs. Jāng has gone to visit her mother.
F. 3. Mrs. Jāng is returning tomorrow.

#### For Conversation 2

F. 1. Mr. Ross's yard has no trees in it.

T. 2. In the yard there is a very attractive little table.

T. 3. Mr. Ross has gone out.

### For Conversation 3

F. 1. Wáng and Jāng both are drinking tea in the yard.

T. 2. There are cigarettes on the table in the yard, but no matches.

F. 3. Wáng also has no matches.

### For Conversation 4

T. 1. These two Chinese wait for Mr. Ross less than five minutes.

T. 2. Wáng introduces Jāng and Ross.

T. 3. Mr. Ross invites them to have some tea.

### For Conversation 5

F. 1. Mr. Ross has been living in China for ten years.

T. 2. Wáng says that of his foreign friends who know how to speak Chinese Ross's is best.

F. 3. Ross says that he speaks French and German both very well.

N

**For Conversation 6**

T. 1. Jāng can't eat dinner at Ross's home because he has to go back home.

T. 2. Wáng can't eat dinner at Ross's home either.

T. 3. The three men all say 'see you tomorrow.'

0

## SECTION D, §1, Group 1, page 215

### FOR CONVERSATION 1

1. Mr. Ross says he has never come to this street before.
2. The leather shoes that Ross is wearing are not for informal wear.
3. Wáng tells Ross to buy a pair of Chinese cloth shoes for informal wear.

### FOR CONVERSATION 2

1. The first pair of cloth shoes that the clerk brings fit Ross quite comfortably.
2. The second pair do not fit comfortably.
3. The price of the shoes is three-fifty.

### FOR CONVERSATION 3

1. The clerk says that the prices can be bargained about.
2. In the shoestore there are briefcases made of brown leather, also some made of black leather.
3. Mr. Ross has forgotten to bring any money.

### FOR CONVERSATION 4

1. Mr. Jàw and Mr. Hú both sell old books.
2. Ross considers going to Jàw's bookstore to look

P

around.

3. Wáng wants to buy things used for brushing the teeth too.

**For Conversation 5**

1. Mr. Wáng has not brought the receipt to the laundry.
2. Therefore he can't take his two suits of clothes that have just been cleaned.
3. The laundry is called the Chinese-Western Laundry.

**For Conversation 6**

1. Wáng is carrying too many things, and can't manage them.
2. When they get to the bus stop the bus is just arriving.
3. Ross buys the tickets.

### §1, Group 2. page 216

**For Conversation 1**

1. On Wednesday afternoons Wáng doesn't have to go to school.
2. Mr. David arrived a few years back.
3. Wáng says he can take Mr. David shopping.

Q

### For Conversation 2

1. Mr. David says that now when he listens to the radio there is a lot he can't understand.
2. He lives in a room that has a radio.
3. When Mr. David earlier returned from China to the United States, Japan and China were not yet fighting.

### For Conversation 3

1. David wants to buy things for writing letters and other things.
2. They have to go to two places to buy the things.
3. First they go to a big store that has just been opened.

### §2, STORY, page 217

Mr. Wáng teaches in a school. One morning it was necessary for him to go to the school very early because he had a very important piece of work. This matter had to be finished without fail before eight A.M. So he got up at five, put on his clothing, put on his shoes, put on his hat, and left the house.

He had two pairs of shoes, one pair brown (yellow), one pair black. On this day, when he was putting on his shoes, it was still dark. Because it was so dark in his room, he couldn't see which were the brown shoes and which were the black. He put on one brown shoe, one black, and then left.

When he arrived at the school, it was already light. In the school there was a janitor ('sweep-floor-er'), named Jāng. Everyone called him 'Lǎw-Jāng.' When Mr. Wáng entered the room, Lǎw-Jāng was just sweeping the floor. Lǎw-Jāng saw Mr. Wáng come in, and immediately said 'You've come so early! Look, you're not wearing a single pair of shoes.' At this time Mr. Wáng was also able to see. The shoes that he was wearing included one brown, one black. He said 'That's right! These aren't a pair. I have some important work right now, and can't go back home to change.' He thought a minute, then said to Lǎw-Jāng 'When you finish sweeping the floor what else do you have to do?' Lǎw-Jāng said 'When the floor is swept then I'll have nothing to do.' Mr. Wáng said 'In that case, could you go to my home and bring my shoes for me? I ought to change them here.' Lǎw-Jāng said 'Sure. But first I must sweep the floor. Wait until I've finished sweeping the floor and I'll go right away.' Mr. Wáng said 'OK.'

S

When it was something after seven, Lǎw-Jāng came running back. Mr. Wáng saw that he had no shoes in his hands. So he said to him 'Have you brought my shoes or not?' Lǎw-Jāng said 'No.' Mr. Wáng said 'How come you didn't bring my shoes for me? Just look, it's already seven-thirty. I'll still have to go back myself and change my shoes.'

Lǎw-Jāng said very slowly 'Mr. Wáng, there's no use in your going home. Going back would do no good.' Mr. Wáng said 'How come?' Lǎw-Jāng said 'That pair of shoes that you have at home is also one brown, one black.'

## TRUE-FALSE STATEMENTS, page 218

1. Mr. Wáng is a teacher.
2. At five o'clock in the evening he went to the school.
3. He was wearing shoes, but hadn't put on a hat.
4. Mr. Wáng left wearing two pairs of shoes.
5. He left wearing two shoes.
6. He was wearing one brown shoe, one brown shoe.
7. When he put his shoes on it was already daylight.

T

8. Lǎw-Jāng was the servant in the school.
9. He told Mr. Wáng that he wasn't wearing a pair of shoes.
10. Mr. Wáng said 'This is a new style of shoes, one brown, one black.'
11. He said 'I must go back home and change my shoes.'
12. He told Lǎw-Jāng 'You haven't swept the floor clean.'
13. Wáng couldn't return home himself, so he asked Lǎw-Jang to go and bring his shoes.
14. Lǎw-Jāng brought Mr. Wáng's shoes.
15. He should have brought one black shoe for Mr. Wáng, but he didn't.
16. Mr. Wáng had to go home himself and change his shoes.
17. Lǎw-Jāng told Mr. Wáng there was no use to change his shoes.
18. He said that the pair of shoes at home was also one brown, one black.

U

# CONTENTS

## PART THREE

UNIT Page

13. THE TELEPHONE. Kinds of Sentences in Chinese. 232

14. AT THE AIRPORT. Terms for Army Officers. The Use of Adjectives. 253

15. ON THE PLANE. More Military Terms. Another Type of Adjective. 269

UNIT Page

16. SUNRISE. Some Geographical Terms; Railroads. Adjective Predicates with Sentence Subjects. 283

17. AT THE HOTEL. A Chinese Marching Song. Large Numbers. Adjectives and Auxiliaries. 304

18. REVIEW. 325

## PART FOUR

19. A SPEECH. Military Organization. 'The more . . . the more.' Goals. 331

20. AT THE MILITARY ACADEMY. Branches of Service. Fractions. More on Goals. 352

21. AT 'TÚNG·GWĀN. Sentence Predicates. 375

22. AN ACCIDENT. The Verb *yěw;* Relation-Goal Predicates. 392

23. BANKING AND THEATER. Noun Predicates and the Verb *shr̀*. 408

24. REVIEW. 426

259

## PART FIVE

UNIT Page

25. RELIGION. Arithmetic. Review of Resultative Compounds. 432

26. INDUSTRY. Bamboo; Containers; Writing and Printing. The Meaning and Use of *le*. 449

27. AGRICULTURE. Sentences as Goals. 468

UNIT Page

28. GOVERNMENT; GEOGRAPHY. Some Chinese History. Names and Terms of Address. General Review of Nouns and Measures. 487

29. CHINA'S FUTURE. The Three Principles of the People. Chinese Dynasties. The Chinese Writing System. 516

30. REVIEW. 531

## APPENDIX

GENERAL REMARKS. Use of the Appendix. 541

TOPICAL INDEX. 544

ENGLISH-CHINESE REMINDER LIST. 546

CHINESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY. 563

# PART THREE

# UNIT 13

## THE TELEPHONE

### Note

*1.* If you have a Guide, the procedure for the remainder of the course is the same as before. If you have no Guide, and have been using the phonograph records (which serve only the first twelve Units), select good students in the group to prepare in advance each time to play the Guide's role with the Basic Sentences or the Listening In.

*2.* The remaining eighteen Units of the course are organized a bit differently than the first twelve. They are shorter, each Unit containing only one group of Basic Sentences instead of two. Except for the three Review Units (XVIII, XXIV, XXX), each Unit is organized as follows:

SECTION A: *Basic Sentences.*
SECTION B: *Word Study.*
SECTION C: *What Would You Say?*
SECTION D: *Listening In and Conversation.*
FINDER LIST.

The Finder List contains all the new expressions of the Unit, so organized that you can see how they are built up. Don't just use it for reference when you forget the word; study it.

*3.* In Unit XIII instructions are given wherever necessary to be sure that you do the right thing at the right time. In general, of course, the things to do will be just as before. Since all the Units from now on are built on the same plan, these instructions are omitted after Unit XIII. Refer back to this Unit in case of doubt.

## SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

(Go through these several times, first with the group repeating in unison, then taking turns.)

*Ross has just come home early from the office.*

| *ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS* | *AIDS TO LISTENING* |
|---|---|
| | *Lǎw-'Jēw* |
| Just now there was a phone call for you. | *Gāng·tsáy-yěw-'rén gěy-nín-dǎ-dyàn·'hwà.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| He said for you to call back as soon as you returned. | *Shwō-shr̀ 'chǐng-nín yì-'hwéy·lay jyèw-gěy-ta-dǎ-dyàn·'hwà.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Who was it? | *'Shwéy 'dǎ·láy-de?* |
| | *Lǎw-'Jēw* |
| A Mr. Hán. | *Yí·wèy-shìng-'Hán-de.* |
| number | *'hàw·shu* |
| His phone number is three one six nine. | *Tā·de-dyàn·hwà-'hàw·shu shr̀-'sān-'yī-'lyèw-'jyěw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| That's my office. | *Nà-shr̀ wǒ·de-gūng·shr̀·'fáng.* |
| Maybe it's something important. | *Yé·shywu-shr̀ 'yàw·jǐn·de-shr̀.* |
| (he takes up the phone) | *(ná·chi-dyàn·hwà·'jī-lay)* |
| Three one six nine. | *'Sān-'yī-'lyèw-'jyěw.* |
| Hello! | *'Wèy!* |
| Mr. Hán? | *'Hán-shyān·sheng?* |
| | *Hán* |
| Yes. | *'Shr̀.* |
| Is this Mr. Ross? | *'Lwó-shyān·sheng-ma?* |
| army officer | *jywēn·'gwān* |
| Ministry of Military Affairs | *Jywēn·jèng·'bù* |
| Half an hour ago, an officer came from the Ministry of Military Affairs. | *'Bàn·dyǎn-jūng-yǐ·'chyán, yěw-yí·wèy-jywēn·'gwān tsúng-Jywēn·jèng·'bù-lay.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| reporter | *jì·'jě* |
| front line | *chyán·'shyàn* |
| to make an inspection | *'tsān·gwān* |
| He says that foreign correspondents are asked to make an inspection of the Front. | *Shwō-shr̀ chǐng-'wày·gwo-shīn·wén-jì·'jě dàw-chyán·'shyàn 'tsan·gwān.* |
| You're invited too. | *Yé-chíng-'nǐ-chywu.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Swell! | *Hǎw-'jí-le!* |
| Which Front is it? | *'Nǎ·ge-chyán·'shyàn?* |
| | *Hán* |
| He said he didn't know. | *Tā-shwō tā-bù-'jr̄·dàw.* |
| only | *jř* |
| He just said that the place is very cold. | *Tā-'jř-shwō nà·ge-dì·fang hén-'lěng.* |
| And that they'd stay a week. | *yàw-'jù yí·ge-lǐ·'bày.* |
| warm | *'nwǎn·he* |
| Therefore you should wear warm clothes. | *Swó·yi yàw-chwān 'nwǎn·he·de-'yī·shang.* |
| to be permitted | *shywǔ* |
| kilogram | *gūng·'jīn* |
| However, you're only allowed twenty kilos of baggage. | *Kě·shr 'jř-shywǔ-dày 'èr·shr-gūng·'jīn-de-'shíng·li.* |
| | *Ross* |
| pound | *bàng* |
| Forty-four pounds | *Sz̀·shr-'sz̀-'bàng* |

| | |
|---|---|
| That's enough. | *'Gèw·le.* |
| I can even take these two cameras along. | *Lyán-lyǎng·ge-jàw·shyàng·'jī yě-ké·yi-'dày·je.* |
| When do we start? | *Shém·me-shŕ·hew-'dzěw?* |
| | *Hǎn* |
| I don't know. | *Bù-'jr̄·daw.* |
| airport | *fēy·ji·'chǎng* |
| But you're asked to be at the airport tomorrow morning before four. | *Kě·shr chíng-nǐ míng·tyan-dzǎw·chen-'sż·dyǎn-jūng-yǐ·'chyán dàw-fēy·jī·'chǎng.* |
| | *Ross* |
| At what hour? | *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew?* |
| to be clear | *'chīng·chu* |
| The phone isn't clear. | *Dyàn·'hwà bù-'chīng·chu.* |
| | *Hán* |
| Tomorrow morning at four. | *'Míng·tyan 'dzǎw·chen 'sż·dyǎn-jūng.* |
| | *Ross* |
| That early! | *'Nà·me-dzǎw!* |
| I'll have to pack now. | *Wó-děy shēw·shr-'shíng·li-le.* |
| I'll leave the work in the office for you to manage. | *Gūng·shr̀·'fáng-li-de-shr̀ 'dèw-chǐng-'nǐ 'gwǎn.* |
| Wire me in case of anything urgent. | *Yěw-'yàw·jǐn·de-shr̀ jyèw-géy-wo-dǎ-dyàn·'bàw.* |
| Ministry of War | *Lù·jywēn·'bù* |
| to transmit | *'jwǎn·jyāw* |
| **Ask** the Ministry of War to transmit it. | *Chǐng-Lù·jywēn·'bù géy-'jwǎn·jyāw.* |

264

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Hǎn* |
| OK. | *'Hǎw-ba.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Another thing. | *'Háy-yěw-yí·jyàn-shr̀.* |
| main office | *'dzǔng·jywú* |
| Send a radiogram to our main office in the United States. | *Géy-Měy·gwo-'dzǔng·jywú dǎ-yí·ge-wú·shyàn·dyàn·'bàw.* |
| Say that I'm going somewhere north of here for a tour of inspection. | *Shwō wǒ-dàw-'běy·byan-chywù 'tsān·gwān.* |
| | *Hán* |
| Anything more? | *'Háy-yěw-shr̀-ma?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Nothing more. | *'Méy·yěw-le.* |
| Goodbye and thanks. | *'Shyè·shye-nǐ-ya; dzày-'jyàn.* |
| | *Hán* |
| Bon voyage! | *Yī-'lù 'píng·ān!* |

(Remember to go through the Basic Sentences several times before going on.)

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

(Read through the following individually. All the words mentioned here are listed in the *Finder List* at the end of the Unit. By referring to it as you go along, and by studying it in detail after reading the Word Study, you will see how the new words of this Unit are put together and will remember them much more easily. Be sure to study the *Finder List* before going on to the What Would You Say and the Listening In, since there are some additional useful terms listed and explained that you will need in the remainder of this Unit and thereafter.)

**Point 1. Ministry.** What we in this country call 'department' of this or that, in the federal government, is in many other countries called 'ministry' of such and such. In China the term *Jywēn·jèng·'bù* 'Ministry of Military Affairs' is the equivalent of our War Department. An older term for the same organization, no longer official but still heard, is *Lù·jywēn·'bù.* The Chinese call the U. S. War Department *'Měy·gwo-Lù·jywēn·'bù. Wày·jyāw·'bù* is 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs,' the equivalent of our State Department. Check these terms in the *Finder List* to see how they are made up.

**Point 2. 'Chīng·chu.** This word as an adjective means 'clear, orderly, intelligible'. It is also used as a postverb:

*'tīng-chīng·chu* 'to listen and hear clearly'.

Several examples are listed in the *Finder List.*

**Point 3. Jí.** As an adverb this word means 'extremely, very':

*Jí-'hǎw!* 'Extremely good!'

But more often it is used *after* an adjective in a special way:

*Hǎw-'jí-le!* 'Swell!' 'Fine!' (response to a suggestion, for example)
*Hwày-'jí-le!* 'That's terrible!'
*Dà-'jí-le!* 'So big!' 'Gee, how big it is!'

**Point 4. Gěy as Adverb.** Compare the following two sentences:

*Wǒ-'géy-nǐ·men 'jyè·shaw.* 'I'll introduce you.'
*Chǐng-Lù·jywēn·'bù géy-'jwǎn·jyāw.* 'Ask the Ministry of War to transmit it.'

In the first sentence the word *gěy* is followed by a word referring to someone or some group of people, and means 'for the sake of, for the benefit of' the people named. In the second sentence *gěy* is *not* followed by any word referring to anyone; the meaning in this case is 'as a kindness towards, for the sake of', someone who doesn't need to be mentioned because it is clear who is involved. When *gěy* is so used, directly before a verb, it functions as an adverb with just the meaning described—'as a kindness, for someone's sake'. This usage is very frequent; thus you can say 'Please introduce (us)' simply by saying *Chǐng-gěy-'jyè·shaw.*

**Point 4. A.** The sentence-final element *-a* (see Unit X, Section D, Point 8) actually has several different forms, depending on the shape of the immediately preceding word:

| | |
|---|---|
| after *-i*, *-y* | *-ya* |
| after *-u* (except *-ywu*), *-w* | *-wa* |
| after *-a*, *-o*, *-e*, *-ywu* | *-ya*, *-a* |
| after *-n* | *-na* |
| after *-ng* | *-nga* |
| after *-r*, *-z* (with no vowel letter) | *-a* |
| after *-r* preceded by a vowel | *-a* |

For example:

*Láw-'Lĭ-ya!* 'Hey there, Old Li!'
*Lăw-'Dày-ya!*
*Láw-'Wŭ-wa!*
*Lăw-'Shywú-a! Lăw-'Shywú-ya!*
*Lăw-'Lyèw-wa!*
*Lăw-'Sān-na!*
*Lăw-'Wáng-nga!*
*Láw-'Mă-ya!*
*Lăw-'Lwó-ya!*
*Lăw-'Shyè-ya!*
*Lăw-'Èr-a!*
*Lăw-'Sz̆-a!*

These changes take place only when speaking fast—but people speak fast most of the time. For your own speaking, you can stick to *-a* and sound perfectly natural; the above changes are listed simply so that they will not confuse you when you hear them.

*-A* is sometimes used in place of *-ne* in asking a question in which there is already a question-word:

*Tā-'dzěm·me-bù-'láy-ya?* 'How is it he doesn't come?'

*'Tyān 'dzěm·me-háy-bú-'lyàng-nga?* 'How come it isn't light yet?'

*Wèy-'shém·me-ya?* 'How come?'

**Point 5. Telephoning.** The use of the dial telephone is the same in China as in the United States. With call phones, there are certain phrases which must be learned. If there are fewer than ten thousand phones in a district, the business is usually handled through a single exchange. In larger cities there are usually several exchanges, designated by additional digits at the beginning of a number. This is the case in Shanghai and Tientsin; in Peiping the exchanges have names deriving from their locations in the city.

When you pick up a call phone, the operator will usually say:

*Dyàn·hwà·'jywú.* '(This is the) telephone office.'

Then you give the number, or the exchange followed by the number.

For example, in Peiping:

*'Dūng·jywú 'sān-'sz̆-'wŭ-'lyèw.* 'East Exchange 3456.'

If the line is busy, the operator may say:

*Yěw-rén-'jyàw, 'děng-yi·děng.* 'Someone is calling (that number), wait a minute.'

Or this may take the form:

*Yěw-rén-'jyàw·je-ne, 'gwà·shang 'děng-yi·děng.* 'Someone is calling (that number), hang up and wait a while.'

Here are some other terms and expressions used in telephoning:

*dă-dyàn·'hwà* or *jyàw-dyàn·'hwà* 'to make a phone call' *gěy-'Lwó-shyān·sheng dǎ-dyàn·'hwà* 'to telephone Mr. Ross'

*Yàw-gēn-'Lwó-shyān·sheng shwō-'hwà.* 'I want to speak with Mr. Ross.'

'*Wǒ-jyèw-shr̀ shìng-'Lwó-de.* 'This is Mr. Ross.'

'*Wèy!* or '*Ày!* 'Hello!'

'*Nǎ-yí·wèy?* 'Who is this calling?'

*Nín-'nǎr?* 'Where are you calling from?'

*Wǒ-shìng-'Mǎ.* 'This is Ma.'

*Jǎw-'shwéy shwō-'hwà?* 'Whom are you calling?'

*Chǐng-'Wáng-shyān·sheng láy-shwō-'hwà.* 'Ask Mr. Wáng to come to the phone.'

*dyàn·hwà-'běn·dz* 'telephone directory'

'*dzày-jyàw* 'to call again'

*dyàn·hwà-'hàw·shu* 'telephone number'

*gūng-yùng-dyàn·'hwà* 'public telephone'

*dyàn·hwà-fēn·'jī* 'switchboard'

**Point 6. Weight.** *Bàng* is the Chinese version of the English word *pound*, and is used to mean that unit of weight. The fundamental unit in an older Chinese system of weights and measures is *jīn;* the term for 'kilogram' is *gūng·'jīn.*

All terms of this kind are used as measures, rather than as nouns. That is, you put numbers directly before them, without any other measure between: *sān-gūng·'jīn* 'three kilograms', and so on.

The Chinese government is sponsoring the Metric System of weights and measures, and it is used for all official purposes, but at least three other systems are in use also. The plan is to get the people well used to the Metric System, and then replace all the others by it, but this objective will probably not be attained until several years after the war.

### Point 7. Kinds of Sentences

Wǒ-*shr Měy·gwo-'bing.* 'I'm an American soldier.'

'Nà·ge-rén '*bú·shr̀-Měy-gwo-bīng.* 'That man isn't an American soldier.'

Wǒ(-*shr̀*) '*dzwó·tyan-láy-de.* 'I arrived yesterday.'

'Tā '*bú·shr-dzwó·tyan-láy-de.* 'He didn't arrive yesterday' (but some other day).

Wǒ-'ér·dz jīn-nyan *shŕ-'chī·swèy-le.* 'My son is seventeen years old this year.'

#### B

Nà·ge-'wǎn *hén-'shyǎw.* 'That bowl is quite small.'

Jè·jāng-'jwō·dz *bú-'tày-dà.* 'That table isn't too big.'

Nà·ge-'bìng-rén '*yǐ·jing-'hǎw-le.* 'That sick man has already recovered.'

Shyàn·dzày 'tyān·chi *bú-'rè-le*. 'The weather's gotten cold now.' (it wasn't up to now)

C

Tā chywù·nyan *dàw-'Měy·gwo chywù-le*. 'He went to America last year.'

Wǒ-*bú-'chywù*. 'I'm not going.'

Tā-shyàn·dzày *dzày-Nyēw·'ywē nyàn-'shū*. 'He's studying in New York now.'

Wǒ-*bú-nyàn-'shū*. 'I'm not going to study.'

(1) In each of the above sentences, the part underlined *says something about* the person or thing mentioned earlier in the sentence. The name of the person or thing or situation being talked about (*I*, *that man*, *he*, *my son*, *that child*, *that table*, and so on) is called the *subject*. The part of the sentence that says something about the subject is called the *predicate*.

(2) Compare the predicates in the three groups of sentences marked A, B, and C.

In A, the *main part* of the predicate is a *noun* or a *noun expression:*

*Měy·gwo-'bīng* 'American soldier'
*'dzwó·tyan-láy-de* 'one (or the thing) that arrived yesterday'
*shŕ-'chī·swèy* 'seventeen years (of age)'

In B, the main part of the predicate is an *adjective*:

| | |
|---|---|
| *shyǎw* | 'small' |
| *dà* | 'large' |
| *hǎw* | 'well, OK' |
| *rè* | 'hot' |

In C, the main part of the predicate is a *verb* or *verb expression:*

| | |
|---|---|
| *chywù* | 'go' |
| *nyàn-'shū* | 'study' |

Predicates of the type in group A are called *noun predicates*, those of the type in group B are called *adjective predicates*, and those of the type in group C are called *verb predicates*.

(3) Now notice particularly the way the *negative* sentences are formed in the three groups—the second and fourth sentence in each group, all containing an element with the meaning 'not'.

Here is a general principle which you should remember:

*a. If a sentence has a noun predicate, the negative is made always with 'bú·shr̀ 'not is'.*

*b. If a sentence has an adjective or verb predicate, the negative is almost always made with bū or méy alone,* very rarely with *'bú·shr̀*.

Observe that while the first part of this principle is absolute, the second part is not. Occasionally a sentence with an adjective or verb predicate is made negative with *bú·shr*. Your safest rule in speaking, however, is to use *bú·shr* for the negative *only* in sentences with noun predicates, and *always* then.

(4) Notice finally the following:

*Yǐ·jing-'hǎw-le.* '(He's) already recovered.'

*Dàw-'Měy·gwo-chywù-le.* '(He) went to America.'

*Gwèy-'shìng?* '(What is your) honorable family name?'

*Sż·dyǎn-'bàn.* '(It's) four thirty.'

These expressions, and many other like them, are used all the time in ordinary conversation. They differ from the fuller sentences listed at the beginning of this Point in having *only a predicate*, with no subject. The person or thing or situation being talked about, which in longer sentences is mentioned explicitly as the subject, is in sentences like these clear from the context and hence omitted.

In general, when a Chinese sentence does not contain *both* subject *and* predicate, it consists simply of a predicate.

(After going through the above, each learner working alone, each individually should review the Basic Sentences by covering the English and trying to read and understand the Chinese. Don't be satisfied until you can read through all the Chinese in the Basic Sentences and understand it without referring to the English.)

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

(Still working individually, follow the instructions given below with each group of Chinese and English sentences. Be sure you can say all the sentences fluently and know the meaning of all. Working as a group, these sentences will all be reviewed and you may be called on at any time by the Leader.)

*1.* Match the English sentences given first with the Chinese sentences which follow them. They are all possible answers to the question *Chyán·'shyàn dzày-shém·me-'dì·fang?* 'Where's the front line?'

1. Not far ahead.
2. Not far from that tree.
3. It can be seen from here.
4. Very near where that soldier is standing.
5. Not far from where that officer is standing.
6. It's very far from here.

a. *'Dzwó·tyan lí-'jè·li hěn-'jìn; 'jīn·tyan lí·de 'ywǎn·le.*
b. *Jìn-'jí-le.*
c. *Dzày-'chyán·byan bù-'ywǎn.*
d. *Lí-nà·kē-'shù bù-'ywǎn.*
e. *Lí nà·ge-jywēn·'gwān-'jàn-de-dì·fang hěn-'jìn.*
f. *Lí-'jè·li 'háy-yěw-sān·shr-yīng·'lǐ-ne.*

7. It's still thirty miles from here.
8. It can be seen from the plane.
9. Yesterday it was near here; today it is further away.
10. It's extremely far away.
11. It's extremely near.

g. *Tsúng-fēy·'jī-shang kàn-de·'jyàn.*
h. *Ywǎn-'jí-le.*
i. *Lí-'jè·li hén-'ywǎn.*
j. *Tsúng-'jè·li ké·yi-'kàn·jyan.*
k. *Lí nà·ge-'bīng-'jàn-de-dì·fang hěn-'jìn.*

*2.* Match up the English and Chinese answers given below to this question: *Tā-dzwò-shém·me-'shr̀?* 'What work does he do?'

1. He's a news reporter.
2. He works in the Ministry of Military Affairs.
3. He isn't an Army Officer.
4. Formerly he was in charge of many things.
5. Now he is only in charge of ammunition.
6. He's in charge of the military telephones.
7. He's a clerk in the Ministry of Foreign Affairs.
8. He doesn't work here; he's here as a visitor.
9. He's a bureaucrat; listen to him talking like a politician.
10. He works for the telephone office.

a. *Tā-dzày-Wày·jyāw·'bù-li dzwò-'shū·jì.*
b. *Tā-'gwǎn 'jywēn-yùng-dyàn·'hwà.*
c. *Tā-dzày-Jywēn·jèng·'bù dzwò-'shr̀.*
d. *Shyàn·dzày 'jŕ-'gwǎn-jywēn·'hwǒ-le.*
e. *Tā-shr̀ dzwò-'gwān-de; tīng-ta dǎ-gwān·'hwà.*
f. *Tā-shr̀ shīn·wén-jì·'jě.*
g. *Yǐ·'chyán tā-'gwǎn-de-shr̀ hěn-'dwō.*
h. *Tā-'bú-dzày-'jè·li dzwò-'shr̀; shr̀-láy-'tsān·gwān-de.*
i. *Tā-gěy-dyàn·hwà·'jywú dzwò-'shr̀.*
j. *Tā-'bú·shr lù·jywēn-jywēn·'gwān.*

*3.* In the following ten sentences are cases of three different elements all pronounced *gwān*. Group the sentences under three headings, depending on the meanings that this element has:

a. *'Gwān·shang-'mén.*
b. *Tā-shr̀ 'dà·gwān.*
c. *Tā-shr̀ 'tsān'gwān-de.*
d. *Tā-bǎ-'chwāng·hu 'gwān·shang-le.*
e. *Yí·ge tsúng-Lù·jywēn·'bù-láy-de rén dàw-'Wáng-shyān·sheng-de-shywé·'shyàw-li chywù-'tsān·gwān.*
f. *'Mén-chyán·byan yěw-yí·ge-jywēn·'gwān jàn·je.*

g. *'Dà·gwān jìn·le-'wū·dz, 'shyǎw·gwān jyèw-dēw-*
*'jàn·chi·lay-le.*

h. *Dzwò-fēy·'jī-de shř-yí·ge-Lù·jywēn-jywēn·'gwān.*

i. *Dzwò-fēy·'jī-de 'bú·shř 'tsān·gwān·de.*

j. *Yí·ge-láy-'tsān·gwān-de-jywēn·'gwān bǎ-'mén*
*'gwān·shang-le.*

(Working together as a group, review the material of this Section. The Leader will ask different members of the group to put the right English and Chinese together in the first and second sets of sentences, and will check your grouping of sentences in the third set.)

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN AND CONVERSATION

(Before getting together to go through the *Listening In,* review the Basic Sentences again individually by covering the Chinese and trying to say it as you read the English to yourself. Don't quit until you can produce every single Chinese sentence immediately and fluently when you see the equivalent English.

Then, when you meet as a group, close your books and let the people selected in advance present the Conversations of the Listening In to you. Don't read the Conversations in advance unless you are one of the people selected to present them to the rest of the class—just see if you can catch it all as they say it. After the first time through, open your books and go through more slowly, checking with each other on any points which aren't clear. Finally, let other members of the class take the various parts.)

### Conversation 1

*'Lwó dàw-yì·jyā-'pù·dz chywù-mǎy-'dūng·shi.*

Ross: *Wǒ-yàw-'mǎy yí·ge-'shyāng·dz.*

'Hwǒ·ji: *'Jè·ge 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*
*Nín-'kàn, jè·ge-'pí·dz dwō·me-'lyàng!*

Ross: *Wǒ-'bu yàw 'pí·dz-dzwò-de.*
*Yéw-'jř-dzwò-de-ma?*

'Hwǒ·ji: *Yěw. 'Jè·ge 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*
*Jè-shř 'jř-dzwò-de, kě·shr 'rúng·yi-'hwày.*

Ross: *Rúng·yi-'hwày 'bú-yàw·jǐn.*
*Wó-'jř-yùng 'yí·ge-lǐ·bày.*

*(tā-bǎ-'shyāng·dz 'ná·dzày-'shěw-li)*

*Bú-gwò-'sż·wǔ·bàng.*
*'Dwō·shǎw-chyán?*

'Hwǒ·ji: *'Chī·kwày-chyán.*

Ross: *Tày-'gwèy-le.*
*Géy-ni 'wǔ·kwày-chyán, 'mày-bu·mày?*

'Hwǒ·ji: '*Haw-ba. Nín-'háy-mǎy-shém·me?*

Ross: '*Háy-yàw yì·tyáw-'shěw·jīn, yì·bǎ-yá·'shwā·dz.*
'*Háy-yàw dǎ-'dż-yùng-de 'jř.*

'Hwǒ·ji: *Jè-shr̀ 'shěw·jin hé-yá·'shwā·dz.*
*Jè-shr̀ 'jř.*

Ross: *Yéw bǐ-jè·ge-'hǎw-de-'jř-ma?*

'Hwǒ·ji: '*Méy·yěw-le.*
*Yǐ·'chyán wǒ·men-mày-de-'háw-jř shr̀-tsúng-'Měy·gwo-láy-de.*
*Shyàn·dzày 'dēw-mày·'wán-le.*
'*Shīn·de láy-bu·'lyǎw-le.*

Ross: *Jyèw·shr-'jè·ge-ba.*
*Yàw·yì·'bǎy·jāng.*

'Hwǒ·ji: *Yí·'gùng-shr̀ shŕ-'yí·kwày-'wǔ.*

Ross: '*Jè-shr̀ shŕ-'wǔ·kwày-chyán-de-pyàw·dz.*

'Hwǒ·ji: '*Jáw·gey-nín 'sān·kwày-'wǔ.*

### Conversation 2

*Mr. Wáng is delayed by business and phones home to say that he will be late.* (His wife's name is *Měy·'jēn* 'beautiful truth.')

Wáng: (*ná·chi-dyàn·hwà·'jī-lay*)
'*Wèy!*

Operator: *Dyàn·hwà·'jywú.*

Wáng: *Wǒ-yàw 'yī-'sż-'líng-'sān.*

(the line is connected)

Lǎw-'Jēw: '*Wèy! Nín-'nǎr?*

Wáng: '*Lǎw-'Jēw-wa!*
'*Tày·tay dzày-'jyā-ma?*

Lǎw-'Jēw: *Dzày-'jyā.*
*Chǐng-nín 'děng-yi·děng.*

(*Lǎw-'Jēw 'jǎw·jáw·le Wáng-'tày·ta gēn-ta shwō:*)
'*Shyān·sheng dǎ-dyàn·'hwà-lay-le, yàw-gēn-nín shwō-'hwà.*

Mrs. Wáng: (*ná·chi-dyàn·hwà·'jī-lay*)
'*Wèy!*

Wáng: *Měy·'jēn!*
'*Jīn·tyan shywé·'shyàw-li yěw-'shr̀.*
*Hwéy-'jyā bù-néng tày-'dzǎw.*
*Děy-'bā·jyéw·dyǎn-jūng 'tsáy-néng 'hwéy·chywu.*
'*Nǐ·men-'shyān chī-'fàn.*
'*Bú·yàw-'děng-wo.*

Mrs. Wáng: '*Hǎw-ba.*

Wáng: *'Jyā-li yĕw-'shr̀-ma?*
Mrs. Wáng: *'Méy-shr̀.*
*Wŏ-'chū·chywù·măy-'dūng shi chywù-le.*
*'Gāng-hwéy·lay.*
*'Ew! Lăw-'Jēw-shwō, jīn·tyan-'yè-li 'Lwó-shyān·sheng yàw-dàw-fēy·jī·'chăng-chywù.*
Wáng: *Dàw-'shém·me-dì·fang-chywu?*
Mrs. Wáng: *Fēy·jī·'chăng.*
*Tā-yàw-dzwò-fēy·'jī dàw-chyán·'shyàn chywu.*
Wáng: *Dàw-'nă·ge-chyán·'shyàn-na?*
Mrs. Wáng: *Bù-'jr̄·dàw.*
Wáng: *Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'dzĕw-wa?*
Mrs. Wáng: *Yè-li-'sān·dyăn-dwō-jūng.*
Wáng: *Nà·me wŏ-'jyéw·dyan-yĭ·'chyán 'hwéy·chywu gēn-ta 'tán-yi·tán.*

## Conversation 3

*Wáng talks to Ross about his trip.*

Wáng: *Tīng-shwō nĭ-jīn·tyan-'yè-li yàw-dàw-fēy·jī·'chăng-chywu.*
*Shr̀-'jēn·de-ma?*
Ross: *'Shr̀. Jīn·tyan-'shyà·wŭ tsáy-'jr̄·dàw-de.*
Wáng: *Dàw-shém·me-'dì·fang-chywù-a?*
Ross: *Shwō-shr̀ dàw-yí·ge-chyán·'shyàn-chywu.*
*Dàw-'nă·ge-chyán·'shyàn, jyèw-bù-jr̄·'dàw-le.*
Wáng: *'Dūng·shi dēw-shēw·shr-'wán·le-ma?*
Ross: *'Kwày-wán·le.*
*Dzwò-fēy·'jī bù-néng-'dwō-dày-dūng·shi.*
Wáng: *Yàw-shém·me-'dūng·shi-ma?*
Ross: *'Shyè·shye, 'dēw-yĕw-le.*
*'Èw! Wó-'dĕy-dày·je yí·ge-shĕw·dyàn·'dēng.*
*Shyàn·dzày 'tày-wăn-le*
*'Pù·dz dēw-gwān·le-'mén-le.*
Wáng: *'Wó-yĕw-yí·ge-shĕw·dyàn·'dēng.*
*Ké·yi-'jyè·gey-ni 'dày·je.*
Ross: *'Nĭ·men 'bú-yùng-ma?*
Wáng: *'Bú-yàw·jĭn.*
*'Míng·tyan wŏ-ké·yi 'măy-yí·ge.*
Ross: *Nà hăw-'jí-le.*

## Conversation 4

*Wáng and Ross continue talking about Ross's trip.*

Wáng: *Ní-'dzĕm·me-dày 'jè·me-dwō-'yī·shang-nga?*

Ross: *Tā·men-shwō 'jè·ge-dì·fang 'lĕng, dĕy-'dwō-dày-yī·shang.*

Wáng: *'Nà·me, kŭng·pà jè·ge-chyán·'shyàn shr̀-dzày-'bĕy·byan.*

Ross: *Wó-yĕ-nà·me-'shyăng.*
*Yĕw-yí·jyàn-'shr̀ chíng-nĭ bāng-'máng.*

Wáng: *'Shém·me-shr̀?*

Ross: *Wày·jyāw·'bù·de-'Hé-shyān·sheng hèw·tyan chíng-wo chr̄-'fàn.*
*Wó-dĕy-'gàw·su-ta wŏ-'bù-néng-chywù.*
*Gāng·tsáy gĕy-ta dă-dyàn·'hwà, tā-bú-dzày-'jyā.*
*Shr̀-yí·ge-'ngwŭ·rén gēn-wo-shwō-'hwà.*
*Tā·de-'hwà wŏ-bù-'dŭng. 'Wŏ·de-hwà 'tā-yĕ-bù-'dŭng.*

*Shwō·le bàn·'tyān yĕ-'méy-shwō-'chīng·chu.*

Wáng: *Nà-shr̀-Hé-'tày·tày. Tā-shr̀-'Shàng·hăy-rén, bù-dúng-'Bĕy·píng-hwà.*

Ross: *Chíng-ni 'míng·tyan gĕy-'Hé-shyān·sheng dă-dyàn·'hwà.*
*'Bú·yàw-shwō wŏ-dàw-'nă·li-chywù.*
*'Jř-shwō wó-yĕw-'yàw·jĭn·de-shr̀, 'yĭ·jīng-dàw-byé·de-dì·fang-chywù-le.*
*Hĕn-dwèy-bu·'chĭ-ta.*

Wáng: *'Hăw-ba.*
*'Hé-shyān·sheng wó-yĕ-'rèn·shr.*
*Míng·tyan wŏ-'gàw·su-ta 'hăw-le.*
*'Háy-yĕw-shr̀-ma?*

Ross: *Yéw-wŏ·de-'shìn chíng-ni géy-'jwăn·dàw-gūng·shr̀·'fáng-chywu, jyāw·gey-'Hán-shyān·sheng.*

Wáng: *Nĭ·de-gūng·shr̀·'fáng shr̀-'dwō·shăw-hàw?*

Ross: *Shr̀-'Jūng·yí·lù, 'yī-'chī-lyèw-'jyĕw-'hàw.*

Wáng: *Déng-wo 'jì·shya·lay.*
*'Jūng-'yí-'lù, 'yī-'chī-'lyèw-'jyĕw.*
*Jyāw·gey-'shwéy?*

Ross: *'Hán-shyān·sheng.*

Wáng: *'Yĭ·jīng shŕ·dyăn-'bàn-le.*
*Nĭ-'yīng·gay chywù-'shwèy-le.*

Ross: *Wó-shyăng 'yè-li-lyáng·dyăn-'bàn 'chĭ·lay.*

**Wáng:** *Wǒ-gàw·su-Lǎw-'Jēw, jyàw-tā dàw-lyáng·dyǎn-'bàn 'jyàw-nǐ.*
*Wó-'yǐ·jīng 'gàw·su·ta, jyàw-ta sùng-ni dàw-fēy·jī·'chǎng-chywu.*

**Ross:** *Dwō-'shyè.*

**Wáng:** *Rè·shr méy·yew-'byé·de-shř, wó-'dzěw-le.*
*'Yè-li wǒ-bù-'chǐ·lay 'sùng-nǐ-le.*

**Ross:** *'Bú·yàw-sùng. Dzày-'jyàn.*

**Wáng:** *Dzày-'jyàn. Yī-'lù 'píng·ān!*

(After going over the Conversations of the Listening In thoroughly, be sure to carry on free conversation of your own for a while before going on to the next Unit. Try to use in your free conversation all the new material of this Unit. You can think of dozens of things to talk about: for example, someone can play the part of a telephone operator and can connect others and let them carry on telephone conversations about anything they wish.)

## FINDER LIST

Below are listed all of the words used in this Unit. Each one is put in under each of the parts of which it is made up, so that by studying the list carefully you can see quite clearly how the words are put together and what the meaning of each part is.

Terms which you have had in earlier Units, included here for comparison only, are marked with an asterisk (*).

Single elements marked with a raised dot before them (for example, ·*bù*) are never used all alone as independent words, but only in combinations.

The Chinese and English are listed in separate columns, opposite each other, so that you can easily study the Chinese words with the English covered, or can cover the Chinese and try to remember it when you read the English.

Don't regard this Finder List simply as something to refer to when you can't remember what a word or expression means—*study* it; it will improve your control of the language.

| | |
|---|---|
| ·*ān* | 'safe' |
| '*píng·ān* A | 'safe' |
| *Yī-'lù 'píng·ān!* | 'Bon voyage!' |
| *Ày!* | 'Hello!' (telephone) |
| *bàng* M | 'pound' (weight) |
| **bàw* N | 'report, message; newspaper' |
| **dyàn·'bàw* N | 'telegram' |
| *wú·shyàn·dyàn·'bàw* N | 'radiogram' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **běn* M | 'volume' with *shū* 'book' |
| *'*běn·dz* N | 'pad of paper; booklet of essential information' |
| *dyàn·hwà-'běn·dz* N | 'telephone book' |
| *·*bù* | 'section, ministry' |
| *Jywēn·jèng·'bù* N | 'Ministry of Military Affairs' |
| *Lù·jywēn·'bù* N | 'Ministry of War' |
| *Wày·jyāw·'bù* N | 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs' |
| ·*chăng* | 'open space' |
| *fēy·jī·'chăng* N | 'air port' |
| *chīng* A | 'clear' (as of water) |
| '*chīng·chu* A | 'clear, understandable' |
| '*kàn-chīng·chu* RC | 'to look and see clearly' |
| '*shwō-chīng·chu* RC | 'to speak clearly' |
| '*tīng-chīng·chu* RC | 'to listen and hear clearly' |
| *·*chyán* | 'front' |
| *chyán·'shyàn* N | 'front line, Front' (military) |
| **dă* V | 'strike, hit' |
| **dă-dyàn·'hwà* | 'to make a telephone call' |
| *dă-gwān·'hwà* | 'to boast and give excuses like a politician' |
| **dà* A | 'big, adult' |
| '*dà·gwān* N | 'high official' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **dàw* K | 'to' |
| '*jwăn·dàw* RC | 'forward something to' (a place) |
| **dyàn* N | 'electricity' |
| **dyàn·'hwà* N | 'telephone (message)' |
| *dyàn·hwà-'běn·dz* N | 'telephone book' |
| *dyàn·hwà-fēn·'jī* N | 'telephone switchboard' |
| *dyàn·hwà-'hàw·shu* N | 'telephone number' |
| **dă-dyàn·'hwà* | 'to make a phone call' |
| *gūng-yùng-dyàn·'hwà* N | 'public phone' |
| *jyàw-dyàn·'hwà* | 'make a phone call' |
| **wú·shyàn·'dyàn* N | 'radio' |
| *wú·shyàn·dyàn·'bàw* N | 'radiogram' |
| ·*dzŭng* | 'principal, chief, main' |
| '*dzŭng·jywú* N | 'main office' |
| **dzwò* V | 'make, do' |
| *dzwò-'gwān* | 'to serve as an official' |
| **fēn* V | 'to divide' |
| *fēn·'jī* N | 'switchboard' |
| *dyàn·hwà-fēn·'jī* N | 'telephone switchboard' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **fēy* I | ‘fly’ |
| **fēy·'jī* N | ‘airplane’ |
| *fēy·ji·'chăng* N | ‘airport’ |
| *fēy·jī·'jàn* N | ‘airport’ |
| **gěy* H | ‘for someone's sake; as a kindness’ |
| *'jyāw·gěy* V | ‘give to, hand to’ (somebody) |
| *·*gūng* | ‘public, official; universal’ |
| *gūng·'jīn* M | ‘kilogram’ |
| *gūng-yùng-dyàn·'hwà* | ‘public telephone’ |
| ·*gwān* | ‘view’ |
| *'tsan·gwān* V | ‘to inspect, make a tour of inspection’ |
| *gwān* N | ‘officer, official’ |
| *gwān·'hwà* N | ‘official Chinese; the spoken language of Chinese officials’ |
| *dă-gwān·'hwà* | ‘to boast and give excuses like a politician’ |
| *'dà·gwān* N | ‘high official’ |
| *dzwò-'gwān* | ‘to serve as an official’ |
| *jywēn·'gwān* N | ‘army officer’ |
| *'shyăw·gwān* N | ‘petty official’ |
| *wày·jyāw·'gwān* N | ‘diplomat’ |

| | |
|---|---|
| **gwò* V | ‘pass over, through, by’; also means ‘to exceed’ |
| **hàw* M | ‘number’ (of a house on a street, day of the month, etc.) |
| *'hàw·shu* N | ‘number, amount’ |
| *dyàn·hwà-'hàw·shu* N | ‘telephone number’ |
| **hwà* N | ‘speech, talk, language’ |
| *dyàn·'hwà* N | ‘telephone (message)’ |
| *dyàn·hwà-'běn·dz* N | ‘telephone book’ |
| *dyàn·hwà-fēn·'jī* N | ‘telephone switchboard’ |
| *dyàn·hwà-'hàw·shu* N | ‘telephone number’ |
| *dă-dyàn·'hwà* | ‘make a telephone call’ |
| *gūng-yùng-dyàn·'hwà* N | ‘public telephone’ |
| *jyàw-dyàn·'hwà* | ‘make a telephone call’ |
| *gwān·'hwà* N | ‘official Chinese; the spoken language of Chinese officials’ |
| *dă-gwān·'hwà* | ‘to boast and give excuses like a politician’ |
| **hwǒ* N | ‘fire’ |
| *jywēn·'hwǒ* N | ‘arms and ammunition’ |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·jě* | 'one who does such-and-such' |
| *jì·'jě* N | 'reporter, correspondent' |
| *shīn·wén-jì·'jě* N | 'news reporter, news correspondent' |
| **jēn* A | 'true' |
| *Měy·'jēn* N | 'beautiful truth', a woman's name. |
| **·jèng* | 'administration' |
| *jywēn·jèng* N | 'military administration' |
| *Jywēn·jèng·'bù* N | 'Ministry of Military Affairs' |
| **yéw·'jèng* N | 'postal administration' |
| **yéw·jèng·'jywú* N | 'post office' |
| **·jī* | 'apparatus, machine' |
| *fēn·'jī* N | 'switchboard' |
| *dyàn·hwà-fēn·'jī* N | 'telephone switchboard' |
| **fēy·'jī* N | 'airplane' |
| *fēy·jī·'chǎng* N | 'airport' |
| *fēy·jī·'jàn* N | 'airport' |
| *jí* M | 'exceedingly' |
| *jí-'hǎw* | 'extremely good' |
| *dà-'jí-le* | 'extremely big' |
| *hǎw-'jí-le* | 'swell!' |
| *hwày-'jí-le* | 'rotten!' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **·jì* | 'remember, record' |
| *jì·'jě* N | 'reporter, correspondent' |
| *shīn·wén-jì·'jě* N | 'news reporter, news correspondent' |
| *'jì·shyà·láy* RC | 'to take something down in writing' |
| *'shū·jì* N | 'secretary, clerk' |
| *jīn* M | 'an old measure of weight' |
| *gūng·'jīn* M | 'kilogram' |
| *jř* H | 'only' |
| *jwǎn* | 'turn, change direction' |
| *'jwǎn·dàw* RC | 'forward something to' (a place) |
| *'jwǎn·jyāw* V | 'forward, transmit' |
| *·jyāw* | 'make contact' |
| *'jyāw·gěy* V | 'give to, hand to' (somebody) |
| *'jwǎn·jyāw* V | 'forward, transmit' |
| *wày·'jyāw* N | 'foreign relations' |
| *Wày·jyāw·'bù* N | 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs' |
| *wày·jyāw·'gwān* N | 'diplomat' |
| **jyàw* V | 'name, call, tell, let; be named, called' |
| *jyàw-dyàn·'hwà* | 'make a phone call' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *jywēn* N | 'army, armed force', 'army' as one part of the whole armed force ('fifth army' and so forth) |
| *jywēn·'gwān* N | 'army officer' |
| *jywēn·'hwŏ* N | 'arms and ammunition' |
| *jywēn·'jèng* N | 'military administration' |
| *Jywēn·jèng·'bù* N | 'Ministry of Military Affairs' |
| *jywēn·'shr̀* N | 'military affairs' |
| *jywēn-'yùng-de* | 'for military use' |
| *lù·'jywēn* N | 'army' |
| *Lù·jywēn·'bù* N | 'Ministry of War' |
| *·*jywú* | 'office, public office' |
| **dyàn·hwà·'jywú* N | 'telephone office, telephone exchange' |
| *'dzŭng·jywú* N | 'main office' |
| **yéw·jèng·'jywú* N | 'post office' |
| **kàn* V | 'look at, see' |
| *'kàn-chīng·chu* RC | 'look at and see clearly' |
| ·*lù* | 'land' |
| *lù·'jywēn* N | 'army' |
| *Lù·jywēn·'bù* N | 'Ministry of War' |
| **lù* N | 'road, way' |
| *yī-'lù* | 'the whole way' |
| *Yī-'lù 'píng·an!* | 'Bon voyage!' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·*měy* | 'beautiful' |
| **Měy·gwo* N | 'the United States' |
| *Měy·'jēn* N | 'beautiful truth', a woman's name. |
| *nwăn* | 'warm' |
| *'nwăn·he* A | 'warm' |
| *píng* A | 'level, smooth, peaceful' |
| *'píng·ān* A | 'safe, peaceful' |
| *Yī-'lù 'píng·ān!* | 'Bon voyage!' |
| **shīn* A | 'new' |
| *shīn·'wén* N | 'news' |
| *shīn·wén-jì·'jě* N | 'news reporter, news correspondent' |
| **shr̀* N | 'matters, business, affairs' |
| *jywēn·'shr̀* N | 'military affairs' |
| **shū* N | 'book; writing' |
| *'shū·jì* N | 'secretary, clerk' |
| **shù* N | 'number, amount' |
| *shùr* N | 'number, amount' |
| *'hàw·shu* N | 'number, amount' |
| *dyàn·hwà-'hàw·shu* N | 'telephone number' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *shwō V | 'speak, say' |
| 'shwō-chīng·chu RC | 'speak clearly' |
| *'tīng-shwō | 'hear tell that', 'hear it said that' |
| *shyà | 'down' |
| 'jì·shyà·láy RC | 'take down in writing' |
| *shyàn N | 'string, thread, wire, line' |
| chyán·'shyàn N | 'front line, Front' (military) |
| *wú·shyàn·'dyàn N | 'radio' |
| wú·shyàn·dyàn·'bàw N | 'radiogram' |
| *shyǎw A | 'small' |
| 'shyǎw·gwān N | 'petty official' |
| shywǔ V | 'be permitted to' |
| *'tīng V | 'listen to, hear' |
| 'tīng-chīng·chu RC | 'listen and hear clearly' |
| *'tīng-shwō | 'hear tell that', 'hear it said that' |
| ·tsān | 'take part in' |
| 'tsān·gwān V | 'to inspect, make a tour of inspection' |
| *wày | 'outside' |
| wày·'jyāw N | 'foreign relations' |
| Wày·jyāw·'bù N | 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs' |
| wày·jyāw·'gwān N | 'diplomat' |
| *wén V | 'to smell at'; in some combinations means 'hear' |
| *shīn·'wén N | 'news' |
| shīn·wén-jì·'jě N | 'news reporter, news correspondent' |
| Wèy! | 'Hello!' (telephone) |
| *·wú | 'without' |
| wú·shyàn·'dyàn N | 'radio' |
| wú·shyàn·dyàn·'bàw N | 'radiogram' |
| *yī | 'one; the whole' |
| yī-'lù | 'the whole way' |
| Yī-lù 'píng·ān! | 'Bon voyage!' |
| *yùng V | 'use' |
| gūng-yùng-dyàn·'hwà N | 'public telephone' |
| jywēn-'yùng-de | 'for military use' |

# UNIT 14

## AT THE AIRPORT

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

Up to the present in this course words which are said together without pause have been joined together by hyphens (-). You are now well enough acquainted with the sound of the language not to need this indication further. So from here on hyphens will be used more sparingly.

*Ross arrives at the gate of the airport.*

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Guard* |
| pass | *tūng·shíng·'jèng* |
| Do you have a pass? | *Yěw tūng·shíng·'jèng-ma?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Yes. | *'Yěw.* |
| This is my foreign correspondent's pass. | *Jè shr̀ shīn·wén-jì·'jě·de-tūng·shíng·'jèng.* |
| | *Guard* |
| OK. | *'Hǎw.* |
| Please wait inside that building. | *Chǐng dzày nà·ge-'léw·li 'děng.* |

*(In the building, an orderly takes Mr. Ross's pass to the reception room. Presently he comes back and ushers Mr. Ross in. An officer, Lt. Col. Chyán, stands up to meet him.)*

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Chyán* |
| My name is Chyán Jūng·shù. | |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| | *Wǒ shř George Ross.* |
| name | *'míng·dz* |
| My Chinese name is Lwó Sž. | *Wǒ·de-'Jūng·gwo-míng·dz shř 'Lwó-'Sž.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| You speak excellent Chinese. | *Nǐ·de-Jūng·gwo-'hwà shwō·de hǎw 'jí-le.* |
| Welcome! | *Hwān·'yíng!* |
| sofa | *shā·'fā* |
| Please sit down on the sofa. | *Chǐng dzày shā·'fā·shang 'dzwò.* |
| The others haven't arrived yet. | *'Byé-rén háy méy-'láy-ne.* |
| | *Ross* |
| altogether | *'dēw·shr* |
| Who all are going? | *Dēw·shr 'shwéy chywù?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| list | *'dān·dz* |
| There are twelve names on this list. | *Jè·ge 'dān·dz·shang yěw shŕ·'èr·ge-míng·dz.* |
| Russia | *'È·gwo* |
| There are Americans, British, and Russians. | *Yěw 'Měy·gwo-rén, yěw 'Yīng·gwo-rén, yé yěw 'È·gwo-rén.* |
| a pound-scale | *bàng* |
| to be weighed in | *gwò-'bàng* |
| Please go with me to be weighed in. | *Chǐng 'gēn-wo chywù gwò-'bàng.* |
| | *Ross* |
| How about the luggage? | *'Shíng·li-ne?* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Chyán* |
| That'll be weighed in too. | *'Yě gwò-'bàng.* |
| | *Ross* |
| I've brought several pieces of photographic equipment. | *Wǒ 'dày·je jǐ·jyàn-jàw-'shyàng-yùng·de-'dūng·shi.* |
| to be heavy | *jùng* |
| to become overweight | *gwò-'jùng* |
| I'm afraid it'll be too heavy. | *Kǔng·'pà gwò-'jùng-le-ba.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| weight | *jùng·'lyàng* |
| The two cameras you are carrying will be counted as your own weight. | *Nǐ-'dày·je·de-'lyǎng·ge-jàw·shyàng·'jì 'swàn·shr nǐ-'dż·jǐ·de-jùng·'lyàng.* |
| It won't be counted as in your luggage. | *'Bú-swàn dzày 'shíng·li·li.* |
| *(As Mr. Ross is weighed, Col. Chyán reads the scale.)* | |
| Your weight is eighty-five kilos. | *Nǐ shr̀ 'bā·shr·wǔ-gūng·'jīn-'jùng.* |
| Your baggage is twenty-one and a half kilograms. | *'Shíng·li shr̀ èr·shr·'yī-jīn-'bàn.* |
| | *Ross* |
| That's overweight! | *Gwò-'jùng-le-ba!* |
| | *Chyán* |
| I think it's OK. | *Wó shyǎng 'bú-yàw·jǐn.* |
| I see some others coming. | *Wǒ 'kàn·jyan 'yèw yěw-rén láy-le.* |
| *(He calls another officer over.)* | |
| staff officer | *'tsān·méw* |
| This is Staff-Officer Shyè. | *Jè shr̀ 'Shyè-tsān'mew.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| This is Mr. Ross. | *Jè shr̀ 'Lwó-shyān·sheng.* |
| to be hospitable to | *'jāw·dày* |
| I'll have him look after you. | *Chǐng-'tā 'jāw·dày nǐ.* |
| Whatever you want just ask him. | *'Yàw shém·me jyèw 'gēn-ta shwō.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Thanks. | *Dwō-'shyè.* |
| Please do whatever you wish. | *Chǐng-'byàn.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| We'll talk more in the plane. | *Dzày fēy·'jī·shang 'dzày tàn-ba.* |
| (*After Col. Chyán leaves, Ross addresses Shyè.*) | |
| | *Ross* |
| rank | *'jyē·ji* |
| What is his rank? | *Tā shr̀ shém·me-'jyē·ji?* |
| | *Shyè* |
| He's Staff-Officer Chyán. | *Tā shr̀ 'Chyán-tsān·mew.* |
| He's a lieutenant-colonel. | *Shr̀ jūng·'shyàw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| How can you tell? | *'Dzěm·me néng 'jr̄·daw-ne?* |
| | *Shyè* |
| (*points to his own insignia*) | |
| This is collar insignia. | *Jè shr̀ lǐng·'jāng.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| horizontal line | *héng·'shyan* |
| field officer | *shyàw·'gwān* |
| With two horizontal lines on the collar insignia, it means a field officer. | *Yéw 'Lyǎng·tyáw-héng·'shyàn·de shr̀ 'shyàw·gwān.* |
| triangle | *sān·'jyǎw* |
| colonel | *'shàng·shyàw* |
| With three triangles, it means a colonel. | *Yěw 'sān·ge-sān·'jyǎw·de shr̀ 'shàng·shyàw.* |
| With two triangles, it means a lieutenant colonel. | *Yéw 'lyǎng·ge-sān·'jyǎw·de shr̀ 'jūng·shyàw.* |
| major | *'shàw·shyàw* |
| With one triangle, it means a major. | *Yěw 'yí·ge-sān·'jyǎw·de shr̀ 'shàw·shyàw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Thank you. | *'Shyè·shye.* |
| Then you're a major, aren't you? | *'Nǐ shr̀ 'shàw·shyàw, 'dwèy-ma?* |
| | *Shyè* |
| Right. | *'Dwèy-le.* |
| It's about time to board the plane now. | *Shyàn·dzày 'kwày yàw shàng fēy·'jī-le.* |
| Wait until we go aboard and we'll talk about it again. | *Děng shàng-le fēy·'jī 'dzày shwō-ba.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

(Remember not only to read what is given here with care, but also to study the Finder List at the end of the Unit. It will make clear to you how the new words of this Unit are put together, how they are related to words you have learned before, and will give you a few other expressions you will need for the remainder of the Unit.)

**Point 1. Russia.** Russia was the first modern European nation to have diplomatic relations with China; the first treaty between the two countries was signed in 1689. The full Chinese word for Russia, probably in imitation of the Russian name for their own country, is *'Ē·lwó·sž* or *'È·lwó·sž;* this is shortened to *'Ē·gwo* or *'È·gwo* on the pattern of other short names for countries.

**Point 2. Army Officers.** There are nine ranks of commissioned officers in the Chinese Army; three ranks of generals, as over against our four; three ranks of field officers, as with us; and three ranks of company officers, also as with us. The terms for these nine ranks are very simple; you will find them all listed in the Finder List.

With only three ranks of generals in the Chinese Army, it would not be accurate to identify any of them as corresponding exactly to any of our four. When it is necessary to use an English term, the lowest Chinese rank is usually equated to our Major General, leaving the Brigadier General out.

The title used in addressing a Chinese Army officer is a term referring to his function—company commander, division adjutant, medical officer, and the like—rather than to his rank. When function is not known, the term *'shyān·sheng* is most often used.

The collar insignia of Chinese Army officers is an oblong patch with certain figures on it. A plain gold background, with no border, and no horizontal lines, means a *'jyàng·gwān*. For other than these, the color of the background indicates the branch of service. Two *héng·'shyàn* indicate a *'shyàw·gwān*, and one indicates a *'wèy·gwān*. Within each of these three classes, the three subdivisions are indicated by one *sān·'jyǎw* for the lowest grade, two for the middle, and three for the highest.

### Point 3. More on Adjectives

A

Jè·jāng-'jwō·dz *hěn 'dà*. 'This table is quite large.'

Jè·běn-'shū *hěn nán-'nyàn*. 'This book is quite hard to study.'

Jè·ge-dyàn·dēng·'pàwr *tày 'lyàng*. 'This light bulb is too bright.'

B

Jè·jāng-'jwō·dz *shr̀ 'dà·de*. 'This table is of the big sort.'

Jè·běn-'shū *shr̀ nán-'nyàn·de*. 'This book is the kind that's hard to study.'

Jè·ge-dyàn·dēng·'pàwr *shr̀ 'lyàng·de*. 'This light bulb is a bright one.'

(1) Notice that the sentences in A have adjective predicates, those in B noun predicates; and that the noun predicates in the B group are formed by adding *de* to the adjectives or adjective expressions found as predicates in the A group.

The meaning of each sentence in B is quite closely related to the meaning of the corresponding sentence in A. The difference in meaning is as follows:

In the first sentence in A, the table in question is described as being large *relative to*, or *by contrast with*, other objects not specifically mentioned. But in the first sentence in B, the table is being tagged as a member of a whole *class* of objects which are of the large sort, rather than of the middle-sized or small sort. In A the emphasis is on *comparison;* in B the emphasis is on *classification*. The other sentences in A and B show this same difference in emphasis.

(2) *An adjective predicate always implies comparison.* Furthermore, when a sentence with adjective predicate is used, there is always some *expression* in the immediate vicinity which shows this comparison.

Thus no one ever says simply *'Jwō·dz 'dà.* 'Table big', except in answer to a question *'Jwō·dz 'dà-bu·dà?* 'Is the table big or not?', where the question shows comparison with being 'not big'.

When *not* answering a question of this kind, therefore, make it your rule never to use a simple adjective, all alone, as predicate; always modify it somehow. Thus all the following sentences are natural; in each the part that shows the comparison or relativity is italicized.

'Jwō·dz *bú*-'dà. 'The table is not (so) big.'
'Jwō·dz *hěn* 'dà. 'The table is quite large.'
'Jwō·dz *jēn* 'dà. 'The table is really big.'
'Jwō·dz *tày* 'dà. 'The table is too big.'
'Tyān·chì 'rè-*le*. 'The weather has turned warm.' (the contrast is with it being cold before)
'Tyān·chì *bú*-'rè-*le*. 'The weather has turned cool.' (similarly)
'Jè-jāng-jwō·dz *bǐ 'nà·jāng* 'dà. 'This table is larger than that.'
'Jīn·tyan *bǐ 'dzwó·tyan* 'rè-*yi·dyar*. 'It's warmer today than yesterday.'
Děng 'tyān 'lyàng-*yi·dyar*, 'dzày dzěw. 'Wait until it gets a bit lighter, then go.' (contrast with how dark it is now)

(3) Some adjectives are used almost exclusively in the way demonstrated in B above. Consider, for instance, *nán* 'male' or *nywǔ* 'female' (both of humans only). One thing cannot be called more or less 'male' or 'female' than another—at least not in Chinese. You don't have to contrast a boy with a girl in order to call the boy 'relatively' male. So you would never say *wǒ-de-'háy·dz hěn 'nán* 'my child is quite male' any more than you would say the same thing in English. What you say is:

Tā-de-'háy·dz *shr̀ 'nán·de*. 'His child is male'—or, as we would say it, 'His child is a boy.'

That is, the sentence *classifies* 'his child' as belonging to the class of all human males.

*Color* adjectives are also used most frequently, though not exclusively, in this way, since after all a thing can't be half-way between red and green:

> Tā-chwān·de-'shyé *shr̀ 'hēy·de*. 'The shoes he is wearing are black (ones).'

But you can say, in Chinese as in English, that one thing is more red or brown or green than another, meaning a deeper or more definite shade of the color in question:

> 'Tā·de-'shyé bí 'wǒ·de '*hwáng*, 'His shoes are yellower (browner) than mine.'

(4) Finally note the following:

*dà*-'jwō·dz 'a big table'
'*nán*-rén 'male (human being)'
'*nywǔ*-rén 'female (human being)'
*hwáng*-'shyé 'brown shoes'
yì·běn-*nán-'nyàn·de*-'shū 'a hard-to-study book'
*hěn-'dà·de*-'jwō·dz 'a very big table'

The contrast between emphasis on comparison and emphasis on classification which is given by different ways of handling adjectives in the second part of a sentence *is not present* when an adjective or adjective expression is put before a noun and describes or modifies it.

The presence or absence of *de* after an adjective or adjective expression in these circumstances depends on a different principle: a single-syllable adjective used before a noun usually does not add *de;* an adjective expression of several syllables (last two examples) usually does. This point will be dealt with in a little more detail in a later Unit.

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Match up the following English and Chinese sentences.

1. His name is on the list.
2. In an American name the family name comes last.
3. In a Chinese name the family name comes first.
4. Welcome!
5. He is a staff officer with the rank of Lt. Col.
6. After studying a month he still can't speak Russian clearly.

a. *Hwān·'yíng!*
b. *Shywé-le 'yí·ge-ywè, tā 'háy·shr bú-'hwèy shwō È·gwo-'hwà.*
c. *'Jè·shyē-rén 'dēw chywù.*
d. *'Nà·ge-rén yí·'dìng yěw 'sān·bǎy-dwō-bàng-'jùng.*
e. *'Dzày hwà yì·tyáw-jř·'shyàn.*
f. *Nǐ shr̀ shém·me-'jyē·ji?*

7. After studying a month he still can't speak Russian.
8. Is Chinese extremely difficult?
9. No, extremely easy.
10. All these people are going.

11. All these people are going; those aren't going.
12. The weather is extremely bad today.
13. That man must weigh more than three hundred pounds.
14. Clerks don't count as officers.
15. Draw a horizontal line.

16. Then draw a straight line.
17. A triangle has three sides.
18. What's your rank?
19. Please feel at home.
20. Won't you come to my home for dinner today at 6 P.M.?

21. If I'm not back when you come, do wait for me.
22. I've already asked my older brother to entertain you.
23. If there are any letters for me, please forward them.

g. *Rè·shr nǐ 'dàw de·shŕ·hew wǒ háy méy-'hwéy-chywu, jyèw 'chíng-nǐ yí·'dìng 'děng-wo.*
h. *Tā·de-'míng·dz dzày nà·jāng-'dān·dz·shang.*
i. *Tā shr̀ 'jūng·shyàw-'tsān·mew.*
j. *'Jūng·gwo-hwà 'shr̀-bu·shr̀ nán 'jí-le?*

k. *Jīn·tyan-'tyān·chi hwày 'jí-le.*
l. *'Hwà yì·tyáw-héng·'shyàn.*
m. *Rè·shr yéw wǒ·de-'shìn chǐng géy 'jwǎn·jyāw.*
n. *Wǒ 'yǐ·jīng chíng wǒ-'gē·ge 'jāw·dày nǐ-le.*
o. *Jīn·tyan-wǎn·shang-'lyèw·dyǎn-jūng, dàw wǒ-'jyā-chywù chr̄ wǎn·'fàn, 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*

p. *Chǐng-'byàn.*
q. *Yí·ge-sān·'jyǎwr yěw 'sān·ge-'byàn.*
r. *'Shū·jì bú-'swàn dzày jywēn·'gwān·li.*
s. *'Jè·shyē-rén 'dēw shr̀ 'chywù·de; 'nà·shyē-rén 'bú-chywù.*
t. *'Shywé-le 'yí·ge-ywè, tā-'shwō·de-'È·gwó-hwà 'háy·shr bù-'chīng·chu.*

u. *Bù-'nán, hěn 'róng·yì.*
v. *'Měy·gwo-'míng·dz, 'shìng dzày 'hèw·tew.*
w. *'Jūng·gwo-míng·dz, 'shìng dzày 'chyán·tew.*

2. Here is a riddle. Answer it in Chinese.

*Yĕw yí·ge-fēy·'jī ké·yi dày 'èr·chyān-bàng-'jùng·de-dūng·shi. Yĕw 'shŕ·ge-rén 'yĭ·jing 'dzwò·dzay fēy·'jī·li. Tā·men lyán 'shíng·li yí·'gùng shr̀ 'bā·băy-'yī·shr-gūng·jīn-'jùng. Fēy·'jī háy méy-'kāy de·shŕ·hew, yèw yéw 'lyăng·ge-rén 'láy-le, 'dēw yàw dzwò fēy·'jī dzĕw. 'Yí·ge shìng-'Jones. Tā shr̀ 'bā·shr·wŭ-gūng·jīn-'jùng; tā·de-'shíng·li shr̀ 'èr·shr-gūng·jīn-'jùng. 'Yí·ge jyàw-'Smith. Tā shr̀ 'chī·shr·wŭ-gūng·jīn-'jùng. Tā·de-'shíng·li 'yĕ shr̀ 'èr·shr-bàng-'jùng. Jè-'lyăng·ge-rén·li, 'shwéy déy 'dĕng 'shyà-tsż·de-fēy·'jī 'dzĕw-ne?*

3. Give the *twelve* terms for ranks of officers in the Chinese Army—three terms for the main classifications, and then three terms for the three subdivisions of each.

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN AND CONVERSATION

### Conversation 1

*The afternoon before Ross is to start on his trip, he goes into a store and asks if he can use the telephone.*

Ross: *Jyè dyàn·'hwà 'yùng-yi·yùng, 'ké·yi-ma?*

'Hwŏ·ji: *'Ké·yi. Dzày 'nà·li.*

Ross: *Dwō-'shyè. Yĕw dyàn·hwà-'bĕn·dz-ma?*

'Hwŏ·ji: *'Yĕw.*

(*bă dyàn·hwà-'bĕn·dz 'ná-lay, 'dì·gey 'Lwó-shyān·sheng*)

Ross: *Jè shr̀ 'Jūng·gwo-dż; wŏ bú-'rèn·shr. Chíng-'nĭ géy-wo 'jăw-ba.*

'Hwŏ·ji: *Yàw jyàw 'shém·me-dì·fang?*

Ross: *Jywēn·jèng·'bù.*

'Hwŏ·ji: *Jywēn·jèng·'bù shr̀ 'bā-'lyèw-'èr.*

Ross: *Dwō-'shyè!*

(*ná·chi dyàn·hwà·'jī-lay, tā shwō:*)

*'Wèy!*
*Wŏ yàw 'bā-'lyèw-'èr!*

Operator: *'Bā-'lyèw-'èr yĕw-rén 'jyàw, 'dĕng-yi·dĕng 'dzày jyàw.*

Ross: *'Hăw-ba.*

### Conversation 2

*'Lwó dĕng-le 'jī·fēn-jūng, 'yèw bă dyàn·hwà·'jī 'ná·chi-lay.*

Ross: *'Wèy! 'Bā-'lyèw-'èr.*

Orderly: *Jywēn·jèng·'bù.*

*Jăw-'shwéy shwō-'hwà?*

Ross: *'Lĭ-'Jì, 'Lĭ-tsān·mew.*

Orderly: 'Nǐ shr̀ 'nă-yí·wèy?

Ross: Wǒ shìng-'Lwó; shr̀ 'Měy·gwo-rén.

Orderly: Chíng 'děng-yi·děng.

Lǐ: 'Nă-yí·wèy?

Ross: Wǒ shr̀ 'Lwó-'Sz.
Nǐ shr̀ 'Lǐ-shyān·sheng-ma?

Lǐ: 'Shr̀-a. 'Èw! 'Lwó-shyān·sheng!
'Háw jyěw méy-'jyàn!

Ross: 'Jè·shyē-tyān hěn 'máng, 'méy-'láy 'kàn-ni.
Děng 'gwò-jǐ·tyān wǒ 'chíng-ni chr̄-'fàn.
Shyàn·dzày yěw yí·jyàn-'shr̀ chíng-ni bāng-'máng.

Lǐ: 'Shém·me-shr̀?

## Conversation 3

*'Lwó-shyān·sheng·de-tūng·shíng·'jèng 'yǐ·jing gwò-le 'chī. Tā děy hwàn 'shīn·de-tūng·shíng·'jèng.*

Ross: Wǒ·de-shīn·wén-jì·jě-tūng·shíng·'jèng 'yǐ·jing gwò-'chī-le.
Yīn·wey wǒ 'jè-jǐ·tyān tày 'máng, méy·yew chywù 'hwàn.
Jīn·tyan-'wǎn·shang děy 'yùng tūng·shíng·'jèng.
Kě·shr shyàn·dzày 'yǐ·jing tày 'wǎn-le.
Wǒ háy yàw chywù mǎy 'dūng·shi.
Bù-néng 'dż·jǐ chywù 'hwàn.
Nǐ néng géy-wo 'hwàn yì·jāng-tūng·shíng·'jèng-ma?

Lǐ: 'Hǎw-ba.
Nǐ·de-'jyèw-tūng·shíng·'jèng shr̀ dwō·shaw-'hàw?

Ross: 'Yì·báy-'jyěw·shr·chī-'hàw.

Lǐ: Tsúng 'jǐ·ywè dàw 'jǐ·ywè?

Ross: Tsúng 'sān·ywè-'yi·hàw dàw 'jyěw·ywè-'sān·shr·hàw.

Lǐ: 'Jīn·tyan shr̀ 'shŕ-ywè-'chī·hàw.
'Yǐ·jing gwò-le yí·ge-lǐ·'bày-le.

Ross: 'Dwèy-le.

Lǐ: Wǒ shyàn·dzày jyèw dǎ-dyàn·'hwà.
Géy-ni yàw yì·jāng-tūng·shíng·'jèng-lay.
Déng wǒ 'shēw·dàw de·shŕ·hew, jyàw-rén géy-ni 'sùng-chywu.

Ross: Dwō-'shyè, dwō-'shyè.

Lǐ: 'Bú-yàw·jǐn. 'Háy yěw-shr̀-ma?

Ross: 'Méy·yew-le. Dzày-'jyàn!

Lǐ: Dzày-'Jyàn!

## Conversation 4

*Early in the morning, before the plane leaves, Ross and Shyè are talking at the airport.*

Shyè: *Shyàn·dzày háy bú-dàw sān·dyǎn-'bàn.*
*Dàw shàng fēy·'jī de·shŕ·hew 'háy yěw 'bàn·dyǎn-jūng.*
*Wǒ·men chywù 'chī yì·dyǎr-dūng·shi, 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*

Ross: *Hǎw 'jí-le.*
*Wǒ 'háy méy-chī dzǎw·'fàn-na.*

Shyè: *'Jè·ge-shŕ·hew 'chī·de-dūng·shi bù-'dwō.*
*Jŕ yěw myàn·'bāw, jī·'dàn, 'chá.*

Ross: *'Nà jyèw hén 'hǎw.*
(*chī 'dūng·shi de·shŕ·hew, tā·men tán-'hwà*)

Shyè: *Ní-'shěw·li-'ná·je·de shr̀ 'shém·me?*

Ross: *Jè shr̀ tūng·shíng·'jèng.*
*Jīn·tyan tsáy 'hwàn·de.*
*Jīn·tyan-'shyà·wǔ-'sz·dyán-jūng wǒ 'tsáy jr̄·daw jīn·tyan-'yè·li děy dàw fēy·jī·'chǎng-lay.*
*Dàw 'jè·li-lay, déy yěw tūng·shíng·'jèng.*
*Wǒ·de-'jyèw-tūng·shíng·'jèng 'yǐ·jing gwò-le 'chī.*
*Jè shr̀ chǐng yí·wèy-dzày-Jywēn·jèng·'bù-dzwò-'shr̀·de-'péng·yew gěy 'hwàn·de.*
*Wǎn·shang-'bā·dyǎn-jūng tsáy 'sùng·daw wǒ-'jù·de-dì·fang.*

Shyè: *Rè·shr nǐ 'méy·yew tūng·shíng·'jèng, tā·men 'yě jyàw-ni jìn-lay.*
*Tā·men 'jr̄·daw nǐ·de-'míng·dz.*

Ross: *'Háy·shr yěw tūng·shíng·'jèng bǐ 'méy·yew 'hǎw.*

## Conversation 5

Ross: *Gāng·tsáy gwò-'bàng de·shŕ·hew, yěw yí·ge-shàng·'shyàw gēn 'È·gwo-rén shwō-'hwà.*
*Nà shr̀-'shwéy?*

Shyè: *Ní 'dzěm·me jr̄·daw tā shr̀ shàng·'shyàw-ne?*

Ross: *Tā·de-lǐng·'jāng·shang bú·shr yéu 'lyǎng·tyáw-héng·'shyàn, sān·ge-sān·'jyǎw-ma?*

Shyè: *Hén 'hǎw. Nǐ 'jì·de hěn 'chīng·chu.*
*'Yī shwō jyèw 'jì·de, hěn bù-'rúng·yì.*

Ross: *Wǒ-'ày-jì·de-shr̀, jyèw néng 'jì·de.*

Shyè: *Nà·wèy-shàng·'shyàw shìng-'Lyéw.*
*Tā dzày 'Měy·gwo, 'È·gwo, hé 'Dé·gwo nyàn·gwo 'shū.*

Ross: *Wó yǐ·'chyán dzày 'Měy·gwo de·shŕ·hew rèn·shr yí·ge-Jūng·gwo-'shywé·sheng, hěn 'shyàng-ta.*

Shyè: *'Nà yé·shywu shr̀ tā-'dì·di.*
*Tā·de-'dì·di 'yě dàw Měy·gwo chywù·gwo.*

*(someone is beckoning to them)*

Ross: *Nǐ 'kàn, yěw-rén 'shyàng wǒ·men jāw-'shěw.*

Shyè: *Dàw-le 'shŕ·hew-le, wǒ·men 'yīng·gay shàng fēy·'jī-le.*

### Conversation 6

*Dzày-léw·'mén-nà·li, tā·men 'kàn·jyàn 'Chyán-tsān·mew.*

Chyán: *'Shyè-tsān·mew, fēy·'jī 'yǐ·jing gwò-'jùng-le.*
*'Nǐ 'gwò jǐ·tyān 'dzày dzěw-ba.*

Shyè: *'Shr̀. Wǒ ké·yi děng 'shyà-tsż·de-fēy·jī dzěw.*

Chyán: *'Lwó-shyān·sheng, tā·men dēw yǐ·jing dàw fēy·'jī·li chywù·le.*
*Chǐng 'gēn-wo láy.*

Ross: *Dzày-'jyàn, 'Shyè-tsān·mew!*
*Dwō-'shyè nǐ 'jāw·dày-ya!*

Shyè: *Tày 'kè·chi-le!*
*'Gwò jǐ·tyān dzày 'jyàn!*

Ross (to Chyán): *'Chyán-tsān·mew, wǒ·men-'chywù·de-dì·fang tūng hwǒ·'chē-ma?*

Chyán: *'Tūng hwǒ·chē.*
*Fēy·'jī·shang kǔng·'pà hén 'lěng.*
*Nǐ-'chwān-de-'yī·shang gèw 'nwǎn·de-ma?*

Ross: *'Gèw nwǎn·de. Wǒ 'bú-pà lěng.*

Chyán: *Nà·me, wǒ·men 'dzěw-ba.*
*Dzày-'jyàn, Lǎw-'Shyè!*

Shyè: *Dzày-'jyàn!*

### FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| *bàng* N | 'a scale that weighs in terms of pounds' (see *gwò-'bàng*) |
| *·byàn* | 'convenience' (see *Chǐng-'byàn.*) |
| **chē* N | 'car, cart, wheeled vehicle' (see *tūng-'chē, 'tūng·chē*) |
| **·chī* | 'date, time, period' (see *shīng·'chī, gwò-'chī*) |
| **chǐng* V | 'request, invite'; 'please' |
| *Chǐng-'byàn.* | 'Do as you please, make yourself at home.' |
| *dān·dz* N | 'list' |

|  |  |
|---|---|
| *dày* V | 'treat, deal with' (see '*jāw·dày*) |
| **dēw* H | 'all, both, altogether' |
| '*dēw·shr* | 'altogether, all in all' |
| **dyàn* N | 'electricity' |
| **dyàn·'hwà* N | 'telephone (message)' (see *tūng dyàn·'hwà*) |
| *È* (or *Ē*) | (from '*È·lwó·sz̄* 'Russia') |
| '*È·gwo* (or '*Ē·gwo*) N | 'Russia' |
| **gwān* N | 'officer, official' (see *jyàng·gwān, shyàw·gwān, wèy·gwān*) |
| **gwó* M | 'country' (see '*È·gwo*) |
| **gwò* V | 'pass over, through, by; exceed' |
| *gwò-'bàng* | 'be weighed in' |
| *gwò-'chī* | 'become overdue' |
| *gwò-'jùng* | 'become overweight' |
| *héng* V | 'make horizontal' |
| '*héngr* N | 'horizontal stroke' (particularly in writing Chinese characters) |
| *héng·'shyàn* N | 'horizontal line' |

|  |  |
|---|---|
| **hwà* N | 'speech, talk, language' (see *dyàn·'hwà*) |
| ·*hwān* | 'pleasure' |
| *Hwān·'yíng!* | 'Welcome!' |
| ·*jāng* | 'insignia' (see *lǐng·'jāng*) |
| *jāw* V | 'summon' |
| '*jāw·dày* V | 'treat as a guest, be hospitable to' |
| *jāw-'shěw* | 'beckon with the hand' |
| ·*jèng* | 'certificate, credentials' (see *tūng·shíng·'jèng*) |
| '*jèng·shū* N | 'certificate, identification papers' |
| ·*jí* | 'steps' (see '*jyē·jí*) |
| *·*jŕ* | 'straight' |
| *jŕ·'shyàn* N | 'straight line' |
| **jūng* | 'middle' |
| *jūng·jyàng* N | 'general of the intermediate rank' |
| *jūng·shyàw* N | 'lieutenant colonel' |
| *jūng·wèy* N | 'first lieutenant' |
| *jùng* A | 'heavy' (see *gwò-'jùng*) |
| *jùng·'lyàng* N | 'weight' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_·jwō_ | 'table' |
| *_'jwō·dz_ N | 'table' |
| _jwō·dz-'jyǎwr_ N | 'corner of a table' |
| _·jyàng_ | 'general' (military) (see _jūng·jyàng, shàng·jyàng, shàw·jyàng_) |
| _jyàng·gwān_ N | 'general officers' |
| _·jyǎw_ | 'angle, corner' (see _sān·'jyǎw_) |
| _jyǎwr_ N | 'angle, corner' (see _jwō·dz-'jyǎwr, sān·'jyǎwr_) |
| _·jyē_ | 'step in front of a doorway' |
| _'jyē·jí_ N | 'military rank' |
| *_léw_ N | 'building' |
| _léw·'mén_ N | 'door of a building' |
| *_mén_ N | 'door, gate' (see _léw·'mén_) |
| _·méw_ | 'scheme, plan' (see _'tsān·méw_) |
| _·míng_ | 'name' (see _shìng·'míng_) |
| _'míng·dz_ N | 'name' of a thing; full name or given name only of a person |
| *_sān_ | 'three' |
| _sān·'jyǎw(r)_ N | 'triangle' |
| _shā·'fā_ N | 'sofa' |
| *_shàng_ | 'up' |
| _shàng·jyàng_ N | 'general of the highest rank' |
| _shàng·shyàw_ N | 'colonel' |
| _shàng·wèy_ N | 'captain' |
| _·shàw_ | 'younger, junior' |
| _shàw·jyàng_ N | 'general of the lowest rank' |
| _shàw·shyàw_ N | 'major' |
| _shàw·wèy_ N | 'second lieutenant' |
| *_shěw_ N | 'hand' (see _jāw-'shěw_) |
| *_·shīng_ | 'star' |
| *_shīng·'chī_ N | 'week' |
| *_·shíng_ | 'travel' (see _'tūng·shíng_) |
| *_shìng_ N, V | 'surname', 'to be named' (a person) |
| _shìng·'míng_ N | 'full name' (of a person) |
| *_shū_ N | 'book, document' (see _'jèng·shū_) |
| *_shyàn_ N | 'thread, wire, line' (see _héng·'shyàn, jí·'shyàn_) |
| _·shyàw_ | 'field officer' (see _jūng·shyàw, shàng·shyàw, shàw·shyàw_) |
| _shyàw·gwān_ N | 'field officers' |

| | |
|---|---|
| •·*tsān* | 'take part in' |
| •'*tsān·gwān* V | 'to inspect, make a tour of inspection' |
| '*tsān·mów* N | 'staff officer' |
| *tūng* V | 'to pass through, let pass through' |
| *tūng-'chē* | 'be reachable by wheeled vehicle' |
| '*tūng·chē* N | 'through train'; as a road sign means 'this route is open to traffic' |
| *tūng dyàn·'hwà* | 'put through a phone call' |

| | |
|---|---|
| '*tūng·shíng* A | 'be current, in general use; pass through' |
| *tūng·shíng·'jèng* N | 'pass' (document permitting entry) |
| '*wèy* | 'company officer' (see *jūng·wèy, shàng·wèy, shàw·wèy*) |
| *wèy·gwān* N | 'company officers' |
| ·*yíng* | 'meet, welcome' (see *Hwān·yíng*) |

# UNIT 15

## ON THE PLANE

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

*Dzwò fēy·'jī dàw chyán·'shyàn-chywu. Dzày fēy·'jī·li 'Lwó gēn-'Chyán tán-'hwà.*

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| *Col. Chyán* | |
| measure for letters and telegrams | *fēng* |
| to receive | *'jyē·dàw* |
| Just before the plane came up I received a telegram. | *Gāng·tsáy fēy·'jī háy méy 'chǐ-láy de·shŕ·hew, wǒ 'jyē·dàw-le yì·fēng-dyàn·'bàw.* |
| division | *shī* |
| divisional commander | *shī·'jǎng* |
| It's from Divisional Commander Swēn. | *Shr̀ 'Swēn-shī·jang 'dǎ-láy·de.* |
| to meet (people arriving from a trip) | *jyē* |
| It says that he will be at the airport to meet us. | *'Shwō shr̀ 'tā yàw dzày fēy·jī·'chǎng 'jyē wǒ·men.* |
| *Ross* | |
| Who is that? | *Shr̀-'shwéy?* |
| *Col. Chyán* | |
| Divisional Commander Swēn is commander of the 77th division. | *'Swēn-shī·jǎng shr̀ dì-'chī·shr·'chī-'shī·de-shī·'jǎng.* |
| *Ross* | |
| Are you his staff officer? | *'Nǐ shr̀ tā·de-'tsān·mew-ma?* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| Yes. | *'Shr̀·de.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Where is the 77th division? | *Dì-'chī·shr·'chī-'shr̄ dzày 'shém·me-dì·fang?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| I can't tell you that yet. | *'Nà·ge wǒ háy bù-néng 'gàw·su nǐ-ne.* |
| I can only say that we're flying northeast. | *Wó 'jř néng shwō shyàn·dzày 'jèng shyàng dūng·'běy fēy.* |
| | *Ross* |
| the Yellow River | *Hwáng·'hé* |
| In that case we must be going to somewhere near the Yellow River. | *'Nà·me, yí·'dìng shr̀ dàw lí-Hwáng·'hé-bù-'ywǎn·de-dì·fang.* |
| Tungkwan | *Túng·'gwān* |
| Maybe Tungkwan. | *Yé·shywǔ shr̀ Túng·'gwān-ba.* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| You'll know when we arrive. | *'Dàw-le jyèw 'jr̄·dàw-le.* |
| | *Ross* |
| When do we arrive? | *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'dàw-ne?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| After eight thirty. | *Bā·dyǎn-'bàn-yǐ·'hèw.* |
| almost | *'chà·bu·dwō* |
| It takes almost four hours by plane from Chungking. | *Tsúng Chúng·'chìng dzwò fēy·'jī yàw yùng chà·bu·dwō-'sż·dyǎn-jūng.* |

299

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| Do you think we can have breakfast at nine? | *Ní shyăng 'jyéw·dyăn-jūng néng chr̄ dzăw·'fàn-ma?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| We'll probably have breakfast first and then make an inspection. | *Yé·shywŭ 'shyān chr̄ dzăw·'fàn, 'hèw chywù 'tsān·gwān.* |
| to be hungry | *è* |
| Are you hungry? | *'È-bu·è?* |
| | *Ross* |
| No. | *Bú-'è.* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| to be thirsty | *kĕ* |
| Are you thirsty? | *'Kĕ-bu·kĕ?* |
| thermos jug | *nwán·shwĕy·'hú* |
| There's hot tea in that thermos jug. | *Nwán·shwĕy·'hú·li yĕw 'rè-chá.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Not thirsty either. | *Yĕ bù-'kĕ.* |
| to miss *or* lack | *chà* |
| It's five to five now. | *Shyàn·dzày chà 'wŭ·fēn bú-dàw 'wú·dyăn.* |
| We've been flying twenty-five minutes already. | *'Yĭ·jīng 'fēy-le èr·shr·wŭ·fēn-'jūng-le.* |
| It's still dark. | *'Tyān háy 'hēy·je-ne.* |
| After it gets lighter may I take some photographs? | *Tyān 'lyăng-le yĭ·'hèw, ké·yi jàw-'shyàng-ma?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| To take photographs of the ground from a plane is forbidden. | *Tsúng fēy·'jī·shang jàw 'dì·shang·de-'shyàng shr̀ bù-'shywŭ·de.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| a permit | *shywú·kě·'jèng* |
| You have to have a permit to do that. | *Déy yěw shywú·kě·'jèng tsáy néng 'jaw-ne.* |
| | *Ross* |
| So! | *'Shr̀-ma?* |
| Look! Everyone's asleep now. | *'Kàn-na! 'Dēw shwèy·'jáw-le.* |
| to sleep a while and then wake up | *shwèy-'jyàw* |
| Why don't you take a nap too? | *'Nǐ 'wèy-shém·me bù-'yě shwèy yí·'jyàw-ne?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| I'm not sleepy. | *Wǒ 'bù-shyǎng shwèy.* |
| I went to bed early yesterday. | *'Dzwó·tyan 'shwèy·de hén 'dzǎw.* |
| I went to bed at seven and slept straight through until three this morning. | *'Chī·dyǎn shàng·de 'chwáng, yī 'jyàw shwèy·daw 'jīn·tyan-'dzǎw·chen-'sān·dyǎn-jūng.* |
| So I'm not sleepy. | *Swó·yi 'bù-shyǎng shwèy-le.* |
| You take a nap now. | *'Nǐ shwèy yí·'jyàw-ba.* |
| | *Ross* |
| I'm not sleepy either. | *Wó 'yě bù-shyǎng 'shwèy.* |
| to wait a bit. | *'děng yì·hwěr* |
| the sun | *'tày·yang* |
| I'd like to wait a while and see the sun come up. | *Wǒ yàw 'děng yì·hwěr kàn 'tày·yang 'chū-lay.* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| opposite side | *dwèy·'myàn* |
| Let's sit on the opposite side then. | *'Nà·me, dàw dwèy·'myàn-chywu 'dzwò-ba.* |
| The windows on that side face the east. | *'Nà·byan·de-'chwāng·hu shyàng-'dūng.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. Seeing People Off.** To see someone off on a trip is *sùng;* to meet someone returning or arriving from a trip is *jyē*:

> *'Chywù·nyan wó 'dzěw de·shŕ·hew, nǐ 'sùng-wo.* 'Last year when I left you saw me off.'
>
> *'Jīn·nyan wǒ· 'hwéy-láy de·shŕ·hew nǐ 'yèw láy 'jyē-wo.* 'This year when I came back you came and met me.'

This *jyē* is the one in *'jyē·dàw* 'receive':

> *'Jyē·dàw-le 'shìn jyèw déy shyě 'hwéy·shìn.* 'When a letter is received you have to write an answer right away.'

**Point 2. Military Units.** The terms *shr̄* and *jywēn* are used not only as nouns meaning 'division' and 'army' (in the sense of the Seventh Army), but also as measures:

> *yì·shr̄-'bīng* 'a division of soldiers'
>
> *yì·jywēn-'bīng* 'an army of soldiers'
>
> *dì-'chī-'jywēn* 'the Seventh Army'
>
> *dì-chī·shr·'chī-'shr̄* 'the Seventy-Seventh Division'

This is also true of other terms for military units which you will learn in later Units of this course.

**Point 3. The Sun.** Notice, in the Finder List, the several different expressions for 'sun'.

**Point 4. Time Before the Hour.** In telling time in Chinese you usually give times between two hours in terms of the preceding hour, not the following. But the second can be done, using the term *chà* 'lack, lacking, missing, differing, differing by':

> *Chà 'shŕ·fēn 'bú-dàw 'wú·dyǎn.* 'It's ten to five.'

**Point 5. Compound Directions.** You will notice in the Finder List that the four intermediate points of the compass ('northwest' and so on) work just as in English, except that the words for 'east' and 'west' come first in the compound words, instead of 'north' and 'south' as with us.

### Point 6. Still More on Adjectives

Nà·ge-'nywǔ-rén hén *hǎw-'kàn.* 'That woman is quite attractive.'

'Fà·gwo-yīn·'ywè hén *hǎw-'tīng.* 'French music is nice to listen to.'

'Jūng·gwo-'fàn dzwèy *hǎw-'chr̄.* 'Chinese food is excellent.'

'Jè·ge-chá *'hǎw-bu·hǎw-'hē?* 'Is this tea good to drink?'

Jè·jyàn-shr̀ hěn *nán-'dzwò*. 'This work is quite hard to do.'

Jè·běn-shū hěn *nán-'nyàn*. 'The book is quite hard to study.'

Jūng·gwo-'hwà bù-*rúng·yi-'shywé*. 'Chinese is not easy to learn.'

The italicized words in the above sentences are a kind of adjective expression, consisting, as you see, of an ordinary adjective followed by a verb.

Adjective expressions of this kind are formed quite freely with *hǎw* 'OK; good, pleasant', *nán* 'difficult', or *'rúng·yì* 'easy' as the first part and almost any verb like *chr̄, kàn, dzwò*, etc. as second part. Other expressions of the same kind, with other adjectives as first parts, occur but are more special and must be learned individually.

As adjective predicates, adjective expressions of this kind work just like simple adjectives.

Observe the following:

*hǎw-'kàn·de-*'nywŭ-rén 'a pretty woman'
*hǎw-'tīng·de-*yīn·'ywè 'enjoyable music'
*hǎw-'chr̄·de-*'fàn 'good food'
*hǎw-'hē·de-*'chá 'good tea'
*hěn-nán-'dzwò·de-*'shr̀ 'hard work'
*dzwèy-nán-'nyàn·de-*'shū 'difficult books'
*rúng·yi-'shywé·de-*'hwà 'easy language (to learn)'

When used *before a noun*, describing or modifying it, adjective expressions of this kind *always* add *de*.

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Match the following English and Chinese answers to the question *Nǐ 'jèng·dzày dzwò 'shém·me?* 'What're you doing right now?'

1. I'm writing a letter.
2. I'm writing a letter home.
3. I'm writing a letter to my older brother.
4. I'm talking on the phone.
5. I'm talking to Lt. Hé on the telephone.
6. I'm taking a picture of a little girl.
7. I'm watching the sun rise.

a. *Jèng·dzày dǎ dyàn·'hwà.*
b. *Jèng·dzày dày 'màw·dz.*
c. *Jèng·dzày jàw-'shyàng.*
d. *'Méy-dzwò shém·me.*
e. *Jèng·dzày shí-'lyǎn.*
f. *Jèng·dzày kàn-'shū.*
g. *Jèng·dzày chwān 'yī·shang.*

8. I'm washing my face.
9. I'm taking a picture.

10. I'm putting on my clothes.
11. I'm putting on my hat.
12. I'm reading.
13. I'm doing nothing.

h. *Jèng·dzày kàn 'tày·yang 'chū-lay.*
i. *Jèng·dzày gěy yí·ge-shyáw-nywǔ-'háy·dz jàw-'shyàng.*
j. *Jèng·dzày shyě-'shìn.*
k. *Jèng·dzày gěy 'Hé-shàw·wèy dǎ dyàn·'hwà.*
l. *Jèng·dzày géy wǒ-'gē·ge shyě-'shìn.*
m. *Jèng·dzày gěy 'jyā·li shyě-'shìn.*

*2.* Match up the following English and Chinese answers to the question *Tā jèng·dzày dzwò 'shém·me?*

1. He's boarding a plane.
2. He's sleeping.
3. Right now he's sleeping.

4. At this hour he's still sleeping.
5. He's repairing the typewriter.
6. He's eating his supper.
7. He's talking to a friend.
8. He's closing the door.
9. He's opening the window.
10. He's thinking of you.
11. He's cleaning up the table opposite (us).
12. He's talking to the person who sits opposite him.

a. *Tā jèng·dzày gēn yi·ge-'péng·yew tán-'hwà.*
b. *Tā jèng·dzày kāy-'chwāng·hu.*
c. *Tā jèng·dzày gēn tā-dwèy·'myàn-dzwò·de-nà·ge-rén tán-'hwà.*
d. *'Jè·ge-shŕ·hew tā jèng·dzày shwèy-'jyàw.*
e. *Tā shwèy-'jyàw-ne.*
f. *Tā jèng·dzày shēw·shr dwèy·'myàn·de-'jwō·dz.*
g. *Tā jèng·dzày shyáng-'nǐ.*
h. *Tā jèng·dzày gwān-'mén.*
i. *Tā jèng·dzày 'shyēw·li dǎ·dž·'jī.*
j. *Tā jèng·dzày shàng fēy·'jī.*
k. *Tā jèng·dzày shwèy-'jyàw.*
l. *Tā jèng·dzày chr̄ wǎn·'fàn.*

*3.* *Tā 'jīn·tyan dzěm·me-'yàng?* 'How is he today?'

1. He's still sick.
2. He isn't hungry any more.

a. *Děng 'tyān·chi 'nwǎn-yi·dyǎr jyèw ké·yi 'chū-lay-le.*
b. *Tā jèng·dzày 'shwèy yì·shyǎw-'jyàw.*

3. He's both hungry and thirsty.
4. About the same as yesterday.
5. Still the same.
6. A little better.
7. Not very well.
8. Much better.
9. He doesn't want to eat.
10. Almost well again.
11. In a little while you can go in and see him.
12. When the weather gets warmer he'll be able to come out.
13. He's taking a nap just now.

c. *'Hăw-le-yì·dyăr.*
d. *'Dĕng yì·hwĕr ké·yi 'jìn-chywu 'kàn-ta.*
e. *'Chà·bu·dwō 'hăw-le.*
f. *Tā háy 'bìng·je-ne.*
g. *Tā 'bù-shyăng 'fàn chr̄.*
h. *Hăw 'jwō-le.*
i. *Bú-tày 'hăw.*
j. *'Háy·shr nà·ge-'yàng·dz.*
k. *Tā bú-'è-le.*
l. *Gēn 'dzwó·tyan 'chà·bu·dwō.*

m. *Tā yèw 'kĕ yèw 'è.*

4. *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew-le?* 'What time is it?'

1. Ten after three.
2. Ten of three.
3. Quarter of three.
4. Twenty-five minutes of three.
5. Thirty-five minutes past two.
6. Forty minutes past two.
7. Five minutes after two-thirty.
8. Seven minutes after three.

a. *'Lyáng·dyăn-'sān·shr-'wŭ.*
b. *Lyáng·dyăn-'bàn gwò 'wŭ·fen.*
c. *'Sān·dyăn-'shŕ·fēn.*
d. *Chà 'shŕ·fēn bú-dàw 'sān·dyăn.*
e. *'Sān·dyăn gwò 'chī·fēn.*
f. *Chà yí·'kè bú-dàw 'sān·dyăn.*
g. *Chà èr·shr·'wŭ-fēn bú-dàw 'sān·dyăn.*
h. *'Lyáng·dyăn-'sz̀·shŕ.*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN AND CONVERSATION

### Conversation 1

*Dzày fēy·'jī·li.*

Ross: *Ké·yi kāy-'dēng-ma?*

Chyán: *Fēy·'jī 'fēy·je de·shŕ·hew bù-shywŭ kāy-'dēng.*
*Kŭng·'pà yěw 'dí·rén·de-fēy·'jī láy 'dá wǒ·men.*

Ross: *Wǒ shyáng shyě ř·'jì.*
*Méy·yew 'dēng 'dzěm·me shyě-ne?*

Chyán: *Děng tyān 'lyàng-le 'dzày shyě-ba.*
*Bù·'rán, yùng shěw·dyàn·'dēng 'jàw·je yě ké·yi 'shyě.*
*Ní yéw shěw·dyàn·'dēng-ma?*

Ross: *'Yěw yí·ge. Dzày 'shyāng·dz·li.*

Chyán: *'Shíng·li dzày fēy·'jī·de-'hèw·byan.*
*Dzwèy-'shàng·byan·de-'shyāng·dz shř 'nǐ·de.*
*Nǐ·de-'shyāng·dz shř 'jř-dzwò·de.*
*Swó·yi wǒ jyàw gwǎn-'shíng·li·de-rén bǎ-ta 'gē·dzày 'dzwèy-shàng·byan.*
*Bù·'rán, kŭng·pà 'hwày-le.*

Ross: *Dwō-'shyè.*
*Méy·yew rén yùng jè·me-'hwày·de-'shyāng·dz-ba.*
*Wǒ máy 'jř-shyāng·dz 'wèy·de-shř yèw 'pyán·yi yèw 'chīng.*
*'Shyāng·dz tày 'jùng-le dzwò-fēy·'jī-dày·de-dūng·shi 'shǎw.*

Chyán: *'Dwèy-le. 'Wǒ·de-shyāng·dz 'yě shř yùng-'jř-dzwò·de.*
*Yěw·de-rén pà 'myàn·dz·shang bù-hǎw-'kàn, swó·yi 'bú-yùng jè·me-'hwày·de.*

*('Lwó bǎ tā·de-'shyāng·dz 'dǎ·kāy, jǎw tā·de-shěw·dyàn·'dēng)*

Chyán: *'Jǎw·jáw-le-ma?*

Ross: *Chíng-ni géy-wo 'jàw·je, wǒ 'háy yàw jǎw ř·jì-'běn·dz.*

Chyán: *Nà·ge-húng-'pí·de 'shř-bu·shř ř·jì-'běn·dz?*

Ross: *'Dwèy-le.*

Chyán: *Ní bǎ 'shyāng·dz 'gày·shang, ké·yi dzày 'shyāng·dz·shang 'shyě.*

Ross: *'Jīn·tyan jǐ·'hàw?*

Chyán: *'Dzwó·tyan shř 'jyěw·ywè-'sān·shr·hàw.*
*'Jīn·tyan shř 'shŕ·ywè-'yí·hàw.*

Ross: *Wǒ·men shř 'jǐ·dyǎn-jūng-'lí·kay-Chúng·'chìng·de?*

Chyán: *Sż·dyǎn-'bàn.*

Ross: *Nà·ge-fēy·jī·'chǎng shř dzày Chúng·'chìng·de-'nǎ·byān?*

Chyán: *Dzày Chúng·'chìng·de-'shī·nán.*

Ross: *Jyàw shém·me-'míng·dz?*

Chyán: *Nà shr̀ 'jywēn-yùng-fēy·jī·'chăng.*

Ross: *Wŏ·men yí·'gùng 'dwō·shaw-rén?*

Chyán: *Lyán kăy-fēy·'jī·de, yí·gùng shr̀ shŕ·'sz̀·ge-rén.*

## Conversation 2

*(a little later)*

Chyán: *Shyĕ·'wán-le-ma?*

Ross: *Shyĕ·'wán-le.*

Chyán: *Nĭ 'kàn, 'tyān kwày 'lyàng-le.*
*'Tày·yang 'chà·bu·dwō 'lyèw·dyăn-jūng 'chū-lay.*
*Dzày fēy·'jī·shang 'kàn·de 'ywăn.*
*Wŏ·men bĭ 'dì·shang·de-rén 'shyān 'kàn·jyan tày·yang.*

Ross: *Yí·'dìng hén-hăw-'kàn·de.*

Chyán: *'Yĕw·de-shŕ·hew hăw-'kàn.*
*Bù-jr̄·daw 'jīn·tyan dzĕm·me-yàng.*
*Ní 'lĕng-bu·lĕng?*

Ross: *Yĕw-yì·dyán 'lĕng.*

Chyán: *Nà·me, dwō chwān-yì·dyăn 'yī·shang 'hăw-bu·hăw?*

Ross: *'Bú-yùng chwān 'yī·shang.*
*Yĕw rè-'chá-ma?*

Chyán: *'Yĕw Dzày nà·ge-nwán·shwĕy·'hu·li.*

Ross: *Hē-yì·dyăn rè-'chá jyèw 'nwăn·he-le.*

Chyán: *'Wó yé shyăng hē.*
*Nĭ 'è-bu·è?*

Ross: *Yĕw-yì·dyăn 'è.*

Chyán: *Nà·ge-'bāw·li yĕw myàn·'bāw, nyéw·'rèw.*
*Wŏ·men 'chr̄-yì·dyăn-ba.*

Ross: *Chr̄·'wán-le wŏ háy shyáng 'shyĕ yì·fēng-'shìn.*
*Wó shyăng gàw·su wŏ·de-'tày·tay, wŏ 'rèn·shr-le yí·ge-hăw-'péng·yew.*

Chyán: *'Shwéy-ya? Wŏ 'rèn-shr ta-ma?*

Ross: *Nĭ yí·'dìng 'rèn·shr-ta.*
*Tā shr̀ dì-'chī·shr·'chī-'shr̄·de-'tsān·mew.*
*Shr̀ yí·ge-jūng·'shyàw.*
*Shìng-'Chyán. Tā·de-'míng·dz shr̀ 'Jūng·shù.*

Chyán: *Nà shr̀-'wŏ-ya!*
*Nĭ 'gàw·su nĭ·de-'tày·tay.*
*Shwō: Wó yĭ·'hèw shyăng dàw 'Mĕy·gwo-chywù.*

*Wǒ 'chywù de·shŕ·hew 'shyān 'tūng·jr̄ ta, jyàw-ta dzày Nyēw·'ywē·de-hwǒ·chē·'jàn jyē-wo.*

Ross: *Tā 'dzěm·me 'jr̄·daw shr̀-'nǐ-ne?*

Chyán: *Wǒ 'chwān·je jywēn·'yī, tā jyèw 'jr̄·daw shr̀-'wǒ-le.*

Ross: *'Dwèy-le. 'Gàw·su ta lǐng·'jāng·shang yéw 'lyǎng·ge-sān·'jyǎw·de jyèw shr̀-'nǐ.*

*Kě·shr dàw 'nà·ge-shŕ·hew, nǐ 'yé·shywu shr̀ shàw·'jyàng-le.*

Chyán: *Dàw 'nà·ge-shŕ·hew 'dzày gàw·su ta-ba!*

### Conversation 3

Ross: *'Å; 'Shìn shyě·'wán-le.*

Chyán: *'Shyě·de hěn 'kwày.*

Ross: *Dǎ-'jàng de·shŕ·hew, hěn-'dwō-'shr̀ bù-néng shyě·dzay 'shìn·li.*

*Wǒ·men-'chywù·de-dì·fang yěw dyàn·bàw·'jywú-ma?*

Chyán: *'Yěw. Wǒ 'rèn·shr nà·ge-dyàn·bàw·jywú·'jǎng.*

Ross: *'Nà hǎw 'jí-le.*

*Wó shyáng 'dǎ yí·ge-dyàn·'bàw.*

Chyán: *Dǎ·daw shém·me-'dì·fang?*

Ross: *Dǎ·daw Chúng·'chìng.*

*Shwō wǒ píng·'ān, 'yǐ·jīng dàw-le chyán·'shyàn.*

Chyán: *Shyàn·dzày 'háy bù-jr̄·daw 'shr̀-bu·shr̀ néng 'dàw chyán·'shyàn.*

*Nǐ-shwō·de-'hwà tày 'dzǎw-le.*

*Wǒ·men·de-tsān·mew·'jǎng 'ày shwō:*

*"'Dàw shém·me-dì·fang, 'shwō shém·me-hwà.*

*'Méy-dàw 'dì·fang, 'bú·yàw shwō-'hwà!"*

Ross: *'Jè·wèy-tsān·mew·'jǎng shìng 'shém·me?*

Chyán: *Tā shìng-'Tyán.*

*Tā hwèy shwō 'Yīng·gwo-hwà, shwō·de hén 'hǎw.*

*'Děng yì·hwěr, nǐ jyèw ké·yi 'kàn·jyan ta-le.*

Ross: *'Å! 'Tày·yang kwày 'chū-lay-le.*

*Wǒ·men gwò-chywu dàw dwèy·'myàn kàn-yi·kàn-ba.*

## FINDER LIST

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *bāw M, N | 'package of', 'package, bundle' | *bàw N | 'report, message; newspaper' (see *dyàn·'bàw*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| **běn* M | for *shū* 'book' |
| *'*běn·dz* N | 'volume, book of useful information' (see *r̀·jì-'běn·dz*) |
| **běy* | 'north' (see *dūng·běy, shī·běy*) |
| *·*bù* | 'ministry' |
| *bù·'jăng* N | 'head of a Ministry, Minister' |
| **chá* N | 'tea' |
| *chá·'hú* N | 'teapot' |
| *chà* V, K | 'differ. miss'; 'differing by' |
| '*chà·bu·dwō* | 'almost, about, approximately' |
| **dàw* K | 'to' (see '*jyē·dàw*) |
| **děng* V | 'wait; wait for' |
| *'*děng-yi·děng* | 'wait a bit' |
| '*děng yì·hwěr* | 'wait a while' |
| **dūng* | 'east' |
| *dūng·běy* | 'northeast' |
| *dūng·nán* | 'southeast' |
| **dwèy* V | 'match, face, matching' (see *lyăn-dwèy-'lyăn, myàn-dwèy-'myàn*) |
| *dwèy·'myàn* N | 'opposite side' |
| **dwō* A | 'much, more, many' (see '*chà·bu·dwō*) |
| **dyàn* N | 'electricity' |
| **dyàn·'bàw* N | 'telegram' |
| **dyàn·bàw·'jywú* N | 'telegraph office' |
| *dyàn·bàw·jywú·'jăng* N | 'manager of a telegraph office' |
| *è* A | 'be hungry' |
| *fēng* M | for letters and telegrams, when they come in an envelope |
| *hé* N | 'river' (M *tyǎw*) (see *Hwáng·'hé*) |
| *hú* N | 'pot, kettle' (see *chá·'hú, nwán·shwěy·'hú*) |
| **hwáng* A | 'yellow' (includes 'brown', for which there is no special word) |
| *Hwáng·'hé* N | 'the Yellow River' |
| ·*hwěr* M | 'a short while' (see '*děng yì·hwěr*) |
| **hwéy* V | 'return (to)' |
| '*hwéy·shìn* N | 'answer' (letter) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·jăng* | 'person in charge of' (see *bù·'jăng, dyàn·bàw·jywú·'jăng, jywēn·'jăng, shr̄·'jăng, tsān·méw·'jăng*) |
| *·*jèng* | 'certificate, credentials' (see *shywú·kě·'jèng*) |
| *·*jì* | 'remember, record' (see *r̀·'jì*) |
| *·*jr̄* | 'know' (see *'tūng·jr̄*) |
| *'*jr̄·dàw* V | 'know' |
| **jyàn* V | 'meet, recognize, perceive' |
| *jyàw* | 'awakening' (see *shwèy 'jyàw*, the only combination in which it is used) |
| *jyē* V | 'meet' someone arriving; opposite of *sùng* |
| '*jyē·dàw* RC | 'receive' (from a distance) |
| **jywēn* N | 'army, armed force; army' as in 'fifth army' and so forth |
| *jywēn·'jăng* N | 'commander of an army' |
| *jywēn·'yī* N | 'military uniform' |
| *·*jywú* | 'office, public office' (see *dyàn·bàw·'jywú*) |
| **kāy* V | 'open, start, turn on' (see *'lí·kāy*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·*kě* | 'can, may' (see *shywú·'kě*) |
| *kě* A | 'be thirsty' |
| **lí* K | 'from' (in giving distances) |
| '*lí·kāy* RC | 'leave' (a place) |
| **lyăn* N | 'face'; 'reputation for moral uprightness' (see *yàw-'lyăn*) |
| *lyăn·'myàn* N | 'face' |
| *lyăn-dwèy-'lyăn* | 'face to face' |
| *·*méw* | 'scheme, plan' (see *'tsān·méw*) |
| *myàn* N | 'face' (see *dwèy·'myàn, lyăn·'myàn*) |
| '*myàn·dz* N | 'face'; 'reputation for correctness in less important things' (see *yěw 'myàn·dz*) |
| *myàn-dwèy-'myàn* | 'face to face' |
| **nán* | 'south' (see *dūng·nán, shī·nán*) |
| *·*nwăn* | 'warm' |
| *'*nwăn·hé* A | 'warm' |
| *nwán·shwěy·'hú* N | 'thermos bottle, thermos jug' |
| *·*r̀* | 'sun, day' |
| '*r̀·tew* N | 'sun' |
| *r̀·'jì* N | 'diary' (the record one keeps) |
| *r̀·jì-'běn·dz* N | 'diary' (the book in which it is kept) |

|  |  |
|---|---|
| ******shī* | 'west' |
| *shī·běy* | 'northwest' |
| *shī·nán* | 'southwest' |
| ******shìn* N | 'letter' (M *fēng* for a letter in an envelope) (see *'hwéy·shìn*) |
| *shr̄* N, M | 'division' (military unit) |
| *shr̄·'jǎng* N | 'division commander' |
| **shwěy* N | 'water' (see *nwán·shwěy·'hú*) |
| **shwèy* A | 'to be asleep' |
| *shwèy-'jyàw* | 'to sleep the period for which one sleeps without waking up' |
| **shywǔ* V | 'be permitted to' |
| *shywú·'kě* N | 'permission' |
| *shywú·kě·'jèng* N | 'permit' |
| **sùng* V | 'to see (someone) off' (as they leave on a trip); opposite of *jyē* |
| *·swēn* |  |
| *Swēn* N | man's name |
| *'swēn·dz* N | 'grandson' |
| **tày* H | 'too much; very' |
| *'tày·yáng* N | 'sun' |

|  |  |
|---|---|
| **téw* N | 'head, end' (see *'r̄·tew*) |
| **·tsān* | 'take part in' |
| **'tsān·méw* N | 'staff officer' |
| *tsān·méw·'jǎng* N | 'Chief-of-Staff' |
| **tūng* V | 'to pass through, to let pass through' |
| **tūng-'chē* | 'to be reachable by a wheeled vehicle' |
| *'tūng·jr̄* V | 'to tell, inform' |
| *Túng·'gwān* N | name of a city, Tungkwan, in Shensi province |
| *·yáng* | 'the light (bright) side of any thing which contrasts light and dark' (see *'tày·yáng*) |
| **yàw* V | 'be going to, want, want to, need to' |
| *yàw-'lyǎn* | 'to desire a reputation for correctness' |
| **yěw* V | 'to have' |
| *yěw 'myàn·dz* | 'to have a reputation' |
| **·yī* | 'clothing' (see *jywēn·'yī*) |

# UNIT 16

## SUNRISE

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

*Dzày fēy·'jĭ·li 'Lwó shwèy·'jáw-le. 'Chyán bă-ta jyàw·'shĭng-le, chywù kàn 'tày·yang chū-lay.*

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| Mr. Ross, wake up! | *'Lwó-shyān·sheng, 'shĭng-yi·shĭng.* |
| | *Ross* |
| What is it? | *'Á?* |
| Oh! I went to sleep! | *'Èw! Wŏ shwèy·'jáw-le.* |
| It's already light! | *'Tyān 'yĭ·jĭng 'lyàng-le.* |
| Is the sun up yet? | *'Tày·yang 'chū-lay-le méy·yew?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| It's just coming up now. | *'Gāng chū-lay.* |
| Come over and have a look. | *'Gwò-lay 'kàn-yi·kàn.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Really beautiful! | *'Jēn hăw-'kàn!* |
| color | *'yán·sè* |
| Look at those colors! | *'Kàn nà·shyē-'yán·sè!* |

| | |
|---|---|
| purple | *dž* |
| blue | *lán* |
| Red, purple, blue! | *'Húng·de, 'dž·de, 'lán·de!* |
| to be low | *dī* |
| Say, why is the plane flying so low? | *Hèy! 'Wèy-shém·me fēy·'jī jè·me-'dī?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| It isn't flying low. | *'Bú·shr 'fēy·de 'dī.* |
| mountain | *shān* |
| to be high | *gāw* |
| It's because the mountains here are so high. | *Shr jè·li·de-'shān 'gāw.* |
| province | *shěng* |
| Shensi province | *Shǎn·shī-'shěng* |
| to touch *or* come together | *jyāw-'jyè* |
| This is the border between Szechwan and Shensi provinces. | *Jè shr Sž-chwān-'shěng gēn Shǎn·shī-'shěng jyāw-'jyè·de-dì·fang.* |
| South of the mountains is Szechwan. | *'Shān-'nán·byan shr 'Sž·chwān.* |
| North of the mountains is Shensi. | *'Běy·byan shr 'Shǎn·shī.* |
| | *Ross* |
| How far is it from here to Tungkwan? | *Tsúng 'jè·li dàw Túng·'gwān 'háy yěw dwō-'ywǎn?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| We've come nearly half the way. | *Wǒ·men 'dzěw-le 'chà·bu·dwō yěw yí·'bàn-'lù-le.* |

313

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| city *or* walled town | *chéng* |
| How large is the city of Tungkwan? | *Túng·gwān-'chéng yěw dwō-'dà?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| to be important | *'jùng·yàw* |
| The city is small, but important. | *'Chéng hén 'shyǎw, kě·shr 'jùng·yàw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| city wall | *chéng·'chyáng* |
| Are there city walls? | *Yěw chéng·'chyáng-ma?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| Yes. | *'Yěw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| How far is it from the front? | *Lí·chyán·'shyàn yěw dwō-'ywǎn?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| It's right at the front. | *'Jèng dzày chyán·'shyàn·shang.* |
| map | *dì·'tú* |
| This is a map. | *Jè shr̀ dì·'tú.* |
| See: the Yellow River comes from the north and goes east here. | *Nǐ 'kàn, Hwáng·'hé tsúng-'běy-lay, dzày 'jè·li shyàng-'dūng-chywu.* |
| Shansi | *Shān·'shī* |
| north bank | *běy·'àn* |
| On the north bank of the river is Shansi. | *'Hé·de-běy·'àn shr̀ 'Shān·shī-'shěng.* |
| And the Japanese front is right on the north bank. | *R̀·'běn·de-chyán·'shyàn jyèw dzày běy·'àn·shang.* |

314

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| How far away is the enemy to the east? | *'Dūng·byan·de-'dí·rén 'lí·je yěw dwō-'ywǎn?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| More than two hundred miles away. | *Yěw 'èr·bǎy-dwō-Yīng·'lǐ.* |
| Honan | *Hé·'nán* |
| That's in Honan province. | *Shr̀ dzày Hé·nán-'shěng.* |
| But here it's only two miles away. | *Kě·shr 'jè·li 'jř lí·je 'èr-Yīng·lǐ.* |
| | *Ross* |
| railway | *tyě·'lù* |
| There's a railway here too. | *Jè·li 'háy yéw tyě·'lù.* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| That's the Lúng·hǎy railway. | *'Nà shr̀ 'Lúng·háy-tyě·'lù.* |
| It's a line that goes east and west. | *Shr̀ tsúng-'dūng-dàw-'shī·de-tyě·'lù.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Is it still running? | *Jè·tyáw-tyě·'lǔ 'háy yéw hwǒ·'chē 'dzěw-ma?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| Yes. | *'Yěw.* |
| It's open now from the central part of Honan to the western part of Shensi. | *Shyàn·dzày tsúng Hé·nán-'jūng·bù dàw Shǎn·shī-'shī·bù tūng-'chē.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Tungkwan is really important from the military point of view! | *Tsúng jywēn·'shr̀·shang kàn, Túng·'gwān 'jēn shr̀ 'jùng·yàw.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| It's on the border of three provinces, | *Dzày sān·'shěng·de-jyāw·'jyè·'shang,* |
| a railway south of it, a river north of it. | *'nán·byan shr̀ yì·tyáw-tyě·lù, 'běy·byan shr̀ yì·tyáw-'hé.* |
| Doesn't the enemy ever think of crossing the river? | *'Dí·rén bù-'shyǎng gwò-'hé-ma?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| Don't they though! | *'Dzěm·me bù-'shyǎng!* |
| They've crossed the river many times. | *Tā·men 'gwò-láy-le hěn-'dwō-tsż.* |
| Always during the night. | *'Dēw·shr dzày 'yè·li.* |
| at the hands of *or* by | *bèy* |
| to defeat | *dǎ·'bày* |
| But each time they were defeated by us. | *Kě·shr 'měy·yí·tsż 'dēw bèy wǒ·men dǎ·'bày-le.* |
| to kill | *'dá·sž* |
| Once fifty came over, and all were killed. | *'Yěw-yí·tsż 'gwò-lay-le 'wǔ·shr-rén, 'dēw gěy 'dá·sž-le.* |
| Not one got back. | *'Yí·ge yě 'méy-hwéy-chywu.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Do the troops who defeated the Japanese soldiers belong to the seventy-seventh division? | *Bǎ-R̀·běn-'bīng-'dǎ·bày-le·de-'Jūng·gwo-bīng shr̀ chī·shr-'chī-'shr̄·de-ma?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| Half of them do. | *'Yěw yí·'bàn shr̀·de.* |
| | *Ross* |
| I'd like to meet some of them. | *Wǒ yàw 'jyàn-yi·jyàn tā·men.* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| I'll find some of them for you. | *Wó géy-nǐ 'jǎw jǐ·ge-lay.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Perhaps you can talk to them this afternoon. | *Yé·shywu 'jīn·tyan-'shyà·wŭ jyèw ké·yi gēn tā·men tán-'hwà.* |
| | *Ross* |
| That's wonderful. | *'Nà hăw 'jí-le.* |
| I'll take a picture of them and take some notes on what they say. | *Wó shyáng 'gěy tā·men jàw yì·jāng-'shyàng, 'yé shyáng 'bă tā·men-shwō·de-'hwà 'jì·shyà-láy.* |
| May I? | *'Ké·yi-ma?* |
| | *Col. Chyán* |
| Certainly. | *'Ké·yi.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. High, Low, and Short.** In Chinese *dī* means 'low' and *ăy* means 'short'; the distinction is as in English. But for the two English words 'tall' (opposite of 'short') and 'high' (opposite of 'low') there is only one Chinese word, *gāw.*

**Point 2. Mountains and Hills.** In English we have these two words, 'mountains' and 'hills', for pieces of country that are relatively higher than the surrounding terrain. In Chinese one word, *shān,* is used for both. To distinguish between big ones and little ones, the expressions *gāw-'shān* 'high hill-mountains' and *shyăw-'shān* 'little hill-mountains' are used.

Here is a useful proverb about hills (or mountains):

*'Shàng-shān 'rúng·yi, 'shyà-shān 'nán.*

This would seem to be the opposite of what might be expected, but a little thought will show that it is perhaps just as logical as would be the opposite.

**Point 3. Cities and Provinces.** There are quite a number of words about cities and provinces in this Unit; be sure to check the Finder List carefully for them.

The word *shěng* refers to a province when speaking of China, to a State when speaking of the United States—that is, it simply means a major political subdivision of an entire country. It is used as a measure as well as a noun: *sān·'shěng* 'three provinces (states)'.

The word *chéng* refers primarily to a city which has a city wall, as over against an unfortified settlement. But since most larger and more important Chinese cities do have walls, it has come to mean 'city' as over against a smaller 'town' or 'village'. Both meanings are present in the word. The same term is in some expressions used to refer not to the city which has the wall, but to the wall itself: *chéng-'lǐ* 'within the city (wall)' means in the central part of the city, the downtown section, since in some modern cities there has been a growth of more settlements and suburbs beyond the bounds of the old wall; *chéng-'wày* 'outside the city (wall)' is similar.

**Point 4. Banks and Shores.** There is a Chinese religious maxim, *Hwéy-'téw shr̀-'àn*. Can you figure out what it means? It is the free equivalent of 'Repent and you will be saved.'

**Point 5. Railroads.** The two terms for 'railroad, railway'—the actual route of the tracks—are *hwǒ·chē·'dàw* and *tyě·'lù*. Figure out from the Finder List what they mean literally.

*The Lúng·háy-Tyě·'lù* ('*Lúng·hǎy* railroad') is a line connecting *Hǎy·jēw* on the eastern seacoast with *Shǎn·shī* and *'Gān·su* provinces in the northwest. Its present western terminal is *Bǎw·jī* in the southwestern part of *Shǎn·shī* province. The Japanese control the line (early 1944) from *Hǎy·jēw* to *Jèng·jēw* in central *Hé·nán* province. At *Túng·gwān* the line passes within two miles of enemy positions, and here the passengers often make a detour to the south, going a few miles by foot before boarding the train again.

The name of the railroad is like American railroad names that indicate the two extreme points connected: 'Baltimore and Ohio', 'Chicago and Northwestern', 'Podunk and East River Junction'. *Lúng* is a term used in writing (not in ordinary talking) to refer to the region which includes *Shǎn·shī* and *'Gān·su* provinces —the western end of the line. *Hǎy* is an abbreviation of *Hǎy·jēw*, the eastern terminus.

**Point 6. By.** Compare these three sentences:

*Tā·men bèy wǒ·men dǎ 'bày-le.* 'They were defeated by us.'

*Tā·men jyàw wǒ·men dǎ·'bày-le.* 'They were defeated by us.'

*Tā ràng-'rén géy 'chǐng chywù-le.* 'He's been asked by some people to go away.' (with them as a guest)

In sentences like these the English word *by* is used to indicate the agent at whose hands something happens. In Chinese there are three words so used: *bèy, ràng* and *jyàw* have approximately the same meaning, 'by, at the hands of'; but *ràng* also means (rather) 'being permitted or requested or invited by'.

The second and third terms also have a different use:

*Wǒ jyàw-ta 'chywù-le.* 'I told (ordered) him to go.'

*Wǒ ràng-ta 'chywù-le.* 'I let him go.'

## Point 7. More on Adjective Predicates

A

*Jè·běn-'shū* hén 'hǎw. ‘This book is very good.’

*Nà·jāng-'hwàr* hén hǎw-'kàn. ‘That picture is very attractive.’

*'Jè·li·de-fàn* hěn 'dwō. ‘There’s a lot of food here.’

B

'Yàw-bu·yàw 'kāy·je 'mén? *'Gwān·shang* 'hǎw. ‘Do you want the door open?’ ‘Better (have it) closed.’

*Nà·jāng-'hwàr 'hwà*·de hén hǎw-'kàn. ‘That picture was painted in a very attractive way.’

Nyàn-'shū·de-rén 'dwō, *'shū jyèw 'mày*·de dwō. ‘When there are lots of people studying, a lot of books right away get sold.’

*Mày-'shū* hěn 'nán. ‘It’s hard to sell books.’

All the above sentences, in A and in B, have adjective predicates. The italicized parts are the *subjects* —the words which refer to the people or things or situations being talked about.

Note that in A the subjects are all nouns or noun expressions:

*jè·běn-'shū* ‘this book’
*nà·jāng-'hwàr* ‘that picture’
*jè·li·de-'fàn* ‘the food at this place’

but that in B the subjects all contain verbs, either consisting completely of a verb or having a verb with nouns before or after:

*'gwān·shàng* ‘(to) close’
*nà·jāng 'hwàr 'hwà(-de)* ‘that picture is painted . . .
*'shū jyèw 'mày* ‘right away books are sold . . .’
*mày-'shū* ‘sell books’

These subjects of the sentences in B look themselves very much like sentences in themselves: they contain verbs, sometimes preceded by nouns as happens in independent sentences, and sometimes followed by nouns, as also happens in independent sentences. For that reason, this kind of a subject of a sentence is called a *sentence-subject.*

Our nearest approach in English to sentence-subjects is in sentences like ‘*selling books* is quite hard’ or ‘*to sell books* is quite hard.’ That is, you can’t simply say ‘*sell books* is quite hard’ as you can in Chinese; you have to change the words in one way or another.

In Chinese, too, the sentence-subjects used in sentences of the kind illustrated above, with adjective predicates, are not always just like an independent sentence would be. Sentence-subjects are of several different kinds. Here are the principles involved in Chinese sentences with sentence-subjects and adjective predicates:

(1) Subject ending in an adjective:

'*Nà hǎw*·de 'hěn. 'That's very fine.'

'*Nà·shwāng-shyé* (*bǐ 'byé·de*) '*dà*·de 'dwō. 'That pair of shoes is much larger (than the others).'

'*Nà·shwāng dà*·de 'tày dwō. 'That pair is too much larger.'

'*Nà·shwang dà*·de 'dzwèy dwō. 'That pair is by far the largest.'

'*Nà hǎw* 'jí-le. 'That's swell!'

'*Nǐ·de-'shyé gēn 'wǒ·de 'hwáng*·de bù-yī·'yàng. 'Your shoes and mine are not the same shade of brown.'

When the sentence-subject ends in an adjective one can add an adjective predicate in the following chief ways:

(a) Add *de* and use *hěn* as predicate. (Relatively rare except in the type of sentence given first above.)

(b) Add *de* and use *dwō* as predicate. *Dwō* in this use may have all sorts of modifiers such as *bū* 'not' or *dzwèy* 'most' before it, but *hěn* always stands alone.

(c) Use '*jí-le* 'has become excessive, has become very great' as predicate, without adding *de*.

(d) In stating that things are not equally this or that, add *de* and use *bù-yí·'yàng* as predicate.

Note that since the added predicate shows the comparison or contrast or relativity which an adjective predicate always has, this does not need to be otherwise expressed, unless one makes specific mention of the thing being compared with (as in the second example or the last).

(2) Subject containing a *verb* (with or without preceding or following nouns):

'*Chíng-ni 'dzěw* 'kwày-yi·dyǎr. 'Please walk a little faster.'

*Chǐng 'shwō* 'màn-yi·dyǎn. 'Please speak a little slower.'

In making a request, you can simply use an adjective plus *-yi·dyǎn* or *-yi·dyǎr* as predicate.

'*Gwān·shang* 'hǎw. 'Better (have it) closed.'

When the verb used as subject is a resultative compound standing alone (no nouns before or after) no *de* is added, and any adjective predicate with appropriate meaning can be used.

*Swó·yi yěw-'tā bāng-'máng* yé 'hǎw. 'So having him to help is all right.'

*Shyàn·dzày jǎw-'rén* hěn 'nán. 'Right now it's quite hard to find anyone.'

*Mày-'shū* hěn 'nán. 'It's quite hard to sell books.'

When the sentence-subject contains a verb *followed by a noun* no *de* is added, and any adjective predicate with suitable meaning can be used.

*Wǒ-'swàn*·de bú-'dwèy. 'I figured wrong.'

*Yí·dìng 'shywé*·de 'hǎw. '(He'll) certainly learn well.'

*Ní 'chĭ-láy*·de hén dzǎw. 'You've gotten up quite early.'

*Dzěm·me 'shēw·shr*·de jè·me-'kwày? 'How'd you get things cleaned up so fast?'

*Tā bí-wó 'dzěw*·de 'màn-yi·dyǎr. 'He walks a little slower than I do.'

'*Wǒ·de-'shyé bí 'nĭ·de 'tsā*·de 'lyàng·de dwō. 'My shoes are shined a lot brighter than yours.'

When the verb of the sentence-subject is not a resultative compound standing alone, and when it is not followed by any noun, then *de* is added, and any adjective predicate of suitable meaning can be used.

(3) By looking through the various examples given above you will also note the following points about sentence-subjects:

(a) The sentence-subject may consist of a verb standing all alone. ('*Gwān·shang* 'hǎw.)

(b) It may consist of an adjective preceded by a noun, in which case the adjective is describing the noun. ('*Nà hǎw* 'jī-le.)

(c) It may consist of a verb followed by a noun, in which case the noun names the thing to which the action mentioned by the verb is done (*mày 'shū* 'sell books', where books are the things that are sold). There are no examples above of a sentence-subject in which the verb of the sentence-subject is both preceded and followed by a noun, but the meaning would be similar:

*Swó·yi wó yěw-'tā bāng-'máng* yé 'hǎw. 'So *my* having him to help is OK'.

(d) The sentence-subject may consist of a verb preceded by a noun, but not followed by one. In this case compare the following two sentences:

*Wǒ-'swàn*·de bú-'dwèy. 'I figured wrong.'

'*Wǒ·de-'shyé bí 'nĭ·de 'tsā*·de 'lyàng·de dwō. 'My shoes are shined a lot brighter than yours.'

In the first case the noun-like word (*wǒ* 'I') before the verb (*swàn* 'calculate') names the person or thing who does what the verb says. In the second case the noun expression ('*wǒ·de-'shyé* 'my shoes') before the verb ('*tsā* 'to rub') names the thing *to which* is done what the verb says. In cases like this there is only the meaning of the individual words to show which meaning the sentence-subject has.

(e) Notice, finally, that sentence-subjects are often simpler in the way they are put together than the equivalent independent sentences usually would be—there are fewer *le*'s around, fewer adverbs like *yèw, dzày, tsáy,* and so on. The situation mentioned by a sentence-subject is usually a *general situation,* not pinned down specifically in time or space; used as an independent sentence more of the little words which take care of such pinning-down would normally be used.

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Match up the following answers to the question *Jè·tyáw-'lù shr̀ dàw shém·me-'di·fang chywù-de?*

1. It goes to the east.
2. To the northeast.
3. To the southeast.
4. To the northwest.
5. To the southwest.
6. Straight to Chicago.
7. Into the city.
8. Out of the city.
9. To the north city gate.
10. To the south city gate.
11. To outside the west city gate.
12. To inside the east city gate.
13. Up onto the city wall.
14. To the south bank of the Yellow River.
15. Only this road passes over that mountain.
16. This road doesn't go over that mountain.
17. This isn't the road that goes up the mountain.
18. This road passes through that city.
19. It goes to the railroad station.
20. It crosses to the other side of the railroad. (two ways)
21. Passage along this road is forbidden.

a. *Dàw dūng·mén-'lǐ chywù·de.*
b. *Jè·tyáw-'lù 'bú-gwò nà·ge-'shān.*
c. *Dàw Jūng·Ē-ʃyāw-'jyè·de-dì·fang chywù·de.*
d. *Dàw hwǒ·chē·'jàn chywù·de.*
e. *Dàw 'dūng·byān chywù·de.*
f. *Dàw shī·'nán chywù·de.*
g. *Dàw 'Běy·mén chywù·de.*
h. *Dàw Hwáng·'hé·de-nán·'àn chywù·de.*
i. *Jè·tyáw-'lù gwò nà·ge-'chéng.*
j. *Gwò tyě·'lù dàw 'nà·byān chywù·de.*
k. *Dàw hé·'àn chywù·de.*
l. *Dàw dūng·'nán chywù·de.*
m. *Dàw chéng-'lǐ chywù·de.*
n. *Dàw Shī·mén-'wày chywù·de.*
o. *Dàw 'dà-lù chywù·de.*
p. *Dàw Jyā·ná·'dà·de-gwó·'jyè chywù·de.*
q. *Jè·tyáw-'lù bù-shywǔ tūng·'shíng.*
r. *Gwò hwǒ·chē·'dàw dàw 'nà·byān chywù·de.*
s. *Jř yěw 'jè·tyáw-lù gwò nà·dzwò-'shān.*
t. *Jè 'bú·shr̀ shàng-'shān·de-'lù.*

u. *Dàw chéng·'chyáng·shang chywù·de.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 22. To the Sino-Russian border. | v. *Dàw 'Nán·mén chywù·de.* |
| 23. To the Canadian border. | w. *Dàw chéng-'wày chywù·de.* |
| 24. To the river bank. | x. *Dàw shī·'běy chywù·de.* |
| 25. To the main road. | y. *Yì·'jŕ dàw Jr̄·jyā·'gē.* |
| | z. *Dàw dūng·'běy chywù·de.* |

*2.* Match up the following sentences.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. The sky is blue, but all that is blue isn't sky. | a. *'Tyān shr̀ 'lán·sè·de, kě·shr 'lán·sè·de bù-'dēw shr̀-'tyān.* |
| 2. The Chinese like to wear blue clothes. | b. *Yěw·de-nywŭ-rén 'ày chwān dà·'húng·de-dà·'yī.* |
| 3. The water in the Yellow River is yellow. | c. *Shyàn·dzày Shàng·'hăy méy·yew chéng·'chyáng.* |
| 4. Some women use pink envelopes. | d. *'Swēn·dz shr̀ 'ér·dz·de-'ér·dz.* |
| 5. Some women like to wear scarlet overcoats. | e. *'Jūng·gwo-rén 'ày chwān 'lán·se·de-'yī·shang.* |
| 6. In many maps blue regions are (represent) seas and oceans. | f. *Yěw·de-'nywŭ-rén yùng fěn·'húng·sè·de-shìn·'fēng.* |
| 7. Shanghai is the largest seaport of China. | g. *Dzày hěn-'dwō·de-dì·'tú·shang 'lán·sè·de-dì·fang shr̀ hăy·'yáng.* |
| 8. Shanghai has no city walls at present. | h. *Běy·'píng yěw chéng·'chyáng.* |
| 9. Peiping has walls. | i. *Shàng·'hăy shr̀ 'Jūng·gwo-dzwèy-'dà·de-háy·'kěw.* |
| 10. It's harder to go downhill than uphill. | j. *Hwáng·'hé·de-'shwěy shr̀ 'hwáng·sè·de.* |
| 11. A grandson is the son of a son. | k. *'Shyà-shān bĭ 'shàng-shān 'nán.* |

*3.* Match up the English and Chinese:

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. There was a battle here yesterday. | a. *Tā·men jèng·dzày 'děng·je 'dí·rén.* |
| 2. Right there on the east side of that hill. | b. *'Bă tā·men 'dă·bày-le-ma?* |
| 3. Our troops were at the top of the hill. | c. *'Yí·ge 'yě méy-'jyàw-ta 'hwéy-chywù.* |

4. They were behind those trees.
5. They were waiting for the enemy.
6. They knew the enemy was coming that way.
7. But the enemy didn't know our troops were waiting to 'welcome' them.
8. Did we defeat them?
9. Is there any need to ask?
10. They were all killed by our troops.
11. Not a single one was allowed to go back.

d. *Háy yùng 'wèn-ma?*
e. *'Dzwó·tyan 'jè·li 'dă-le yí·'jàng.*
f. *Wǒ·men·de-'bīng dzày 'shān·shang.*
g. *'Dēw jyàw wǒ·men·de 'bīng gěy 'dá·sž-le.*
h. *Kě·shr 'dí·rén bù-'jr̄·daw wǒ·men·de-'bīng dzày 'nà·li 'děng·je “'hwān·yíng’ tā·men.*
i. *Jyèw dzày 'nà·ge-shyǎw·'shān·de-'dūng·byan.*
j. *Tā·men 'jr̄·dàw 'dí·rén yàw dàw 'nà·li-lay.*
k. *Dzày nà·shyē-'shù-hèw·byan.*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN AND CONVERSATION

### Conversation 1

*Dzày fēy·'jĭ·shang 'Chyán-tsān·mew gàw·su 'Lwó-shyān·sheng tā-yĭ·'chyán-dă-'jàng·de-shr̀.*

Ross: *'Chyán-tsān·mew, yĭ·'chyán dzày shém·me-'dì·fang dzwò-'shr̀?*

Chyán: *Dzày Shàng·'hǎy jyāw-'shū.*

Ross: *Nǐ shr̀ 'Shàng·hǎy-rén-ma?*

Chyán: *'Bú·shr, wǒ shr̀ 'Běy·píng-rén.*

*'Yī-'jyěw-'sān-'chī-'nyán, dá·chi 'jàng-lay-le, wǒ-'dž·jĭ tsúng Běy·'píng dàw Shàng·'hǎy chywù·de.*

Ross: *Dzày Shàng·'hǎy jù-le 'jĭ·nyán?*

Chyán: *Bú-dàw 'sān·nyán.*

*Hèw·lay tsúng Shàng·'hǎy dzwò-'chwán dàw Shyāng·'gǎng, yèw tsúng Shyāng·'gǎng, dzěw·daw Chúng·'chìng.*

Ross: *Dzày Chúng·'chìng dzwò 'shém·me-shr̀?*

Chyán: *Dzày Jywēn·jèng·'bù dzwò-shr̀.*

*Tsúng 'chyán·nyan chǐ, dzày dì-chī·shr·'chī-'shr̄ dzwò 'tsān·mew.*

Ross: *Nà shr̀ 'Mín·gwó-sān·shr·'yī-nyán, 'dwèy-ma?*

Chyán: *Bú-'dwèy; shr̀ 'Mín·gwó-'sān·shr·nyán-shŕ·'èr·ywè.*

*Dàw shyàn·dzày chà 'lyǎng·ge-ywè bú-dàw 'lyǎng·nyán.*

324

Ross: *Nǐ 'dǎ·gwo 'jàng-ma?*

Chyán: *'Dǎ·gwo jǐ·tsż.*

Ross: *Shr̀ dzày chyán·'shyàn-ma?*

Chyán: *'Bú·shr̀.*

*'Yěw-yí·tsż wǒ·men gwò Hwáng·'hé.*

*Nǐ bǎ dì·'tú 'ná·chi-lay.*

*Nǐ 'kàn: 'jè shr̀ Hwáng·'hé.*

*'Jè shr̀ Túng·'gwān.*

*Hé-'nán·byan shr̀ Hé·'nán, 'běy·byan shr̀ Shān·'shī.*

*R̀·běn-'bīng dzày hé·de-'běy·àn.*

*Kě·shr dzày 'jè·li 'méy·yew R̀·běn-'bīng.*

*Wǒ·men tsúng 'jè·li gwò-'hé, dàw R̀·běn-bīng·de-'hèw·byan-chywu.*

## Conversation 2

Ross: *'Nà·tsż dǎ-'jàng-le-ma?*

Chyán: *'Dǎ-le.*

*Nà shr̀ dzày 'yè·li.*

*Wǒ·men dzày dà·'lù·de-'lyǎng·byān 'děng·je 'dí·rén.*

*'Děng-le yì·hwěr, yěw 'èr·shr·jǐ·ge-R̀·běn-'bīng 'dzěw·je láy-le.*

*Tā·men 'dày·je hěn-'dwō-dūng·shi.*

*Wǒ·men 'dá·sž-le shŕ·'èr·ge.*

*'Méy-sž-de dēw 'pǎw-le, yīn·wey tā·men bù-jr̄·'dàw wǒ·men yěw 'dwō·shǎw-rén.*

*Rè·shr tā·men 'jr̄·dàw wǒ·men 'jŕ yěw shŕ·'sż·ge-rén, tā·men shr̀ yí·'dìng 'bù-pǎw·de.*

Ross: *Nǐ·men 'dày·hwey-lay·de-'dūng·shi 'dwō-bu·dwō?*

Chyán: *'Hěn dwō.*

*Yīn·wèy dūng·shi 'tày dwō-le, wǒ·men 'dzěw·de hěn 'màn.*

*Wǒ·men shàng-'chwán de·shŕ·hew, 'tyān 'yǐ·jīng yàw 'lyàng-le.*

*Wǒ·men hěn-'kwày·de gwò-le 'hé.*

*Jèng·dzày shyà-'chwán de·shŕ·hew, yěw yí·ge-R̀·běn-fēy·'jī láy 'jà wǒ·men.*

Ross: *Jà·'jáw-le méy·yew?*

Chyán: *'Méy-jà·jáw 'rén.*

*Hé·'àn·shang yěw-'shù.*

*Wǒ·men dzày shù-'dǐ·shya, swó·yi R̀·běn-fēy·'jī méy-'kàn·jyan wǒ·men.*

*Kě·shr 'chwán bèy tā·men jà·'hwày-le.*

*Wǒ-'chwān·je-de-jè·shwāng-pí·'shyé jyèw·shr 'dí·rén·de.*

*Nà·tyān-'yè·li wǒ·men bǎ 'dá·sž-le·de-'dí·rén·de-'shyé dēw gěy 'twō·shya-lay, 'ná·hwey-lay-le.*

## Conversation 3

*'Lwó yèw 'kĕ yèw 'è.*

Chyán: *Nĭ 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'dàw·de 'Jūng·gwo?*

Ross: *Wŏ dàw 'Jūng·gwo láy-le 'sz̀-wŭ·'tsz̀-le.*
*Dì-'yí·tsz̀ shr̀ 'shŕ·jĭ·nyán-'chyán láy·de.*
*Dzày Bĕy·'píng jù-le 'lyăng·nyán.*
*'Yī-'jyĕw-'sān-'chī dàw·gwo Shàng·'hăy.*
*'Chyán·nyan dzày Shyāng·'găng.*
*'Chywù·nyan yèw dàw Chúng·'chìng láy-le.*

Chyán: *Nĭ dzày 'Mĕy·gwo dzwò 'shém·me-shr̀?*

Ross: *'Yĕ·shr dzày shīn·wén·'jyè dzwò-'shr̀.*

Chyán: *Dàw·gwo 'Yīng·gwo-ma?*

Ross: *'Dàw·gwo.*
*'Yĕw-yí·tsz̀ wŏ tsúng 'Mĕy·gwo gwò*
*Dà·shī·'yáng, dàw-le 'Yīng·gwo, 'Fà·gwo,*
*'Dé·gwo,' È·gwo;*
*tsúng 'È·gwo dzwò hwŏ·'chē yì·'jŕ*
*dàw-le Bĕy·'píng.*

Chyán: *'Shr̀-bu·shr̀ gwò Shī·bwó·lì·'yà?*

Ross: *'Dwèy-le.*

Chyán: *Nĭ dàw·gwo R̀·'bĕn-ma?*

Ross: *'Yĕ dàw·gwo.*
*Wŏ dzày R̀·'bĕn jù·gwo 'lyèw·ge-ywè.*

Chyán: *Nĭ hwèy shwō R̀·bĕn-'hwà-ma?*

Ross: *Shwō·de bù-'dwō.*

Chyán: *Nĭ 'nyàn·gwo Jūng·gwo-'shū-ma?*

Ross: *·Nyàn·gwo yì·dyăr.*
*Dzày Bĕy·'píng de·shŕ·hew, wŏ 'rèn·de*
*yì·chyān-'dz̀.*
*Shyàn·dzày 'dēw wàng-le.*

Chyán: *Shyàn·dzày wŏ 'yèw yĕw-yì·dyăr 'è-le.*

Ross: *Wó 'yé yĕw-yi·dyăr 'è.*

Chyán: *Dàw 'nà·byan-chywu 'dzày chr̄-yì·dyăr*
*'dūng·shi-ba.*
*'Gēn-wo láy.*
*Háy yĕw nyéw·rèw·'gār, myàn·'bāw, 'chá-ne.*

Ross: *'Chá 'rè-bu-rè?*

Chyán: *Bù-jr̄·'dàw.*
*Nĭ-'dz̀·jĭ 'kàn·kan, jyèw dzày 'nà·ge-*
*nwán·shwĕy·'hú·li.*
*Wŏ géy-ni ná myàn·'bāw.*

Ross: *'Chá háy 'rè-ne.*
*Myàn·'bāw yé hăw-'chr̄.*
*Jè·ge-nyéw·rèw·'gār shr̀ 'dzĕm·me-dzwò·de?*

Chyán: *Shyān 'jŭ-le, hèw 'kăw·de.*

Ross: *'Jēn hǎw-'chr̄.*
*Gāng·tsáy 'chr̄-le dūng·shi.*
*Shyàn'dzày 'děm·me 'yèw è 'yèw kě-ya?*

Chyán: *'Dzwèy háw 'shǎw chr̄.*
*'Děng yì·hwěr dàw-le Shī·'ān, 'háy chr̄ dzǎw·'fàn-ne.*

Ross: *'Hǎw-ba.*

## Conversation 4

*'Dzày yěw yí·kè-'jūng jyèw 'dàw-le.*

Ross: *'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng shr̀ 'shém·me-dì·fang·de-rén?*

Chyán: *'Shān·dūng-rén.*
*Dì-chī·shr·'chī-'shr̄·de-'gwān, 'bīng, chà·bu·dwō 'dēw shr̀ 'běy·fang-rén.*

Ross: *Nà hǎw 'jí-le.*
*Wǒ-shwō·de-'hwà tā·men yí·'dìng 'dǔng·de.*

Chyán: *'Dǔng·de.*

Ross: *Shyàn·dzày 'yèw gwò-'shān-le.*

Chyán: *Gwò-le 'jè·ge-shān jyèw dàw 'Shī·ān.*

Ross: *Dàw 'Shī·ān?*
*'Bú-dàw Túng·'gwān-ma?*

Chyán: *Shī·'ān yěw fēy·jī·'chǎng.*
*Tsúng 'Shī·ān 'dzày dzwò hwǒ·'chē dàw Túng·'gwān-chywu.*

Ross: *Nà·me 'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng shr̀ dzày 'Shī·ān 'jyē wǒ·men.*

Chyán: *'Dwèy-le.*

*Dzày 'Shī·ān de·shŕ·hew wǒ·men 'tsān·gwān jǐ·ge-'dì·fang.*
*'Yè·li dzwò hwǒ·'chē dàw Túng·'gwān-chywu.*

Ross: *'Shī·ān-jè·ge-chéng 'dà-bu·dà?*

Chyán: *Hěn 'dà.*
*Yéw hěn-'gāw·de-chéng·'chyáng.*
*Jè·ge-dì·fang 'yě jyàw 'Cháng·ān, shyàn·dzày 'yèw jyàw Shī·'jǐng.*
*Kě·shr wǒ·men 'dēw jyàw-ta Shī·'ān.*

Ross: *'Shī·ān shr̀ shěng·'chéng-ma?*

Chyán: *'Shr̀.*
*Yì·'chyān-dwō-'nyán-yǐ·'chyán, jè·ge-dì·fang 'háy shr̀ 'Jūng·gwo·de-'jǐng·chéng-ne.*

Ross: *Tsúng 'Shī·ān dàw Túng·'gwān yěw 'dwō-ywǎn?*

Chyán: *Yěw 'yì·bǎy-'sān·shr-gūng·'lǐ.*

Ross: *Nà shr̀ dwō·shǎw-'Yīng·lǐ?*

Chyán: *Chà·bu·dwō 'bā·shr-'Yīng·lǐ.*
*Dzwò hwǒ·'chē yàw dzěw 'sān·dyǎn-dwō-'jūng.*

Ross: *'Jè·tyáw-tyè·'lù jyàw shém·me-míng·dz?*

Chyán: *Jè shr̀ 'Lúng·háy-Tyě·'lù.*

Ross: *Nǐ 'kàn, wǒ·men 'yǐ·jīng gwò-le 'shān-le.*

Chyán: *'Dzày yěw yí·kè-'jūng jyèw 'dàw-le.*

Ross: *Nà-ywǎn·'ywán·de-'lán·sè·de-dì·fang 'shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'Shī·ān?*

Chyán: *'Bú·shr̀.*

Ross: *'Nà 'bú·shr̀ yěw chéng·'chyáng-ma?*

Chyán: *Nà shr̀ yí·ge-'shyǎw-chéng.*
*'Shī·ān-chéng bǐ 'jè·ge dà·de 'dwō.*
*'Shī·ān·de-chéng·'mén chà·bu·dwō gēn Běy·'píng·de yí·yàng-'dà.*

Ross: *Fēy·jī·'chǎng dzày chéng-'lǐ, dzày chéng-'wày?*

Chyán: *Dzày chéng-'wày.*
*Lí hwǒ·chē·'jàn bù-'ywǎn.*

## FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| *·*ān* | 'safe' (see *Cháng·'ān*, *'píng·ān*, *'Shī·ān*) |
| *àn* N | 'shore, bank' (see *běy·'àn*, *hǎy·'àn*, *hé·'àn*, *nán·'àn*) |
| *ǎy* A | 'short' |
| *Bǎw·'jī* N | city in the southwestern part of *Shǎn·shī* province |
| ·*bày* | 'defeated' (see *dǎ·'bày*) |
| **běy* | 'north' (see *Hé·'běy*) |
| *běy·'àn* N | 'north shore' |
| *bèy* K | 'by, at the hands of' |
| **cháng* A | 'long' |
| *'Cháng·ān* N | 'Long Peace', another name for *'Shī·ān* |
| **chē* N | 'car, cart, wheeled vehicle' (see *hwǒ·'chē*) |
| *chéng* N | 'city (with a wall), city wall, wall' (M *dzwò*) (see *jīng·'chéng*, *shěng·'chéng*) |
| *chéng·'chyáng* N | 'city wall' |
| *chéng-'lǐ* N | 'inside the city (wall); downtown, uptown' |
| *chéng·'mén* N | 'city gate' |
| *chéng-'wày* N | 'outside the city (wall); out of town, in the suburbs, outskirts' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **chr̄* V | 'eat' (see *shyǎw·'chr̄*) |
| **chyáng* N | 'wall' (see *chéng·'chyáng*) |
| **dǎ* V | 'to strike, hit' |
| *dǎ·'bày* V | 'to defeat' |
| *'dá·sž* RC | 'to strike dead, kill' |
| **dà* A | 'big' |
| *'dà·húng* A | 'scarlet' |
| *dà-'lù* N | 'main road, highway' |
| *Dà·shī·'yáng* N | 'Atlantic Ocean' |
| *dī* A | 'low' |
| **dì* N | 'ground, earth, floor' |
| *dì·'tú* N | 'map' |
| **dūng* | 'east' (see *Shān·'dūng*) |
| *dž* A | 'purple' |
| *dž·'sè* N | 'purple color' |
| **dzěw* I | 'walk; leave, depart' |
| *dzěw-'lù* | 'to walk, take a walk' |
| *dzwò* M | for *shān* 'mountain', *chéng* 'walled city' |
| **fěn* N | 'powder' |
| *fěn·'húng* A | 'pink' |
| *fěn·húng·'sè* N | 'pink color' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **fēng* M | for things that come in envelopes (see *shìn·'fēng*) |
| **gān* A | 'dry' (see *nyéw·rèw·'gār*) |
| *'Gān·sù* N | name of a province in the northwestern part of China |
| *gāw* A | 'high, tall' |
| *gāw-'shān* N | 'high mountains' (as contrasted with hills) |
| **gūng* | 'public' |
| *gūng·'lǐ* M | 'kilometer' |
| **gwó* M | 'country' |
| *gwó·'jyè* N | 'national boundary' |
| **gwò* V | 'pass over, through; exceed' |
| *gwò-'hé* | 'cross a river' |
| *gwò-'shān* | 'pass through (*or* over) mountains' |
| *hǎy* N | 'sea' (see *Lúng·háy-Tyě·'lù*, *Shàng·'hǎy*) |
| *hǎy·'àn* N | 'seashore' |
| *hǎy·àn·'shyàn* N | 'coast line' |
| *Hǎy·'jěw* N | city on the coast of China |
| *háy·'kěw* N | 'seaport' |
| *hǎy·'yáng* N | 'the oceans and seas' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *hé N | 'river' (M *tyáw*) (see *gwò-'hé*) |
| hé·'àn N | 'river bank' |
| Hé·'běy N | 'river's north', name of a province just north of the Yellow River |
| Hé·'nán N | 'river's south', name of a province just south of the Yellow River |
| *húng A | 'red' (see *fěn·'húng, dà·húng*) |
| *hwà V | 'paint, draw, depict' |
| hwà-'tú | 'draw a diagram' |
| *hwáng A | 'yellow, brown' |
| hwáng·'sè N | 'yellow color' |
| *hwǒ N | 'fire' |
| *hwǒ·'chē N | 'train' |
| hwǒ·chē·'dàw N | 'railroad, railway' (the route) |
| Jèng·'jēw N | city in central *Hé·'nán* province |
| *·jèng | 'administration' |
| 'jèng·jyè N | 'government workers', considered as a class |
| ·jēw | an old geographical and administrative division more or less equivalent to a county in the United States (see *Hǎy·'jēw, Jèng·'jēw*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·jīng | 'capital' (see *Shī·'jīng*) |
| jīng·'chéng N | 'capital city' (of a country) |
| jǔ V | 'to boil' |
| *jùng A | 'heavy' |
| 'jùng·yàw A | 'important' |
| Jyā·ná·'dà N | 'Canada' |
| *jyàn V | 'meet, recognize, perceive' |
| 'jyàn-yi·jyàn | 'meet and talk to, meet some of (a group of people)' |
| *·jyāw | 'meet, come in contact with' |
| jyāw-'jyè | 'to have a common border, come in contact' |
| *jyàw K | 'at the hands of, by' |
| jyè N | 'border, touching, coming together, limit' (see *gwó·'jyè, jèng·'jyè, jywēn·'jyè, jyāw-'jyè, núng·'jyè, shāng·'jyè, shīn·wén·'jyè, shywé·'jyè*) |
| *jywēn N | 'army' |
| 'jywēn·jyè N | 'army people' (as a class) |
| kǎw V | 'bake' |
| *kěw N | 'mouth' (see *háy·'kěw*) |
| lán A | 'blue' |
| lán·'sè N | 'blue color' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **lĭ* M | 'mile' (Chinese) (see *gūng·'lĭ*) |
| **lĭ* | 'inside' (see *chéng-'lĭ*) |
| **lù* N | 'road, way' (see *dà·'lù, dzĕw-'lù, shyăw·'lù, tyĕ·'lù*) |
| *·lúng* | in written Chinese this refers to the region which includes the two provinces of *Shăn·'shī* and *'Gān·sù* |
| *Lúng·háy-Tyĕ·'lù* N | 'The *Lúng·'hăy* Railroad' |
| **lyăn* N | 'face' |
| *lyăn·'sè* N | 'facial coloring' |
| **mén* N | 'door, gate' (see *chéng·'mén*) |
| **nán* | 'south' (see *Hé·'nán*) |
| *nán·'àn* N | 'south shore, south bank' |
| **·núng* | 'agriculture' |
| *'núng·jyè* N | 'farmers' (as a class) |
| **nyéw* N | 'cow, bull, ox' |
| **nyéw·'rèw* N | 'beef' |
| *nyéw·rèw·'gār* | 'dried beef' |
| **píng* A | 'level, smooth, peaceful' (see *Tày·píng·'yáng*) |
| **'píng·ān* A | 'peaceful, safe' |
| *ràng* K | 'by, permitted by' |
| **rèw N* | 'meat, flesh' (see *nyéw·'rèw*) |
| *·sè* | 'color' (see *dž·'sè, fĕn·húng·'sè, hwáng·'sè, lyăn·'sè, lán·'sè, 'yán·sè*) |
| *shān* N | 'mountain, hill' (see *shàng-'shān, gāw·'shān, shyà-'shān, shyăw·'shān, gwò-'shān*) |
| *Shān·'dūng* N | 'mountain's east', name of a province |
| *Shān·'shī* N | 'mountain's west', name of a province |
| *·Shăn* | name of a plateau |
| *Shăn·'shī* N | 'Shăn plateau's west', name of a province |
| *Shăn·shī-'shĕng* N | 'Shăn·shī province' |
| **·shāng* | 'commerce' |
| *'shāng·jyè* N | 'merchants' (as a class) |
| **shàng* | 'up' |
| *shàng-'shān* | 'climb a mountain' |
| *Shàng·'hăy* N | 'upper sea', the city of Shanghai |
| *shĕng* N (M) | 'province' (state in the U. S.) (see *Shăn·shī-'Shĕng*) |
| *shĕng·'chéng* N | 'capital city of a province' (or, in the U. S., of a state) |

| | |
|---|---|
| **shī* | 'west' (see *Dà·shī·'yáng*, *Shān·'shī*, *Shǎn·'shī*) |
| *Shī·'ān* N | 'west peace', the capital city of *Shǎn·shī* province |
| *Shī·'jīng* N | 'west capital', another name for *Shī·'ān* |
| *Shī·bwó·lì·'yà* N | 'Siberia' |
| **shīn* A | 'new' |
| **shīn·'wén* N | 'news' |
| *shīn·wén·'jyè* N | 'newspaper people' (as a class) |
| **shìn* N | 'letter' |
| *shìn·'fēng* N | 'envelope' (for letters) |
| **shyà* | 'down' |
| *shyà-'shān* | 'climb down a mountain' |
| **shyàn* N | 'thread, wire, line' (see *hǎy·àn·'shyàn*) |
| *Shyāng·'gǎng* N | 'Hongkong' |
| **shyǎw* A | 'small' |
| *shyǎw·'chr̄* N | 'snack, luncheon, bite to eat' |
| *shyǎw-'lù* N | 'side road' |
| *shyǎw-'shān* N | 'hill' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **shywé* V | 'learn, study' |
| *'shywé·jyè* N | 'teachers and educators' (as a class) |
| *sž* I | 'die' (see *dá·'sž*) |
| **tày* H | 'too, too much, very' |
| *Tày·píng·'yáng* N | 'Pacific Ocean' |
| *tú* N | 'chart, diagram' (M *jāng*) (see *dì·'tú*, *hwà-'tú*, *yěw-'tú*) |
| *tyě* N | 'iron' |
| *tyě·'lù* N | 'railroad, railway' (the actual tracks) (see *Lúng·háy-Tyě·'lù*) |
| **wày* | 'outside' (see *chéng-'wày*) |
| **wén* V | 'smell' (sometimes 'hear') (see *shīn·'wén*) |
| *yán* | '(facial) color, expression' |
| *'yán·sè* N | 'color' |
| **yáng* N | 'ocean' (see *Dà·shī·'yáng*, *hǎy·'yáng*, *Tày·píng·'yáng*) |
| **yàw* V | 'need to, want to, be going to' (see *'jùng·yàw*) |
| **yěw* V | 'have' |
| *yěw-'tú* | 'be illustrated' |

# UNIT 17

## AT THE HOTEL

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

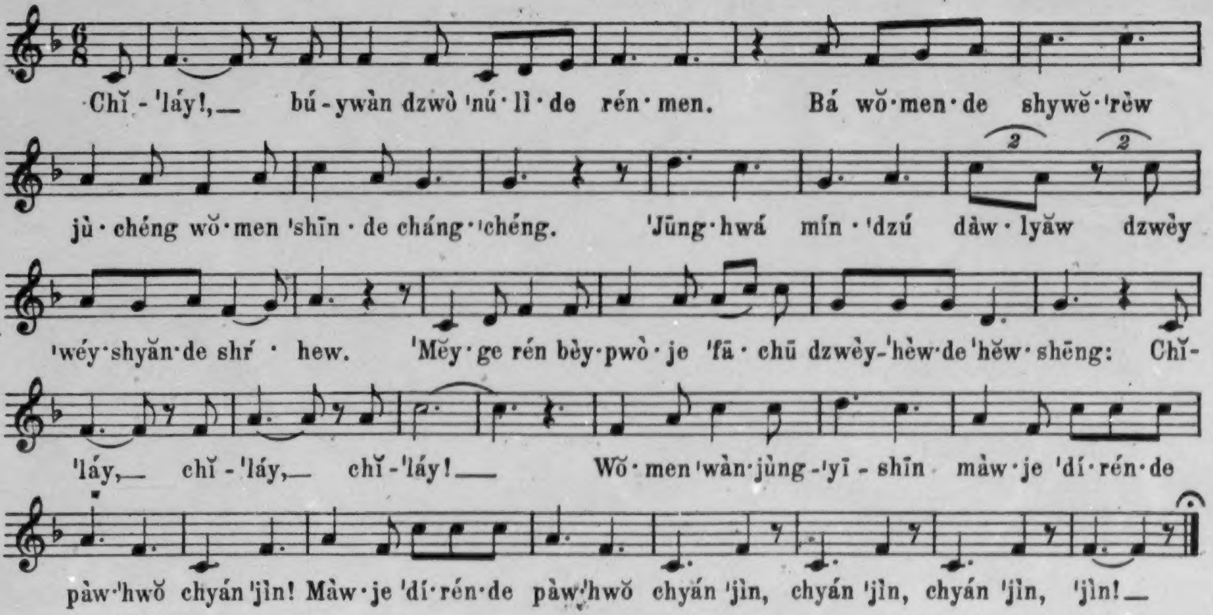
*Chywù chī dzăw·'fàn de·shŕ·hew, 'Lwó gēn-'Chyán tán-'hwà.*

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
|  | *Ross* |
| hotel | *lywú·'gwăn* |
| This is a nice hotel. | *Jè·ge-lywú·'gwăn hén 'hăw.* |
|  | *Chyán* |
| This is the West Capital Reception House. | *Jè shr̀ 'Shī·jĭng-Jāw·dày·'swŏ.* |
| 'West Capital' is a new name for Sian. | *'Shī·'jĭng' shr̀ Shī·'ān·de-'shīn-míng·dz.* |
|  | *Ross* |
| the government | *'jèng·fŭ* |
| to manage | *'bàn* |
| Is this hotel managed by the government? | *Jè·ge-lywú·'gwăn shr̀ 'jèng·fu-'bàn·de-ma?* |
|  | *Chyán* |
| No. | *'Bú·shr̀.* |
| travel service | *lywŭ·shíng·'shè* |
| It's managed by the China Travel Service. | *Shr̀ 'Jūng·gwo-Lywŭ·shíng·'shè-bàn-de.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| bank | *yín·'háng* |
| The China Travel Service is part of the Shanghai Bank. | *'Jūng·gwo-Lywǔ·shìng·'shè shr̀ 'Shàng·hǎy-Yín·'háng·de-yí-'bù·fen.* |
| | ***Ross*** |
| room | *'fáng·jyān* |
| I'm staying in Room 211. | *Wǒ 'jù·dzày dì-'èr·bǎy-yī·shr·'yī-hàw-'fáng·jyān.* |
| What's the number of your room? | *'Nǐ jù dì-'jǐ·hàw?* |
| | ***Chyán*** |
| 203. | *'Èr·bǎy-líng-'sān.* |
| | ***Ross*** |
| Our rooms are very near. | *Wǒ·men·de-'fáng·jyān 'lí·de hěn 'jìn.* |
| How come I didn't see you a while ago? | *'Dzěm·me gāng·tsáy méy-'kàn·jyan nǐ-ne?* |
| | ***Chyán*** |
| I came in a little later than you. | *Wǒ-'láy·de bí 'nǐ·men 'wǎn-yi·dyǎr.* |
| a bath | *dzǎw* |
| to get a haircut | *lǐ-'fǎ* |
| Then I took a bath, had a haircut, and had a shave. | *Wǒ 'yèw chywù shí-'dzǎw, lǐ-'fǎ, gwā-'lyǎn.* |
| | ***Ross*** |
| I took a bath too. | *Wó yě shǐ-le yí·ge-dzǎw.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Chyán* |
| Oh, I forgot to tell you. | *'Èw, wŏ 'wàng-le 'gàw·su ni.* |
| guest | *'kè·rén* |
| Divisional Commander Swēn just said that while you are here you are guests. | *'Swēn-shr̄·jang gāng·tsáy shwō, nĭ·men dzày 'jè·li shr̀ 'kè·rén.* |
| room rent | *'fáng·chyán* |
| payment for meals | *'fàn·chyán* |
| Your room and meals are already paid for. | *'Fáng·chyán,'fàn·chyán, 'dēw 'yĭ·jing 'gĕy-le.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Thanks. | *Dwō-'shyè.* |
| a tip | *shyăw·'fèy* |
| How about tips? | *Shyăw·'fèy-ne?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| waiter | *'chá·fang* |
| You might give several dollars tip to the waiters when you leave the hotel. | *'Dzĕw de·shŕ·hew gĕy 'chá·fang 'jĭ·kwày-chyán·de-shyăw·'fèy 'yé hăw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| OK. | *'Hăw-ba.* |
| Ah! I wanted to ask you. | *'À! Wŏ yàw 'wèn-ni.* |
| to sing a song | *chàng-'gē* |
| At the airport there were some soldiers singing. | *Dzày fēy·jī·'chăng·li yĕw-'bīng chàng-'gē.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| What's the name of that song? | *Nà·ge-'gē jyàw shém·me-'míng·dz?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| That's called 'Chĭ-'láy.' | *Nà shr̀ 'Chĭ-'láy.'* |
| | *Ross* |
| Can you sing it? | *'Nĭ hwèy 'chàng-ma?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| Yes. | *'Hwèy.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Will you teach me to sing it now? | *Nĭ shyàn·dzày 'jyāw-wo 'chàng, 'ké·yi-ma?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| We have to go eat now. | *Shyàn·dzày dĕy chywù chr̄-'fàn-le.* |
| After we eat I'll teach you. | *Chr̄·'wán-le 'fàn 'dzày jyāw-ni-ba.* |
| | *Ross* |
| once | *yí·'byàn* |
| Then sing it just once for me to hear, will you? | *Nà·me chíng-ni géy-wo 'chàng yí·byàn 'tīng, 'hăw-ma?* |
| music | *'yīn·ywè* |
| It doesn't sound like Chinese music. | *Jè bú-'shyàng 'Jūng·gwo-'yīn·ywè.* |
| I can learn it fast. | *Wŏ 'ké·yi 'shywé·de hĕn 'kwày.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| OK. | *'Hăw-ba.* |


Chĭ - ˈláy!, — bú - ywàn dzwò ˈnú · lì · de rén · men. Bá wŏ·men·de shywĕ·ˈrèw
jù · chéng wŏ·men ˈshīn · de cháng·ˈchéng. ˈJūng·hwá mín · ˈdzú dàw · lyăw dzwèy
ˈwéy·shyăn·de shŕ · hew. ˈMĕy · ge rén bèy·pwò · je ˈfā · chū dzwèy-ˈhèw·de ˈhĕw · shēng: Chĭ-
ˈláy, — chĭ - ˈláy, — chĭ - ˈláy! — Wŏ · men ˈwàn·jùng - ˈyī - shīn màw · je ˈdí·rén·de
pàw·ˈhwŏ chyán ˈjìn! Màw · je ˈdí·rén·de pàw·ˈhwŏ chyán ˈjìn, chyán ˈjìn, chyán ˈjìn, ˈjìn! —

*Note:* In *reading* or *speaking* the words of this song, you read it just as written here. In *singing* it, the tones are gone completely and the stresses are not as marked here. In some Chinese songs the tones of the individual syllables are at least partly kept in the melody of the music, but in this relatively recent song, which is influenced a great deal by Western music, the tones are completely left out when singing.

The new words in this song are all in the Finder List of this Unit. You should check them to see what the words mean literally. Here is a translation which can be sung to the original tune:

Arise, all you who refuse to be bond-slaves!
With our own flesh we'll build a new and mighty
Great Wall.
Chinese people reach now most perilous times of all.
Every man must go to battle with this parting roar:
Arise, arise, arise!
Thousands strong with one heart,
Face the enemy's gun fire
March on!
Face the enemy's gun fire
March on, march on, march on, and on!

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. Hotels.** The word *fàn·'dyàn* applies primarily to hotels which operate along Western lines, though tiny broken-down inns in the interior of China sometimes call themselves *fàn·'dyàn* as in America they might choose the name 'Mansion House' or something equally fancy. The native-style hotel is termed *lywú·'gwǎn.* Modern hotels sometimes have *jāw·dày·'swǒ* 'Reception House, Guest House' in their names.

Most *lywú·'gwǎn* have no bathrooms. There are public baths in Chinese towns, however open to hotel guests as to others.

*Shyǎw·'fèy* 'tip' is much the same as in the United States: five or ten percent of the bill is the usual amount.

In a hotel dining room, or in the dining salon of a ship, the waiter is called *'chá·fang;* elsewhere waiters are classed with clerks in other retail establishments as *'hwǒ·ji.*

**Point 2. Banks.** One of the important banks of China is a private concern, the Shanghai Bank, called briefly *'Shàng·hǎy-Yín·'háng.* Many of the others are government-operated, including: *'Jūng·gwo-Yín·'háng* 'The Bank of China,' and *'Jūng·yāng-Yín·'háng* 'The Central Bank of China,' two of the most important.

**Point 3. Chǐ-láy.** In 1934 a man named Nyè Ěr composed a song which he called 'Volunteers' March' in memory of the Chinese volunteers who fought against the Japanese in Manchuria. The song is now usually referred to by its opening words, *Chǐ-'láy* 'Arise'. It has been extremely popular in China and elsewhere, having been recorded several times in the United States. The English version of the words given after the Basic Sentences is not as poetic as some other translations which have been used, but it is closer to the Chinese original.

**Point 4. Large Numbers.** In English large numbers are based on groups of a thousand. We say 'fourteen thousand eight hundred and eighty' and write 14,880; 'thirty-five million one hundred seventy thousand two hundred and seventy three' and write 35,170,273, and so on. When we speak such numbers we use the word 'million' which means a thousand thousand. For numbers above a hundred million British usage and American usage differ: for the British 'one billion' means 1,000,000,000,000, whereas for Americans it means 1,000,000,000. In either case, however, the larger numbers are clearly built up in terms of thousands, thousands of thousands, and so on; the written forms show this by putting commas before each three digits starting with the last three.

The Chinese system for large numbers is different. It might best be brought out by putting the comma in a different place in the form written out with Arabic numerals:

1,0000 *yí·'wàn*
10,0000 *'shŕ·wàn*
100,0000 *yì·'bǎy·wàn*
1000,0000 *yì·'chyān·wàn*
1,0000,0000 *yì·'wàn-wàn*
10,0000,0000 *'shŕ·wàn-wàn*

and so on. That is, the unit, instead of being a collection of a thousand, is a collection of *ten-thousand* individuals. The term for 'ten-thousand' is *wàn*. Any number larger than ten-thousand is given in terms of groups of that size. Here are some more:

110,0000 *yì·bǎy-yì·shr-'wàn*
12,0000 *shŕ·'èr-wàn*
94,3256,4000 *jyěw·shr·sz̀-'wàn, 'sān·chyān-'èr·bǎy-wǔ·shr·'lyèw-wàn 'sz̀·chyān*

The term *wàn* is also used to mean 'a great many'. Thus the Great Wall is called *'Wàn·lǐ-cháng·chéng*, literally 'ten-thousand lǐ wall', although actually it is not nearly that long, simply because it is as relatively long as it is.

## Point 5. Adjectives and Auxiliaries

### A

'Jīn·tyan *hěn* 'rè. 'It's quite hot today.'

Nà *'jēn* hǎw! 'That's really fine!'

'Wū·dz·li *tày* 'rè, wǒ 'bù-néng dzwò-'shr̀. 'The room is too hot, I can't work.'

Wǒ-*dǐng*-'shyǎw·de-háy·dz shr 'nán·de. 'My youngest child is a boy.'

Jè shr̀ 'jè·li-*dzwèy*-'hǎw·de-'pù·dz. 'This is the best store here.'

'Jè·ge-pù·dz-'mày·de-dūng·shi *dwo(·me)*-'gwèy-ya! 'How expensive the things sold in this store are!' 'The prices are so high in this store!'

Wǒ shyǎng *'gèw* 'pyán·yì(·de)-le. 'I think they're reasonable enough.'

Gēn 'byé·de-pù·dz·de *yí·'yàng-'gwèy*. 'Just as expensive (and just as cheap) as in other stores.'

The words italicized in the above sentences are adverbs; they are all adverbs which appear much more often with *adjective* predicates than with verbs like *chr̄* 'eat', *kāy* 'open', and so on. Thus you would never say *hěn kāy-'mén* 'very open the door.'

### B

Ni *děy* 'tì-wo gěy-'chyán. 'You'll have to pay for me.'

Tā bú-'*hwèy* shwō 'Jūng·gwo-hwà. 'He can't speak Chinese.'

Tā bú-'*hwèy* chēw-'yān. 'He doesn't smoke.'

Wǒ *ké·yi* dzày jè·li 'děng-ta-ma? 'May I wait for him here?'

Wǒ bù-*néng* 'chywù. 'I can't go.'

Ní *shyǎng* chr̄-'fàn-ma? 'Are you thinking of eating?'

Tā *yàw* 'dzěw. 'He's going to (has got to) go.'

Tā *ày* chr̄-'fàn. 'He likes to eat.'

Wǒ bú-'*pà* dàw 'nà·li-chywu. 'I'm not afraid to go there.'

Wǒ '*yīng·gāy* shywé 'Fà·gwo-hwà. 'I've got to learn French.'

Ni '*ywàn·yì* láy dzwò-'shr̀-ma? 'Are you willing to come and work?'

The words italicized in the above sentences are all verbs *followed immediately by other verbs*. English verbs like *will, can, might, ought to*, and so on, are also used most frequently followed immediately by another verb: *He will go, You can leave now, He might get angry, You ought to pay him more*. Such verbs are often called *auxiliaries*. We will call a predicate beginning with such a word followed by another verb an *auxiliary predicate*.

Here are the words most often used as auxiliaries in Chinese (examples of all in the sentences above under B):

*děy* 'to have to', 'must' (never used with *bū* 'not' *before* it)
*hwèy* 'to be able to' (because one has learned how to, because one has acquired the habit)
*ké·yi* 'to be permitted to', 'may'
*néng* 'to be (physically) able to', 'can', 'to be apt to'
*shyǎng* 'to think of' (doing so-and-so), 'to plan to', 'to want to'
*yàw* 'to be going to', 'shall', 'will', 'to demand to' (this particularly when stressed)
*ày* 'to like to', 'to be fond of' (doing something)
*pà* 'to be afraid to', 'to fear' (doing so-and-so)
'*yīng·gāy* 'to have to', 'to have got to'
'*ywàn·yì* 'to be willing to', 'to seem to be'

### C

Jè·shyē-'yī·shang *hén déy* 'shǐ-le. 'These clothes very much need to be washed.'

Tā *hěn 'hwèy* dǎ-'dž. 'He sure does know how to type.'

Wǒ·men *hěn 'ké·yi* bú-'chywù. 'We might best not go.'

Tā *hěn 'néng* jyàw-rén 'ày. 'He is very capable of making people like (him).'

Wǒ *hén 'shyǎng* dàw dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn-chywu. 'I'm thinking very much of going to the movies.'

Tā *hěn 'ày* chř-'fàn. 'He is very fond of eating.'

Wó *hěn 'yīng·gay* shywé 'Fà·gwo-hwà. 'I've definitely got to learn French.'

Wó *hěn 'pà* dàw 'nà·li-chywu. 'I'm very much afraid of going there.'

Wó *hěn 'ywàn·yi* láy. 'I'm very willing to come.'

Each of the above sentences contains an auxiliary predicate, and in each case the auxiliary is preceded by *hěn* 'very'. The English has to be changed a little, since we don't say 'very want' or 'very will'.

In general, the adverbs listed in A as going most particularly with adjective predicates and less often with ordinary verb predicates *are* used with auxiliary predicates.

Here are further examples to show what effect such combinations have on the meaning:

Nǐ 'kàn jè·ge-'háy·dz, *'dwō·me déy* yěw-'rén 'gwǎn-na! 'Look at this child; see how much it needs someone to look after it!'

'Jè·yàng·de-'shř *'jēn déy* 'shyǎng-yi-shyǎng 'dzày bàn. 'A matter like this must really be thought out first before action is taken.'

Nǐ jyèw·shr bú-'dàw, yě·shr *yí·'yàng* déy gěy-'chyán-na. 'Even if you don't come you must pay just the same.'

Jè·ge-'háy·dz *tày déy* 'dǎ-le. 'This child needs a beating very badly.'

'*Dzwèy-déy*-'gwǎn·de shř 'jè·ge-háy·dz. 'The one that most of all needs attention is this child.'

Tā *hěn 'ké·yi* chywù jyāw-'shū-wa. 'He might very well go and teach.' (instead of what he is doing now, the idea being that he doesn't do his present work well)

Tā·men *'jēn ké·yi* dzwò fēy·'jī 'dzěw-ma? 'Can they really go by plane?'

Dzày 'jè·li *yí·'yàng ké·yi* shwèy-'jyàw-wa. 'You may sleep here all the same.' (despite objections that have been raised)

Tā *'dǐng shyǎng* bú-dzwò-'shř-le. 'He very much likes not to work.'

Tā *'gèw shyǎng* bú-dzwò-'shř-de-le. 'He (already) likes well enough not working.' (so don't encourage him to loaf)

Tā *'dwō·me shyǎng* 'láy-ya! 'How serious he is in wanting to come!'

Tā 'jēn *shyăng* dàw chyán·'shyàn chywù-ma? 'Is he really thinking of going to the front?'

'Jè·shyē-rén·li 'tā shr̀ *dzwèy-bù-shyăng*-hwéy-'jyā·de. 'Of this group he's the one with the least thought of going back home.'

'Jè·shyē-rén·li 'tā shr̀ '*dǐng-bù-shyăng*-jyē-'hwēn·de. 'Of this group he's the one who has the least thought of marrying.'

Tā 'gēn-nǐ *yí·'yàng bù shyăng* 'hwéy-lay. 'You and he think equally little of returning.'

Tā '*tày shyǎng* yěw-'chyán-le. 'He thinks too much of getting rich.'

Tā '*jēn yàw* 'láy-ma? 'Does he really want to come?'

Tā 'gēn-ni *yí·'yàng yàw* chr̄-'fàn. 'He wants to eat just as you want to.'

Tā '*tày pà* dzěw-'lù-le! 'He hates walking so much!'

Tā '*dwō pà* dzěw-'lù-wa! 'How he hates to walk!'

Nǐ '*dwō yīng·gay* shywé dǎ-'dž-a. 'It certainly is necessary for you to learn typing.'

Nǐ '*tày yīng·gay* shywé dǎ-'dž-le! 'You certainly need to study typing.'

Tā *dǐng bú-'ywàn·yi* dzwò fēy·'jī-le. 'He is most unwilling to go by plane.'

### D

Wó shyăng '*chywù* kàn dyàn·'yǐng. 'I'm thinking of going to the movies.'

'*Gwò-lay* 'tán-yi·tán 'hwà-ba! 'Come on over and talk a while!'

*Chywù* 'go', *láy* 'come', a few compounds ending in these elements, and a few other verbs, are frequently used followed immediately by other verbs. Unlike the auxiliaries discussed in B and C, these verbs are not normally preceded by any of the set of adverbs which are used so frequently with adjective and auxiliary predicates.

Notice also that there is a difference in the general kind of meaning between adjective and auxiliary predicates on the one hand, and predicates containing *láy, chywù,* and so forth, followed by another verb on the other hand. Adjective and auxiliary predicates describe a *state* or a *condition;* predicates with verbs like *láy, chywù,* or *kàn, kāy, chr̄* describe rather an *action.* If you will read again some of the sentences given as examples in A, B, and C you will see that this is true.

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Match up the following English and Chinese sentences:

1. Is this the China Travel Service?

a. '*Yěw·de-lywú·'gwăn 'pyán·yi.*

2. Where's a hotel?
3. There are a lot of hotels here.
4. What kind of hotel do you want?
5. Do you want to stay in a western-style hotel?
6. The expenses in a western-style hotel are high, and you have to pay large tips.
7. A room with private bath costs fifteen dollars a day.
8. But meals are included.
9. Even if you don't eat there you have to pay that much money.
10. Some hotels are cheaper.
11. The rates are from two to five dollars a day for a room.
12. But there's no private bath.
13. To take a bath you have to go to a public bathroom.
14. When someone is in it you have to wait.
15. After they've finished bathing then you can use it.
16. You can eat in the hotel and pay each time.
17. You can also go out to eat in restaurants.

b. *Dzày fàn·'dyàn·li 'fèy·yùng hěn 'dà, shyǎw·fèy 'yě déy gěy·de 'dwō.*
c. *Jyē-'dūng·byan shř lywú·'gwǎn jyē-'shī·byan shř lǐ·fà·'gwǎn.*
d. *Nǐ 'ké·yi dzày lywú·'gwǎn·li chř-'fàn, 'měy-'chř yí·'tsž 'gěy yí·tsž-'chyán.*
e. *Jè shř 'Jūng·gwo-Lywǔ·shíng·'shè-ma?*
f. *Gwā-'lyǎn shř lyǎng·máw-'wǔ.*
g. *Yàw shí-'dzǎw, děy dàw 'gūng·gùng·de-shí·dzǎw·'fáng-chywu.*
h. *Lywú·'gwǎn dzày shém·me-'dì·fang?*
i. *Nà·me, nǐ 'ày chř shém·me jyèw 'chř shém·me.*
j. *Kě·shr 'fàn·chyán dzày 'lǐ·tew.*
k. *Děng tā shǐ·'wán-le nǐ 'tsáy néng 'shǐ.*
l. *Rè·shr ní 'shyǎng dàw dzǎw·'táng·dz-chywu, nà·tyáw-'jyē·shang jyèw 'yěw yí·ge.*
m. *Nǐ yàw 'shém·me-yàng·de-lywú·'gwǎn-ne?*
n. *Dzày 'shyǎw-chéng·li méy·yew jè·me-'dwō·de-lywú·'gwǎn, yě méy·yew jè·me-'gān·jìng·de.*
o. *'Jè·ge-dì·fang lywú·'gwǎn hěn 'dwō.*
p. *Yěw-shí·dzǎw·'fáng·de-'fáng·jyan yàw 'shŕ-wǔ·kwày-chyán yì-'tyān.*
q. *'Fáng·chyán shř 'lyǎng·kwày dàw 'wǔ·kwày yì-'tyān.*

18. Then you can eat whatever you like.
19. The barber shop is opposite the hotel.
20. On the east side of the street is the hotel; on the west side is the barber shop.
21. A haircut is fifty cents.
22. A shave is twenty-five cents.
23. A shampoo is also twenty-five cents.
24. If you want to go to a public bath, there's one on the same street.
25. In small cities there aren't so many hotels, nor such clean ones.

r. *Yěw-'rén dzày 'lǐ·byan de·shŕ·hew, ní déy 'děng·je.*
s. *Lí·fá·'gwǎn dzày lywú·'gwǎn·de-'dwèy·myàn.*
t. *Shǐ-'téw 'yě shr̀ lyǎng·máw-'wǔ.*

u. *Nǐ yàw jù fàn·'dyàn-ma?*
v. *Jyèw·shr 'bú-dzày nà·li chr̄-'fàn, 'yě shr̀ yàw gěy 'nà·me-dwō-de-chyán.*
w. *Kě·shr méy·yew 'dz̆-yùng·de-shí·dzǎw·'fáng.*
x. *'Yě ké·yi chū-chywu dàw fàn·'gwǎn·dz-chywu 'chr̄.*

y. *Lí-'fǎ shr̀ 'wǔ·máw-chyán.*

2. Match up the following sentences in English and Chinese:

1. The hotel is opposite the railroad station.
2. To its left is a bank.
3. That's the Bank of China, not the Central Bank of China.
4. In the bank they use bills, not silver.
5. Further on to the left there's a foreign firm.
6. The foreign establishment sells foreign things.
7. To the right of the hotel is the gate to the Provincial Government (Buildings).
8. In the Provincial Government there are high officials and petty officials.
9. There are also secretaries and clerks.

a. *'Shěng-jèng·fǔ·li yěw 'dà-gwān yé yěw 'shyǎw-gwān.*
b. *Yín·'háng·li yùng 'pyàw·dz, 'bú-yùng 'yín·dz.*
c. *Tā·men 'bàn·lǐ yì-shěng·de-'shr̀, hěn 'máng.*

d. *Jè·ge-'chéng shr̀ yì·'chyān-nyán-yǐ·'chyán dzàw·de.*
e. *Tā·men 'yèw dzày jè-yī-'shěng·li 'kāy·bàn-le hěn-'dwō-shywé·'shyàw.*
f. *Jè·ge-'chéng·li-'jù·de-rén yěw shŕ·'wǔ-lyèw-'wàn.*
g. *Lywú·'gwǎn dzày hwǒ·chē·'jàn·de-'dwèy·myàn.*

h. *'Yì·byān shr̀ gāw-shān, 'yì·byān shr̀ dà-'hé.*

i. *Lí Cháng·'chéng bù-'ywǎn.*

10. They are very busy managing the affairs of the whole province.
11. Yesterday they opened a power plant in the hills.
12. They've also opened many new schools in this province.
13. This city is a long way from the front, but sometimes Jap planes come to bomb.
14. When the enemy planes come it's dangerous to walk on the streets.
15. In this city there are about one hundred and fifty or sixty thousand people (living in it).
16. The whole province has a population of 10,850,000.
17. A division has more than 13,500 men.
18. This city was built a thousand years ago.
19. Later it was rebuilt many times.
20. It's not far from the Great Wall.
21. But it's dangerous to go there.
22. There are many dangerous roads.
23. On one side are high mountains, and on the other a big river.

j. *Yì-'shr̄ yĕw 'yí·wàn-'sān·chyān-'wú·băy-'dwō-'rén.*
k. *Jè·ge-'chéng lí-chyán·'shyàn hén 'ywăn, kĕ·shr 'yĕw·de-shŕ·hew R̀·'bĕn-fēy·'jī láy 'jà.*
l. *Lywú·'gwăn·de-'yèw·byan shr̀ 'shĕng-jèng·fŭ·de-'dà·mén.*
m. *Kĕ·shr dàw 'nà·li-chywu hĕn 'wéy·shyăn.*
n. *'Dzwó·tyan tā·men dzày 'shān·li 'kāy·bàn-le yí·ge-fā·dyàn·'chăng.*
o. *Nà shr̀ Jūng·'gwó-Yín·háng, 'bú·shr Jūng·'yāng-Yín·'háng.*
p. *'Dí·rén·de-fēy·'jī 'láy de·shŕ·hew, dzày 'jyē·shang dzĕw-'lù hĕn 'wéy·shyăn.*
q. *Yéw hĕn-'dwō-shyăn-lù.*
r. *Dzày 'dzwŏ·byan shr̀ yí·ge-yáng·'háng.*
s. *'Hèw·lay 'shyēw·li·le hĕn-'dwō-tsz̀.*
t. *Yé yĕw bàn·shr̀·'ywán, yé yĕw 'shū·jì.*
u. *'Dzwŏ·byan shr̀ yí·ge-yín·'háng.*
v. *Jè-yì·'shĕng yĕw 'yì·chyān-líng-bā·shr·'wŭ-wàn-rén.*
w. *Yáng·'háng·li mày 'wày·gwo-dūng·shi.*

*3.* Match up the following sentences:

1. Russia and the United States both have many different national groups ('races').
2. We like to hear good music.

a. *'È·gwo hé 'Mĕy·gwo 'dēw yéw hĕn-'dwō-bù-'túng·de-mín·'dzú.*
b. *"'Hĕn'-dz̀ shr̀ dì-'sān·shēng.*

3. The Chinese spoken in Peiping has four tones.
4. The first syllable of the word for 'this year' is first-tone.
5. The word for 'year' is second-tone.
6. The word for 'very' is third-tone.
7. The word for 'hot' is fourth-tone.
8. Altogether this means 'this year it's very hot.'
9. Listen!

c. *'Tīng-nga!*
d. *"'Rè'-dz̀ shr̀ dì-'sz̀·shēng.*
e. *Wǒ·men 'ày tīng hǎw-'yīn·ywè.*
f. *"'Jīn'-dz̀ shr̀ dì-'yī·shēng.*
g. *Hé·dzày yí·'kwàr shr̀ "'Jīn·nyan hěn 'rè'.*
h. *"'Nyán'-dz̀ shr̀ dì-'èr·shēng.*
i. *'Běy·píng·de-Jūng·gwo-hwà yěw 'sz̀·shēng.*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN AND CONVERSATION

### Conversation 1

Ross: *'Shī·ān-jè·ge-dì·fang·de-rén·'kěw, yěw 'dwō·shǎw?*

Chyán: *'Wǔ·shŕ·wàn.*

Ross: *'Wǔ·shŕ·wàn shr̀ five hundred thousand.*
*'Nà·me-dwō-ma?*

Chyán: *'Jè·ge-dì·fang 'sān·chyān-nyán-yǐ·'chyán jyèw shr̀ jǐng·'chéng.*
*Jè·ge-'chéng shr̀ 'yì·chyān-'sān·bǎy·nyán-yǐ·'chyán 'jù·de.*
*'Nà·ge-shŕ·hew, jè·ge-chéng·de-'míng·dz shr̀ 'Cháng·ān.*

Ross: *Jè·ge-'chéng yěw dwō-'dà?*

Chyán: *Hěn 'dà.*
*Wǒ bù-'jr̄·dàw yěw dwō·shaw-'lǐ.*

Ross: *Chéng·'chyáng hěn 'gāw.*
*Chéng·'mén·shang·de-'léw yé hǎw-'kàn.*

Chyán: *'Dwèy-le.*
*'Jūng·gwo·de-chéng, jŕ yéw Běy·'píng·de bǐ 'Shī·ān·de hǎw-'kàn.*

Ross: *'Jyē·shang 'rè·nàw-ma?*

Chyán: *Hěn 'rè·nàw.*
*Mày-'shém·me·de 'dēw yěw.*

### Conversation 2

Ross: *'Jīn·tyan 'dēw·shr̀ dzwò 'shém·me?*

Chyán: *'Shyà·wǔ dàw yí·ge-shywé·'shyàw-chywu.*
*Shyàn·dzày méy·yew 'shr̀.*

Ross. *Nà·me, wǒ·men dàw 'jyē·shang-chywu 'kàn-yi·kan, 'hǎw-ma?*

Chyán: *'Hǎw.*
*Kě·shr bù-néng dzěw·de 'ywǎn.*
*Shŕ·'èr·dyǎn-'bàn děy 'hwéy·daw 'jè·li-lay.*

Ross: *Shyàn·dzày shr̀ shŕ·'yī·dyǎn-dwō-jūng.*

Chyán: *Nà·me, ké·yi dàw 'Dūng·'dà·'jyē-chywu 'kàn·kan.*

*(Chū-le-'dà·mén-yǐ·'hèw:)*

Ross: *Jè·shr̀ shyàng 'nǎ·byan dzěw?*

Chyán: *Jè·shr shyàng-'nán dzěw.*
*Bù-'ywǎn jyèw shr̀ 'Dūng·'dà·'jyē.*

Ross: *'Dūng·dà·jyē shr̀ dzwèy-'rè·nàw·de-'dì·fang-ma?*

Chyán: *'Shī·dà·jyē hé 'Běy·dà·jyē 'yé hěn rè·naw.*

Ross: *Nà·ge-'pù·dz 'shr̀·bu·shr̀ jàw·shyàng·'gwǎn?*
*Wó shyáng 'chǐng tā·men géy 'shǐ shyàng·'pyàn.*

Chyán: *'Jè·ge-jàw·shyàng·'gwǎn 'bù-hǎw.*
*'Dūng·dà·jyē yěw yí·ge-'dà·de.*
*'Chyán·byan, nà·ge-yěw-'bīng-jàn·je-de-dì·fang, shr̀ dyàn·bàw·'jywú.*

Ross: *Ké·yi fā wú·shyàn·dyàn·'bàw-ma?*

Chyán: *Wú·shyàn·dyàn·bàw·'jywú lí-'jè·li háy 'ywǎn-na.*

Ross: *Jè·li 'dzěm·me méy·yew fàn·'gwǎn·dz?*

Chyán: *Gāng·tsáy 'gwò-le jǐ·ge-fàn·'gwǎn·dz, nǐ méy-'kàn·jyan-ma?*

Ross: *Méy-'kàn·jyan.*
*Jè·li yěw yí·ge-shū·'pù.*
*Tā·men mày 'wày·gwo-shū-ma?*

Chyán: *'Bú mày wày·gwo-shū, 'jř mày 'Jūng·gwo-shū.*

## Conversation 3

Ross: *Chyán·byan-yéw-hěn-'dwō-'chē·de-dì·fang shr̀ 'Dūng·dà·jyē-ma?*

Chyán: *'Dwèy-le.*
*Jè·tyáw-'jyē hěn 'cháng.*
*'Dūng·dà·jyē hé 'Shī·dà·jyē 'lyán·je.*
*Nà shr̀ 'Jūng·gwo-Yín·'háng.*
*Nà shr̀ Yéw·jèng·'jywú.*
*Nà shr̀ yí·ge-dyàn·yǐng·'ywàn.*

Ross: *'Míng·tyan wó shyǎng dàw yín·'háng-chywu.*

Chyán: *'Míng·tyan wǒ·men dàw Túng·'gwān-chywu.*
*Děng 'hwéy-lay de·shŕ·hew dzày chywù-ba.*

Ross: *'Yé hǎw.*
*Méy·yěw shém·me-'yàw·jǐn·de-shr̀.*

Chyán: *'Chyán·byan-nà·ge-dì·fang bèy R̀·bĕn-fēy·'jī láy 'jà·gwo yị·tsž.*
*Yĭ·'chyán·de-'jyèw-fáng·dz dēw jà·'hwày-le.*
*'Jè dēw shr̀ 'shīn-dzàw·de-fáng·dz.*

Ross: *'Chyán·byan-nà·ge-léw shr̀ shém·me-'dì·fang?*

Chyán: *Nà shr̀ yí·ge-lywú·'gwăn.*

Ross: *Wó shyăng 'tīng-yi·tīng 'Jūng·gwo-'yīn·ywè.*

Chyán: *Dĕng 'hwéy-lay de·shŕ·hew wŏ dày-ni chywù 'tīng.*
*'Chyán·byan shr̀ yí·ge-'dà-jàw·shyàng·'gwăn.*

Ross: *Wŏ yàw 'jìn-chywu 'kàn-yi·kàn.*
*Ní shyăng 'jè·ge-jàw·shyàng·'gwán shr̆-'shyàng shr̆·de 'hăw-ma?*

Chyán: *Wŏ bú-dzày-'háng, bù-néng 'shwō.*
*Wó shyăng, 'dzwèy hăw shr̀ bă jàw·de-'shyàng dày·hwéy Chúng·'chìng-chywu 'shr̆.*

Ross: *Wŏ 'jìn-chywu 'wèn-yi·wèn.*

## Conversation 4

*Dzày jàw·shyàng·'gwăn:*

Ross: *'Nă-yí·wèy shr̀ jīng·'lĭ?*

Hwŏ·ji: *Jīng·'lĭ 'chū-chywù-le.*
*Yĕw shém·me-'shr̀?*

Ross: *Wŏ-'jè·li yĕw 'lyèw·jāng-shyàng·'pyàn yàw-'shr̆·de.*

Hwŏ·ji: *Wŏ·men 'ké·yi géy-'shr̆.*

Ross: *'Jĭ·tyān shí·'hăw-le?*

Hwŏ·ji: *'Wŭ·tyān.*
*Jīn·tyan shr̀ lĭ·bày-'èr.*
*'Shyà-lĭ·bày-'yī láy 'ná-ba.*

Ross: *'Hăw.*

Hwŏ·ji: *'Nín gwèy-'shìng?*

Ross: *Shìng-'Lwó.*

Hwŏ·ji: *Jù·dzay shém·me-'dì·fang?*

Ross: *'Shī·jīng-Jāw·dày·'swŏ.*
*Rè·shr ní shr̆·de 'hăw, yĭ·'hèw 'háy yéw hĕn-'dwō·de-shyàng·'pyàn yàw-ni 'shr̆.*

Hwŏ·ji: *Yí·'dìng shr̆·de 'hăw.*

(*outside*)

Chyán (to Ross): *Tā géy-nĭ shēw·'tyáw-le-ma?*

Ross: *'Gĕy-le.*
*'Jè·ge-pù·dz shr̀ dwō·shăw-'hàw?*

Chyán: *Shēw·'tyáw·shang 'yĕw-méy·yew? Géy-wo 'kàn.*
*'Shr̀, 'Dūng·dà·jyē 'chī·băy-líng-'yī-'hàw.*

Ross: *Shyàn·'dzày shr̀ shŕ·'yì·dyán-'wŭ·shr·fēn.*

Chyán: *Yīng·gāy 'hwéy-chywu chr̄-'fàn-le.*

# FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| *bàn* V | 'manage, administer, execute' (see *kāy·'bàn*) |
| *'bàn·lĭ* V | 'manage, administer, execute' |
| *bàn-'shr̀* | 'take charge of affairs, manage' |
| *bàn·shr̀·'ywán* N | 'secretary' (not a purely clerical worker) |
| **bàw* N | 'report, message; newspaper' (see *dyàn·'bàw*) |
| **bèy* K | 'by, at the hands of' |
| *'bèy·pwò* V | 'be forced to, have to' |
| **bīng* N | 'soldier' (see *fā-'bīng*) |
| *byàn* M | 'time, occasion' (see *yí·'byàn*) |
| **chá* N | 'tea' |
| *'chá·fang* N | 'waiter' in a hotel or on a steamer; literally '(someone from) a tea room' |
| **cháng* A | 'long' (in time or space) |
| *Cháng·'chéng* N | 'the Great Wall' |
| *·chăng* | 'enclosed place' (see *fā·dyàn·'chăng*) |
| *chàng* V | 'to sing' |
| *chàng-'gē* | 'sing a song' (with words) |
| **chéng* N | 'walled city; wall; city' (see *Cháng·'chéng, jù-'chéng, Wàn·lĭ-cháng·'chéng*) |
| *·*chéng* | 'complete' (see *'jù·chéng*) |
| **chū* | 'exit' (see *'fā·chū*) |
| **chyán* N | 'money' (see *'fàn·chyán, 'fáng·chyán, fèy-'chyán*) |
| **dày* V | 'treat' (see *'jāw·dày*) |
| **dì* N | 'ground, dirt, floor' |
| *'*dì·fang* N | 'place' |
| *'dì·fang-jèng·fŭ* N | 'local government' |
| **dyàn* N | 'electricity' (see *fā·dyàn·'chăng*) |
| **dyàn·'bàw* N | 'telegram' (see *fā dyàn·'bàw*) |
| *·*dz̀* | 'self' |
| **dz̀·jĭ* | 'oneself' |
| *'dz̀-yùng·de* | 'for private use' |
| *dzăw* N | 'bath' (see *shí-'dzăw*) |
| *dzăw·'táng·dz* N | 'bath house' |
| *dzàw* V | 'construct, make' (something big) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_dzày_ V | 'be in, at' (see _'hé·dzày_) |
| _dzày-'háng_ | 'be acquainted with a particular business' |
| _·dzú_ | 'race, clan' (see _mín·'dzú_) |
| *_dzwò_ V | 'make, do, serve as' |
| *_dzwò-'gwān_ | 'serve as an official or officer' |
| _dzwò 'nú·lì_ | 'be a slave' |
| _fā_ V | 'send out, issue forth' |
| _fā-'bīng_ | 'send out troops' |
| _fā·chū_ RC | 'issue forth, send forth, send out' |
| _fā dyàn·'bàw_ | 'send out a telegram' |
| _fā dyàn·'chăng_ N | 'power plant' |
| _fā-'shìn_ | 'send out letters' |
| _fă_ N | 'hair' (on the head) (see _lí-'fă_) |
| *_fàn_ N | 'rice; food' |
| _'fàn·chyán_ N | 'board, payment for meals' |
| *_·fāng_ | 'direction, position' (see _'dì·fang_) |
| *_·fáng_ | 'house; room' (see _'chá·fang, shí·dzăw·'fáng_) |
| _'fáng·chyán_ N | 'rent; payment for quarters' |
| _'fáng·jyān_ N | 'room' (in a hotel) |
| _fèy_ V | 'to expend' (see _shyăw·'fèy_) |
| _fèy-'chyán_ | 'be expensive' |
| _'fèy·yùng_ N | 'expenditure' |
| _·fŭ_ | 'department or office in government' (see _'jèng·fŭ_) |
| _gē_ N | 'song' (with words) (see _chàng-'gē_) |
| *_·gwăn_ | '(business) establishment' (see _lí·fá·'gwăn, lywú·'gwăn_) |
| _háng_ N | 'trade, concern, business' (see _dzày-'háng, yáng·'háng, 'yín·háng_) |
| *_hé_ | 'put on' |
| _hé·dzày_ V | |
| _hé·dzay yí·'kwàr_ | 'pool, put together' (capital, resources, etc.) |
| *_'hé·shàng_ RC | 'close,' as the lid of a suit case |
| _·hěw_ | 'roar' |
| _hěw·'shēng_ N | 'roar' |
| *_hwŏ_ N | 'fire' (see _pàw·'hwŏ_) |
| *_·jāw_ | 'summon' |
| _'jāw·dày_ V | 'treat as a guest, receive, be hospitable to' |

| | |
|---|---|
| _jāw·dày·'swǒ_ | 'guest house' (fancy name for a hotel) |
| *_·jèng_ | 'administration' |
| _'jèng·fǔ_ N | 'government' (see _'dì·fang-jèng·fu, 'jūng·yāng-jèng·fu, 'shěng-jèng·fu_) |
| _jù_ V | 'build' |
| _jù-'chéng_ | 'build fortifications' (around a city) |
| _'jù·chéng_ RC | 'to build, complete building' |
| *_·jūng_ | 'middle' |
| _jūng·'yāng_ N | 'center, central' |
| _'jūng·yāng-jèng·fǔ_ N | 'central government' |
| _·jùng_ | 'many' (see _wàn·'jùng_) |
| *_jyān_ M | for _'wū·dz_ 'room' (see _'fáng·jyān_) |
| *_kāy_ V | 'open, turn on, start' |
| _kāy·'bàn_ V | 'start, open' a business, establishment, office |
| *_·kè_ | 'guest' |
| *_'kè·chi_ | 'to have the air of a guest' |
| _'kè·rén_ N | 'guest' |
| *_kěw_ N | 'mouth' (see _rén·'kěw_) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_kwày_ M | 'hunk, piece' (see _hé·dzay yí·'kwàr_) |
| *_lǐ_ V | 'straighten out' (see _'bàn·lǐ_) |
| _lǐ-'fǎ_ | 'get a haircut' |
| _lǐ-'fǎ·de-rén_ N | 'barber; one who has a haircut' |
| _lǐ·fá·'gwǎn_ N | 'barber shop' |
| *_lǐ_ M | 'Chinese mile' (see _Wàn·lǐ-cháng·'chéng_) |
| _·lì_ | 'belong to' (see _'nú·lì_) |
| *_lù_ N | 'road, way' (see _shyǎn·'lù_) |
| _lyǎn_ V | 'connect' |
| _'lyán·je_ | 'be connected' (as two streets that intersect) |
| _·lywǔ_ | 'travel' (usually in a group) |
| _lywú·'gwǎn_ N | 'hotel' (Chinese style) |
| _lywǔ·shíng·'shè_ N | 'travel service, travel bureau' |
| _màw_ V | 'face, dare, brave' (perils, dangers) |
| *_·mín_ | 'people' |
| _mín·'dzú_ N | 'the peoples of a country' |
| _·nú_ | 'slave, enslave' |
| _'nú·lì_ N | 'slave' (see _dzwò 'nú·lì_) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_pàw_ N | 'cannon; firearms of large caliber' |
| _pàw·'hwǒ_ N | 'gunfire' |
| _·pwò_ | 'force' (see _'bèy·pwò_) |
| *_rén_ N | 'person' (see _'kè·rén, lǐ-'fǎ·de-rén_) |
| _rén·'kěw_ N | 'population, number of people' |
| *_rèw_ N | 'meat, flesh' (see _shywě·'rèw_) |
| _·shè_ | 'society, organization' (see _lywǔ·shíng·'shè_) |
| *_shēng_ M | 'tone' (in speaking of the Chinese language) (see _'dà·shēng, hěw·'shēng_) |
| _'shēng·yīn_ N | 'noise, sound' |
| *_shěng_ N, M | 'province, state' |
| _'shěng-jèng·fǔ_ N | 'provincial or state government' |
| *_shǐ_ | 'wash' |
| _shí-'dzǎw_ | 'take a bath' |
| _shí·dzǎw·'fáng_ N | 'bathroom' |
| _shí·dzǎw·'táng·dz_ | 'bath house' |
| _shǐ-'téw_ | 'get a shampoo' |
| _shǐ-'shyàng_ | 'develop films' |
| _shǐ shyàng·'pyàn_ | 'develop films' |

| | |
|---|---|
| _shīn_ N | 'heart, mind, attention, intelligence' (see _'yī-shīn_) |
| _'shīn·li_ | 'in one's heart, sincerely' |
| *_shìn_ N | 'letter' (see _fā-'shìn_) |
| *_shíng_ | 'travel, work, operate' (see _lywǔ·shíng·'shè_) |
| *_shr̀_ N | 'work, affairs, business' (see _bàn-'shr̀_) |
| _shyǎn_ A | 'dangerous' (see _'wéy·'shyǎn_) |
| _shyǎn-'lù_ N | 'dangerous road' |
| *_shyàng_ N | 'image' (see _shǐ-'shyàng_) |
| *_shyàng·'pyàn_ N | 'films, pictures' (see _shǐ shyàng·'pyàn_) |
| *_shyǎw_ A | 'small' |
| _shyǎw·'fèy_ N | 'tip' (for a waiter) |
| _shywě_ N | 'blood' |
| _shywě·'rèw_ N | 'flesh and blood' |
| *_swǒ_ M | for _'fáng·dz_ 'house' (see _jāw·dày·'swǒ_) |
| _·táng_ | 'public place, building' |
| _'táng·dz_ N | 'public place, building' (see _dzǎw·'táng·dz, shí·dzǎw·táng·dz_) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *téw N | 'head, end' (see *shǐ-'téw*) |
| 'téw·fǎ N | 'hair on the head' |
| ·túng | |
| bù-'túng | 'differ, be different' |
| wàn | 'ten thousand; a great many' |
| wàn·'jùng | 'everybody, all' of a very large number |
| Wàn·lǐ-cháng·'chéng N | 'the Great Wall' |
| ·wéy | 'critical' |
| 'wéy·shyǎn A | 'dangerous, critical' |
| ·yāng | 'center' (see *jūng·'yāng*) |
| *·yáng | 'foreign' (from *yáng* 'ocean', since foreign things are from 'beyond the ocean') |
| yáng·'háng N | 'a foreign business in China' |
| *yáng·'hwǒ N | 'matches' |
| *yī | 'one; whole' |
| yí·'byàn | 'once'—as of singing a song one time; *yí·'tsż* means rather once in the sense of a certain moment |
| 'yī-shīn | 'all of one mind, with one will' |
| ·yīn | 'musical sound' (see *'shēng·yīn*) |
| 'yīn·ywè N | 'music' |
| yín N | 'silver' |
| 'yín·dz N | 'silver' |
| yín·'háng N | 'bank' |
| *yùng V | 'use' (see *'dż-yùng·de, 'fèy·yùng*) |
| *·ywán | 'personnel' (see *bàn·shr̀·'yuán*) |
| *·ywàn | 'be willing to' (use alone is poetic) |
| *'ywàn·yì V | 'be willing to' |
| ·ywè | 'music' (see *'yīn·ywè*) |

# UNIT 18

## REVIEW

### SECTION A: SENTENCE-REVIEW

*To the Leader:* Begin this review of the work so far by having a session in which you call out at random English sentences from Parts I and II (the first twelve Units) and ask members of the class to give the Chinese. The members of the class should not prepare in any special way for this. You can take the sentences you ask for from Sections B and C of Units VI and XII, but take them in a random order.

### SECTION B: SENTENCE-REVIEW

§1. **Preparation.** Working alone, go through the following English sentences and figure out how you would say each one in Chinese. They are all based on material of Units XIII–XVII. Practice each one until you can rattle it off the moment you hear the English.

1. Hello! (telephone)
2. Who are you calling?
3. Ask Mrs. Lwó to come to the phone.
4. Where are you calling from?
5. The phone isn't clear.
6. The line is busy; please hang up and wait.
7. His phone number is 3842.
8. Just now there was a phone call for you.
9. Ask Mr. Jāng to forward my mail.
10. Wire me in case of anything urgent.
11. He doesn't know where we're going, but he said the place is very cold.
12. We're going to stay two weeks.
13. You should wear warm clothes.
14. You have to be weighed in.
15. I'm afraid I'm too heavy.
16. You're only allowed fifty pounds of baggage.
17. I can even take these two suitcases along.
18. Please be at the railroad station this afternoon before five.
19. We'll talk more on the train.
20. It's time to board the plane now.
21. Just before we left the railroad station I got a letter.

22. Last month when I left he saw me off; tomorrow perhaps he'll come for me when I arrive at the station.
23. I think we're going somewhere near Chungking.
24. You'll know that when we arrive.
25. Why's the plane flying so low?
26. We've come nearly halfway.
27. The Lúng·hăy railway goes east and west.
28. Is this railroad still running?
29. This road is open to traffic.
30. This side road goes to the main road.
31. Traffic is not permitted on this road.
32. In Chinese, *railroad* is called ----, and is also called ----.
33. A western-style hotel is called a ----.
34. A house has ----(rooms); a hotel has ----(different word for rooms).
35. This hotel is not western-style; it is called the West Capital Reception House.
36. Some hotels in China are managed by the government.
37. Some are managed by the China Travel Service; the China Travel Service is part of the Shanghai Bank.
38. A room with private bath costs ten dollars a day; meals are included.
39. To take a bath you have to go to the public bath house.
40. In small cities there aren't so many hotels, nor such clean ones.
41. A haircut is fifty cents.
42. I must get a haircut, a shampoo, a shave, and take a bath.
43. To rent a room you must pay (give) room-rent; to eat you must pay board; to buy shoes you must pay the price of shoes.
44. While you're here you're guests.
45. We must give the waiter a tip.
46. The front of the building faces east.
47. This is the border between Szechwan and Shensi provinces.
48. East of the mountains is the province of Shantung; west of the mountains is the province of Shansi.
49. How large is Chungking?
50. The city is small, but important.
51. On maps blue often stands for (is) oceans and seas.
52. South of the Yellow River is the province of Honan; north of the Yellow River is the province of Hopei.
53. This city is at the place where three provinces touch.
54. Does Chungking have city walls?

55. In this city there are about 250,000 people.
56. The whole province has a population of 15,000,000.
57. This city was built two thousand years ago.
58. First it was called Long Peace; later West Capital; now it is called West Peace.
59. The Great Wall isn't far from this city.

§2. **Group-Drill.** Working as a group with the Leader in charge, review the above sentences. The Leader will call on different members of the group and give each one an English sentence from the list; the one called on must give the Chinese equivalent as quickly as possible. The Leader will not call on you in any regular order, nor will he take the sentences in order. If you have a Guide and he is present he will correct you whenever necessary; otherwise catch each other up on any mistakes you hear.

## SECTION C: SENTENCE-REVIEW

§1. **Preparation.** Work as in the previous Section.

1. Swell!
2. Bon voyage!
3. Welcome!
4. Please feel at home—Do as you please.
5. You speak excellent Chinese.
6. The weather is extremely bad today.
7. Draw a straight line; draw a horizontal line.
8. A triangle has three sides.
9. In an American name the family name comes last.
10. In a Chinese name the family name comes first.
11. I'll leave the work in the office for you to manage.
12. He's a reporter.
13. He's a foreign correspondent.
14. He's in charge of the military telephones.
15. He's a clerk in the Ministry of Foreign Affairs.
16. He works for the telegraph office.
17. Please wait inside that room.
18. Please sit down in that chair.
19. Whatever you want just speak to him.
20. The others haven't arrived yet.
21. Who all is coming?
22. There are fifty names on this list.
23. I've already asked my brother to entertain you.
24. I'm hungry; I'm thirsty.
25. There's hot coffee in that thermos bottle.
26. It's five to three now.
27. It lacks four minutes of being six thirty.
28. It's still dark. Soon it'll be light.

29. The sun is just coming up.
30. Smoking here is forbidden.
31. Why don't you take a nap?
32. I went to bed quite late yesterday.
33. Wake up!
34. How is he today?
35 About the same as yesterday.
36. He's still sick.
37. Let's go to the other side of the street.
38. How can we cross the river?
39. Perhaps you can talk to them this morning.
40. The Chinese like to wear blue clothes.
41. American soldiers wear brown (yellow) clothing.
42. The water in the Yellow River is yellow.
43. She's wearing a scarlet overcoat.
44. It's harder to go downhill than uphill.
45. Can you sing (songs)?
46. Teach him to sing it.
47. That doesn't sound like Chinese music.
48. We like to hear good music.
49. Tomorrow we're going to open a power plant.
50. We're going to make an inspection.
51. Where's the front?
52. Do you have a pass?
53. Have you a permit?
54. What's his rank?
55. Collar insignia with two horizontal lines and three triangles means a colonel.
56. He's a staff officer with the rank of Lieutenant Colonel.
57. The Japanese front is right on the north bank of the Yellow River.
58. Three Chinese soldiers killed fourteen Japanese soldiers.
59. He's commander of the sixty-fifth division.
60. There was a battle here yesterday.
61. We knew the enemy was coming this way.
62. The divisional commander sent out many troops.
63. In the Provincial Government there are high officials and petty officials, secretaries and clerks.

§2. **Group-Drill.** With the Leader in charge, review the above sentences as you did those of Section B.

## SECTION D: LISTENING REVIEW

*To the Leader:* Be sure the members of the class (including yourself) do not read any of this section beyond this point until after they have done what you are here told to do. Have the Guide read the Story given below to the group, once through. If you have no Guide, pick out an especially good learner and have him practice on it. On the other hand, if your Guide knows no English, you may have to have such a student help the Guide by reading the few sentences of English which occur in the story.

The students should have ready a scrap of paper with the numbers from 1 to 12 written on it. After the story has been read, the Guide will pause a moment and then read through a series of twelve True-False statements, also given below. He will read each one twice (and only twice), and the students will put down T if the statement is true, F if the statement is false. You should call out the numbers each time, so that they will not get lost. The statements are based on the story.

The Story and the true-false statements are given here, instead of just in the Guide's Manual, so that the group can check up easily after taking the test. You should need no help, but if you do, the correct answers are given in the Guide's Manual.

## Story

*Yěw yí·ge-'Měy·gwo-rén shìng-Loomis. Tā gēn tā-'tày·tay dzày 'Jūng·gwo jù-le yì·'nyán-le. Tā·de-'Jūng·gwo-shìng shř-'Lú. 'Jè·wèy-shyān·sheng ày 'wàng. 'Yěw-yì·tyān tā dàw 'jyē·shang-chywu lí-'fǎ. Tā tsúng 'jyā·li 'chū-lay de·shŕ·hew, 'tày·tay gēn-ta shwō, 'Nǐ géy-wo mǎy yì·bǎ-chá·'hú 'dày·hwéy-lay.' Tā shwō "'hǎw.' Tā-'tày·tay shwō, 'Bú·yàw 'wàng-le! Jīn·tyan-'wǎn·shang yěw kè·ren láy. Yí·'dìng déy yěw chá·'hú tsáy 'hǎw.'*

*Tā dàw lí·fá·'gwǎn·li lǐ-le 'fǎ, yèw gēn lí-'fǎ·de-rén 'tán-le yì·hwěr. Tsúng lí·fá·'gwǎn 'chū-lay de·shŕ·hew tā 'shyǎng·chi-lay-le. Tā-'tày·tay yàw tā 'mǎy yí·ge-'dūng·shi. Shř 'shém·me láy·je? Tā 'dzěm·me shyǎng, yé shyǎng-bu·chǐ-lay. Tā-'dż·jǐ gēn dż·jǐ shwō, "'Jè dzěm·me 'bàn-ne?'*

*'Jè·ge-shŕ·hew, yěw yí·ge-'péng·yew láy-le. 'Yě shř 'Měy·gwo-rén, kě·shr bú-'hwèy shwō Jūng·gwo-'hwà. Kàn·jyan 'Lú-shyān·sheng 'jàn·dzay nà·li, jyèw 'wèn-ta shwō*, 'What's cooking, old man?'

*Tā shwō, 'Hāy! Wǒ·de-nà·wèy-'tày·tay jyàw-wo mǎy-'dūng·shi. Wǒ 'wàng-le shř 'shém·me-le. Ní 'shyǎng, wó 'dzěm·me néng 'hwéy-chywu-ne?'*

*Tā·de-'péng·yew shwō*, 'Look here! Are you trying to show off? You know I don't understand a word of what you're saying!'

*Tā shwō*, 'Pardon me! No offense; don't get excited. I was telling you that I'm in a jam. My wife told me to bring her something and I can't for the life of me remember what it was. I can't go back home without it, though—you know my wife.'

*Tā·de-'péng·yew shwō*, 'Yes, I know. Why don't you phone her though?'

*Tā shwō*, 'Oh! Of course! Thanks; I'll phone her right away.'

*Tā jyèw 'pǎw·daw yí·ge-'pù·dz·li chywù-le. Yí·ge-'hwǒ·ji kàn·jyan ta 'pǎw·jìn-lay-le, jyèw 'wèn-ta shwō, 'Nín mǎy 'shém·me?'*

*Tā 'shyǎng-bu·chĭ 'Jūng·gwo-hwà* 'telephone' *dzěm·me 'shwō-le. Tā jyèw shwō 'Wǒ yàw shwō-'hwà.'*

*'Hwǒ·ji 'kàn-le-kàn ta, jyèw shwō, 'Nín 'shwō-ba!'*

*Tā shwō, 'Wǒ yàw shwō 'Jūng·gwo-hwà. 'Bú·shr; wǒ yàw shwō 'wày·gwo-hwà.'*

*Nà·ge-'hwǒ·ji bù-jr̄·daw 'shwō shém·me 'hǎw-le, jyèw chywù bǎ jīng·'lĭ jǎw-lay-le.*

*Jīng·'lĭ shwō, 'Nín yěw shém·me-'shr̆-a?'*

*Tā shwō, 'wǒ yàw shwō-hwà.'*

*Jīng·'lĭ 'shīn·li jyèw 'shyǎng-le, 'Jè·wèy-'wày·gwo-rén yé·shywu yěw-'hwà yàw gēn-wo shwō, kě·shr bú-'ywàn·yi jyàw 'byé-rén 'tīng·jyan.' Tā jyèw bǎ 'Lú-shyān·sheng chĭng dàw 'lĭ·byan·de-yì·jyān-'wū·dz·li, bǎ-'mén 'gwān·shang, shwō, "'Jè·li 'méy·yew byé-rén, 'jŕ yěw 'nín hé-'wǒ. Nín yěw shém·me-'hwà jyèw 'shwō-ba. 'Méy·yew rén tīng-de·'jyàn.'*

*Tā shwō, 'Wǒ 'bú·shr yàw gēn-'nín shwō-'hwà. Wǒ yàw gēn wǒ-'tày·tay shwō-'hwà.'*

*Jīng·'lĭ shwō, 'nín-'tày·tay 'bú-dzày wǒ·men-'jè·li-ya!'*

*Tā shwō, 'wǒ 'jr̄·daw. Tā dzày 'jyā·li-ne.'*

*Jīng·'lĭ 'shyǎng-le yì·'shyǎng, jyèw shwō-le, 'Èw! Nín yàw dǎ dyàn·'hwà-ba!'*

*Tā shwō 'Āy·'yà! 'Dwèy-le! Wǒ shr̆ yàw jyè dyàn·'hwà 'yùng-yi·yùng!'*

*Jīng·'lĭ shwō, 'Dyàn·'nwà dzày 'jè·li!'*

## True-False Statements

1. *'Loomis-shyān·sheng·de-'Jūng·gwo-shìng shr̆-'Lwó.*
2. *Tā háy méy-jyē-'hwēn.*
3. *Tā-'tày·tay-gàw·su-ta-'mǎy·de-dūng·shi shr̆ ge-chá·'hú.*
4. *Tā shàng-'jyē-chywu lí-'fǎ.*
5. *Lí-'fǎ yĭ·'hèw, tā 'shyǎng-bu·chĭ-lay tā-'tày·tay yàw-ta mǎy 'shém·me-dūng·shi-le.*
6. *Tā 'shyǎng-le yì·shyàng, jyèw 'shyǎng·chi-lay-le; shr̆ ge-chá·'wǎn.*
7. *Tā·de-Měy·gwo-'péng·yew bú-'hwèy shwō 'Jūng·gwo-hwà.*
8. *Tā·de-'péng·yew 'gàw·su ta hwéy-'jyā-chywu 'wèn tā-'tày·tay yàw shém·me-'dūng·shi.*
9. *Tā-gēn-'pù·dz·li·de-'hwǒ·ji-shwō·de shr̆ 'Wǒ yàw shwō-'hwà.'*
10. *'Hwǒ·ji jyèw chywù bǎ jīng·'lĭ 'jǎw-láy-le.*
11. *Jīng·'lĭ 'yě tīng-bu·'dǔng tā-shwō·de-'hwà.*
12. *'Lú-shyān·sheng shwō Jūng·gwo-'hwà shwō·de 'jēn hǎw; 'shyǎng shwō shém·me-hwà jyèw 'shwō shém·me-hwà.*

360

## PART FOUR

## UNIT 19

# A SPEECH

## SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

*Back at the hotel, Ross and his companions have lunch with Division-Commander Swēn. Ross and Col. Chyán sit together and continue their talk.*

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| Where did you say we were going this afternoon? | *Gāng·tsáy nǐ 'shwō jǐn·tyan-'shyà·wǔ dàw 'shém·me-dì·fang-chywu?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| branch school | *'fēn·shyàw* |
| We'll inspect the sixth branch of the Central Military Academy. | *Chywù 'tsān·gwān 'Jūng·yāng-'Lù·jywēn-'Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw, dì-'lyèw-'fēn·shyàw.* |
| You may take some pictures. | *Ké·yi 'jàw jǐ·jāng-'shyàng.* |
| | *Ross* |
| I can? | *'Ké·yi-ma?* |
| Then I'll take my camera. | *Nà·me wǒ 'dày·je jàw·shyàng·'jǐ-chywu.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| Who's that American officer? | *Nà·wèy-'Měy·gwo-jywēn·'gwān shr̀-'shwéy?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Don't you know him? | *Nǐ bú-'rèn·shr ta-ma?* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Chyán* |
| He must have arrived recently. | *Tā yí·'dìng shr̀ 'shīn láy·de.* |
| I've never seen him before. | *Wǒ méy-'jyàn·gwo ta.* |
| | *Ross* |
| He's Lt. Col. Wood. | *Tā shr̀ 'Wú-jūng·shyàw.* |
| He used to be in Chungking. | *Tā yǐ·'chyán dzày Chúng·'chìng.* |
| connection | *lyán·'lwò* |
| Perhaps he's liaison officer here now. | *Yé·shywu shyàn·dzày shr̀ jè·li·de-lyán·'lwò-jywēn·'gwān.* |
| He speaks excellent Chinese. | *Tā·de-'Jūng·gwo-hwà shwō·de hǎw 'jí-le.* |
| to be born in | *'shēng·dzày* |
| I think he was born in China. | *Wó shyǎng tā shr̀ 'shēng·dzay Jūng·gwo·de.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| I'd like to meet him. | *Wó shyǎng 'jyàn·jyàn ta.* |
| | *Ross* |
| I'll introduce you today. | *Wǒ 'jīn·tyan jyèw 'géy nǐ·men 'jyè·shaw.* |
| Who's the one sitting opposite him? | *Tā-dwèy·'myàn-dzwò·je·de shr̀-'shwéy?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| battalion | *yíng* |
| That's Battalion-Commander Hú. | *Nà shr̀ 'Hú-yíng·jǎng.* |
| regiment | *twán* |
| The one sitting at his right is Regiment Commander Hé. | *Tā-'yèw·byan·de shr̀ 'Hé-twán·jang.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| Are they all of the 77th Division? | *Dēw shr̀ chī·shr·'chī-'shr̄·de-ma?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| Not all of them. | *Bù-'dēw shr̀.* |
| Battalion-Commander Hú is from the 103rd Division. | *'Hú-yíng·jang shr̀ 'yì·băy-líng-'sān-'shr̄·de.* |
| | *Ross* |
| company | *lyán* |
| Are there any company commanders here? | *Jè·li yěw 'lyán·jăng-ma?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| There are only general officers and field officers here, no company officers. | *Jŕ yěw 'jyàng·gwān, 'shyàw·gwān, méy·yew 'wèy·gwān.* |
| | *Ross* |
| How many men are there in a division? | *Yī-'shr̄ yěw 'dwō·shaw-rén?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| More than ten thousand. | *Yí·'wàn-dwō-rén.* |
| | *Ross* |
| The Divisional Commander has stood up. | *Shr̄·'jăng 'jàn·chi-lay-le.* |
| to give a speech | *yăn·'shwō* |
| He's going to speak. | *Tā yàw yăn·'shwō.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| Lt. Col. Wood is also standing up. | *'Wú-jūng·shyàw 'yě 'jàn·chi-lay-le.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Swēn* |
| gentlemen<br>United Nations | *jū·'wèy*<br>*lyán·hé·'gwó* |
| Gentlemen of the press of the United Nations! | *Jū·'wèy-lyán·hé·'gwó·de-shīn·wén-jì·'jě!* |
| | *Wood* |
| | *Swēn* |
| English language<br>to interpret | *'Yīng·wén*<br>*'fān·yì* |
| I've never studied English, so I ask Lt. Col. Wood to translate for me. | *Wǒ méy-'shywé·gwo 'yīng·wén, swó·yi chǐng 'Wú-jūng·shyàw géy-wo 'fān·yì.* |
| | *Wood* |
| | *Swēn* |
| We've been fighting for six and a half years. | *Wǒ·men dǎ-'jàng, dǎ-le 'lyèw·nyán-'bàn-le.* |
| | *Wood* |
| | *Swēn* |
| existence<br>bitter | *'shēng·hwó*<br>*kǔ* |
| At present our life is very hard. | *Shyàn·dzày wǒ·men·de-'shēng·hwó hén 'kǔ.* |
| | *Wood* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Swēn* |
| | *Jyàw jū·'wèy láy gēn wǒ·men gwò 'jǐ·tyan 'jè·yàng-'kǔ·de-'shēng·hwó, 'hěn 'dwèy-bu·chǐ.* |
| | *Wood* |
| I apologize for making you gentlemen suffer such hardships with us for a few days. | |
| | *Swēn* |
| brave | *yúng·'gǎn* |
| to suffer bitter experiences | *chr̄-'kǔ* |
| to die | *sž* |
| | *Wǒ·men·de-'bìng shr̀ yúng·'gǎn·de; 'bú-pà chr̄-'kǔ, yě bú-pà 'sž.* |
| | *Wood* |
| Our soldiers are brave; they're not afraid of 'eating bitterness', nor afraid to die. | |
| | *Swēn* |
| rifle | *chyāng* |
| | *Rè·shr Lyán·hé·'gwó géy wǒ·men sùng-'chyāng, sùng-'pàw, sùng fēy·'jī-lay,* |
| | *Wood* |
| If the United Nations will send us rifles and guns and planes, | |
| | *Swēn* |
| | *wǒ·men jyèw 'néng bǎ 'dí·rén dǎ·'bày-le.* |
| | *Wood* |
| then we will quickly be able to defeat the enemy. | |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Swēn* |
| arms | *chyāng·'pàw* |
| the more | *ywè* |
| | *Sùng·láy·de-chyāng·'pàw ywè 'dwō ywè 'hǎw.* |
| The more arms sent us, the better. | *Wood* |
| | *Swēn* |
| to obtain | *'dé·dàw* |
| victory | *shèng·'lì* |
| | *Déng wǒ·men 'dé·dàw-le dzwèy-'hèw·de-shèng·'lì,* |
| Wait until we have gained the final victory, | *Wood* |
| | *Swēn* |
| | *Wǒ·men yí·'dìng hǎw·'háw·de 'jāw·dày jū·wèy.* |
| Then we will certainly entertain you well. | *Wood* |
| | *Swēn* |
| | *Jīn·tyan-'shyà·wǔ jū·'wèy dàw 'Jūng·yāng-'Lù·jywēn 'Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw-chywu 'tsān·gwān.* |
| This afternoon you are going to the Central Military Academy to make an inspection. | *Wood* |
| | *Swēn* |
| | *Wó 'chǐng-le 'Wú-jūng·shyàw gēn 'jū·wèy-chywu.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Wood* |
| I've asked Lt. Col. Wood to go with you. | |
| | *Swēn*<br>*Yěw 'shém·me-yàw-'yùng·de-dūng·shi, chǐng gēn 'Chyán-tsān·mew 'yàw.* |
| | *Wood* |
| If there's anything you need, please ask Staff-Officer Chyán. | |
| | *Swēn*<br>*Jīn·tyan-'wǎn·shang 'jyàn.* |
| | *Wood* |
| See you this evening. | |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. Military Organization.** The terms for different military units, from smaller to larger, are:

*bān* 'squad'
*páy* 'section'
*lyán* 'company, battery, troop'
*yíng* 'battalion'
*twán* 'regiment'
*lywǔ* 'brigade'
*shr̄* 'division'
*jywēn* 'army' (two or more divisions)

The *lywǔ* 'brigade' has been abolished in the Chinese Army except in a few artillery units.

All these terms can be used either as nouns or as measures: *'lyǎng·twán-'rén* 'two regiments of men'.

When different units of the same level within a single larger unit are numbered, the form is *dì-'chī-'twán* 'the seventh regiment' and so forth. The *dì* is sometimes dropped.

The addition of *jǎng* to any of these words gives the term for the leader or commanding officer of a group of that size: *bān·'jǎng* 'squad leader', and so forth. All such terms are used as titles also; when so used the second syllable (*jǎng*) is apt to become toneless: '*Swēn-shī·jang* 'Division-Commander Swēn'.

The Central Military Academy was established at Whampoa near Canton in 1924; its full name is '*Jūng·yāng-'Lù·jywēn-'Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw*. The organization was then headed by Chiang Kai-Shek ('*Jyǎng-'Jyè·shŕ*) who is still president. The school was moved to Nanking, and then to Chungking, but it now has branch schools at various other places.

**Point 2. Ywè . . . ywè.** This expression is used like English 'the more . . . the more':

*ywè 'dwō ywè 'hǎw* 'the more the better'

*ywè 'dà ywè méy·yew 'yùng* 'The older (the person), the less able (he is)'; or 'the larger the less useful'

*Tā ywè 'kàn ywè 'ày.* 'The more he looks the more he likes.'

**Point 3. Yīng·wén and Yīng·gwo-'hwà.** The difference between these two expressions is as follows: the latter means definitely the *spoken* English language. The former means English language and literature and literary tradition as a whole, more or less as a school subject. However, *Yīng·'wén* is sometimes used in the sense of *Yīng·gwo-'hwà*.

## Point 4. Goals

### A

*Wǒ 'jyèw hwéy·lay.* 'I'll be right back.'

### B

'*Dzày láy yì·wǎn-'fàn!* 'Another bowl of rice!'

*Tā hěn 'néng chī-'fàn.* 'He certainly can eat!'

'*Ké·yi jàw jǐ·jāng-'shyàng.* 'You may take some pictures.'

*Wǒ méy-'shywé·gwo Yīng·'wén.* 'I've never studied English.'

*Chǐng 'gwān·shang 'mén.* 'Please close the door.'

*Chǐng 'géy-wo chàng yí·ge-'gē.* 'Please sing a song for me.'

### C

*Tā dzày Chúng·'chìng jù-le sān·'nyán-le.* 'He's been living in Chungking for three years.'

All the above sentences have verb predicates except the second and third in B, which have auxiliary predicates. For the present discussion no difference need be indicated between verb predicate and auxiliary predicate.

In A, the verb ('*hwéy·lay* 'come back') is not followed by anything.

In B, the verb is in each case followed by a noun or a noun expression:

*láy . . . 'fàn* 'come . . . food'—'bring food'
*chī-'fàn* 'eat food'

*jàw . . . 'shyàng* 'shine . . . image'—'take a picture'
*shywé . . . Yīng·'wén* 'study . . . English'
*gwān·shang 'mén* 'close door'
*chàng . . . 'gē* 'sing . . . song'

The verbs of the sentences in B refer to some *action*, and the nouns or noun expressions which follow name the object which is acted upon—the *goal*, so to speak, of the action.

In C, also, the verb (*jù* 'live, stay at') is followed by a noun expression (*sān·'nyán* 'three years'); but in this case the noun expression after the verb is not a goal of the action expressed by the verb; rather it is an indication of how long the action lasts.

It will be convenient to call these three types of verb predicates simply:

A. the *action* predicate;
B. the *action-goal* predicate;
C. the *action-duration* predicate.

A point always to remember is this: *when a noun or noun expression is put after a verb in Chinese, it is either a goal or an expression of duration.* This is particularly important because in English we don't do just the same thing—or, rather, we also put other kinds of noun expressions after a verb. Thus in English we sometimes say *Away ran John*, where *John* is not the *goal* of *ran*, but the name of the person who did the running; likewise we say *I was reading yesterday*, where yesterday specifies not *how long* the reading went on, but *when* the reading took place. In Chinese *John* would always be put *before* the verb, while the second sentence, if said in the English order with *yesterday* after the verb, would either make no sense or else would be taken to mean that you had been reading a book named 'Yesterday'.

### D

*Chĭng 'gwān·shang 'mén.* 'Please close the door.'

*Chíng bă-'mén 'gwān·shang.* 'Please close the door.'

*'Nèy·ge-mén nĭ 'gwān·shang-le méy·yew?* 'Did you close that door or not?'

In all three of these sentences the goal, the thing to which the action applies, is *mén* 'door', and in all three the action is given by the verb *'gwān·shang* 'close'. In the first sentence the goal is placed after the verb. In the second it is placed *before* the verb, but is itself preceded by *bă*. In the third sentence the goal, *'nèy·ge-mén* 'that door', comes at the very beginning of the sentence, even before the subject (*nĭ* 'you').

These are the three positions in which the goal may stand in an action-goal sentence. It is easy enough to learn to understand a sentence said any of these three ways; the trick is to know, when speaking yourself, when to put the goal in one of these places and when to put it in another. Here are a few points which will help: the three positions are considered in the reverse order to that given by the three examples above:

### E

*Yīng·'wén wǒ 'jyāw·gwo, dì·'lǐ wǒ 'méy-jyāw·gwo.* 'I've taught English, but never geography.'

*'Jè·běn-shū nǐ 'kàn-le méy·yew?* 'Did you read this book?'

*'Jè·ge-wū·dz (nǐ) 'yàw-bu·yàw 'sǎw?* 'Do you want this room swept (too)?'

*Putting the goal at the beginning of the sentence emphasizes it,* either in contrast to something else also mentioned (as in the first example), or in contrast to things not specifically mentioned but present in the context or situation (as in the second and third sentences). That is, in the second sentence putting the goal first emphasizes the fact that it is *this* book which is being discussed, not any other; similarly the third sentence, where presumably the person asking the question has been told to clean other rooms without specific mention of this one.

### F

*Chǐng bǎ-'shū gē·dzay 'jwō·dz·shang.* 'Please put the book(s) on the table.'

*Bǎ 'jwō·dz, 'yǐ·dz, dēw tsā-'gān·jing-le.* 'Wipe the tables and the chairs clean.'

*Wǒ bǎ 'shíng·li 'bān-lay-le.* 'I've brought (your) baggage.'

*Tā·men 'shyān bǎ-'dì 'sǎw-le.* 'First they sw[illegible] floor.'

*Sǎw·'wán-le 'dì, yùng-'bù bǎ 'jwō·dz tsā-'gān·jing-le.* 'When the floor was swept, they cleaned the tables with a cloth.'

There are four points to be noticed about the use of *bǎ*:

(a) If the verb of the sentence is one like '*ná·dàw* 'take (something) to (a place)', or '*gē·dzay* 'put (something) at (a place)', or '*dì·gěy* 'hand (something) to (a person)', then the goal which follows the verb can *only* be, respectively, the *place* to which the motion moves, or the *person* to whom the thing is handed. In this case the 'something' taken, or put, or handed, is either put at the beginning of the sentence or is put before the verb with *bǎ* before it. If there is no special reason for emphasizing it, then the position with *bǎ* is used. The first sentence above illustrates this.

(b) If the goal is several objects, like 'tables, chairs, desks', or the like, and *dēw* 'all, altogether, all of them' is used directly before the verb, then also the goal is either put at the beginning of the sentence or, if there is no special reason for emphasizing it, is put after *bǎ* before the verb. *Dēw* might be called a *summarizer* or a *collectivizer;* but it can gather together or summarize only things *already mentioned,* never a string of things mentioned later on in the sentence. Hence the necessity of putting the goal or goals before the verb when *dēw* is used. The second sentence illustrates this.

(c) The basic meaning of *bă* is 'grasp'. This means that if *bă* is used in a sentence, the *subject* of the sentence, whether specified or just understood from the situation, is something capable of 'grasping' at least in some remote sense. Thus it is perhaps most usually a person (as in all the sentences above); but the wind, for example, may 'grasp' something, since it does move; even an inanimate object like a table, which does not normally move of its own accord, may 'grasp' the floor and make a hole in it. But a table cannot 'grasp' a typewriter and hold it up—there must be some element of motion involved.

(d) Also stemming from the basic meaning of *bă* is the fact that *the thing grasped*—the goal placed after *bă*, must be something relatively definite. This is illustrated by all of the examples, but not completely. One can grasp an idea or a suggestion or a problem and solve it or handle it; but one cannot grasp ideas in general, or learning, or love, or human nature, or anything else in a general sense.

Points (c) and (d) are not nearly so definite and concrete as points (a) and (b), but if you will observe the sentences in this course in which *bă* is used you will see that they hold true too.

### G

Tā '*chī*-le lyáng·wăn-'tsày. 'He ate two bowls of rice.'

Tā·de-'shēng·hwó hén '*kŭ*. 'His existence is very bitter.'

'Jūng·gwo bīng hĕn 'néng *chī*-'*kŭ*. 'Chinese soldiers are very capable of standing up under bitter experiences.'

The first sentence (plus dozens of others you have had before) show that *chī* is a perfectly ordinary active verb which functions almost exactly like the English word 'eat'. The second sentence shows that *kŭ* is a perfectly ordinary adjective, meaning 'to be bitter'. But in the third sentence we have the expression *chī*-'*kŭ*, which is, so far as the structure of the sentence is concerned, just like *chī*-'*fàn* 'eat food' or *kàn*-'*shū* 'look-at books'—that is, *chī*-'*kŭ* is an *action-goal* construction. Although *kŭ* is ordinarily an adjective, in this particular combination it functions like a noun expression, which we might translate 'bitterness'; the whole action-goal combination means, literally, 'eat bitterness', but is as a whole an expression meaning 'to suffer bitter experiences'.

This is a very good example of something which occurs very often in Chinese: an action-goal construction with a special meaning which does not follow completely from the meanings and other uses of the parts, and which therefore has to be learned as a whole.

You have had many examples of this already:

(a) *dzĕw*-'*lù* 'walk'. *Dzĕw* otherwise does not take any goal; it is used with a subject only. But in this combination *lù* 'road' is used as goal:

Tsúng 'chyán·tyan 'chĭ, wŏ·men '*dzĕw*-le hĕn-dwō·de-'*lù*. 'We've done a lot of walking since the day before yesterday.'

(b) *shēng-'chì* 'get mad'. *Shēng* is mostly used to mean 'give birth to'—*shēng 'háy·dz* 'bear a child'; *chì* is 'air'. But 'to give birth to air' means 'to get mad':

> (Rè·shr) ní 'dǎ-ta, tā hwèy *shēng-'chì*·de. 'If you hit him he's apt to get mad.'
>
> Ní 'dǎ-ta, tā jyèw *shēng-'chì*-le. 'Strike him; he'll get mad.' (No 'condition' given here; you *want* to get him mad.)

(c) *dé-'shèng* 'to become victorious'. *Dé* is not usually used to mean 'attain'; rather one says '*dé·dàw*; *shèng* is not used to mean 'victory' as much as is *shèng·'lì;* but the particular combination *is* used:

> Wǒ·men yí·'dìng *dé-'shèng*. 'We'll certainly win.'

(d) *shwèy-'jyàw* 'to sleep until one wakes'. *Shwèy* is the ordinary word for 'go to sleep'; but *jyàw* is a special word used *only* as goal after *shwèy; jyàw* means 'an awakening', so that the combination means 'to go to sleep and sleep until one wakes', thus 'to sleep a spell':

> Ní děy *shwèy* yì·shyǎw-'*jyàw*. 'You ought to take a nap.'
>
> Tā jè-yí·'*jyàw* '*shwèy*·de hěn 'cháng. 'He slept a long time without waking.'

(e) *Chr̄-'fàn* 'eat (food)'. Even this combination is special, despite the fact that *chr̄* means 'eat' and *fàn* means 'food'. It is special because in most of the cases where in English we would simply say 'eat' without any goal after it, in Chinese they put *fàn* as a colorless goal after the *chr̄*:

> Wǒ·men yàw *chr̄-'fàn*. 'We want to eat.'
>
> *Fàn* '*chr̄*·de hěn 'dwō. 'A lot was eaten.'

(f) *shyà-'ywǔ* 'to rain'. *Shyà* is used as a verb *only* in some special combinations like this one; *ywǔ* is the regular word for 'rain' (noun):

> Jèng·dzày *shyà-'ywǔ*, nǐ 'bú·yàw 'chū-chywù-ba. 'It's raining; don't go out.'
>
> *Ywǔ* '*shyà*·de hěn 'dà. 'It's raining quite heavily.'

There are many more combinations of this kind which you have already learned, but the above will do as examples.

Note in particular:

(1) The verb and the goal may be separated by other words (examples in a, d).

(2) The goal may be placed before the verb in certain cases (examples in d, e, f).

But whichever of these two things happens, the special meaning of the combination is retained.

Notice also the various cases given in which the goal does follow the verb. Notice that in those cases the goal is most indefinite (as in contrast with the emphatic position at the beginning of the sentence of the special position after *bǎ*). In every case in which the goal is put before the verb it is being spoken of more definitely or in a more limited way than when it comes after the verb.

Remember always: *a combination of action and goal may have a special meaning which is not clear from the meanings of the verb and goal taken separately. Look for such special meaning, and if it is there then learn the action-goal combination as a whole, along with its special meaning.*

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1* Match up the following English and Chinese sentences which either answer or comment on the question *Jūng·gwo-lù·'jywēn shyàn·dzày dzěm·me-'yàng?*

1. Very good.
2. They can fight.
3. Their firearms are insufficient.
4. The general officers are good.
5. The field officers are also good.
6. But there are not many good company officers.
7. China has two hundred divisions.
8. Half of these have very good arms.
9. Most of these arms were bought from Germany.
10. Later on Russia sent a good deal of matériel.
11. The arms used by the twenty-five divisions at the Yellow River front are mostly from Russia.
12. Beginning in 1942 the United States has also sent arms to China.

a. *Ywè 'láy ywè 'dwō.*
b. *Hèw·lay 'È·gwo sùng-le hěn-dwō·de-chyāng·'pàw-lay.*
c. *'Jūng·gwo yé yéw 'Měy·gwo-fēy·'jī.*
d. *Kě·shr hǎw·de-'wèy·gwān bù-'dwō.*
e. *R̀·'běn dzáw·'wǎn bèy Lyán·hé·'gwó dǎ·'bày-le.*
f. *Chyāng·'pàw bù-'dwō.*
g. *Hén 'hǎw.*
h. *Yěw yí·'bàn yěw hén-hǎw·de-chyāng·'pàw.*
i. *Ywè 'dwō ywè 'hǎw.*
j. *Yéw 'Měy·gwo-lyán·'lwò-jywēn·'gwān 'jyāw·gey Jūng·gwo-'bīng dzěm·me yùng jè·shyē-'shīn-chyāng·'pàw.*
k. *Néng dǎ-'jàng.*
l. *Dzày-Hwáng·'hé-chyán·'shyàn·shang·de-èr·shr·'wǔ-'shr̄-yùng·de-chyāng·'pàw 'dwō·bàn shr̀ tsúng 'È·gwo láy-de.*

13. As time goes on, there is more and more.
14. The more the better.
15. There are American liaison officers teaching the Chinese troops how to use the new armament.
16. There are also American planes in China.
17. The Chinese troops are brave, and not afraid to die.
18. But how can they fight without planes and guns?
19. The final victory is certainly ours.
20. Sooner or later Japan will be defeated by the United Nations.
21. After we win, there may not be any more fighting for a long time.

m. *'Jyàng·gwān 'hǎw.*
n. *Tsúng 'yī-'jyěw-'sż-'sān-'nyán chǐ, 'Měy·gwo 'yě sùng·gěy Jūng·gwo jywēn·'hwǒ.*
o. *Jūng·gwo-'bīng yúng·'gǎn, bú-pà 'sž.*
p. *Wǒ·men dé-le 'shèng, jyèw ké·yi hén 'jyěw bú-'dzày yéw dǎ-'jàng·de-shr̀-le.*
q. *'Shyàw·gwān yé 'hǎw.*
r. *Kě·shr méy·yew fēy·'jī, dà-'pàw, tā·men 'dzěm·me néng dǎ-'jàng-nga?*
s. *'Jūng·gwo yěw 'èr·bǎy·ge-'shr̄.*
t. *Jè·shyē-chyāng·'pàw 'dwō·bàn shr̀ tsúng 'Dé·gwo 'mǎy-láy·de.*
u. *Dzwèy-'hèw·de-shèng·'lì yí·'dìng shr̀ 'wǒ·men·de.*

*2.* On the left is a column of officers' commands, on the right a column of ranks. Draw light lines showing which command would be most apt to be filled by an officer of each rank. Where there is more than one likely possibility, show both:

| commands | ranks |
|---|---|
| *jywēn·'jǎng* | *jūng·'wèy* |
| *shr̄·'jǎng* | *jūng·'shyàw* |
| *twán·'jǎng* | *jūng·'jyàng* |
| *yíng·'jǎng* | *shàng·'wèy* |
| *lyán·'jǎng* | *shàw·'jyàng* |
| *páy·'jǎng* | *shàw·'shyàw* |
|  | *shàng·'shyàw* |

*3*. The following are true-false statements. Mark each one with a T if it is usually true, or with an F if it is usually false:

a. *'Měy·gwo-'Lù·jywēn-'Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw dzày 'Nyēw·ywē-'shěng.*
b. *'Měy·gwo-'Lù·jywēn-'Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw dzày 'Nyēw·ywē-'chéng.*
c. *'Měy·gwo-'Lù·jywēn-'Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw dzày Nyēw·'ywē·de-shěng·'chéng.*
d. *'Èr·ywè-èr·shr·'èr-hàw shr̀ Hwá·shèng·'dwèn·de-'shēng·r̀.*
e. *'Bīng bù-shēng-'bìng.*
f. *'Shwàng·shēng bù-'dēw shr̀ 'dì·shyung.*
g. *'Nán-rén bù-shēng 'háy·dz.*
h. *Shēw-'shēng·de dēw shr̀ 'nywǔ-rén.*
i. *Shēng·dzay-yěw-'chyán·de-'jyā·li jyèw yī-'shēng yěw-'chyán.*
j. *Ày-shēng-'shr̀·de-rén bù-'yīng·gāy dzwò jywēn·'gwān.*
k. *Bú-'dzày-le jyèw shr̀ 'sž-le.*
l. *'Hwó·je jyèw shr̀ 'gwò-chywù-le.*
m. *'Jūng·gwo-bīng·de-'shēng·hwó bí 'Měy·gwo-bīng·de 'kǔ.*
n. *Hwèy-'shwō-Yīng·gwo-'hwà·de bù-'dēw shr̀ hwèy-'shyě-Yīng·'wén·de.*
o. *'Měy·gwo yěw 'yí·wàn-'sān·chyān-dwō-'wàn-'rén.*
p. *Lyán·hé·'gwó·li méy·yew 'È·gwo.*
q. *Lyán·he·'gwó·li méy·yew Bā·'shī.*
r. *Ly*[illegible]*n·hé·'gwó·li yěw Fēy·lywù·'bīn.*
s. *Rén 'hwó·je jyèw děy chr̄-'fàn.*

*4*. Here is a little story for you to read for your own entertainment. The few words marked with an asterisk are new; you will find them in the Finder List, but need not learn them by heart.

*Yěw yí·ge-gwó·'wáng* shyǎng 'jr̄·daw tā·de-'mín·rén·li* yěw 'dwō·shaw shr̀ pà-'tày·tay·de. 'Yěw-yì·tyān tā 'jǎw-le yì·'chyān-'nán-rén-lay, 'jyàw tā·men 'jàn·dzay tā·de-'dzwǒ·byan. Gwó·'wáng shwō, 'Pà-'tày·tay·de, dàw 'yèw·byan-chywu. 'Bú-pà-tày·tay·de, jàn·je bú·yàw 'dùng.'*

*Tā shwō·'wán·le yī-'kàn*, 'jyěw·bay-'jyěw·shŕ-'jyěw·ge-rén 'dēw pǎw·daw 'yèw·byan-chywu-le. Jŕ yěw 'yí·ge-rén jàn·dzay 'dzwǒ·byan bú-'dùng. Gwó·'wáng jyew bǎ-ta 'jyàw·gwò-lay*, wèn-ta 'shwō, 'Nǐ 'bú-pà 'tày·tay-ma?' Nà·ge-rén shwō, ''Dzěm·me bú-'pà-ya? 'Shwéy 'bú-pà 'tày·tay-ne?'*

*Gwó·'wáng jyèw shēng-'chì-le, shwō, 'Nǐ 'pà tày·tay* *'wèy-shém·me bú-dàw 'yèw·byan-chywu?' Nà·ge-rén màn·'mán·de shwō, 'Jīn·tyan-'dzǎw·chen wǒ tsúng 'jyā·li 'chū-lay de·shŕ·hew, 'tày·tay 'gàw·su wo, “'Rén-'dwō·de-dì·fang rúng·yi dé-'bìng, 'bú·yàw chywù.' 'Nà·byan 'rén tày 'dwō·le; swó·yi wǒ méy-'gǎn chywù.'*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN AND CONVERSATION

### Conversation 1

*Ross, Chyán, and Wood ride in the same car on their way to the Military School. The car is still driving through the streets of the city.*

Ross: *Shyàn·dzày shr̀ shyàng 'nǎ·byan 'dzěw?*

Chyán: *Shyàng-'shī dzěw.*
*Jè jyèw shr̀ wǒ·men-gāng·tsáy-'dzěw·gwo·de-Dūng·dà·'jyē.*

Ross: *'Chyán·byan-nà·ge-'gāw-léw shr̀ shém·me-'dì·fang?*

Chyán: *Nà shr̀ 'Gǔ·léw.*
*Tsúng 'nà·li shyàng-'nán dzěw jyèw chū-'chéng-le.*

Ross: *'Wú-jūng·shyàw dàw·gwo 'Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw-ma?*

Wood: *Dàw·gwo 'yí·tsž.*
*Nà·tsž shr̀ gēn 'Báy-tsān·méw·jǎng chywù·de.*

Ross: *'Báy-tsān·méw·jǎng shr̀-'shwéy?*

Wood: *Tā shr̀ dzày-'Jūng·gwo·de-'Měy·gwo-Lù·'jywēn·de-tsān·méw·'jǎng.*

Ross: *Wǒ 'rèn·shr ta.*

Chyán: *Wǒ·men 'yǐ·jing gwò·le Gǔ·'léw, shyàn·dzày shyàng-'nán dzěw-le.*
*'Chyán·byan jyèw shr̀ chéng·'mén.*
*Chū-le 'chéng shyàng shī·'nán dzěw.*

Ross: *Jè shr̀ 'shém·me-jyē?*

Chyán: *Jè shr̀ Nán·dà·'jyē.*
*'Yé hěn rè·naw.*
*Chì·'chē dzày chéng-'lǐ·tew dzěw·de 'màn.*
*'Chū-le chéng jyèw dzěw·de 'kwày-le.*

Ross: *Nà·ge-chéng·'mén·shang·de-'léw hěn 'dà.*
*Shyàng·shr Běy·'píng·de-chéng·'mén.*

Chyán: *Běy·'píng·de-chéng·'chyáng bǐ 'jè·ge yèw 'gāw yèw 'dà.*

Wood: *Wǒ méy-'dàw·gwo Běy·'píng.*
*Wǒ dàw gwo 'Nán·jīng.*
*Nán·'jīng·de-chéng·'chyáng bǐ 'jè·ge 'ǎy.*

Ross: *'Chē 'wèy-shém·me bù-'dzěw-le?*
*'Hwày-le-ma?*

Chyán: *'Bú·shr̀.*
*Chéng·'mén-jè·li yěw-'bīng.*
*Chì·'chē 'jìn-chéng, 'chū-chéng, 'dēw déy yěw tūng·shíng·'jèng.*
*Kāy-chì·'chē·de bǎ tūng·shíng·'jèng gěy-'bīng 'kàn-le, 'tsáy néng chū-'chéng-ne.*

Ross: *'Jywēn-yùng-chì·'chē 'yě yàw tūng·shíng·'jèng-ma?*

Chyán: *'Yě yàw.*

## Conversation 2

Wood: *Wǒ 'tīng·shwō 'Jūng·gwo shyàn·dzày 'shém·me-dūng·shi 'dēw hěn 'gwèy.*
*'Wèy-shém·me 'jyē·shang·de-rén-chwān·de-'yī·shang 'dēw hén hǎw, hěn 'gān·jing-nga?*

Ross: *Shém·me dēw 'gwèy-le, 'núng·ren-hé-'shāng·ren-'dé·de-'chyán yě 'dwō-le.*
*'Shēng·hwó 'dzwèy-kǔ·de shr̀ jyàw·'ywán hé 'jèng·fǔ-dzwò-'shr̀·de-rén.*

Chyán: *'Dwèy-le.*
*Jywēn·'dwèy·li 'yě hén kǔ.*
*Kě·shr 'fàn gèw 'chr̄·de.*

Wood: *Wǒ jr̄·daw Jūng·gwo-'bīng néng chr̄-'kǔ.*
*Kě·shr chr̄-'fàn chr̄·de bú-'gèw, 'bù-néng chywù dǎ-'jàng.*

Chyán: *'Dwèy-le.*

Ross: *Shyàn·dzày yīn·wèy jyāw·'tūng bù-'fāng·byan, swó·yi 'wày·gwo-dūng·shi gwèy·de 'hěn.*
*'Jūng·gwo-rén 'bú·shr̀ yí·'dìng yàw yùng 'wày·gwo-dūng·shi 'tsáy néng 'hwó·je.*

Chyán: *Nǐ-'shwō·de hěn 'dwèy.*
*Kě·shr chyāng·'pàw, fēy·'jī, bù-'dēw shr̀ 'wày·gwo-dūng·shi-ma?*
*Dǎ-'jàng de·shŕ·hew 'dzěm·me néng bú-'yùng-nga?*

Ross: *Wǒ-'shwō·de 'bú·shr 'jywēn-yùng·de-dūng·shi, shr̀ 'měy·tyān-'chr̄·de, 'chwān·de.*

Chyán: *'Nà hěn 'dwèy.*
*Nǐ 'kàn wǒ-'chwān·de-jè·tàw-jywēn·'yī, shr̀ yùng-Jūng·gwo-'bù-dzwò·de.*
*'Bù-hǎw kàn.*
*Kě·shr shyàn·dzày jywēn·'gwān 'dēw chwān 'jè·ge.*

### Conversation 3

Chyán: *'Wú-jūng·shyàw, dzày 'Jūng·gwo yěw*
*'dwō·shaw-nyán-le?*

Wood: *Wó yǐ·'chyán dàw 'Jūng·gwo láy·gwo.*
*Nà shř 'yī-'jyěw-'sān-'sān-'nyán.*
*'Jè-yí·tsž shř 'yī-'jyěw-'sž-'yī-'nyán láy·de.*
*'Nà·ge-shŕ·hew, Ř·'běn hé 'Měy·gwo háy méy*
*dǎ-'jàng-ne.*

Chyán: *Dzày 'shém·me-dì·fang shywé·de*
*Jūng·gwo-'hwà?*

Wood: *Dzày 'Měy·gwo shywé·gwo rèn-'dž.*
*Dzày 'Jūng·gwo 'yèw shywé-le jǐ·nyán.*
*Wǒ dzày Chúng·'chìng jù·dzay yí·ge-'Jūng·*
*gwo-rén-'jyā·lǐ.*
*'Jè·ge-rén yǐ·'chyán dzày 'Měy·gwo gēn-wo*
*dzày 'yí·ge-shywé·'shyàw·li nyàn-'shū.*
*Tā yéw 'lyǎng·ge-'háy·dz.*
*'Měy·tyān-'wǎn·shang wǒ 'hé tā·men tán-'hwà.*
*Wǒ 'jyāw tā·men shwō 'wày·gwo-hwà.*
*Tā·men 'jyāw-wo shwō 'Jūng·gwo-hwà.*

Chyán: *'Nǐ gēn 'Lwó-shyān·sheng shwō·de Jūng·gwo-*
*'hwà 'dēw shwō·de 'hén hǎw.*
*Fā·'yīn gēn 'Jūng·gwo-rén yí·'yàng.*

Ross: *Wó bǐ-bu·'shàng 'Wú-jūng·shyàw,*
*Tā 'rèn·shr hěn-'dwō-Jūng·gwo-'dž.*
*'Wǒ bú-'rèn·de.*

Chyán: *Nǐ ày 'tīng Jūng·gwo-'yīn·ywè-ma?*

Ross: *Wǒ 'ày tīng.*

Chyán (to Wood):
*Tā 'jīn·tyan gēn-wo shywé-le yí·ge-Jūng·gwo-*
*'gē.*

Wood: *'Shř-ma?*
*'Chàng géy-wo 'tīng, 'hǎw-ma?*

Ross: *Wǒ 'háy méy-shywé·'hwèy-ne.*

Chyán: *Bú-'yàw·jǐn. 'Chàng-ba.*

Ross: *Wǒ-'chàng·de bú-'dwèy de·shŕ·hew, chíng-ni*
*'gàw·su wo.*

Chyán: *'Hǎw-ba.*

*'Lwó chàng 'Chǐ-'láy'; chàng yí·byàn yǐ·'hèw, 'sān·ge-rén yí·'kwàr yèw chàng yí·byàn.*

## FINDER LIST

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Bā·'shī* | N | 'Brazil' |
| *bān* | N, M | 'squad' |
| *bān·'jǎng* | N | 'squad leader' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *bǐ K, V | ‘as compared with; to compare’ |
| 'bǐ·shàng RC | ‘to be compared with’ |
| *bìng A | ‘sick, ill’ (see *shēng-'bìng*) |
| *·byàn | ‘convenience’ (see *'fāng·byàn*) |
| *chì N | ‘air’ (see *shēng-'chì*) |
| *chr̄ V | ‘eat’ |
| chr̄-'kǔ | ‘to eat bitterness, suffer bitter experiences, have a bitter life’ |
| chyāng N | ‘rifle, small arms’ |
| chyāng·'pàw N | ‘weapons’ |
| *dàw K, V | ‘to; to arrive’ (see *'dé·dàw*) |
| dé V | ‘attain, reach’ |
| 'dé·dàw RC | ‘attain, reach, achieve’ |
| dé-'shèng | ‘attain victory, become victorious’ |
| *dzày K | ‘in, at’ (see *'shēng·dzày*) |
| *fā V | ‘send out, give forth’ |
| fā·'yīn N | ‘pronunciation’ |
| 'fān·yì V, N | ‘to interpret, translate; interpreter, translator’ |
| *·fāng | ‘direction, position’ |
| 'fāng·byan A | ‘be convenient’ |
| *fēn V | ‘to divide’ |
| fēn·'shyàw N | ‘branch school’ |
| Fēy·lywù·'bīn N | ‘the Philippines’ |
| gǎn V | ‘to dare to’ (see *yúng·'gǎn*) |
| *gěy V, K, H | ‘give,’ ‘for the sake of,’ ‘for someone’s sake’ (see *'jyāw·gěy, 'sùng·gěy*) |
| gǔ N | ‘drum’ |
| Gǔ·'léw N | ‘Drum Tower’ (name of a building) |
| *gwó M | ‘country’ (see *lyán·hé·'gwó*) |
| gwó·'wáng N | ‘king’ |
| *gwò V | ‘over, pass’ (see *'jyàw·gwò*) |
| *·háy | ‘child’ |
| *'háy·dz N | ‘child’ (see *shēng 'háy·dz*) |
| *hé K | ‘with, and’ (see *lyán·hé·'gwó*) |
| Hwá·shèng·'dwèn N | ‘Washington’ (city, state, or man) |
| *hwèy V | ‘know how to’ (see *'shywé·hwèy*) |
| hwó A | ‘be alive’ (see *'shēng·hwó*) |
| *·jǎng | ‘person in charge of’ (see *bān·'jǎng, lyán·'jǎng, lywú·'jǎng, twán·'jǎng, yíng·'jǎng*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *jū* | 'all' |
| *'jū·wèy* | 'gentlemen!', 'friends!' (formal form of address when speaking to a group) |
| **jyāw* V | 'teach' |
| *'jyaw·gěy* V | 'teach' (someone for his sake) |
| **jyāw* | 'meet, come in contact with' |
| *jyāw·'tūng* N | 'communication' (in the general sense) |
| **jyàw* V | 'tell, let' |
| *'jyàw·gwò(·láy)* RC | 'order someone over' |
| **kàn* V | 'look at' (see *yī-'kàn*) |
| *kǔ* A | 'be bitter, unpleasant' (see *chr̄-'kǔ*) |
| **léw* N | 'building' (see *Gǔ·'léw*) |
| *·lì* | 'profit, advantage' (see *shèng·'lì*) |
| *·lwò* | 'connection, continuous' (see *lyán·'lwò*) |
| **lyán* V | 'join' |
| *lyán·hé·'gwó* N | 'United Nations' |
| *lyán·'lwò* N | 'liaison, connection' |
| *lyán* N, M | 'company, battery, troop' |
| *lyán·'jǎng* N | 'company commander' |
| *lywǔ* N, M | 'brigade' |
| *lywú·'jǎng* N | 'brigade commander' |
| *·*mín* | 'people' |
| *'mín·rén* N | 'subjects' (of a king) |
| **pàw* N | 'gun of large caliber' (see *chyāng·'pàw*) |
| *páy* N, M | 'platoon' |
| *páy·'jǎng* N | 'platoon leader' |
| *·*r̀* | 'sun, day' (see *'shēng·r̀*) |
| **rén* N | 'person, people' (see *'mín·rén*) |
| **shàng* | 'up' (see *'bǐ·shàng*) |
| *shēng* V | 'get born; give birth to' (see *shēw-'shēng·de, 'shwàng·sheng, yì-'shēng*) |
| *shēng·'bìng* | 'get sick' |
| *shēng-'chì* | 'get mad' |
| *'shēng·dzày* V | 'be born at' (a certain place) |
| *shēng 'háy·dz* | 'bear children' |
| *'shēng·hwó* N | 'life, existence' |
| *'shēng·r̀* N | 'birthday' |
| *shēng-'shr̀* | 'make trouble' |
| *shèng* N | 'victory' (see *dé-'shèng*) |
| *shèng·'lì* N | 'victory' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *shēw V | 'receive' (what is due) |
| shēw-'shēng·de N | 'midwife' |
| *shr̀ N | 'affairs, matters' (see *shēng-'shr̀*) |
| ·shwàng | (same meaning as *shwāng* M 'pair of') |
| 'shwàng·sheng N | 'twins' |
| *shwō V | 'speak, say' [illegible] *yǎn·'shwō*) |
| *·shyàw | 'school' (see *fēn·'shyàw*) |
| *shywé V | 'learn' |
| 'shywé·hwèy RC | 'learn how to' |
| *sùng V | 'send' |
| 'sùng·gěy V | 'send to' (a person) |
| *tūng V | 'pass through, let pass through' (see *jyāw·'tūng*) |
| twán N, M | 'regiment' |
| twán·'jǎng N | 'regimental commander' |
| ·wáng | 'king' (see *gwó·'wáng*) |
| ·wén | 'word, literature' (see *Yīng·'wén*) |
| *wèy M | used with words for people when being specially polite. (see *'jū·wèy*) |
| yǎn V | 'perform' |
| yǎn·'shwō | 'give a speech' |
| *yī | 'one, whole' |
| yī-'kàn H | 'at one look, immediately' |
| yī-'shēng | 'all one's life' |
| *·yīn | 'musical sound' (see *fā·'yīn*) |
| *·Yīng | 'England, English' |
| Yīng·'wén N | 'English language and literature' |
| yíng N, M | 'battalion' |
| yíng·'jǎng N | 'battalion commander' |
| ·yǔng | 'brave' |
| yúng·'gǎn A | 'brave' |
| ywè . . . ywè . . . | 'the more . . . the more . . .' |

# UNIT 20

## AT THE MILITARY ACADEMY

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

*At the Military Academy, Ross interviews a cadet named Jyǎng.*

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| How long have you studied here? | *Nǐ dzày 'jè·li 'nyàn-le 'jǐ·nyán-le?* |
| | *Jyǎng* |
| More than a year. | *Yì·'nyán-dwō-le.* |
| | *Ross* |
| to graduate | *bì-'yè* |
| When will you graduate? | *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew bì-'yè?* |
| | *Jyǎng* |
| In July of next year. | *'Míng·nyan-'chī·ywè.* |
| Now in war time it takes two years to graduate. | *Shyàn·dzày dǎ-'jàng de·shŕ·hew 'lyǎng·nyán bì-'yè.* |
| Formerly it took four years. | *Yǐ·'chyán 'sż·nyán bì-'yè.* |
| | *Ross* |
| What rank will you receive when you graduate? | *Bì-le 'yè dé·daw 'shém·me-'jyē·ji?* |
| | *Jyǎng* |
| Second lieutenant. | *Shàw·'wèy.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| the army (in the field) | *jywēn·'dwèy* |
| to get practical experience | *shŕ·'shí* |
| When will you be sent to the army (in the field) for practical experience? | *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'sùng·daw jywēn·'dwèy·li-chyu shŕ·'shí?* |
| | *Jyăng* |
| We've already had practical experience. | *'Yĭ·jĭng shŕ·'shí·gwo-le.* |
| to assign to different branches (of service, of study). | *fēn-'kē* |
| After three months of practical experience we returned to be assigned to different branches. | *Shŕ·'shí 'sān·ge-ywè 'hwéy-lay fēn-'kē.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Which branch are you in? | *Nĭ shr̀ 'nă-yì·kē·de?* |
| | *Jyăng* |
| Artillery. | *'Pàw·kē.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Which branches have the most cadets? | *'Ná-jĭ·kē·de-řén 'dzwèy dwō?* |
| | *Jyăng* |
| Infantry and artillery. | *'Bù·kē hé 'pàw·kē.* |
| | *Ross* |
| What other branches are there? | *'Háy yěw 'shém·me-kē?* |
| | *Jyăng* |
| There are also cavalry, engineers, and transportation—three branches. | *Háy yěw-'chí, 'gūng, jyāw·'tūng, 'sān·kē.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| Are there any other branches in this academy? | *'Jè·ge-shywé·'shyàw·li háy yěw 'byé·de-kē-ma?* |
| | *Jyăng* |
| No, no others. | *'Méy·yew byé·de-kē.* |
| quartermaster | *jywēn·'shywū* |
| Army medicine | *jywēn·'yī* |
| ordnance | *bīng·'gūng* |
| Elsewhere there are also Quartermaster schools, Army Medical schools, Ordnance schools. | *'Byé·de-dì·fang háy yěw 'jywēn·shywū-shywé·'shyàw, 'jywēn·yī-shywé·'shyàw, 'bīng·gūng-shywé·'shyàw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| What is taught at the Ordnance school? | *'Bīng·gūng-shywé·'shyàw jyāw 'shém·me?* |
| | *Jyăng* |
| ammunition | *dàn·'yàw* |
| They teach how to make arms and ammunition. | *Jyāw dzěm·me dzàw chyāng·'pàw hé dàn·'yàw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| aviation | *háng·'kūng* |
| Is there an aviation school? | *Yěw 'háng·kūng-shywé·'shyàw-ma?* |
| | *Jyăng* |
| to concern, be the affair of | *'shŭ·ywú* |
| commission | *wěy·ywán·'hwèy* |
| That's under the control of the Aviation Commission. | *'Nà shr̀ shŭ·ywú-'Háng·kūng-Wěy·ywán·'hwèy·de.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| Kwangtung | *Gwǎng·'dūng* |
| Are you Cantonese? | *Nǐ shr̀ 'Gwǎng·dūng-rén-ma?* |
| | *Jyǎng* |
| How did you know? | *Nǐ 'dzěm·me 'jr̄·dàw-wa!?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Your gwó·'ywǔ is excellent. | *Nǐ·de-gwó·'ywǔ shwō·de hén 'hǎw.* |
| accent, manner of speech | *kěw·'yīn* |
| But you still have some Cantonese manners of speech. | *Kě·shr 'háy yéw 'Gwǎng·dūng-kěw·'yīn.* |
| Are there many southerners in this academy? | *Shywé·'shyàw·li 'nán·byān-rén 'dwō-ma?* |
| | *Jyǎng* |
| Quite a few. | *Bù-'shǎw.* |
| one fourth | *'sz̀·fēn·jr̄-'yī* |
| About one fourth are southerners. | *'Chà·bu·dwō-'sz̀·fēn·jr̄-'yī shr̀ 'nán·byān-rén.* |
| There are some cadets from every province. | *'Shywé·sheng·li 'měy-yì·shěng·de-rén dēw 'yěw.* |
| officers who teach at a military academy | *jyàw·'gwān* |
| one third | *'sān·fēn·jr̄-'yī* |
| Hunan | *Hú·'nán* |
| Among the instructors, one third are from Hunan. | *Jyàw·'gwān·li 'sān·fēn·jr̄-'yī shr̀ 'Hú·nán-rén.* |
| | *Ross* |
| natives | *·běn·dì-rén* |
| Are there many from right around here? | *'Běn·dì-rén 'dwō-ma?* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Jyǎng* |
| Yes, quite a few of them among the students too. | *'Shywé·sheng·li 'běn·dì-rén yě bù-'shǎw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| to serve as, be, become | *dāng* |
| Can soldiers (that is, enlisted men) also come to study? | *Dāng-'bīng·de 'yě néng láy nyàn-'shū-ma?* |
| | *Jyǎng* |
| Oh yes. | *'Néng.* |
| fellow cadets | *túng·'shywé* |
| non-commissioned officers | *jywēn·'shr̀* |
| Among my fellow cadets there are a number of non-coms who have taken part in many battles. | *Túng·'shywé·li yěw shyē·ge-dǎ·gwo-hěn-'dwō-tsz̀-'jàng·de-jywēn·'shr̀.* |
| | *Ross* |
| to drill | *yǎn·'shí* |
| Do you drill every day? | *Nǐ·men 'měy·tyān yǎn·'shí-ma?* |
| | *Jyǎng* |
| Every afternoon from two to four thirty. | *'Měy·tyān-'shyà·wǔ 'lyáng·dyǎn dàw 'sz̀·dyǎn-'bàn yǎn·'shí.* |
| | *Ross* |
| to fire a gun | *fàng-'pàw* |
| Do you practice firing every day? | *'Měy·tyān shywé fàng-'pàw-ma?* |
| | *Jyǎng* |
| Not every day. | *'Bù-měy·tyān shywé.* |
| Twice a week. | *Yí·ge-shīng·'chī 'lyǎng·tsz̀.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. Places.** There is a large lake in central China south of the Yangtze River, and two provinces get their names from it: *Hú·'nán* and *Hú·'běy*. Both are east of *Sž·'chwān*. Southeast of *Hú·'nán*, on the coast, is the province of *Gwǎng·'dūng*, the capital city of which is Canton. The province name you will find written 'Kwangtung' on most maps. The Chinese of this province, *'Gwǎng·dūng-rén*, are in English called 'Cantonese'.

Most of the Chinese in the United States, except for exchange students in the colleges and a few others, are Cantonese. In fact, most of the Chinese outside of China—in India, South Africa, the South Pacific, Europe, and Latin America—are Cantonese: when the European nations first started trading with China their ships came to this part of the coast, and the Cantonese have been the great commercial people and the most frequent emigrants from China.

The speech of the Cantonese is Chinese, of course, but it is as different from *Gwó·'ywǔ* (taught in this course, and spoken by 300,000,000 in the north and west) as German is from English. For practical purposes, therefore, the Chinese of Canton and that of the north and west ought to be thought of as two separate languages; it is only by accident of history that we tend to call both languages Chinese and therefore think of them as one and the same thing.

**Point 2. Fractions.** The formation of fractions in Chinese can easily be seen from the following examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| *'shŕ·fēn·jr̄-'jyěw* | 'nine tenths' |
| *'wǔ·fēn·jr̄-'sān* | 'three fifths' |
| *'bǎy·fēn·jr̄-bā·shr·'wǔ* | 'eighty-five percent' |
| *'sān·fēn·jr̄-'èr* | 'two thirds' |
| *'bǎy·fēn·jr̄-'jǐ* | 'what percent?' |

*'Bǎy·fēn·jr̄-'sān* 'three percent' will serve as an example for explanation: *bǎy* is 'hundred', *fēn* means 'parts, divisions', so that *'bǎy·fēn* means 'a hundred parts'. *Jr̄* is an element with much the same meaning as *de*, but it is used only in certain cases like the present. So *'bǎy·fēn·jr̄* means 'of a hundred parts'. Therefore *'Bǎy·fēn·jr̄-'sān* means 'of a hundred parts, three'.

**Point 3. Some Military Terms.** *Lù·'jywēn* and *jywēn·'dwèy* both mean 'army'. The former term means literally 'land military-forces', the second means literally 'military units'. The former term contrasts the 'army' with the 'navy'; the second term does not, and might equally apply to naval forces, except for the fact that there is no navy to speak of in China.

While Chinese does not have separate words for 'company', 'troop' (cavalry), and 'battery' (artillery), it does have a separate set of terms for Air Force

Units. You should make a list of them from the Finder List.

The committee or commission in China which has supreme command over all the land, air, and naval forces is the *'Jywēn·shr̀-Wĕy·ywán·'hwèy*, literally 'military affairs commission', but usually translated as 'National Military Council'. The chairman is Chiang Kai-shek. Under this is the *'Háng·kūng-Wĕy·ywán·'hwèy*, translated as 'Aviation Commission' or 'Commission on Aeronautics'.

Be sure to check in the Finder List for the general terms for non-commissioned officers, for enlisted personnel, and the specific terms for the three ranks of private and three ranks of non-coms.

**Point 4. Branches of Service.** The term *bīng·'kē* refers primarily to a branch of study in a military school, and *bīng·'jŭng* to branch of service, but the former term is frequently used to mean branch of service. It is often shortened to *kē*, used as a measure: to ask what branch of service someone is in you can say *Nĭ shr̀ 'nă-yì·kē·de?* or *Nĭ shr̀ shém·me-'kē·de?*

After completing a basic course which is the same for all students, the cadets in a military school are assigned to various specialized branches. You will find the terms for these branches in the Finder List.

**Point 5. Practicing.** The difference between *shŕ·'shí* and *yăn·'shí* is this: the former means to put one's learning into actual practice in the field and learn by so doing; the latter means to practice under training circumstances. Thus firing on the firing range would be *yăn·'shí*, but serving an apprenticeship with troops under actual or simulated combat conditions would be *shŕ·'shí*.

**Point 6. School Terms.** The terms used for military schools are for the most part like the terms used for schools in general. You will find a number of terms for different kinds of schools (elementary, intermediate, and advanced), and for grades in school, in the Finder List.

In most schools one in the first year's work is said to be in the *'yī-nyán·jí*, and so on. For the Central Military Academy one gives one's year of graduation by saying which of the successive graduating classes one graduated with. Thus the graduates of 1944 belong to the 21st and 22nd classes: *dì-èr·shr·'yī-'chī* and *dì-èr·shr·'èr-'chī*. If you ask a graduate of this school *Nĭ shr̀ 'nă-yì·chī·de?* he will respond with his class number.

## Point 7. More on Goals

A

*Wŏ 'bāng-le ta 'sż·kwày-chyán.* 'I loaned him four dollars.'

*Wŏ 'gĕy-le ta 'sż·kwày-chyán.* 'I gave him four dollars.'

*Wŏ 'jyāw tā·men dì·'lĭ.* 'I teach them geography.'

*Wŏ 'jyè-le ta 'sż·kwày-chyán.* 'I loaned him four dollars.'

*Wǒ yàw 'wèn-ni yí·jyàn-'shr̀.* 'I want to ask you (about) a matter.'

All these sentences have predicates consisting of a verb followed by *two* goals. The first goal is in each case, *tā, tā·men,* or *nǐ;* the second goal is *'sż·kwày chyán, dì·'lǐ,* or *yí·jyàn 'shr̀.*

We put two goals after certain verbs in English too. Thus every one of the English sentences given in A as a translation of a Chinese sentence, except the last one, has a verb followed by two goals; in the last sentence in English we have to use the word 'about'.

Verb predicates of this type may be called the *two-goal* type. Note the following points about two-goal predicates:

(a) The first goal after the verb must be an expression referring to a person or people, or possibly to an animal, certainly not to a table or a building. We may call this the *personal goal.*

(b) The two-goal predicate is only made with one of a small number of verbs, the most important of which are illustrated in A.

This second point leads to a question. The Chinese word 'say, tell' (*shwō*) is not one of the verbs which are used with two goals after them. Therefore one cannot say, in Chinese, as we can in English, 'tell me a story', with *me* as a personal goal and *a story* as an object-goal. Nor can one say 'sing me a song' with the personal goal *me* and the object goal *a song* after the verb 'to sing'; nor 'hand me an apple' nor 'make me some dinner'. The question is: how are such things as these said in Chinese? Although you already know the answer, a review may be helpful.

There are two ways.

B

Chíng '*géy*-wo chàng yí·ge-'gē. 'Please sing me a song.'

Jīn·tyan-'dzǎw·chen wǒ-'tày·tay *géy*-wo dzwò dzǎw·'fàn chr̄. 'This morning my wife made breakfast for me to eat.'

Chǐng '*géy*-wo bǎ-'yān ná-lay. 'Please bring me the cigarettes.'

Way number one is to put the personal goal after *gěy*, before the verb, and either leave the object goal alone after the verb or put it after *bǎ* before the verb, or even put it unmarked at the beginning of the sentence if it is to be emphasized.

C

Chíng bǎ-'yān *dì·gey* wǒ. 'Please pass me the cigarettes.'

Tā bǎ tā·de-'chyán dēw '*jyè·gey* wǒ-le. 'He loaned me all his money.'

Chíng bǎ jè·běn-'shū '*hwán·gey* ta. 'Please give him back this book.'

Way number two is to hook *gěy* onto the verb, put the personal goal after it, and put the object goal earlier in the sentence (either with *bǎ* or at the very beginning, depending on emphasis). This way has to be used with care, because only certain combinations of verb plus *gěy* are actually used. Therefore don't use it unless you have heard the particular combination used by a native speaker of the language.

There are other verbs which allow only of a certain kind of goal after them, or which have a different meaning depending on the kind of goal. Here are some examples:

### D

Wó děy dàw gūng·shr̀·'fáng-chywu *dzwò*-'shr̀. 'I've got to go to the office and work.'

Tā shr̀ *dzwò*-'mǎy·may·de. 'He's a merchant.'

*Dzwò*-'rén 'bú·shr 'tā-nà·me-yàng-'*dzwò*·de. 'The real way to be a man isn't the way he does it.'

'Méy·yew rén 'ywàn·yì *dzwò* 'nú·lì. 'No one is willing to be a slave.'

When *dzwò* is followed by an object goal it means 'to do, make, work at', as in the first two sentences. But when it is followed by a personal goal it means 'to serve as, function as'.

### E

*Chíng bǎ-'yān ná·dàw 'jè·li-lay.* 'Please bring the cigarettes over here.'

*Tā jyèw 'pǎw·dàw fàn·'gwǎn·dz-chywu-le.* 'He immediately ran to the restaurant.'

*Ní děy 'shwèy·dàw 'dzǎw·chen-'bā·dyǎn-jūng.* 'You must sleep until eight in the morning.'

*Wǒ·men tsúng 'dzǎw·chen 'máng·dàw 'wǎn·shang.* 'We're busy from morning to evening.'

When *dàw* is hooked onto a verb of *handling*, as in the first sentence, the only goal which can follow it is a *place*-goal. The object-goal has to be mentioned earlier; in the example it is marked with *bǎ*.

The same thing is true when *dàw* is hooked onto a verb of *motion*, except that then there is no object-goal to worry about.

*Dàw* may also be hooked onto an adjective (last two examples); the meaning is then 'to be such-and-such until' a time. The goal which can follow is a *time*-goal.

Notice the difference between a time-goal and an indication of duration in the action-duration predicate, by comparing the last two examples above with the following:

> *Wǒ·men dzày Chúng·'chìng jù-le 'sān·nyán-le.* 'We've been living in Chungking for three years.'

With an indication of duration the English translation will have '*for* such-and-such a *length* of time'; with a time-goal the English will have '*until* such-and-such a *point* in time'.

### F

*Tā 'jù·dzày 'nǎ·li?* 'Where does he live?'

*Chíng bǎ-'yān gē·dzay 'jwō·dz·shang.* 'Please put the cigarettes on the table.'

*Nǐ yàw wǒ 'dzwò·dzay 'nǎ·li?* 'Where do you want me to sit?'

When *dzày* is hooked onto a verb of motion or handling the only goal which can follow is a place-goal, just as with *dàw* in the same situation.

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Match up the following English and Chinese sentences, all possible comments on the question *Nà·wèy jywēn·'gwān shr̀ shém·me-'jyē·jí?*

1. He is a Captain in the Cavalry.
2. He's a second Lieutenant in the Artillery.
3. He's a Major in the Infantry.
4. He's a Lieutenant Colonel in the Engineers.
5. He's a Major General.
6. He's a Brigadier General in the United States Army.
7. He's a first Lieutenant in the United States Army Signal Corps.
8. He's a Colonel in the United States Army.
9. He's a liaison officer; I don't know his rank.
10. That's a battalion-commander Hú; he is known to the Americans as Major Hú.
11. That's company-commander Hú; he is known to the Americans as Captain Hú.

a. *Nà shr̀ 'Hú-twán·jǎng; 'Měy·gwo-rén jyàw-ta 'Hú-shàng·'shyàw.*
b. *Tā shr̀ 'lyán·lwò-jywēn·'gwān; wǒ bù-'jr̄·dàw tā shr̀ shém·me-'jyē·jí.*
c. *'Bù·bīng-shàw·'shyàw.*
d. *Nà shr̀ 'Hú-tsān·mew; 'Měy·gwo-rén jyàw-ta 'Hú-jūng·shyàw.*
e. *'Pàw·bīng-shàw·'wèy.*
f. *Nà shr̀ Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw·de-'Hú-jyàw·'gwān.*
g. *Shàw·'jyàng.*
h. *'Chí·bīng-shàng·'wèy.*
i. *'Měy·gwo-'Lù·jywēn-shàng·'shyàw.*
j. *Nà shr̀ 'Hú-lyán·jang; 'Měy·gwo-rén jyàw-ta 'Hú-shàng·'wèy.*
k. *'Gūng·bīng-jūng·'shyàw.*

12. That's regiment-commander Hú; the Americans call him Colonel Hú.
13. That's staff-officer Hú; the Americans call him Lieutenant Colonel Hú.
14. That's professor Hú of the Military Academy.

l. *'Měy·gwo-'Lù·jywēn-'tūng·shìn-jūng·'wèy.*
m. *Nà shr̀ 'Hú-yíng·jǎng; 'Měy·gwo-rén jyàw-ta 'Hú-shàw·'shyàw.*
n. *'Měy·gwo-'Lù·jywēn-shàw·'jyàng.*

2. Match up the following English and Chinese answers to the question *Tā 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'dà·shywé bì-'yè?*

1. In two more months.
2. Still one more year to go.
3. Next year.
4. He entered college only this year.
5. He will enter college this year.
6. He's only a sophomore.
7. He hasn't graduated from high school yet.
8. He's already graduated from college.
9. He'll graduate the year you do.
10. He can't graduate the way he studies.
11. He works a year and studies a year.
12. Therefore it will take him eight years to graduate.
13. In these war times who knows?
14. He's gone into the army.

a. *Tā 'nà·me-yàng nyàn-'shū 'bì-bu·lyǎw 'yè.*
b. *Dzày jè-dǎ-'jàng·de-shŕ·hew, shwéy 'jr̄·dàw-ne?*
c. *Yí·ge-dzwò·gwo-shàng·'shyàw·de-rén 'dzěm·me néng hwéy·daw 'dà·shywé·li 'dzày dzwò 'yī-nyán·jí·de-shywé·sheng-ne?*
d. *'Míng·nyan.*
e. *Swó·yi tā děy 'bā·nyán 'tsáy néng bì-'yè-ne.*
f. *Tā 'jīn·nyan jìn 'dà·shywé.*
g. *Tā 'dwō·bàn bù-'hwéy-chywu-le.*
h. *Tā 'yǐ·jīng 'dà·shywé bì-'yè-le.*
i. *Tā 'chū-lay de·shŕ·hew, 'shwéy 'jr̄·daw ta háy 'hwéy shywé·'shyàw bù-'hwéy-ne?*
j. *Dzày gwò lyǎng·ge-'ywè.*
k. *Tā 'jīn·nyan 'tsáy jìn·de 'dà·shywé.*
l. *Tā dàw jywēn·'dwèy·'li-chywu-le.*
m. *'Háy yěw yì·'nyán-ne.*
n. *Yí·ge-shàng·'shyàw 'dzěm·me néng 'dzày dzwò 'yī-nyán·jí·de-'shywé·sheng-ne?*

15. When he gets out who knows whether he will go back to school or not?
16. Most probably he will not go back.
17. How can a colonel be a freshman again?
18. How can one who has been a colonel go back to college and be a freshman again?

o. *Tā tsáy dzày 'èr-nyán·jí.*
p. *Tā 'jūng·shywé háy méy-bì-'yè-ne.*
q. *Tā 'gen-ni 'yī-nyán bì-'yè.*
r. *Tā 'yì·nyán nyàn-'shū 'yì·nyán dzwò-'shr̀.*

*3*. The following statements are to be marked 'true' or 'false' as the case may be.

a. *Yí·'bàn shr̀ 'èr·fēn·jr̄-'yī.*
b. *'Yì·nyán yěw 'sān·bǎy-'lyèw·shr·'wǔ-tyān líng-'sz̀·fēn·jr̄-'yī.*
c. *Yí·ge-tsáy-jìn-'èr-nyán·jí·de-shywé·sheng 'háy yěw 'sān-nyán tsáy néng bì-'yè.*
d. *Dzày 'Měy·gwo 'jūng·shywé·shēng bǐ 'dà·shywé·shēng 'shǎw.*
e. *Yì·'chyān-rén·de-'bǎy·fēn·jr̄-'wǔ·shŕ shr̀ 'lyèw·bǎy-rén.*
f. *Yí·'wàn-rén·de-'bǎy·fēn·jr̄-shŕ·'wǔ shr̀ 'yì·chyān-'wú·bǎy-rén.*
g. *'Yì·tyān·de-'sān·fēn·jr̄-'yī shr̀ 'bā·dyǎn-jǔng.*
h. *'Yì·nyán·de-'sz̀·fēn·jr̄-'yī shr̀ 'sz̀·ge-ywè.*
i. *Yì·jāng-'jř·de-'èr·fēn·jr̄-'yī shr̀ 'bàn·jāng-'jř.*
j. *Hú·'nán dzày Gwǎng·'dūng·de-shī·'běy.*
k. *Hú·'nán dzày 'Jūng·gwo·de-'jūng·bù.*

*4*. Here are some questions for you to answer in Chinese.

a. *Yí·ge-'rén yéw 'wú·bǎy·kwày-chyán. Tā gěy-le tā·de-'tày·tay tā·de-chyán·de-'sz̀·fēn·jr̄-'yī. Tā 'háy yěw 'dwō·shǎw-chyán?*

b. *Měy·gwo yí·'gùng yěw 'yí·wàn-'sān·chyān-'èr·bǎy-'wàn-rén. 'Shŕ·fēn·jr̄-'yī shr̀ 'bīng. 'Shŕ·fēn·jr̄-'èr shr̀ 'gūng·rén. 'Shŕ·fēn·jr̄-'wǔ shr̀ 'nywǔ-rén. Háy yěw 'dwō·shǎw-'nán-rén 'bú·shr̀ 'bīng yě 'bú·shr̀ 'gūng·rén?*

c. *Yí·ge-rén yéw 'lyǎng chyān·kwày-'chyán. Tā bǎ tā-yí·'gùng-yěw·de-chyán, gěy-le tā-'mǔ·chin yí·'bàn, yèw gěy-le tā-'tày·tay 'èr·fēn·jr̄-'yī. Tā 'háy yěw-'chyán-ma?*

d. *'Yī 'shr̄ yěw yí·'wàn-rén. 'Jyěw·chyān shr̀-'bīng, 'yì·chyān shr̀ jywēn·'gwān. Jywēn·'gwān shr̀ yī-shr̄-'rén·de-'bǎy·fēn·jr̄-'jǐ?*

e. *'Jūng·gwo-rén·li yéw 'bǎy·fēn·jr̄-'èr·shŕ shr̀ rèn-'dz̀·de. Rè·shr 'Jūng·gwo yěw 'sz̀·wàn-wàn-rén, yěw 'dwō·shǎw-Jūng·gwo-rén rèn·shr 'dz̀?*

*5.* Here are some more answers to the question in *1* to be matched up:

1. He's not an officer; he's a sergeant.
2. In the Chinese Army, the privates are divided into three grades: that is, superior private, private first class, and second-class private.
3. He works in the Military Affairs Commission.
4. He often goes to the Aeronautical Affairs Commission.
5. He's a major in the Army Air Forces.
6. He's commander of a squadron.
7. He's commander of an artillery battalion.
8. He's chief-of-staff of a cavalry division.

a. *Tā shr̀ 'pàw·bīng-yíng·de-yíng·'jăng.*
b. *Tā shr̀ Lù·'jywēn-Kūng·'jywēn-shàw·'shyàw.*
c. *Tā dzày 'Jywēn·shr̀-Wěy·ywán·'hwèy dzwò-'shr̀.*
d. *Tā 'bú·shr̀ 'gwān, shr̀ jūng·'shr̀.*
e. *Tā shr̀ 'chí·bīng-shr̄·de-'tsān·méw·'jăng.*
f. *Dzày 'Jūng·gwo-jywēn·'dwèy·li, 'bīng fēn 'sān·jí: jyèw·shr 'shàng·děng·bīng, 'yī·dèng·bīng, hé 'èr·děng·bīng.*
g. *Tā 'cháng·cháng dàw 'Háng·kūng-Wěy·ywán·'hwèy-chywu.*
h. *Tā shr̀ ('kūng·jywēn·de-)jūng·dwèy·'jăng.*

*6.* You have just arrived at a small party being given for some Chinese officers. You are introduced as follows: see how much you can understand.

a. *'Hwān·yíng, 'hwān·yíng!*
b. *Wŏ géy-ni 'jyè·shàw.*
c. *'Jè·wèy shr̀ 'Lù·jywēn-shywé·'shyàw·de-shywé·sheng.*
d. *'Jè·wèy shr̀ Tūng·shìn-'twán·de-'Hú-shàng·'wèy.*
e. *'Jè·wèy shr̀ 'Kūng·jywēn·de-'Yán-shàw·'shyàw.*
f. *Tā shr̀ jūng·dwèy·'jăng.*
g. *Tā shr̀ 'Háng·kūng-shywé·'shyàw dì-'sż·chī bì-'yè·de.*
h. *'Jè·wèy shr̀ 'Lĭ-yíng·'jăng.*
i. *'Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw dì-shŕ·'sż-chī.*
j. *'Jè·wèy shr̀ bīng·gūng·'chăng·de-'Lù-shyān·sheng.*
k. *Tā shr̀ 'Jūng·yāng-'Dà·shywé 'gūng·kē bì-'yè·de.*
l. *Tā yěw 'Hú·nán-kěw·'yīn.*
m. *Tā 'gwăn dzàw dż·'dàn.*
n. *Tā·de-'shěw shr̀ tā dzwò 'shywé·sheng de·shŕ·hew, shŕ·'shí dzàw hwŏ·'yàw, 'shāw·de.*
o. *'Nà shŕ·'dzày shr̀ wéy·shyăn.*

p. *Wŏ 'háy chĭng-le 'Wú-shàng·shyàw.*
q. *Tā dă dyàn·'hwà, shwō 'bù-néng láy.*
r. *Yīn·wèy 'wày·gwo-'lyán·lwò-jywēn·'gwān kāy-'hwèy, tā dĕy 'dàw.*
s. *Kāy-'hwèy de·shŕ·hew tā yàw yăn·'shwō.*
t. *Shyàn·dzày chr̄-'fàn-ba!*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN

*Tā·men tsúng Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw 'hwéy·daw-le Shī·'ān. Chr̄·wán-le wăn·'fàn dàw hwŏ·chē·'jàn-chywu shàng hwŏ·'chē, dàw Túng·'gwān-chywu. Dzày hwŏ·'chē·shang 'Chyán yĕw-'shr̀, dàw 'byé·de-chē·shang chywù-le. 'Lwó gēn 'Tyán-tsān·méw·'jăng tán-'hwà.*

### Conversation 1

Ross: *Gāng·tsáy dzày hwŏ·'chē·'jàn déng hwŏ·'chē de·shŕ·hew hén 'lĕng.*
*'Fēng hĕn 'dà·de.*

Tyán: *Shyàn·dzày hwŏ·'chē·li gèw 'nwăn·he·de-ma?*

Ross: *Hén 'nwăn·he. Chwān·je 'shàng·yī háy 'rè-ne.*

Tyán: *Nĭ yĕw 'máw·yī-ma?*
*Túng·'gwān bĭ Shī·'ān 'lĕng·de 'dwō.*

Ross: *'Bú-yàw·jĭn. Wŏ yéw 'lyăng·jyàn-'máw·yī.*

Tyán: *'Báy·tyān dzày 'Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw·li jàw-le 'jĭ·jāng-'shyàng?*

Ross: *Jàw-le 'shŕ·jĭ·jāng.*

Tyán: *Dēw jàw·de 'shém·me?*

Ross: *Yéw jĭ·'jāng shr̀ shywé·sheng-'jù·de-dì·fang; 'yĕw·de shr̀ tā·men yăn·'shí fàng-'pàw de·shŕ·hew 'jàw·de.*

Tyán: *'Wŏ·men·de-shywé·'shyàw 'bù-néng gēn 'Mĕy·gwo·de-Shī·'dyán 'bĭ.*
*'Shēng·hwó 'kŭ, 'chr̄·de yĕ bù-'hăw, chyāng·'pàw yé 'shăw.*

Ross: *Dzwò 'shywé·sheng de·shŕ·hew 'yīng·gāy chr̄-'kŭ. Dàw-le dă-'jàng de·shŕ·hew jyèw bú-'pà chr̄-'kŭ-le.*

Tyán: *Shwō·de hĕn 'dwèy.*

### Conversation 2

Ross: *'Nĭ shr̀ 'Jywēn·gwān-Shywé·'shyàw bì-'yè·de-ma?*

Tyán: *'Shr̀. Jywēn·'shyàw bì-'yè yĭ·'hèw, wŏ yèw dzày 'Jūng·yāng-'Pàw·bīng-Shywé·'shyàw bì-'yè.*

Ross: *Nĭ shr̀ Jywēn·'shyàw-dì-'jĭ·chī·de?*

Tyán: *Dì-'jyĕw·chī.*

Ross: *Dzày Jywēn·'shyàw de·shŕ·hew jyèw shr̀ 'pàw·kē-ma?*

Tyán: *'Dwèy-le.*

*'Nà·ge-shŕ·hew, 'Swēn-shr̄·jăng shr̀ wŏ·men-'pàw·kē·de-jyàw·'gwān.*

*'Hèw·lay wŏ dàw 'Pàw·bīng-Shywé·'shyàw de·shŕ·hew, tā 'yĕ dzày 'nà·li dāng jyàw·'gwān.*

*Wŏ bì-'yè de·shŕ·hew tā 'yĭ·jīng dāng twán·'jăng-le.*

Ross: *Tā dzày 'Lù·jywēn-'Dà·shywé shr̀ 'nă-yì·nyán bì·de 'yè?*

Tyán: *Wŏ shyăng shr̀ 'Mín·gwó-èr·shŕ·'sān-nyán.*

Ross: *Nà shr̀ 'yī-'jyĕw-'sān-'sz̀.*

*'Nĭ shr̀ 'nă-yì·nyán dzày 'Pàw·bīng-Shywé·'shyàw bì-'yè·de?*

Tyán: *'Mín·gwo-èr·shr·'lyèw-nyán.*

*Wŏ·men bì-'yè yĭ·'hèw 'yí·ge-ywè, jyèw gēn R̀·'bĕn dá·chi 'jàng-lay-le.*

Ross: *Ní dă·gwo 'jĭ·nyán-jàng-le?*

Tyán: *Tsúng èr·shr·'lyèw-nyán jyèw dă-'jàng.*

*Dzày Hé·'bĕy, Shān·'dūng, Shān·'shī, Hé·'nán, Hú·'bĕy, Hú·'nán, Gwăng·'dūng, Gwăng·'shī, 'dēw gēn R̀·bĕn-'bīng dă·gwo 'jàng.*

## Conversation 3

Ross: *Jè·li yĕw 'dwō·shaw-jywēn·'dwèy?*

Tyán: *Yĕw 'sān·shr·jĭ-shr̄-rén.*

Ross: *Nà shr̀ 'dwō·shaw-rén?*

Tyán: *Chà·bu·dwō-sān·shr·'wŭ-wàn-rén.*

*Swó·yi R̀·'bĕn-rén bù-néng gwò Hwáng·'hé.*

*Tā·men 'gwò-láy·de-jĭ·'tsz̀ dēw 'jyàw wŏ·men géy 'dă·hwéy-chywù-le.*

Ross: *Jè·li·de-jywēn·'dwèy dēw yĕw shém·me-bīng·'jŭng?*

Tyán: *'Shém·me dēw 'yĕw.*

*Shŕ·fēn·jr̄-'lyèw shr̀ 'bù·bīng.*

*Wŭ·fēn·jr̄-'yī shr̀ 'pàw·bīng hé 'chí·bīng.*

*Shŕ·fēn·jr̄-'yī shr̀ 'jyāw·tūng·bīng hé 'gūng·bīng.*

*Háy yĕw shŕ·fēn·jr̄-'yī·shr̀ tūng·'shìn·bīng, jywēn·'shywū, jywēn·'yī, 'kūng·jywēn, hé 'shyàn·bīng.*

Ross: *Jywēn·'dwèy·li chyāng·'pàw hĕn 'dwō-ma?*

Tyán: *Yĭ·'chyán bú-gèw 'yùng·de.*

*Shyàn·dzày tsúng 'È·gwo láy-le hĕn-'dwō-chyāng·'pàw.*

Ross: *Shr̀ È·gwo-'dzàw·de-ma?*

Tyán: *'Bú·shr̀. Dēw shr̀ Fēn·'lán·de.*
*'Sān·nyán-chyán. È·gwo tsúng Fēn·'lán 'dé·dàw-le hěn-'dwō·de-chyāng·'pàw, 'dēw sùng·daw 'Jūng·gwo-lay-le.*

Ross: *Yǐ·'hèw yé·shywu néng tsúng 'Měy·gwo dé·daw chyāng·'pàw.*
*Shyàn·dzày-tsúng-'Měy·gwo-láy·de-dūng·shi 'dēw dzày 'Yìn·du.*

Tyán: *Chyāng·'pàw háy 'bú-yàw·jǐn.*
*'Dzwèy-yàw·jǐn·de shr̀ fēy·'jī.*
*Méy·yew fēy·'jī wǒ·men bù-néng dé-'shèng.*

Ross: *Shī·'ān-jè·ge-dì·fang bīng·gūng·'chăng 'dwō-bu·dwō?*

Tyán: *Bù-hěn 'dwō.*
*Bīng·gūng·'chăng dēw dzày 'shān-lǐ·byan.*
*Hěn-'dwō·de-chyāng·'pàw hé dàn·'yàw dēw·shr dzày 'nà·li dzàw·de.*

(*Shwō·dàw 'jè·li 'Chyán-tsān·mew láy-le. 'Tyán-tsān·méw·'jăng 'jàn·chi-lay shwō*)

Tyán: *Jùng·'shù láy-le!*
*Nǐ·men ké·yi 'dzày tán-yì·hwěr.*
*Bú·yàw tán·de tày 'jyěw; 'dzǎw-yì·dyǎr shwèy-'jyàw-ba.*

Chyán, Ross:
*Hǎw. 'Míng·tyan jyàn.*

## Conversation 4

*'Lwó hé-'Chyán 'jyē·je tán-'hwà.*

Ross: *Wó shyǎng dzày Shī·'ān 'dwō kàn-yi·kan.*

Chyán: *'Hwéy-lay de-shŕ·hew ké·yi 'dwō 'jù jǐ·tyān.*

Ross: *Wó shyǎng shywé běn·'dì-rén-shwō·de-'hwà.*

Chyán: *Jè·ge-dì·fang·de-'hwà yěw·de lyán 'wǒ yě bù-'dǔng.*
*Kě·shr 'wǒ·men-shwō·de-hwà běn·'dì-rén 'dēw dǔng.*

Ross: *Sż·'chwān-rén 'yě shr̀ nà·me-yàng·de.*

Chyán: *Túng·'gwān·de-hwà hé Shī·'ān·de 'chà·de bù-'dwō.*

Ross: *Dzày Túng·'gwān jù 'jǐ·tyān?*

Chyán: *'Lyǎng-sān·tyān.*

Ross: *Yěw 'dí·rén·de-fēy·'jī láy 'jà-ma?*

Chyán: *Yéw jǐ·ge-'ywè méy·yew fēy·'jī láy 'jà-le.*
*'Jř shr̀ yěw·de-shŕ·hew 'dí·rén tsúng Hwáng·'hé·de-běy·'àn fàng-'pàw gwò-lay.*
*Swó·yi wǒ·men 'bú-dàw Túng·'gwān jyèw děy shyà hwǒ·'chē.*

Ross: *'Wèy-shém·me-ne?*

Chyán: *Yīn·wey 'dí·rén 'jr̄·dàw hwŏ·chē·'dàw dzày shém·me-'dì·fang.*
*Tā·men 'kàn·jyàn hwŏ·'chē jyèw kāy-'pàw.*

Ross: *Lí 'dí·rén nà·me-'jìn, wŏ·men 'jēn shr̆ dàw-le chyán·'shyàn-le.*

Chyán: *Wŏ-'kàn, nĭ yīng·gāy shwèy-'jyàw-le.*
*'Jè-lyăng·tyān ní déy 'dzĕw hĕn-'dwō·de-'lù.*

Ross: *Wŏ 'bú-pà dzĕw-'lù.*
*Wó yĭ·'chyán ké·yi 'yì-tyān dzĕw 'èr·shr-Yīng·'lĭ.*

Chyán: *Shyàn·'dzay-ne?*

Ross: *Shyàn·dzày 'háy néng dzĕw.*
*Dzày Chúng·'chìng mĕy·tyān 'shàng-shān 'shyà-shān dzéw hĕn-dwō·de-'lù.*

Chyán: *Jyèw·shr néng dzĕw-'lù, shyàn·dzày yĕ·shr shwèy yi·dyăn-'jyàw 'tsáy hăw.*

Ross: *'Hăw-ba. 'Míng·tyan 'jyàn.*

Chyán: *'Bú·shr míng·tyan; shyàn·dzày 'yĭ·jīng shr̆ 'dzăw·chen-'lyáng·dyăn-'jūng-le.*

Ross: *'Dwèy-le. Wŏ·men ké·yi shwèy 'sān·sż·dyăn-jūng·de-'jyàw.*

Chyán: *Dĕng·dàw shyà-'chē de·shŕ·hew, wŏ láy 'jyàw-nĭ.*

### Conversation 5

*'Chyán bă-'Lwó jyàw·'shìng-le.*

Chyán: *'Lwó-shyān·sheng, 'chĭ-lay-ba!*

Ross: (just waking up)
*Á?* What is it? *'Èw! Jí·'dyăn-le?*

Chyán: *'Lyèw·dyăn-'èr·shr-fēn.*
*Chĭ-lay shí-'lyăn-ba.*
*Shr̆·'wán-le jyèw chr̄ dzăw·'fàn.*

Ross: *'Hăw. 'Shém·me-shŕ·hew chywù 'tsān·gwān?*

Chyán: *'Chī·dyăn-jūng tsúng 'jè·li dzĕw.*
*'Jīn·tyan 'tyān·chì hén-'hăw. Yĕw 'tày·yang.*
*Kĕ·shr 'wăn·shang bù 'jr̄·dàw 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'hwéy-lay.*
*Rè·shr hwéy-lay·de 'wăn, jyèw dĕy dày·je máw·'yī.*
*Yīn·wey méy·yew 'tày·yang jyèw 'lĕng-le.*

Ross: *Wŏ dày·je nà·ge-pí·'bāw.*
*Lĭ·byan yĕw jàw·shyàng·'jī.*
*Máw·'yī yĕ ké·yi gē·dzay 'lĭ·tew.*
*'Háy dày shém·me-ne?*

Chyán: *Ní yĕw dì·'tú-ma?*

Ross: *'Méy·yěw.*

Chyán: *Wǒ 'géy-nǐ jè·jāng-dì·'tú.* (He points to the route they are to take.)

*Nǐ 'kàn, wǒ·men jīn·tyan tsúng 'jè·li dzwò chì·'chē dàw 'jè·li.*

*Tsúng 'jè·li dzěw·daw 'shān·shang-chywu.*

Ross: *Túng·'gwān dzày shém·me-'dì·fang?*

*Jīn·tyan 'bú-dàw Túng·'gwān-chywu-ma?*

Chyán: *Túng·'gwān dzày 'jè·li.*

*Lí 'dí·rén tày 'jìn-le.*

*Shŕ·'dzày shr̀ 'wéy·shyǎn.*

*'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng bú-'jyàw nǐ·men 'chywù.*

*Dzày 'jè·li yě ké·yi 'kàn·de hěn 'chīng·chu.*

Ross: *'Néng-bu·néng chǐng 'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng 'jŕ shywú wǒ-'dż·jǐ chywù?*

Chyán: *Dzwèy-háw chǐng nà·wèy 'lyán·lwò-jywēn·'gwān—tā shìng 'shém·me?*

Ross: *'Wú-jūng·shyàw.*

Chyán: *'Dwèy-le.*

*Chǐng 'Wú-jūng·shyàw chywù gēn 'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng 'shwō·shwo.*

Ross: *'Hǎw-ba.*

*'Wú-jūng·shyàw-'dż·jǐ yé·shywu ywàn·yi chywù 'kàn·kàn.*

Chyán: *Rè·shr shr̄·'jǎng shwō 'ké·yi chywù, wǒ jyèw 'dày-nǐ-chywu.*

## FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| *·*běn* | 'source' |
| *běn·'dì* N | 'home territory, the country around here' |
| **běy* | 'north' (see *Hú·'běy*) |
| ·*bì* | 'finish' |
| *bì-'yè* | 'graduate' |
| **bīng* N | 'soldier' (see *bù·bīng, chí·bīng, 'èr·děng·bing, gūng·bīng, 'jyāw·tūng·bīng, pàw·bīng, 'shàng·děng·bīng, shr̀·'bīng, shyàn·'bīng, 'yī·děng·bīng*) |
| *bīng·'gūng* N | 'ordnance' |
| *bīng·gūng 'chǎng* N | 'arsenal' |
| *bīng·'jǔng* N | 'branch of service' |
| *bīng·'kē* N | 'branch of service; branch of study in a military school' |
| *bīng·'shr̀* N | 'enlisted personnel' |
| *bù* N | 'infantry' |
| *bù·bīng* N | 'infantry '(soldiers) |
| *bù·kē* N | 'infantry' (as branch of service) |

| | |
|---|---|
| ***·chăng*** | 'enclosed space' (see *bīng·gūng·'chăng*) |
| ***·chī*** | 'date, time, period'; used as measure meaning grade in school |
| *chí* V, N | 'to sit straddling'; 'cavalry' |
| *chí·bīng* N | 'cavalry' (soldiers) |
| *chí·kē* N | 'cavalry' (as branch of service) |
| **chì* N | 'air' (see *kūng·'chì*) |
| **chyāng* N | 'rifle; small arms' (see *fàng-'chyāng, kāy-'chyāng*) |
| **dà* A | 'big' |
| *dà·'dwèy* N, M | 'group' (Air Force unit) |
| *'dà·shywé* N | 'college, university' |
| *dà·shywé·'shēng* N | 'college student' |
| *dà·shywé·'shyàw* N | 'college, university' |
| **dàn* N | 'bomb, explosive' (see *dž·'dàn*) |
| *dàn·'yàw* N | 'ammunition, shells and powder' |
| *dāng* V | 'become, start serving as' (for instance, a soldier) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·děng* | 'grade, kind of' (see *'èr·děng·bīng, 'shàng·děng·bīng, 'yī·děng·bīng*) |
| **dì* N | 'ground, land, floor' (see *běn·'dì*) |
| **dūng* | 'east' (see *Gwăng·'dūng*) |
| *dwèy* M | 'file of, formation of' (see *dà·dwèy, fēn·dwèy, jūng·dwéy, jywēn·dwèy, lyán·dwèy*) |
| *dwèy·'jăng* N | 'unit commander' (any unit) |
| **dyăn* M | 'bit of, spot of' (see *Shí·'dyăn*) |
| **·dž* | 'small thing' (in such words as *'fáng·dz, 'ér·dz*, and so on) |
| *dž·'dàn* N | 'ammunition, cartridges' |
| **dzày* V | 'in, at' (see *shŕ·'dzày*) |
| **èr* | 'two' |
| *'èr·děng·bīng* N | 'ordinary private' (lowest of the three ranks of private) |
| *fàng* V | 'let go of, release' |
| *fàng-'chyāng* | 'fire a rifle' |
| *fàng-'pàw* | 'fire a large-caliber weapon' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **fēn* V | 'divide' |
| *fēn·dwèy* N, M | 'flight' (Air Force unit) |
| *fēn·jr̄* M | 'part' (used in giving fractions) |
| *fēn-'kē* | 'be divided up and assigned to different branches of study' |
| *Fēn·'lán* N | 'Finland' |
| *gūng* N | 'work' (physical) (see *bīng·gūng*) |
| *gūng·bīng* N | 'engineers' (soldiers) |
| *gūng·kē* N | 'engineers' (as branch of service) |
| *'gūng·rén* N | 'laborer' |
| **gwān* N | 'official, officer' (see *jyàw·gwān*) |
| *·Gwǎng* | (a place in the southeast of China) |
| *Gwǎng·'dūng* N | a province in the southeast of China |
| *Gwǎng·'shī* N | a province in the southeast of China |
| **gwó* M | 'country' |
| *gwó·'ywǔ* N | 'national speech', name of the official spoken language of China |
| *háng* V | 'navigate in *or* on' |
| *háng-'kūng* | 'navigate in the air' |
| *háng·'kūng* N | 'aviation' |
| *hú* | 'lake' |
| *Hú·'běy* N | 'lake's north,' name of a province |
| *Hú·'nán* N | 'lake's south,' name of a province |
| *hwèy* N | 'meeting, organization' (see *kāy-'hwèy, wěy·ywán·'hwèy*) |
| **hwǒ* N | 'fire' |
| *hwǒ·'yàw* N | 'gunpowder' |
| **·jǎng* | 'person in charge of'. This can be added to the term for any military unit to mean the commander of a unit of that size and nature. See *dwèy·'jǎng.* |
| **jí* M | 'grade in school' (see *nyán·'jí*) (also occurs in *jyē·jí* 'rank' which you know) |
| **·jr̄* | (see *fēn·jr̄*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·_jūng_ | 'middle, intermediate' |
| _jūng·dwèy_ N, M | 'squadron' (Air Force unit) |
| _jūng·'shr̀_ N | 'sergeant' (intermediate of three ranks of non-coms) |
| _'jūng·shywé_ N | 'high school' (literally 'middle school') |
| _jūng·shywé·shēng_ N | 'high school student' |
| _jūng·shywé·'shyàw_ N | 'high school' |
| _jǔng_ M | 'kind of, sort of' (see _bīng·'jǔng_) |
| *_jyāw_ V | 'make contact' |
| *_jyāw·'tūng_ N | 'communication, transportation' |
| _'jyāw·tūng·bīng_ N | 'transportation corps soldiers' |
| _'jyāw·tūng·kē_ N | 'transportation corps' |
| *·_jyàw_ | 'teach' |
| _jyàw·'gwān_ N | 'officer-instructors', officers who teach at a military school' |
| *_jywēn_ N, M | 'army' (see _kūng·'jywēn_) |
| _jywén·'dwèy_ N | 'army in the field, in formation' |
| _jywēn·'shr̀_ N | 'non-commissioned officers' |
| _Jywēn·'shyàw_ N | 'Military Academy' |
| _jywēn·'shywū_ N | 'quartermasters' (branch of service) |
| _jywēn·'yī_ N | 'medical corps' |
| *_kāy_ V | 'open, turn on' |
| _kāy-'chyāng_ | 'open fire with a rifle' |
| _kāy 'hwèy_ | 'call a meeting, open a meeting' |
| _kāy-'pàw_ | 'open fire with a large-caliber weapon' |
| _kē_ M | 'branch of service; subject of study in military school' (see _bīng·kē, bù·kē, chí·kē, fēn-'kē, gūng·kē, jyāw·tūng·kē, pàw·kē_) |
| *_kěw_ N | 'mouth' |
| _kěw·'yīn_ N | 'pronunciation' |
| _kūng_ N | 'air, empty space' (see _háng-'kūng, háng·'kūng, tyān·'kūng_) |
| _kūng·'chì_ N | 'air' |
| _kūng·'jywēn_ N | 'Air Force, Air Corps' |
| *·_lyán_ N, M | 'join, connect' |
| _lyán·dwèy_ N, M | 'wing' (Air Force Unit) |
| _máw_ N | 'hair, fur; woolen' |
| _máw·'yī_ N | 'sweater' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_nán_ | ‘south’ (see _Hú·'nán_) |
| *_nyán_ M | ‘year’ |
| _nyán·'jí_ M | ‘year in school’—‘freshman, sophomore’ etc. |
| *_pàw_ N | ‘large-caliber weapon; artillery’ (see _fàng-'pàw, kāy-'pàw_) |
| _pàw·bīng_ N | ‘artillery’ (soldiers) |
| _pàw·kē_ N | ‘artillery’ (branch of service) |
| *_rén_ N | ‘person, people’ (see _'gūng·rén_) |
| *_shàng_ | ‘up’ |
| _'shàng·děng·bīng_ N | ‘superior private’ (highest of three grades of privates) |
| _shàng·'shr̀_ N | ‘staff sergeant’ (highest of three grades of non-coms) |
| *_·shēng_ | ‘one who does such-and-such’ (see _dà·shywé·'shēng, jūng·shywé·'shēng, shyǎw·shywé·'shēng_) |
| *_shī_ | ‘west’ (see _Gwǎng·'shī_) |
| _Shī·'dyǎn_ N | ‘West Point’ |
| _shí_ N | ‘practice’ (see _shŕ·'shí, yǎn·'shí_) |
| *_shìn_ N | ‘letter, message’ (see _tūng-'shìn, tūng·'shìn_) |
| _·shŕ_ | ‘real’ |
| _shŕ·'dzày_ H | ‘really’ |
| _shŕ·'shí_ I | ‘practice, learn by practicing, by actual participation’ |
| _·shr̀_ | ‘non-commissioned officer’ (see _bīng·'shr̀, jūng·shr̀, jywēn·shr̀, shàng·shr̀, shyà·shr̀_) |
| _shr̀·'bīng_ N | ‘enlisted personnel’ |
| _·shǔ_ | ‘belong’ |
| _'shǔ·ywú_ V | ‘pertain to, be the concern of’ |
| *_shyà_ | ‘down’ |
| _shyà·shr̀_ N | ‘corporal’ (lowest of three grades of non-coms) |
| _·shyàn_ | ‘law’ |
| _shyàn·bīng_ N | ‘MP’ (soldiers) |
| *_shyǎw_ A | ‘small’ |
| _'shyǎw·shywé_ N | ‘primary school’ |
| _shyǎw·shywé·'shēng_ N | ‘primary school student’ |
| _shyǎw·shywé·'shyàw_ N | ‘primary school’ |

| | |
|---|---|
| **·shyàw* | 'school' (see *dà·shywé·'shyàw, jūng·shywé·'shyàw, Jywēn·'shyàw, shyǎw·shywé·'shyàw*) |
| **shywè* | 'learn, study' (see *'dà·shywé, 'jūng·shywé, 'shyǎw·shywé, 'túng·shywé*) |
| *·shywū* | 'need, necessity' (see *jywēn·shywū*) |
| **tūng* V | 'pass through, let pass through' (see *jyāw·tūng*) |
| *tūng-'shìn* | 'communicate' |
| *tūng·'shìn* N | 'signal' (as in 'signal corps') |
| **túng* K | 'with, and' |
| *túng·'shywé(·de)* N | 'fellow student, fellow cadet' |
| **tyān* M | 'day, sky' |
| *tyān·'kūng* N | 'air, atmosphere, sky' |
| *·wěy* | 'to deputize, commission' |
| *wěy·'ywán* N | 'committee member' |
| *wěy·ywán·'hwèy* | 'committee, commission' |
| **yǎn* | 'perform' |
| *yǎn·'shí* | 'practice' |
| *yàw* N | 'medicine' (see *dàn·'yàw, hwǒ·yàw*) |
| *yè* N | 'business' (see *bì-'yè*) |
| **yī* | 'one' |
| *'yī·děng·bīng* N | 'private of the middle rank of the three' |
| **·yī* | 'clothing' (see *máw·'yī*) |
| *·yī* | 'medicine, doctor' (see *jywēn·'yī*) |
| **yīn* | 'musical sound' (see *kěw·'yīn*) |
| *'Yìn·du* N | 'India' |
| **·ywán* | 'personnel' (see *wěy·'ywán*) |
| *·ywú* | 'to' (see *'shŭ·ywú*) |
| *·ywŭ* | 'speech' (see *gwó·'ywŭ*) |

# AT 'TÚNG·GWĀN

## SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

*Ross visits Chyán at his quarters near 'Túng·gwān.*

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| Staff-Officer Chyán, I heard that you were ill. | *'Chyán-tsān·mew, 'tīng·shwō nǐ 'bìng-le.* |
| So I've come to see you. | *Swó·yi wǒ láy 'kàn-ni.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| Thanks. | *Dwō-'shyè, dwō-'shyè.* |
| It's not serious. | *Bú·shr 'dà-bìng.* |
| headache | *'téw-téng* |
| fever | *fā-'shāw* |
| Just a little headache and fever. | *Yěw-yì·dyǎr 'téw-téng, fā-'shāw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| to catch cold | *shāng-'fēng* |
| That's a cold. | *Nà shr shāng-'fēng-le.* |
| medicine | *yàw* |
| Have you taken any medicine? | *Chī-'yàw-le-ma?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| Yes. | *'Chī-le.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| I'm alright today. | *'Jīn·tyan yǐ·jing 'hǎw-le.* |
| doctor | *'yī·sheng* |
| to rest *or* recuperate | *yǎng* |
| But the doctor says I must have more rest. | *Kě·shr 'yī·sheng shwō 'háy déy 'yǎng·je.* |
| pneumonia | *'jùng·shāng·'fēng* |
| Otherwise I might get pneumonia. | *Bù·'rán, kǔng·'pà yàw dé 'jùng·shāng·fēng.* |
| | ***Ross*** |
| Do you remember telling me it was cold here, | *Nǐ 'jì·de, nǐ gàw·su wo 'jè·ge-dì·fang 'lěng,* |
| and I must put on more clothes? | *děy 'dwō chwān 'yī·shang-ma?* |
| | ***Chyán*** |
| Ha-ha! That's right! | *Hā·hā! 'Dwèy-le!* |
| I can't practice what I preach. | *Wǒ shr 'néng 'shwō bù néng 'shíng'-nga!* |
| What places have you seen these three days? | *'Jè-sān·tyān 'tsān·gwān·de dēw shr 'shém·me-dì·fang?* |
| | ***Ross*** |
| Oh, many places. | *Hěn-'dwō-dì·fang.* |
| headquarters | *sž·lìng·'bù* |
| The first day we saw the headquarters of the 17th army. | *Dì-'yī·tyān kàn-le dì-shŕ·'chī-jywēn·de-sž·lìng·'bù.* |
| barracks | *bīng·'yíng* |
| trenches | *jàn·'háw* |
| We also saw the barracks and trenches. | *'Yèw kàn-le bīng·'yíng, jàn·'háw.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| wounded soldiers | *shāng-'bīng* |
| hospital | *yī·'ywàn* |
| The second day we visited the hospital for wounded soldiers. | *Dì-'èr·tyān 'tsān·gwān 'shāng-'bīng-yī·'ywàn.* |
| head of a hospital | *ywàn·'jăng* |
| The head of the hospital is named Dèng. | *Ywàn·'jăng shìng-'Dèng.* |
| wards of a hospital | *yăng·bìng·'fáng* |
| storeroom for drugs | *yàw·'kù* |
| recreation hall | *jywù·lwò·'bù* |
| He took us to see the wards, the storeroom for drugs, and the wounded soldiers' amusement club. | *Tā dày·je wŏ·men kàn-le yăng·bìng'fáng, yàw·'kù, hé shāng-'bīng-jywù·lwò·'bù.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| medical officer | *yī·'gwān* |
| famous | *yĕw-'míng·de* |
| surgeon | *'wày·kē-yī·sheng* |
| Medical-Officer Dèng is a famous surgeon. | *'Dèng-yī·gwān shr̀·hén-yĕw-'míng·de-'wày·kē-yī·sheng.* |
| probably *or* reputedly | *hăw 'shyàng* |
| medicine | *'yī·shywé* |
| He seems to have studied medicine in Germany. | *Tā hăw 'shyàng dzày 'Dé·gwo nyàn·de 'yī·shywé.* |
| | *Ross* |
| He studied in America too. | *'Yĕ dzày 'Mĕy·gwo nyàn·gwo.* |
| He took us to have a talk with the wounded soldiers | *Tā dày·je wŏ·men-chywu gēn shāng·'bīng tán-'hwà.* |
| to be cheerful | *'kwày·lwò* |
| The wounded men were apparently cheerful. | *Shāng-'bīng hăw shyàng hĕn 'kwày·lwò shr̀·de.* |

407

| | |
|---|---|
| to laugh | *shyàw* |
| They could talk and laugh. | *Dēw yěw 'shwō yěw 'shyàw·de.* |
| phonograph | *lyéw·shēng·'jī* |
| In the club there were newspapers, a phonograph, and also a radio. | *Jywù·lwò·'bù·li yěw bàw·'jř, yěw lyéw·shēng·'jī, háy yěw wú·shyàn·'dyàn.* |
| One of the wounded soldiers knew how to sing. | *Shāng-'bīng·li yěw 'yí·ge-hwèy-chàng-'gē·de.* |
| We asked him to sing several songs. | *Wǒ·men 'chǐng-ta chàng-le jǐ·ge-'gē.* |
| medicine room | *yàw·'fáng* |
| But the medicine room doesn't seem to be well stocked. | *Kě·shr yàw·'fáng·li hǎw 'shyàng 'méy·yew dwō·shaw-'yàw.* |

*Chyán*

| | |
|---|---|
| Right now communication between China and foreign countries is inconvenient. | *Shyàn·dzày 'Jung·gwo-hé-'wày·gwo·de-jyāw·'tūng bù-'fāng·byan.* |
| That's why we have few foreign drugs here. | *Swó·yi wày·gwo-'yàw hén 'shǎw.* |
| What did you see the third day? | *Nǐ dì-'sān·tyān kàn-le shém·me-dì·fang?* |

*Ross*

| | |
|---|---|
| That was yesterday. | *Nà jyèw shř 'dzwó·tyan.* |
| We went to Túng·'gwān. | *Wǒ·men dàw Túng·'gwān-chywu-le.* |

*Chyán*

| | |
|---|---|
| permission | *shywú·'kě* |
| What! Did you get permission? | *Nǐ·men 'dé·dàw shywú·'kě-le-ma?* |

*Ross*

| | |
|---|---|
| It was Division-Commander Swēn who let us go. | *Shř 'Swēn-shī·jǎng jyàw wǒ·men 'chywù·de.* |

408

| | |
|---|---|
| to be careful | *'shyǎw·shīn* |
| He said if we were careful there would be no danger. | *Tā shwō wǒ·men rè·shr 'shyǎw·shīn jyèw 'méy·yew 'wéy·shyǎn.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| What did you see there? | *'Kàn·jyàn 'shém·me-le?* |
| | *Ross* |
| telescope | *wàng·ywǎn·'jìng* |
| We looked at the enemy's barracks and trenches through the telescopes. | *Wǒ·men yùng wàng·ywǎn·'jìng kàn 'dí·rén·de-bīng·'yíng hé jàn·'háw.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| Did you take any pictures? | *Jàw-'shyàng-le-ma?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Quite a few. | *Jàw-le bù-'shǎw.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| When are you going back? | *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'hwéy-chywu?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Either tomorrow or the day after. | *'Bú·shr 'míng·tyan jyèw·shr 'hèw·tyan.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| I think I'll go with you. | *Wó shyáng wǒ 'gēn nǐ·men 'dzěw.* |
| I want to go to Sian to see my younger brother. | *Wǒ yàw dàw 'Shī·ān-chywu kàn wǒ-'dì·di.* |
| | *Ross* |
| That's fine. | *Nà jēn 'hǎw.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. 'Jyèw·shr.** In the following sentences you will see the range of meaning and use of the important word *jyèw·shr*:

> *'Jè jyèw·shr wǒ-'gàw·su-nǐ·de-nà·wèy-'Hú-shyān·sheng.* 'This is the Mr. Hú I was telling you about.'
>
> *'Jè jyèw·shr wó-'shyě·de-nà·běn-'shū.* 'This is the book I wrote.'

In these sentences *jyèw·shr* emphasizes the fact that the object or subject now being discussed is the one which had already been mentioned before. The second part of *jyèw·shr* is *shr̀* 'be, be equal to, be the same as', and in sentences like these *jyèw·shr* is a sort of reinforced *shr̀*: 'is indeed, is definitely'.

With the second of the above examples compare:

> *Jè shr̀ wó-shyě·de-'shū.* 'This is a book I wrote.'
>
> *Jè shr̀ 'wǒ-shyě·de-'shū.* 'This is the book *I* wrote.'

Another use of the word appears in:

> *'Tā-ya! Jyèw·shr 'dzày shywé 'shŕ·nyán 'yě shywé-bu·'hǎw!* 'Him! *Even if* he studies another ten years he still won't be able to learn it well!'

In the following it is the combination *bú·shr . . . jyèw·shr* that carries the special meaning:

> *Nǐ 'nǎ-yì·tyān 'dzěw? Bú·shr 'míng·tyan jyèw·shr 'hèw·tyan.* 'Which day are you leaving?' 'If not tomorrow, then the day after.'
>
> *Bú·shr Láw-'Lǐ jyèw·shr Lǎw-'Jāng.* 'Either Old Lǐ or Old Jāng.'
>
> *Tā 'yī-tyān bú·shr chr̄-'fàn jyèw·shr shwèy-'jyàw.* 'All day long he's either eating or sleeping.'

**Point 2. Shyàng.** This word, 'resemble, seem to be,' is frequently modified by *hǎw*, the combination meaning 'seem very likely to be, resemble very closely'. Also, what follows often ends with *shr̀·de* 'of (such-and-such) a pattern, a kind':

> *Tā 'gēn-wo shēng-'chì-le; 'kàn·jyan wo hǎw 'shyàng kàn·jyan 'dí·rén yí·'yàng.* 'He's angry with me; seeing me seems to be like seeing an enemy.'
>
> *'Jè·běn-shū hǎw 'shyàng bú·shr 'wǒ·de.* 'This book doesn't seem to be mine.'
>
> *'Jè·tyáw-jyē hǎw 'shyàng bú-'dwèy.* 'This street doesn't seem to be (the) right (one).'

Or this can be said:

> *'Jè·tyáw-jyē hǎw 'shyàng bú-'dwèy shr̀·de.* 'This street doesn't seem to be (the) right (one).'
>
> *Tā háy shyàng 'háy·dz shr̀·de, bù-dǔng-'shr̀.* 'He's still as naive as a child.'

**Point 3. Wàng and Shyàng.** The *wàng* of *wàng·ywăn'jìng* 'telescope, field glasses', means 'look towards, looking towards', or simply 'towards'. Frequently it can be used in place of *shyàng* 'towards'; in some sentences *wàng* can be used where *shyàng* cannot:

*Tā 'wàng·je wo bù-shwō-'hwà.* 'He looks at me speechlessly.'

In this sentence *shyàng* would not be used. In the following it could be:

*Tā wàng 'wŏ-jè·li 'kàn.* 'He looks toward me.'

*Tā wàng 'wŏ-jè·li 'dzĕw-láy-le.* 'He's walking towards me.'

*Wàng-'chyán kàn, 'bú·yàw wàng-'hèw kàn.* 'Look ahead, don't look behind.'

*Wàng-'chyán dzĕw.* 'Walk ahead, walk forward.'

*Wàng-'dūng yì·'jí dzĕw.* 'Walk straight east.'

**Point 4. A Kind of Adverb.** You will remember that an adjective like *hăw* can be doubled, the second one changing to second tone, and adding *de*, to make a kind of adverb: *hăw·'háw·de* 'very very well'.

With a two-syllable adjective like *'kwày·lwò* 'in good spirits', or *'rúng·yì* 'easy', a similar form is made by doubling each of the syllables independently:

*kwày·kway·lwò·'lwò·de* 'with very good spirits'

*rúng·rung·yì·'yì·de* 'in an extremely easy way'

Sometimes a group of numeral plus measure is doubled with added *de* in much the same way:

*yí·ge-'yí·ge·de* 'one by one'

*yí·dwèy-yí·'dwèy·de* 'unit by unit' (as of a military parade, in which the men pass unit by unit)

Other formations of the same general kind are a little less predictable:

*wèn-'jè·ge-wèn-'nà·ge·de* 'always asking about this or that'

**Point 5. Sentence Predicates.**

Observe this sentence:

*Wŏ 'téw-téng.* 'I have a headache'.

Literally 'I head ache'. One might take this to be 'my head aches', since *wŏ téw* might very easily mean 'my head'. But to say 'My head has stopped aching' you are most apt to say

*Wŏ bù-'téw-téng-le.* 'I not-head-ache have-started.'

In other words, *'téw-téng* is a kind of predicate, meaning 'to have a headache', and you can do with it just what you can do with a word like *hăw*: *wŏ bù-'hăw-le* 'I've gotten not well.'

Since a predicate of this kind itself consists of a noun (*téw*) followed by an adjective or verb (in this case an adjective *téng* 'to hurt'), it may be called a *sentence-predicate.*

Here are some other sentences with sentence-predicates:

*Wŏ 'yá-téng.* 'I have a toothache.'

*Wŏ bù-'yá-téng-le.* 'My toothache has stopped.'

*Wó 'shĕw-téng.* 'I have a pain in my hand.'

*Wŏ bù-'shĕw-téng-le.* 'The pain in my hand has stopped.'

In other words, you can make up sentence-predicates like this for yourself by using the name of a part of the body followed by the adjective *téng* 'to hurt'.

There are other sentences of the same kind, which you will learn later. If you will look out for them you will know what changes you can make in them. Thus in addition to *wŏ 'téw-téng* and *wŏ bù-'téw-téng-le* you can say

*Wŏ 'téw-téng·de 'hĕn.* 'My head hurts very badly.'

*'Tyān·chì yī·'lĕng, wŏ jyèw 'téw-téng-le.* 'Once the weather turns cold I right away get a headache.'

*Wó 'yĕw-yì·dyăr 'téw-téng.* 'I have a bit of a headache.'

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Be sure you have the meaning of all the following sentences in mind. They constitute a little story, which you should be able to understand very easily.

1. *Wó yĕw yí·ge-'péng·yew cháng yĕw-'bìng.*
2. *Wŏ 'háw-jĭ·tyān méy-'kàn·jyàn ta-le.*
3. *Dzwó·tyan wó gĕy tā-'jyā·li dă dyàn·'hwà.*
4. *Tā-'tày·tay shwō tā-'bìng-le.*
5. *Wŏ 'wèn-ta, shr̀ 'shém·me-bìng.*
6. *Tā shwō shr̀ shāng·'fēng.*
7. *Wŏ shwō wó 'wăn·shang chywù 'kàn-ta.*
8. *Chr̄-le wăn·'fàn wŏ dàw tā-'jyā-chywu-le.*
9. *Tā dzày 'chwáng·shang dzwò·je.*
10. *Tā shyàw·je shwō: "'Shyè·shye nĭ láy 'kàn-wo.'*
11. *Tā shwō tā 'téw-téng, fā-'shāw.*
12. *Tā·de-'yī·sheng bú-shìng-'Jāng, yĕ bú-shìng-'Jàw.*
13. *Shr̀ shìng-'Dèng·de, 'Dèng-yī·sheng.*
14. *'Dèng-yī·sheng hĕn yĕw-'míng.*
15. *Shr̀ 'shī·yī, bú·shr 'Jūng·yī.*
16. *Wŏ-péng·yew·de-'tày·tay shyăng 'Jūng·yī bĭ 'shī·yī hăw.*
17. *Tā shyăng 'shī·yī jŕ yĕw 'wày·kē hăw.*
18. *Kĕ·shr 'tā yàw 'shī·yī.*
19. *Tā-chr̄·de shr̀ 'wày·gwo-yàw.*

20. *Bìng-le yí·ge lǐ·'bày, shyàn·dzày 'yǐ·jīng 'hǎw-le.*

21. *Tā-'tày·tay shwō, rè·shr tā chī 'Jūng·gwo yàw, 'sān·tyān jyèw 'hǎw-de·lyǎw.*

22. *Wǒ gàw·su ta 'dzày yáng 'jǐ·tyān.*

23. *Děng tā 'hǎw-le yǐ·'hèw 'dzày chywù dzwò-'shr̀.*

*2.* Here is another group of the same kind.

1. *Wǒ yěw yí·ge-'péng·yew ày shwō-'hwà.*
2. *'Báy·tyān shwō-'hwà, 'yè·li 'yě shwō-hwà.*
3. *Chī·je 'fàn shwō-'hwà, hē·je 'shwěy yě shwō-'hwà.*
4. *Shwèy·'jáw-le tā·de-hwà bí 'shǐng·je-de·shŕ·hew 'háy dwō.*
5. *Yěw shém·me-jywù·'hwèy, tā lǎw 'ày jàn·chi-lay shwō-'hwà.*
6. *'Yěw·de-shŕ·hew tā-shwō·de 'tày dwō-le, 'rén dēw 'bú-ày tīng-ta-le.*
7. *Tā jyèw 'shwō yí·ge-'shyàw·hwàr.*
8. *Shwō·'wán-le rè·shr méy·yew rén 'shyàw, tā jyèw 'dz̀·jǐ 'dà-shyàw.*
9. *Yěw-yì·tyān wǒ chywù 'kàn-ta.*
10. *Dzày 'chwāng·hu-'wày·byan tīng·je hǎw 'shyàng tā-'wū·dz·li yěw 'sān-sz̀·ge-rén dzày 'lǐ·byan shwō-'hwà.*
11. *Déng wǒ 'jìn-chywu yī-'kàn, tā 'yí·ge-rén dz̀·jǐ-gēn-'dz̀·jǐ shwō-'hwà-ne.*
12. *Tā 'lǎw shr̀ 'kwày·lwò·de.*
13. *Méy·yew 'bú-kwày·lwo de·shŕ·hew.*

*3.* Fill the blanks in the following sentences; clues are given in English in parentheses:

a. *'Yá-téng děy chywù jyàn* .......... (dentist).

b. *Lyán·hé·'gwó yí·'dìng shr̀* ............ (victorious countries).

c. *'Jè·tsz̀-dà·jàn shr̀ tsúng* ..........(1937) *'chǐ·de.*

d. *Rwèy·'shr̀* (Switzerland) *hé Tǔ·ěr·'chí* (Turkey) *dēw 'bú·shr* .......... (belligerent countries).

e. *Tā·de* ..................(hair is black), *bú·shr̀-Shī·bān·'yá-rén* (Spaniard) *jyèw·shr Yì·dà·'lì-rén* (Italian).

f. *Jè·bǎ-'dāw·dz bǐ* ............ (sharper than that one).

g. *Yùng* ...... (chopsticks) *chī Jūng·gwo-'fàn hěn* ...... (easy).

h. *Dzày fàn·'gwǎn·dz·li chī·'wán-le 'fàn děy lyéw·shya* ...... (tip).

i. *Jàw·shyàng·'jī yùng·de* ...... (lens), *bú·shr* ...... (mirror).

413

### Yí·ge-' Shyàw·hwar

*Yĕw yí·ge-lăw-'téw·dz yĕw yí·ge-'ér·dz, yí·ge-'swēn·dz. 'Yĕw-yì·tyān lăw-'téw·dz shwō tā 'téw-téng, yàw chr̄ téw·téng·'yàw. Tā jyèw gĕy-le tā-'swēn·dz yí·kwày-'chyán, jyàw-ta dàw yàw·'pù-chywu măy téw·téng·'yàw.*

*Jè·ge-shyăw-'háy·dz 'méy-dàw yàw·'pù-chywu. Tā dàw dyàn·yĭng·'ywàn-chywu-le. Tā ná nèy·kwày-'chyán măy-le dyàn·yĭng·'pyàw-le. Kàn·'wán-le dyàn·'yĭng, tā tsáy hwéy-'jyā-chywu.*

*Dàw-le 'jyā·li, nà·ge-lăw-'téw·dz 'wèn-ta, 'Ní 'dzĕm·me chywù-le 'jè·me-jyĕw? Géy-wó 'măy·de 'yàw-ne?'*

*Nà·ge-'háy·dz shwō, 'wŏ 'méy-chywù măy-'yàw, wŏ kàn dyàn·'yĭng-chywu-le.'*

*Lăw-'téw·dz 'yī tīng, jyèw shēng-'chì-le. Tā jyèw 'dă tā·de-'swēn·dz. Kĕ·shr tā hĕn 'ày tā·de-'swēn·dz, swó·yi 'dă·de yì·'dyár yĕ bù-'téng.*

*Dă-le yì·shyē-'shŕ·hew, lăw-'téw·dz·de-'ér·dz jyèw bú-'ywàn·yì-le. Tā jyèw dă tā-'dz̀·jĭ·de-'lyăn. Lăw-'téw·dz 'kàn·jyàn-le, jyèw 'wèn-ta, 'wèy-shém·me 'dz̀·jí dă 'dz̀·jĭ·de-lyăn. Tā-'ér·dz 'hwéy·dá shwō, 'Ní dá 'wŏ-ér·dz, wó yé dá 'nĭ-ér·dz.'*

*Lăw-'téw·dz 'tīng·jyan-le, jyèw 'shyàw-le. Shwō, "Hăw-ba. Wŏ 'bù-dá nĭ-'ér·dz-le. Wŏ·de-'téw·téng yé 'hăw-le.'*

*Tā-'swēn·dz shwō, 'yĭ·'hèw nín 'dzày 'téw-téng, 'bú-yùng chywù măy-'yàw. Géy-wo yí·kwày-'chyán jyèw 'hăw-le.'*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN

### Conversation 1

*'Lwó hé yí·ge-shāng-'bīng tán-'hwà.*

Ywàn·'jăng: *Jè shr̀ 'Ywú-Dé·'shèng.*
*Tā dzày chyán·'shyàn shèw·de 'shāng.*
*'Yăng-le yí·ge-dwō-'ywè-le.*
*'Kwày hăw-le.*

Ross: *Nĭ 'dzĕm·me shèw·de 'shāng?*

Ywú: *Nà·tyān-'yè·li wŏ dzày hé·'àn·shang·de-jàn·'háw·li.*

Ross: *Shr̀ Hwáng·'hé-ma?*

Ywú: *'Shr̀. Yè·li hĕn 'àn.*
*Tā·men yì·'jŕ 'shyàng wŏ·men fàng-'pàw.*
*Wŏ·men 'jr̄·dàw dí·ren yàw gwò-'hé-lay, jyèw dēw 'shyăw·shīn-je.*
*Dàw-le 'dzăw·chen-'wú·dyăn-jūng, 'tyān kwày 'lyàng de·shŕ·hew, wŏ 'tīng·jyàn yĕw-'rén shwō-'hwà.*

*Hăw 'shyàng shr̀ dzày 'hé·li.*

*Wŏ 'jr̄·dàw tā·men dzwò·je 'chwán láy-le.*

*Swó·yi wŏ yùng-'shīn tīng·je.*

*Hèw·lay wŏ 'tīng·chū-lay tā·men-shwō·de 'bú·shr 'Jūng·gwo-hwà.*

*Wŏ jyèw kāy-'chyāng 'dă tā·men.*

*Fàng-le 'jĭ·chyāng tā·men 'yĕ kāy-'chyāng-le.*

*Gwò-le 'jĭ·fēn-jūng wŏ·men·de-lyán·'jăng láy-le.*

*'Lyăng·byān yèw 'dă-le yĕw 'shŕ·fēn-jūng.*

*Tā·men jyèw 'hwéy·dàw bĕy·'àn-chywu-le.*

Ross: *Nĭ 'dzĕm·me 'shāng·de-ne?*

Ywú: *Hā·hā! Shr̀ wŏ-'dz̀·jĭ bù-'shyăw·shīn.*

*Wŏ 'tīng·jyàn tā·men 'dzĕw-le, wŏ jyèw tsúng jàn·'háw·li 'jàn·chi-lay 'kàn.*

*Wŏ 'gāng jàn·chi-lay, jyèw yĕw yí·ge-dz̀·'dàn tsúng wŏ·de-'téw·shang 'fēy·gwo-chywu-le.*

*Yèw yĕw yí·ge-dz̀·'dàn tsúng wŏ·de-téw·'pí·shang 'tsā·gwo-chywu.*

Ross: *'Téng-bu·téng-nga?*

Ywú: *'Dzĕm·me bù-'téng-nga?*

*Wŏ dàw yī·'ywàn de·shŕ·hew, wŏ 'yī-lyăn dēw shr̀-'shywĕ.*

Ywàn·'jăng: *Tā dàw yī·'ywàn de·shŕ·hew 'háy chàng-gē-ne.*

*Wŏ 'wèn-ta, 'Nĭ 'dzĕm·me jè·me-'kwày·lwò?'*

*Tā shwō, 'wŏ·men 'shāng-le 'chī·ge-rén; tā·men yĕw yì·'lyán-rén, bú·shr 'sz̆-le jyèw·shr 'shāng-le.*

*Wó 'dzĕm·me 'bú-kwày·lwò-ne?'*

## Conversation 2

*'Chyán yàw gēn-'Lwó dàw 'Shī·ān-chywu.*

Ross: *Wŏ·men míng·tyan-'wăn·shang dzwò hwŏ·'chē dàw 'Shī·ān-chywu.*

Chyán: *Shr̄·'jăng shwō jyàw-wo 'sùng nĭ·men-chywu.*

Ross: *Nà hăw 'jí-le.*

*Wŏ 'láy de·shŕ·hew 'méy-dzày 'Shī·ān 'kàn-yi·kàn.*

*'Jè-yí·tsz̀, nĭ ké·yi 'dày·je wo 'kàn·kàn.*

Chyán: *'Hăw. Nĭ dzày 'Shī·ān jù 'jĭ·tyān?*

Ross: *Bù-yí·'dìng. Yé·shywu jù 'sān-sz̀·tyān.*

Chyán: *Nà·me wŏ·men bù-néng dàw hén-'ywăn·de-dì·fang-chywu.*

*Jyèw dzày chéng-'lĭ kàn-yi·kàn-ba.*

*Wó yĕw yí·ge-dì·di, dzày 'Shī·ān nyàn-'shū.*

Ross: *Tā 'jīn·nyán 'dwō·shaw-swèy-le?*

Chyán: *'Èr·shr·'yī-swèy.*

Ross: *Wǒ shyǎng chíng nǐ·men chr̄-'fàn.*
*Chíng-'nǐ jyàw-'tsày.*

Chyán: *'Wǒ chíng-'nǐ, hǎw-le.*

Ross: *'Nǐ 'yǐ·jīng 'chǐng·gwo wǒ háw-jǐ·'tsż-le.*
*'Jè-yí·tsż yīng·gāy 'wǒ chǐng.*
*Shyàn·dzày wǒ·men 'chū-chywu 'dzěw-yi·dzěw, 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*
*Dàw nà·ge-'shān·shang-chywu, 'hǎw-bu·hǎw?*

Chyán: *Tsúng 'jè·li kàn·je hěn 'jìn.*
*'Dzěw·chi-lay yàw yì·'dyǎn-dwō-jūng.*

Ross: *Nǐ·de-'bìng tsáy 'hǎw-le, 'bú·yàw dzěw 'nà·me-dwō·de-'lù-ba.*

Chyán: *'Yé hǎw. Nà·me, wǒ·men dàw 'chyán·byan·de-'shyǎw·shān·shang-chywu 'kàn-yi·kan-ba.*

## Conversation 3

*'Chyán hé-'Lwó dàw yí·dzwò-shyǎw·'shān·shang-chywu.*

Chyán: *Yùng jè·ge wàng·ywǎn·'jìng kàn.*

Ross: *À! Wǒ 'kàn-de·jyàn 'Túng·gwān.*
*Kě·shr kàn-bu·'jyàn Hwáng·'hé.*

Chyán: *Hwáng·'hé·de-'àn hěn 'gāw.*
*Tsúng 'jè·li ké·yi kàn·jyan 'àn·shang·de-jàn·'háw, kě·shr kàn-bu·'jyàn Hwáng·'hé.*

Ross: *Hǎw 'shyàng yéw 'lyǎng·dàw-jàn·'háw.*

Chyán: *Yí·'gùng yéw 'wǔ·dàw-jàn·'háw.*
*'Yěw·de kàn-bu·'jyàn.*

Ross: *Ř·běn-'rén yùng fēy·'jī láy 'jà-ma?*

Chyán: *'Yěw·de-shŕ·hew 'láy.*
*Swó·yi jè·ge-'dì·fang jyèw·shr 'bù-dǎ-jàng, 'yě 'cháng·chang yéw sž·'shāng.*

Ross: *'Chyán·byan-nà shř shém·me-dì·fang?*

Chyán: *Nà shř sż·lìng·'bù.*

Ross: *'Dwèy-le. Sż·lìng·'bù-'hèw·byan shř bīng·'yíng.*
*Wǒ dàw nà·li 'chywù·gwo.*
*'Ywǎn kàn hǎw 'shyàng méy·yew 'fáng·dz shř·de.*
*'Jìn kàn tsáy néng 'kàn·chū-láy shř 'fáng·dz.*
*'Nà shř yī·'ywàn, 'dwèy-bu·dwèy?*

Chyán: *Wǒ bù-'jr̄·dàw nà shř 'shém·me-dì·fang.*
*Yī·'ywàn dzày wǒ·men·de-'dūng·byan.*
*'Jè shř dzày 'shī·byan.*
*Wǒ shyǎng, 'bú·shr lyèw·shr·'yī-'twán-twán·'bù 'jyèw·shr 'pàw·bīng-sż·lìng·'bù.*

# FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| *·*bày* | 'defeat' (see *jàn·bày·'gwó*) |
| **bīng* N | 'soldier' (see *shāng-'bīng*) |
| *bīng·'yíng* N | 'barracks' |
| **bìng* A, N | 'sick, sickness' (see *yăng-'bìng*) |
| *bìng·'fáng* N | 'sickroom' |
| ·*bù* | added to the term for any military unit to mean unit headquarters. (see *sž·lìng·bù, jywù·lwò·'bù*) |
| *bù·'dwèy* N | 'unit' (of unspecified size or nature) |
| *·*chăng* | 'open space' (see *jàn·'chăng*) |
| **chē* N | 'car, cart, wheeled vehicle' (see *jàn·'chē, tăn·kè·'chē*) |
| **chr̄* V | 'eat' |
| *chr̄-'yàw* | 'take medicine' (internally) |
| **chū* V | 'exit' (see *kàn·chū, tīng·chū*) |
| **chyāng* N | 'small arms' |
| *chyāng* M | 'round' (of ammunition) |
| ·*dá* | 'reply' (see *'hwéy·dá*) |
| **dà* A | 'big' |
| *dà-'jàn* N | 'world war' |
| *'dà-shyàw* V, N | 'to laugh (at)'; 'a big laugh' |
| **dàw* M | for *háw* 'ditch', or any other long thin thing along which one can travel. |
| **dwèy* | 'unit' (see *bù·'dwèy*) |
| **fā* V | 'give out, send out' |
| *fā-'shāw, fā·'shāw* | 'have fever; fever' |
| *·*fáng* | 'house, room' (see *bìng·'fáng, yăng·bìng·'fáng, yàw·'fáng*) |
| **fēng* N | 'wind, breeze' (see *shāng-'fēng, 'jùng shāng-'fēng*) |
| **gwān* N | 'official, officer' (see *yī·'gwān*) |
| **gwó* M | 'country' (see *jàn·bày·'gwó, jàn·shèng·'gwó, jyāw·jàn·'gwó*) |
| *háw* N | 'ditch' (M *dàw*) (see *jàn·'háw*) |
| **hăw* H | 'very much' |
| *hăw 'shyàng . . . (shr̀·de)* | 'seems to be', 'seems very much as though . . .' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *hwà N | 'speech' (see '*shyàw·hwà*, '*shyàw·hwàr*) |
| 'hwéy·dá V | 'answer, reply' (in talking) |
| *hwéy V | 'return (to)' |
| *hwèy N | 'meeting, organization' (see *jywù-'hwèy*) |
| jàn N | 'battle' (see *dà-'jàn*, *jyāw·jàn·'gwó*) |
| jàn·bày·'gwó N | 'defeated countries' |
| jàn·'chǎng N | 'battlefield' |
| jàn·'chē N | 'tank' |
| jàn·'háw N | 'trench' |
| jàn·shèng·'gwó N | 'victorious countries' |
| 'jàn·shr̀ N | 'warfare, a war' |
| *·jǎng | 'person in charge of' (see *ywàn·'jǎng*) |
| *jàw V | 'to shine on, brighten up' |
| jàw 'jìng·dz | 'to look in a mirror' |
| *·jǐ | 'machine, apparatus' (see *lyéw·shēng·'jǐ*) |
| jìng | 'lens, mirror' (see *wàng·ywǎn·'jìng*) |
| 'jìng·dz N | 'mirror' (sometimes 'lens') (see *jàw 'jìng·dz*) |
| jìng·'téw N | 'lens' |
| *·Jūng | 'China' |
| 'Jūng·yī N | 'Chinese herbal doctor' |
| *jùng A, H | 'heavy, heavily' |
| 'jùng shāng-'fēng | 'catch pneumonia' |
| jùng·shāng·'fēng | 'pneumonia' |
| *jyāw V | 'make contact' |
| jyāw·jàn·'gwó N | 'belligerent countries' |
| *jyàw V | 'order' |
| jyàw-'tsày | 'order the dishes' (in a restaurant) |
| *jyèw H | 'right away' (see *bú·shr* . . . *jyèw·shr* . . .) |
| jywù V | 'assemble' |
| jywù-'hwèy | 'hold a get-together, assemble' |
| jywù·lwò·'bù N | 'recreation hall, club' |
| *kàn V | 'look at' |
| 'kàn·chū(·láy) RC | 'make out, manage to see' |
| *·kē M | 'branch of study' (see '*nèy·kē*, '*wày·kē*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_·kě_ | 'may, able to' (see _shywú·'kě_) |
| *_kěw_ N | 'mouth' (see _shāng·'kěw_) |
| _·kù_ | 'storage' (see _yàw·'kù_) |
| *_kwày_ A | 'fast; sharp (as of a knife)' |
| _'kwày·dz_ N | 'chopsticks' |
| _'kwày·lwò_ A | 'cheerful' |
| *_lǎw_ A | 'old, long-standing' |
| _lǎw-'téw·dz_ N | 'old man' |
| _·lìng_ | 'command, order' (see _sž·lìng·'bù_) |
| _·lwò_ | 'be merry' (see _jywù·lwò·'bù_, _'kwày·lwò_) |
| _lyéw_ V | 'leave behind, retain' |
| _lyéw·shēng·'jī_ N | 'phonograph' |
| _'lyéw·shyà_ RC | 'retain, hold back, keep back' |
| *_·míng_ | 'name' (see _yěw-'míng_) |
| _·nèy_ | 'inside' |
| _'nèy·kē_ | 'medicine' (as opposed to surgery) |
| *_nèy_ | same as _nà_ 'that' |
| *_pí_ N | 'skin, leather' (see _téw·'pí_) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_·pù_ | 'store' (see _yàw·'pù_) |
| _Rwèy·'shř N_ | 'Switzerland' |
| _shāng_ N | 'wound' (see _shèw-'shāng_, _sž·'shāng_) |
| _shāng-'bīng_ N | 'wounded soldiers' |
| _shāng-fēng_ | 'catch cold' (see _'jùng shāng·'fēng_) |
| _shāng·'fēng_ N | 'a cold' |
| _shāng·'kěw_ N | 'opening of a wound, face o a wound' |
| *_shàng_ | 'up, on' |
| _shàng-'yàw_ | 'apply medicine' (externall |
| *_shāw_ V | 'heat up, warm up' (see _fā-'shāw_) |
| *_·shēng_ M | 'tone, noise, sound' (see _lyéw·shēng·'jī_) |
| *_·shēng_ | 'one who does such-and-such' (see _'yī·sheng_) |
| *_shèng_ N | 'victory' (see _jàn·shèng·'gwò_) |
| _shèw_ V | 'receive' (unexpectedly and passively) |
| _shèw-'shāng_ | 'get wounded' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **shī* | 'west' |
| *'shī·yī* N | 'doctor trained in western medicine' |
| *Shī·bān·'yá* N | 'Spain' |
| **shīn* N | 'heart, mind, attention' (see *'shyǎw·shīn, yùng-'shīn*) |
| *·shr̀* | 'like, seemingly' (see *hǎw shyàng . . . shr̀·de*) |
| **shr̀* N | 'business, affairs, matters' (see *jàn·'shr̀*) |
| **shyà* | 'down' (see *'lyéw·shyà*) |
| **shyàng* V | 'resemble, seem to be' (see *hǎw 'shyàng*) |
| **shyǎw* A | 'small' |
| *'shyǎw·shīn* A | 'to be careful' |
| **·shyàw* | 'school' (see *yī·shywé·'shyàw*) |
| *shyàw* V | 'laugh, laugh at, be amused by' (see *'dà shyàw*) |
| *'shyàw·hwà* V | 'laugh at, make fun of' |
| *'shyàw·hwàr* N | 'joke, funny story' |
| **shywé* V | 'learn' (see *'yī·shywé, yī·shywé·'shyàw*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| **shywǔ* V | 'be permitted to' |
| *shywú·'kě* N | 'permission' |
| *·sz̄* | 'control, deal with' |
| *sz̄·lìng·'bù* N | 'command post' |
| **sž* I | 'die' |
| *sž·'shāng* N | 'casualties, dead and wounded' |
| *tǎn·kè·'chē* N | 'tank' |
| *téng* A | 'have a pain, hurt' (see *'téw-téng, 'yá-téng*) |
| **téw* | 'head' (see *jǐng·'téw, lǎw-'téw·dz*) |
| *téw·'pí* N | 'scalp' |
| *'téw-téng* A | 'have a headache' |
| *téw·téng·'yàw* N | 'headache medicine' |
| **tīng* V | 'listen' |
| *'tīng·chū(·láy)* RC | 'make out (listening), manage to hear' |
| **tsày* N | 'food other than rice and staples' (see *jyàw-'tsày*) |
| *Tǔ·ěr·'chí* N | 'Turkey' |
| *wàng* K | 'looking towards; towards' |
| *wàng·ywǎn·'jìng* N | 'telescope, field glasses' |

420

| | |
|---|---|
| *_wày_ | 'outside' |
| _'wày·kē N_ | 'surgery' (in contrast to internal medicine) |
| *_yá_ N | 'tooth' |
| _'yá-téng_ A | 'have a toothache' |
| _'yá-yī·sheng_ N | 'dentist' |
| _yăng_ V | 'recuperate from, rest up after an illness' |
| _yăng-'bìng_ | 'recuperate from an illness' |
| _yăng·bìng·'fáng_ N | 'sick room, sick ward' |
| *_yàw N_ | 'medicine' (see _chř-'yàw, shàng-'yàw, téw·téng·'yàw_) |
| _yàw·'fáng N_ | 'medical supply room' |
| _yàw·'kù_ N | 'storage space for medicines' |
| _yàw·'pù_ N | 'drug store' (for drugs only) |
| *_yĕw_ V | 'to have' |
| _yĕw-'míng_ | 'be famous' |
| *·_yī_ | 'medicine' (see _'Jūng·yī, 'shī·yī_) |
| _yī·'gwān_ N | 'medical officer' |
| _'yī·sheng_ N | 'doctor' (see _'yá-yī·sheng_) |
| _'yī·shywé_ N | 'medicine' (as a field of study) |
| _yī·shywé·'shyàw_ N | 'medical school' |
| _yī·'ywàn_ N | 'hospital' |
| Yì·_dà·'lì_ N | 'Italy' |
| ·_yíng_ | 'camp' (see _bīng·'yíng_) |
| *_yùng_ V | 'use' |
| _yùng-'shīn_ | 'be watchful, diligent' |
| *_ywăn_ A | 'far away' (see _wàng·ywăn 'jìng_) |
| *·_ywàn_ | 'court, garden' (see _yī·'ywàn_) |
| _ywàn·'jăng_ N | 'head of a hospital' |

## UNIT 22

# AN ACCIDENT

## SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

*Ross and Chyán have just helped save a man from drowning and have brought him in to Dr. Dèng at the hospital.*

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| to pick up and carry | *'táy* |
| We've brought you a patient. | *Wǒmen géy-ni táy-le yí·ge-'bìng-rén-lay.* |
| to fall in *or* on | *'dyàw·dzày* |
| He fell into the river. | *Tā dyàw·dzay 'hé·li-le.* |
| | *Dèng* |
| Nurse! | *'Kàn·hu!* (or *kān·hu*) |
| to be wet | *shr̄* |
| Quick! Take off his wet clothes. | *'Kwày bǎ tā·de-'shr̄-yī·shang 'twō·shya-lay.* |
| body | *'shēn·dz* |
| Dry his body. | *Bǎ tā·de-'shēn·dz tsā·'gān-le.* |
| Give him hot tea to drink. | *Gěy-ta rè-'chá hē.* |
| fingers | *shěw·'jŕ·tew* |
| to be wounded *or* broken | *pwò* |
| to bleed | *lyéw-'shywě* |
| His fingers are wounded; the blood is still dripping. | *Tā·de-shěw·'jŕ·tew 'pwò-le, háy lyéw-'shywě-ne.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| a bandage | *bēng·'dày* |
| to wrap up | *'gwǒ·shàng* |
| Put some medicine on it and bandage it. | *Shàng-le 'yàw yùng bēng·'dày 'gwǒ·shang.* |
| on the body | *'shēn·shang* |
| Is there any other wound on his body? | *Tā-'shēn·shang háy yěw 'byé·de-shāng-ma?* |
| | *'Kàn·hu* |
| legs | *twěy* |
| arms | *'gē·be* |
| Some on his legs and arms. | *'Twěy·shang hé 'gē·be·shang dēw yěw-'shāng.* |
| Can't see whether there are any anywhere else or not. | *'Byé·de-dì·fang kàn-bu·'chū yěw-'shāng méy·yew.* |
| | *Dèng* |
| Not bad. | *Háy 'hǎw.* |
| He won't die. | *Sž-bu·'lyǎw.* |
| to get warm | *'nwǎn·he·gwò-láy* |
| He'll be all right after he has warmed up. | *Děng tā 'nwǎn·he·gwò-lay jyèw bú-'yàw·jǐn-le.* |
| After recuperating one or two days he'll be OK. | *'Dzày yǎng yì-lyǎng·'tyān jyèw 'hǎw-le.* |
| to rescue | *'jyèw·chǐ-láy* |
| Where did you rescue him? | *Nǐ·men dzày 'shém·me-dì·fang bǎ-ta 'jyèw·chi-lay·de?* |
| | *Ross* |
| In the river out in front. | *Dzày chyán·byan·de-'hé·li.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| horse | *mǎ* |
| to ride a horse | *chí-'mǎ* |
| We were horseback riding on the main road. | *Wǒ·men 'jèng dzày 'dà·lù·shang chí-'mǎ.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| suddenly | *'hū·rán* |
| to cry out | *hǎn* |
| to save a life | *jyèw-'mìng* |
| Suddenly we heard him call out for help. | *'Hū·rán tīng·jyan ta 'hǎn jyèw-'mìng.* |
| the middle | *dāng·'jūng* |
| We went to the river bank and saw that he'd fallen into the river. | *Wǒ·men dàw hé·'àn yī-'kàn, tā dyàw·dzay hé-dāng·'jūng-le.* |
| | *Dèng* |
| to be frozen | *dùng* |
| Isn't the river frozen? | *'Hé bú·shr 'dùng-le-ma?* |
| | *Ross* |
| ice | *bīng* |
| to be thick | *hèw* |
| Near the banks the ice was frozen quite thick. | *Lí-'àn-'jìn·de-dì·fang dùng·de-'bīng hěn 'hèw.* |
| to flow | *lyéw* |
| In the center the water flows fast. | *Hé-dāng·'jūng·de-shwěy lyéw·de 'kwày.* |
| to be thin | *báw* |
| So the ice is thin. | *Swó·yi dùng·de-'bīng hěn 'báw.* |
| | *Dèng* |
| He must not have known that. | *Tā yí·'dìng shr̀ bù-jr̄·'dàw.* |
| When he walked there he fell through. | *'Dzěw·daw nà·li jyèw 'dyàw·shyà-chywu-le.* |
| How come you didn't fall in when you were rescuing him? | *Nǐ·men 'jyèw-tā de·shŕ·hew, dzěm·me 'méy-dyàw·shya-chywu-ne?* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Chyán* |
| wood | *'mù·tew* |
| plank | *'bǎn·dz* |
| We found a piece of wooden plank to put on the ice. | *Wǒ·men 'jǎw-le yí·kwày-mù·tew-'bǎn·dz gē·dzay 'bīng·shang.* |
| To pull something out | *'lā·chū-láy* |
| We stood on the plank and pulled him out. | *Jàn·dzay 'bǎn·dz·shang bǎ-ta 'lā·chu-lay·de.* |
| | *Ross* |
| to faint | *'hwēn·gwò-chywu* |
| By that time he was so cold that he fainted. | *'Nà-shŕ·hew tā 'yǐ·jīng 'dùng·de 'hwēn·gwo-chywu-le.* |
| to lie on *or* at | *'tǎng·dzày* |
| to close (the eyes) | *bì* |
| eyes | *'yǎn·jing* |
| He lay on the river bank with his eyes closed as if he were dead. | *Tā tǎng·dzay 'àn·shang, bì·je 'yǎn·jing, shyàng 'sž-le shř·de.* |
| nose | *'bí·dz* |
| I listened and found him ('his nose') still breathing. | *Wǒ 'tīng-le-yi·tīng, tā·de-'bí·dz·li 'háy yěw-chì.* |
| to jump | *'tyàw* |
| His heart was beating too. | *Tā·de-'shīn háy 'tyàw-ne.* |
| Then we put him on the plank. | *Wǒ·men jyèw bǎ-ta gē·dzay 'bǎn·dz·shang.* |
| With the two of us carrying it we brought him here. | *'Lyǎng·ge-rén 'táy·je jyèw bǎ-ta 'táy-lay-le.* |

425

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

### Point 1. Yěw

A

*Wó yéw jǐ·ge-'wày·gwo-péng·yew.* 'I have some foreign friends.'

*Tā yéw hěn-'dwō(·de)-chyán.* 'He has a lot of money.'

*Nǐ yěw-'yān méy·yew?* 'Have you any cigarettes?'

*Yěw* is used, first of all, like English *have,* to indicate *possession,* more or less intimate.

B

*'Yěw-méy·yew bǐ-'jè·ge-hǎw·de-'yān?* 'Are there any cigarettes better than these?'

*Yéw hěn-'dwō(·de)-yān.* 'There are many cigarettes.'

*Yěw* is used also, with no subject before it, to indicate *existence.*

C

*Yěw-'rén bú-'ywàn·yì dzwò-'mǎy·mày.* 'There are men who aren't willing to go into business.'

*'Yěw-rén shwō tā hěn bù-'hǎw.* 'There are people who say he's no good.'

*Yěw* is used followed by a noun which itself is followed by a verb, practically as equivalent to English 'there are —— who' do so-and-so.

D

*'Yěw·de-nywǔ·rén bú-'ywàn·yì chwān 'húng-yī·shang.* 'Some women won't wear red clothes.'

*'Yěw·de-shyǎw-'háy·dz shr̀ 'nán·de, 'yěw·de shr̀ 'nywǔ·de.* 'Some children are boys, some are girls.'

*Yěw·de* is used to mean *some* (but not all); as in English, it may be followed by a noun (as in the first example and in the first part of the second), or it may itself be used as a noun (as in the last part of the second sentence).

E

*'Jwō·dz·shang yěw-'yān.* 'There are cigarettes on the table.'

*Jè·ge-'chéng·li yěw yéw·jèng·'jywú méy·yew?* 'Is there a post office in this town?'

*'Chē·li yěw kāy-'chē·de-ma?* 'Is there a driver in the car?'

*Yěw* is used preceded by the name of a place to give *location.*

F

*Tā hén yěw-'chyán.* 'He is very rich.'

*Ta hén yěw-'míng.* 'He is very famous.'

*Yěw* is used in special combinations like the action-goal combinations already described (*shwèy-'jyàw, dé-'shèng,* and so on). Thus *yěw-'chyán* 'to be rich', *yěw-'míng* 'to be famous'. Such combinations work like adjectives in that such adverbs as *hěn, tày,* and so on can stand before them. They can hardly be called action-goal combinations, however, since there is no action involved. A good name for them might be *relation goal;* if the only verb which occurred in such things were *yěw,* no special name would be needed, but *yùng-'chyán* 'to use (a lot of) money' is of much the same type.

G

*Tā 'yěw-yi·dyǎr 'bìng.* 'He's a little sick.'

*Jīn·tyan 'yěw-yi·dyǎr 'rè.* 'It's a little hot today.'

*Nà·ge-'chéng lí jè·li yěw dwō-'ywǎn?* 'How far is it from here to that city?'

Almost any *adjective* can be used after *yěw* in a relation-goal construction; the adjective in this position works like a noun, and can be preceded and modified by expressions such as *yi·dyǎr* 'a little'.

### Point 2. Relation-Goal Predicates

A

*Fàn·'gwǎn·dz dzày 'nà·li.* 'The restaurant is over there.'

*Nǐ·de-'jyā dzày shém·me-'dì·fang?* 'Where is your family?'

*Wǒ-'tày·tay bú-dzày 'jyā·li.* 'My wife isn't home.'

Predicates consisting of *dzày* 'to be located at, to be in, at' followed by a place-goal are *relation-goal* constructions, not action-goal constructions. The sentences state a situation which exists, not an action which is performed.

B

*Tā hěn 'yàw-rén bāng-'máng.* 'He very much needs someone to help.'

*Tā shyàn·dzày shyáng-'nǐ.* 'He's thinking of you now.'

*Wó hěn 'ày wǒ-'tày·tay.* 'I love my wife very much.'

*'Nà·ge-rén hěn 'dà, kě·shr wǒ bú-'pà·ta.* 'That man is quite large, but I'm not afraid of him.'

Predicates consisting of one of the verbs *yàw, shyǎng, ày, pà,* or any of the other verbs used as auxiliaries (see Unit XVII, Section B, Point 5), followed by a personal goal or by an object goal instead of by another verb, are relation-goal predicates; they describe a state, rather than mentioning an action.

C

*Tā hěn yěw-'míng.* 'He's quite famous.'

*Tā 'yěw-yi·dyǎr 'bìng.* 'He's a little sick.'

Predicates consisting of *yěw* plus any kind of a goal are relation-goal predicates.

The full importance of the difference between relation-goal predicates and action-goal predicates will appear in a later Unit when the use of *le* is discussed in detail.

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Can you understand all of the following episode? Be sure, and be sure you can repeat all of the sentences fluently.

1. *Wó yěw yí·ge-túng·'shywé·de.*
2. *Tā·shìng-'Lyéw.*
3. *Tā yěw 'èr·bǎy-bàng-jùng.*
4. *'Yěw-yì·tyān tyān·chi hén 'lěng.*
5. *Wǒ·men dàw shywé·'shyàw-'ywàn·dz·de-'wày·byan-chywu 'dzěw-yi·dzěw.*
6. *Dzěw·daw yì·tyáw-shyǎw-'hé-nà·li.*
7. *'Hé 'yǐ·jīng dùng-le 'bīng.*
8. *Nà-'bīng 'kàn·je hǎw 'shyàng hěn 'hèw shr̀·de.*
9. *Jè·wèy-lǎw-'Lyéw jyèw pǎw·daw 'bīng·shang-chywu-le.*
10. *Wǒ shwō ''Shyǎw·shīn·je. Bú·yàw 'dyàw·shya-chywu.'*
11. *Tā shwō ''Bú-yàw·jǐn. Jè-'bīng dùng·de hěn 'hèw. Nǐ 'kàn, wǒ háy ké·yi dzày 'bīng·shang 'tyàw-ne.'*
12. *Tā shwō·'wán-le jyèw 'tyàw.*
13. *Tā tsúng hé·'àn tyáw·daw hé-dāng·'jūng chywù-le.*
14. *Hé-dāng·'jūng·de-'shwěy lyéw·de 'kwày.*
15. *'Bīng háy méy-dùng·'hǎw.*
16. *Tā tyàw·daw 'nà·li, 'hū·rán 'dyàw·shya-chywu-le.*
17. *Tā 'běn·láy jyèw 'jùng.*
18. *Tā·de-'yī·shang 'shr̄-le yǐ·'hèw, 'gèng jùng-le.*
19. *Wǒ-'yí·ge-rén 'bù-néng bǎ-ta 'lā·chu-lay.*
20. *Wǒ yèw 'hǎn-le 'sān·ge-rén tsáy bǎ-ta 'lā·chu-lay·de.*
21. *Wǒ·men bǎ-ta 'lā·chu-lay de·shŕ·hew tā lyán 'téw·fa dēw 'shr̄-le.*
22. *'Háy hǎw tā jŕ yéw 'shěw·shang pwò-le lyǎng·kwày-'pí.*
23. *'Méy·yew byé·de-shāng.*
24. *Kě·shr 'nà·tyān-wǎn·shang tā jyèw fā-'shāw-le.*
25. *Wǒ·men 'jr̄·dàw tā shr̀ shāng-'fēng-le.*
26. *Tā 'bìng-le 'lyǎng·tyān, yèw 'yǎng-le 'lyǎng·tyān, tsáy 'hǎw-de.*

*2.* Do the same with the following sentences.

1. *'Yí·ge-rén yěw 'lyǎng·ge-'gē·be, 'lyǎng·jr̄-'shěw.*
2. *Yì·jr̄-'shěw yéw 'wǔ·ge-shěw·'jŕ·tew.*
3. *Rén yùng 'yǎn·jing 'kàn.*
4. *'Yǎn·jing shr̀ 'kǎn·de.*
5. *'Yěw·de-rén děy dày yǎn·'jìng·dz 'tsáy néng 'kàn-de·jyàn.*

6. *Yì·pí-'mǎ yěw 'sz̀·tyáw-'twěy.*
7. *Rén yùng 'twěy dzěw 'lù.*
8. *Táy·chi 'gē·be-lay.*
9. *Táy·chi 'yèw·twěy-lay.*
10. *Tā·de-dà-shěw·'jŕ·tew 'pwò-le, gěy-ta shàng-'yàw,*
    *yùng bēng·'dày 'gwǒ·shang.*

3. The same again.

1. *Jř·yěw 'jè·běn-shū shr̀ 'wǒ·de.*
2. *'Byé·de dēw 'bú·shr wǒ·de.*
3. *'Jè·ge-yá 'téng, 'byé·de bù-'téng.*
4. *Tā 'yì·jr̄-yǎn·jing kàn-de·'jyàn, 'yì·jr̄ kàn-bu·'jyàn.*
5. *Kàn-bu·'jyàn·de-yǎn·jing, shr̀ 'jèy·jr̄-ne, shr̀*
    *'nèy·jr̄-ne?*
6. *Shr̀ 'dzwó·yǎn-ne, shr̀ 'yèw·yǎn-ne?*
7. *'Jèy·jr̄ kàn-de·'jyàn, 'nèy·jr̄ kàn-bu·'jyàn.*
8. *Kàn-de·'jyàn·de shr̀ 'dzwó·yǎn, kàn-bu·'jyàn·de shr̀*
    *'yèw·yǎn.*
9. *'Dzwó·yǎn shr̀ 'hǎw·de, 'yèw·yǎn 'hwày-le.*

4. The same again.

1. *'Yěw·de-'shr̀ yàw 'cháng 'jì·je.*
2. *'Yěw·de-'shr̀ 'wàng-le tsáy 'hǎw.*
3. *Bú·yàw 'bá-wǒ 'wàng-le.*
4. *Nà·ge-fēy·'jī bú·shr̀ 'dž·jǐ 'dyàw·shya-lay·de, shr̀*
    *wǒ·men·de-'pàw 'dǎ·shya-lay·de.*

11. *Dzày 'Jūng·gwo-jywēn·'dwèy·li, 'kàn·hu chà·bu·dwō*
    *'dēw shr̀ 'nán-rén.*
12. *Yěw kàn·hu-'bīng.*
13. *Yěw kàn·hu-jywēn·'shr̀.*
14. *Háy yěw kàn·hu·'jǎng.*
15. *Yé yéw 'nywǔ-kàn·hu, kě·shr hén 'shǎw.*

10. *Tā·de-'dzwó·twěy shèw-le 'shāng, 'yèw·twéy*
    *hǎw·'háw·de.*
11. *'Bí·dz dzày 'lyǎn·de-dāng·'jūng.*
12. *'Rén rè·shr 'sž-le, 'bí·dz jyèw 'méy·yew 'chì-le.*
13. *Mìng-'hǎw·de-rén bù-yí·'dìng shr̀ yěw-'chyán·de.*
14. *'Chí·bīng bù-'dēw chí-'mǎ.*
15. *Chí-'mǎ·de yě bù-'dēw shr̀ 'chí·bīng.*
16. *'Pàw·bīng 'yé yěw chí-'mǎ·de.*
17. *Jyāw·tūng·'bīng 'yé yěw chí-'mǎ·de.*
18. *'Chí·bīng yé yěw dzwò-'chē·de.*
19. *'Pàw·chē yé yěw yùng-'mǎ-'lā·de.*

5. *Jè·ge-'hé·dz 'pwò-le, gē·dzày-'lǐ·tew·de-dūng·shi*
    *dēw 'dyàw·chu-chywu-le.*
6. *'Shwéy bá wǒ·de-'wǎn dǎ·'pwò-le?*
7. *'Shyǎw·shīn·je ná nà·ge-'wǎn, bú·yàw dǎ·'pwò-le.*

### Yí·ge-'Shyàw·hwàr

*Yí·ge-'rén dàw 'yī·sheng-nà·li-chywu. Tā wèn 'yī·sheng shwō, ‘'Chíng-ni 'gàw·su wo, wǒ 'háy néng 'dzày hwó 'wǔ·shr·nyán-ma?’*

*'Yī·sheng shwō, ‘Nǐ 'jīn·nyan dwō·shaw-'swèy-le?’*

*Tā shwō tā 'sān·shr·'wǔ-swèy-le.*

*'Yī·sheng jyèw wèn-ta shwō, ‘Nǐ chēw-'yān hē-'jyěw·de-ma?’*

*Tā shwō, ‘Bū.’*

*'Yī·sheng 'yèw wèn-ta shwō, ‘Nǐ jyē-'hwēn-le méy·yew?’*

*Tā shwō, ‘'Méy·yew.’*

*'Yī·sheng shwō, ‘Nǐ 'ày dzwò shém·me-'shr̀-ne?’*

*Tā shwō, ‘Wǒ 'shém·me dēw 'bú-ày dzwò.’*

*'Yī·sheng shwō, ‘Nà·me, nǐ 'dzày hwó 'wǔ·shr·nyán 'wèy·de-shr̀ 'shém·me-ne?’*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN

### Conversation 1

*Ross and Chyán call on General Swēn.*

Swēn: *'Tīng·shwō nǐ·men 'jīn·tyan 'jyèw-le yí·ge-rén.*

Ross: *'Dwèy-le.*

Swēn: *'Gàw·su wo nǐ·men dzěm·me 'jyèw·de ta.*

Ross: *'Chyán-tsān·mew hé-wo 'chū-chywu chí-'mǎ.*

*Wǒ·men dzày 'dà·lù·shang pǎw-le 'shr̀·jǐ·fēn-jūng.*

*Dàw·le lí-'hé-bù-'ywǎn·de-dì·fang, wǒ·men shyà-le 'mǎ, dzwò·dzay 'dì·shang tán-'hwà.*

*'Hū·rán tīng·jyan yěw-rén 'hǎn ‘Jyèw-'mìng-nga!’*

*Wǒ·men jyèw 'jàn·chi-lay-le.*

*Yì 'tīng, shr̀ tsúng-hé-'nà·byan-láy·de-'shēng·yīn.*

*Wǒ·men jyèw 'pǎw·gwo-chywu 'kàn.*

*Kàn·jyan nà·ge-'rén dyàw·dzay 'hé·li-le.*

*Wǒ·men jyèw bǎ-ta 'lā·chu-lay, tày·daw yī·'ywàn·li-chywu-le.*

Swēn: *'Hé dùng-le 'bīng, tā 'dzěm·me 'dyàw·shya-chywu-de?*

Ross: *'Hé-lyǎng·'àn·de-'bīng dùng·de 'hèw, dāng·'jūng dùng·de 'báw.*

*Tā dzěw·daw hé-dāng·'jūng jyèw 'dyàw·shya chywu-le.*

*Wǒ·men mǎ·'shàng jǎw-le yí·kwày-mù·tew-'bǎn·dz, gē·dzay 'bīng·shang.*

*Jàn·dzay mù·tew-'bǎn·dz·shang jyèw dyàw-bu·shyà-chywu-le.*

**Swēn:** *'Dwèy-le.*
*Nǐ 'jr̄·daw jè·ge-'rén shìng 'shém·me, sh*
*'shém·me-dì·fang·de-rén?*

**Ross:** *'Chyán-tsān·mew jr̄·daw.*

**Chyán:** *Tā shìng-'Jàw. Shr̀ 'Hé·nán láy·de.*
*Tā shyǎng dàw 'Shī·ān-chywu.*
*Tā bú-rèn·shr 'lù.*
*Tā 'shēn·shang dày·je 'pū·gày, hěn 'jùng·de.*
*Tā·de-'pū·gày dēw dyàw·dzay 'hé·li-le.*

**Swēn:** *Tā dàw 'Shī·ān-chywu dzwò 'shém·me?*

**Chyán:** *Tā shyǎng chywù dāng-'bīng.*

**Swēn:** *Tā 'jīn·nyan dwō-'dà-le?*

**Chyán:** *Yěw 'sān·shr·swèy-le.*

**Swēn:** *Nǐ gēn 'Dèng-ywàn·jǎng shwō, děng jè·ge rén 'hǎw-le, jyèw jyàw-ta dzày yī·'ywàn·li bāng-'máng-ba.*

**Chyán:** *'Hǎw. Wó mǎ·'shàng jyèw 'chywù.*

**Ross:** *'Wó yě gēn-ni chywù.*

**Swēn:** *'Lwó-shyān·sheng, jīn·tyan-'wǎn·shang wǒ·men yì·'túng chr̄ wǎn·'fàn.*
*Chr̄·wán-le 'fàn nǐ·men ké·yi dàw hwǒ·chē·'jàn-chywu shàng hwǒ·'che.*

**Ross:** *'Jǐ·dyǎn-jūng chr̄-'fàn?*

**Chyán:** *'Chī·dyǎn-jūng. Shyàn·dzày shr̀ 'sż·dyǎn-jūn*

**Ross:** *'Shr̄·jǎng, 'wǎn·shang 'jyàn.*

**Swēn:** *Wǎn·shang 'jyàn.*

## Conversation 2

*In the hospital.*

**Ross:** *'Dèng-ywàn·jǎng, wǒ·men 'yèw láy-le.*

**Dēng:** *'Hwān·yíng, 'hwān·yíng.*
*Tīng·shwō nǐ 'jīn·tyan jyèw 'dzěw-le.*

**Ross:** *'Dwèy-le.*
*Jīn·tyan-'wǎn·shang 'dzěw.*
*Yǐ·'hèw wǒ·men yí·'dìng háy ké·yi jyàn-'myàn.*
*Nǐ 'cháng dàw Chúng·'chìng chywù-ma?*

**Dèng:** *Míng·nyan-'sān·ywè wǒ yé·shywu 'chywù.*
*Míng·nyan-'lyèw·ywè dzày 'Měy·gwo yàw 'kā yí·ge-yī·shywé-'hwèy.*
*Wǒ háy bù-'jr̄·daw wǒ 'néng-bu·néng chywù.*
*Rè·shr wǒ 'chywù, wǒ jyěw yí·'dìng 'shyān dàw Chúng·'chìng.*
*'Nà-shŕ·hew wǒ láy 'kàn-ni.*

**Ross:** *Chíng-ni 'shyān shyě yì·fēng-'shìn géy-wo.*

**Dèng:** *Yí·'dìng, yí·'dìng.*

## Conversation 3

**Chyán:** *'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng shwō, jīn·tyan 'jyèw·chi-lay·de-nà·ge-rén, děng tā 'hǎw-le, ké·yi lyéw·dzay yī·'ywàn·li bāng-'máng.*

**Dèng:** *'Hǎw. Děng tā 'hǎw-le, wǒ 'wèn·wen tā 'ywàn·yi-bu·ywàn·yi dzày 'jè·li dzwò-'shr̀.*
*Jè·ge-rén 'shēn·dz hén 'hǎw.*
*Shwō-'hwà yě 'chīng·chu.*
*'Háy rèn·shr jǐ·ge-'dž.*
*Wó shyǎng tā ké·yi 'dāng yí·ge-'kàn·hu-bīng.*

**Chyán:** *Nà hén 'hǎw.*
*'Wèn-ta de·shŕ·hew yàw 'shyǎw·shin.*
*'Dzwèy-hǎw jr̄·daw tā shr̀ 'shém·me-dì·fang·de-rén, 'jyā·li yěw 'shém·me-'rén, yǐ·'chyán dzwò·gwo shém·me-'shr̀.*
*Shwéy 'jr̄·daw-ne? Yé·shywu shr̀ R̀·'běn-rén jyàw-ta láy·de.*

**Dèng:** *'Dwèy-le.*
*Rè·shr 'nà·me-yàng, wó shyǎng háy·shr chǐng 'byé·rén 'wèn-ta-ba.*
*Děng tā 'hǎw-le yǐ·'hèw wǒ jyàw-ta chywù jyàn-'nǐ, 'hǎw-bu·haw?*

**Chyán:** *'Yé hǎw.*
*Jyàw-ta dàw sz̀·lìng·'bù-chywu.*
*Rè·shr sz̀·lìng·'bù·de-rén shwō ké·yi jyàw-ta dzày 'jè·li bāng-máng, nǐ jyèw 'yùng-ta.*

**Kàn·hu** *Ywàn·'jǎng, dì-shŕ·'chī·hàw-bìng·'chwáng·de-bīng 'hū·rán bù·'hǎw-le.*
*Hǎw 'shyàng méy·yew 'chì-le.*

**Dèng:** *Wǒ chywù 'kàn·kan.*

**Ross:** *'Wǒ·men yě chywù, 'ké·yi-ma?*

**Dèng:** *'Ké·yi.*

## Conversation 4

**Dèng:** *Tā·de-'shīn háy 'tyàw-ne.*
*Shr̀ 'hwēn·gwo-chywu-le.*
*Jè·ge-'bīng-shèw·de-'shāng hěn 'jùng.*
*Tā·de-'shēn·dz yě bú-dà 'hǎw.*
*Tā·de-shāng·'kéw yǎng-le yí·ge-lǐ·'bày-le, háy méy-'hǎw.*

**Ross:** *Shāng·'kěw dzày shém·me-'dì·fang?*

**Dèng:** *Dzày dà·'twěy·shang.*
*Lyéw-le hěn-dwō·de-'shywě.*

**Chyán:** *Tā shr̀-bu·shr gēn 'Ywú-Dé·shèng 'yì-tyān shèw·de 'shāng?*

Dèng: *'Bú·shr̀.*
*Shr̀ 'chyán-yì·tyān.*
*'Kàn·hu! Děng tā 'shǐng-le gěy-ta jè·ge-'yàw chř.*
*Bú·yàw 'jyàw-ta shwō-'hwà.*
*Shyàn·dzày tā 'méy-fā-'shāw.*
*Rè·shr tā fā-'shāw jyèw 'gàw·su wo.*

Kàn·hu *'Shr̀!*

Ross: *Jè·ge-rén hwó-de·'lyǎw-ma?*

Dèng: *Bù-yí·'dìng.*
*Kǔng·'pà hwó-bu·'lyǎw.*
*Jyèw·shr 'hwó-le, yě 'bù-néng hwó dwō·shǎw-'shŕ·hew.*
*Wǒ·men·de-'yàw tày 'shǎw.*
*Lyán bēng·'dày yě bú-gèw 'yùng·de.*

Ross: *Wó shyáng shyě-'shìn dàw 'Měy·gwo-chywu, shwō 'Jūng·gwo shyàn·dzày 'wày·gwo-yàw bú-gèw 'yùng·de.*
*'Chǐng tā·men mǎ·'shàng sùng-'yàw-lay.*

Dèng: *Nà shŕ·'dzày 'hǎw.*
*Dwō-'shyè-ni.*

Ross: *Jè shr̀ wǒ-'yīng·gāy-dzwò·de-'shr̀.*
*'Hǎw-ba. Dzày-'jyàn. Wǒ·men Chúng·'chìng jyàn.*

Dèng *Dzày-'jyàn. Wǒ dàw Chúng·'chìng yí-'chyán géy-ni shyě-'shìn.*

## FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| *'bǎn·dz* N | 'board' |
| **bàng* M, N | 'pound; pound scale' (see *dyàw-'bàng*) |
| *báw* A | 'thin' (in dimension) |
| **běn* | 'source' |
| *'běn·láy* | 'originally, formerly' |
| ·*bēng* | 'tie, bind' |
| *bēng·'dày* N | 'bandage' |
| *'bí·dz* N | 'nose' |
| *bì* V | 'close' (as the eyes) |
| *'bì·shàng* RC | 'close' (as the eyes) |
| *bì-'yǎn* | 'close the eyes' |
| *bīng* N | 'ice' (see *dùng-'bīng*) |
| **bìng* A, N | 'sick; sickness' |
| *bìng·'chwáng* N | 'sickbed' |
| **chē* N | 'car, cart, wheeled vehicle' (see *pàw·'chē*) |
| **chí* V | 'straddle' |
| *chí-'mǎ* | 'ride a horse' |

433

| | |
|---|---|
| *·chĭ | 'rise' (see 'hăn·chĭ, 'jyèw·chĭ, 'táy·chĭ) |
| *chì N | 'air' (see yěw-'chì) |
| *chū V | 'exit' (see 'lā·chū, 'dyàw·chū) |
| chū-'shywě | 'bleed' (as from the gums, without any obvious wound) |
| *chwáng N | 'bed' (see bìng·'chwáng) |
| *dă V | 'strike, hit' |
| 'dă·pwò RC | 'break by striking' |
| 'dă·shyà(láy, chywù) RC | 'bring down' (as a plane) |
| *dà A | 'big' |
| dà-shěw·'jŕ·tew N | 'thumb' |
| dà·'twěy N | 'thigh, upper leg' |
| ·dāng | 'at' |
| dāng·'jūng N | 'middle, center' |
| *dàw K | 'to' (see 'táy·dàw, 'tyàw·dàw) |
| *·dày | 'flexible strip' (see bēng·'dày) |
| dùng I | 'freeze' |
| dùng-'bīng | 'freeze into ice' |
| 'dùng·hăw RC | 'freeze completely, solid' |
| 'dùng·shàng RC | 'freeze up, freeze over' |
| dyàw V | 'lose, drop, fall' |
| dyàw-'bàng | 'lose weight' |
| 'dyàw·chū(láy, chywù) RC | 'drop out, fall out of' |
| 'dyàw·dzày V | 'fall onto' |
| 'dyàw·shyà(láy, chywù) RC | 'drop onto, fall onto' |
| *dzày V | 'at, in' (see 'dyàw·dzày, 'lyéw·dzày, 'tăng·dzày) |
| *dzwŏ | 'left' (side) |
| dzwó·'twěy N | 'left leg' |
| dzwó·'yăn N | 'left eye' |
| 'gē·be N | 'arm' (of the body) |
| gèng H | 'still more' (than before) |
| gwŏ V | 'wrap up' (partially); 'wrap around' |
| 'gwŏ·shàng RC | 'wrap up partially, wrap around' |
| *gwò V | 'pass, go beyond' (see 'hwēn·gwò, 'nwăn·he·gwò, 'tyàw·gwò) |

| | |
|---|---|
| ***hăn*** **I** | 'call out, cry out' |
| ***'hăn·chĭ(·láy)*** **RC** | 'call out, cry out' |
| ***hăn·'jyàw*** **I** | 'yell loudly, shout' |
| ****hăw*** **A** | 'good, OK' (see *'dùng·hăw, mìng 'hăw*) |
| ****hé*** **N** | 'river' (see *tyàw-'hé*) |
| ***hèw*** **A** | 'thick' (in dimension) |
| ***'hū·rán*** | 'suddenly' |
| ***·hù*** | 'protect' (see *'kàn·hu*) |
| ***hwēn*** **A** | 'be faint' |
| ***'hwēn·gwò(chywù)*** **RC** | 'to faint' |
| ***jēng*** **V** | 'open' (as the eyes) |
| ***'jēng·kāy*** **RC** | 'open' (as the eyes) |
| ***jēng-'yăn*** | 'open the eyes' |
| ***·jing*** | (see *'yăn·jing*) |
| ****jìng*** **N** | 'mirror, lens' |
| ****'jìng·dz*** **N** | 'mirror' (sometimes 'lens') (see *yăn·'jìng·dz*) |
| ***'jř·tew*** **N** | 'finger or toe' (see *shĕw·'jř·tew*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| **jūng* | 'middle, center' (see *dāng·'jūng*) |
| **jyàn* V | 'perceive, meet' |
| *jyàn-'myàn* | 'meet someone, meet each other' |
| *jyèw* V | 'save' (a life) |
| *'jyèw·chĭ(·láy)* RC | 'save someone' by pulling him up to a point of safety |
| *jyèw-'mìng* | 'save (my) life!' |
| *kān* V | 'to watch' |
| *'kān·hu* N | 'nurse' |
| **kàn* V | 'look at' |
| *'kàn·hu* N | 'nurse' |
| **kāy* V | 'open, turn on' (see *'jēng·kāy*) |
| **lā* V | 'pull' |
| *'lā·chū(·láy)* RC | 'pull out' |
| **láy* I | 'come' (see *'bĕn·láy*) |
| *lyéw* I | 'flow' |
| *'lyéw·dzày* V | 'flow onto, into' |
| *lyéw-'shywĕ* | 'bleed' (as from a wound) |
| **lyéw* V | 'leave behind, retain' |
| *'lyéw·dzày* V | 'keep (something or someone) at a place |

| | |
|---|---|
| *mă* N | 'horse' (M *pĭ*) (see *chí-'mă, shàng-'mă, shyà-'mă*) |
| *'mă·shàng* (or *mă·'shàng*) H | 'immediately, in a hurry' |
| *mìng* N | 'life; fortune, fate' (see *jyèw-'mìng*) |
| *mìng 'hăw* | 'lucky, blessed' |
| ·*mù* | 'wood' |
| *'mù·tew* N | 'wood' |
| **myàn* N | 'face' (see *jyàn-'myàn*) |
| **nwăn* | 'warm' |
| *'*nwăn·hé* A | 'warm' |
| *'nwăn·he·gwò(-láy)* RC | 'get warm, warm up' |
| **pàw* N | 'large-caliber weapon' |
| *pàw·'chē* N | 'gun carriage' |
| *pĭ* M | for *mă* 'horse' |
| ·*pwò* I | 'break' (as a plate or vase, or skin) (see *'dă·pwò*) |
| **shàng* | 'up' (see *'bì·shàng, 'dùng·shàng, 'gwŏ·shàng, 'mă·shàng, 'shēn·shang*) |
| *shàng-'mă* | 'mount' (a horse) |

| | |
|---|---|
| ·*shēn* | 'body' (of a human being or animal) (see *yì-shēn*) |
| *'shēn·dz* N | 'body' |
| *'shēn·shàng* | 'on the body' |
| **shĕw* N | 'hand' |
| *shĕw·'jř·tew* N | 'finger' (see *dà-shĕw·'jř·tew*) |
| **shīn* N | 'heart' |
| *shīn 'tyàw* | 'heart beats' (either indicating that a man is living, or because of special excitement) |
| *shr̄* A | 'damp, wet' |
| **shyà* | 'down' (see *'dă·shyà, 'dyàw·shyà, 'tăng·shyà*) |
| *shyà-'mă* | 'dismount' (from a horse) |
| **shywĕ* N | 'blood' (see *chū-'shywĕ, lyéw-'shywĕ*) |
| *tăng* I | 'be lying down' (on side or back) |
| *'tăng·dzày* V | 'lie down at' a place |
| *'tăng·shyà* RC | 'lie down' |
| *táy* V | 'carry' (with the hands, when two or more people help) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *'táy·chǐ(-láy)* RC | 'pick up and start to carry' (same way) |
| *'táy·dàw(-láy, chywù)* RC | 'carry to' a place (same way) |
| **téw* N | 'head; end' (see *'jŕ·tew, 'mù·tew*) |
| *twěy* N | 'leg' (see *'dà·twěy, 'dzwó·twěy, 'yèw·twěy*) |
| *tyàw* I | 'jump' (see *shīn 'tyàw*) |
| *'tyàw·dàw (-láy, chywù)* RC | 'jump to' a place |
| *'tyàw·gwò(-láy, chywù)* RC | 'jump over' |
| *tyàw-'hé* | 'commit suicide by jumping in the river' |
| *yǎn* N | 'eye' (M *jr̄*) (see *bì-'yǎn' jēng-'yǎn, dzwó·yǎn, 'yèw·yǎn*) |
| *'yǎn·jing* N | 'eye' |
| *yǎn·'jìng·dz* N | 'spectacles, glasses' |
| **yěw* V | 'have' |
| *yěw-'chì* | 'be breathing' (usually with *bí·dz* 'nose' as the thing that breathes) |
| **yèw* | 'right' |
| *'yèw·twěy* N | 'right leg' |
| *'yèw·yǎn* N | 'right eye' |
| **yī* | 'one; the whole' |
| *yì-'shēn* | 'all one's body' |

# UNIT 23

## BANKING AND THEATER

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

*Ross tells Chyán that he's been to the bank.*

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| to withdraw money | *chywǔ-'chyán* |
| This morning I went to the bank to get some money. | *Jīn·tyan-'shàng·wǔ wǒ dàw yín·'háng chywǔ-'chyán-chywu-le.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| Which bank? | *'Nǎ·ge-yín·háng?* |
| | *Ross* |
| The Central Bank. | *Jūng·'yāng-Yín·háng.* |
| a draft | *hwèy·'pyàw* |
| Early this morning I received a draft. | *Jīn·tyan-'dzǎw·chen wǒ 'jyē·dàw-le yì·jāng-hwèy·'pyàw.* |
| to take (money) out | *'chywǔ·chū-láy* |
| I went at once to the bank and cashed it. | *Wó mǎ·'shàng jyèw dàw yín·'háng-chywu bǎ-'chyán 'chywǔ·chu-lay-le.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| rules | *'gwēy·jywu* |
| to deposit money | *tswén-'chyán* |
| The bank rules are that you have to be a depositor before you can cash a draft. | *Yín·'háng·de-'gwēy·jywu shr̀ dzày-'nà·li-'tswén-chyán·de tsáy néng chywǔ hwèy·'pyàw.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| a guarantor | *'bǎw·jèng·rén* |
| Or else you have to have a guarantor. | *Bù·'rán, jyèw děy yéw 'bǎw·jèng·rén.* |
| How did you cash yours? | *Nǐ shr̀ 'dzěm·me chywǔ·de?* |
| | *Ross* |
| I didn't know that rule. | *Wǒ bù 'jr̄·dàw jè·ge-'gwēy·jywu.* |
| fortunately | *jèng 'hǎw* |
| employee in a bank or firm | *háng·'ywán* |
| Fortunately there was a man in this bank who knew me. | *Jèng 'hǎw yín·'háng·li yěw yí·ge-háng·'ywán rèn·shr wo.* |
| main office | *dzǔng·'háng* |
| He used to be with the main office (of the bank) in Chungking. | *Tā yǐ·'chyán dzày Chúng·'chìng·de-dzǔng·'háng·li dzwò-'shr̀.* |
| to shake hands | *lā-'shěw* |
| As soon as I walked in he came over to shake my hands and talk to me. | *Wǒ 'yī jìn yín·'háng tā jyèw gwò-lay hé-wo shwō-'hwà, lā-'shěw.* |
| That's why I got the money so easily. | *Swó·yi wó hěn-'rúng·yi·de jyèw bǎ-'chyán 'chywǔ·chu-lay-le.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| to watch a show (on the stage, not a movie) | *kàn-'shì* |
| This evening I'm going to invite you and your brother to dinner and a show. | *Jīn·tyan-'wǎn·shang wǒ 'chǐng-ni hé nǐ-'dì·di chywù chr̄-'fàn, kàn-'shì.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| Why do you have to do that? | *'Bú·yàw chǐng-le.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Wait until you come to Chungking and then invite me. | *Déng nĭ dàw Chúng·'chìng de·shŕ·hew 'dzày chĭng, hăw-bu·hăw?* |
| | *Ross* |
| No, that won't do. | *Bù-'shíng.* |
| to return an invitation | *hwéy·'chĭng* |
| You've invited me out several times; I must invite you. | *'Nĭ chĭng·gwo wo háw-jĭ·'tsz̆-le, wŏ yí·'dìng yīng·gay 'hwéy·chĭng 'tsáy dwèy.* |
| an example | *'bĭ·fang* |
| For example, if I invited you several times, wouldn't you feel obliged to invite me? | *'Bĭ·fang shwō, 'wó chĭng-le 'nĭ jĭ·'tsz̆, nĭ 'bú·shr̀ 'yĕ yàw 'hwéy·chĭng-ma?* |
| furthermore | *'dzày shwō-ne* |
| Furthermore, you're going to leave here tomorrow morning while I'm going to stay for another day. | *'Dzày shwō-ne, nĭ 'míng·tyan-'dzăw·chen yàw 'dzĕw-le, kĕ·shr 'wŏ háy 'dwō jù yì·tyān.* |
| to give someone a send-off party | *sùng-'shíng* |
| We'll count this as a send-off party. | *Jè jyèw 'swàn·shr sùng-'shíng-ba.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| In this case, OK. | *Nà·me 'hăw-ba.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Mohammedan | *'Hwéy·hwey* |
| to broil with spices | *bāw* |
| lamb | *yáng·'rèw* |
| I want to go to a Mohammedan restaurant and have some broiled lamb. | *Wó shyăng dàw 'Hwéy·hwey-gwăn·dz-chywu chr̄ bāw-yáng·'rèw.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Shall we go again to that restaurant on East Main Street run by the Mă family? | *'Háy dàw 'Dūng·dà·jyē·de-nà·ge-'Mă-jyā-'gwăn·dz-chywu, hăw-bu·hăw?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| Good. | *'Hăw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| After eating, shall we go hear a Běy·píng style opera? | *Chr̄·'wán-le fàn, chywù tīng Běy·píng-'shr̀, hăw-bu·hăw?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| world | *'shr̀·jyè* |
| stage | *'wŭ·táy* |
| 'Empty City Strategy' (name of a play) | *Kūng·chéng·'jr̀* |
| Today the World Theater is going to present 'Selling Horse' and 'Empty City Strategy'. | *'Jīn·tyan 'Shr̀·jye-'Dà-Wŭ·'táy chàng 'Mày-'mă' 'he 'Kūng·chéng·'jr̀.'* |
| But I'm afraid there'll be a crowd and we won't be able to buy any tickets. | *Kě·shr kŭng·pà rén 'dwō, 'măy-bu·jáw 'pyàw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| way *or* method | *'fāng·fă* |
| Please think of a way to get three tickets. | *'Chíng-ni géy shyăng ge-'fāng·fa măy sān·jāng-'pyàw-ba.* |
| | *Chyán* |
| law | *fă·'lywù* |
| time *or* leisure | *'gūng·fu* |
| My brother's studying law now; I'm afraid he won't have time to go to a show. | *Wŏ-'dì·di shyàn·dzày yèw shywé fă·'lywù-le, kŭng·pà méy·yew 'gūng·fu kàn-'shr̀.* |
| Let's buy two tickets; that'll be enough. | *Jyèw máy 'lyăng·jāng-pyàw hăw-le.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| Can he come for dinner? | *Chī-'fàn tā ké·yi 'dàw-ma?* |
| | *Chyán* |
| I think so. | *'Wó shyǎng ké·yi.* |
| I'll phone him and find out if he can come. | *Děng wó gěy-ta dǎ yí·ge-dyàn·'hwà wèn-ta 'néng-bu·néng 'láy.* |
| What are you planning to do after I've left tomorrow? | *'Míng·tyan wó dzěw-le yǐ·'hèw, nǐ shyǎng dzwò 'shém·me-ne?* |
| | *Ross* |
| to hire | *gù* |
| rickshaw | *yáng·'chē* |
| one rickshaw | *yí·lyàng-yáng·'chē* |
| I'll hire a rickshaw and go to several places to get some pictures. | *Wó shyǎng gù yí·lyàng-yáng·'chē, dàw jǐ·chù-'dì·fang chywù jàw-'shyàng.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. Measures.** Compare the following pairs of sentences:

*'Dzày láy yì·wǎn-'fàn!* or *'Dzày láy wǎn-'fàn!* 'Bring another bowl of rice!'

*'Jè bú-'gwò shř yí·ge-'bǐ·fang.* or *'Jè bú-'gwò shř ge-'bǐ·fang.* 'This is no more than an example.'

*Děy 'gù yí·lyàng-yáng·'chē.* or *Děy 'gù lyàng-yáng·'chē.* '(We) must hire a rickshaw.'

When the combination *yī* 'one' plus measure plus noun is immediately preceded by a verb, and is the goal of that verb, *yī* is often dropped. The meaning is the same as with the *yī:* 'a, an'.

If the *yī* is stressed, to mean '*one*' (not two or three), or meaning 'the whole', then it is not dropped.

**Point 2. The Theater.** The term *shì* covers all kinds of performances given by live actors on a stage.

The traditional Chinese drama involves both speaking and singing, and is in that respect like Western operetta or light opera, except that the subject matter of the Chinese drama is by no means necessarily light. A very famous variety of the traditional drama is that developed in *Běy·'píng*, called therefore *'Běy·píng-shì* or *'jīng·shì*. There are also other specific terms by which the traditional variety in general can be distinguished from Western-style drama which has no singing, and from more recent Chinese drama on the Western model. You will find these terms, and also the various expressions for attending a play, for presenting one, and for actors and stage, in the Finder List.

The story of the drama *Mày-'Mǎ* 'Sell Horse' concerns the early life of a seventh-century man named *'Chín·chyúng* who later became a general. Sent out from headquarters to capture some bandits, he loses his papers on the way and, when he arrives in the proper territory, can get no help from the local magistrate. He becomes so destitute that he is forced to sell his treasured horse—hence the title.

The story of *Kūng·chéng·'jì* 'Empty City Strategy' dates back further, to the early third century. A certain military leader has heard that the enemy is about to arrive with a larger force than that at his own disposal. He decides to beat a hurried retreat. But to insure the safety of his army, he lets it leave while he himself, with only two young boys, prepares to fight a rear guard action. When the enemy approaches the city in which he and the two boys are going to make their stand, they find the gates wide open, the military leader sitting in the gate tower facing the enemy, with one of the boys on either side, and playing the lute. The enemy commander, a very suspicious man, immediately suspects a trap, and instead of advancing on the city retreats himself. When he later discovers the hoax, it is too late to overtake the retreating army of the clever defender.

**Point 3. Mohammedans.** There are a good many Mohammedans in China, particularly in the west. Although they are mostly pretty much assimilated to Chinese culture, they will not eat pork, and one should always be careful not to offend them in this respect.

**Point 4. 'Gūng·fu.**This word means literally 'the time required for a piece of work.' From this have developed several different meanings, as exemplified in these sentences:

*Nǐ yěw 'gūng·fu de·shŕ·hew láy 'kàn-wo.* 'Come to see me when you have the time.'
(That is, it may mean 'leisure time')

*Nǐ yěw 'gūng·fu láy 'kàn·kan wo.* 'When you have time come see me.'

*'Jè·ge gūng·fu 'sān·ge-rén dēw 'jàn·chi-lay-le.* 'At that moment the three men all stood up.'
(That is, it may mean 'time,' or 'point of time, instant')

*Tā shyě-'dż hén yěw 'gūng·fu.* 'He's skillful at writing characters.' (It may mean 'skill', particularly as goal after *yěw*)

*Nà shr̀ 'gūng·fu-dż.* 'That's handwriting learned by tedious practice.' (not through native ability)

The expression for 'spend time' at a task is *shyà 'gūng·fu*:

*Jūng·gwo-'hwà děy shyà 'gūng·fu tsáy shywé-de·'hǎw.* 'To learn Chinese well one must spend time and energy.'

*Shyà yī'nyán·de-'kŭ-gūng·fu, jyèw ké·yi shywé·'hwèy-le.* 'Put in a year's serious (bitter) work and you'll have learned how.'

## Point 5. Noun Predicates and Shr̀

A

Wǒ *shr̀* 'Měy·gwo-'bīng. 'I'm an American soldier.'

'Tā *'bú·shr* Měy·gwo-bīng. 'He's not an American soldier.'

Jè·shwāng-'shyé *shr̀* 'dà·de. 'These shoes are big.'

In sentences with noun predicates, like these three, the predicate normally begins with *shr̀* 'is, are, is equal to, are equal to.' In the negative, *bú·shr* is *always* used.

But under three conditions *shr̀* is optionally (and usually) left out:

B

*Shyàn·dzày 'jǐ·dyǎn-jūng?* 'What time is it?' ('Now—how many marks of the clock?')

*'Jīn·tyan jǐ·'ywè-jǐ·'hàw?* 'What's the day and month today?'

*'Jīn·tyan 'shŕ·ywè-'yí·hàw.* 'Today is October first.'

In giving *time* or *dates shr̀* is usually omitted.

C

*Wǒ·de-'háy·dz 'jīn·nyan (shr̀) shŕ·'swèy.* 'My child is ten years old this year.'

In giving *ages shr̀* is usually omitted.

D

*Wǒ 'dzwó·tyan láy·de.* 'I arrived yesterday.'

When the noun predicate is a noun because *de* has been added to an expression containing a verb, *shr̀* is usually omitted.

In B, C, and D, the *negative* forms would all contain *'bú·shr̀:*

*'Jīn·tyan 'bú·shr 'shŕ·ywè-'yí·hàw.* 'Today isn't the first of October.'

*Wǒ·de-'háy·dz jīn·nyan 'bú·shr shŕ·swèy.* 'My child isn't ten years old this year.' (meaning he may be older or younger than that, but not exactly ten)

*Wǒ 'bú·shr̀ dzwó·tyan láy·de.* 'I didn't come yesterday.' (maybe some other time, but not yesterday)

When *shr̀* is included in a sentence of the type demonstrated in B, C, and D, it is usually stressed and emphasizes the fact being stated:

*'Jīn·tyan 'shr̀ shŕ·ywè-yí·hàw.* 'Today *is* the first of October.'

E

*Fàn·'dyàn 'shr̀ dzày 'nà·li.* 'The hotel *is* over there.'

*È·gwo-'hwà 'shr̀ hěn 'nán-shywé.* 'Russian *is* hard to learn.'

*Jè·jyān-'wū·dz 'shr̀ bǐ 'nà·jyān 'lyàng.* 'This room *really is* brighter than that one.'

*Shr̀* is sometimes used at the beginning of predicates which are not noun predicates. When so used, it is stressed and it emphasizes the statement being made. This way of making sentences must be used with care, for only in some cases does it sound right. But if you hear it, this is the meaning.

F

*Shr̀-'tā bú-'ywàn·yì 'dzěw·de.* 'It's *he* who won't go.'

*Shr̀-'shwéy 'gàw·su-nǐ·de?* 'Who told you so?'

*Shr̀ jè·běn-'shū 'shwō·de.* 'It's this book that says so.'

*Shr̀* is sometimes put before the subject of a sentence to mean 'it was ---- who' did such and such. In this case *de* is added at the end of the sentence, so that the whole sentence is really a noun predicate.

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Here's a series of sentences about banks. Is the meaning of all the sentences clear to you?

1. *Jè shr̀ 'Jūng·gwo-Yín·'háng.*
2. *Jè 'bú·shr Jūng·'yāng-Yín·háng.*
3. *Yě 'bú·shr Jyāw·'tūng-Yín·háng.*
4. *Jè shr̀ 'fēn·háng.*
5. *'Dzǔng·háng dzày Chúng·'chìng.*
6. *Dzày 'Měy·gwo 'yé yěw fēn·háng.*
7. *Wǒ·men yěw yí·ge-jīng·'lǐ.*
8. *Háy yěw shŕ·jǐ·ge-'háng·ywán.*
9. *Wǒ·men 'yì·tyān bàn-'shr̀ hěn 'máng.*
10. *Yěw-rén 'tswén-chyán, yěw-rén 'chywǔ-chyán.*
11. *Yěw-rén 'hwèy-chyán hwèy·daw 'byé·de-dì·fang-chywu.*
12. *Yé yěw-rén ná hwèy·'pyàw-lay chywǔ-'chyán.*
13. *'Yěw·de-hwèy·pyàw shr̀ tsúng yéw·jèng·'jywú jì·lay·de.*
14. *'Yěw·de shr̀ 'dyàn-hwèy·de.*
15. *'Dyàn-hwèy bǐ yěw·jèng·'jywú-hwèy·de 'kwày.*
16. *Jyèw·shr fēy·'jī-shìn yě 'méy·yew 'dyàn-hwèy 'kwày*
17. *Wǒ·men gù-'rén de·shŕ·hew 'shyān yàw 'kàn·kan tā nyàn·gwo dwō·shaw-nyán·de-'shū.*

18. *'Dzày kàn tā hwèy shyě-'dž bú-'hwèy.*
19. *Wǒ·men kàn 'nǎ·ge-rén ké·'chywǔ jyèw jyàw-ta 'shr̀ sān·ge-ywè.*
20. *Sān·ge-ywè yǐ·'hèw rè·shr jè·ge-rén dzwò-'shr̀ háy 'hǎw jyèw bǎ-ta 'lyéw·shya.*
21. *Shyě-'dž-yěw-'gūng·fu·de wǒ·men jyèw jyàw-ta shyě-'shìn.*
22. *Wǒ·men tsúng 'dzǎw·chen máng·daw 'wǎn·shang.*
23. *Wǒ 'dàw-le jè·li 'sān·ge-ywè-le, lyán shì·'ywán·dz dzày shém·me-dì·fang dēw bù-'jr̄·daw.*

2. Here's an episode about getting caught in the rain:

1. *Wó shyǎng bá wǒ-sùng-chywu-'shǐ·de-yī·shang 'chywǔ·hwéy-láy.*
2. *Wǒ tsúng 'jyā·li chū-lay de·shŕ·hew, jèng·dzày shyà-'ywǔ.*
3. *Wǒ jyèw 'gù-le yí·lyàng-yáng·'chē dàw shǐ·yī·'dyàn-chywu.*
4. *Dàw-le shǐ·yī·'dyàn wó bǎ shēw·'tyáwr ná·chu-lay, jyāw·gey shǐ-'yī·de.*
5. *Tā jyèw dàw 'lǐ·byan-chywu bǎ wó-'shǐ·de-'yī·shang 'ná-lay-le.*
6. *Tā shwō, “'sān·kwày-'wǔ·máw-chyán.’*
7. *Wǒ jyèw ná·chu yì·jāng-'wǔ·kwày-chyán·de-'pyàw·dz gěy-ta.*
8. *Tā 'jǎw·gey wo 'yí·kwày-'wǔ, yèw bǎ nà·bāw-'yī·shang dì·gey wo.*
9. *Wǒ ná·je 'chyán hé 'yī·shang jyèw 'dzěw-le.*
10. *Wǒ 'yèw dàw yí·ge-shū·'pù·li, mǎy-le 'jǐ·běn-shū.*
11. *'Yì·běn jyàw “'Yín·háng·shywé’.* (On Banking.)
12. *'Yì·běn jyàw “'Mín·gwó-Fǎ·'gwēy.’*
13. *'Yì·běn jyàw “'Shīn·wén·shywé.’*
14. *‘Yì·běn jyàw “'Jūng·gwo-Dì·'lǐ.’*
15. *Wó mǎy nà·běn-“'Yín·háng·shywé’ 'wèy·de-shr̀ 'jr̄·daw yín·'háng-bàn-'shr̀·de-'gwēy·jywu.*
16. *'Yě ké·yi jr̄·daw yín·háng·'jyè·de-háng·'hwà dēw shr̀ 'shém·me.*
17. *Yǐ·'hèw gēn dzày-yín·'háng-dzwò-'shr̀·de-rén tán-'hwà jyèw ké·yi bú-'tày shyàng yí·ge-'wày·háng·de-le.*
18. *Yěw-yí·'tsž wǒ dàw 'dì·fang-fǎ·'ywàn-chywu 'tsān·gwān.*
19. *Fǎ·'gwān-hé-lywù·'shr̄-shwō·de-'hwà wó yěw yí·'bàn bù-'dǔng-de.*
20. *Swó·yi mǎy nà·běn-“'Mín·gwó Fǎ·'gwēy’ kàn-yi·kàn.*
21. *'Shīn·wén·shywé shr̀ wǒ·de-'běn·háng.*
22. *Wǒ yèw shyǎng dzày 'Jūng·gwo lywǔ·'shíng.*
23. *Swó·yi mǎy-le nà·běn-“'Jūng·gwo-Dì·'lǐ.’*
24. *'Jè·běn-shū·li yěw yì·jāng-'hén-hǎw·de-Jūng·gwo-dì·'tú.*

3. The same story continues.

1. *Shū·pù·de-'hwǒ·ji bá wó-mǎy·de-'shū 'bāw-le-yi·bāw.*
2. *Wǒ 'yì·jr̄-shěw ná·je 'shū, 'yì·jr̄-shěw ná·je 'yī·shang, jyèw 'dzěw-le.*
3. *Dàw-le 'jyē·shang 'ywǔ-shyà·de hěn-'dà.*
4. *Wó shyǎng 'jè·me-dà·de-ywǔ 'dzěw·je hwéy-'jyā bú·shr̀ 'bàn·fa.*
5. *Děng dàw-le 'jyā·li wǒ-chwān·je·de-'yī·shang hé jè-'shīn-shí·hǎw·de-yì·bāw-'yī·shang jyèw dēw 'shr̄-le.*
6. *'Yèw děy sùng-chywu 'shǐ.*
7. *Dzày shwō-ne, jè-yì·bāw-'shū shr̄-le yě 'bù-néng 'kàn-le.*
8. *Wǒ déy shyǎng yí·ge-'fá·dz.*
9. *'Jèng hǎw shū·'pù-'páng·byān shr̀ shì·'ywán·dz.*
10. *Wǒ jyèw 'jìn-chywu mǎy-le 'pyàw.*
11. *Yèw dàw tswén-'dūng·shi·de-dì·fang bá wǒ·de-lyǎng·ge-'bāwr 'tswén-le.*
12. *Jyèw dzwò·shya tīng-'shì.*
13. *'Jè-shŕ·hew jèng·dzày chàng 'Kūng·chéng·'jì.'*
14. *Nà·ge-'yǎn·ywán chàng·de hén 'hǎw.*
15. *Tīng·wán-le 'shì wǒ jyèw chywù bá wǒ·de-lyǎng·ge-'bāwr 'chywǔ·chū-lay.*
16. *Dàw-le 'jyē·shang yī-'kàn, 'bú-shyà-ywǔ-le.*
17. *Hū·rán gwā·chi 'fēng láy-le.*
18. *Wǒ jyèw kwày·'kwáy·de pǎw·hwéy 'jyā-chywu-le.*
19. *Yīn·wey pǎw·de yěw-yi·dyǎn 'lèy, dàw-le 'jyā·li jyèw tǎng·dzay·'chwáng·shang kàn-'shū.*
20. *Kàn-le yì·'hwěr jyèw shwèy·'jáw-le.*
21. *Wǒ·de-'tày·tay bá-wǒ 'wēy·shǐng-le.*
22. *'Shyàn·dzày bù-'shywǔ nǐ shwèy-'jyàw.*
23. *'Nǐ shyàn·dzày 'shwèy-le, dàw-le 'yè·li shwèy-bu·'jáw, 'nàw·de 'byé-rén yě bù-néng 'shwèy.*
24. *"'Nà kě bù-'shíng!*
25. *"'Kwày géy-wo 'chǐ-lay.'*
26. *Wǒ jyèw 'chǐ-lay-le.*
27. *Yěw jè·me-'hǎw·de-tày·tay, yèw yěw shém·me-'bàn·fa-ne?*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN

### Conversation 1

*'Lwó dàw hwǒ·chē·'jàn gěy-'Chyán sùng-shíng. Tā·men tsúng yáng·'chē·shang 'shyà-lay de·shŕ·hew, 'Lwó gěy-le lyǎng·ge-rén·de-'chē·chyán.*

Ross: *'Chē·chyán dēw 'gěy-le.*

Chyán: *Dwō-'shyè!*

**Ross:** *Wǒ géy-ni ná yí·ge-'shyāng·dz.*

**Chyán:** *Jè-lyǎng·ge-'shyāng·dz 'dēw bú-jùng.*

*Wǒ-'dz̀·jǐ ké·yi 'ná.*

*Hwǒ·'chē háy yěw yí·kè-'jūng tsáy 'kāy-ne.*

*Wǒ·men dàw jàn·'táy·shang-chywu 'děng-ba.*

**Ross:** *Nǐ-'dì·di láy-bu·láy?*

**Chyán:** *Tā bù-'néng láy.*

**Ross:** *Tā nyàn-le 'jǐ·nyán-fǎ·'lywù-le?*

**Chyán:** *Tā 'jīn·nyan tsáy 'nyàn·de.*

*Tā dzày 'dà·shywé-'yī-nyán·jí.*

**Ross:** *Tā-shwō·de-'hwà yěw·de-shŕ·hew shyàng fǎ·'gwān shr̀·de.*

**Chyán:** *'Shr̀-a. 'Yěw·de-shŕ·hew wǒ bù-'jr̄·daw tā shr̀ yǎn·'shì háy·shr shwō 'shyàw·hwar.*

**Ross:** *Yì·'háng yěw yì·'háng·de-háng·'hwà.*

*Tā nyàn fǎ·'lywù yí·dìng nyàn·de 'hǎw·de.*

**Chyán:** *Bù-yí·'dìng-ba.*

*Tā yīng·gay shyǎng·dàw 'byé-rén 'néng-bu·néng 'dǔng tā·de-'hwà.*

*Yí·ge-bù-dúng-fǎ·'lywù·de-rén tīng-le tā·de-'hwà yěw yí·'bàn bù-néng 'dǔng.*

*Tā-shwō·de-'hwà yèw yěw shém·me-'yùng-ne?*

*'Rén yīng·gay jyàn 'shém·me-rén shwō shém·me-'hwà.*

**Ross:** *Chíng-ni 'dzày shwō yí·'byàn.*

**Chyán:** *'Jyàn 'shém·me-'rén 'shwō 'shém·me-'hwà.*

*'Bǐ·fang shwō, nǐ gēn yí·ge-shyǎw-'háy·dz shwō-'hwà.*

*Nǐ bù-néng shwō, 'Jè·jyàn-'shr̀ fǎ·'lywù·shang bù-shywú·'kě.'*

*Yí·ge-shyǎw-'háy·dz 'dzěm·me néng 'dǔng·de shém·me shr̀ fǎ·'lywù-ne?*

*'Háy yěw yí·ge-'bǐ·fang.*

*Nǐ kàn·jyan yí·ge-'Hwéy·hwey nǐ jyèw bù-yīng·gay chǐng-ta chywù chr̄ jū·'rèw.*

*'Nà jyèw bù-'shíng-le.*

*Tā yě·shywu gēn-ni shēng-'chì, yǐ·'hèw nǐ·men jyèw bù-néng dzwò 'péng·yew-le.*

**Ross:** *Hěn 'dwèy!*

*Jyàn 'shém·me-rén shwō shém·me-'hwà.*

## Conversation 2

*Hwǒ·'chē kwày 'láy-le.*

*Lǎw-'Chyán, jè-jǐ·tyān dwō-'shyè nǐ 'jāw·day wo.*

**Chyán:** *Bú·yàw 'kè·chi.*

*Wǒ hěn 'ywàn·yi gēn-ni dzwò 'péng·yew.*

Ross: *Wŏ chyán-jĭ·tyān géy wo-'jyā·li shyè-'shìn.*

*Shwō wŏ shīn 'dé-le yí·ge-hăw-'péng·yew.*

*'Dày-wo hén hăw.*

*Nà jyèw·shr 'nĭ.*

Chyán: *Dwō-'shyè. Wó hĕn 'ywàn·yi yéw hăw-'péng·yew.*

*Dzwó·tyan-kàn·de-'shì-'lĭ, 'Chín·chyúng mày-'mă de·shŕ·hew, rè·shr tā yĕw ge-'péng·yew, yé·shywu jyèw bú-hwèy nà·me-'kŭ-le.*

Ross: *'Nà·yàng jyèw 'méy·yew shì 'kàn-le.*

Chyán: *Hà·hà! 'Yĕ dwèy.*

*Shr̀·'jyè·shang 'shém·me-yàng·de-'shì, 'shém·me-yàng·de-'rén 'dēw yĕw.*

*'Yĕw·de-shŕ·hew, yì·'háng·de-rén bù-'gēn 'byé·de-háng·de-rén dzwò 'péng·yew.*

*Wŏ rèn·shr jĭ·ge-'jywēn·rén, tā·men·de-'péng·yew 'dēw shr̀ jywēn·rén, yí·ge-'wày·rén yĕ 'méy·yew.*

*Yĭ·'hèw tā·men lí·kay-le jywēn·'dwèy jyèw hĕn 'nán dzwò-'shr̀-le.*

Ross: *Yé·shywu tā·men shyăng yì-'shēng dzày jywēn·'dwèy·li.*

Chyán: *'Jūng·gwo yĕw wú·băy·'wàn-bīng.*

*'Jàn·shr̀ 'yì 'wán, 'dzwèy-dwō bú-gwò yàw yì·'băy·wàn-bīng.*

*Dàw-le 'nà·ge-shŕ·hew, yí·'dìng yéw hĕn-'dwō-jywēn·gwān dĕy 'lí·kāy jywēn·'dwèy.*

Ross: *Nĭ-'dz̆·jĭ-ne?*

Chyán: *Wó shyăng wŏ shyàn·dzày háy bù-'lăw.*

*Dă·wán-le 'jàng dàw 'Mĕy·gwo-chywu nyàn 'yī-lyăng·nyán-'shū yé hăw.*

Ross: *Nà hăw 'jí-le.*

*Wŏ-'jyā shyàn·dzày dzày Nyēw·ywē-'shĕng.*

*Nĭ dàw 'Mĕy·gwo de·shŕ·hew ké·yi chywù 'jù·dzay wŏ-'jyā·li.*

Chyán: *Lí Nyēw·ywē-'chéng 'ywăn-bu·ywăn?*

Ross: *Bù-'ywăn. Dzwò hwŏ·'chē jr̆ yàw 'yì·dyăn-jūng.*

*À! Hwŏ·'chē 'láy-le.*

*Nĭ shàng-'chē-ba.*

*Géy-wo shyĕ-'shìn.*

Chyán: *Yí·'dìng. 'Nĭ yĕ géy-'wŏ shyĕ-'shìn.*

Ross: *'Hăw. Dzày-'jyàn. Yī-'lù 'píng·ān!*

*'Chúng·chìng 'jyàn!*

## Conversation 3

*'Lwó hwéy·daw Chúng·'chìng de·shŕ·hew, 'Wáng-shyān·sheng dàw fēy·jī·'chǎng-chywu 'jyē-ta.*

Wáng: *'Lù·shang 'lèy-bu·lèy?*

Ross: *Bú-'lèy.*
*Jŕ yěw 'sž·dyǎn-jūng.*
*Nǐ 'shém·me-shŕ·hew jyē·daw·de wǒ·de-dyàn·'bàw?*

Wáng: *Jīn·tyan-'dzǎw·chen.*
*Nǐ 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'fā·de dyàn·'bàw?*

Ross: *Dzwó·tyan-'wǎn·shang.*
*Wó shyáng wǒ 'hwéy-lay yīng·gay 'tūng·jr̄ ni.*
*'Bú·shr yàw nǐ láy 'jyē-wo.*
*Nǐ 'jēn kè·chi.*

Wáng: *'Bú·shr kè·chi.*
*Wǒ 'jīn·tyan méy·yew 'shr̀.*
*Lǎw-'Jēw yě 'bìng-le.*

Ross: *'Shém·me-bìng?*

Wáng: *'Téw-téng, 'yá-téng, 'gē·be-téng, 'twěy-téng.*
*Dēw 'bú·shr 'dà-bìng.*
*'Yī·sheng shwō tā 'méy·yew bìng.*
*'Wǒ shyǎng tā yé·shywu shr̀ shāng-'fēng.*
*Jyàw-ta tǎng·dzay 'chwáng·shang 'shwèy lyǎng·tyān 'dzày shwō-ba.*
*Nǐ dēw·shr dàw-le 'shém·me-dì·fang?*

Ross: *Dàw-le 'Shī·ān hé 'Túng·gwān.*
*Kàn-le hěn-'dwō-dì·fang.*

Wáng: *Děng dàw-le 'jyā·li dzày 'gàw·su wǒ-ba.*
*Wó 'yǐ·jīng gù-le lyǎng·lyàng-yáng·'chē, dzày 'wày·byan 'děng·je-ne.*

Ross: *'Nà, wǒ·men 'kwày chywù-ba.*

Wáng: *Nǐ·de-'shíng·li-ne?*

Ross: *'Dwèy-le. Wǒ háy déy 'děng·je chywú wǒ·de-'shíng·li.*
*Tā·men jèng·dzày bǎ 'shíng·li tsúng fēy·'jī·shang 'bān·shya-lay.*
*Nà-'lyǎng·ge-rén-táy·je·de-'shyāng·dz shr̀ 'wǒ·de.*

Wáng: *'Nà 'bú·shr nǐ-'dày-chywu·de-nà·ge-'shyāng·dz.*

Ross: *'Dwèy-le. Wó mǎy-le hěn-'dwō-dūng·shi.*
*Nà·ge-'jŕ-shyāng·dz tày 'shyǎw-le, gē-bu·'shyà-le.*
*Wǒ jyèw mǎy-le 'jè·ge-shyāng·dz.*

Wáng: *Ní mǎy-le 'dwō·shaw-dūng·shi, 'dzěm·me jè·me-'jùng?*

Ross: *Ni 'bú·yàw 'shyàw·hwa wo, wǒ jyèw 'gàw·su ni*

**Wáng:** *Wo bú 'shyàw·hwa ni. Nĭ 'shwō-ba.*
**Ross:** *Bù-'shíng. Déng wŏ·men dàw-le 'jyā·li wŏ géy-ni 'kàn.*

**Wáng:** *Nĭ jyàw-wo géy-ni hwèy-'chyán jyèw·shr wèy·de măy 'dūng·shi-ma?*
**Ross:** *'Dwèy-le.*
*Wŏ·men shàng-'chē-chywu-ba.*

## FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| **bān* V | 'move' (something heavy) |
| *'bān·shyà(-láy, chywù)* RC | 'move down' (something heavy), 'unload' |
| **bàn* V | 'manage, administer' |
| *'bàn·fa* N | 'way of doing something' |
| *bāw* V | 'broil without fat' |
| **bāw* V | 'wrap up, make a package of' |
| *bāwr* N, M | 'small package' |
| *·băw* | 'protect, give bond' |
| *băw·'jèng* N | 'guarantee' |
| *'băw·jèng·rén* N | 'guarantor' |
| **·bĕn* | 'source' |
| *'bĕn·háng* N | 'one's own line of business' |
| **bĭ* K | 'as compared with' |
| *'bĭ·fang* N | 'example' |
| *'bĭ·fang shwō . . .* | 'for example . . .' |
| **·byān* M | 'side, edge' (see *'páng·byān*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| **chàng* V | 'sing' |
| *chàng-'shì* | 'play a role in a Chinese operetta' |
| *chàng-'shì·de* | 'actor in Chinese operettas' |
| **chē* N | 'cart, wheeled vehicle' (see *lā-'chē, yáng·'chē*) |
| *'chē·chyán* N | 'fare, payment for a ride in a taxi or rickshaw' |
| **chĭng* V | 'request, invite' (see *'hwéy·chĭng*) |
| **chū* | 'exit' (see *'chywŭ·chū*) |
| *chù* M | for *'dì·fang* 'place' |
| **chyán* N | 'money' (see *'chē·chyán, chywŭ-'chyán, hwèy-'chyán, tswén-'chyán*) |
| *chywŭ* V | 'take back out, withdraw, something left somewhere for safekeeping or repairs' (see *ké·'chywŭ*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 'chywŭ·chū(-láy, chywù) RC | 'take back *out*, withdraw' |
| chywŭ-'chyán | 'withdraw money' |
| 'chywŭ·hwéy(-láy, chywù) RC | 'take *back* out, withdraw' |
| *dà A | 'big' |
| 'dà-shì N | 'a traditional Chinese operetta,' as contrasted with modern drama |
| *dàw K | 'to, until' (see *'hwèy·dàw, 'máng·dàw*) |
| *dyàn | used for *dyàn·'bàw* to mean 'by wire' |
| *dzày K | 'at' (see *'tswén·dzày*) |
| *dzày H | 'again' |
| 'dzày shwō-ne, . . . | 'furthermore, . . .' |
| *·dzŭng | 'principal, chief, main' |
| 'dzŭng·háng N | 'main office' of a firm or bank |
| *'dzŭng·jywú N | 'main office' of a public utility or newspaper company or the like |
| ·fă (·fá) | 'way, method, plan, law' (see *'bàn·fa, 'fāng·fa*) |
| 'fá·dz N | 'way, method, means' |
| fă·'gwān N | 'judge' (in a law court) |
| fă·'gwēy N | 'the law' (as written down) |
| fă·'lywù N | 'law' |
| fă·'ywàn N | 'court of law' |
| *·fāng | 'direction, position' (see *'bĭ·fang*) |
| 'fāng·fa N | 'method, way, plan, course of action' |
| *fēn V | 'divide' |
| 'fēn·háng N | 'branch office' of a bank or firm |
| ·fu | (see *'gūng·fu*) |
| gù V | 'to hire' (a man, a rickshaw, etc.) |
| *·gūng | 'physical work' |
| 'gūng·fu N | 'leisure time; time spent on something; skill attained by spending time' (see *shyà 'gūng·fu*) |
| *gwān N | 'official, officer' (see *fă·'gwān*) |
| ·gwēy | 'compasses' (for drawing circles) (see *fă·'gwēy*) |
| 'gwēy·jywù N | 'rules, regulations' |
| 'gwēy·gwey·jywù·jywù·de H | 'respectfully, reverently' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_háng_ N | ‘trade, concern, business’ (see _'bĕn·háng, 'dzŭng·háng, 'fēn·háng, nèy-'háng, wày-'háng, 'yín·háng_) |
| * _háng·'hwà_ N | ‘trade jargon, trade talk’ |
| _háng·'ywán_ N | ‘employee in a bank or firm’ |
| *_hăw_ A | ‘OK’ (see _'jèng hăw_) |
| *_hwà_ N | ‘speech, talk, language’ (see _háng·'hwà_) |
| *_hwéy_ V | ‘return (to)’ (see _'chywŭ·hwéy_) |
| _'hwéy·chĭng_ V | ‘return an invitation’ |
| _·Hwéy_ | ‘Mohammedan’ |
| _'Hwéy·hwey_ N | ‘Mohammedan, Moslem’ |
| _hwèy_ V | ‘send’ |
| _hwèy-'chyán_ | ‘send money’ in some form other than cash—draft, check, wire, etc. |
| _'hwèy·dàw(-láy, chywù)_ RC | ‘send something to’ (a place) |
| _hwèy·'pyàw_ N | ‘draft’ |
| *_hwèy_ V | ‘know how to, be liable to, be possible’ |
| _hwèy-'kŭ_ | ‘be liable to have bitter experiences’ (usually said of a man’s life or fate) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_·jàn_ | ‘stand’ |
| _jàn·'táy_ N | ‘platform’ (as at a railroad station) |
| *_·jèng_ | ‘identification’ (see _băw·'jèng_) |
| *_jèng_ H | ‘just then’ |
| _'jèng hăw_ H | ‘just right; when it’s just right; just then’ |
| *_·jīng_ | ‘capital’ |
| _jīng·'shì_ N | ‘the style of Chinese operetta developed in Peiping’ |
| *_·jyè_ | ‘border, limits’ (see _'shr̀·jyè, yín·háng·'jyè_) |
| *_jyèw_ A | ‘old’ |
| _'jyèw-shì_ N | ‘traditional-style Chinese operetta’ |
| *_jywēn_ N | ‘army, armed forces’ |
| _'jywēn·rén_ N | ‘army personnel’ |
| _·jywù_ | ‘ruler for drawing straight-line figures’ (see _'gwēy·jywù, 'gwēy·gwey·jywù·jywù·de_) |
| *_kàn_ V | ‘look at’ |
| _kàn-'shì_ | ‘attend a play, an operetta’ |
| *_·kĕ_ | ‘may, can’ |
| _ké·'chywŭ_ A | ‘useful, agreeable, suitable’ (of a person) |

| | |
|---|---|
| **kŭ* A | 'bitter' (see *hwèy-kŭ*) |
| **lā* V | 'pull' |
| *lā-'chē* | 'pull a rickshaw' |
| *lā-'chē·de* N | 'rickshaw-puller' |
| *lā-'shĕw* | 'shake hands' (the western way) |
| *lèy* I | 'get tired, tire' |
| *lyàng* M | for *chē* 'car, cart, wheeled vehicle' (of any kind) |
| *·lywù* | 'rules' (see *fă·'lywù*) |
| *lywù·'shr̄* N | 'lawyer' |
| **máng* A | 'busy' |
| *'máng·dàw* RC | 'be busy until' (a time) |
| **nèy* | 'inside' |
| *nèy-'háng* | 'be in a particular trade and know the ropes' |
| *·páng* | 'side' |
| *'páng·byān* N | 'vicinity, neighborhood, beside |
| **pyàw* N | 'ticket' (see *hwèy·'pyàw*) |
| **rén* N | 'person' (see *'băw·jèng·rén, 'jywēn·rén, 'wày·rén*) |
| **rèw* N | 'meat, flesh' (see *yáng·'rèw*) |
| **shĕw* N | 'hand' (see *lā-'shĕw*) |
| **shĭ* V | 'wash' |
| *shĭ-'yī·de* N | 'laundryman' |
| *shì* N | 'play, drama, operetta, opera' (see *chàng-'shì, 'dà-shì, 'jīng·shì, 'jyèw-shì, kàn-'shì, 'shīn-shì, tīng-'shì, yăn-'shì*) |
| *'shì·dz* N | 'actor' |
| *shì·'ywán·dz* N | 'theater' |
| **shīn* A | 'new' |
| *'shīn-shì* N | 'modern (western-style) drama with no singing' |
| **·shíng* | 'travel, go' (see *sùng-'shíng*) |
| *Bù-'shíng.* | 'No go.'—'It won't do.' |
| **shĭng* I | 'wake up' (see *'twēy·shĭng*) |
| *'shr̄* | 'teacher, professional man'(see *lywù·'shr̄*) |
| *·shr̀* | 'period, epoch, generation, world' |
| *shr̀·'jyè* N | 'the world' |
| **shwō* V | 'speak, say' (see *'bĭ·fang shwō, 'dzày shwō-ne*) |
| **shyà* | 'down' (see *'bān·shyà*) |
| *shyà 'gūng·fu* | 'spend time' (at a task) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_shyǎw_ A | 'small, young' |
| _shyǎw-'yáng_ N | 'lamb' |
| *_sùng_ V | 'send' |
| _sùng-'shíng_ | 'give someone a send-off party, |
| _·táy_ | 'platform' (see _jàn·'táy, wǔ·'táy_) |
| *_tīng_ V | 'listen to' |
| _tīng-'shì_ | 'attend an old-style Chinese operetta' |
| _tswén_ V | 'leave something at a place for safekeeping or repairs; deposit' |
| _tswén-'chyán_ | 'deposit money' |
| _'tswén·dzày_ V | 'deposit something at' a place |
| *_twēy_ V | 'push' |
| _'twēy·shǐng_ RC | 'wake someone up by pushing him' |
| *_wày_ | 'outside' |
| _wày-'háng_ | 'be outside of a particular trade and therefore know nothing about it' |
| _'wày·rén_ N | 'one who is not in a particular trade and therefore knows nothing of it' |

| | |
|---|---|
| _·wǔ_ | 'dance, act' |
| _wǔ·'táy_ N | 'stage' (in a theater) |
| *_yǎn_ V | 'perform' |
| _yǎn-'shì_ | 'present a play, an operetta' |
| _yǎn·'ywán_ N | 'actor' (more formal term) |
| _yáng_ N | 'sheep' (see _shyǎw-'yáng_) |
| _yáng·'rèw_ | 'mutton, lamb(meat)' |
| *_yáng_ | 'foreign' ['(from beyond the) ocean'] |
| _yáng·'chē_ N | 'rickshaw' |
| *_·yī_ | 'clothing' (see _shǐ-'yī·de_) |
| *_yín_ N | 'silver' |
| *_yín·'háng_ N | 'bank' |
| _yín·háng·'jyè_ N | 'bankers, people connected with banks' |
| *_·ywán_ | 'personnel' (see _háng·'ywán, yǎn·'ywán_) |
| *_·ywán_ | 'park' (see _shì·ywán·dz_) |
| *_·ywàn_ | 'courtyard, court, garden' (see _fǎ·'ywàn_) |

# UNIT 24

## REVIEW

### SECTION A: SENTENCE-REVIEW

*To the Leader:* Begin this review, as you did that in Unit XVIII, with a session in which you call at random English sentences found in the course thus far, and ask members of the class, at random, to give the equivalent Chinese. Sections B and C of Units VI, XII, and XVIII will help you in this, but don't just read one after another in the order in which they are given; skip around.

### SECTION B: SENTENCE-REVIEW

§1. **Preparation.** Working individually, prepare to give the Chinese for any of the following sentences the moment you hear the English.

1. When he graduated from High School he went right to college.
2. Now he's a college student.
3. He's a junior.
4. That small student is a primary school student.
5. He graduated last year.
6. How long does it take to graduate?
7. The United States Military Academy is at West Point, in New York State. It isn't far from New York City.
8. About one fourth of the men in the Central Military Academy are southerners.
9. There are some cadets from every province.
10. What is taught at the ordnance school?
11. They teach how to make and repair arms and ammunition.
12. The Aviation School is under the control of the Aviation Commission.
13. The three grades of private in the Chinese Army are -----, -----, and -----.
14. The three grades of non-com in the Chinese Army are -----, -----, and -----.
15. The three grades of company officer in the Chinese Army are -----, -----, and -----.

16. The three grades of field officer in the Chinese Army are -----, -----, and -----.
17. The three grades of general in the Chinese Army are ----, ----, and ----.
18. He's not a non-com; he's a captain.
19. He's a cavalry captain.
20. He's a second lieutenant in the artillery.
21. He's an infantry major.
22. He's a lieutenant colonel in the engineers.
23. He's a brigadier general in the United States Army.
24. He's a liaison officer; I don't know his rank.
25. He's a squadron commander.
26. He's chief of staff of a cavalry division.
27. He's a sergeant in the Army Air Forces.
28. He works as a clerk for the Military Affairs Commission.
29. After three months of practical experience in the field we're assigned to different branches.
30. How many men are there in a battalion?
31. What branch of the service are you in?
32. There are more men in the infantry than in the artillery.
33. I've never studied French, so I'll ask (1st) Lieutenant Smith (Sz) to interpret for me.
34. Soldiers don't get sick.
35. We drill every morning from seven to nine.
36. Don't fire the rifle. Start firing the rifle ('open fire').
37. Soldiers live in barracks, fight in trenches.
38. How is the Chinese Army now?
39. Their firearms are insufficient.
40. The Chinese Army uses German, Russian, and American firearms.
41. The arms used by the twenty-five divisions at the Yellow River front are mostly from Russia.
42. Right now communication between China and the United States is difficult.
43. But in 1942 the United States started sending arms to China.
44. The more arms sent us, the better.
45. There are American liaison officers teaching the Chinese troops how to use the new equipment.
46. There are many American planes in China.
47. The United Nations will certainly defeat Japan.
48. The United Nations will certainly win in the long run (—attain the final victory).
49. When we've won there may not be any more war for a long time.
50. I heard you were ill.
51. My headache has stopped but now my tooth hurts.
52. He has a cold; he has a little fever.

53. Has he taken any medicine?
54. This medicine is for external use, not for internal.
55. If you don't convalesce three or four days you may get pneumonia.
56. He's been taken to the hospital for wounded soldiers.
57. This hospital has three wards.
58. That medical officer is a famous surgeon.
59. Is he a surgeon or a physician?
60. He's a dentist.

§2. **Group-Drill.** The Leader will call on various members of the group to give the Chinese equivalents of various of the above sentences. The Guide, if present, will check on you when necessary.

## SECTION C: SENTENCE-REVIEW

§1. **Preparation.** Proceed as with §1 of Section B.

1. Somebody just jumped into the river (thus committing suicide).
2. She's fainted.
3. Her eyes were closed as though she were dead.
4. But she was still breathing and her heart was still beating.
5. His skin is broken in two places.
6. Quick! Take off his wet clothes!
7. His legs are wounded; the blood is still dripping.
8. Bandage his arm.
9. He won't die.
10. I can't see whether he's wounded elsewhere or not.
11. Let's go horseback riding.
12. In that case I'll take my camera along.
13. Did you get permission?
14. He said if we were careful there would be no danger.
15. Isn't the river frozen?
16. The ice is thick near the shore, but thin in the center of the river.
17. In the center of the river the water flows fast.
18. We put a wooden plank on the ice.
19. We stood on the plank and pulled him out.
20. He weighs over two hundred pounds.
21. We were only able to pull him out after calling three people (to help).
22. I have to give a speech tomorrow night.
23. Don't laugh at me!
24. Wrap up these shoes.
25. Will you have time to go with us?

26. Let's hire a rickshaw; it's pretty far.
27. He must have arrived recently.
28. He can't practice what he preaches.
29. He's quite cheerful.
30. He's going to tell a joke.
31. We didn't hear your call for help.
32. You can hear news over the radio, but not from a phonograph.
33. He was born in China.
34. Are you Cantonese?
35. You still have a Cantonese accent.
36. The people around here speak Cantonese.
37. A Cantonese born in the southern part of the United States will speak English with a southern accent, but will not speak Chinese with a Cantonese accent.
38. People born in rich families are rich all their lives.
39. Twins aren't always brothers.
40. He's quite brave.
41. He's afraid of suffering.
42. See you tonight.
43. At present our life is very hard.
44. Look at the river through this telescope.
45. A man has one head, two eyes, two ears, one nose, two arms, two hands, ten fingers, two thumbs, two legs.
46. Lift your left arm; lift your right leg.
47. He's blind in one eye, but can see with the other.
48. Dead men don't breathe.
49. When people meet they shake hands; but if they are soldiers they salute.
50. He's a good actor.
51. Let's go to a play.
52. The rules of the theater are that all adults must have tickets.
53. Please think of some way for us to get up onto the stage.
54. Let's wait on the (station) platform.
55. There are no people like that in the world.
56. Will it do?
57. I must return his invitation.
58. This is a send-off party.
59. For example, if you are tilling the soil you don't use a rifle.
60. He's going to the bank to deposit some money.
61. When you receive my draft you can go to the bank and cash it.
62. There's an employee in the bank here who used to work in the main office in Chungking and knew me there.

**§2. Group-Drill.** Work under the Leader's direction, as in §2 of Section B.

## SECTION D: LISTENING-REVIEW

*To the Leader:* Work as in Section D of Unit XVIII. Don't let the members of the class (including yourself) read the story given below until you have used it as here described. Have the Guide (or an excellent student) read it *once* to the members of the class, and then, after a minute's rest, have him read the ten true-false sentences, each *twice.*

### Story

*'Lwó-shyān·sheng ná·je jǐ·jāng-shyàng·'pyàn gěy 'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'kàn:*

*'Jè dēw shř wǒ-jàw·de-shyàng·'pyàr. Jè-'shŕ·jāng shř dzày 'Túng·gwān jàw·de. 'Nà-jǐ·jāng dēw shř dzày 'Shī·ān jàw·de.*

*Dzày 'Túng·gwān-jàw·de-jè-shŕ·jāng·li, wǒ 'kàn 'jè-yì·jāng dzwèy 'hǎw. Jè·jāng-shyàng·'pyàr shř dzày Hwáng·'hé-àn·shang jàw·de. Yí·ge-'bīng jàn·dzay yì·kē-'shù-páng·byan, wàng·je hé·de-'běy·àn. Tā 'shěw·li ná·je 'chyāng, 'jàn·dzay nà·li yì·'dyǎr yě bú-'dùng, yì·'dyǎr yě bú-'shyàw, lyǎng·jr̄-'yǎn·jing yì·'jŕ shyàng-'chyán wàng·je. Tā hǎw 'shyàng·shr shwō, "Wǒ yí·'dìng bú-jyàw 'dí·rén dzày 'jè·li gwò-'hé."*

*'Jè-yì·jāng yě bú-'hwày. 'Jè shř dzày shāng-bīng-yī·'ywàn jàw·de. Jè·ge-shāng-'bīng jyàw 'Ywú-Dé·shèng. Tā dzày 'chwáng·shang dzwò·je, 'téw·shang bāw·je bēng·'dày. Tā-lyǎn·shang·de-'yàng·dz hǎw 'shyàng yàw dà-'shyàw shř·de. Nǐ 'kàn, tā 'yǎn·jing 'jēng·de nà·me-'dà!*

*'Jè-jǐ·jāng dēw shř dzày dì-'chī·shr-'chī-'shr̄-shr̄·'bù jàw·de. Jè·ge-jywēn·'gwān shř 'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng. Tā shř shàw·'jyàng; lǐng·'jāng·shang 'méy·yew héng·'shyàn, yěw 'yí·ge-sān·jyǎwr. Nǐ 'kàn, tā hǎw 'shyàng 'bú-dàw sān·shr·'swèy, kě·shr yěw-'rén 'gàw·su wǒ shwō, tā 'yǐ·jing 'sż·shr-dwō-'swèy-le.*

*'Jè shř 'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng·de-tsān·méw·'jǎng. 'Yě shř yí·ge-shàw·'jyàng. Jè shř 'Lyéw-twán·jǎng. Jè shř 'Lǐ-yíng·jǎng. Jè shř 'Jàw-tsān·mew. 'Jè·wèy-shyàw·je·de shř 'Chyán-tsān·mew. 'Chyán-tsān·mew dày-wo dàw hěn·'dwō·de-dì·fang-chywu tsān·'gwān. Wǒ·men 'yěw-yì·tyān chí·je 'mǎ dàw yì·tyáw-'hé-nàr-chywu. Dzày-'nàr jyèw-le yí·ge-dyàw·dzay-'hé·li·de-rén. Wǒ·men bǎ 'jè·ge-rén 'táy·daw yī·'ywàn·li. Wǒ 'tīng·shwō jè·ge-'rén 'yǐ·jing dzày yī·'ywàn·li dāng-le 'kàn·hu-bīng-le. Wǒ méy·yew gěy 'jè·ge-rén jàw-'shyàng. Wǒ·men bǎ-ta 'jyèw·chi-lay-de·shŕ·hew 'tyān yǐ·jing 'hēy-le. 'Swó·yi 'méy-néng jàw-'shyàng.*

*'Jè-sān·jāng shř dzày jywēn·gwān-shywé·'shyàw jàw·de. Jywēn·gwān-shywé·'shyàw lí 'Shī·ān yěw 'sān·shr-'lǐ. Wǒ·men shř dzwò chì·'chē chywù·de.*

*'Jè-yì·jāng shř shywé·'shyàw·de-dà-mén. Jè-yì·jāng shř 'pàw·kē·de-shywé·sheng yǎn·'shí de·shŕ·hew jàw·de.*

*Tā·men 'jèng dzày shyàng nà-ywǎn·'ywán·de-'shān·shang fàng-'pàw. Pàw-'shēng tày 'dà-le, wǒ·de-jàw·shyàng·jī 'dùng-le, swó·yi jàw·de bù-hěn 'chīng·chu.*

*'Jè-yì·jāng shr̀ shywé·sheng chr̄-'fàn de·shŕ·hew jàw·de. Tā·men·de-'shīn dēw dzày chr̄-'fàn-shang-le. Wó 'gěy tā·men jàw-'shyàng de·shŕ·hew, tā·men yì·'dyǎr y bù-'jr̄·daw.*

*Wǒ 'háy yéw hěn-dwō-shyàng·'pyàr dēw dzày 'Shī·ān·de-yì·jyā-jàw·shyàng·'gwǎn·li. 'Děng tā·men géy·wo shí·'hǎw-le 'jì-lay.*

## True-False Statements

1. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng bú-'ywàn·yi bǎ tā-jàw·de-shyàng·'pyàr gěy 'Wáng-shyān·sheng 'kàn.*

2. *'Lwó yěw 'shŕ·jāng-shyàng·'pyàr shr̀ dzày 'Túng·gwān jàw·de.*

3. *Yěw 'yì·jāng-shyàng·'pyàr·shang yěw yí·ge-'bīng jàn·dzay Hwáng·'hé·de-'nán·àn.*

4. *'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng shr̀ ge-shàw·'jyàng.*

5. *'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng 'bú-dàw sān·shr·'swèy.*

6. *'Swēn-shr̄·jǎng·de-tsān·méw·'jǎng shr̀ ge-shàng·'shyàw.*

7. *'Chyán-tsān·mew hé 'Lwó-shyān·sheng chí·je 'mǎ dàw yì·tyáw-'hé-nàr-chywu de·shŕ·hew bǎ yí·ge-tyàw-'hé·de-rén 'jyèw·chi-lay·de.*

8. *'Jè·ge-rén 'yǐ·jing dzày yī·'ywàn·li dzwò-le kàn·hu·'bīng-le.*

9. *Jywēn·gwān-shywé·'shyàw·de-'shywé·sheng fàng-'pàw de·shŕ·hew, 'pàw-shēng nà·me-'dà, 'Lwó-shyān·sheng·de-jàw·shyàng·'jī 'dùng-le, shyàng·'pyàn jyèw méy-jàw·'hǎw.*

10. *'Lwó-jàw·de-'shyàng yěw·de háy méy-tsúng 'Shī·ān 'jì-lay.*

461

## PART FIVE

## UNIT 25

# RELIGION

## SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

*Ross and Wáng have returned to Wáng's house.*

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| to give a gift to | *'sùng·gěy* |
| This is something for you. | *Jè shř wǒ-yàw-'sùng·gey-nǐ·de-yì·dyǎn-'dūng·shi.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| a gift | *'lǐ·wu* |
| With such a long journey, why should you bring me a gift? | *Jè·me-'ywǎn 'háy dày 'lǐ·wu dzwò shém·me?* |
| | *Ross* |
| a blanket | *'tǎn·dz* |
| It's only a blanket. | *Bú-'gwò shř yì·tyáw-'tǎn·dz.* |
| Industrial Cooperative Society | *Gūng·yè-Hé·dzwò·'shè* |
| to weave | *jř* |
| It was woven by the Industrial Cooperative Society. | *Shř Gūng·yè-Hé·dzwò·'shè 'jř·de.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Thanks. | *Dwō-'shyè, dwō-'shyè.* |
| | *Ross* |
| an image of Buddha | *fwó·'shyàng* |
| Look at this Buddha | *Nǐ 'kàn jè·ge-fwó·'shyàng.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| It's one of the things Staff-Officer Chyán gave me. | *Shr̀ yí·ge-'Chyán-tsān·mew-sùng·gey-wǒ·de.* |
| to rent | *dzū* |
| bicycle | *jyǎw·tà·'chē* |
| We rented two bicycles in Sian. | *Wǒ·men dzày 'Shī·ān dzū-le lyǎng·lyàng-jyǎw·tà·'chē.* |
| The two of us bicycled out to look around. | *'Lyǎng·ge-rén chí·je 'chē chū-chywu 'kàn.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Where all did you go? | *Dēw dàw·de 'shém·me-dì·fang?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Many places. | *Hěn-'dwō-dì·fang.* |
| Confucius temple | *Kǔng·dz-'myàw* |
| mosque | *hwéy·jyàw·'táng* |
| Catholic church | *Tyān·jǔ·'táng* |
| Places like the temple of Confucius, the mosque, the Catholic Church, the city walls, the parks—we saw them all. | *Shyàng Kǔng·dz-'myàw-wa, Hwéy·jyàw·'táng-nga, Tyān·jǔ·'táng-nga, chéng·'chyáng-nga, gūng·'ywán-na, dēw 'dàw-le.* |
| Catholic father | *'shén·fu* |
| There was a father in the Catholic Church who has lived in Sian for forty years. | *Tyān·jǔ·'táng·li yěw yí·ge-'shén·fu, dzày 'Shī·ān yěw 'sż·shr-nyán-le.* |
| Protestant | *Yě·sū·'jyàw* |
| missionary | *chwán-'dàw·de* |
| Also a Protestant missionary who has lived there many years. | *'Háy yěw yí·ge-Yě·sū·'jyàw·de-chwán-'dàw·de, 'yě dzày 'Shī·ān hǎw-'dwō-nyán-le.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| the YMCA | *chīng·nyán·'hwèy* |
| This missionary lives in the YMCA. | *Jè·wèy-chwán-'dàw·de jù·dzay chīng·nyán·'hwèy·li.* |
| He said there are many Moslems in Sian. | *Tā 'gàw·su wo shwō, 'Shī·ān yéw hěn-'dwō-'Hwéy·hwey.* |
| Mohammedanism | *Hwéy·'jyàw* |
| He also said the Mohammedanism has been in China for more than thirteen hundred years. | *Tā shwō 'Hwéy·jyàw dzày 'Jūng·gwo yěw 'yì·chyān-'sān·bǎy-nyán-le.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| to believe in | *shìn* |
| There are forty-five million Chinese who believe in Mohammedanism. | *Shìn-'Hwéy·jyàw·de-Jūng·gwo-rén yěw 'sż·chyān-'wú·bǎy-'wàn.* |
| | *Ross* |
| That many? | *'Nà·me-dwō?* |
| A tenth of the Chinese are moslems! | *'Jūng·gwo-rén 'shŕ·fēn·jr̄-'yī shr̀ 'Hwéy·hwey!* |
| They are mostly in the northwestern provinces. | *Tā·men 'dwō·bàn dēw dzày shī·'běy-jí·'shěng·li.* |
| | *Ross* |
| a religion | *dzūng·'jyàw* |
| I've just now learned that there are so many religions in China. | *Jūng·gwo·de-dzūng·'jyàw hěn 'dwō, wǒ shyàn·'dzày tsáy 'jr̄·daw.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| You must have taken quite a few pictures in Sian. | *Nǐ dzày 'Shī·ān jàw-le hěn-'dwō-'shyàng-ba.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Quite a few. | *Bù-'shǎw.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| film | *jyāw·'jywǎn* |
| The films I took along were all used. | *'Dày-chywu·de-jyāw·'jywǎn dēw yùng·'wán-le.* |
| develop (films) | *'shǐ·chū-láy* |
| I'll show them to you when they're developed. | *'Déng-wo 'shǐ·chu-lay géy-ni 'kàn.* |
| a movie film | *yì·jywǎn-dyàn·'yǐng* |
| I also took some movies. | *Wǒ háy 'jàw-le yì·jywǎn-dyàn·'yǐng.* |
| a section | *yí·'dwàn* |
| accountant | *gwǎn-'jàng·de* |
| to use an abacus | *dǎ 'swàn·pan* |
| One section (of the movie) is (about) the accountant in a shop using an abacus. | *Yěw yí·'dwàn shr̀ yí·ge-'pù·dz·li·de-gwǎn-'jàng·de dǎ 'swàn·pan.* |
| addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division | *jyā-jyǎn-chéng-'chú* |
| He says that with an abacus he can do addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. | *Tā shwō tā jyā-jyǎn-chéng-'chú 'dēw yùng 'swàn·pan 'swàn.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. Religions in China.** In the following remarks religious terms are given in Chinese without translation. You can find them all in the Finder List.

The chief religions of China are *'Dàw·jyàw*, *'Fwó·jyàw*, *Yě·sū·'jyàw* or *Jī·dū·'jyàw*, *Tyān·jǔ·'jyàw*, *'Hwéy·jyàw*, and *Lǎ·mā·'jyàw*. The term *Jī·dū·'jyàw* is also used to include *Yě·sū·'jyàw* and *Tyān·jǔ·'jyàw*.

*'Dàw·jyàw* is Chinese in origin. *'Fwó·jyàw*, although Indian in origin, has been practiced in China for almost two thousand years and has become a thoroughly Chinese system as practiced in China. *Lǎ·mā·'jyàw* is a branch of *'Fwó·jyàw* with about fifteen million believers, mostly Tibetans and Mongols.

Although *'Kǔng·jyàw* is often listed with the above, it is hardly a religion, as it does not teach the after

465

life but simply consists of a set of rules for proper social behaviour. Its founder, Confucius (*Kŭng·'dž*), was a teacher and a philosopher, not a religious leader. August 27 is a national holiday commemorating his birth.

'*Hwéy·jyàw* was introduced into China in 651 A.D. Its believers constitute about a tenth of the Chinese population. Although some Turks in Chinese Turkestan who practice this *dzūng·'jyàw* do not speak Chinese, the rest are entirely Chinese in dress, speech, and most of their habits outside of religious habits, the latter including the prohibition on the eating of *jū·'rèw* or having any other contact with *jū*. Every '*Hwéy·hwey* trader carries a sign bearing the characters which read '*Hwéy·hwey*, so that people can avoid talking about *jū* or *jū·'rèw* in his presence.

The believers in the other religions have no such over-all prohibitions. A great many Chinese have a religious side to their lives which is a mixture of '*Dàw·jyàw*, '*Fwó·jyàw*, and '*Kŭng·jyàw*, rather than adhering to one religion exclusively.

*Jī·dū·'jyàw* was first introduced to China in the seventh century—635 A.D.—by the Nestorians. A tablet was erected in the Nestorian church in Sian in 781 A.D., relating the history of the Church in China. This tablet is still preserved in Sian. Nestorianism was prohibited for political reasons about the middle of the ninth century, along with Manicheism and Mazdaism. There were some Catholic missionaries in China in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries but their work did not last long. The present missionary work of the *Tyān·jŭ·'jyàw* in China began in the late 16th century. *Yĕ·sū·'jyàw* missionaries did not arrive until the early 19th century.

There are now Christian churches in most villages and cities in China. The westerner lost while travelling in China can best find his way again, or get help otherwise, by seeking out the Christian church, since Chinese familiar with westerners are most apt to be found there; when none can be found the other sources of aid are the police, schools, or the army.

**Point 2. Arithmetic.** The expressions for adding, subtracting, multiplying, and dividing appear in the following examples:

> 'Sān·ge *jyā* 'lyăng·ge *shr̀* 'jĭ·ge? 'Three *plus* two *are* how many?'
>
> 'Shŕ *jyăn*-'chī *dé*-'sān. 'Ten *minus* seven *gives* three.'
>
> 'Chī *chéng*-'jyĕw *dé* lyèw·shr·'sān. 'Seven *times* (or *multiplied by*) nine *gives* sixty-three.'
>
> 'Chī *chú*-'jyĕw *dé* 'chī·fēn·jŕ-'jyĕw. 'Seven *divided into* nine *gives* nine-sevenths.
>
> 'Jyĕw *bèy*-'chī '*chú dé* 'chī·fēn·jŕ-'jyĕw. 'Nine *divided by* seven *gives* nine-sevenths.'

Notice in [illegible]ular how the expressions for dividing work; the [illegible]s are quite like English and are easy.

## Point 3. Review of Resultative Compounds

Chr̄-'fàn de·shŕ·hew wǒ shwō-'hwà *shwō-bu·'chīng·chu.* 'When I'm eating and speak I can't speak clearly.'

Gāng·tsáy 'gwò-le jǐ·ge-fàn·'gwǎn·dz, nǐ méy-*'kàn·jyan*-ma? 'We've just passed by some restaurants; didn't you see them?'

'Tyān tày 'hēy-le, *wǒ kàn-bu·'chū* shr shém·me-'dž-*lay*. 'It's too dark, I can't see what words they are.'

Wǒ yí·'dìng *shwèy-de·'dàw* 'dzǎw·chen-'bā·dyǎn-jūng. 'I certainly will be able to sleep until eight o'clock in the morning.'

The italicized expressions in the above sentences are *resultative compounds.* These have been discussed before; but a review will be helpful.

The first part of a resultative compound is called the *main verb,* the second part the *postverb.* Thus the resultative compounds in the above sentences are:

| *main verb* | *postverb* |
|---|---|
| shwō | chīng·chu |
| kàn | jyàn |
| kàn | chū (-láy) |
| shwèy | dàw |

Resultative compounds are often preceded by *méy* 'not to have done so-and-so', but they are like the verb *yěw* 'to have' in that they are never preceded by *bū.* (See second example above.)

The postverb of a resultative compound, however, may be preceded by *bu,* as well as by *de; bu* then means 'to be unable to do so and so', and *de* means 'to be able to do so and so'. There are examples above.

The simple form of a resultative compound and the form with *bu* are freely used; the form with *de* is rarer, used mainly in asking or answering questions or for special emphasis:

Nǐ *kàn-de·'jyàn*-ma? 'Can you see?'

Wǒ *'kàn-de·jyàn.* 'Yes, I can see.'

*Wǒ kàn-bu·'jyàn.* 'No I can't see.'

But with some resultative compounds the simple form is never used; so with *dwèy-bu·'chǐ* and *dzěw-bu·'dùng*:

*Dwèy-bu·'chǐ.* '(I) can't face (you).'—'Excuse me.'

Nà·ge-'lǎw-rén *dzěw-bu·'dùng.* 'That old man can't walk.'—literally 'walk not-move'.

Of the postverbs, a few are used quite freely with any main verb: *wán* 'finish' and *lyǎw* (always with *de* or *bu*) 'bring to a successful or satisfactory conclusion':

*Chr̄·wán-le* 'fàn wǒ·men jyèw 'dzěw-le. 'When we had finished eating we left.'

Jè·jyàn-'shr 'jīn·tyan *dzwò-bu·'wán*-le. 'This matter can't be finished today.'

Jè·jyàn-'shr wǒ *dzwò-bu·'lyǎw*-le. 'I can't handle this matter.' (it's too big for me, or I have no time)

'Tày·yang bù-'chū-lay, 'tyān 'dzěm·me *lyàng-de·'lyǎw-ne?* 'If the sun doesn't come out how can it get light?'

But other postverbs are used only with specific main verbs, so that you must know that a particular combination exists before you can use it. Thus *dàw* followed by a place-goal is used with verbs of handling and motion; *dàw* followed by a time-goal is used with adjectives ('*máng·dàw* 'be busy until'); *kāy* is used in a lot of combinations meaning to open things in different ways; *shàng* is used in a lot of combinations meaning to close or connect things or raise them up in different ways; *jyàn* is used with several verbs of 'perception', as one might say (*kàn* 'look', *tīng* 'listen' *wén* 'smell', and the like); and so on. Even though such statements as these can be made, they are not very helpful—you may seem to acquire a 'feeling' for the combinations, but it is still safest to use one only when you know it exists because you have heard it.

Resultative compound with *de* or *bu* are frequently used with the goal standing first in the sentence, sometimes with no subject and sometimes with one present, after the goal:

*jè·ge-'mén wǒ kāy-bu·'kāy*. 'I can't open this door.'

*Jè·ge-'chwāng·hu gwān-bu·'shàng*. 'This window can't be closed.'

*Jè·ge-'dì sǎw-bu·'gān·jing*. 'This floor can't be swept clean.'

*Jè·ge-'dì wó sǎw-bu·'gān·jing-le*. 'I've reached the state of not being able to sweep this floor (any) clean(er).'

*Hǎw-'fáng·dz wó jǎw-bu·'jáw*. 'I can't find a decent house.'

Notice finally, in preparation for the main Word Study Point of the next Unit, that while resultative compounds in simple form describe an *action*, those with *de* or *bu* describe a *state*:

Wó '*jǎw·jáw-le* yì·jyān-hǎw-'wū·dz. 'I found a good room.' (action)

Hǎw-'wū·dz *jǎw-bu·'jáw*. 'Good rooms aren't to be found.' (state, condition)

Chǐng '*gwān·shang* 'mén. 'Please close the door.' (action)

'Jè·ge-mén wǒ *gwān-bu·'shàng*. 'I can't close this door.' (state)

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Here is a group of remarks about religion in China. Be sure that you understand them all.

a. *'Jūng·gwo yéw jǐ·ge-'jùng·yàw·de-dzūng·'jyàw.*
b. *Jyèw·shr 'Dàw·jyàw, 'Fwó·jyàw, 'Kǔng·jyàw, Jī·dū·'jyàw, 'Hwéy·jyàw, hé Lǎ·ma·'jyàw.*
c. *'Yěw·de-rén shwō 'Kǔng·jyàw bú·shr̀ dzūng·'jyàw.*
d. *'Jūng·gwo yéw hěn-dwō-'Dàw·jyàw-hé-'Fwó·jyàw·de-'myàw.*
e. *'Yěw·de-dzày 'shān·shang, 'yěw·de dzày 'dà-chéng·li.*
f. *Hěn-dwō-'Jūng·gwo-rén yě shìn 'Dàw·jyàw, yě shìn 'Kǔng·jyàw.*
g. *'Myàw·li yěw fwó·'shyàng.*
h. *Hěn-dwō-rén dàw 'myàw·li-chywu bày-'fwó.*
i. *'Jī·dū·jyàw fēn 'Tyān·jǔ·jyàw hé 'Yē·sū·jyàw.*
j. *'Jūng·gwo shìn-'Hwéy·jyàw·de-rén bǐ shìn-'Jī·dū·jyàw·de 'dwō.*
k. *'Jī·dū·jyàw-Chīng·nyán·'hwèy shr̀ wèy-'nán-rén·de.*
l. *'Hwèy·ywán hěn 'dwō.*
m. *Yěw 'shāng·rén, yěw 'shywé·sheng.*
n. *Chīng·nyán·'hwèy·li ké·yi 'jù, ké·yi shí-'dzǎw.*
o. *'Cháng·chang yéw yǎn·shwō·'hwèy.*
p. *Háy yéw 'Nywǔ-Chīng·nyán·'hwèy*
q. *'Tyān·jǔ·jyàw·de-jyàw·'táng hěn 'gāw.*
r. *Ywǎn 'ywán·de jyèw kàn-de·'jyàn.*
s. *Tyān·jǔ·'jyàw·de-'shén·fu 'shém·me-gwó·de-rén dēw 'yěw.*
t. *'Tyān·jǔ·jyàw hé 'Yē·sū·jyàw dēw 'bàn-le hěn-dwō-yī·'ywàn hé shywé·'shyàw.*
u. *Chwán·jyàw·'shr̀·li 'yěw·de shr̀ 'yī·sheng, 'yěw·de shr̀ 'jyàw·ywán.*

*2.* I've had trouble keeping my money straight. Here's what happened:

a. *Wǒ chywù mǎy 'dūng·shi de·shŕ·hew, dày-le 'shŕ·wǔ·kwày-chyán.*
b. *Hwéy·dàw 'jyā·li de·shŕ·hew 'háy yěw 'sān·kwày-'yī·máw-'wǔ.*
c. *Wǒ 'yīng·gāy yùng-le shŕ·'yī·kwày-'bā·máw-'wǔ.*
d. *Wǒ dzày rèw·'pù·li mǎy-le 'èr·jīn-'jū·rèw; yùng-le 'yí·kwày-'yī·maw-'wǔ.*
e. *'Yèw dàw chīng·tsày·'pù-chywu mǎy-le 'sān·jīn-báy·'tsày, yùng-le 'sān·máw-chyán.*
f. *'Yèw mǎy-le lyǎng·ge-'pán·dz, yùng-le 'chī·máw-'èr.*
g. *Yì·tyáw-'tǎn·dz, yùng-le 'chī·kwày-'chī·máw-'wǔ.*
h. *Dzwò gūng·gùng-chì·'chē hé 'yáng·chē yí·'gùng yùng-le 'wǔ·máw-'wǔ.*
i. *Yì·jywǎn-jyāw·'jywǎn shr 'sz̀·máw-'sān.*

j. *'Háy mǎy-le 'shém·me-ne?*
k. *'Shyǎng-bu·chǐ-'láy-le.*
l. *Wǒ 'swàn-yi·swàn yí·'gùng yùng-le 'dwō·shaw-chyán-ba.*
m. *Wó bǎ jè-'lyèw·ge-'shùr 'shyě·shyà-lay.*
n. *Jyā·dzày yí·'kwàr, dé-le 'shŕ·kwày-'jyěw·máw-chyán.*
o. *Shŕ·'wǔ·kwày 'jyǎn-chywu 'shŕ·kwày-'jyěw·máw, dé 'sż·kwày-'yī.*
p. *Wó 'shěw·li jŕ yěw 'sān·kwày-'yī·máw-'wǔ.*
q. *Wó 'shyǎng, wǒ-'jyā·de yí·'dìng shr̀ bú-'dwèy.*
r. *Wǒ 'yèw yùng 'swàn·pan 'swàn-le-yi·swàn, 'háy·shr 'shŕ·kwày-'jyěw·máw-chyán.*
s. *'Háy yéw 'jyěw·máw-'wǔ dàw 'nǎ·li chywù-le-ne?*
t. *Kǔng·'pà 'dyàw·dzày nǎ·li-le.*
u. *Wó 'shyǎng-yi·shyǎng 'jīn·tyān dēw dàw 'shém·me-dì·fang chywù-le.*
v. *Hū·'rán 'shyǎng·chi-lay 'háy dàw yí·ge-shǐ·yī·'dyàn-chywu swàn-'jàng láy·je.*
w. *'Yěw-yi·tyān wǒ chywù chywǔ 'yī·shang, kě·shr méy-dày-'chyán.*
x. *Shǐ-'yī·de jyèw géy-wo jì-le 'jàng.*
y. *Wǒ 'chywù de·shŕ·hew tā gěy-le wǒ yì·jāng-jàng·'dān·dz.*
z. *'Nà 'jèng shr̀ 'jyěw·máw-'wǔ.*

*3.* It costs money to keep a house up these days:

a. *Chú-le 'nǐ méy·yew bù-gěy-fáng·'dzū·de?*
b. *Nǐ 'jè-sān·jyān-'wū·dz, dwō·shaw-chyán 'dzū·de?*
c. *'Mǎy fáng·dz jù bǐ 'dzū fáng·dz jù 'pyán·yi.*
d. *'Dzū fáng·dz yàw 'měy·ywè gěy fáng·'dzū.*
e. *'Dàw-le gěy-fáng·'dzū-de·shŕ·hew-le.*
f. *'Měy·ywè fáng·'dzū 'dwō·shǎw?*
g. *'Měy·ywè 'dwō·shaw-chyán·de-fáng·'dzū?*
h. *'Měy·ywè 'yí·hàw gěy fáng·'dzū.*
i. *Fáng·'dzū shyàng·shr hěn-'dwō.*
j. *Kě·shr 'shwěy·chyán, 'dyàn·chyán 'dēw dzày 'lǐ·tew.*
k. *'Měy·ywè 'shwěy·chyán. 'dyàn·chyán, yěw 'shŕ·kwày-dwō-chyán.*
l. *'Jyǎn-chywu 'shŕ·jǐ·kwày-chyán yǐ·'hèw, fáng·'dzū jyèw bú-'tày dwō-le.*

*4.* Here are some odds and ends using the words of this Unit:

a. *'Bìng dzày 'jyē·shang kàn·jyan jywēn·'gwān yīng·gāy shíng jywēn·'lǐ.*
b. *Bù-'yīng·gāy lā-'shěw.*
c. *Nǐ 'kàn, tā·de-'shū·li jè-yí·'dwàn shwō·de bú-'dwèy.*

d. *'Nà·ge-dyàn·'yĭng·li yĕw yí·'dwàn hén kĕ·'shyàw·de.*
e. Pall Mall-*yān·'jywăr hĕn 'cháng, ké·yi 'fēn·chéng lyăng·'dwàn 'chēw.*
f. *'Jè·tyáw-jyē yĕw yí·'dwàn yĕw 'háw-jĭ·ge-gūng·'chăng.*
g. *Yĕw 'yí·ge-jr̄-'bù·de-gūng·'chăng.*
h. *'Lĭ·byan yĕw 'wú·băy·ge-jr̄·bù·'jī.*
i. *'Gù·je hĕn-dwō-'gūng·rén.*
j. *Yĕw yí·ge-jr̄-dì·'tăn·de-gūng·'chăng.*
k. *Jr̄·de-dì·'tăn hén hăw-'kàn.*
l. *Háy yĕw yí·ge-dzwò-'jr̆·de-gūng·'chăng,*
m. *yí·ge-dzwò-jr̆·'yān·de-gūng·'chăng.*
n. *'Wŏ-chēw·de-yān·'jywăr jyèw·shr 'jèy·jyā-gūng·'chăng-dzwò·de.*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN

### Conversation 1

Ross: *Nĭ dàw·gwo 'Shī·ān-ma?*
Wáng: *'Dàw·gwo.*
*'Jù-le yí·ge-'ywè.*
Ross: *Dzày shém·me-'dì·fang jù·de?*
Wáng: *Dzày Chīng·nyán·'hwèy.*
*Nà shr̀ 'shŕ·nyán-chyán-le.*
Ross: *Nà·me 'Shī·ān·de-yĕw-'míng·de-dì·fang nĭ dēw 'dàw·gwo-le.*
Wáng: *'Kàn-le jĭ·chù-'dì·fang.*
*Nĭ kàn 'chyáng·shang-gwà·de-nà·jāng-jàw·'shyàng; nĭ kàn-de·'chū shr̀ shém·me-'dì·fang-lay-ma?*
Ross: *Hăw 'shyàng·shr̀ 'Shī·ān·de-Kŭng·dz-'myàw.*
Wáng: *'Dwèy-le.*
*'Nà jyèw·shr wŏ dzày 'Shī·ān-de·shŕ·hew 'jàw·de.*
Ross: *Nĭ dàw chéng·'chyáng·shang chywù·gwo méy·yew?*
Wáng: *'Chywù·gwo.*
Ross: *Wó shyăng, chú-le Bĕy·'píng·de-chéng·'chyáng jyèw·shr 'Shī·ān·de hăw-'kàn-le.*
*Yèw 'gāw yèw 'dà.*
*Wŏ 'jàn·dzay chéng·'chyáng·shang yùng wàng ywăn·'jìng 'kàn.*
*'Kàn·de hén 'ywăn.*
*Kàn·jyan tyĕ·'lù, dà-'hé, háy yéw ywăn·'ywán·de-'shān.*
Wáng: *Nĭ-'shàng·de 'shr̀-bu·shr̀ 'bĕy·byān·de-chéng·chyáng?*
Ross: *Ní 'dzĕm·me 'jr̄·daw·de?*
Wáng: *Jŕ yĕw dzày 'bĕy·byan ké·yi kàn·jyan tyĕ·'lù.*
Ross: *Wó shyăng dzày 'dūng·byan·de-chéng·'chyáng·shang 'yĕ kàn-de·'jyàn.*

## Conversation 2

Wáng: *Nǐ dzày 'Shī·ān jù-le 'jǐ·tyān?*

Ross: *'Wǔ·tyān.*
*'Chywù-de·shŕ·hew méy·yew 'gūng·fu 'kàn shém·me.*
*'Hwéy-lay-de·shŕ·hew jyèw 'dwō jù-le jǐ·tyān.*

Wáng: *Nǐ-jù·de-lywú·'gwǎn hǎw 'shyàng lí Chīng·nyán·'hwèy bù-'ywǎn.*

Ross: *'Dwèy-le.*
*Lí Dūng·dà·'jyē yě bù-'ywǎn.*
*Wǒ·men 'chà·bu·dwō'měy·tyān-'wǎn·shang dzày Dūng·dà·'jyē chr̄-'fàn.*
*'Yěw·de-shŕ·hew dàw 'Hwéy·hwey-'gwǎn·dz-chywu chr̄ nyéw·'rèw, yáng·'rèw.*

Wáng: *Nǐ 'jr̄·daw-bu·jr̄·daw dzày 'Hwéy·hwey-'gwǎn·dz·li bù-néng yàw 'jū·rèw 'chr̄?*

Ross: *Wǒ yǐ·'chyán bù-jr̄·'dàw.*
*Shr̀ 'Chyán-tsān·mew gàw·su wǒ·de.*

Wáng: *Chú-le chr̄ yáng·'rèw nǐ 'háy dzwò 'shém·me-le?*

Ross: *'Yěw·de-shŕ·hew dàw shì·'ywán·dz-chywu kàn-'shì.*

Wáng: *Nǐ 'kàn-le jǐ·tsż-'shì?*

Ross: *'Lyǎng·tsż.*
*'Yí·tsż shr̀ 'Chyán-tsān·mew chíng-wo.*
*'Háy yěw yí·'tsż 'wǒ shr̀ 'jǔ·rén.*

Wáng: *Shr̀ shém·me-shì?*

Ross: *'Běy·píng-'shì.*
*Kě·shr chàng-'shì·de shr̀ 'běn·dì-rén.*

## Conversation 3

Wáng: *Nǐ 'háy kàn-le shém·me-'dì·fang?*

Ross: *Yéw-'jǐ·tyān wǒ·men dzū-le lyǎng·lyàng-jyǎw·tà·'chē.*
*'Chí·je 'chē 'yì·tyān ké·yi dàw hěn-'dwō-dì·fang.*
*Bǐ dzwò 'yáng·chē 'kwày.*
*'Shī·ān·de-dàw·'lù hěn 'píng.*
*Chí-'chē hěn 'fāng·byan.*
*Bú-shyàng Chúng·'chìng, dēw shr̀-'shān.*
*Shàng-'shān de·shŕ·hew chí-'chē hěn 'lèy.*

Wáng: *'Dwèy-le.*
*Wǒ 'gāng dǎw Chúng·'chìng de·shŕ·hew mǎy-le yí·lyàng-dż·shíng·'chē.*
*Gwò-le jǐ·ge 'ywè jyèw 'mày·le.*

## Conversation 4

Wáng: *Nǐ hwèy jùng-'dì-ma?*

Ross: *'Hwèy.*
*Wǒ-'fù·chin shr̀ jùng-'dì·de.*
*Wǒ 'shyǎw de·shŕ·hew bāng·je wǒ-'fù·chin jùng-'dì.*
*'Wèy-shém·me háy shyǎng jùng-'dì-ne?*

Wáng: *Hày!*
*Shyàn·dzày 'shém·me dēw 'gwèy.*
*'Shēng·hwó-'fèy·yung 'měy·tyān jyā-'dwō.*
*Wǒ 'chyán-jǐ·tyān swàn-le-swàn 'jàng.*
*Wǒ pà yǐ·'hèw wǒ·de-'chyán 'bú-gèw 'yùng·de.*
*'Swó·yi shyǎng-le 'jè·ge-fāng·fa.*
*Rè·shr jùng·de-chīng·'tsày gèw 'dż·jǐ chr̄·de, jyèw bú-yùng chywù 'mǎy chīng·'tsày-le.*
*Yì·'nyán·li ké·yi 'shǎw yùng yì·dyǎn-'chyán.*

Ross: *'Jè·ge-fá·dz hǎw 'jí-le.*
*Wǒ yí·'dìng ké·yi bāng-ni 'jùng.*

Wáng: *Wǒ-'jè·li-ywàn·dz hěn 'dà.*
*Wǒ shyǎng dzày 'ywàn·dz·li jùng yì·dyǎn-chīng·'tsày.*
*Lǎw-'Jēw ké·yi bāng·je 'jùng.*
*Kě·shr wǒ·men dēw bù-'dǔng dzěm·me 'jùng.*

Ross: *Wǒ 'jr̄·daw dzěm·me 'jùng.*
*'Míng·nyan wǒ ké·yi jyāw-ni 'jùng.*
*Nǐ 'yì-tyān hěn 'máng.*

## Conversation 5

Ross: *'Èw! Wǒ wàng-le gěy fáng·'dzū-le.*
*Jè shr̀ 'shyà·ywè·de-fáng·'dzū.*

Wáng: *Dwō-'shyè.*
*'Děng yì·hwěr géy-ni shēw·'tyáw.*

Ross: *Bù-'máng.*
*Nǐ-jè·ge-'fáng·jǔ·rén tày 'hǎw-le.*
*Nǐ 'kàn wó 'dzěw-le jǐ·tyān, jè·jyān-'wū·dz 'shēw·shr·de dwō·me-'gān·jìng.*

Wáng: *Dēw shr̀ 'Jàw-Mā 'shēw·shr·de.*
*Nǐ-jè·ge-fáng·'kè hén kě·'shyàw.*
*Gěy fáng·'dzū kě·shr bú-'jù.*
*Yí 'chywù jyèw·shr lyǎng·ge lǐ·'bày.*
*'Èw! Wǒ wàng-le 'gàw·su ni.*
*Jīn·tyan-'wǎn·shang wǒ-'tày·tay dzwò-le jǐ·ge-'tsày.*
*Yàw 'chíng-ni chr̄ wǎn·'fàn.*

Ross: *'Shyè·shye. Bú·yàw 'kè·chi-ba.*

Wáng: *Shr̀-'nǐ bú·yàw 'kè·chi.*
*Tsúng nǐ 'láy-le wǒ 'háy méy-'chǐng·gwo ni-ne.*

Ross: *'Hǎw-ba.*

# FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| *_báy_ A | 'white, light' |
| _báy·'tsày_ N | 'cabbage, celery-cabbage' |
| *_bày_ V | 'worship' |
| _bày-'fwó_ | 'to worship an image of Buddha |
| *_bù_ N | '(cotton) cloth' (see _jr̄-'bù_) |
| *_·chăng_ | 'an enclosed space' (see _gūng 'chăng_) |
| *_chē_ N | 'wheeled vehicle' (see _dż·shíng·'chē, jyăw·tà·'chē_) |
| _chéng_ K | 'multiplied by' (see _jyā-jyăn-chéng-'chú_) |
| *_·chéng_ | 'complete' (see _fēn·cheng_) |
| _chīng_ A | 'fresh, green' |
| _chīng·'nyán_ N | 'young person' |
| _chīng·nyán·'hwèy_ | 'youth association—YMCA, YWCA' |
| _chīng·'tsày_ N | '(fresh) vegetables' |
| _chīng·tsày·'pù_ N | 'vegetable store' |
| _chú_ K | 'divided into' (see _jyā-jyăn-chéng-'chú_) |
| _chú-le_ K | 'with the exception of' |
| _chwán_ V | 'spread' |
| _chwán-'dàw_ | 'to spread a doctrine' |
| _chwán-'dàw·de_ N | 'missionary' |
| _chwán·'jyàw_ N, V | 'missionary work; to do missionary work' |
| _chwán·jyàw·'shr̀_ | 'missionary' |
| *_chyán_ N | 'money' (see _dyàn·'chyán, shwéy·'chyán_) |
| *_dă_ V | 'to strike' |
| _dă 'swàn·pan_ | 'to calculate with an abacus' |
| _'dān·dz_ N | 'list' (see _jàng·'dān·dz_) |
| *_dàw_ N | 'road, way, doctrine' (see _chwán-'dàw_) |
| _'Dàw·jyàw_ N | 'Taoism' |
| _dàw·'lù_ N | 'road, street' |
| *_dì_ N | 'ground, earth, floor' |
| _dì·'tăn_ N | 'rug' |
| _dwàn_ M | 'section, consecutive part of' |
| *_dwō_ A | 'much, more' (see _jyā-'dwō_) |
| _dyàn_ N | 'electricity' |
| _'dyàn·chyán_ N | 'payment for electric current' |
| *_dyàn·'yĭng_ N | 'movie'; with M _jywăn_ 'movie film' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **·*dz̀* | 'self' |
| *dz̀·shíng·'chē* N | 'bicycle' |
| *dzū* V | 'to rent' (see *fáng·'dzū*) |
| ·*dzūng* | 'a school of thought' |
| *dzūng·'jyàw* N | 'a religion' |
| **dzwò* V | 'make, do' (see *Gūng·yè-Hé·dzwò·'shè*) |
| **·fáng* | 'house' |
| *fáng·'dzū* N | 'house rent' |
| *fáng·'jǔ·rén* N | 'landlord, landlady' |
| *fáng·'kè* N | 'tenant, roomer' |
| *fēn* V | 'divide' |
| *'fēn·chéng* RC | 'divide something into' (so many parts) |
| **·fù* | 'father' (see *'shén·fu*) |
| *fwó* N | 'Buddha; a Buddha (image)' (see *bày-'fwó*) |
| *'fwó·jyàw* N | 'Buddhism' |
| *fwó·'shyàng* N | 'an image of Buddha' |
| **gěy* K | 'for' (see *'sùng·gěy*) |
| **gūng* N | 'work' (physical) |
| *gūng·'chǎng* N | 'factory' (M *jyā*) |
| *Gūng·yè-Hé·dzwò·'shè* N | 'Industrial Cooperative Society' |
| **gwǎn* V | 'manage' |
| *gwǎn-'jàng·de* N | 'accountant' |
| *Hày!* | 'well, . . .', exclamation showing regret or helplessness |
| **hé* K | 'together, with' (see *Gūng·yè-Hé·dzwò·'shè*) |
| **·hwéy* | 'Mohammedan' |
| *'Hwéy·jyàw* N | 'Islam, Mohammedanism' |
| *Hwéy·jyàw·'táng* N | 'a mosque' |
| **hwèy* N | 'an organization, society, meeting' (see *Chīng·nyán·'hwèy, yǎn·shwō·'hwèy*) |
| *'hwèy·ywán* N | 'members of an organization' |
| *jàng* N | 'accounts' (see *gwǎn-'jàng, jì-'jàng, swàn-'jàng*) |
| *jàng·'dān·dz* N | 'a bill' (to be paid) |
| **·jī* | 'machine, apparatus' (see *jī·bù·'jī*) |
| *'Jī·dū* N | 'Christ' |
| *Jī·du·'jyàw* N | 'Christianity; Protestantism' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **jì* V | 'record, remember' |
| *jì-'jàng* | 'to make an account of' |
| *jr̄* V | 'to weave' |
| *jr̄-'bù* | 'to weave cloth' |
| *jr̄·bù·'jī* N | 'loom' |
| **jř* N | 'paper' |
| *jř·'yān* N | 'cigarette' |
| *jū* N | 'pig, hog' |
| *jū·'rèw* N | 'pork' |
| *·jǔ* | 'master, boss, host' (see *tyān·'jǔ*) |
| *'jǔ·rén* N | 'host' (see *fáng·'jǔ·rén*) |
| *jyā* K | 'added to, plus' |
| *jyā-'dwō* | 'to add on more, increase' |
| *'jyā·dzày* V | 'add into' |
| *jyā·dzày yí·'kwàr* | 'add things together' |
| *jyā-jyăn-chéng-'chú* N | 'addition, subtraction, multiplication and division' |
| *jyăn* K | 'less, minus' (see *jyā-jyăn-chéng-'chú*) |
| *'jyăn-chywù* K | 'with such-and-such taken away' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·jyāw* | 'glue, resin' |
| *jyāw·'jywăn* N | 'film' |
| *jyăw* N | 'foot' |
| *jyăw·tà·'chē* N | 'bicycle' |
| *·jyàw* | 'teaching, doctrine, religion' (see *chwán·'jyàw, 'Dàw·jyàw, dzūng·'jyàw, 'Fwó·jyàw, 'Hwéy·jyàw, Jī·dū·'jyàw, Lă·mā·'jyàw, 'Kŭng·jyàw, ·Tyān·jŭ·'jyàw, Yě·sū·'jyàw*) |
| *jyàw·'táng* N | 'church' |
| *jywăn* M | with N *dyàn·'yǐng*, 'a reel of film' (see *jyāw·'jywăn, yān·'jywăr*) |
| **jywēn* N | 'army' |
| *jywēn·'lǐ* N | 'military etiquette' (see *shíng jywēn·'lǐ*) |
| **·kè* | 'guest' (see *fáng·'kè*) |
| **Kŭng* | (a surname) |
| *Kŭng·dž* N | 'Confucius' |
| *Kŭng·dž-'myàw* N | 'temple of Confucius' |
| *'Kŭng·jyàw* N | 'Confucianism' |

| | |
|---|---|
| 'Lă·ma M | 'Lama' |
| Lă·ma·'jyàw N | 'Lamaism' |
| *·lĭ | 'etiquette, ceremony' (see *jywēn·'lĭ*) |
| 'lĭ·wu N | 'gift' |
| *lù N | 'road' (see *dàw·'lù*) |
| myàw N | 'a (Buddhist or Taoist) temple' (see *Kŭng·dz-'myàw*) |
| *nyán M | 'year' (see *chīng·'nyán*) |
| ·pán | 'plate, tray' (see *'swàr·pan*) |
| 'pán·dz N | 'plate, tray' |
| *·pù | 'retail store' (see *chīng·tsày·'pù, rèw·'pù*) |
| *rén N | 'person, people' (see *'jŭ·rén*) |
| *rèw N | 'meat, flesh' (see *jū·'rèw*) |
| rèw·'pù N | 'butcher shop' |
| *·shè | 'organization, society' (see *Gūng·yè-Hé·dzwò·'shè*) |
| shén N | 'spirit' |
| 'shén·fu N | 'Catholic father' |
| *shĭ V | 'wash; develop' (films) |
| 'shĭ·chū-láy RC | 'develop (films)' |
| shìn V | 'to believe in, have faith in' |
| *·shíng | 'travel; operate, carry out' (see *dż·shíng·'chē*) |
| shíng jywēn·'lĭ | 'to put military courtesy into effect; to salute' |
| *·shr̀ | 'trained person, scholar' (see *chwán·jyàw·'shr̀*) |
| *shwĕy N | 'water' |
| 'shwĕy·chyán N | 'payment for water' (in a house) |
| *shyàng N | 'image, likeness' (see *fwó·'shyàng*) |
| *shyĕ V | 'write' |
| 'shyĕ·shyà(-láy) RC | 'to write down something' |
| *sùng V | 'send' |
| 'sùng·gĕy V | 'send something to' (a person), 'give a gift to' (a person) |
| *swàn V | 'calculate' |
| swàn-'jàng | 'to calculate accounts' |
| 'swàn·pan N | 'abacus' (see *dă 'swàn·pan*) |
| ·tà | 'to press down with the foot' (see *jyăw·tà·'chē*) |
| ·tăn | 'blanket, carpeting' (see *dì·'tăn*) |
| 'tăn·dz N | 'blanket' (M *tyáw*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *****·*táng* | 'hall, room in a building where something is done' (see *Hwéy·jyàw·'táng, jyàw·'táng, Tyān·jŭ·'táng*) |
| *'tsày* N | 'food other than staples' (see *báy·'tsày, chīng·'tsày*) |
| *'tyān* M | 'day' |
| *Tyān·'jŭ* N | 'God' (Catholic Church) |
| *Tyān·jŭ·'táng* N | 'Catholic church' |
| *Tyān·jŭ·'jyàw* N | 'Catholicism' |
| *wù* | 'thing' (see *'lĭ·wu*) |
| **yān* N | 'smoke, cigarette' (see *jř·'yān*) |
| *yān·'jywăr* N | 'cigarette' |
| **yăn* V | 'to perform' |
| *yăn·'shwō* V | 'give a speech' |
| *yăn·shwō·'hwèy* N | 'a meeting at which someone makes a speech' |
| *'Yĕ·sū* N | 'Jesus' |
| *Yĕ·sū·'jyàw* N | 'Protestantism' |
| *·*yè* | 'industry, business' (see *Gūng·yè-Hé·dzwò·'shè*) |
| *·*ywán* | 'personnel' (see *hwèy·'ywán*) |

478

# UNIT 26

## INDUSTRY

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Wáng* |
| Are there many factories in Shī·ān? | *'Shī·ān gūng·'chăng 'dwō-bu·dwō?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Quite a few. | *Bù-'shăw.* |
| industry | *gūng·'yè* |
| All are small industries. | *Dēw shř 'shyăw-gūng·yè.* |
| handicraft industry | *'shĕw·gūng·yè* |
| They're mostly handicraft industries. | *'Dwō·bàn shř 'shĕw·gūng·yè.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| heavy industry | *'jùng·gūng·yè* |
| in the first place | *'bĕn·láy* |
| There are few heavy industries in China to start with. | *Jūng·gwo·de-'jùng·gūng·yè 'bĕn·láy jyèw bù-'dwō.* |
| And then they're mostly in the eastern provinces. | *Yèw 'dēw dzày 'dūng·bù·de-jí·'shĕng·li.* |
| machines | *'jī·chi* |
| to transport something to | *'ywèn·dàw* |
| After the war started, some factories moved all their machinery to the west. | *Dá·chi 'jàng-lay yĭ·'hèw, 'yĕw·de-gūng·chăng bă 'jī·chi dēw ywèn·daw 'shī·byan-lay-le.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| iron works | *tyě·gūng·'chăng* |
| There are several iron works in Shī·ān. | *'Shī·ān yéw jǐ·ge-'tyě·gūng·chăng.* |
| They're ones which had their machinery transported from Hé·nán. | *Shr̀ tsúng 'Hé·nán bă 'jī·chi 'ywèn-chywu-de.* |
| rifles | *'bù·chyāng* |
| machine guns | *jī·gwān·'chyāng* |
| steel helmets | *gāng·'kwēy* |
| They can make rifles, machine guns, and steel helmets. | *Néng dzwò 'bù·chyāng, 'jī·gwān·chyāng, hé gāng·'kwēy.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| piped water | *dż·láy·'shwěy* |
| It seems that Shī·ān still has no piped water. | *Hăw 'shyàng 'Shī·ān háy méy·yew dż·láy·'shwěy-ne.* |
| | *Ross* |
| No, they haven't. | *'Dwèy-le.* |
| well (for water) | *jǐng* |
| well water | *jǐng·'shwěy* |
| They drink water from wells. | *'Hē·de shr̀ 'jǐng·shwěy.* |
| The water from some wells is drinkable, that from others is quite bitter. | *'Yěw·de-jǐng·de-'shwěy shr̀ ké·yi-'hē·de, 'yěw·de hén 'kŭ.* |
| a company | *gūng·'sz̄* |
| I think after the war I'll go to Shī·ān and start a water company. | *Wó shyăng 'jàn·shr̀ 'wán-le yǐ·'hèw, dàw 'Shī·ān-chywu kāy yí·ge-dż·láy·'shwěy-gūng·'sz̄.* |
| capital | *'běn·chyán* |
| I can go to a bank to borrow the capital. | *'Běn·chyán ké·yi dàw yín·'háng-chywu 'jyè.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| interest | *'lì·chyán* |
| to make money | *jwàn-'chyán* |
| After returning the interest some money could still be made. | *Hwán-le 'lì·chyán, 'háy ké·yi jwàn-'chyán.* |
| to lose money | *péy-'chyán* |
| If a water company were managed well it ought not to lose money. | *Dż·lái 'shwěy-gūng·'sż, rè·shr bàn·de 'hǎw, bú-hwèy 'péy-chyán·de.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Only the capital is too large. | *Bú·gwò 'běn·chyán tày 'dà-le.* |
| tube *or* pipe | *'gwǎn·dz* |
| water pipe | *shwéy·'gwǎn·dz* |
| Just think: disregarding all the rest, just the water pipes alone—how much would they cost? | *Nǐ 'shyǎng: bú-yùng shwō 'byé·de, jyèw·shr shwéy·'gwǎn·dz 'mǎy·chi-lay yàw 'dwō·shaw-chyán?* |
| dangerous *or* risky | *màw·'shyǎn* |
| As I see it, it's a little risky. | *Wǒ 'kàn, 'yěw-yì·dyǎr màw·'shyǎn.* |
| | *Ross* |
| to take a risk | *màw-'shyǎn* |
| Whatever business you do you must take some risk. | *Dzwò 'shém·me-shř dēw yàw màw-'shyǎn.* |
| No risk, no enterprise. | *Bú-màw-'shyǎn bù-néng dzwò 'dà-shř.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| True enough. | *Yě 'dwèy.* |
| Only it's better to be cautious just the same. | *Bú·gwò 'háy·shr 'shyǎw·shīn-yì·dyǎr 'hǎw.* |
| I wanted to ask you. | *Wǒ yàw 'wèn-ni.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| What do the Industrial Coöperative factories make? | *Gūng·'hé·de-gūng·'chăng-dzwò·de dēw shr̀ shém·me-'dūng·shi?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Everything. | *Dzwò-'shém·me·de dēw 'yĕw.* |
| to print | *yìn* |
| calling cards | *míng·'pyàn* |
| to carve | *kè* |
| personal seals | *tú·'jāng* |
| There are printers of calling cards, carvers of seals. | *Yĕw yìn-míng·'pyàn·de, kè-tú·'jāng·de.* |
| writing brushes | *máw·'bĭ* |
| (lead) pencils | *chyān·'bĭ* |
| ink | *mwò·'shwĕy* |
| There are makers of writing brushes, pencils, and ink. | *Yĕw dzwò-máw·'bĭ, -chyān·'bĭ, hé -mwò·'shwĕy·de.* |
| porcelain ware | *'tsź·chì* |
| Also makers of porcelain and glass ware; | *Háy yĕw dzwò-'tsź·chì, dzwò-'bwō·li·de;* |
| plates | *'pán·dz* |
| bottles | *'píng·dz* |
| cups | *'bēy·dz* |
| wash basins | *shí·lyăn·'pén* |
| such as plates, bowls, bottles, cups, wash basins—they can all be made. | *Shyàng 'pán·dz, 'wăn-na, 'píng·dz, 'bēy·dz-a, shí·lyăn·'pén-na—dēw néng 'dzwò.* |
| canned food | *'gwàn·tέw* |
| There are also makers of canned food. | *Háy yĕw dzwò-'gwàn·tew·de.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| umbrella | *ywú·'sǎn* |
| Also umbrella-makers. | *Háy yěw dzwò-ywú·'sǎn·de.* |
| umbrella | *sǎn* |
| bamboo | *'jú·dz* |
| oiled paper | *yéw·'jř* |
| oilcloth | *yéw·'bù* |
| The umbrellas are made of bamboo, oiled paper, or oilcloth. | *'Sǎn shr̀ yùng 'jú·dz hé yéw·'jř, yéw·'bù dzwò·de.* |
| medicinal cotton | *yàw·'myán·hwā* |
| Also there are makers of bandages, medicinal cotton, and weavers of blankets. | *Yèw yěw dzwò-bēng·'dày hé yàw·'myán·hwā·de, jr̄-'tǎn·dz·de.* |
| That's all for the army. | *Nà dēw shr̀ gěy jywēn·'dwèy dzwò·de.* |

*Wáng*

| | |
|---|---|
| Those are all things that the locality needs. | *'Jè·shyē-dūng·shi dēw shr̀ běn·'dì-yàw-'yùng·de.* |
| goods | *'hwò·wu* |
| Formerly many goods were transported from the eastern provinces. | *Yǐ·'chyán hěn-dwō-'hwò·wù shr̀ tsúng 'dūng·byan-jí·'shěng 'ywèn-lay·de.* |
| Now it's become impossible to transport them. | *Shyàn·dzày bù-néng ywèn-'hwò-le.* |
| The goods used in the western provinces must be manufactured locally. | *'Shī·byan-jí·'shěng-yùng·de-dūng·shi jyèw dēw děy dzày běn·'dì dzwò-le.* |
| So any factory can make money. | *Swó·yi 'shém·me-gūng·'chǎng dēw jwàn-'chyán.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. Chinese Industry during the War.** When the Japanese started the conquest of Chinese territory along China's east coast, she was at the same time taking the only modern industry China had. There was little of it, and it was almost entirely concentrated in the east and northeast. But the Chinese government immediately began to foster the industrial development of the west, in some cases persuading manufacturers to transport their plants and equipment almost bodily into 'safe' territory. Because of difficulties of transportation even between western provinces, the policy was established of producing those manufactured items most definitely needed in a given locality as much as possible in that locality. Much of this was accomplished by the 'Industrial Cooperatives', organizations of workers into relatively small groups which have a considerable degree of freedom in organizing their productive activities, but with governmental aid and supervision. The Industrial Cooperatives produce not only locally needed items, but many things required by the armed forces.

**Point 2. Words for 'thing'.** The ordinary word for 'thing' is *'dūng·shi;* this refers always, however, to something that can be handled. A 'thing' in the sense of an 'affair, matter'—which cannot be touched with the hands—is a *shr̀*. *Hwò* is a 'thing' that is bartered or sold: *'hwò·wu* is the general term 'goods, merchandise'. The elements *·chì* and *·wù* both have meanings similar to that of *'dūng·shi*, but they are used only in combinations: *'lǐ·wu* 'gift' ('ceremonial thing'), *'hwò·wu* 'goods, merchandise' ('trade-object thing'); *'tsź·chì* 'porcelain ware', *'jī·chì* 'machine. engine, machinery'.

**Point 3. 'Jū·dz.** This substance is probably the most generally useful material in China and Japan. A *'jú·dz* pole is strong, durable, and light—strong and light because it is hollow and is therefore much less flexible than would be a solid wooden pole. But if the tubular pole is split into several pieces it is flexible, and can be further slit into threads or strips or else crushed into pulp. Poets and essayists use *jú·dz* as a metaphor for 'straight,' 'a straight life,' and the character for *jú* is used by artists as an element in decoration and illustration. In certain parts of south China the whole house and contents may be made of *'jú·dz* in one form or another—the house itself, outhouses, fences, furniture, and decoration.

The names of many Chinese utensils when used without other specification automatically mean such a utensil made of *'jú·dz*. Thus the term *'kwày·dz* means not simply 'chopsticks', but 'chopsticks made of *'jú·dz'*; if chopsticks are made of other wood one must specify *'mù·tew-kwày·dz*.

**Point 4. Containers.** In English we have a set of words 'bucket, pail, basin, bowl, cup, plate, dish', and

484

so forth, with certain clear differences in meaning and some objects to which more than one of the words could apply. The same is true of the Chinese words *pén, wǎn, 'pán·dz, 'gwǎn·dz, 'gwàn·dz, 'píng·dz, 'bēy·dz.* The *central* meanings of these words are as follows:

*pén* ‘tub, basin’, from very large size such as a bathtub to about the size of a punch bowl: *shí·lyǎn·'pén* ‘wash basin’. As a measure: *yì·pén-'shwěy* ‘a tubful of water’.

*wǎn* ‘bowl’, smaller than *pén,* and used for soup, stew, other edibles, rather than for water to wash in.

*'pán·dz* ‘plate, tray’—emphasis on the flatness: *'swàn·pan* ‘abacus’ so called because it is flat.

*'gwàn·dz* ‘jug, mug, pitcher, canister,’ that is, relatively tall and slender, and maybe with a handle or spout.

*'píng·dz* ‘vase, bottle, jar’; much the same dimensions, but no handle or spout.

*'bēy·dz* ‘cup, tumbler, glass’, smaller than *'gwàn·dz* or *'píng·dz* and more apt to be used to carry food to the mouth—just as in English we keep drinking water in a ‘pitcher’ but pour it into a ‘glass’ before drinking it.

*'gwǎn·dz* ‘tube’—long and slender, and open at *both* ends—something for liquid to go through, not simply to hold it.

All of these words can be used as measures, with the *·dz* (if any) dropped.

**Point 5. Writing and Printing.** In ancient China writing was done with a knife or stylus, cutting on bones or turtle shells. Later the cutting was done on wooden or bamboo slabs. Then a kind of *bǐ* was made of a bamboo stick with one end frayed out like a brush, using lacquer as ink. Confucius probably used this technique. Silk came into use as the material written on when this writing instrument and fluid had been developed.

About the third century A. D. the Chinese pen came to be made with a bamboo tube and a working end of animal hair, instead of just the frayed bamboo; this was *máw·'bǐ*, and is still used. Paper had been invented in the first century A. D. Ink was carried around as a solid block of pine soot, collected from the smoke of burning pine wood, mixed with an oil; a drop of water is put on a surface and this ink stick is rubbed in it to darken the water into a workable ink when needed for writing. The ink stick itself is *mwò;* the liquid mixture is *mwò·'shwěy.*

But since the earliest times more permanent records have been kept by other methods also stemming from the original carving technique. A surface is carved into a ‘negative’ of the written symbols to be recorded, a piece of paper is placed on this after it is inked, and rubbing it evenly with a brush to insure a uniform impression. This technique, the ancestor of all printing everywhere, was in use perhaps as early as the fourth century A. D. The earliest printed works still in existence date from the late eighth century.

From this technique of pressing (*yìn*) and brushing (*shwā*) comes the term *yìn·'shwā*. To print a book is *yìn-'shū*.

As a means of identification Chinese frequently have a personal seal, *tú·'jāng*, a highly stylized version of the written symbols standing for their names, carved into a piece of jade or other material.

## Point 6. The Meaning and Use of *le*

In various word-study points since Unit XIII certain types of predicates have been described as referring to an *action* or as referring to a *state*. The contrast between these two types of predicates—we can call them *active predicates* and *stative predicates*—is very important in understanding the use and meaning of *le*.

Stative predicates include:

1. Adjective predicates (*hén 'hǎw, hén hǎw-'kàn*).
2. Sentence-predicates like *'téw-téng*.
3. Relation-goal predicates (*yěw-'míng*).
4. Auxiliary predicates like *déy 'dzěw, yàw chr̄-'fàn*.
5. Predicates with a resultative compound with *de* or *bu* inserted (*kàn-bu·chū·'láy*).

Active predicates include:

1. Those with verbs of motion like *pǎw, dzěw*.
2. Action-goal predicates like *chr̄-'fàn*.
3. Predicates with a resultative compound *without* inserted *de* or *bu* (*'dzěw·daw, 'kàn·jyàn*).

Noun predicates are neither stative or active.

Here are examples which will show the force of *le* with each type of predicate:

A

*Le* with an active predicate:

*Tā 'chū-chywu-le.* 'He's gone out' *or* 'He went out.'

*Tā pǎw·daw 'nà·li chywù-le.* 'He ran over there.'

*'Fáng·chyán, 'fàn·chyán, dēw 'yǐ·jing 'gěy-le.* 'Your room and meals are already paid for.'

*Yǐ·'chyán·de-'jyèw-fáng·dz dēw jà·'hwày-le.* 'The old houses (that were there formerly) were all bombed.'

*Tā géy-ni shēw·'tyáw-le-ma?* 'Did he give you a receipt?'

*Tā gwān mén-le-ma?* 'Did he close the door?'

*'Jǐ·tyān shǐ·'wán-le?* '(After) how many days will they have been all washed?'

*Wǒ 'shŕ-le yì·gwǎn-dž·láy·shwéy·'bǐ.* 'I picked up (found) a fountain pen.'

*Wǒ dzwó·tyan-'wǎn·shang kǎn-le 'lyǎng·ge-dyàn·'yǐng.* 'I saw two movies last night.'

*Wǒ dzwó·tyan-'wǎn·shang kàn dyàn·'yǐng-le.* 'I saw a movie last night.'

With an active predicate, *le* simply indicates that the *action* referred to has *already* taken place.

The fourth from the last example shows, however, that the point of time before which the action is completed *is not necessarily the moment of speaking*—it may be some specified time in the future; in this particular sentence, after an indefinite number of days which are being asked about.

### B

*Le* with a stative predicate:

*Tā 'yǐ·jing 'hǎw-le.* 'He's better now already.'—'He has already reached the state of being better.'

*Wǒ bù-'téw-téng le.* 'My headache has stopped.'

*'Nà·ge-rén 'yǐ·jing yěw-'chyán-le.* 'That man is already rich.'

*Wǒ 'méy·yew chyán-le.* 'I'm out of money.'

*Wǒ·men déy 'dzěw-le.* 'We must go'—'We have reached the state of having to go.'

*Jè·ge-'dì wó sǎw-bu·'gān·jing-le.* 'I've reached the state of not being able to sweep the floor clean'—it's too dirty, or I'm too tired, or the like.

With a stative predicate *le* indicates that the state mentioned *has already started to exist*, and therefore *is in existence* at the moment of speaking (or at some moment specifically mentioned in the sentence). When we say equivalent things in English (as shown by the translations above), we normally emphasize the state which *now exists*, rather than the fact that it has *started* to exist; in Chinese this second thing is always emphasized. Because of this difference, such sentences in Chinese are only with difficulty translated in such a way as to bring out the emphasis which is present in the Chinese form.

### C

*Le* with a noun predicate:

*Tā 'jīn·nyán 'lyèw·swèy-le.* 'He's (reached the age of) six this year.'

*Shŕ·dyǎn-'bàn-le.* 'It's (become) ten thirty.'

*Le* is sometimes used in giving ages or times of day. The meaning is the same as that with a stative predicate—that the state of being such-and-such an age or time *has been reached*.

### D

The two positions for *le* with an active predicate:

*Nǐ chŕ-'fàn-le méy yew?* 'Have you eaten?'

*Wǒ 'dzwó·tyan chŕ-le hěn-'dwō-fàn.* 'I ate a lot of food yesterday.'

*Wǒ 'dzwó·tyan nyàn-'shū-le.* 'I studied yesterday.'

*Wǒ 'dzwó·tyan nyàn-le 'sān·běn-shū.* 'I read three books yesterday.'

*Wǒ dzwó·tyan-'wǎn·shang kàn dyàn·'yǐng-le.* 'I saw a movie last night.'

*Wǒ dzwó·tyan-'wǎn·shang kàn-le 'lyǎng·ge-dyàn·'yǐng.* 'I saw two movies last night.'

In the first, third, and fifth of these sentences, the *le* comes after the whole action-goal predicate (*méy·yew*, in the first sentence, is the question-marking element which of course has to come after everything else in the sentence). But in the second, fourth, and sixth, the *le* is placed immediately after the verb.

If you will compare the first and second sentences, the third and fourth, and the fifth and sixth, you will notice the following:

(1) Placing *le* after the whole predicate emphasizes the *event*.

(2) Placing *le* after the verb emphasizes rather the *goal*—the thing which undergoes the action.

Thus when you merely saw a movie, as one thing that might be done in an evening, the *le* comes at the end; but when you saw *two* movies in one evening, this more exceptional thing is stressed by putting the *le* after the verb.

### E

*Le* with an expression of duration after the verb:

*Wǒ·men dzày Chúng·'chìng jù-le 'sān·nyán.* 'We stayed in Chungking three years.'

*Wǒ·men dzày Chúng·'chìng jù-le 'sān·nyán-le.* 'We've been in Chungking for three years.' (and are still there)

With an expression of duration after the verb, *le* added to the verb *only* means that the period of time during which the action took place is entirely in the past; *le* added to the verb *and* at the end of the sentence means that the period of time during which the action took place has lasted down to the moment of speaking, and that the action is presumably still continuing at the moment of speaking.

### F

*Le* in the first part of a longer sentence (contrasted with *je* in the same position):

*Wǒ·men chr̄-le 'fàn jyèw kàn-'shū.* 'When we have eaten we'll study.'

*Wǒ·men chr̄·je 'fàn bú-kàn-'shū.* 'We don't study while eating.'

*Tā bì-le 'yè jyèw dāng-'bīng-le.* 'When he had graduated he immediately became a soldier.'

The *le*'s in which we are interested here are those in the first parts of the sentences. *Le* in this position means 'after having done so-and-so'—and sets up a condition under which the main event (stated in the rest of the sentence) takes place.

In contrast with this *je* in the first part of such a sentence means '*while* doing so-and-so'.

### G

*Le* and *de*:

*Tā dàw 'nǎ·li chywù-le?* 'Where did she go?'

*Tā kàn tā-'mŭ chin chywù-le.* 'She went to see her mother.'

*'Shém·me-shŕ·hew chywù·de?* 'When did she go?'

*'Chyán·tyan chywù·de.* 'She went the day before yesterday.'

*Tā chywù·nyan dàw 'Jūng·gwo chywù-le.* 'He went to China last year.'

*Tā 'chywù·nyan dàw Jūng·gwo chywù·de.* 'He went to China *last year*'—'It was last year that he went to China.'

When the emphasis in a sentence of this kind is on the *event* or on the *place*, or (as in cases in D above) in the *goal* of the action, *le* is used. When the emphasis is on the *time* of the action, *de* is used.

Here is one more important example:

*Wǒ·men 'dzwó·tyan chr̄-le hěn-dwō-'fàn.* 'We ate a lot of food yesterday.'

*Wǒ·men 'bā·dyan-jūng chr̄·de 'fàn.* 'We ate at eight o'clock.'

### H

*Le* and *gwo*:

*Nǐ chr̄-'fàn-le méy·yew?* 'Have you eaten?'

*Nǐ chr̄·gwò(-le) 'fàn méy·yew?* 'Have you finished eating?'

*Wǒ 'dàw·gwo hěn-dwō-'dì·fang.* 'I've been many places.'

*Wǒ méy-'dàw·gwo Jūng·gwo.* 'I've never been to China.'

*Gwò* is always added directly to the verb.

It means one of two things:

(1) It may simply be a stronger *le*, with the meaning 'to have *finished* doing so-and-so' (second example, in contrast with the first); in this meaning *le* may be added after it.

(2) Otherwise it often means 'to have had the experience, sometime in the past, of doing so-and-so', or, with *méy*, 'never to have had the experience of doing so-and-so.'

## Section C: What Would You Say?

In each of the following groups of sentences, be sure that you know the meaning of each, can say each easily and quickly, and remember the meaning of each word in each sentence.

*1.* About Industry.

a. *'Jùng·gūng·yè jyèw·shr yìng-gāng·'tyě-dzàw-'dūng·shi·de-gūng·'yè.*

b. *Shyàng dzwò hwǒ·chē·'téw-wa, dà-bīng·'chwán-na, dà-'jī·chì-ya, dēw shr 'jùng·gūng·yè.*

c. *'Jè·yàng·de-dà-gūng·'chăng dzày 'Měy·gwo hěn-'dwō.*
d. *Dēw dzày jyāw·'tūng-hěn-'fāng·byan·de-dì·fang.*
e. *'Shém·me dēw yùng 'jī·chì dzwò.*
f. *Yéw hěn-'dwō-dūng·shi chú-le yùng 'jī·chì shr̀ bù-néng-'dzwò·de.*
g. *Yéw hěn-'dwō-dūng·shi 'jŕ yěw yùng 'jī·chì tsáy néng 'dzwò.*
h. *'Jūng·gwo·de-gūng·'yè 'dwō·bàn shr̀ yùng 'rén·gūng.*
i. *Yùng·de-'jī·chì yě shr̀ 'shyăw·de.*

### 2. Raw Materials.

a. *'Jūng·gwo-rén-'yùng·de-dūng·shi hěn-'dwō·de shr̀ yùng-'jú·dz-dzwò·de.*
b. *Shyàng ywú·'săn-ra, jwō·'yĭ-ya, 'chwáng-nga, 'jř-a, 'bĭ-ya, 'shyāng·dz-a, 'kwày·dz-a, dēw néng yùng 'jú·dz dzwò.*
c. *'Jūng·gwo rè·shr méy·yew 'jú·dz, jyèw shyàng 'Měy·gwo méy·yew 'mù·tew shr̀·de.*
d. *'Jūng·gwo·de-'tsź·chì hén yěw-'míng.*
e. *'Wày·gwo-rén shyě-'dż yùng 'gāng·bĭ, mwò·'shwěy, hé 'chyān·bĭ.*
f. *'Jūng·gwo-rén yùng 'máw·bí shyě-'dż.*
g. *Shyàn·dzày Jūng·gwo yé yěw yùng-'dż·láy·shwéy·bí-shyě-'dż·de.*

### 3. Shipping Goods.

a. *'Jè·shyē-hwò·wu 'dzěm·me ywèn-lay·de?*
b. *Yùng hwŏ·'chē ywèn-lay·de.*
c. *Jyàw-'rén 'táy-lay·de.*
d. *Yùng fēy·'jī ywèn-lay·de.*
e. *Yùng chì·'chē ywèn-lay·de.*
f. *Yùng 'mă·chē ywèn-lay·de.*
g. *'Băy·hwò-gūng·'sź·de-rén 'sùng-lay·de.*

### 4. Goods.

a. *'Jè·shyē-dūng·shi dēw shr̀ 'shém·me?*
b. *Yéw 'jĭ·jyàn shr̀ gěy-ta·de-'lĭ·wu.*
c. *Dēw shr̀ yàw-'mày·de-hwò·wu.*
d. *Dēw shr̀ 'tsź·chì, yàw 'shyăw·shīn·je 'bān.*
e. *'Jè·yì·bāw shr̀ 'píng·dz.*
f. *'Píng·dz·li yéw 'jyěw.*
g. *'Nà·yì·bāw·li yéw jyěw-'bēy.*
h. *Nà·ge-'dà-bāw shr̀ shí·lyăn·'pén.*
i. *Hăw 'shyàng háy yěw 'bā·ge-'bwō·li-'bēy.*

### 5. Making and Losing Money.

a. *Tā·de 'mǎy·mày dzwò·de 'dzěm·me-yàng?*
b. *'Hěn jwàn-chyán.*
c. *Jwàn-le hěn-dwō-'chyán.*
d. *'Péy-le hěn-dwō-'chyán.*
e. *Bù-péy-'chyán.*
f. *'Nà·yàng·de-mǎy·may 'jwàn-bu·lyǎw chyán.*
g. *'Nà·yàng·de-mǎy·may bú-hwèy jwàn-'chyán·de.*
h. *'Jwàn·jìn-lay bù-shǎw-'chyán, yèw dēw 'péy·chū-chywu-le.*
i. *Yěw 'jwàn de·shŕ·hew, yěw 'péy de·shŕ·hew.*
j. *'Yěw·de-shŕ·hew 'jwàn, 'yěw·de-shŕ·hew 'péy.*
k. *'Jwàn de·shŕ·hew 'shǎw, 'péy de·shŕ·hew 'dwō.*
l. *Bù-'péy bú-'jwàn.*
m. *Bù-'péy jyèw 'jwàn.*
n. *Yěw 'péy yěw 'jwàn.*
o. *Lyán 'běn·chyán dēw 'péy-le.*
p. *Lyán 'běn·chyán dēw péy·'wán-le.*
q. *Yèw 'jyè-le jǐ·chyān-kwày-'chyán, 'yě dēw 'péy-le.*
r. *Tā lyán 'lì·chyán dēw bù-néng 'hwán-ne.*

### 6. Getting Interest from a Bank.

a. *Dzày yín·'háng tswén-'chyán ké·yi dé 'lì·chyan.*
b. *'Tswén·de ywè 'jyěw, 'lì·chyan ywè 'dà.*
c. *'Bǐ·fāng shwō, yěw yí·'wàn-kwày-chyán.*
d. *Rè·shr tswén 'shŕ·nyán, 'měy·nyán ké·yi dé yì·'fēn·de-'lì.*
e. *Nà·me, 'shŕ·nyán yǐ·'hèw 'chywǔ de·shŕ·hew, ké·yi dé 'lyǎng·wàn-'wǔ·chyān-'jyéw·bǎy-dwō-kwày-chyán.*
f. *'Jè-lì·chyán 'shŕ·dzày bù-'shyǎw.*
g. *Dzày 'Měy·gwo-yín·'háng tswén-'chyán 'lì·chyan hén-'shyǎw* (or *hén-'shǎw*).
h. *'Bú·yàw jŕ shyǎng dé-'lì.*

### 7. Writing.

a. *Nǐ 'shywé·gwo yùng 'máw·bǐ shyě Jūng·gwo-'dž-ma?*
b. *Wǒ hwèy yùng 'gāng·bí shyě-'dž.*
c. *'Tā-yùng·de shr̀* Eastman-*dž·láy·shwéy·'bǐ.*
d. *Yùng 'chyān·bí shyě-'dž ké·yi shyě·de·'kwày.*
e. *Wǒ yàw 'mǎy yì·gwǎn-dž·láy·shwéy·'bǐ.*
f. *'Jè-yì·gwǎn-dž·láy·shwéy·'bǐ 'jēn hǎw-kàn.*
g. *'Jè·píng-mwò·'shwěy shr̀ 'lán·de.*
h. *'Nà·píng shr̀ 'hēy·de.*
i. *Ní bǎ mwò·shwěy-'píng·dz gē·dzay 'nǎr-le?*
j. *Jè·gwǎn-chyān·'bǐ shr 'shwéy·de?*
k. *Wǒ shŕ-le yì·gwǎn-dž·láy·shwéy·'bǐ.*
l. *Yùng-hǎw-'kàn·de-'bǐ-shyě·dz-'dž bù-yí·'dìng jyèw hǎw-'kàn.*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN

### Conversation 1

Ross: *Wó yěw yí·ge-'péng yew 'ày mǎy Jūng·gwo-'tsź·chi.*
*Tā-'jyā·li 'shém·me-dì·fang dēw shr̀ 'tsź·chi.*
*Yéw-'wǎn, yěw-'bēy, yěw-'pén, yěw 'píng·dz, 'gwàn·dz, 'pán·dz.*
*'Háy yěw yùng-'tsź-dzwò·de-'fwó·shyàng.*

Wáng: *'Hǎw-'tsź·chi hěn 'gwèy.*
*Yèw 'rúng·yi-'hwày.*
*'Yí bù-'shyǎw·shīn, jyèw dǎ·'pwò-le.*

Ross: *Kě-bu-'shr̀-ma!*
*Yěw-yí·'tsž tā tsúng 'Jūng·gwo ywèn-le yì-'shyāng·dz-tsź·chi.*
*Dàw-le 'Měy·gwo 'dǎ·kāy 'shyāng·dz yí-'kàn, 'pwò-le 'sān·fēn·jr̄-'yī.*
*'Háy hǎw tā bǎw-le 'shyǎn.*
*Báw-'shyǎn-gūng·'sž 'péy-le ta hěn-'dwō-chyán*

### Conversation 2

Wáng: *Wó shyáng yěw-'chyán yīng·gay máy yěw-'yùng·de-dūng·shi, dzwò yěw-'yùng·de-'shr̀.*
*Shyàng 'gwèy·de-'tsź·chi shr̀ 'kàn·de, bú·shr 'yùng·de.*

Ross: *Nà·me nǐ jè·jāng-'hwàr bù 'yě shr̀ 'kàn·de-ma?*
*Yěw 'shém·me-yùng-nga?*

Wáng: *Hā·hā!*
*Jè·jāng-'hwàr dzày wǒ·men-'jyā yéw hěn-'dwō-nyán-le.*
*Wó-dzǔ·'fù shwō, tā 'shyǎw de·shŕ·hew, jyèw 'jì·de wǒ·men-'jyā·li yěw jè·jāng-'hwàr.*
*'Wó yěw-le 'chyán jyèw mǎy-'shū.*
*Shyàng 'hwàr-le, 'tsź·chi-le, 'jè·shyē-dūng·shi, wǒ shr̀ 'bù-'mǎy de.*
*'Bú·gwò wǒ shr̀ 'méy·yew-'chyán·de-rén.*
*'Děng wó yéw hěn-'dwō-chyán de·shŕ·hew, yé·shywu jyèw bú-'jè·me-shyǎng-le.*

### Conversation 3

Ross: *Rè·shr 'wó yěw-chyán dzày 'Jūng·gwo bàn gūng·'yè, ní shyǎng 'shém·me-gūng·'yè dzwèy 'hǎw?*

Wáng: *'Shém·me-gūng·yè dēw 'hǎw.*
*Nǐ shr̀ shyǎng dzwò yěw-'yùng·de-dūng·shi háy·shr shyǎng jwàn-'chyán?*

Ross: *Wǒ yǎw dzwò yěw-'yùng·de-dūng·shi, kě·shr bú-yàw 'péy-chyán!*

Wáng: *Nǐ 'hwèy dzwò 'shém·me?*

Ross: *Wǒ hwèy yìn·'shwā.*

Wáng: *'Yìn·shwā-gūng·'cháng yě hén 'hǎw.*
*'Jūng·gwo dǎ-'jàng yǐ·'hèw, nyàn-'shū·de-rén 'dwo·chi-lay-le.*
*Nǐ ké·yi yìn-'shū, yìn bàw·'jř, yìn dì·'tú.*

Ross: *Nǐ kàn háy·yew 'byé·de-gūng·'yè ké·yi 'dzwò·de-ma?*

Wáng: *Dzàw-'jř, jr̄-'bù, dzàw 'fáng·dz, kāy tyě·gūng·'chǎng, dzàw chì·'chē, kāy fā·dyàn·'chǎng—'jè·shyē dēw shr̀ yěw-'yùng·de-gūng·'yè.*
*Shyàng wú·shyàn·'dyàn-yùng·de-dūng·shi, 'gwàn·téw, gāng·'tyě, dà-'jī·chì, 'yě dēw ké·yi 'dzwò.*

Ross: *Wǒ méy·yew jè·me-'dà·de-'běn·chyán.*
*Dàw yín·'háng-chywu 'jyè-chyán, děy yéw 'bǎw·jèng·rén.*
*Wó shyǎng wó 'yě jyè-bu·'dàw hěn-'dwō·de-chyàn.*
*Wǒ háy·shr kāy yìn·shwā·'swǒ-ba.*
*Jyèw·shr 'běn·chyán 'shyǎw, yě ké·yi 'kāy.*

## FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| *_bǎw_ V | 'guarantee' |
| *_'bǎw·jèng·rén_ N | 'guarantor' |
| _báw-'shyǎn_ | 'to insure, get insurance' |
| _'báw-shyǎn-gūng·'sž_ N | 'insurance company' |
| *_bǎy_ | 'hundred' |
| _'bǎy·hwò-gūng·'sž_ N | 'department store' ("hundred-goods business") |
| *_běn_ | 'source' |
| _'běn·chyán_ N | 'capital' (original investment) |
| _'běn·láy_ H | 'originally, in the first place' |
| _bēy_ N, M | 'glass, cup; glassful, cupful' |
| _'bēy·dz_ N | 'glass, cup' |
| _bǐ_ N | 'pen' M _gwǎn_ (see _chyān·'bǐ, dż·láy·shwéy·'bǐ, gāng·'bǐ, máw·'bǐ_) |
| *_bīng_ N | 'soldier' |
| _bīng·'chwán_ N | 'warship' |
| *_bù_ N | 'a step in walking; infantry' |
| _bù·'chyāng_ N | '(infantry) rifle' |
| *_bù_ N | 'cloth' (not wool) (see _yéw·'bù_) |

|  |  |
|---|---|
| *·chì* | 'a manufactured thing' (see *'jī'chì, 'tsź·chì*) |
| **chū* | 'exit' (see *'péy·chū*) |
| **chwán* N | 'boat, ship' (see *bīng·'chwán*) |
| *chyān* N | 'lead (the metal); graphite' |
| *chyān·'bǐ* N | 'pencil' |
| **chyán* N | 'money' (see *'běn·chyán, jwàn-'chyán, 'lì·chyán, péy-'chyán*) |
| **chyāng* N | 'small arms' (see *bù·'chyāng, jī·gwān·'chyāng*) |
| **dàw* K | 'to' (see *'ywèn·dàw, 'jyè·dàw*) |
| **dé* V | 'obtain' |
| *dé-'lì* | 'to get interest' (on an investment) |
| **·dz̀* | 'self' |
| *'dz̀·láy·shwěy* N | 'tap water' (water that comes of itself, without being carried in a bucket) |
| *dz̀·láy·shwéy·'bǐ* N | 'fountain pen' (pen which feeds its own ink, and does not have to be dipped) |

|  |  |
|---|---|
| *gāng* N | 'steel' |
| *gāng·'kwēy* N | 'steel helmet' |
| *gāng·'tyě* N | 'iron and steel' |
| **gūng* N | 'work' (physical labor) (see *'rén·gūng*) |
| **gūng·'chăng* N | 'factory' (see *tyě·gūng·'chăng*) |
| **gūng·'hé* N | 'Indusco' abbreviation for *gūng·yè-hé·dzwò·shè* 'industrial cooperative society' |
| **gūng·'yè* N | 'industry' (see *shěw·gūng·'yè, jùng·gūng·'yè*) |
| **·gūng* | 'public' |
| *gūng·'sz̄* N | 'company (firm, establishment) (see *báw-shyăn-gūng·'sz̄, băy·hwò-gūng·'sz̄*) |
| **gwān* V | 'close' (see *jī·'gwān*) |
| *gwăn* M | for *bǐ* 'pen'; 'tube' |
| *'gwăn·dz* N | 'tube' (see *shwéy·'gwăn·dz*) |
| *gwàn* N, M | 'jar, mug, pitcher, canister; jarful, mugful, etc.' |
| *'gwàn·dz* N | 'jar, mug, pitcher, canister' |
| *'gwàn·téw* N, M | 'canned food; a can of (food)' |
| *yī-'gwàn·téw-nyéw·'rèw* | 'a can of beef' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *hé K | 'with, and' (see gūng·'hé) |
| *hwā N | 'flower' (see 'myán·hwā) |
| hwò N | 'goods, products' (see bǎy·hwò-gūng·'sž) |
| 'hwò·wu N | 'goods, merchandise' |
| *·jāng | 'insignia' (see tú·'jāng) |
| *·jī | 'machine' |
| 'jī·chì N | 'machine, engine' |
| jī·'gwān N | 'controlling part of a machine' |
| jī·gwān·'chyāng N | 'machine gun' |
| *jìn | 'enter' (see 'jwàn·jìn) |
| jǐng N | 'well' (for water) |
| jǐng·'shwěy N | 'water from a well' |
| *jř N | 'paper' (see yéw·'jř) |
| 'jú·dz N | 'bamboo' |
| jwàn V | 'to make a profit, gain' (in business) |
| jwàn-'chyán | 'to earn money, earn profits' |
| 'jwàn·jìn(-láy) RC | 'to take in profit' |
| *jyè V | 'borrow' |
| 'jyè·dàw RC | 'borrow as much as' (a certain amount) |
| kè V | 'to carve' |
| kwēy N | 'helmet' (see gāng·'kwēy) |
| *láy V | 'come' (see dż·láy·'shwěy) |
| *lì N | 'victory, interest, benefit, profit' (*shèng·'lì 'victory') (see dé-'lì) |
| 'lì·chyán N | 'interest' (on an investment) |
| *lyǎn N | 'face' (see shí-'lyǎn) |
| *·máw | 'hair, fur; woollen' |
| máw·'bǐ N | 'Chinese writing-brush' |
| *màw V | 'face, dare, brave' |
| màw-'shyǎn | 'to brave dangers' |
| màw·'shyǎn A | 'dangerous, adventurous' |
| *·míng | 'name' |
| míng·'pyàn N | 'name card, calling card' |
| ·mwò | 'ink, ink stamp' |
| mwò·'shwěy N | '(liquid) ink' |
| ·myán | 'cotton' |
| 'myán·hwā N | 'cotton' (see yàw·'myán·hwā) |
| *·pán | 'tray' |
| 'pán·dz N | 'tray, plate' |

| | |
|---|---|
| _pén_ N, M | 'basin; basinful' (see _shí·lyǎn·'pén_) |
| _péy_ V | 'to lose (money, in business)' |
| _'péy·chū_(_-chywù_) RC | 'to lose (money in business)' |
| _péy-'chyán_ | 'to lose money (in business)' |
| _píng_ M | 'vaseful, bottleful' (a vessel with no handle or lip) |
| _'píng·dz_ N | 'vase, bottle' |
| *_·pyàn_ | 'slice, flat piece, card' |
| _míng·'pyàn_ N | 'name card, calling card' |
| *_rén_ N | 'person' |
| _'rén·gūng_ N | 'human labor' (as over against machine power) |
| _sǎn_ N | 'umbrella' (see _ywú·'sǎn_) |
| *_shěw_ N | 'hand' |
| _shěw·gūng·'yè_ N | 'handicraft industries' |
| *_shǐ_ V | 'wash' |
| *_shí-'lyǎn_ | 'wash one's face' |
| _shí·lyǎn·'pén_ N | 'wash basin' |
| *_shwā_ V | 'to brush' (see _yìn·'shwā_) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_shwěy_ N | 'water, liquid' (see _dż·láy·'shwěy, jìng·'shwěy, mwò·'shwěy_) |
| _shwéy·'gwǎn·dz_ N | 'water pipes' (for piping water from one place to another) |
| *_shyǎn_ A | 'dangerous' (see _báw-'shyǎn, màw-'shyǎn, màw·'shyǎn_) |
| *_swǒ_ M | for _'fáng·dz_ 'house' (see _yìn·shwā·'swǒ_) |
| *_·sž_ | 'command, control' (see _gūng·'sž_) |
| *_téw_ N | 'head, end' (see _'gwàn·téw_) |
| _tsź_ N | 'porcelain' |
| _'tsź·chì N_ | 'porcelain goods, ware' |
| *_tú_ N | 'map, diagram, chart' |
| _tú·'jāng_ N | 'a personal seal' |
| *_tyě_ N | 'iron' (see _gāng·'tyě_) |
| _tyě·gūng·'chǎng_ N | 'iron works' (factory) |
| *_·wù_ | 'thing' (see _'hwò·wu_) |
| *_yàw_ N | 'medicine' |
| _yàw·'myán·hwā_ N | 'medicinal cotton' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **yè* | 'work, profession' (see *gūng·'yè*) |
| **yéw* N | 'oil' |
| *yéw·'bù* N | 'oilcloth' |
| *yéw·'jř* N | 'oiled paper' |
| *yìn* V | 'press, print' |
| *yìn·'shwā* N | 'printing' (as a business or trade) |
| *yìn·shwā·'swǒ* N | 'printing shop' |
| *ywèn* V | 'to ship, transport' (goods) |
| *'ywèn·dàw* RC | 'to ship (goods) to' (a place) |
| *ywǔ* N | 'rain' |
| *ywú·'sǎn* N | 'umbrella' (for rain) |

# UNIT 27

## AGRICULTURE

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| to dream | *dzwò-'mèng* |
| I had a dream last night. | *Wǒ dzwó·tyan-'yè·li dzwò-le yí·ge-'mèng.* |
| to dream that . . . | *'mèng·jyàn* |
| the country | *'shyāng·shya* |
| I dreamed that I was doing farm work in the country. | *'Mèng·jyàn wǒ dzày 'shyāng·shya jùng-'dì.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| a sentence *or* saying | *yí·jywù-'hwà* |
| In China there is a saying: "Dreams are what you are thinking in your mind." | *'Jūng·gwo yěw yí·jywù-'hwà: "'Mèng shr̀ 'shīn·li 'shyǎng."* |
| Didn't you say that you would help me plant vegetables? | *Nǐ 'bú·shr shwō·gwo yàw 'bāng-wo jùng-'tsày-ma?* |
| You've been thinking of this and so you had this dream. | *Nǐ 'shīn·li shyǎng jè·jyàn-'shr̀, jyèw dzwò jè·ge-'mèng-le.* |
| | *Ross* |
| I haven't finished yet. | *Wǒ 'háy méy shwō·'wán-ne.* |
| This morning I received a letter. | *Jīn·tyan-'dzǎw·chen wǒ 'jyē·daw-le yì·fēng-'shìn.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| to write to someone | *'shyé·gěy* |
| It was written to me by a friend who lives in the country. | *Shr yí·ge-dzày-'shyāng·shya-jù·de-péng·yew-'shyě·gey-wo·de.* |
| He's invited me to his home to stay a few days. | *Tā 'chǐng-wo dàw tā-'jyā-chywu 'jù jǐ·tyān.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| How far is his home from here? | *Tā-'jyā lí 'jè·li yěw dwō-'ywǎn?* |
| | *Ross* |
| A little over eighty lǐ. | *Yěw 'bā·shr·jǐ-'lǐ.* |
| village | *'tswēn·dz* |
| It's in a village. | *Dzày yí·ge-'tswēn·dz·li.* |
| to be under the jurisdiction of . . . | *shǔ . . . 'gwǎn* |
| governmental district | *shyàn* |
| It's under the jurisdiction of the Kiangpei District. | *Shǔ 'Jyāng·běy-shyàn 'gwǎn.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| How large is this village? | *'Jè·ge-tswēn·dz yěw 'dwō-dà?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Some two hundred families. | *Yěw 'èr·bǎy-dwō-'jyā.* |
| general store | *dzá·hwò·'pù* |
| But there's only one general store. | *Jř yěw 'yí·ge-dzá·hwò·'pù.* |
| salt | *yán* |
| sugar | *táng* |
| and so forth | *'déng·děng* |
| It sells salt, sugar, wine, and other things of that kind. | *Mày 'yán-na, 'táng-nga, 'jyěw-wa, 'déng·děng·de-·dūng·shi.* |

499

| | |
|---|---|
| autumn | *'chyēw·tyan* |
| Last year in the autumn I went there and stayed two weeks. | *Chywù·nyan-'chyēw·tyan wŏ dàw 'nà·li-chywu jù-le 'lyăng·ge-lĭ·'bày.* |
| fields | *tyán·'dì* |
| crops | *'jwāng·jya* |
| to harvest crops | *shēw 'jwāng·jya* |
| At that time all the men were in the fields harvesting the crops. | *'Nà·ge-shŕ·hew 'nán·rén dēw dzày tyán·'dì·li shēw 'jwāng·jya.* |
| The women cooked and brought their food to them. | *'Nywŭ·rén dzwò-le 'fàn 'gĕy tā·men 'sùng-chywù.* |
| meaning | *'yì·sz* |
| to be interesting | *yĕw 'yì·sz* |
| It was very interesting. | *Hén yĕw-'yì·sz·de.* |
| policemen | *jĭng·'chá* |
| There are no policemen in that village. | *'Nà·ge-tswēn·dz·li méy·yew jĭng·'chá.* |
| village head-man | *tswēn·'jăng* |
| old man | *'lăw·nyán·rén* |
| The village head is an old man. | *Tswēn·'jăng shr̀ yí·ge-'lăw·nyán·rén.* |
| everyone | *'rén·rén* |
| Everyone in the village listens to what he says. | *'Tswēn·dz·li 'rén·rén dēw tīng tā·de-'hwà.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Is it this village head who is your friend? | *Jè·ge-tswēn·'jăng jyèw·shr nĭ-nà·wèy-'péng·yew-ma?* |
| | *Ross* |
| No. | *'Bú·shr̀.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| He's very busy. | *Tā 'máng·de 'hěn.* |
| He has no time to be village head. | *Méy·yew 'gūng·fu dzwò tswēn·'jǎng.* |
| to be young | *nyán·'chīng* |
| Furthermore, he's still too young. | *'Háy yěw-ne, tā háy tày nyán·'chīng.* |
| He isn't forty yet. | *'Jīn·nyan háy bú-dàw 'sz̀·shr-swèy-ne.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| What crops does your friend raise? | *Nǐ·de-jè·wèy-'péng·yew-'jùng·de dēw shr̀ 'shém·me-jwāng·jya?* |
| | *Ross* |
| rice field | *'dàw·tyán* |
| fruit trees | *'shwéy·gwǒ·shù* |
| melon fields | *'gwā·dì* |
| He has rice fields, fruit trees, and melon fields. | *Tā yěw 'dàw·tyán, 'shwéy·gwǒ·shù, 'gwā·dì.* |
| wheat | *shyǎw·'mày* |
| tobacco | *yān·'yè·dz* |
| He also plants wheat and tobacco. | *Tā háy jùng shyǎw·'mày, yān·'yè·dz.* |
| farm | *núng·'chǎng* |
| His farm has only been going for ten years. | *Tā·de-núng·'chǎng tsáy 'kāy-le 'shŕ·nyán.* |
| at first | *'chǐ·shyān* |
| kind of | *jǔng* |
| seed | *'jǔng·dz* |
| rice | *'dàw·dz* |
| At first he used a new kind of seed to plant rice. | *'Chǐ·shyān tā yùng yì·jǔng-'shīn·de-'jǔng·dz jùng 'dàw·dz.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| unit of land measure | *mǔ* |
| unit of harvested rice | *děw* |
| to yield | *chū* |
| rice grain | *mǐ* |
| Every mǔ of land yields more than seventy děw of rice grain. | *Měy-yì·'mǔ-'dì ké·yi 'chū 'chī·shr·jǐ-déw-'mǐ.* |
| increased twofold | *jyā·'bèy·de* |
| Compared to planting other seed, one mǔ of land can yield about twice as much. | *Bǐ yùng 'byé·de-jǔng·dz, yì·mǔ-'dì-chū·de-'mǐ ké·yi jyā·'bèy·de 'dwō.* |
| in addition | *'jyā·shang* |
| the price of rice | *mǐ·'jyà* |
| to grow | *jǎng* |
| In addition, the price of rice has risen a great deal in the last few years. | *Yèw 'jyā·shang, 'jè-jǐ·nyán mǐ·'jyà 'jǎng-le hěn 'dwō.* |
| So he made some money. | *Swó·yi tā 'jwàn-le shyē-'chyán.* |
| Then he planted quite a number of trees on the hills. | *Tā jyèw dzày 'shān·shang jùng-le bù-'shǎw·de-'shù.* |
| to grow into being | *'jǎng·chéng* |
| a forest | *shù·'lín·dz* |
| Now they've grown into a forest. | *Shyàn·dzày 'yǐ·jing 'jǎng·chéng-le shù·'lín·dz-le.* |
| quality *or* variety | *děng* |
| The tobacco he plants is of the highest quality. | *Tā-jùng·de-yān·'yè·dz shr̀ dzwèy-'shàng·děng·de.* |
| Last year he sent me a jarful. | *'Chywù·nyan tā 'sùng·gey wǒ yí-'gwàn·dz.* |
| (smoking) pipe | *yān·'děw* |
| Where's your pipe? | *Nǐ·de-yān·'děw-ne?* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Try it and see how it is. | *Nǐ 'chēw-yi·chēw, kàn jè·ge-yān·'yè·dz 'dzěm·me-yàng.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Really good! | *'Jēn hǎw!* |
| When you go there this time send me a little, would that do? | *Nǐ 'jè·tsż chywù de·shŕ·hew, géy-wo 'dày-yi·dyǎr, 'shíng-bu·shíng?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Sure. | *'Shíng.* |
| But I don't know when it's best to go. | *Kě·shr bù 'jř·dàw 'shém·me-shŕ·hew chywù 'hǎw.* |
| spring | *'chwēn·tyan* |
| Should it be in the spring or in the fall? | *'Chwēn·tyan chywù-ne, háy·shr 'chyēw·tyan chywù-ne?* |
| to plant seed | *shyà 'jǔng·dz* |
| In the spring the farmers are sowing, and in the fall they're reaping. | *'Chwēn·tyan 'núng·rén shyà 'jǔng·dz, 'chyēw·tyan shēw 'jwāng·jya.* |
| winter | *'dūng·tyan* |
| Then in the winter it's too cold. | *'Dūng·tyan yèw tày 'lěng-le.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| summer | *'shyà·tyan* |
| You'd better go in the summer. | *Háy·shr 'shyà·tyan chywù-ba.* |
| | *Ross* |
| The summer's too hot. | *'Shyà·tyan tày 'rè-le.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| However hot it is, it can't be as hot as in Chungking! | *'Dzěm·me rè, yě 'méy·yew Chúng·'chìng 'jè·me-'rè-ba!* |

503

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. Political Subdivisions.** China is divided into twenty-eight *shěng* and two special areas. The twenty-eight *shěng* are divided into about two-thousand *shyàn*, the size of which depends on the historical boundary as well as on population and revenue. The *shyàn·'jǎng* is responsible to the provincial government and administers the affairs of the district. The district government has several bureaus, including a Police Bureau, an Education Bureau, a Finance Bureau, and a Construction Bureau.

**Point 2. Seasons.** The terms for the four seasons are given in the Finder List.

An expression such as *jīn·nyan-'chyēw·tyan* 'autumn of this year' will mean 'next fall' or 'last fall' depending on when it is said; if it is later than fall, but the same calendar year, it means 'last fall'; if it is earlier than fall, but the same calendar year, it means 'next fall'.

**Point 3. To Obey.** The expression *tīng shwéy·de·'hwà* 'listen to someone's words' means not only that, but also to listen and be obedient to what is said.

**Point 4. Comparison.** *Bèy* means 'double'; *jyā·'bèy·de* 'increasing twofold, doubling'. *Bèy* is also a measure meaning 'so-many times as' long, broad, numerous, etc.:

> *'Měy·gwo-rén·'kèw shr̀ 'Yīng·gwo-rén·'kěw·de-'sān·bèy.* 'The population of the United States is three times as great as that of England.'
>
> *'Měy·gwo-rén·'kěw bǐ 'Yīng·gwo·de 'dwō 'lyǎng·bèy.* 'The population of the United States exceeds by two times the population of England.'

The second sentence in careful scientific statements means the same as the first—that is, that one must add twice again the population of England to the population of England to get the population of the United States. But in ordinary talking the second sentence means simply that the population of the United States is *twice* as great as that of England—not two times *again* as large.

### Point 5. Whole Sentences as Goals

In an English sentence such as 'He saw *me come through the door*' or 'I asked *him to come to dinner*', the italicized parts are really sentences in themselves, a little changed in form from what they would be as separate sentences ('I came through the door', 'he comes to dinner'), serving as goals of the verbs before them.

504

Chinese uses a good many verbs in this way, with sentence-goals after them. Here are examples:

(1) *chǐng* ‘ask (someone to do so-and-so)’:
*Wǒ 'chíng-ni chī-'fàn.* ‘I invite you to dinner.’

(2) *bāng* ‘help (someone to do so-and-so)’:
*Wǒ·men bāng·je ta dzwò-'shr̀.* ‘We’re helping him to work.’

(3) *jyāw* ‘teach (someone how to do so-and-so)’:
*Wǒ 'jyāw tā·men shwō Jūng·gwo-'hwà.* ‘I teach them to speak Chinese.’

(4) *jyàw* ‘tell, *or* order (someone to do so-and-so)’:
*'Jǔ·ren jyàw 'gūng·rén dzwò-'gūng-le.* ‘The boss ordered the workers to work.’

(5) *děng* ‘wait for (someone to do so-and-so)’:
*Děng tā 'hwéy-lay ('wèn-ta).* ‘Wait for him to come back (then ask him).’

(6) *kàn* ‘see (someone doing so-and-so)’:
*Nǐ kàn tā 'chū-chywu-le méy·yew.* ‘See if he’s gone or not.’

(7) *'kàn·jyàn* ‘see (someone doing so-and-so)’:
*Nǐ 'kàn·jyan tā 'chū-chywu méy·yew?* ‘Did you see him leave?’

(8) *tīng, 'tīng·jyàn,* similarly

(9) *shwō* ‘say that (someone did so-and-so)’:
*Tā shwō tā-'tày·tay háy méy-'dàw.* ‘He said his wife hasn’t arrived yet.’

(10) *shyǎng* ‘think that (someone does so-and-so)’:
*Wǒ shyǎng tā·men háy méy-'dàw.* ‘I think they haven’t arrived yet.’

(11) *shyàng* ‘(it) seems that (such-and-such has occurred)’:
*Hǎw 'shyàng tā·men háy méy-'dàw.* ‘It very much seems that they haven’t arrived yet.’

(12) *'tīng·shwō* ‘hear tell that’:
*Wǒ 'tīng·shwō nǐ bú-'ywàn·yi 'dzěw.* ‘I hear tell that you aren’t willing to go.’

(13) *wàng* ‘forget that’:
*Wǒ 'wàng-le tā bú-hwèy shyě-'dž-le.* ‘I forgot that he can’t write.’

(14) *kǔng·'pà* ‘fear that’:
*Kǔng·'pà tā háy méy-'dàw.* ‘I’m afraid he hasn’t arrived yet.’

This is not a complete list of the Chinese verbs which sometimes take sentence-objects, but it is a good sampling.

This type of sentence is easy enough from the English point of view if one simply remembers that all the little connecting words like ‘that’, and so forth, found in the English translations above, are simply left out in Chinese.

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Crops in China.

a. *Jīn·nyan·de-'jwāng·jya bú-'hwày.*
b. *'Chwēn·tyan 'ywŭ 'shăw-yi·dyăr.*
c. *'Shyà·tyan ywŭ 'shyà·de hĕn-'gèw.*
d. *Swó·yi 'chyēw·tyan-shēw·de-'jwāng·jya bĭ 'chyán-jĭ·nyán 'nă-yì·nyán 'dēw shēw·de 'dwō.*
e. *'Jūng·gwo-'bĕy·bù 'dūng·tyan 'lĕng.*
f. *'Lĕng·de 'dì dēw 'dùng-le.*
g. *Swó·yi 'mĕy·nyán jr̆ néng shēw 'yí·tsz̀-jwāng·jya.*
h. *Jūng·gwo·de-'jūng·bù, 'yĕw·de-dì·fang 'yī-nyán·li ké·yi shēw 'lyăng·tsz̀-jwāng·jya.*
i. *'Yĕw·de-dì·fang ké·yi dzày 'yī-nyán·li jùng 'lyăng·tsz̀-'dàw·dz.*
j. *Dzày 'nán·bù 'cháng·cháng ké·yi jùng 'sān·tsz̀.*
k. *'Nán·byan-rén chr̄ 'mĭ·fàn.*
l. *'Bĕy·byan-rén chr̄ 'myàn·fàn.*
m. *'Nán·bù chū dàw·'mĭ.*
n. *'Bĕy·bù chū 'mày·dz.*
o. *'Bĕy·byan-rén-chr̄·de-'mĭ, 'chà·bu·dwō dēw shr̀ tsúng 'nán·bù 'ywèn·lay·de.*
p. *'Jùng shém·me 'shēw shém·me.*

*2.* Trees and crops.

a. *'Mĕy·nyán-'chwēn·tyan 'shù dēw jăng 'yè·dz, kāy-'hwār.*
b. *'Shyà·tyan jyē-'gwĕr.*
c. *'Chyēw·tyan 'gwĕr jăng·'chéng-le jyèw ké·yi 'chr̄-le.*
d. *Jè·ge-núng·'chăng yĕw 'yì·băy-'chī·shr-mŭ-'dì.*
e. *Yùng 'wŭ·shr-mŭ jùng 'dàw·dz.*
f. *Yùng 'shŕ·mŭ jùng 'shī·gwā.*
g. *Yùng 'chī·shr-mŭ jùng shyăw·'mày.*
h. *Yùng 'èr·shr-mŭ jùng-'yān.*
i. *'Dzày yùng 'èr·shr-mŭ jùng 'myán·hwā.*
j. *Yí·'gùng shr̀ 'yì·bày-'chī·shr-mŭ-'dì.*
k. *Chú-le 'dz̀·jĭ chr̄·de, 'yùng·de, háy ké·yi yĕw·de 'mày.*
l. *Yùng 'Mĕy·gwo·de-'myán·hwā-'jŭng·dz, ké·yi 'dwō chū 'myán·hwā.*
m. *'Shŕ·nyán-chyán wŏ dzày 'ywàn·dz·li jùng-le yì·kē-shyăw-'shù.*
n. *'Jīn·nyan jè·kē-'shù 'yĭ·jing jăng·de bĭ 'fáng·dz hăy 'gāw-le.*
o. *Jè·kē-'shù 'yĭ·jing jăng·'chéng-le 'dà-shù-le.*

*3.* Growing up.

a. *Jè·ge-'háy·dz 'shēng·dzay 'Fà·gwo.*
b. *Dzày 'Yīng·gwo jăng·'dà·de.*

c. *Nà·ge-'háy·dz shr̀ dzày-'shyāng·shya-jǎng·'dà·de.*
d. *Tā dì-'yí·tsż dàw 'chéng·li-lay de·shŕ·hew, 'kàn·jyan shém·me dēw 'pà.*

e. *'Chéng·li·de-'shēng·hwo 'fèy·yùng bǐ 'shyāng·shya jyā·'bèy·de 'gwèy.*

### 4. Rivers.

a. *'Cháng·jyāng yéw 'wǔ·chyān-'wú·bǎy-'sān·shr-gūng·'lǐ-'cháng.*
b. *Hwáng·'hé yěw 'sż·chyān-'lyèw·bǎy-'chī·shr·'èr-gūng·'lǐ-'cháng.*
c. *'Cháng·jyāng bǐ Hwáng·'hé 'cháng.*

d. *'Cháng·jyāng bǐ Hwáng·'hé 'cháng 'bā·bǎy-'wǔ·shr·bā-gūng·'lǐ.*
e. *'Shī·jyāng yěw 'cháng·jyāng·de-sān·fen·jr̄-'yī-nà·me-'cháng.*
f. *'Cháng·jyāng yěw 'Shī·jyāng-'sān·bèy-'cháng.*
g. *'Cháng·jyāng bǐ 'Shī·jyāng cháng 'lyǎng·'bèy.*

### 5. Comparing dimensions.

a. *'Jè·běn-shū bǐ 'nà·běn 'hèw 'yí·bèy.*
b. *'Nà·běn-shū jŕ yěw 'jè·běn·de-yí·'bàn-hèw.*
c. *'Nà·běn-shū jŕ yěw 'jè·běn·de-'èr·fēn·jr̄-'yī-hèw.*

d. *'Jè·běn-shū yěw 'nà·běn·de-'lyǎng·bèy-'hèw.*
e. *'Jè·běn-shū bǐ 'byé·de dēw jyā·'bèy·de 'hèw.*

### 6. Prices.

a. *Mǐ·'jyà jǎng·de hěn 'kwày, sān·ge-'ywè jyā yí·'bèy.*
b. *Jīn·nyan-'chwēn·tyan-de-mǐ·'jyà shr̀ 'chyywù·nyan-chwēn·tyan·de-'sż·bèy.*

c. *Mǐ·'jyà jǎng-le, 'shém·me-dūng·shi·de-'jyà·chyan jyèw dēw 'jǎng.*
d. *Dǎ-'jàng de·shŕ·hew 'wù·jyà dēw 'jǎng.*

### 7. Kinds of people.

a. *Shr̀·'jyè·shang yéw hěn-'dwō-rén·'jǔng.*
b. *Yěw 'hēy·jǔng-rén, yěw 'báy·jǔng-rén, yěw 'hwáng·jǔng-rén, 'déng·děng·de.*

c. *'Hwáng·jǔng·de-gwó·'jyā dzwèy-'dà·de shr̀ R̀·'běn hé 'Jūng·gwo.*

### *8.* Kinds of things.

a. *'Jè-yì·jŭng·de-'jř yùng 'gāng·bí shyĕ-'dż 'hăw.*
b. *'Nà-yì·jŭng-'báw·de ké·yi yùng 'máw·bĭ dzày 'shàng·tew shyĕ-'dż.*
c. *Kĕ·shr bù-néng yùng 'gāng·bĭ.*
d. *'Yĕ bù-néng yùng 'chyān·bĭ.*
e. *'Jè·jŭng-'tsź·chì 'rúng·yi 'pwò.*
f. *'Nà·jŭng-shwéy·'gwŏ jyàw shém·me-'míng·dz?*
g. *Shr̀·'jyè·shang 'yĕw jí·jŭng-'rén.*
h. *Yéw 'hăw-rén, yé yĕw 'hwày-rén.*
i. *'Yĕw·de-rén 'yī-tyān dzwò-'gūng.*
j. *'Yĕw·de-rén 'yī-tyān dzwò-'mèng.*

### *9.* Geography.

a. *'Jè·ge-dì·fang jyàw 'Jyāng·bĕy-shyàn.*
b. *Shŭ 'Sż·chwān-shĕng.*
c. *Shyàn·'jăng shìng-'Chén.*
d. *'Yī-shyàn yĕw 'èr·băy-dwō·ge-jǐng·'chá.*
e. *Jè·ge-dì·fang-'chū·de-dūng·shi hĕn 'dwō.*
f. *Yĕw-'táng, yĕw 'dàw·mĭ, yĕw 'shī·gwā, yĕw shwéy·'gwŏ, yĕw 'mày·dz.*
g. *Háy chū 'tsź·chì, 'myán·hwā, 'tăn·dz, yá·'shwā·dz, 'yí·dz, yăn·'jìng·dz.*
h. *Yé yéw tyĕ·gūng·'chăng, fā·dyàn·'chăng, hé jř-'bù·de-gūng·'chăng.*
i. *'Jè·ge-dì·fang bù chū-'yán.*
j. *'Chř·de-yán shr̀ tsúng Sż·'chwān-'shī·bù 'ywèn-lay·de.*
k. *Sż·'chwān-'shī·bù yĕw yán·'jǐng.*
l. *Lí 'hăy nà·me-'ywăn, 'yĕ ké·yi yĕw-'yán chř.*
m. *Jè·ge-dì·fang chū shàng·'dĕng·de-yān·'yè·dz.*
n. *Yùng yān·'dĕw chēw·chi-lay 'hén hăw-chēw.*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN

### Conversation 1

Wáng: *Nĭ-'jyā shyàn·'dzày háy jùng-'dì-ma?*

Ross: *Wŏ·men·de-núng·'chăng shr̀ wŏ-'gē·ge 'gwăn. Yĕw yì·swŏ-'fáng·dz, 'èr·băy-dwō-*acres.

Wáng: Acre-*jè·ge-dż shr̀ shém·me-'yì·sz?*

Ross: *Yīng·'mŭ.*

Wáng: *'Yì-*acre *'hé·cheng Jūng·gwo-'mŭ, yĕw 'dwō·shaw?*

Ross: *'Lyèw·ge-dwō-Jūng·gwo-'mŭ.*

Wáng: *Nà·me, nĭ·men yĕw 'yì·chyān-'èr·băy-dwō-mŭ-'dì. Déy yĕw 'dwō·shaw-rén 'jùng-ne?*

**Ross:** *'Sz̀·ge-rén.*
*Yéw wǒ-'gē·ge hé tā·de-'ér·dz.*
*Háy yéw 'lyǎng·ge-'gù·de-rén.*

**Wáng:** *'Sz̀·ge-rén néng jùng jè·me-'dwō·de-'dì-ma?*

**Ross:** *Tā yěw 'jī·chì hé chì·'chē.*
*Chú-le jùng-'dì, tā háy yǎng-'nyéw, yǎng-'jī, yǎng-'jū, 'déng·děng·de.*

**Wáng:** *Jè·shyē-'dì dēw yùng 'jī·chi jùng-ma?*

**Ross:** *Tā yǐ·'chyán yě yùng-'mǎ, kě·shr shyàn·dzày dēw yùng 'jī·chì-le.*

**Wáng:** *'Jūng·gwo-jùng-'dì·de dēw yùng-'nyéw, hén-shǎw-yùng-'mǎ·de.*

**Ross:** *Yùng 'jī·chì jùng-'dì, 'jùng·de yě 'kwày, 'shēw·de yě 'kwày.*

**Wáng:** *'Jūng·gwo yǐ·'hèw yě yùng 'jī·chì jùng-'dì tsáy 'hǎw.*

**Ross:** *'Jūng·gwo-'rén dwō, dì 'hǎw.*
*Déy yěw 'dà·de-núng·'chǎng tsáy néng yùng 'jī·chǐ.*
*Tīng·shwō 'È·gwo yěw 'hé·dzwò-núng·'chǎng.*
*'Jǐ·shŕ-jyā 'hé·chi-lay mǎy 'jī·chi jùng-'dì.*

**Wáng:** *'Nà 'yě shr̀ yí·ge-hǎw-'fá·dz.*

## Conversation 2

**Wáng:** *'Dzwó·tyan-nǐ-géy-wo-'chēw·de-nà·ge-yān·'yè·dz jēn 'hàw.*

**Ross:** *Wǒ 'jr̄·daw nǐ 'ày chēw jè·jǔng-'yān.*
*'Jè-yì-'píng·dz shr̀ 'géy-nǐ·de.*

**Wáng:** *Nǐ-'dz̀·jǐ 'lyéw·je chēw-ba.*
*Nǐ géy-wo jè·me-'dwō, nǐ-'dz̀·jǐ bú·shr 'méy·yew-le-ma?*

**Ross:** *Wó 'yǐ·jing shyě-'shìn géy wo-nà·ge-'péng·yew-le.*
*Chǐng-ta géy-wo 'dzày jì yì·shyē-lay.*

**Wáng:** *Rè·shr tā 'méy·yěw-le-ne?*

**Ross:** *Tā háy 'yěw.*
*Tā-jùng·de-yān·'yè·dz 'bú·shr 'mày·de, shr̀ wèy tā-'dz̀·jǐ yùng·de.*

**Wáng:** *Nà·me wó shyáng 'mǎy, yě bù-'néng mǎy-le.*

**Ross:** *'Dwèy-le.*

**Wáng:** *Dzày 'pù·dz·li mǎy-bu·dàw jè·me-'hǎw·de-yān·'yè·dz.*
*Wǒ 'chyán-jǐ·tyān mǎy·'dàw-le yì·jīn-dzwèy-shàng·'děng·de-yān·'yè·dz, hěn-gwèy-hěn-'gwèy·de.*
*Kě·shr bù-néng gēn 'jè·ge 'bǐ.*

## Conversation 3

*Ross decides to take Wàng's son Dūng to the country.*

**Ross:** *Nĭ 'jì·de nà·wèy-'Dày-shyān·sheng-ma?*

**Wáng:** *'Nă ge-Dày-shyān·sheng?*

**Ross:** *Nĭ 'jì·de 'yĕw-yí·tsż nĭ dày-ta chywù măy 'dūng·shi-ma?*

**Wáng:** *'Èw! Shr̀-'tā-ya! Wŏ 'jì·de ta. Tā 'dzĕm·me-le?*

**Ross:** *Tā shr̀ chwán-'dàw·de.*
*Shyàn·dzày jù·dzay 'shyāng·shya.*
*Lí Chúng·'chìng bù-'ywăn.*
*Nĭ 'ywàn·yi gēn-wo chywù 'kàn·kan tā-ma?*

**Wáng:** *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew chywù-ne?*

**Ross:** *'Míng·tyan shr̀ lĭ·bày·'r̀.*
*Míng·tyan-'dzăw·chen chywù, 'hăw-bu·hăw?*

**Wáng:** *'Míng·tyan wó yĕw-'shr̀.*

**Ross:** *Nà·me, jyàw-'Dūng gēn-wo chywù, shíng-ma?*

**Wáng:** *'Shíng. Nĭ·men 'jĭ·dyăn-jūng 'dzĕw?*

**Ross:** *'Bā·dyăn-jūng.*
*Shyàn·dzày shr̀ 'shyà·tyan, 'jwāng jya dēw dzày 'jăng.*
*Wó shyăng 'Dūng yí·'dìng ày dàw tyán·'dì·li-chywu 'kàn-yi·kàn.*

**Wáng:** *Tā dzày dà-'chéng·li jù-le jè·shyē-'nyán.*
*Lyán 'jwāng·jya dēw méy 'kàn·jyàn-gwo.*
*Tā yí·'dìng ày 'kàn·de.*
*'Dày-shyān·sheng-jù·de-'tswēn·dz dzày 'năr?*

**Ross:** *Dzày 'Cháng·jyāng-'nán·byan.*
*Dĕy dzwò-'chwán gwò-'jyāng, gwò-le 'jyāng dzwò gūng·gùng-chì·'chē dzĕw 'bàn·dyăn-jūng tsáy 'dàw-ne.*

**Wáng:** *Nà·me nĭ·men 'dĕy dày·je ywú·'săn, ywŭ·'yī.*
*'Míng·tyan kŭng·'pà yàw shyà-'ywŭ.*

## Conversation 4

**Dūng:** *'Lwó-shyān·sheng, 'nà shr̀ shém·me?*

**Ross:** *Nà shr̀ 'dàw·tyán.*
*Nà shr̀ jùng-'dì·de, dzày-'nàr jùng 'dàw·dz-ne.*

**Dūng:** *Dàw·'tyán·li 'dzĕm·me yéw-'shwĕy-ne?*

**Ross:** *'Dàw·dz gāng 'jùng de·shŕ·hew, méy·yew 'shwĕy bù-'jăng.*

**Dūng:** *'Dàw·dz shr̀ shém·me?*

**Ross:** *Nĭ-chr̄·de-dàw·'mĭ jyèw·shr 'dàw·dz·shang 'jăng·de.*

**Dūng:** *'Nà 'yĕ shr̀ 'dàw·dz-ma?*

**Ross:** *Nà shr̀ 'mày·dz.*
*Nĭ-chr̄·de-'myàn jyèw·shr yùng-'mày·dz-dzwò·de.*

Dūng: *À! Wŏ 'jr̄·dàw, nà shr̀ 'shī·gwā.*
Ross: *'Dwèy-le.*
*Nĭ ày chr̄ 'shī·gwā-ma?*
Dūng: *'Ày chr̄.*
*Wŏ·men 'hwéy-chywu·de·shŕ·hew dày yí·ge-'shī·gwā 'shíng-bu·shíng?*
Ross: *'Shī·gwā tày 'jùng-le.*
*Wŏ·men yé·shywu dày yì·shyē-shwéy·'gwŏ hwéy-chywu.*
Dūng: *Wó 'kĕ-le.*
Ross: *Dĕng 'dàw-le chì·chē·'jàn 'tsáy néng yéw-'shwĕy hē.*
*Nĭ 'chr̄ jè·kwày-'táng jyèw bù-'kĕ-le.*

## FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| ***báy* A** | 'white, light' |
| *'báy·jŭng(·rén)* N | 'members of the white race' |
| ***bĕy* | 'north' (see *Jyāng·'bĕy*) |
| *bèy* M | 'times, double' (see *jyā·'bèy·de*) |
| *chá* V | 'investigate, examine, search' (see *jǐng·'chá*) |
| **cháng* A | 'long' |
| *Cháng·'jyāng* N | 'the Yangtze river' |
| **·chăng* | 'an open space' (see *núng·'chăng*) |
| *·chéng* | 'to the state, stage, degree of' (see *hé·'chéng, jăng·'chéng*) |
| **chĭ* | 'rise' (see *'hé·chĭ*) |
| *'chĭ·shyān* | 'to start·with, first, in the beginning' |
| **chīng* A | 'light (in weight)' (see *nyán·'chīng*) |
| **chū* | 'exit'; also means 'yield', or 'produce', of soil or a region |
| *·chwēn* | 'spring (of the year)' |
| *'chwēn·tyan* | 'spring (of the year)' |
| *·chyēw* | 'autumn' |
| *'chyēw·tyan* | 'autumn' |
| **dà* A | 'big, adult' (see *jăng·'dà*) |
| *·dàw-* | 'rice' (the plant) |
| *'dàw·dz* N | 'rice' (the plant) |
| *dàw·'mĭ* N | 'rice' (the grain, ready to cook) |
| *dàw·'tyán* N | 'rice fields' |
| **dàw* K | 'to' (see *'măy·dàw*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_dĕng_ M | 'grade. class, degree, quality' (see _shàng·'dĕng_) |
| _'déng·dèng(·de)_ | 'and so forth' |
| _dĕw_ M | measure of grain, about 316 cubic inches |
| _dĕw_ N | 'a bowl-like thing' (see _yān·'dĕw_) |
| *_dì_ N | 'ground, earth, land' (see _gwā·'dì, tyán·'dì_) |
| _·dūng_ | 'winter' |
| _'dūng·tyan_ | 'winter' |
| _dzá_ A | 'be variegated, of all kinds' |
| _dzá·hwò·'pù_ N | 'general store' |
| *_dzwò_ V | 'make, do, work' (see _hé·'dzwò_) |
| _dzwò-'mèng_ | 'to dream' |
| *_fàn_ N | 'staple food' (see _mĭ·'fàn, myàn·'fàn_) |
| *_gĕy_ K | 'for the sake of' (see _'shyĕ·gĕy_) |
| _gwā_ N | 'melon, pumpkin' (see _'shī·gwā_) |
| _gwā·'dì_ N | 'melon field' |
| *_gwăn_ V | 'manage, be in charge of' (see _shŭ . . . 'gwăn_) |
| *_gwó_ M | 'country' |
| _gwó·'jyā_ N | 'nation, homeland' |
| _gwŏ_ N | 'nuts and fruits' (see _shwéy·'gwŏ_) |
| _gwĕr_ N | 'fruit, nuts, berries' (see _jyē-'gwĕr_) |
| *_gwò_ V | 'pass, go beyond' |
| _gwò-'jyāng_ | 'cross a river' |
| *_hé_ K | 'with, and' |
| _hé·'chéng_ RC | 'convert into' (changing systems of measurement) |
| _'hé·chĭ(-láy)_ RC | 'add together' |
| *_hé·'dzwò_ | 'cooperative' |
| *_hēy_ A | 'black, dark' |
| _'hēy·jŭng(·rén)_ N | 'members of the black race' |
| *_hwā_ N | 'flower' |
| *_hwār_ N | 'flower' (see _kāy-'hwār_) |
| *_hwà_ N | 'speech'; with M _jywù_, 'sentence' |
| *_hwáng_ A | 'yellow' |
| _'hwáng·jŭng(·rén)_ N | 'members of the yellow race' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_hwò_ N | 'goods, produce' (see _dzá·hwò·'pù_) |
| _jǎng_ V | 'to grow, increase' (as of prices) |
| _jǎng·'chéng_ RC | 'to grow into, grow up to be' |
| _jǎng·'dà_ RC | 'to grow up' (of a child) |
| _jǎng 'yè·dz_ | 'to grow leaves' |
| *_·jǎng_ | 'person in charge of' (see _shyàn·'jǎng, tswēn·'jǎng_) |
| *_·jǐng_ | 'well' (for water) (see _yán·'jǐng_) |
| _·jǐng_ | 'to warn, alert' |
| _jǐng·'chá_ N | 'police' |
| _jǔng_ M | 'kind of, sort of' (see _'báy·jǔng, 'hēy·jǔng, 'hwáng·jǔng, rén·'jǔng_) |
| _'jǔng·dz_ N | 'seed' (see _shyà 'jǔng·dz_) |
| _·jwāng_ | 'farm' (including house and field) |
| _'jwāng·jya_ N | 'crops' (see _shēw 'jwāng·jya_) |
| *_jyā_ V | 'add' |
| _jyā·'bèy·de_ | 'being doubled, increased twofold' |
| _'jyā·shàng_ RC | 'add to' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_jyā_ N, M | 'home, family' (see _gwó·'jyā_) used as measure in giving census of a village: _èr·shr-'jyā_ 'twenty families' |
| *_jyà_ N | 'price' (see _'mǐ·jyà, 'wù·jyà_) |
| _·jyà_ | 'farm plants' (see _'jwāng·jya_) |
| *_jyàn_ V | 'meet, recognize' (see _'mèng·jyàn_) |
| _jyāng_ N | 'river' (see _Cháng·'jyāng, gwò 'jyāng, Shī·'jyāng_) |
| _Jyāng·'běy_ N | 'river's north'; name of a political subdivision of _Sž·chwān_ province |
| *_jyē_ V | 'to contract' |
| _jyē-'gwěr_ | 'to bear fruit' (of a plant) |
| *_jyē-'hwēn_ | 'to get married' (to contract a marriage contract) |
| _jywù_ M | with _hwà_, 'sentence' |
| *_kāy_ V | 'to open' |
| _kāy-'hwār_ | 'to blossom' |
| *_lǎw_ A | 'old' |
| _'lǎw·nyán·rén_ N | 'old man' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·lín* | ‘forest, woods’ |
| *'lín·dz* N | ‘forest, woods’ (see *shù·'lín·dz*) |
| **mǎy* V | ‘to buy’ |
| *'mǎy·dàw* RC | ‘to succeed in buying’ (something of a particular quality) |
| *·mày* | ‘wheat’ (the plant) (see *shyǎw·'mày*) |
| *'mày·dz* N | ‘wheat’ (the plant) |
| *mèng* N | ‘dream’ (see *dzwò-'mèng*) |
| *'mèng·jyàn* RC | ‘to dream that (such-and-such happens)’ |
| *·mǐ* | ‘rice grain’ (ready to cook and eat) (see *dàw·'mǐ*) |
| *mǐ·'fàn* N | ‘staple foods made of rice’ |
| *mǐ·'jyà* N | ‘the price of rice’ |
| *mǔ* M | a unit of land measure, about one-sixth of an acre (see *yīng·'mǔ*) |
| **myàn* N | ‘wheat’ (ready to cook) |
| **myàn·'fàn* N | ‘staple foods made of wheat’ |

| | |
|---|---|
| **·núng* | ‘agriculture’ |
| *núng·'chǎng* N | ‘farm’ |
| **nyán* M | ‘year’ (see *'lǎw·nyán·rén*) |
| *nyán·'chīng* A | ‘be young’ |
| **·pù* | ‘store’ (see *dzá·hwò·'pù*) |
| **rén* N | ‘person, people’ (see *'báy·jǔng·rén, 'hēy·jǔng·rén, 'hwáng·jǔng·rén, 'lǎw·nyán·rén*) |
| *rén·'jǔng* N | ‘kinds of people’ |
| *'rén·rén* N | ‘everyone’ |
| **shàng* | ‘up’ (see *'jyā·shàng*) |
| *'shàng·děng* | ‘top quality, highest grade of’ |
| **shēw* V | ‘receive’ |
| *shēw 'jwāng·jyà* | ‘harvest crops’ |
| **shī* | ‘west’ |
| *'shī·gwā* N | ‘watermelon’ |
| *Shī·'jyāng* N | the Hsikiang river, which flows from Yunnan province to the city of Canton |
| **shǔ* V | ‘to be the concern of, pertain to’ |
| *shǔ . . . 'gwǎn* | ‘to be in the control of’ |

| | |
|---|---|
| ******shù*** N | ‘tree’ (see *shwéy·gwǒ·'shù*) |
| ***shù·'lín·dz*** N | ‘forest, woods’ |
| ******shwěy*** N | ‘water’ |
| ***shwéy·'gwǒ*** N | ‘fruit’ |
| ***shwéy·gwǒ·'shù*** N | ‘fruit tree’ |
| ******shyà*** | ‘summer’ |
| ***'shyà·tyan*** N | ‘summer’ |
| ******shyà*** | ‘down’ (see *'shyāng·shya*) |
| ***shyà 'jǔng·dz*** | ‘to plant seed’ |
| ******shyān*** H | ‘first’ (see *chǐ·'shyān*) |
| ***shyàn*** N, M | an administrative district, part of a province (about like a county in the U. S.) |
| ***shyàn·'jǎng*** N | ‘chief of a *shyàn*’, magistrate |
| ***·shyāng*** | ‘country, rural’ |
| ***'shyāng·shya*** N | ‘the country’ |
| ******shyǎw*** A | ‘small, young’ |
| ***shyǎw·'mày*** N | ‘wheat’ (the plant) |
| ******shyě*** V | ‘write’ |
| ***'shyě·gěy*** V | ‘write to’ (a person) |
| **·sz̀** | ‘think’ (see *'yì·sz*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| ***táng*** N | ‘sugar; candy’ |
| ***·tswēn*** | ‘village’ |
| ***'tswēn·dz*** N | ‘village’ |
| ***tswēn·'jǎng*** N | ‘village chief’ |
| ******tyān*** M | ‘day, sky’; also means ‘weather’, season, as in *'chwēn·tyan*, *'chyēw·tyan* *'dūng·tyan*, *'shyà·tyan* |
| ***·tyán*** | ‘field’ (see *dàw·'tyán*) |
| ***tyán·'dì*** N | ‘field’ |
| ******·wù*** | ‘thing’ |
| ***wù·'jyà*** N | ‘prices of things’ |
| ******yān*** N | ‘smoke; cigarette, tobacco’ |
| ***yān·'děw*** N | ‘pipe’ (for smoking) |
| ***yān·'yè·dz*** N | ‘tobacco leaf’ (as grown and sold) |
| ***yán*** N | ‘salt’ |
| ***yán·'jǐng*** N | ‘salt well, saline springs’ |
| ******yǎng*** V | ‘to raise’ (domestic animals, as on a farm) |
| ***yǎng-'bìng*** | ‘to recover from an illness’ |

| | |
|---|---|
| ·*yè* | 'leaf' |
|   *'yè·dz* | 'leaf' (see *jăng 'yè·dz, yān·'yè·dz*) |
| **yĕw* V | 'have' |
|   *yĕw 'yì·sz* | 'be interesting, have meaning' |
| *·*yī* N | 'clothes' (see *ywŭ·'yī*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·*yì* | 'meaning, opinion' |
|   *'yì·sz* N | 'meaning' (see *yĕw 'yì·sz*) |
| *·*yīng* | 'England, English' |
|   *yīng·'mŭ* M | 'acre' |
| **ywŭ* N | 'rain' |
|   *ywŭ·'yī* N | 'raincoat' |

# UNIT 28

## GOVERNMENT; GEOGRAPHY

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| Embassy | *dà·shŕ·'gwǎn* |
| Last night I attended a party at the Embassy. | *Dzwó·tyan-'wǎn·shang wǒ dàw dà·shŕ·'gwǎn kāy-'hwèy-chywu-le.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| vice president | *fù·dzúng·'tǔng* |
| welcoming meeting | *hwān·yíng·'hwèy* |
| Was it the welcoming party for the Vice President of the United States? | *'Shr-bu·shr wèy-'Měy·gwo-Fù·dzúng·'tǔng-kāy·de-hwān·yíng·'hwèy?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Right. | *'Dwèy-le.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| There must have been many present. | *Dàw-'hwèy·de-rén yí·'dìng hěn dwō-ba.* |
| chairman | *jǔ·shí* |
| Was President Chiang there? | *'Jyáng-jǔ·shí 'dàw-le méy·yew?* |
| | *Ross* |
| oneself | *'běn·rén* |
| He himself wasn't there. | *Tā 'běn·rén méy-'dàw.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Madame | 'fū·rén |
| representative | 'dày·byǎw |
| Madame Chiang was there as his representative. | *Jyǎng-'fū·rén dàw-le, dāng tā·de-'dày·byǎw.* |
| *Wáng* | |
| important people | *'yàw·rén* |
| In that case, you must have seen some important people there. | *Nà·me, nǐ yí·'dìng 'kàn·jyan-le bù-sháw-dǎng·gwó-'yàw·rén.* |
| **Ross** | |
| Which country is dǎng·gwó? | *'Dǎng·gwó shr̀ 'nǎ-yì·gwó?* |
| *Wáng* | |
| to refer to | *'jr̆·je . . . shwō* |
| the Chinese Nationalist Party | *Gwó·mín·'dǎng* |
| 'Dǎng' refers to the Chinese Nationalist Party. | *'Dǎng shr̀ jr̆·je Gwó·mín·'dǎng 'shwō·de.* |
| Nationalist Government | *Gwó·mín-'jèng·fǔ* |
| all | *chywán* |
| leader | *'lǐng·shyèw* |
| The high officials of the Nationalist Government are all leaders of the Kuomintang. | *Gwó·mín-'jèng·fǔ·de-'dà-gwān chywán shr̀ Gwó·mín·'dǎng·de-lǐng·'shyèw.* |
| Therefore high officials are also called 'Important men of Party and Country.' | *Swó·yi 'dà-gwān yě jyàw 'Dǎng·gwó-'yàw·rén.'* |
| **Ross** | |
| all *or* every | *'swó·yěw·de* |
| Well, it seemed that all the important people were present. | *Hǎw 'shyàng 'swó·yěw·de-'yàw·rén chywán 'dàw-le.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| to make a turn | *jwàn-'shēn* |
| to bump into | *'pèng·jáw* |
| You couldn't make a turn without bumping into someone important. | *Yī jwàn-'shēn jyèw 'pèng·jaw yí·ge-'yàw·rén.* |
| the diplomatic set | *wày·jyāw·'jyè* |
| There were men of the diplomatic set. | *Yěw wày·jyāw·'jyè·de-rén.* |
| municipality | *shr̀* |
| mayor | *shr̀·'jăng* |
| The mayor of Chungking was there too. | *Chúng·chìng-'shr̀·de-shr̀·'jáng yě 'dàw-le.* |
| Soviet Russia | *Sū·'ē* |
| ambassador | *dà·'shř* |
| There were also the British and Soviet ambassadors. | *Háy yěw 'Yīng·gwo hé Sū·'ē·de-dà·'shř.* |
| be stationed at | *jù* |
| Consul-General | *'dzúng·lĭng·shr̀* |
| And the American Consul-General at Chungking. | *Hé 'Měy·gwo-jù-Chúng·'chìng-dzúng·lĭng·shr̀.* |
| refreshments | *chá·'dyăn* |
| While we were having refreshments, I talked with an officer of the Air Force. | *dzày chr̄ chá·'dyăn de·shŕ·hew, wǒ gēn yí·ge-'kūng·jywēn-jywēn·'gwān tán-'hwà.* |
| around *or* circling | *'wéy·je* |
| the earth | *dì·'chyéw* |
| a circle | *chywār* |
| This man has flown around the earth by plane three times. | *Jè·ge-'rén dzwò·je fēy·'jī wéy·je dì·'chyéw 'dzěw·gwo sān·'chywār.* |

519

| | |
|---|---|
| Asia | *'Yǎ·jēw* |
| Later he gave me a map of Asia. | *'Hèw·lay tā sùng·gey wo yì·jāng-'Yǎ·jēw-dì·'tú.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Is it the one hanging on the wall? | *Jyèw·shr 'chyáng·shang-'gwà·de-nèy·jāng-ma?* |
| Europe | *'Ēw·jēw* |
| Here's Europe. | *Jè shr̀ 'Ēw·jēw.* |
| Africa | *'Fēy·jēw* |
| Here's the northeastern corner of Africa. | *Jè shr̀ 'Fēy·jēw·de-dūng·béy-'jyǎwr.* |
| Australia | *'Àw·jēw* |
| Here's the northwestern corner of Australia. | *Jè shr̀ 'Àw·jēw·de-shī·béy-'jyǎwr.* |
| mainland | *'dà·lù* |
| island | *dǎw* |
| sketch a circle | *hwà yí·ge-'chywār* |
| (He makes a circle with his finger around the islands between Australia and the Asiatic mainland.) | *(Tā yùng shěw·'jŕ·tew wéy·je 'Àw·jēw hé 'Yǎ·jēw-'dà·lù 'dāng·jūng·de-'dǎw hwà-le yí·ge-'chywār.)* |
| South Seas | *'Nán·yáng* |
| archipelago | *chywén·'dǎw* |
| Here are the South Sea Islands. | *Jè shr̀ 'Nán·yáng-chywén·'dǎw.* |
| | *Ross* |
| overseas Chinese | *hwá·'chyáw* |
| There are many overseas Chinese there. | *Nàr yéw hěn-dwō-hwá·'chyáw.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| That's right. | *'Dwèy-le.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| In every South Seas country there are many Chinese. | *Dzày 'Nán·yáng měy-yì·'gwó dēw yéw hěn-dwō-hwá·'chyáw.* |
| Fukien (province) | *Fú·'jyàn* |
| Chekiang (province) | *Jè·'jyāng* |
| Most of these come from Kwangtung, Fukien, and Chekiang. | *'Jè·shyē-dì·fang·de-hwá·'chyáw 'dwō·bàn shr̀ tsúng Gwǎng·'dūng, Fú·'jyàn, hé Jè·'jyāng láy·de.* |
| San Francisco | *Jyèw·jīn·'shān* |
| Honolulu | *Tán·shyāng·'shān* |
| There are also many in San Francisco and Honolulu. | *Dzày Jyèw·jīn·'shān hé Tán·shyāng·'shān yé yéw hěn-dwō-hwá·'chyáw.* |
| northern part | *'běy·fang* |
| Many northern Chinese go to carry on business in Siberia. | *Hěn-dwō-'běy·fang-rén dēw dàw Shī·bwó·lì·'yà-chywu dzwò 'mǎy·may.* |
| | *Ross* |
| Formosa | *Táy·'wān* |
| get back | *'shēw·hwéy* |
| After this war China will get back the Northeast(ern Provinces) and Formosa. | *Jè·tsž-'jàn-hèw 'Jūng·gwo yàw 'shēw·hwéy 'Dūng·běy hé Táy·'wān.* |
| How many Chinese are there in these places? | *'Jè·shyē-dì·fang yěw 'dwō·shaw-'Jūng·gwo-rén?* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Almost thirty-five million. | *'Chà·bu·dwō yěw 'sān·chyān-'wú·bǎy-'wàn-rén.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| to hope | *'shī·wàng* |
| become | *'byàn·chéng* |
| a strong country | *'chyáng·gwó* |
| I hope China will become a strong country at that time. | *Wǒ 'shī·wàng 'Jūng·gwo dàw 'nà-shŕ·hew byàn·cheng yí·ge-'chyáng·gwó.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. Some Important Chinese History.** Dr. Sun Yat-sen (Swēn-Jūng·shān) was born on November 12, 1866. This day is now a national holiday in China. In 1892 he formed the original revolutionary organization which has grown into the Chinese Nationalist Party (Kuomintang, Gwó·mín·'dǎng). The aim of the movement was to overthrow the alien Manchu dynasty and achieve democracy and self-rule for China. The revolution in 1911–1912 succeeded in overthrowing that dynasty and established a republican form of government. However, there followed a period of internal strife and rule by warlords against whom Dr. Sun and the party waged a continuous fight.

A number of times Dr. Sun was forced to leave China for his safety; several times he went to Japan, several times to the United States. He studied medicine in Canton and Hongkong in mission schools, and learned English there. Through his contact with Americans and America he was greatly influenced by the thought of Abraham Lincoln, and his 'Three Principles of the People', nationalism, people's rights, and people's livelihood, stem ultimately from Lincoln's 'of the people, for the people, and by the people'.

Dr. Sun died on March 12, 1925, which is now a memorial day in China. In the following year his disciple Chiang Kai-shek (Jyǎng-Jyè·shŕ) led the armies which had been trained by the Kuomintang and were based at Canton on a northern expedition which in two years unified the country.

Since then the Kuomintang has been governing China on behalf of the people of China, and at the same time attempting to educate the people politically so that they can accept the responsibility of complete self-government. The existing National Government is responsible to the Kuomintang, rather than directly to the people. This period of political training for democracy was just being entered when, in 1937, Japan invaded China.

Under Party rule, members of the Kuomintang elected representatives to a National Congress, which met six times between 1924 and 1938. The Congress elected the Central Executive Committee and the Central Supervisory Committee, which in turn were responsible for selecting, appointing, and discharging all the key officials in the National Government, including the President. There has been no meeting of the National Congress since 1938.

**Point 2. Names.** A Chinese usually has several names: childhood name, clan name, school name, and as many 'courtesy names' as he chooses. The 'courtesy name' is used by other people in referring to him or in addressing him to show respect. To address a man by his personal name (or school name or clan name, whatever he uses officially) shows either close acquaintanceship or disrespect.

For example: Dr. Sun's personal name was *Wén* ('literary'); his clan name *Dé·míng* ('virtue bright'); his courtesy name *Yì·shyān* ('retired sprite'). The English Yat-sen comes from the Cantonese equivalent of *Yì·shyān*. During one of Dr. Sun's narrow escapes to Japan in the eighteen-nineties, he adopted the Japanese surname *Nagayama*, 'middle mountain', and the Chinese *Jūng·shān* is from that.

When it comes to titles and other ways of referring to people other than by their names there are other complications. Chiang Kai-shek is called *Jǔ·'shí* 'chairman', because the government is theoretically run by committees, not by individual officials. *Jǔ·'shí* means literally 'host-mat' which has come to mean 'main-seat (holder)'; in old Chinese days people sat on mats, as is still the case in Japan; the position of the mats of different individuals indicated their relative rank and importance, and the person who occupies the 'main-seat' was the one in charge. In his capacity as chairman of the Party and Political Work Perscrutation Committee and the Military Affairs Committee (*'Jywēn·shr̀-Wěy·ywán·'hwèy*), Chiang is frequently called *Wěy·ywán·'jǎng* 'Committee Chairman', particularly by military people. The cadets and alumni of the Central Military Academy call him *Shyàw·'jǎng* 'school principal' (the *shyàw* of *shywé·'shyàw*). Many people call him, affectionately, *Lǎw-'téw·dz* 'the Old Man'.

Dr. Sun, similarly, has had various titles, but since 1940 his title has been, by decree, *gwó·'fù* 'father of his country'.

Madame Chiang is called *'fū·ren*. This is a very polite term for *'tày·tay* which is always used for Madame Chiang, and usually for other wives of prominent men, as well as in speaking to any married woman whom one doesn't know too well and to whom one wishes to be courteous. In ancient China *'fū·ren* applied only to the wife of a noble, or, up to 1911, to the wives of the highest-ranking officials.

**Point 3. Municipalities.** Certain densely populated metropolitan areas in China are called *shr̀* 'municipalities'. The difference between a *chéng* which is a *shr̀* and one which is not is governmental. A non-*shr̀ chéng*, like a *tswēn·dz*, is governmentally a subdivision of a *shyàn* ('county', more or less), itself a part of a *shěng* ('province'). But a *shr̀* is in some cases governmentally on a par with a *shyàn*, in some cases governmentally on a par with a whole *shěng*. Thus Peiping, Shanghai, Nanking, and Chungking are equivalents of a *shěng*, being directly subject to the authority of the Central Government; Canton, on the other hand, is a *shr̀* equivalent to a *shyàn*, under the authority of the provincial government of Kwangtung.

**Point 4. Bù-gǎn 'dāng.** If someone paid you a compliment such as *Nín·de-'yǎn·shwō bǐ 'Lwó-Dà·dzúng·'tǔng shwō·de háy 'hǎw.* 'The speech you made was better than Roosevelt's', you would reply, to be polite, *Bù-gǎn 'dāng.* The meaning is '(How can I) dare to (pretend to) function (as his equal, in such a position, so well).' *Dāng* is the word you have had in *dāng-'bīng* 'serve as, function as, a soldier'.

**Point 5. Another Expression.** Notice the following two phrases:

*Tā bìng 'hǎw-le.* 'He's gotten well.'
*Tā shwèy 'shǐng-le.* 'He's waked up.'

In the first you could omit *bìng* 'be sick' and still mean much the same; in the second, similarly, you could omit *shwèy*. The literal translation might be 'he from being sick has gotten well' and 'he from being asleep has become awake'; that is, the *bìng* and *shwèy* describe the state from which the action stems. *Bìng* is the opposite of *hǎw*, and *shwèy* is the opposite of *shǐng*.

This type of expression, in which an adjective of opposite meaning is used to make explicit the state from which another state stems, is one which you will hear once in a while. You will understand it readily enough, and the two given here can be freely used in your own talking; but it is better not to try to make up more of the same kind on your own because only rarely will you hit upon one which is actually said.

### Point 6. Nouns and Measures.

This is a general, and detailed, review of how nouns and measures work in Chinese. In order to make the picture complete, it is necessary to include some expressions which you have not learned; you need not learn them now if you do not wish to. Use this section to fix in your mind how nouns and measures do work—most of the expressions will be familiar, and therefore easy. And use this section as reference when you can't remember quite how to express something that would involve this type of phrase in Chinese.

#### A

*Definitions of Nouns and Measures.* Chinese nouns and measures both correspond to English nouns. The difference is as follows:

*Measures* can be used directly after numbers, or directly after demonstrative pronouns (*jè, nà, nǎ*):

*sān·'lĭ* 'three miles'
*sān·'jīn* 'three jin' (unit of weight)
*sān·'nyán* 'three years'
*'nà·nyán* 'that year'
*'nà-sān·nyán* 'those three years'

Words referring to units of distance, area, volume, quantity, weight, time, and the like, are usually (but not always) measures in Chinese.

*Nouns* can *not* be used directly after numerals or demonstrative pronouns. Some of them cannot be used after numerals or demonstratives at all; those that can require the insertion of some appropriate measure between:

not *sān-'rén* but *sān·ge-'rén* 'three people'
not *sān-'bīng* but *sān·ge-'bīng* 'three soldiers'
not *sān-'mă* but *sān·pí-'mă* 'three horses'
not *sān-'yĭ·dz* but *sān·bá-'yĭ·dz* 'three chairs'

Sometimes this is quite like what we have to do in English:

not *sān-'rèw* 'three meats', but *sān·kwày-'rèw* 'three pieces of meat' or *sān·jŭng-'rèw* 'three kinds of meat'

The type of phrases just listed to show the difference between measures and nouns need names; we will call them:

| | |
|---|---|
| *sān·'lĭ* | numeral—measure phrase |
| *'nà·nyán* | demonstrative—measure phrase |
| *'nà-sān·nyán* | demonstrative—numeral—measure phrase |
| *sān·ge-'rén* | numeral—measure—noun phrase |
| *'nà·ge-rén* | demonstrative—measure—noun phrase |
| *nà-sān·ge-'rén* | demonstrative—numeral—measure—noun phrase |

For convenience these will be abbreviated to Num-M phrase, D-M phrase, D-Num-M phrase, Num-M-N phrase, D-M-N phrase, and D-Num-M-N phrase.

## B

*Kinds of Nouns.* Different nouns work in different ways in phrases of the type which have just been given names. The different types of nouns can be listed as follows:

1. *Unit Nouns*
2. *Mass Nouns*
   2b. *False Unit Nouns*
3. *Collective Nouns*
4. *Abstract Nouns*
5. *Unique Nouns*
6. *All-Inclusive Nouns.*
7. *Adverbial Nouns.*

These will be discussed in the order given.

(B) 1.1. *Unit Nouns* are names of things that come in separate pieces in the world about us—words like *rén* 'person', *bīng* 'soldier', and other words for kinds of people, *'jwō·dz* 'table', *'yǐ·dz* 'chair', and so forth. If the pieces are very small, such as grains of sand, then the words are not unit nouns. Furthermore, some words which from the point of view of meaning might be suspected to be unit nouns are not—for example, *mǎ* 'horse', *hwǒ·'chē* 'railroad car or train', which are *false unit nouns*, a kind of mass noun.

The sure test for a unit noun is that one can count the units in groups of ten, a hundred, a thousand, or ten-thousand, by using the numbers *shŕ*, *bǎy*, *chyān*, and *wàn* as measures:

*sān·shr-'rén* 'thirty people'
*sān·bǎy-'bīng* 'three hundred soldiers'
*yì·chyān-'yǐ·dz* 'a thousand chairs'
*yí·wàn-'dż* 'ten thousand characters'
*sż·shr-'jwō·dz* 'forty tables'

This cannot be done in the case of *just* 'ten', since then *shŕ* is the first word of the phrase and counts as a numeral, not as a measure.

Only unit nouns permit of this usage. But there is in each case an alternative way of expressing the same thing, by using after the 'ten', 'hundred', 'thousand', or 'ten-thousand' an appropriate *unit measure*:

*sān·shr·ge-'rén* 'thirty people'
*sān·bǎy·ge-'bīng* 'three hundred soldiers'
*yì·chyān·bá-'yǐ·dz* 'a thousand chairs'
*yí·wàn·ge-'dż* 'ten thousand characters'

(B) 1.2. Another situation in which the unit measure may be optionally used or dropped is after *jè-shyē* 'these', *nà-shyē* 'those', and sometimes *nǎ-shyē* 'which few'; these forms usually imply 'these *relatively few*', 'those *relatively few*', and so on:

*jè-shyē(·ge)-'rén* 'these (few) men'
*nà-shyē(·ge)-'bīng* 'those (few) soldiers'
*jè-shyē(·ge)-'yǐ·dz* 'these characters'

The measure *shyē* is special in that it is used only after the demonstratives, never after numerals.

(B) 1.3. In other possible types of phrases with unit nouns the use of a unit measure (unless replaced by some other measure; see below) is not optional, but required. The constructions are of the types Num-M-N, D-M-N, and D-Num-M-N, the M in each case being the appropriate unit measure:

*sān·ge-'rén* 'three people'
*jè·ge-'rén* 'this person'
*jè-yí·ge-'rén* 'this (one) person'
*nà-sān·ge-'rén* 'those three people'
*shŕ·ge-'dż* 'ten characters'
*jè·bá-'yǐ·dz* 'this chair'
*nà-sān·bá-'yǐ·dz* 'those three chairs'

(B) 1.4. Frequently the unit measure used with a particular unit noun can be replaced (in any phrase where the unit measure appears optionally or necessarily) by some other measure, with a special meaning.

It is not possible to classify these other measures absolutely, but four chief types might be recognized: *grouping* measures, *containing* measures, *deriving* measures, and *classifying* measures.

Examples of *grouping* measures:

*jè·chywén-'rén* 'this group of people'
*jè·lyán-'bīng* 'this company of soldiers' (meaning the full complement of one company in military organization)
*yì·chywén-shān·'yáng* 'a flock of goats'

Examples of *containing* measures:

*yì·bāw-jř·'yān* 'a pack of cigarettes'

(*yān* in the meaning 'cigarette' is a *false* unit noun; see below)

*yì-'wū·dz·de-'rén* 'a roomful of people'

Many words which refer to containers or places or locations which can be 'full of' this or that can be used as containing measures with or without the addition of *de*, as in this example.

Examples of *deriving* measures:

*yì·tséng-'léw* 'one floor of a building'; *léw* with its regular unit measure, *ge* or *dzwò*, means 'building'

Examples of *classifying* measures:

*sān·jǔng-'rén* 'three kinds of people'
*'nèy-yàng·de-chèn·'shān* 'that style of shirt'

(B) 2.1. *Mass Nouns* differ from unit nouns primarily in that one cannot count them in groups of ten, a hundred, and so on, using *shŕ*, *bǎy*, *chyān*, or *wàn* as a measure. From the point of view of meaning, there are two subtypes: words that name things that come in continuous masses in the world about us, or in such small pieces that a single piece can hardly do you any good (for instance, 'sand'); and those that from the English point of view might be suspected of being unit nouns, but are not. Examples of the latter subtype are *mǎ* 'horse', *hwǒ·'chē* 'railroad train or car', *yáng* 'sheep' (but not *shān·'yáng* 'mountain sheep—goat'), *yān* 'cigarette' (but not *jř·'yān* with the same meaning). A word like *jř* 'paper', since it comes in separate pieces under most circumstances, might be suspected of being a unit noun, but since it is a mass noun in English—we say *three sheets of paper* or *three slips of paper* or *three pieces of paper*, not *three papers* (except with a special meaning)—it presents no special learning problems as a mass noun in Chinese, and can be put in the first subtype.

(B) 2.2. Mass nouns are used with *jè-shyē* and *nà-shyē*, but with a different meaning than is produced by the combination of those expressions with unit nouns; here the meaning is 'this (that) more or less definite and relatively small quantity or number of' the thing named by the noun:

*jè-shyē-'jř* 'this paper'
*jè-shyē-'chyán* 'this quantity of money'

Most mass nouns are also used after *jè·ge* and *nà·ge* with the meaning of 'this (that) already-known-about but not definitely measured amount of':

*jè·ge-'jř* 'this paper'
*jè·ge-'chyán* 'this money'

(B) 2.3. Mass nouns can be used in all the constructions possible with unit nouns in which the unit noun is preceded by a unit measure, if one uses, for the mass noun, an appropriate *individualizing* measure. This term is used because the effect of the measure is to break the mass-substance into some type of individual quantity, to *individualize* the substance. Individualizing measures cannot be classified quite so neatly as can be the various measures used with unit nouns, but the following will be suggestive:

An individualizing measure may be of the *containing* variety:

*yì·wǎn-'tāng* 'a bowl of soup'
*yì·wǎn-'chá* 'a cup of tea'
*yì·hé-yáng·'hwǒ* 'a box of matches' (false unit noun)
*yì·bāw-'yān* 'a pack of cigarettes' (false unit noun)

Or it may be of the *classifying* variety:

*yì·jǔng-'tāng* 'a kind of soup'

It may refer to the *shape* or *size* of the individualized segment:

*yì·jāng-'jř* 'a sheet of paper'
*yì·lywǔ-'yān* 'a curl of smoke'
*yí'kwày-'rèw* 'a piece (hunk) of meat'
*yì·tyáw-'ywú* 'a fish' (false unit noun)
*yì·jr̄-'chyāng* 'a rifle' (false unit noun)
*yì·tséng-'yéw* 'a layer of oil' (=, especially, 'a coat of paint')

Here *jāng* means 'flat piece', *lywǔ* 'curly piece', *kwày* 'irregularly shaped hunk', *tyáw* 'long (and frequently flexible) strip', *jr̄* 'long rigid pole-like thing', and *tséng* 'thin stratum or layer'.

It may refer to *weight*:

*sān·jīn-'táng* 'three catties of sugar' (unit of weight)
*sān-gūng·jīn-'mǐ* 'three kilograms of rice-grain'

or to *length*:

*sān·lǐ-'lù* 'three lǐ of road'
*lyǎng·dwàn-'yān* 'two segments of a cigarette'
*jèy·dwàr-'lù* 'this segment of the road'

or to *area*:

*sān·mǔ-'dì* 'three mǔ (land measure) of land'

Or it may individualize the noun *in time*, as an *occurrence* or *event*:

*sān·dwèn-'fàn* 'three pause food'—'three meals'
*sān·jèn-'ywǔ* 'three spells of rain' (at successive times, say during a single day)

But all the individualizing measures found with mass nouns cannot be fitted into these categories easily. Thus, with *chyán* 'money', one has:

*yí·kwày-'chyán* 'one hunk money'—'one dollar'
*sān·máw-'chyán* 'thirty cents'
*sān·fēn-'chyán* 'three cents' (*not* 'three pennies')

or with *hwǒ·'chē* 'railroad train or car':

*yí·lyàng-hwǒ·'chē* 'one train car'
*yí·lyè-hwǒ·'chē* 'one train'

(B) 2a. *False Unit Nouns* have been illustrated in the above. The point to note is that false unit nouns, and other mass nouns, are more common in Chinese than are true unit nouns. One cannot just go by meaning, when *shān·'yáng* 'goat' is a true unit noun and *yáng* 'sheep' is a false unit noun, a kind of mass noun, or when *yān* 'cigarette' is a false unit noun but *jr̆·'yān* 'cigarette' is a true unit noun. Since the chief difference is that with a unit noun the measure can sometimes be omitted, whereas with a false unit noun and other mass nouns it hardly ever can be, the safe thing to do when in doubt is to put a measure in—that is always clear, even if not always the most normal way of saying it.

(B) 3.1. *Collective Nouns* are nouns which specify a group, and which cannot be made to specify only a single individual by any means. Of all the types of phrases described so far in this section, the only types in which collective nouns can participate are those using a *classifying* measure:

*jè·jǔng-fù·'mǔ* 'this kind of parents'
*nà·jǔng-'dì·shyung* 'that kind of brothers'

To say some such thing as 'he has only one parent' in Chinese, you *cannot conceivably* say *yí·ge-fù·'mǔ;* you have to rephrase it, saying 'he has only a father', 'he has only a mother', or 'of his parents, one is already dead', or something like that.

(B) 3.2. Unit nouns which refer to kinds of people, like *'péng·yew* 'friend', *'háy·dz* 'child', or *'dà·rén* 'adults', form a related collective noun by adding *·men*. The meaning is not just 'friends', 'children', and 'adults', but rather a group of friends which one person has, or one family's children, or one specific set of adults in one family group, as contrasted with the children. These collective nouns work like others:

*nà·jǔng-'háy·dz·men* 'that kind of children'

With this limitation on the kind of phrase in which collective nouns can be used, it can be understood why in saying 'those children' or 'three children' one uses just *'háy·dz,* without the *·men*: *nà·shyē*(*·ge*)*-'háy·dz, sān·ge-'háy·dz.*

(B) 4.1. *Abstract nouns* are words with meanings like 'age', 'sex', 'communication', 'transportation', and so on. They do not usually enter into phrases of the kind dealt with in this section, but to a limited degree two things can be done: one can say

(*dzày*) *'nà·jǔng-nyán·'líng* '(at) such an age' (a person should do such a thing)

using a classifying measure; and one can say

(*dzày*) *'nà·ge-nyán·'líng* '(at) that age' with the very general measure *ge*. This latter is impossible with collective nouns; otherwise, insofar as their use in sentences is concerned, collective nouns and abstract nouns are quite similar.

(B) 5. *Unique Nouns* are nouns which name things of which there exists only one. There are several subtypes:

(B) 5.1. *Names of places*. There is only one city of *Chúng·'chìng*. Therefore one never 'counts' *Chúng·'chìng*'s; nor does one ever say 'this' Chungking or 'that' Chungking.

Occasionally it does happen, of course, that two cities or two ranges of mountains, or two other similar geographical places, have the same name—there is a 'Washington' in almost every state of the United States. To say, under these circumstances, 'there are two Chungkings', one might say *yěw 'lyǎng·ge-jyàw-Chúng·'chìng·de-'chéng* 'there are two cities called "Chungking" ', or even, sometimes, *yěw 'lyǎng·ge-Chúng·'chìng*. In the latter case, *Chúng·'chìng* is really being used not as a unique place-name, but as a unit-noun with the meaning 'place named Chungking'.

(B) 2.2. *Names of people*. If there are two Mr. Fáng's, one cannot say simply *yéw 'lyǎng·ge-'Fáng;* one must say something such as *yéw 'lyǎng·ge-'Fáng-shyān·sheng* 'there are two *Mr*. Fang's', or such as *yéw 'lyǎng·ge-shìng-'Fáng·de-rén* 'there are two people surnamed Fáng'. But if there are two men whose surname is Fáng and whose given name is *Dé·'shèng*, you can say *yéw 'lyǎng·ge-'Fáng-Dé·'shèng*.

(B) 2.3. *Other types*. There is only one sky (*tyān*); one would not ordinarily count skies or point them out with *jè* or *nà*. In certain religious theories, however, there are several 'heavens', and one says, for example, *chī·tséng-'tyān* 'seven *layers of* sky'.

Similarly, for Christians and Mohammedans there is only one God; but for some other believers there are many, and the word for 'God' or 'god' will be a unique noun or a unit noun accordingly.

(B) 6. *All-Inclusives*. The words *dà·'jyā*, *'rén·rén*, and *nán·nán·nywú·'nywǔ*, all meaning 'everybody', are never preceded by any measures or numerals or other modifying words whatsoever. There are a few others of this kind.

(B) 7. *Adverbial Nouns* are words referring to times or places (not place-names like Chungking), basically nouns, but used in sentences to indicate the time or place of an action: *'jīn·tyan* 'today', *'chywù·nyan* 'last year', *'lǐ·tew* 'inside' (of anything put before the word), and so on. These words, also, are never preceded by numerals or demonstratives or measures.

## C

*Kinds of Measures*. In the detailed discussion of nouns just given a good deal has been said also about different types of measures. This need not be summarized, but certain additional points need to be mentioned.

(C) 1. When a Num-M or D-M or D-Num-M phrase is used without a following noun, the meaning is either *autonomous* or *substitutive*:

> *'Měy·gwo yěw sż·shr·'bā-'shěng.* ‘There are forty-eight states in the United States.’

The group *sż·shr·'bā-'shěng* ‘forty-eight states’ is complete in meaning, not calling for any noun to round it out.

> *Háy yěw 'èr·shr·kwày.* ‘There are still twenty pieces.’

Here the meaning is incomplete unless the sentence is in answer to some remark which included mention of the thing concerned—the thing of which there are still twenty pieces left. Since *kwày* is also used with *chyán* ‘money’ to mean ‘dollar’, the sentence might mean ‘there are still twenty dollars left’; but only by the context would one know.

The first type of phrase is called *autonomous*, the second is called *substitutive*—*èr·shr·'kwày* is used as a shorter substitute for *èr·shr·kwày-'chyán* or *èr·shr·kwày-'rèw* or something else for which one could say *kwày*.

The most important kinds of measures used frequently with *autonomous* meaning are:

political subdivisions: *shr̀* ‘municipality’, *chéng* ‘city’, *shěng* ‘province, state’, *gwó* ‘country’.

terms for relative positions or for shapes, like *byān* ‘side, edge’ (*'nà·byan* ‘the other side of anything’), *jyǎw* ‘angle, corner’, *li* ‘place’ (only with demonstratives: *'nà·li* ‘there’)

terms for periods of time: *tyān* ‘day’, *nyán* ‘year’ (but not ‘month’ or ‘week’)

measures of weight, distance, length, area, volume, occurrence, as discussed in (B) 2.3.

(C) 2. In position after verbs and adjectives, there are a number of other measures used autonomously:

*yì·'dyǎr* after an adjective means ‘a little more ..,...’: *'dà-yì·dyǎr* ‘a little bigger’ (also *yì·'dyǎn*).

after many one-syllable verbs the same verb may be repeated preceded by *yī* ‘one’, with the force of a *single action* of the kind indicated by the verb: *'shwō-yi·shwō* ‘say a say, speak a little, speak once, for a spell’; *'tīng-yi·tīng* ‘listen a bit, listen once’. In this type of phrase each one-syllable verb serves as a measure with this special meaning for use after itself.

## D

*Ordinal Phrases.* An *ordinal* numeral is one which indicates position in an ordered arrangement—‘first’, ‘second’, and so on.

Any noun naming something which occurs in an ordered arrangement—streets, houses on a street, sizes of shoes, months of the year, and so on—may follow a numeral immediately, without any measure, with the ordinal meaning:

*'sān·ywè* 'third month of the year'—'March'

*'sān·hàw* 'third day of the month' or 'size three' of some sort of clothing, or 'third house on the street'

*'sān·jyē* 'third street'

Frequently the ordinal meaning is emphasized by prefixing *dì-* to the number:

*dì-'chī-jywēn* 'the seventh army'

For things which are not already, by custom, arranged in such a sequence, the measure must be used as with ordinary numerals:

*dì-'sān·wǎn-'fàn* 'the third bowl of rice'

*dì-'sż·ge-rén* 'the fourth man'

### E

*Special phrases with yī.* The numeral *yī* 'one' means also 'all, the whole'. In this meaning it occurs with many nouns after it which are not ordinarily used as measures:

*yī-'shēng* 'all one's life'

*yī-'shēn* 'all the body, all over one's body'

Even with words which *are* measures *yī* may have this special meaning:

*yī-'tyān* 'all day'

The expressions mentioned in (C) 2 of the type *'shwō-yi·shwō* also involve a special type of numeral-measure group with *yī* as the measure, though in this case *yī* does not mean 'all, whole'. The group is special in that no other number could be substituted for *yī*.

### F

*Special Expressions from Literary Chinese.* Some expressions from literary Chinese which have entered the every-day spoken language have sequences of numbers and nouns not in accordance with the description given here. Many of them are of the type *yì-'rén yì-'mǎ* 'one man one horse'—a balanced pair—with measures omitted. Such expressions should not be coined on one's own; but if you hear one and are sure of what it means, then you can safely use it.

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* Here is some very useful, and some just interesting, information about Chungking.

a. *Chúng·'chìng shyàn·dzày shr̀ 'Jūng·gwo·de-'jīng·chéng.*

b. *Chúng·'chìng yéw hěn-dwō-'jèng·fu·de-jī·'gwān.*

c. *'Yé yéw hěn-dwō-Gwó·mín·'dǎng·de-jī·'gwān.*

d. *Chúng·'chìng shr̀ yí·ge-'shr̀.*
e. *Yěw 'chī·chr·wǔ-wàn-'rén.*
f. *'Lǐ·byan yěw 'yì·'chyān-dwō·ge-'wày·gwo-chyáw·'mín.*
g. *Yěw 'èr·bǎy-líng-'chī·ge-'Měy·gwo-rén.*
h. *Shr̀ 'yì·bǎy-chī·shr·'sž·ge-'nán·rén, sān·shr·'sān·ge-'nywǔ·rén.*
i. *'Yīng·gwo-rén yěw 'èr·báy-'wǔ·shr·ge.*
j. *R̀·'běn-rén yěw 'yì·bǎy-yī·shr·'sān·ge.*
k. *Hé·'lán·gwo-rén yěw 'chī·ge.*
l. *Sū·'ē-rén yěw 'yì·bǎy-èr·shr·'èr·ge.*
m. *'Báy·ē-rén yěw 'lyèw·ge.*
n. *Wày·jyāw·'gwān hěn 'dwō.*
o. *'Yīng·gwo, 'Měy·gwo, Sū·'ē, jèy-'sān·gwó-dà·shŕ·'gwǎn·de-rén 'dzwèy dwō.*
p. *'Měy·gwo-jù-Chúng·'chìng-dzúng·lǐng·shr̀·'gwǎn lí Gwó·mín-'jèng·fu bù-'ywǎn.*
q. *Kě·shr lí dà·shŕ·'gwǎn hén 'ywǎn.*
r. *Dà·shŕ·'gwǎn dzày Cháng·'jyāng·de-nán·'àn.*
s. *Tsúng dzúng·lǐng·shr̀·'gwǎn dàw dà·shŕ·'gwǎn-chywu děy gwò-'jyāng.*

*2*. Here is some geography.

a. *Jè shr̀ yì·jāng-shr̀·'jyè-dì·'tú.*
b. *Dāng·'jūng shr̀ 'Nán·měy·jēw hé 'Béy·měy·jēw.*
c. *'Měy·jēw-'dūng·byan shr̀ Dà·shī·'yáng.*
d. *'Shī·byan shr̀ Tày·píng·'yáng.*
e. *Tày·píng·'yáng·li yéw hěn-dwō-'dǎw.*
f. *'Yěw·de-dǎw shǔ 'Yīng·dì·gwó.*
g. *'Àw·jēw shr̀ 'Yīng·dì·gwó·li·de-yì·'gwó.*
h. *Tsúng 'yī-'bā-'jyěw-'bā dàw 'yī-'jyěw-'sž-'lyèw-'nyán Fēy·lywù·'bīn-chywén·'dǎw shú 'Měy·gwo.*
i. *'Nán·yáng-chywén·'dǎw·de-'běy·byan yěw Ān·'nán, 'Tày·gwo, 'Mǎ·láy-bàn·'dǎw, hé Myǎn·'dyàn.*
j. *Dzày 'běy·byan jyèw·shr 'Jūng·gwo.*
k. *'Jūng·gwo·de-'běy·byan shr̀ Shī·bwó·lì·'yà.*

*3*. Some recent Chinese history.

a. *'Swēn-Jūng·shān-shyān·sheng shr̀ Gwó·mín·'dǎng·de-dzúng·'lǐ.*
b. *Shyàn·dzày 'Jūng·gwo-rén jyàw-ta 'Gwó·'fù.'*
c. *Tā shr̀ 'Gwǎng·dūng-rén.*
d. *Tā 'shēng·dzay 'yī-'bā-'lyèw-'lyèw-'nyán shŕ-'yī·ywè shŕ·'èr-hàw.*
e. *'Sž·dzay 'yī-'jyěw-'èr-'wǔ-'nyán 'sān·ywè shŕ·'èr-hàw.*
f. *Tā yī-'shēng shyǎng 'jyèw Jūng·gwo, bǎ 'Jūng·gwo 'byàn·cheng-le 'chyáng·gwó.*
g. *Gwó·mín·'dǎng dzày 'yī-'jyěw-'èr-'bā-'nyán 'tǔng·yī-le Jūng·gwo.*

h. *Shyàn·dzày 'Jūng·gwo-dzwèy-'gāw·de-'lǐng·shyèw shr̀ 'Jyǎng-Jyè·shŕ-shyān·sheng.*
i. *Tā shyàn·dzày shr̀ 'Jūng·gwo-'Gwó·mín-'jèng·fu·de-jǔ·'shí.*
j. *Yě shr̀ 'Lù·hǎy·kūng·jywēn-Dzǔng·sz̀·'lìng.*
k. *Jyǎng-'fū·ren 'shyǎw de·shŕ·hew dzày 'Měy·gwo nyàn-'shū.*
l. *Tā shìn 'Yě·sū·jyàw.*
m. *Tā dày·byǎw 'Jūng·gwo-rén dàw 'Měy·gwo láy·gwo 'yí·tsz̀.*
n. *Tā·de-'yǎn·shwō hěn-'dwō-rén ày 'tīng.*

4. Miscellaneous.

a. *Jè·ge-'wū·dz·li·de-'dì·shang-'pū·de shr̀-'shí, 'bú·shr dì·'tǎn.*
b. *Nín·de-gūng·'gwǎn 'háy dzày Shīn·jyē·'kěwr-ma?*
c. *Ní 'lǐng·je ta.*
d. *Chíng-ni 'líng wǒ·men 'dzěw.*
e. *Wǒ·men yàw 'jǎw yí·ge-'rén lǐng-'lù.*
f. *Chíng 'jř-yi·jř.*
g. *'Chǐng dzày dì·'tú·shang bǎ nèy·ge-'dì·fang 'jř·chu-lay.*
h. *Nín·de-'fū·ren dzày 'Ēw·jew-ma?*
i. *Jè·ge-'chyéwr shr̀ dzày 'shém·me-dì·fang 'mǎy·de?*
j. *Dì·'chyéw·shang yěw 'lyèw-dà·jēw. Dēw·shr̀ 'ná-jǐ·jēw?* ( Answer this.)
k. *Dì·'chyéw·shang sz̀·fēn·jr̄-'sān shr̀ 'shwěy, sz̀·fēn·jr̄-'yī shr̀ lù·'dì.*
l. *Jè·ge-'dǎw·shang yěw-rén 'jù-ma?*
m. *Jè·ge-'lǐng·dz shr̀ shŕ·'wǔ-hàw·de, 'shyǎw-yi·dyǎr.*
n. *Jè·jyàn-'yī·shang·de-'shyèw·dz tày 'cháng-le.*

5. More miscellaneous.

a. *Tā dāng-'bīng yǐ·'chyán dzwò·gwo shyàn·'jǎng.*
b. *'Swó·yěw·de-rén chywán 'dàw-le-ma?*
c. *Jè·ge-jūng·byǎw·'pù 'swó·yěw·de-shéw·'byǎw chywán·dēw mày·'wán-le.*
d. *Wū·dz·li 'kūng·chì bù-'hǎw, kāy-yì·hwěr 'chwāng·hu-ba.*
e. *Wǒ·men 'shī·wàng nǐ 'néng láy.*
f. *'Jūng·gwo-rén 'shī·wang 'Jūng·gwo 'byàn·cheng-le 'chyáng·gwó.*
g. *Jè·li yéw lyǎng·tyáw-'lù.*
h. *'Yì·tyáw shyàng 'dūng·běy, 'yì·tyáw shyàng 'shī·běy.*
i. *Shyàng-'dūng·běy·de dàw Nyēw·'ywē.*
j. *Shyàng-'shī·běy·de dàw Jr̄·jyā·'gē.*

k. *Nĭ yàw dàw Nyēw·'ywē-chywu jyèw shyàng-'yèw jwăn-'wār.*
l. *Nĭ yàw dàw Jr̄·jyā·'gē-chywu jyèw shyàng-'dzwó jwăn-'wār.*
m. *Nĭ jwăn·gwò 'shēn-lay wŏ kàn·kan nĭ·de-'chyán·byan.*
n. *Nĭ jwăn·gwò 'shēn-chywu wŏ 'kàn·kan nĭ·de-'hèw·byan.*
o. *'Bú·yàw 'wéy·je wo 'jwàn!*
p. *Dzwò-'chwán wéy·je Nyēw·ywē 'jwàn yì·chywār, yàw yùng 'sz̀·dyăn-jūng·de-'gūng·fu.*
q. *Jè·fēng-'shìn 'dwō·bàn shr̀ 'tā-'shyĕ·de.*
r. *Jè·bĕn-'shū·li yì·'dwō·bàr shr̀ méy·yew-'yì·sz·de.*
s. *Tā-shwō·de-'hwà yì·'dwō·bàr wŏ bù-'dŭng.*
t. *Jè·ge-'lĭng·dz 'dwō·bàn shr̀ 'dà-le.*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN

### Conversation 1

**Ross:** *Jīn·tyan-'wăn·shang yĕw yí·ge-'Mĕy·gwo-'péng·yew láy 'kàn-wo.*
*Tā shr̀ 'shīn tsúng 'Mĕy·gwo láy·de.*
*Wó yĭ·'chyán dzày 'Mĕy·gwo 'jyāw·gwo ta Yīng·'wén.*
*'Nà·ge-shŕ·hew tā háy·shr shyăw-'háy·dz-ne.*
*Shyàn·'dzày tā yĭ·jing shr̀ 'Lù·jywēn-shàng·'wèy-le.*

**Wáng:** *Tā jīn·nyan dwō 'dà-le?*

**Ross:** *Wó 'shyăng 'chà·bu·dwō 'èr·shr·lyèw-'swèy-ba.*
*Tā gēn-wo nyàn-'shū shr̀ 'shŕ·jĭ·nyán-yĭ·chyán·de-'shr̀.*
*'Hèw·lay wŏ 'tīng·shwō tā dzày 'kūng·jywēn·li dāng-'bīng.*
*Tā dzày 'Ēw·jēw dă-le 'lyăng·nyán-'jàng.*
*Hèw·lay shèw-le 'shāng, hwéy·daw 'Mĕy·gwo 'yăng-le bàn·'nyán.*
*Shyàn·dzày dàw 'Jūng·gwo-lay, dzày dà·shŕ·'gwăn dzwò-'shr̀.*

**Wáng:** *'Shr̀-bu·shr̀ nà·ge-géy-ni-dì·'tú·de-nà·wèy?*

**Ross:** *'Bú·shr.*
*Géy-wo-dì·'tú·de-nà·ge-rén wó yĭ·'chyán bú-'rèn·shr.*

**Wáng:** *Nĭ-'jè·wèy-péng·yew shìng 'shém·me?*

**Ross:** *Shìng* 'Mason.
*Tā shyăng yàw yí·ge-'Jūng·gwo-míng·dz.*
*Nĭ shwō, jyàw-ta shìng 'shém·me 'hăw?*

**Wáng:** *'Jyàw-ta shìng 'Méy-ba.*

## Conversation 2

*(Ross introduces Mason and Wáng.)*

**Ross:** *Jè·wèy shr̀ 'Méy-shyān·sheng, 'Mĕy·gwo-'Lù·jywēn-'Kūng·jywēn-Shàng·'wèy.*

**Wáng, Mason:** *Jyéw 'yăng.*

**Wáng:** *'Méy-shyān·sheng Jūng·gwo-'hwà shwō·de hén 'hăw.*

**Mason:** *'Shwō·de 'bù-hăw.*
*Wŏ shr̀ dzày 'Mĕy·gwo shywé·de.*

**Wáng:** *Dzày 'Mĕy·gwo néng 'shywé·de jè·me-'hăw-ma?*
*Shywé-le 'jĭ·nyán?*

**Mason:** *Bú-dàw 'lyèw·ge-ywè.*

**Wáng:** *'Á? Lyèw·ge-'ywè? Nà 'dzĕm·me 'shíng-nga?*

**Mason:** *Wŏ·men 'jř shywé shwō-'hwà, bù-shywé rèn-'dž.*
*Swó·yi shywé·de 'kwày.*

**Ross:** *Wŏ 'tīng·shwō 'jè shr̀ yì·jŭng-'shīn·de-jyāw-wày·gwo-'hwà·de-'fāng·fa.*
*'Shyān shywé shwō-'hwà, 'hèw shywé rèn-'dž.*
*Jyèw 'rúng·yi-le.*

**Wáng:** *'Méy-shyān·sheng shyăng shywé Jūng·gwo-'dž-ma?*

**Mason:** *Wó 'yĭ·jing shywé-le sān·ge-lĭ·'bày-le.*
*Yĭ·jing rèn·shr 'yì·băy-dwō·ge-'dž-le.*

**Wáng:** *Shyàn·dzày nĭ dzày 'Jūng·gwo shywé rèn-dž bĭ dzày 'Mĕy·gwó shywé 'rúng·yi·de dwō.*

**Mason:** *Wŏ 'shī·wàng yì·'nyán-yĭ·hèw néng kàn Jūng·gwo-'shū.*

**Wáng:** *Wó shyăng yì·'nyán-yĭ·hèw 'yĕw·de-shū yí·'dìng ké·yi kàn-de·'dŭng-le.*

**Ross:** *Wŏ dzày 'Jūng·gwo jè·shyē-'nyán-le.*
*Kĕ·shr méy·yew 'gūng·fu shywé rèn-'dž.*
*Shyàn·dzày 'lăw-le, bù-'shyăng shywé-le.*

**Mason:** *'Lwó-shyān·sheng! Nín bù-'lăw!*
*Wŏ·men yí·'kwàr 'shywé-ba!*

## Conversation 3

**Mason:** *Wŏ 'jè-jĭ·tyān 'mĕy·tyān-'yè·li dzwò-'mèng.*
*'Yĕw·de-shŕ·hew mèng·jyan dzày 'Ēw·jēw dă-'jàng.*
*'Shĭng-de·shŕ·hew yī 'shyăng, 'mèng·jyan·de-rén yì·'dwō·bàr shr̀ 'yĭ·jing 'sž-le-de.*

**Wáng:** *'Tīng·shwō nĭ dzày dà·shŕ·'gwăn dzwò-'shr̀.*
*'Máng-bu·máng?*

**Mason:** *'Byé·rén dēw 'máng.*
*Wó 'mĕy·tyān shwèy-'jyàw.*

**Ross:** *'Dzĕm·me-ne?*

**Mason:** *Wǒ 'gāng dàw Chúng·'chìng de·shŕ·hew chywù jyàn Dà·'shř.*
*Dà·'shř shwō, 'Nǐ hǎw 'shyàng méy-shwèy-'shǐng shr̀·de.*
*'Nǐ chywù shwèy-'jyàw-chywu-ba.'*
*Dì-'èr·tyān tā dàw 'byé·de-dì·fang chywù-le.*

**Ross:** *Dàw Sū·'ē chywù-le.*

**Mason:** *Tā 'dzěw de·shŕ·hew 'yě méy-'gàw·su wo dzwò shém·me-'shr̀.*
*Swó·yi wǒ-dzày-dà·shř·'gwǎn-dzwò·de-'shr̀ shr̀ shwèy-'jyàw!*

### Conversation 4

**Wáng:** *'Tīng·shwō nǐ wéy·je dì·'chyéw 'dzěw·gwo háw-jǐ·'tsz̀-le.*

**Mason:** *'Shr̀-a.*
*Wǒ ày 'dz̀·jǐ kāy fēy·'jī.*
*'Bú-ày dzwò 'byé·rén-kāy·de-fēy·'jī.*

**Ross:** *Nǐ 'shr̀-bu·shr̀* short snorter?

**Wáng:** Short snorter *shr̀ shém·me-'yì·sz?*

**Ross:** *Jè-'lyǎng·ge-dz̀ 'méy·yew shém·me-yì·sz.*
*Yí·ge-'rén* 'snort' *jyèw·shr shēng-'chì-de·shŕ·hew yùng 'bí·dz chū-'chì.*

**Mason:** *Dzwò fēy·'jī tsúng 'yí·dà·jēw gwò-'yáng dàw 'byé·de-jēw-chywu; 'jè·yàng·de-rén jyèw ké·yi dzwò* short snorter.
*Wǒ-'jè shr̀ yì·jāng* short snorter*-de-chyán·'pyàw·dz.*
*Jè shr̀ jyè·shaw-wǒ-dzwò-*short-snorter*-de-'lyǎng·ge-rén.*
*Dzwèy 'shǎw yàw yéw 'lyǎng·ge-rén jyè·shaw, tsáy néng dzwò* short-snorter*-ba.*
*Jè-'lyǎng·ge-rén 'yě yí·'dìng děy shr̀* short snorter.

**Wáng:** *'Lwó-dà·dzúng·'tǔng dàw 'Fēy·jēw-chywu shr̀ dzwò fēy·'jī chywù·de.*
*Tā 'yě shr̀* short snorter*-ma?*

**Mason:** *'Shr̀.*
*'Jyǎng-fū·ren hé 'Lwó-fū·ren yě 'dēw 'shr̀.*

### Conversation 5

**Mason:** *Wǒ·de-shéw·'byǎw 'hwày-le.*
*'Yěw·de-shŕ·hew 'dzěw, 'yěw·de-shŕ·hew bù-'dzěw.*
*Shyàn·dzày tā shwèy·'jáw-le.*
*Chǐng 'wèn, 'jǐ·dyǎn-jūng-le?*

**Wáng:** *'Bā·dyǎn-'bàn.*

**Mason:** *'Nà wǒ déy 'dzěw-le.*
*'Jyéw·dyǎn-jūng yěw-'chwán gwò-'jyāng.*

**Wáng:** *Nín·de-gūng·'gwǎn shr̀ dzày dà·shŕ·'gwǎn-ma?*

**Mason:** *Bù-gǎn 'dāng!*
*Dzày dà·shŕ·'gwǎn-'sān·tséng-'léw·shang·de-yì·jyān-'shyǎw-'wū·dz·li.*

**Ross:** *Hā·hà!*
*Nǐ 'yīng·gāy jř 'shwō, ‘Dzày dà·shŕ·'gwǎn 'jù!’*

**Mason:** *Wǒ-'shwō·de shr̀ 'jēn-hwà.*
*'Míng·tyan yěw yí·ge-Sū·'ē·de-'yàw·rén dàw dà·shŕ·'gwǎn-lay.*
*Wó děy chywù 'jāw·dày ta.*

**Ross:** *Nǐ hwèy shwō 'È·gwo-hwà-ma?*

**Mason:** *Hwèy jǐ·'jywù.*
*Wǒ dzày 'È·gwo jù·gwo jǐ·ge-'ywè.*

## Conversation 6

**Wáng:** *'Jè·ge-rén shwō·de Jūng·gwo-'hwà 'jēn hǎw.*

**Ross:** *Tā hěn yùng-'shīn 'shywé.*
*Tā yèw 'ày shwō-'hwà.*
*Shwō·de bú-'dwèy, tā 'yě bú-'pà rén 'shyàw.*
*'Swó·yi shywé·de 'hǎw.*
*Yěw yí·jyàn-'shr̀ wǒ yàw 'wèn-ni.*
*'Jūng·gwo yěw 'dwō·shaw-Gwó·mín·'dǎng·de-dǎng·'ywán?*

**Wáng:** *'Jè, wǒ bù-'jr̄·dàw.*
*Wǒ 'tīng·shwō yěw 'yì·chyān-'wàn.*
*Kě·shr yěw-'rén shwō yěw 'wú·bǎy-'wàn.*

**Ross:** *Rè·shr 'wú·bǎy-wàn, nà jyèw·shr 'Jūng·gwo-rén·de-'bǎy·fēn·jr̄-'yī.*
*'Měy-yì·bǎy-'rén·li yěw 'yí·ge-dǎng·'ywán.*

**Wáng:** *'Jūng·gwo-rén·li yéw 'bǎy·fēn·jr̄-'chī·shŕ bú-rèn·shr 'dz̀.*
*Bú-rèn·shr-'dz̀·de bù-néng dzwò dǎng·'ywán.*
*Swó·yi yěw 'wú·bǎy-'wàn-rén yě jyèw bú-swàn 'shǎw-le.*

**Ross:** *Wǒ 'shī·wàng 'Jūng·gwo-rén 'dēw néng rèn-'dz̀.*

**Wáng:** *Wó 'yě shr̀ nà·me-'shyǎng.*
*Kě·shr Jūng·gwo-'dz̀ hěn-'nán shywé·de 'hǎw.*
*'Jūng·gwo yěw 'sz̀-wǔ·'wàn-'dz̀.*
*Cháng-'yùng·de yé yěw 'sz̀·wǔ·'chyān-'dz̀.*
*'Jūng·gwo-rén 'dwō·bàn děy dzwò-'gūng tsáy néng yěw-'fàn chr̄.*
*Yěw 'dwō·shaw-rén néng 'bú-dzwò-shr̀, yùng 'jǐ·nyán·de-'gūng·fu nyàn-'shū-ne?*

Ross: _Jè·shyē-'shr̀ hěn nán-'bàn._
_Wǒ·men 'yīng·gāy shyǎng 'dzwèy-hǎw·de-'fá·dz láy jyàw 'měy·ge-rén néng kàn-'bàw, shyě-'shìn._
_Jè 'bú·shr rúng·yi·de-'shr̀._
_Děy màn·'mán·de bàn._
_Rèn·shr-'dz̀·de-rén 'shǎw, 'Jūng·gwo jyèw hěn-'nán byàn·cheng-le 'chyáng·gwó._

Wáng: _Wǒ·men 'míng·tyan 'dzày tán jè·jyàn-'shr̀-ba._
_Shyàn·dzày 'wǎn-le, yīng·gāy shwèy-'jyàw-le._

## FINDER LIST

| | |
|---|---|
| **_An·'nán_** N | 'Annam' (Indo-China) |
| _·Àw_ | |
| _'Àw·jēw_ N | 'Australia' (as a continent) |
| *_bàn_ | 'half' (see _'dwō·bàn_, _yì·'dwō·bàr_) |
| _bàn·'dǎw_ N | 'peninsula' |
| *_báy_ A | 'white, light' |
| _'Báy·ē_ | 'white Russian' |
| *_běn_ | 'source, self' |
| _'běn·rén_ N | 'oneself, one in person' |
| *_běy_ | 'north' |
| _'běy·fang_ N | 'northern part, territory' |
| _byàn_ V | 'to change, alter' |
| _'byàn·chéng_ RC | 'become, grow into' |
| _byǎw_ N | 'watch (for time)' in compounds may mean 'chart, table, credentials' (see _dày·'byǎw_, _jūng·byǎw·'pù_, _shéw·'byǎw_) |
| *_chá_ | 'tea' |
| _'chá·dyǎn_ N | 'refreshments' (_dyǎn_ here stands for _'dyǎn·shīn_ 'a bit of heart', meaning pastry, confections, so that _'chá·dyǎn_ means 'tea and cakes') |
| *_chéng_ | 'complete' (see _'byàn·chéng_) |
| *_chū_ | 'exit' (see _'jr̀·chū_) |
| _chyáng_ A | 'powerful, strong' (of a country) |
| _'chyáng·gwó_ N | 'a powerful country, a power' |
| _·chyáw_ | 'people living abroad' (see _hwá·'chyáw_) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *'chyáw·mín* N | 'aliens, foreigners in a country' |
| *chyéw* N | 'ball' (see *dì·'chyéw*) |
| *chyéwr* N | 'ball' |
| *chywán* H | 'all, altogether' (like *dēw*) |
| *'chywán·dēw* H | 'all, altogether' |
| *·chywān* | 'circle' |
| *'chywān·dz* N | 'circle' |
| *chywār* N, M | 'circle' (see *jwàn yì·'chywār, hwà chywār*) |
| *chywén* M | 'group of' |
| *chywén·'dǎw* N | 'archipelago' (see *'Nán·yáng-chywén·'dǎw*) |
| **dà* A | 'big' |
| *dà·'shř* N | 'ambassador' |
| *dà·shŕ·'gwǎn* N | 'Embassy' |
| *dà·dzúng·'tǔng* N | 'president' |
| *dà·'lù* N | 'continent, mainland' |
| *'dà·jēw* N, M | 'continent' |
| **dāng* V | 'serve as' (*dzwò* is used with this meaning also, but 'serve as a soldier' is always *dāng-'bīng*) (see *bù-gǎn 'dāng*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| *·dǎng* | 'political party' (see *gwó·mín·'dǎng*) |
| *'dǎng·gwó-'yàw·rén* N | 'important people of Party and Country'—said of Chinese leaders |
| *dǎng·'ywán* N | 'members of a party'—now always taken to mean members of the Kuomintang. |
| *dǎw* N | 'island' (see *bàn·'dǎw, chywén·'dǎw*) |
| *dày* V | 'replace, substitute for' |
| *dày·'byǎw* N; V | 'representative; represent' |
| **dēw* H | 'all, both, altogether' (see *'chywán·dēw*) |
| *·dì* | 'emperor' |
| *'dì·gwo* N | 'empire' (see *'Yīng·dì·gwo*) |
| **dì* N | 'ground, earth' |
| *dì·'chyéw* N | 'the earth' (as a sphere) (see *lù·'dì*) |
| **dǔng* V | 'understand' (see *'kàn·dǔng*) |
| **dwō* A | 'much, more, many' (see *yì·'dwō·bàr*) |
| *'dwō·bàn* H | 'mostly; usually; probably' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *dzày K | 'at' |
| 'sž·dzày V | 'die at' (a time or place) |
| *·dzŭng | 'principal, chief, main' |
| dzúng·'lĭ N | 'director-general' (of the Kuomintang, meaning Dr. Sun Yat-sen) |
| dzúng·'lĭng·shr̀ N | 'consul-general' |
| dzúng·lĭng·shr̀·'gwăn N | 'consulate-general' |
| dzŭng·sz̀·'lìng N | 'commander-in-chief' |
| dzúng·'tŭng N | 'president' (see *dà·dzúng·'tŭng, fù·dzúng·'tŭng*) |
| *·ē | 'Russian' (see *'Báy·ē, Sū·'ē*) |
| ·Ēw | |
| 'Ēw·jēw N | 'Europe' (the continent) |
| *·fāng | 'direction, place' (see *'bĕy·fang*) |
| ·Fēy | |
| 'Fēy·jēw N | 'Africa' (the continent) |
| ·fū | |
| 'fū·ren N | 'Madame', title for a married woman of high social position, or polite title for any married woman. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Fú·'jyàn N | 'Fukien', the province |
| *·fù | 'father' (see *gwó·'fù*) |
| ·fù | 'vice-' |
| fù·dzúng·'tŭng N | 'vice-president' |
| *găn V | 'dare to' |
| Bù-găn 'dāng. | 'I dare not (claim to) function (that way).'—polite answer to a compliment. |
| *gūng | 'public' |
| gūng·'gwăn N | 'public residence', formerly the official place where a visiting political authority stayed, now a polite form used in asking one where he lives. |
| *gwān | 'close' (see *'jĭ·gwān*) |
| *·gwăn | 'office, place of business' (see *dà·shŕ·gwăn, dzúng·lĭng·shr̀·'gwăn, gūng·'gwăn*) |
| *gwó M | 'country' (see *'chyáng·gwó, 'dăng·gwó-'yàw·rén, 'dì·gwó, Hé·'lán·gwo, 'Tày·gwo*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| gwó·'fù N | 'father of his country', title for Dr. Sun Yat-sen or Washington. |
| gwó·'mín N | 'the people of a country' |
| gwó·mín·'dăng N | 'Chinese Nationalist Party', the Kuomintang. |
| *gwò V | 'exceed, go past, beyond' (see *jwăn·gwò 'shēn*) |
| *hăy N | 'sea' (see *lù·hăy·kūng·'jywēn*) |
| Hé·'lán N | 'Holland, the Netherlands' |
| 'Hé·lán·gwo N | 'Holland, the Netherlands' |
| *hwá | (as in *'Jūng·hwá*) |
| 'hwá·chyáw N | 'overseas Chinese', Chinese who have migrated to other countries. |
| *hwà V | 'draw, depict' |
| hwà-'chywār | 'draw a circle' |
| *·hwān | 'pleasure' |
| *Hwān·yíng! | 'Welcome!' |
| hwān·yíng·'hwèy N | 'party held to welcome someone' |
| *hwéy V | 'return' (see *'shēw·hwéy*) |
| *hwèy N | 'meeting, party' (see *hwān·yíng·'hwèy*) |
| *·jăng | 'person in charge of' (see *shr̀·'jăng, tsz̀·'jăng*) |
| *jáw V | 'contact' (see *'pèng·jáw*) |
| Jè·'jyāng N | 'Chekiang' (province) |
| ·jēw M | 'continent' (see *'Âw·jēw, dà·jēw, 'Ēw·jēw, 'Fēy·jēw, 'Měy·jēw, 'Yă·jēw*) |
| *·jī | 'machine' |
| *'jī·gwān N | 'controlling part of a machine', as in *jī·gwān·'chyāng*; 'agency' |
| jīn N | 'gold' (seé *Jyèw·jīn·'shān*) |
| jř V | 'point' |
| 'jř·chū(-láy) RC | 'point out' |
| 'jř·je . . . shwō | 'refers to . . .' |
| *·jŭ | 'host, chief' |
| jŭ·'shí N | 'president, chairman' (title for Chiang Kai-shek) |
| jù V | 'be stationed at': *'Měy·gwo-jù-Shàng·'hăy-Dzúng·lĭng·'shr̀* 'American Consul-General at Shanghai' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **jūng N* | 'clock' |
| *jūng·byăw·'pù* N | 'clock and watch shop' |
| **jwăn* V | 'make a partial-turn' (180 degrees or less) |
| *jwăn-'wān* | 'turn' (as in 'turn left') |
| *jwăn·gwò 'shēn* (*-láy, -chywù*) | 'turn around' (facing the speaker or away from the speaker) |
| *jwàn* V | 'make a full turn' (360 degrees) |
| *jwàn-'shēn* | 'turn oneself' |
| *jwàn yī·'chywār* | 'make *one* circle around something' |
| *·*jyāw* | 'make contact' (see *'wày·jyāw*) |
| *·*jyè* | 'border' (see *wày·jyāw·'jyè*) |
| **jyèw* A | 'old' |
| *Jyèw·jīn·'shān* N | 'San Francisco' |
| **jywēn* N, M | 'army' (see *lù·hăy·kūng·'jywēn*) |
| **kàn* V | 'look' |
| *'kàn·dŭng* RC | 'see and understand' |
| **kūng* A | 'empty' (as the atmosphere is) (see *lù·hăy·kūng·'jywēn*) |
| **lĭ* V | 'straighten out, arrange' (see *dzúng·'lĭ*) |
| *lĭng* V | 'lead by the hand' (see *dzúng·'lĭng·shr̀*) |
| *'lĭng·shyèw* N | 'leader' |
| *lĭng-'lù* | 'guide, show the way' |
| *·*lìng* | 'command, order' (see *dzŭng·sz̀·'lìng*) |
| **lù* N | 'road' (see *lĭng-'lù*) |
| *·*lù* | 'land' (see *'dà·lù*) |
| *lù·'dì* N | 'land' (as opposed to water or sea) |
| *lù·hăy·kūng·'jywēn* N | 'Army, Navy, and Air Force' |
| *Lwó* N | 'Roosevelt' |
| *Mă·'láy* N | 'Malay' |
| *'Mă·láy-bàn·'dăw* N | 'the Malay Peninsula' |
| *·*Měy* | |
| *'Měy·jēw* N | 'America' (the continent; either the two of them together or, sometimes, just North America) (see *'Béy·měy·jēw*, *'Nán·měy·jēw*) |

| | |
|---|---|
| **·mín* | 'people' (see *chyáw·'mín gwó·'mín*) |
| *Myǎn·'dyàn* N | 'Burma' |
| **nán* | 'south' |
| *'Nán·měy·jēw* N | 'South America' |
| *Nán·'yáng* N | 'the South Seas' |
| *'Nán·yáng-chywén·'dǎw* N | 'the South Sea Islands' |
| *pèng* V | 'bump into, meet by accident' |
| *'pèng·jáw* RC | 'bump into' (people) |
| **·pù* | 'store' (see *jūng·byǎw·'pù*) |
| **rén* N | 'person, people' (see *'běn·rén, 'fū·ren, 'yàw·rén*) |
| *·shān* N | the *Cantonese* word for 'country', retained in the place-names *Jyèw·jīn·'shān*, *Tán·shyāng·'shān*, even though these places are cities. |
| **shēn* N | 'body' (see *jwǎn·gwò 'shēn*) |
| **shēw* V | 'receive' |
| *'shēw·hwéy* RC | 'get back, recover' |

| | |
|---|---|
| **shěw* N | 'hand' |
| *shéw·'byǎw* N | 'wrist watch' |
| *·shī* | 'hope for' |
| *'shī·wàng* | 'hope that' (such-and-such will happen) |
| *shí* N | 'mat' (see *jǔ·'shí*) |
| *·shř* | 'messenger' (see *dà·'shř*) |
| **shr̀* N | 'affairs' (see *dzúng·'lǐng·shr̀*) |
| *shr̀* N | 'municipality'—one kind of city from the governmental point of view. |
| *shr̀·'jǎng* N | 'mayor'—municipality-chief. |
| **shwō* V | 'speak, say' (see *jř·je . . . shwō*) |
| *·shyāng* | 'fragrant, sweet' (see *tán·'shyāng*) |
| *·shyèw* | 'sleeve' (see *'lǐng·shyèw*) |
| *'shyèw·dz* N | 'sleeve' |
| *Sū·'ĕ* N | 'Soviet Russia' |
| *swŏ* | |
| *'swó·yěw·de* | 'all, every' |

| | |
|---|---|
| *_·sz̄_ | 'control, deal with' (see *dzŭng·sz̄·'lìng*) |
| *_sž_ A | 'be dead' |
| _'sž·dzày_ V | 'die at' (a place or time) |
| _Táy·'wān_ N | 'Formosa' |
| _·Tày: 'Tày·gwo_ N | 'Thailand' (Siam) |
| *_tsz̀_ M | 'time, occurrence; secondary' |
| _tsz̀·'jăng_ N | 'vice-minister' |
| _·tŭng_ | 'control completely' (see *dzúng·'tŭng*) |
| _tŭng·yi_ V | 'unify, unite' |
| _tán·'shyāng_ N | 'sandalwood' |
| _Tán·shyāng·'shān_ N | 'Honolulu' |
| _wān_ N | 'curve, bay' (see *jwăn-'wān, Táy·'wān*) |
| *_wàng_ K | 'looking towards' (see *'shī·wàng*) |
| *_wày_ | 'outside' |
| *_wày·'jyāw_ N | 'foreign affairs' |
| _wày·jyāw·'jyè_ N | 'diplomatic circles, diplomats' (people who are within the *jyè* 'border' of diplomacy) |
| _·wéy: 'wéy·je_ K | 'circling, around' |
| *_wèy_ K | 'for the sake of, for, because of' |
| _·Yă_ | |
| _'Yă·jēw_ N | 'Asia' (the continent) |
| *_yáng_ N | 'ocean' (see *Nán·'yáng*) |
| *_yàw_ V | 'want, need, be going to' |
| _'yàw·rén_ N | 'important people' (remember *'yàw·jĭn* 'be important') (see *'dăng·gwó-'yàw·rén*) |
| *_yī_ | 'one' (see *'tŭng·yī*) |
| _yì·'dwō·bàr_ | 'mostly, most of' (what has been mentioned) |
| *_·Yīng_ | |
| _'Yīng·dì·gwó_ N | 'the British Empire' |
| *_·yíng_ | 'meet, welcome' (see *'Hwān·yíng*) |
| *_·ywán_ | 'personnel' (see *dăng·'ywán*) |

# UNIT 29

## CHINA'S FUTURE

*Note*: Since this is the last Unit in which new expressions appear, there is no separate Finder List. The new words and phrases of this Unit can be checked on in the *Chinese-English Word-List* at the end of the book.

### SECTION A: BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| These are the snapshots I took at Sian. | *Jè shr̀ wǒ-dzày-'Shī·ān-jàw·de-'shyàng.* |
| Here are some better ones for you. | *Jè shr̀ jr̆·jāng-'hǎw·de, sùng·gey-'nǐ·de.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Much obliged. | *Dwō-'shyè.* |
| When did they arrive? | *'Shém·me-shŕ·hew 'dàw·de?* |
| | *Ross* |
| Yesterday morning. | *Dzwó·tyan-'dzǎw·chen.* |
| to register | *gwà-hàw* |
| to insure | *báw-shyǎn* |
| They came by registered mail, insured. | *Shr̀ 'gwà-hàw 'báw-shyǎn 'jr̀-lay·de.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| beautiful | *měy* |
| This one is really beautiful—like a painting. | *'Jè-yì·jāng jēn 'měy, shyàng yì·jāng-'hwàr shr̀·de.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| That's the city walls and gates. | *Nà shr̀ chéng·'chyáng hé chéng·'mén.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| to concern, be about | *gwān·ywu* |
| I was reading a book about Sian just this morning. | *Jīn·tyan-'dzǎw·chen wǒ jèng 'kàn yì·běn-gwān·ywu-'Shī·ān·de-'shū.* |
| The name of the book is 'The New Sian.' | *Shū·'míng·dz shr̀ "'Shīn-'Shī·'ān.'* |
| the Chou Dynasty | *'Jēw·cháw* |
| The book says that the national capital during the Chou Dynasty was about twenty lǐ from present-day Sian. | *Jè·běn-'shū·shang shwō, 'Jēw·cháw·de-jīng·'chéng lí shyàn·'dzày·de-'Shī·ān yěw 'èr·shr-dwō-'lǐ.* |
| the Han Dynasty | *'Hàn·cháw* |
| the T'ang Dynasty | *'Táng·cháw* |
| vicinity | *fù·'jìn* |
| The capitals during the Han and Tang dynasties were also in that neighborhood. | *'Hàn·cháw hé 'Táng·cháw·de-jīng·'chéng 'yě dzày nà·li-fù·'jìn.* |
| (He points to another picture) | |
| This is the Temple of Confucius; I've been there. | *Jè shr̀ Kǔng·dz-'myàw; wǒ 'dàw·gwo.* |
| library | *tú·shū·'gwǎn* |
| And this is the library; I've been there too. | *Jè shr̀ tú·shū·'gwǎn; wó 'yě dàw·gwo.* |
| the Sung Dynasty | *'Sùng·cháw* |
| the (Confucian) Five Classics | *Wǔ·'jīng* |
| The Five Classics printed during the Sung Dynasty are there; did you see them? | *Yěw 'Sùng·cháw-yìn·de-'Wǔ·'jīng'; 'kàn·jyan-le méy·yew?* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Ross* |
| to store or hide things away | *'tsáng·chǐ-lay* |
| No. They were stored away for fear of being destroyed by bombs. | *'Méy·yew. Pà jà·'hwày-le, dēw 'tsáng·chi-lay-le.* |
| magazines | *dzá·'jr̀* |
| At present there are only newspapers, magazines, and new books in the library. | *Shyàn·dzày tú·shū·'gwǎn·li jŕ yěw bàw·'jŕ, dzá·'jr̀, hé 'shīn-shū.* |
| museum | *bwó·wù·'gwǎn* |
| The Museum was closed up. | *Bwó·wù·'gwǎn 'gwān·chi-lay-le.* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Oh! (He nods.) | *Hm!* |
| What places are these photos of? | *'Jè-jǐ·jāng shr̀ shém·me-dì·fang?* |
| There's something written on the wall. | *'Chyáng·shang yěw-'dž.* |
| 'The Three Principles of the People' | *Sān-'Mín·jǔ·'yì* |
| outline | *dà·'gāng* |
| It looks like 'Outline of the Three Principles of the People.' | *Hǎw shyàng·shr̀ 'Sān-Mín·jǔ·'yì-Dà·'gāng.'* |
| (Nationalist) Party Headquarters | *dǎng·'bù* |
| It must be; that's the provincial headquarters of the Kuomintang. | *Yí·'dìng shr̀·de; nà shr̀ shéng-dǎng·'bù.* |
| a problem | *'wèn·tí* |
| I have several problems on my mind. | *Wǒ-'shīn·li yéw jǐ·ge-'wèn·tí.* |
| I was just on the point of asking you. | *'Jèng yàw 'wèn-ni.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Wáng* |
| Shoot! | *Nǐ 'shwō-ba.* |
| | *Ross* |
| put something into practice | *shŕ·'shíng* |
| Do you think the Three People's Principles can be put into practice? | *Ní shyǎng Sān-Mín·jǔ·'yì ké·yi shŕ·'shíng-ma?* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Why not? | *'Dzěm·me bù-'néng-ne?* |
| The Principle of Nationalism | *'Mín·dzú-jǔ·'yì* |
| carry something out | *shŕ·'shyàn* |
| The Principle of Nationalism has already been realized. | *'Mín·dzú-jǔ·'yì 'yǐ·jing shŕ·'shyàn-le.* |
| | *Ross* |
| The Principle of People's Rights | *'Mín·chywán-jǔ·'yì* |
| How about the Principle of People's Rights? | *Mín·chywán-jǔ·'yì-ne?* |
| | *Wáng* |
| It's easier said than done. | *'Shwō·je 'rúng·yi; 'shíng·chi-lay jyèw 'nán-le.* |
| education | *jyàw·'ywù* |
| to receive an education | *shèw jyàw·'ywù* |
| Just think how many people in China are uneducated. | *Ní 'shyǎng, 'Jūng·gwo yěw 'dwō·shaw-rén méy-'shèw·gwo jyàw·'ywù·de!* |
| And how many are illiterate. | *Yěw 'dwō·shaw-bú-rèn·shr-'dż·de!* |
| | *Ross* |
| to vote *or* take part in elections | *shywán·'jywǔ* |
| I know illiterate people can't participate in elections. | *Wǒ 'jr̄·daw bú-rèn·shr-'dż·de-rén bù-néng shywán·'jywǔ.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| to solve (a problem) | *'jyě·jywé* |
| But is there any solution to it? | *Kě·shr yěw shém·me-'jyě·jywé·de-'fāng·fa-ne?* |
| | *Wáng* |
| writing system | *wén·'dż* |
| The Chinese writing system is very hard to learn. | *Jūng·gwo-wén·'dż 'tày nán-'shywé-le.* |
| It takes years to learn it well. | *Děy shywé hěn-dwō-'nyán tsáy shywé·de 'hǎw.* |
| the whole nation | *chywán·'gwó* |
| alphabet | *dż·'mǔ* |
| spell out the sounds | *pīn-'yīn* |
| If you want to get everyone in the country educated fast, | *Nǐ yàw 'shyǎng jyàw chywán·'gwó·de-rén hěn-'kwày·de dēw shèw jyàw·'ywù,* |
| the only method is to spell words out alphabetically. | *jŕ yěw yùng-dż·'mǔ-pīn-'yīn-jè-'yí·ge-fāng·fa.* |
| | *Ross* |
| philosophy | *'jé·shywé* |
| history | *lì·'shř* |
| literature | *'wén·shywé* |
| In that case who'll be able to read the old books on philosophy, history, literature, and so forth? | *Nà·me, nà·shyē-'jé·shywé, lì·'shř, 'wén·shywé, 'déng·děng·de-'jyèw-shū, shwéy háy néng 'nyàn-ne?* |
| | *Wáng* |
| Only the rich can read them now. | *Shyàn·'dzày jŕ yéw yěw-'chyán·de-rén néng nyàn 'nà·shyē-shū.* |
| Even now that's not more than ten percent of the people. | *Jyèw·shr shyàn·'dzày, 'dzwèy dwō yě bú·'gwò shr̀ 'shŕ·fēn·jr̄-'yī·de-rén.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| always | *dzŭng* |
| I think there'll always be that many who can read the old books. | *Wó shyăng, yĭ·'hèw dzŭng hwèy yĕw 'jè·me-shyē-rén néng nyàn 'jyèw-shū·de.* |
| to translate | *'fān·yì·chū-lay* |
| Moreover, the old books can be translated. | *'Háy yĕw-ne, 'jyèw-shū ké·yi 'fān·yì·chu-lay.* |
| dictionary | *dž·'dyăn* |
| And there will be dictionaries to use. | *Háy yĕw dž·'dyăn ké·yi 'yùng.* |
| | *Ross* |
| We | *'dzán·men* |
| Let's talk about this question later. | *Dzán·men yĭ·'hèw tán jè·ge-wèn·tí-ba.* |
| The Principle of People's Livelihood | *'Mín·shēng-jŭ·'yì* |
| How about the Principle of People's Livelihood? | *'Mín·shēng-jŭ·'yì-ne?* |
| | *Wáng* |
| connection *or* relation | *'gwān·shi* |
| That's also related to education. | *'Nà 'yĕ gēn jyàw·'ywù yĕw 'gwān·shi.* |
| agriculture | *'núng·yè* |
| mining | *'kwàng·yè* |
| specialists | *'jwān·jyā* |
| Industry, agriculture, mining, all need specialists to develop them. | *'Gūng·yè, 'núng·yè, 'kwàng·yè, 'dēw dĕy 'jwān·jyā chywù 'bàn.* |

## SECTION B: WORD STUDY

**Point 1. Library and Museum.** When the Japanese invaded Eastern China they pursued a policy of destroying schools, libraries, museums, and all other such potential seats of enlightenment. A few were left open for the express purpose of conducting pro-Japanese propaganda. Although many schools moved bodily to the west in advance of the oncoming Japanese, sometimes walking hundreds of miles, few books and few museum objects could be taken along, so that public libraries of any size, and museums of any importance, are rare in Free China at the moment.

**Point 2. Dynasties.** The history of China down to 1912 (the founding of the Republic) is treated in terms of dynasties of rulers. The most important dynasties are listed under *cháw* 'dynasty' in the complete Finder List at the end of this book. Some of the dynasties overlapped a bit, with the old one surviving in power in part of the country while a new one arose elsewhere. The Han and T'ang dynasties were particularly prosperous or productive of culture, and so *Hàn* and *Táng*, used by other peoples at the time in referring to the Chinese, are still used to mean 'China': *Hàn·dz̀* is one term for 'Chinese characters'.

**Point 3. We.** In Peiping and thereabout the term *dzán·men* is frequently used instead of *wǒ·men* for 'we, us', especially when being informal, and particularly when one wishes to include the person addressed —'you and I, you and we'.

## Point 4. The Chinese Writing System

Whether or not you ever expect to learn written Chinese, it is important to understand something of the nature of the Chinese writing system and its relationship to the spoken language. In order correctly to describe Chinese writing we must first examine the spoken language a bit more and introduce one more technical term.

If one considers a sentence such as *wǒ méy-'dàw·gwo Jūng·gwo* it is obvious that this sentence is composed of a string of elements, each of which has its own meaning, and that the meaning of the whole sentence is a product of the meanings of those elements and the meanings of the ways in which they are put together. The elements, divided as small as possible, are:

*wǒ* 'I, me'
*méy* 'have not, has not'
*dàw* 'arrive, to'
*·gwo* 'in experience up to the present'
*·jūng* 'middle'
*·gwó* 'country'

Of course the combination *jūng·gwo* means more than just 'middle country'; it means 'China'. The whole sentence does not have as its meaning simply the *sum* of the meanings of the constituent elements, but results also from the conventional use of certain groups of these constituents with specialized force.

Of the smallest constituents in this sentence, some are words in themselves (*wǒ, méy, dàw*); others, though they appear frequently and have a constant meaning, are not whole words, occurring only as parts of larger words (*·gwo, ·jūng, ·gwó*).

The 'smallest constituents' described above are 'smallest' in that they are indivisible units from the point of view of *sound and meaning*. If one considers only *sound*, then of course they can be broken up into smaller fractions—the vowels, consonants, and tones, which carry no meaning in themselves.

Since the units are not always full words in their own right, a term is needed for them. The standard technical term is *morpheme*. A morpheme, then, is *the smallest recurrent element with constant meaning*, whether it can be used independently or only in combination. If it can be used independently, then it is also a *word*.

In the writing system for Chinese used in this book, the written units are *letters* and *accent marks* (¯, ´, ˇ, `). These written symbols are used to represent the individual *vowels, consonants*, and *tones* of the spoken language—the meaningless noises which, in certain combinations, are meaningfully used. This is like the writing systems for English and other European languages, and any language in the world *can* be written in this way, as complete and unambiguous as is speech itself.

But in ordinary traditional Chinese writing the unit symbols, called *characters* instead of *letters*, do *not* stand for sounds; they stand for *morphemes*, the minimum *meaningful* units of the spoken language. Thus the sentence already given, *wǒ méy-'dàw·gwo Jūng·gwo*, appears in written form as:

我 沒 到 過 中 國

These symbols give no systematic clue to the individual *sounds* of the sentence. One simply has to learn that the symbol 我 stands for the morpheme (in this case an independent word) *wǒ*, with the meaning 'I, me', and so on with the others.

In its original form Chinese writing was perhaps picture-writing—that is, to represent an eye one used a more or less conventionalized picture of an eye, and so on. The system is no longer picture-writing; what is represented by the characters is not things or ideas, but simply morphemes of the spoken language. Even so, the original picture-writing device has survived in the modern morpheme writing system enough to be of occasional help to the learner. Thus the characters 上, 中, and 下 represent the morphemes pronounced *shàng, jūng*, and *shyà*, with the meanings 'above, up', 'middle', and 'below'; the first character has strokes *above* a horizontal line, the second has a vertical line through the *middle* of an oblong, and the third has strokes *below* a horizontal line. If you exercise your imagination you can see the two legs, maybe even the torso, of a *rén* 'person' in the character 人 which represents that morpheme.

Now just as morphemes are further divisible in terms of *sound* only, without taking meaning into consideration, so characters are sometimes further divisible, with certain visible figures recurring in different characters which either have similar meaning or vaguely similar sound. Thus:

1. 門 *mén* 'door'
2. 們 *men* as in *wǒ·men* 'we, us'
3. 問 *wèn* 'ask'
4. 關 *gwān* 'close'
5. 開 *kāy* 'open'
6. 聞 *wén* 'smell'
7. 閉 *bì* 'close' (eyes)
8. 間 *jyān* as in *yì·jyān-'wū·dz* 'one room'

The element 門 is common to all of these. It is a fair picture of a pair of swinging doors, and so is easy to remember as representation of the morpheme *mén* 'door, gate'. In 4, 5, 7, and 8 its presence in the more complicated characters indicates some connection in *meaning*: one 'closes' and 'opens' doors (though one does not ordinarily use *bì* for closing a door in modern northern Chinese, only for closing other things), and a room has a door. In 2, 3, and 6, its presence indicates rather a similarity in *sound*. This similarity in sound is not great, at present, between *mén* and *wén* or *wèn*, but it is known that at an earlier stage in the history of the language the similarity was greater.

The Chinese spoken language has been changing from year to year and from century to century, as languages always do. The Chinese writing system has changed also, but not always in the same direction as the spoken language. As a result, the common element of meaning or of sound in morphemes written now with a common visible figure is often vague. Even so, the task of learning written Chinese is considerably easier than it would be were all the unit characters completely unrelated. On the other hand, these recurrent partials in the written symbols do not alter the fundamental nature of the Chinese writing system, as given above.

There are various styles of written Chinese. It is perfectly possible to write just as one speaks, but this is rarely done. Some of the most frequent morphemes in the spoken language are written by quite complex characters, and the natural tendency is to write simpler ones whenever possible, if the same meaning is conveyed, even if the morphemes represented are rarer in the spoken language. Also, one can abbreviate in writing by leaving out morphemes which would never be dropped in speaking, and which could not be dropped without ambiguity in writing Chinese alphabetically. These (written) simplifications and abbreviations are not sporadic, at the whim of the individual writer; there is a whole tradition about it—in fact, several traditions, stemming from different eras and tendencies in past history, distinguishable from each other and from the style of the spoken language. Thus to express the idea of 'know', in speaking one says *jr̄·dàw*, but in writing it is customary in almost every style to write simply the character which represents the first morpheme of *jr̄·dàw*. The meaning is not obscured, since this character would not be used with any other meaning. In speaking, on the other hand, simply saying *jr̄* for *jr̄·dàw* might lead to ambiguity, since there are also other morphemes with that pronunciation, and the context might not be sufficient to make the meaning clear.

When Dr. Sun wrote *jr̄ nán shíng yì* he was operating within the restrictions of a literary tradition, and producing something perfectly intelligible to any reader. The *jr̄* is the one of *jr̄·dàw*, the *yì* is the one of *rúng·yì*, and the meaning is 'to know is difficult, to put into effect is easy.'

What has been written can of course be quoted in speech, and the Chinese are adroit at using succinct literary quotations in their conversations, formal or informal. So it happens that even the learner who does not plan to study Chinese writing yet has need to understand something of what has been given in this section. With a fair control of the spoken language it is usually easy to recognize a particular expression as being a literary quotation, at variance with the ordinary way of putting things together orally. When one hears and detects such a literary expression, the thing to do is to learn its meaning *as a whole*—and then use it, when the occasion arises, *as a whole*, not modifying it as an ordinary sentence might be modified.

By the learner who does embark on the job of learning Chinese characters, the central facts listed here should be kept in mind. The following summarizing statement will help:

1. Chinese characters are not to be interpreted as symbols representing ideas or elements in the physical and human world, but are rather to be correlated with the morphemes of the spoken language. The remnants of the picture-writing principle still found in Chinese writing are nevertheless helpful.

2. Written Chinese frequently strings characters together differently than spoken Chinese strings the equivalent morphemes together, but the nuclear meanings are much the same.

3. Representation of similarity in sound or meaning of morphemes by partial similarities of characters to the eye is helpful, but sporadic and irregular.

## SECTION C: WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

*1.* At the library.

a. *'Jīn·tyan dzán·men dàw tú·shū·'gwǎn chywù-ba.*
b. *Tú·shū·'gwǎn 'shém·me-shŕ·hew kāy-'mén?*
c. *Tú·shū·'gwǎn 'shém·me-shŕ·hew 'gwān-mén?*
d. *Wǒ ké·yi bǎ-'shū 'jyè·chu-chywu 'kàn-ma?*

e. *Ké·yi 'jyè 'dwō·shaw-tyān?*
f. *Nǐ shr̀ 'shwō 'lyǎng·ge-shīng·'chī-ma?*
g. *'Yí·tsz̀ 'lyáng·běn?*
h. *Jè shr̀ 'jyè·shaw·shìn.*
i. *Shr̀ yùng 'Yīng·wén 'shyě·de.*
j. *Hm! Wǒ yàw 'nǎ-lyáng·běn-ne?*
k. *Wǒ yàw yì·běn-Jūng·gwo-lì·'shř.*
l. *Shū·'míng·dz shr̀* 'The Making of Modern China' *Shr̀* Owen Lattimore *'shyě·de.*
m. *'Yěw-ma?*
n. *Hǎw 'jí-le.*
o. *Wǒ 'háy yǎw yì·běn-'dà·de-Jūng·gwo-dì·'tú.*
p. *Dì·'tú hé dz̀·'dyǎn bù-néng 'jyè·chu-chywu-ma?*
q. *'Nà·me, wǒ dzày 'jè·li 'kàn-yi·kàn-ba.*
r. *Yì·běn jyàw-*'Asia'*-de-dzá·'jr̀ 'yěw-méy·yew?*
s. *'Bú·shr yàw 'jyè·chu-lay·de.*
t. *'Jè-yí·tsz̀ wǒ jyèw jyè 'jè-'yì·běn.*
u. *Bwó·wù·'gwǎn jyèw dzày dwèy·'mén-ma?*
v. *Wǒ yàw 'kàn·kàn 'Míng·cháw·de-'tsź·chì.*
w. *Wó 'yě yàw kàn·kan 'Táng·cháw·de-shŕ·'mǎ.*
x. *Háy yěw 'Sùng·cháw·de-'hwàr-ma?*
y. *Wǒ 'kàn-yi·kàn dì·'tú jyèw 'chywù.*
z. *'Shyè·shye.*

2. Miscellaneous.

a. *Jè·fēng-'shìn shr̀ yàw gwà-'hàw·de.*
b. *Gwà-'hàw jyèw 'gèw-le, bú-yùng báw-'shyǎn.*
c. *Jŕ yěw dzày 'lǐ·tew yěw-'chyán de·shŕ·hew tsáy děy báw-'shyǎn.*
d. *Jè·swǒ-'fáng·dz ní 'bǎw-le 'dwō·shaw-chyán·de-hwó·'shyǎn?*
e. *Tā jèng 'kàn yì·běn-gwān·ywu-'jé·shywé·de-shū-ne.*
f. *Tā yùng dz̀·'dyǎn-ne.*
g. *Tā děy yùng dz̀·'dyǎn tsáy néng kàn-de·'dǔng-ne.*
h. *Tā děy yùng dz̀·'dyǎn tsáy néng kàn-de·'dǔng nà·běn-'shū-ne.*
i. *'Shū·li 'dzěm·me shwō?*
j. *Dz̀·'dyǎn·shang 'dzěm·me shwō?*
k. *Bàw·'jř nǐ 'tsáng·dzay 'nǎr-le?*
l. *Dzá·'jr̀ nǐ 'tsáng·dzay 'nǎr-le?*
m. *Nà·běn-dày-'tú·de-shū nǐ 'tsáng·dzay 'nǎr-le?*
n. *Bǎ jè·běn-'shū 'tsáng·chi-lay, 'bú·yàw jyàw-ta 'kàn·jyàn.*
o. *Dzày 'chwáng-dǐ·shya 'tsáng·chi-lay.*
p. *Tā dzày 'chwáng-dǐ·shya 'tsáng·je-ne.*
q. *Nǐ tsáng·dzay 'nǎr, yě ké·yi jǎw-de·'jáw.*
r. *'Dí·rén dzày nà·ge-shù·'lín·dz·li 'tsáng·je-ne.*
s. *Nà·shyē-'shān·li 'tsáng·je·de yěw 'jīn·kwàng hé 'tyě·kwàng.*

3. The Three Principles of the People.

a. *'Sān-Mín·jŭ·'yì' shr̀ 'Swēn-Jūng·shān-shyān·sheng 'shyăng·chi-lay·de.*

b. *Sān-Mín·jŭ·'yì ké·yi 'jyèw Jūng·gwo.*

c. *'Bú·gwò dĕy chywù shŕ·'shíng.*

d. *Gwó·mín·'dăng jyèw·shr yàw shŕ·'shíng Sān-Mín·jŭ·'yì·de.*

e. *Jūng·gwo·de-'jèng·fu hé jywēn·'dwèy·li·de-rén 'dwō·bàn dēw shr̀ gwó·mín·'dăng·de-dăng·'ywán.*

f. *Dăng·'ywán yí·'dìng dĕy shr̀ shèw·gwo-jyàw·'ywù·de.*

g. *Shyàn·dzày Jūng·gwo·de-lĭng·'shyèw shr̀ 'Jyăng-Jŭ·shí.*

h. *Tā 'yĕ shr̀ gwó·mín·'dăng-dzwèy-'gāw·de-lĭng·'shyèw.*

i. *Gwó·mín·'dăng dzày yī-jyĕw-èr-bā-'nyán tŭng·'yī-le chywán·'gwó.*

j. *Háy bú-dàw 'shŕ·nyán·de-gūng·fu jyèw bă 'jūng·gwo byàn·de bí yĭ·'chyán hăw·de 'dwō.*

k. *R̀·'bĕn-rén pà Jūng·gwo tày 'chyáng-le.*

l. *Jyèw dzày yī-jyĕw-sān-chī-'nyán gēn 'Jūng·gwo dă-'jàng-le.*

## SECTION D: LISTENING IN

### Conversation 1

*Ross and Wáng are discussing recent news.*

Ross: *'Jīn·tyan wŏ dàw tú·shū·'gwăn-chywu kàn-'shū láy·je.*

Wáng: *Dēw shr̀ kàn·de 'shém·me?*

Ross: *'Shyān kàn-le Nyēw·ywē-Shŕ·'bàw.* (*shŕ·* from *shŕ·hew;* the New York Times)
*'Hèw·lay kàn Yă·jēw-dzá·'jr̀* (Asia magazine) *hé Shēng·mìng-Hwà·'bàw* (Life Magazine).

Wáng: *'Dēw shr̀ shém·me-'shŕ·hew·de?*

Ross: *'Á?*

Wáng: *Bàw·'jr̆ shr̀ 'nă-yì·tyān·de?*
*Dzá·'jr̀ shr̀ 'jĭ·ywè·de?*

Ross: *Èw! Bàw·'jr̆ shr̀ 'yí·ge-ywè-yĭ·'chyán·de.*
*Dzá·'jr̀ shr̀ 'lyăng-sān·ge-ywè-yĭ·'chyán·de.*
*'Dēw shr̀ shwō 'jè·tsz̀-shywán·'jywŭ-Dzúng·'tŭng·de-shr̀.*

Wáng: *'Mĕy·gwo·de-'rén·mín 'jēn yĕw-'chywán.*
*Bú-'ywàn·yi jyàw 'shwéy dzwò dzúng·'tŭng, jyèw bù-'shywăn-ta.*

'*Hwày·de-dzúng·'tŭng dĭng-'dwō ké·yi dzwò 'sż·nyán.*

'*Jè·yàng, dzwò-dzúng·'tŭng·de jyèw bù-'néng 'bù-hăw·'háwr·de-le.*

Ross: *Bù-'jr̄·daw 'Jūng·gwo dàw 'nă·nyán tsáy néng shŕ·'shíng shywán·'jywŭ-dzúng·'tŭng-'jè·yàng·de-shř.*

## Conversation 2

Wáng: '*Jūng·gwo-rén méy-shèw·gwo-jyǎw·'ywù·de tày 'dwō-le.*

*Děy 'shyān jyàw chywán·'gwó·de-rén dēw shèw-le jyàw·'ywù, 'tsáy néng shŕ·'shíng shywán·'jywŭ-ne.*

Ross: *Nà děy 'dwō·shaw-nyán-ne?*

Wáng: '*Shŕ·nyán yĕ 'shíng; yì·'băy·nyán yĕ 'bù-shíng.* ('Maybe in ten; maybe not even in a hundred.')

Ross: '*Dzĕm·me-ne?*

Wáng: *Jyàw chywán·'gwó·de-rén dēw shèw gwó·mín-jyàw·'ywù* (education common to everybody, elementary education) *děy 'shyān jyàw tā·men néng rèn-'dż, néng shyĕ-'dż, néng kàn-'shū, kàn-'bàw.*

'*Hàn·dż tày 'nán-shywé-le.*

*Jyāw yì·'băy·nyán yĕ 'bù-néng jyàw chywán·'gwó·de-rén dēw néng rèn-'dż, nyàn-'shū.*

*Rè·shr yùng pīn·yĭn·'dż, 'shŕ·nyán jyèw 'shíng-le.*

## Conversation 3

Ross: *Gwān·ywu yùng pīn·yĭn·'dż, bú-yùng 'Hàn·dż, wó yĕw ge-'wèn·tí.*

*Jyèw·shr dzày 'bù-shwō-gwó·'ywŭ·de-dì·fang dzĕm·me 'bàn-ne?*

*Shyàng Gwăng·'dūng, Fú·'jyàn, Jè·'jyāng, Jyāng·'sū, 'jè·shyē-shĕng·de-rén dēw shř bù-shwō-gwó·'ywŭ·de.*

Wáng: *Wó shyăńg 'Jūng·gwo yīng·gāy yéw 'lyáng·jŭng-wén·'dż.*

*Dì-'yì·jŭng shř yùng Hàn·'dż.*

*Dì-'èr·jŭng shř yùng 'Gwó·ywŭ-pīn·yĭn·'dż.*

'*Gwó·ywŭ-pīn·yĭn·'dż shř chywán·'gwó·de-rén dēw yàw 'shywĕ·de.*

'*Hàn·dż shř 'jūng·shywé-hé-'dà·shywé·de-shywé·sheng yàw 'shywé·de.*

Ross: *Wŏ·de-'wèn·tí nĭ 'háy méy 'hwéy·dá-ne.*

Wáng: '*Bú·yàw-máng!*

*Tīng wŏ màn·'mán·de shwō.*

*Bù-shwō-gwó·'ywǔ·de-rén děy shywé gwó·'ywǔ.*

*Dzěm·me-shywé-ne?*

*Yéw 'lyǎng·ge-'fāng·fa.*

*'Yí·ge shr̀ yùng shwō-gwó·'ywǔ·de-rén dzày 'báy·tyan 'jyāw.*

*'Yí·ge shr̀ yùng wú·shyàn·'dyàn chywù 'jyāw.*

*'Měy-yí·ge-tswēn·'jwāng dēw yěw wú·shyàn·'dyàn.*

*'Měy·tyān-'dzǎw·chen, 'wǎn·shang, chywán·'tswēn·de-rén dēw yàw chywù tīng wú·shyàn·'dyàn.*

*'Bǐ·fang shwō, 'báy·tyan-jyāw·de shr̀ Jūng·gwo-dì·'lǐ.*

*Dàw-le 'wǎn·shang wú·shyàn·'dyàn-jyāw·de 'yě shr̀ dì·'lǐ.*

*Dì-'èr·tyān-'dzǎw·chen jyāw·de 'yě shr̀ dì·'lǐ.*

*Wó shyǎng, chywán·'gwó túng·'shŕ jyāw, 'lyèw·ge-ywè-yì·'chī* (at periods of six months each), *'shŕ·nyán·li chywán·'gwó·de-rén jyèw ké·yi 'dēw hwèy shwō gwó·'ywǔ-le.*

*Túng·'shŕ chywán·'gwó·de-rén 'dēw shywé pīn·yīn·'dż,*

*Bàw·'jř, dzá·'jř, 'shū, 'yě dēw yùng pīn·yīn·'dż chywù 'shyě, chywù 'yìn.*

*'Jè·yàng, jyàw·'ywù-wèn·tí jyèw jyě·'jywé-le.*

Ross: *Nà·me, yùng 'Hàn·dż 'wèy-shém·me bù-'shíng-nga?*

Wáng: *Shywé 'dż·mǔ 'kwày, shwé 'Hàn·dż jyèw 'màn-le.*

*Shywé dż·mǔ-pīn·'yīn yùng shŕ·'tyān, shywé 'Hàn·dż děy shŕ·'nyán.*

*Yàw shyǎng jyàw chywán·'gwó·de-rén dēw néng shwō gwó·'ywǔ, dēw néng yùng gwó·'ywú shyě-'shìn, dēw néng kàn yùng-gwó·ywú-shyě·de-'shū,*

*'jŕ yěw yùng 'gwó·ywǔ-pīn·yīn·'dż.*

## Conversation 4

Ross: *Yùng 'nǎ-yì·jǔng-dż·'mǔ-ne?*

Wáng: *'Nà yàw jyàw 'jèng·fu hé jwān·'jyā chywù jywé·'dìng-le.*

*Yùng 'Lwó·mǎ-dż·'mǔ 'dzwèy hǎw.*

Ross: *Wèy-'shém·me-ne?*

Wáng: *Yīn·wey shyàn·dzày yéw dǎ·dż·'jī, yěw yìn·shwā-'jī·chi, dēw ké·yi 'yùng.*

*Yìn-'shū jyèw 'kwày-le.*

*Shyě-'shìn yě 'kwày-le.*

*'Háy yěw-ne, shr̀·'jyè·shang·de-wén·'dż chà·bu·-dwō 'dēw yùng 'Lwó·mǎ-dż·'mǔ.*

*Swó·yi 'Jūng·gwo yùng 'Lwó·mǎ-dż·'mǔ yéw hěn-dwō-'fāng·byan·de-dì·fang.*

*Nǐ shwō 'dwèy-bu·dwèy?*

**Ross:** *'Dwèy, shř 'dwèy.*
*Kě·shr 'shwō·je 'rúng·yi, 'dzwò·je 'nán.*

**Wáng:** *'Jř yàw yéw hěn-'dwō-rén túng·'yì, 'shíng·chi-lay bù-'nán.*
*'Jūng·shān-shyān·sheng shwō: "'Jr̄ 'nán 'shíng 'yì.'*
*Rè·shr wǒ·men dēw 'jr̄·daw yīng·gay jè·me 'bàn, jyèw yīng·gay chywù 'bàn.*

**Ross:** *'Hǎw.*
*Rè·shr nǐ chywù 'bàn wǒ jyèw 'bāng nǐ·de-'mang.*

# UNIT 30

## REVIEW

### SECTION A: SENTENCE-REVIEW

**§1. Preparation.** Go over the following sentences and be prepared to give any of them in Chinese when the English is given to you.

1. There are few heavy industries in China.
2. Most of the industries in China are handicraft industries.
3. Before the war, most of China's industry was in the eastern provinces.
4. After the war started, some factories moved all their machinery to the west.
5. The iron works in Sian are the ones which transported their machinery from Honan.
6. They make rifles, machine guns, and helmets.
7. The Industrial Cooperative factories make calling cards, personal seals, writing brushes, pencils, ink, and porcelain and glass ware.
8. They also make plates, bottles, cups, wash basins, and canned food.
9. They also make umbrellas of bamboo and oiled paper or oilcloth.
10. They also make bandages, medicinal cotton, and blankets.
11. Many of these things are made for the Army.
12. This blanket which I have here was woven by the Industrial Cooperative Society.
13. Formerly many things were manufactured in one part of China and shipped to another to be used.
14. Now they plan to make things needed in one locality in that place, because transportation is so difficult.
15. 'Heavy Industry' is manufacturing things from iron and steel.
16. For example, making locomotives, warships, and large machines is heavy industry.
17. There is much of this type of industry in the United States.
18. There is some in India too, but very little in China at present.
19. Bamboo is used for many things in China.

20. If chopsticks are not made of bamboo, but of wood, one has to call them 'wooden chopsticks'. If you just say 'chopsticks,' everyone thinks you mean ones made of bamboo.

21. There are many different religions in China.

22. There are many Moslems in Sian; there are forty-five million of them in China.

23. Most of China's Moslems are in the northwestern provinces.

24. Moslems won't eat pork.

25. 'Friday' is for Moslems what 'Sunday' is for Christians.

26. On Friday people who believe in Catholicism won't eat any kind of meat.

27. There's a Catholic father in Sian who has been there for forty years. He was born in Chicago.

28. Some people say that Confucianism isn't really a religion.

29. Some temples of Confucius are in the mountains, some are in the big cities.

30. There are Taoist temples all over China too.

31. In the Confucian temples there are images of Buddha.

32. The rent seems high, but it includes light and water.

33. It's cheaper to buy a house to live in than to rent one.

34. You're the only one who hasn't paid his rent.

35. You can borrow the capital you need from a bank.

36. After paying back the interest you may still make some money.

37. Whatever business you carry on you must take some risk.

38. No risk—no enterprise. But all the same it's better to be cautious.

39. If you deposit money in a bank you can draw interest.

40. The more money deposited, the more interest you get.

41. The accountant in the shop is using an abacus.

42. With the abacus he can do addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division.

43. My friend has a farm near a little village not far from here.

44. The village has about two hundred families, but only one general store.

45. The store sells salt, sugar, wine, and other things of that kind.

46. Last year I went there and stayed two weeks, in the autumn.

47. It was harvest time, and all the men were in the fields harvesting the crops.

48. The women did the cooking and brought their [illegible] to them.

49. On my friend's farm there are rice fields, fruit trees, melon fields, wheat fields, and tobacco fields.

50. He is using a new kind of seed for rice; every mŭ of land yields more than seventy dĕw of rice.

51. One mŭ of land can yield about twice as much as with any other seed.

52. And prices are higher, so he's been making money.

53. He planted some trees on the hills, and they've grown into a forest.

54. I want you to smoke a little of the tobacco he raises; it's of the highest quality. Where's your pipe?

55. The crops this year aren't bad.

56. At first there was hardly enough rain, but later on it rained plenty.

57. Every year in the spring the trees put out leaves and blossoms; in the fall they bear fruit.

58. 'As ye sow so shall ye reap.'

59. That province produces no salt; they import it from the west part of Szechwan, where there are salt wells.

60. That's very interesting.

§2. **Group-Drill.** The Leader will pick sentences at random from the above list and will ask members of the group, also at random, to translate. If you have a Guide he will correct you when you are not accurate.

## SECTION B: SENTENCE-REVIEW

§1. **Preparation.** Work as in Section A §1.

1. In this shyàn there are something over two hundred policemen.
2. The chief municipalities in China which are directly under the national government are Chungking, Peiping, Shanghai, and Nanking.
3. Canton is a municipality too, but it is not directly under the central government.
4. Chungking is the capital of China now; formerly the capital was Nanking.
5. The capital city of Japan is Tokyo (called 'East Capital' by the Chinese).
6. The capitals of China during the Han, T'ang, and Chou dynasties were near Sian.
7. The largest continent on the globe is Asia. After that come Africa, North America, South America, Europe, and Australia.
8. Some people say Australia is an island, not a

continent. But when speaking Chinese it is counted as among the continents.

9. There are many overseas Chinese in the South Sea Islands and the Malay archipelago.
10. Most overseas Chinese are Cantonese.
11. Most of the North-Chinese in the United States are students.
12. The laundrymen and restaurant operators are mostly Cantonese.
13. Many northern Chinese go to Siberia and carry on business there.
14. There are about thirty-five million Chinese in the territories of China which Japan controls at the moment.
15. Last night I attended a party at the Embassy—a welcoming party for Madame Chiang.
16. Was the vice-president there?
17. He didn't come in person, but he sent a representative.
18. All the important people were present.
19. You couldn't make a turn without bumping into someone important.
20. Do you live at the Embassy? I couldn't claim so much.
21. Dr. Sun Yat-sen's Three Principles of the People are . . .
22. Dr. Sun also said 'It is difficult to know how, but easy to carry into effect.'
23. Nowadays the Chinese refer to Dr. Sun as 'Father of his country.'
24. Dr. Sun's aim, all his life, was to save China and make her a powerful country.
25. At present only ten percent of the Chinese population are literate.
26. In order to realize the Three Principles of the People, first it must be arranged for everyone in China to get an education.
27. This is something I want to give you.
28. This is one of the things my friend Jāng gave me.
29. We rented two bicycles in Chungking, and bicycled out to look around.
30. We saw the temple of Confucius, the mosque, the Catholic church, the city walls, the parks, and so forth.
31. The YMCA is for men.
32. If the hotels have no rooms, you can stay at the YMCA.
33. I'll show you my pictures when the films have been developed.
34. When a soldier meets an officer on the street he is supposed to salute.
35. Sian still doesn't have tap water; they use water from wells.

**36.** When the Chinese write they use an ink stick and a writing brush.
**37.** But now they sometimes use steel pens or fountain pens or pencils, and liquid ink.
**38.** On some kinds of paper you can write with a writing brush but not with a steel pen.
**39.** I had a dream last night.
**40.** In China there is a saying: 'Dreams are what you are thinking in your mind.'
**41.** This book is twice as thick as that.
**42.** This book is half again as thick as that.
**43.** The high officials of the Nationalist Government are all leaders of the Kuomintang.
**44.** Therefore high officials are also called 'important men of Party and Country.'
**45.** When it's too cold the ground freezes.
**46.** There are ninety cars in that train.
**47.** If you turn towards me, I see your face.
**48.** If you turn away from me, I see your back.
49. These snapshots were taken at Sian.
50. They arrived by registered insured mail this morning.
51. This letter should be registered.
52. There are many interesting things to be seen at the museum.
53. There are many magazines and newspapers in the library.
54. Let's go to the museum and look at the Ming dynasty porcelains.
55. I was reading a book about China last night.
56. I borrowed a book from the library.
57. At the library in Sian there is a set of the Five Classics printed during the Sung dynasty.
58. But they can't be seen now; they were stored away because of the danger from Japanese bombs.
59. How many books can I take out at one time?
60. He works in the mining industry.

§2. **Group-Drill.** Work as in Section A §2.

## SECTION C: TELLING ABOUT THINGS

§1. **Preparation.** Working alone, choose a topic from those given below and be prepared to tell the group about it when you meet. If you have a topic of your own that you can talk about, work on it instead of one of these. Telling a story, or telling how something is done, is a little different from carrying on a conversation, and a little practice in it is well worth while.

### Suggested Topics

1. Tell the story of the American who couldn't remember the Chinese word for telephone.
2. Tell the story of the man who was afraid of his wife.
3. Tell the story of the man who went to the doctor to see if he could live another fifty years.
4. Tell the story of the black shoes and the brown shoes.
5. Tell the story of the grandfather who sent his grandson for headache medicine.
6. Tell about the organization of the Chinese Army.
7. Tell about the transportation of China's industries from the East to the West of the country when the Japanese were invading.
8. Tell about Dr. Sun Yat-sen and the Kuomintang.
9. Tell about the Three Principles of the People.
10. Tell about the Industrial Cooperative Societies.
11. Tell about a party at the Embassy.
12. Tell about getting a book at a library.
13. Tell about the continents of the world.
14. Tell about Chinese in countries other than China.
15. Tell about a battle with the Japs.
16. Tell about being wounded and taken to a hospital.
17. Tell about a sight-seeing trip in some Chinese city.
18. Tell about Chinese local and provincial government.
19. Tell about farming.
20. Tell about Chinese meals—what the staples are, which Chinese prefer which types of food, and so on.
21. Tell about borrowing money at a bank.
22. Tell about starting a business.
23. Tell about going to the post office.
24. Tell about not being able to find a place to stay overnight.
25. Tell about the religions of China.
26. Tell about going to a museum.
27. Tell about a trip to a small Chinese town.
28. Tell about an airplane trip.

There are many more specific things you might think of. The above are just suggestions. Be sure to plan in advance just what you want to say.

§2. **Practice.** When the group meets, the Leader will call on various different members to tell their stories or episodes. After each one finishes there should be questions about anything the story-teller hasn't made clear. The Guide, if present, will help in case of difficulty. Everyone should have a chance, so you may have to have two or even three sessions on this.

# SECTION D: LISTENING REVIEW

*To the Leader:* The story for true-false statements is fairly long this time, and so it has been broken down into two parts. Have the Guide read the true-false statements for the first part of the story immediately after having read the first part; then have him go on to the rest.

## Story; Part One

*Jīn·nyan-'chwēn·tyan, 'Lwó-shyān·sheng tsúng 'Jūng·gwo hwéy·daw 'Měy·gwo láy-le. Tā jù·dzay Nyēw·ywē-'chéng·li, dzày Jūng·yāng-gūng·'ywán-fù·'jìn. Tā gēn tā-'tày·tay hé 'sż·ge-háy·dz jù·dzay yí·ge-*apartment*-li. Tā yǐ·'chyán yéw 'wǔ·ge-háy·dz. Dì-'èr·ge-nywǔ·'ér chywù·nyan-'dūng·tyan dé-le jùng·shāng·'fēng, bìng-le 'sān·tyān jyèw 'sž-le. Swó·yi 'Lwó-shyān·sheng 'hwéy-lay yǐ·hèw 'shīn·li cháng·chang bù-hěn 'kwày·lwò.*

*'Yěw·de-shŕ·hew 'Lwó-shyān·sheng jyāw tā·de-sż·ge-'háy·dz shwō Jūng·gwo-'hwà. 'Jè·ge-shŕ·hew yéw hěn-dwō-'Měy·gwo-rén jèng·dzay shywé 'Jūng·gwo-hwà. 'Lwó-shyān·sheng·de-shìng-'*Davis*-de-nà·ge-'péng·yew jyèw shr̀ jyāw Jūng·gwo-'hwà·de. 'Jè·wèy-shyān·sheng dzày 'Jūng·gwo de·shŕ·hew, 'rén dēw 'jyàw-ta 'Dày-shyān·sheng. 'Tā hwéy 'Měy·gwo-lay, bǐ 'Lwó-shyān·sheng 'dzǎw yí·ge-'ywè. Tā-jyāw-'shū·de-dì·fang dzày Nyēw·'ywē-fù·'jìn, kě·shr bú-dzày chéng-'lǐ.*

*'Dày-shyān·sheng·de-shywé-Jūng·gwo-'hwà·de-shywé·sheng dzày 'bā·ywè shŕ·'wǔ·hàw bì-'yè. 'Nà-yì·tyān tā 'chǐng-le 'Lwó-shyān·sheng chywù yùng 'Jūng·gwo-hwà yǎn·'shwō. 'Lwó-shyān·sheng chǐ·'shyān bú-'ywàn·yi chywù. Dì-'yī, yīn·wey 'tyān·chi tày 'rè. Dì-'èr, tā kǔng·'pà yùng 'Jūng·gwo-hwà yǎn·'shwō bèy 'byé-rén 'shyàw·hwà. 'Dày-shyān·sheng gēn-ta shwō, "Nǐ·de-'Jūng·gwo-hwà bǐ 'wǒ·de hǎw·de 'dwō. 'Dzày shwō-ne, chú-le 'shywé·sheng yě 'méy·yew 'wày·rén. Jyèw·shr 'yěw, 'yě shr̀ bù-dǔng-Jūng·gwo-'hwà·de. Nǐ swéy-'byàn shwō jǐ·jywù-Jūng·gwo-'hwà jyèw 'shíng-le."*

*Lwó-'tày·tay hé 'háy·dz·men 'ywàn·yi 'tīng-yi·tīng 'Lwó-shyān·sheng yùng Jūng·gwo-'hwà yǎn·'shwō. Swó·yi tā·men dēw shwō yí·'dìng 'yàw ta 'chywù. Tā méy·yew 'fá·dz-le, jyè[illegible] gēn 'Dày-shyān·sheng shwō, "'Hǎw-ba. Wǒ 'ywàn·yi shwō shém·me jyèw 'shwō shém·me. Nǐ 'bú·yàw 'shyàw·hwa wǒ-ya!"*

*Dàw-le 'bā·ywè-shŕ·'wǔ·hàw-'nà-yì·tyān, 'Lwó-shyān·sheng gēn tā-chywán·'jyā·de-rén dēw dàw 'Dày-shyān·sheng·de-shywé·'shyàw chywù-le. Kāy-'hwèy de·shŕ·hew, 'Dày-shyān·sheng shr̀ jǔ·'shí. Chǐ·'shyān yěw-'rén yǎn·'shwō, háy yěw 'shywé·sheng·men yùng Jūng·gwo-'hwā yǎn-'shì. 'Shì-lǐ·byan yé yěw 'wày·gwo-rén yé yěw 'Jūng·gwo-rén, yé yěw shwō 'Yīng·wén de·shŕ·hew, yé yěw shwō 'Jūng·gwo-hwà de·shŕ·hew. 'Yǎn·de hén 'hǎw. 'Shì yǎn·'wán-le, jyèw dàw-le Lwó-shyān·sheng yǎn·'shwō de·shŕ·hew-le.*

*'Dày-shyān·sheng yùng Jūng·gwo-'hwà 'jyè·shaw 'Lwó-shyān·sheng, shwō tā dzày 'Jūng·gwo de·shŕ·hew jù·dzay 'Jūng·gwo-rén-'jyā·li, yě dàw·gwo hěn-dwō-'dì·fang. 'Yèw shwō tā-shwō·de-Jūng·gwo-'hwà hǎw 'jí-le. 'Dày-shyān·sheng shwō·'wán-le, 'Lwó-shyān·sheng jyèw 'jàn·chi-lay yǎn·'shwō.*

### True-False Statements for Part One of the Story

1. *Shyàn·dzày 'Lwó-shyān·sheng jŕ yěw 'sān·ge-háy·dz.*
2. *Yěw 'yí·ge-háy·dz yǐ·jing 'gwò-chywu-le.*
3. *Tā-'tày·tay 'yě hwèy shwō Jūng·gwo-'hwà.*
4. *Tā yěw yí·ge-'péng·yew shìng-'Dày.*
5. *'Dày-shyān·sheng shr̀ jyàw·'ywán.*
6. *'Dày-shyān·sheng jyāw·de shr̀ lì·'shř.*
7. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng bú-'ywàn·yi yùng 'Jūng·gwo-hwà yǎn·'shwō.*
8. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng-'dz·jǐ shwō tā·de-Jūng·gwo-'hwà 'méy·yew rén néng 'shyàw·hwa ta.*
9. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng shr̀ 'yí·ge-rén dàw 'Dày-shyān·sheng·de-shywé·'shyàw chywù·de.*
10. *'Shywé·sheng yǎn-'shì, 'yǎn·de hǎw 'jí-le.*
11. *'Dày-shyān·sheng·de-shywé·'shyàw dzày Nyēw·ywē-'chéng·de-dāng·'jūng.*

### Story; Part Two

*'Lwó-shyān·sheng shwō:*

*Jǔ·'shí, jū·wèy-túng·'shywé:*

*Gāng·tsáy wǒ 'tīng·jyan jū·'wèy yùng Jūng·gwo-'hwà yǎn-'shì, 'yǎn·de 'jēn hǎw. Wǒ 'jr̄·daw 'Dày-shyān·sheng 'jyāw·de 'hǎw, kě·shr wǒ méy-'shyǎng·dàw tā 'jyāw·de yěw 'jè·me-hǎw. Jū·'wèy néng dzày jǐ·ge-'ywè·li shywé jè·me-'dwō·de-Jūng·gwo-'hwà, fā·'yīn yě 'dwèy, jè shr̀ yīn·wey jū·'wèy shywé de·shŕ·hew hěn yùng-'shīn.*

*Wǒ 'shī·wàng jū·'wèy 'bú·yàw shyǎng, hwèy shwō 'jè-jǐ·jywù-Jūng·gwo-'hwà jyèw 'gèw-le. Jū·'wèy-jè-jǐ·ge-'ywè·li-shywé·de-Jūng·gwo-'hwà bú-'gwò 'lyǎng-sān-chyān-jywù-'hwà, yì·'chyān-dwō·ge-'dž. Yǐ·'hèw yàw 'dwō shywé Jūng·gwo-'hwà, yéw 'lyǎng·ge-'fāng·fa. 'Yí·ge shr̀ 'dwō kàn yùng-'Lwó·mǎ-dž-shyě·de-Jūng·gwo-'shū. Yěw bú-'rèn·shr·de-dž, jyèw tsúng dž·'dyǎn·shang bǎ 'yì·sz 'jǎw·chū-lay.*

*'Háy yěw yí·ge-'fāng·fa, shr̀ 'dwō gēn shwō-gwó·'ywǔ·de-'Jūng·gwo-rén tán-'hwà. Dzày 'jyē·shang kàn·jyan 'Jūng·gwo-rén de·shŕ·hew, jyèw 'wèn-ta, "Nín shwō gwó·'ywǔ-ma?" Rè·shr tā 'dǔng·de, jyèw ké·yi gēn-ta 'jyē·je tán-'hwà. 'Wèn-ta, "Gwèy-'shìng"-nga, "Shém·me-'dì·fang·de-rén"-na, "Dàw 'Měy·gwo 'dwō·shaw-nyán-le?", 'déng·děng·de-'hwà.*

*Yàw 'jì·je, dzày 'Měy·gwo·de-'Jūng·gwo-rén·li yéw* *hěn-dwō-'Gwǎng·dūng-rén, 'bù-dǔng·de gwó·'ywǔ 'Jř yěw tsúng-Jūng·gwo-láy·de-'shywé·sheng chà·bu·dwō 'dēw hwèy shwō gwó·'ywǔ.*

*Hwèy shwō Jūng·gwo-'hwà yěw shém·me-'yùng-ne?*

*'Jè·ge-wèn·tí nǐ·men yí·'dìng 'shyǎng·gwo. 'Wǒ shyǎng, 'lyǎng-sān-nyán-yǐ·'hèw, yí·'dìng yéw hěn-dwō-'Měy·gwo-rén dàw 'Jūng·gwo-chywu. 'Yī·sheng, jyàw·'ywán, chywán·jyàw·'shr̀, dzwò-'mǎy·may·de, lywǔ·'shíng·de—'jè·shyē-rén dēw yīng·gay dzày dàw-'Jūng·gwo-chywù-yǐ·'chyán shywé-yì·dyǎr Jūng·gwo-'hwà. Jyèw·shr dzày-'Měy·gwo-dāng-jyàw·'ywán·de, dāng-shīn·wén-jì·'jě·de, dzwò-'mǎy·may·de, 'yě shr̀ hwèy shwō-yì·dyǎr Jūng·gwo-'hwà tsáy 'hǎw.*

*'Jè·tsž-shr̀·'jyè-'dà-jàn wán-le yǐ·'hèw, 'Jūng·gwo yí·'dìng yàw chǐng jwān·'mén·de-rén dàw 'Jūng·gwo-chywu bāng-'máng. 'Gūng·yè, 'núng·yè, 'kwàng·yè, dēw déy yěw jwān·'mén·de-rén tsáy néng 'bàn. Shyàn·dzày dzày 'Jūng·gwo shèw·gwo-jwān·mén-jyàw·'ywù·de-rén bù-'dwō. Swó·yi yí·'dìng yàw chǐng 'wày·gwo-rén chywù bāng-'máng. Dàw 'nà·ge-shŕ·hew, jū·'wèy rè·shr shyǎng dàw 'Jūng·gwo-chywu, nà·me shyàn·dzày-shywé·de-Jūng·gwo-'hwà jyèw yěw-'yùng-le. 'Wó shyǎng 'Jūng·gwo-rén yí·'dìng 'hwān·yíng jū·'wèy dàw 'Jūng·gwo-chywu bāng-'máng.*

*'Lwó-shyān·sheng hwéy-'jyā yǐ·'héw, Lwó-'tày·tay gēn-ta shwō,* "You'd better teach me some Chinese too. Even the children got something of what you said."

*'Lwó-shyān·sheng shwō,* "OK, dear. Let's start right now. 'Good morning, good evening, hello, or how are you? *Ní-'hǎw. Ní-'hǎw.*' "

*'Tày·tay shwō "nī-'hàw."*

"No! *Ní-'hǎw! Ní-'hǎw!*" . . .

## True-False Statements for Part Two of the Story

1. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng shwō shywé Jūng·gwo-'hwà hén yěw-'yùng.*
2. *Tā-'dž·jǐ háy méy-shywé Jūng·gwo-'hwà-ne.*
3. *Tā shwō 'shywé·sheng-dzày-jǐ·ge-'ywè·li-shywé·de bú-'gèw, děy 'jyē·je 'dwō shywé.*
4. *Dzày-'Měy·gwo-jù·de-Hwá·'chyáw chà·bu·dwō 'dēw shr̀ tsúng Gwǎng·'dūng láy·de.*
5. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng shwō 'Dày-shyān·sheng jyāw Jūng·gwo-'hwà jyāw·de jēn 'hǎw.*

6. *Tā shwō 'jèy·tsz̀-shr̀·'jyè-'dà-jàn-yǐ·'hěw, 'Jūng·gwo yí·'dìng yàw chǐng hěn-dwō-jwān·'mén·de-wày·gwo-rén dàw 'Jūng·gwo-chywu bāng-'máng.*

7. *Tā shwō Jūng·gwo·de-'kwàng·yè yǐ·jing bàn·de hén 'hǎw, 'bú-yùng 'dzày chǐng 'wày·gwo-jwān·'mén·de-rén chywù bāng-'máng-le.*

8. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng·de-'tày·tay shyǎng 'shywé-yì·dyǎr Jūng·gwo-'hwà.*

9. *'Lwó-shyān·sheng-jyāw-ta-'tày·tay-yùng·de-'shū jyèw shr̀ 'nǐ·men-yùng·de-'jè-yì·běn-shū.*

10. *Lwó-'tày·tay-shwō·de-'téw-yí·jywù-Jūng·gwo-'hwà 'fā·yīn hén 'hǎw.*

# APPENDIX

This Appendix includes the following three parts: (1) *Topical Index;* (2) *English-Chinese Reminder List;* (3) *Chinese-English Glossary.*

(1) The *Topical Index*. The topics listed are of two kinds: different phases of Chinese life, and grammatical subjects. The former are listed in CAPITALS, the latter in small letters. Only points taken up in the Word Study are referred to; there is also discussion of a number of things in the Chinese of the Basic Sentences, What Would You Say, and Listening In. The references are given as follows: 17B3 means Unit XVII, Section B, Word Study Point 3.

(2) The *English-Chinese Reminder List*. If you have temporarily forgotten the Chinese word for something, look up an English word with a somewhat similar meaning in this list. After it you may find the Chinese word you want, or a Chinese word sufficiently similar to it that you will remember the one you want If not, try another English word with a similar meaning.

No indication is given as to which meaning of the English word corresponds to the Chinese word or words given after it Thus if you look up *fall*, you will find *dyàw* and *chyēw·tyan* listed, without any indication of the fact that the first is a verb meaning to descend rapidly, the second the name of a season.

If you have just temporarily forgotten the Chinese word you want, this will not make any trouble. But if you really have forgotten thoroughly how to say some particular thing in Chinese, you must not simply take any one of the Chinese words given after a particular English word and assume that it is the one you want; rather, look up *each* of the Chinese words you find in the *Chinese-English Glossary*, and read carefully enough to get precisely the expression you want.

(3) The *Chinese-English Glossary*. This is a complete listing of all the Chinese words and short expressions which have been used in the course, organized like the Finder Lists in Units XIII–XXIX.

Since it is not necessary in this Glossary to distinguish between new words and words you have already had, the asterisk (*) is *not* used, as it was in the Finder Lists for individual Units, to distinguish old words from new. Instead, it is used to mark parts of words which occur in many whole words with similar meaning, or whole words with which one must be careful, using them only in certain set phrases. For example, you will find

*_fáng_ 'house, room'.

This means that the element (part of a word, morpheme) **fáng* means 'house', but that it is not used alone as a whole word. Under this are listed the various full words which begin with **fáng*, such as *fáng·dz* and *fángr*, the independent words for 'house', '*fáng·chyán* 'house rent, payment for a house purchased', and so on.

Sometimes in looking up a longer word you will have to look in two or three places. Suppose you want to look up the word *jūng·byǎw·pù*. In the j's you will find **jūng* 'middle' and *jūng* 'clock', each with a number of longer words under it. If you have some idea as to the meaning of the word you are looking up, you may be pretty sure that it contains the word for 'clock' as first part, and look there. If not, you will have to look under both *jūng*'s before you find it.

After finding *jūng·byǎw·pù* and ascertaining its meaning, you may want to know what the meanings of the second and third parts are. If you look up *byǎw*, you will find just one listed, with the meaning 'watch'. If you look up *pù*, you will find just one listed, with the meaning 'store'. In other cases it might not be quite so easy. If there were two or more elements with the same pronunciation, and with somewhat similar meanings, there would be given a cross reference so that you could tell which one it was that occurred in the word you were interested in, but you would have to check under all of them to tell. Thus if you look up and find the meaning of *gūng·chǎng*, and then check on the meaning of *chǎng*, you will find two *chǎng*'s listed, one with the meaning 'an enclosed space' and one with the meaning 'an open space'. But under the former you will find a cross-reference, in the form 'see *gūng·chǎng*'; this means that the element *chǎng* in the word for factory means 'an enclosed space', not 'an open space'.

In other cases you will not find the second or third element of a word listed at all. Thus if you are interested in *chèn·shān*, you will find by looking it up that it means 'shirt'; but if you then look up *shān* to see what the more literal meaning of the word is, you will find two of them, neither one of which could possibly be the one which occurs in *chèn·shān*. Or if you look up *shíng·li*, you will find it under *shíng* 'go, work, be acceptable', but the *li* you will not find at all. In these cases the longer expressions are to be taken as units in themselves (*chèn·shān*), or the elements other than the first are difficult to identify, rare, and unimportant to you in speaking the language (*shíng·li*). When you find this out, it is just as important as to find out definite meanings given for all the parts.

Sometimes, for some words or morphemes, a cross-reference to one or more points of the Word Study is given. The form of the cross-reference is as in the Topical Index: 8B4 means Unit VIII, Section B, Point 4 of the Word Study.

Capital letters placed immediately after *full words* or *expressions* (not after morphemes, and not after whole short sentences) indicate what the expression is grammatically. The symbols are as follows:

**A** adjective (descriptive word).

**H** adverb.

**I** intransitive verb—active verb which takes no goal.

**J** conjunction (like *rè·shr* 'if'; words which join sentences together).

**K** coverb.

**M** measure.

**N** noun. The measures used with a noun are given if there is anything strange or spec about them; if the meaning varies with different measures, this is mentioned and explained. Time-words and place-words are marked N also, since they are basically nouns; their meaning makes it clear that they have the special functions of time- or place-words also.

**RC** resultative compounds.

**V** verb (active verb), capable of taking a goal after it.

**VO** verb-plus-goal (object); as *chr̄-fàn* 'eat food'.

If a word functions in more than one of these capacities, this is indicated, together with the difference in meaning.

The letters (l) or (lc) placed after some verbs (including many resultative compounds) mean that normally one will have sentence-final *láy*, in the first case, or either *láy* or *chywù* in the second case.

Numbers, demonstratives like *nà* 'that', pronouns like *wǒ* 'I', are not marked in any way; their function is obvious.

*Stress*: if no stress is *marked* on a two-syllable word, it means that the louder stress will usually fall on the second syllable—unless one stresses the first syllable by way of contrast with something else, such as saying *tā shr̀ ge-'shàw·shyàw bú·shr ge-'jūng·shyàw* 'He's a *full* colonel, not a *lieutenant* colonel'. If no stress is *marked* on a three or four syllable word, the loudest stress, similarly, will normally fall on the last syllable, and the first syllable will be next loudest. But, in any of these cases, if the last syllable is *toneless*—for example, *fàn·gwǎn·dz*—the syllable immediately preceding it will carry the loudest stress.

When a word does not behave according to the above principles, the stress is explicitly marked.

*Tone*: The automatic change of third tone to second tone when followed by another third tone syllable is not written, except in cases such as *fá·dz* where the tone is *always* second. Thus 'wristwatch' will be found as *shěw·byǎw*, showing that both syllables are *basically* third tone, instead of as *shéw·byǎw*, as it will ordinarily be pronounced.

# TOPICAL INDEX

action-goal predicates 20B7
adjectives 7B8, 9D6, 9D7, 10D4, 10D10, 14B3, 15B6, 16B7, 17B5
adverbs 4D9, 21B4; see also under adjectives
AGE 4D3, 4D4
ALONE 4D1
ARITHMETIC 25B2
ARMY 14B2, 15B2, 19B1, 20B3, 20B4
auxiliaries 17B5

BANKS 17B2
BEDDING 9D1
borrowed words 4B9
BORROWING AND REPAYING 10D4

CALENDAR 7B2
CLOTH 10B2
CLOTHES 10B3
comparison 9D4, 10D10, 27B4
CONTAINERS 26B4

demonstratives 1D2, 5D11
direction 7D4, 21B3
distance 8B3, 8B6
DYNASTIES 29B2

EDUCATION 20B6, 29B1

FOOD 2B6, 11D4
FOOTWEAR 10B2
FRACTIONS 20B2

GEOGRAPHY 16B3, 20B1
goals 19B4, 20B7, 27B5
GOVERNMENT 13B1, 27B1, 28B1, 28B3

HOTELS 17D1

INDUSTRY 26B1
LEATHER 10B2
location 3D2, 3D3, 5B9, 5B10, 7B6, 7D1

measures 2B1, 2B2, 2B3, 2B4, 3B4, 9D3, 10B7, 23B1, 28B6
MONEY 10D6
motion 3D4, 3D5, 5B5, 5B6, 5B7, 5B8, 5D9, 10D3

NAMES 28B2
negatives 1D3, 4D7
noun predicates 23B5
numbers 2B1, 2B2, 2B3, 2B4, 3B4, 4D6, 7B3, 17B4, 20B2

passive 16B6
PHOTOGRAPHY 11D6
plural 4B5
POLITENESS 3B3, 28B4
POST OFFICE 11D5
predicates 13B7, 20B7, 21B5, 22B2, 23B5
PRINTING 26B5
pronouns 1B4, 3B2, 3B3, 4B4, 9D2, 29B3

574

questions 1B6, 5B1, 5B4, 7B7
RAILROADS 16B5
relation-goal predicates 22B2
RELATIVES 4B1
RELIGION 23B3, 25B1
REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING 10D7
resultative compounds 8B8, 8B9, 8D4, 8D5, 9B7, 9D5, 25B3
sentence-goals 27B5
sentence-predicates 21B5
sentence-subjects 16B7
sentence-types 13B7
SMOKING 4B3
STREET NAMES 10B1
subjects 1B4, 13B7
TELEGRAPH 11D7
TELEPHONE 11D7, 13B5
THEATER 23B2
time 2D2, 4D3, 7B11, 7D10, 8B6, 11B1, 11D3, 11D9, 15B4, 27B2
TITLES 1B3, 9B4
TYPEWRITER 11D7
UPSTAIRS AND DOWNSTAIRS 11D1
verbs, 4B8, 11B2; see also resultative compounds and predicates
WEEK 11B1
WEIGHT 13B6
word formation 9D8, many early sections, and the Finder Lists
WRITING 26B5, 29B4

# ENGLISH-CHINESE REMINDER LIST

abacus _swàn·pan_
able _ké·yi_, *_kĕ_, _néng_
about _chà·bu·dwō_
account *_jàng_
accountant _gwăn-jàng·de_
acre _Yīng·mŭ_
across _gwò_
actor _shì·dz_, _yăn·ywán_
add _hé·chĭ_, _jyā_
adult _dà_, _dà·rén_
Africa *_Fēy_
after _yĭ·hèw_, _hèw_
afternoon _shyà·ban·tyan_, _shyà·wŭ_
again _dzày_, _yèw_
agency _jī·gwān_
ago _chyán_, _yĭ·chyán_
agree _túng·yì_
agriculture *_núng_
air _chì_, _kūng·chì_
airfield _fēy·jī·chăng_, _fēy·jī·jàn_

Air Force _kūng·jywēn_
airplane _fēy·jī_
alarm clock _nàw·jūng_
alien _chyáw·mín_
alive _dzày_, _hwó_
all _chywán_, _dēw_, *_jū_, _swŏ·yĕw·de_, _yī_
almost _chà·bu·dwō_
aloud _dà·shēng_
alphabet _dż·mŭ_
already _yĭ·jing_
also _yĕ_
altogether _chywán_, _dēw_, _yí·gùng_
always _dzŭng_, _lăw_
ambassador _dà·shř_
ammunition _dàn·yàw_, _dż·dàn_,
  _jywēn·hwŏ_
amount _hàw·shu_, *_shù_
and _gēn_, _hé_, _túng_
and so forth _déng·dĕng_(_·de_)
angle *_jyăw_

angry _shēng-chì_
Annam _Ān·nán_
annoy _nàw_
answer _dă hwéy·dyàn_, _hwéy·dá_,
  _hwéy·dyàn_, _hwéy·shìn_
approximately _chà·bu·dwō_
archipelago _chywén·dăw_
arm _gē·be_
arms _chyāng·pàw_
army _jywēn_, _jywēn·dwèy_, _lù·jywēn_
arrange _gē_, _shēw·shr_
arrive _dàw_
arsenal _bīng·gūng·chăng_
artillery *_pàw_
Asia *_Yă_
ask _wèn_
asleep _shwèy_
assemble *_jywù_
at _dzày_
Atlantic Ocean _Dà·shī·yáng_

attain *dé, shŕ·shyàn*
Australia **Àw*
automobile *chì·chē*
autumn *chyēw·tyān*
aviation *háng·kūng*
awake *shǐng*

back *hèw*
bad *hwày*
baggage *shíng·li*
bake *kǎw*
ball *chyéw*
bamboo *jú·dz*
bandage *bēng·dày*
bank *àn, yín·háng*
barber *lǐ-fǎ·de-rén*
barber shop *lǐ·fǎ·gwǎn*
bargain *hwán-jyà*
barracks *bīng·yíng*
bath **dzǎw*
bathe *shǐ-dzǎw*
bathhouse *shǐ·dzǎw·táng·dz*
bathroom *shǐ·dzǎw·fáng*
battalion *yíng*
battle *jàn, *jàng*
battlefield *jàn·chǎng*
be *dāng, dzwò, shr̀, yěw*
bear **jyē, shēng*
beard *hú·dz*
beautiful *hǎw-kàn, měy*
because *wèy, yīn·wey*
beckon *jāw-shěw*
become *byàn·chéng, dāng*
bed *chwáng*
bedding *pū·gay*
beef *nyéw·rèw*
believe *shìn*
belong *shǔ . . . gwǎn, yěw*
below *dǐ·shya, shyà*
belt *dày·dz*
besides *dzày shwō-ne*
beyond *gwò*
bicycle *dz̀·shíng·chē, jyǎw·tà·chē*
big *dà*
bill *chyán·pyàw·dz, jàng·dān·dz, pyàw·dz, pyàwr*
birthday *shēng·r̀*
bitter *kǔ*
black *hēy*
blanket *tǎn·dz*
bleed *chū-shywě, lyéw-shywě*
blood *shywě*
bloom *kāy-hwār*
blow *chwēy, gwā-fēng*
blue *lán*
board *bǎn·dz*
boat *chwán*
body **shēn*
boil *jǔ*
bomb *jà, jà·dàn*
Bon Voyage! *Yī-lù píng·ān!*
book *běn·dz, běr, shū*
born *shēng*
borrow *jyè*
boss *jǔ·rén*
both *dēw*
bottle *píng·dz*
boundary *gwó·jyè*
bowl *děw, wǎn*
box **hé, shyāng·dz*
branch- *fēn-*
branch of service *bīng·jǔng, bīng·kē, kē*
brave *yǔng·gǎn*
Brazil *Bā·shī*

| | |
|---|---|
| bread | *myàn·bāw* |
| break | *dǎ·pwò, hwày, pwò, twēy·hwày* |
| breakfast | *dzǎw·fàn* |
| breathe | *yěw-chì* |
| bride(groom) | *shīn·rén* |
| briefcase | *shū·bāw* |
| brigade | *lywǔ* |
| bright | *lyàng* |
| bring | *dày, ná, táy* |
| British Empire | *Yīng·dì·gwó* |
| broil | *bāw* |
| brother | *dì·di, dì·shyung, gē·ge* |
| brown | *hwáng* |
| brush | *shwā, shwā·dz, máw·bǐ* |
| Buddha | **fwó* |
| build | *dzàw, jù* |
| building | *léw* |
| bulb | *dyàn·dēng·pàwr* |
| bump | *pèng* |
| Burma | *Myǎn·dyàn* |
| burn | *shāw* |
| bus | *gūng·gùng-chì·chē* |
| business | *háng, mǎy·may, shr̀, *yè* |
| bus stop | *chì·chē·jàn* |
| busy | *máng* |
| but | **kě, kè·shr* |
| butter | *hwáng·yéw, nyéw·yéw* |
| buy | **dǎ, mǎy* |
| by | *bèy, gwò, jyàw, yùng, dzwò* |
| cabbage | *báy·tsày* |
| calculate | *dǎ·swàn, dǎ swàn·pan, swàn* |
| camera | *jàw·shyàng·jī* |
| can | *hwèy, ké·yi, néng, -lyǎw; gwàn·dz* |
| Canada | *Jyā·ná·dà* |
| candy | *táng* |
| canned food | *gwàn·tew* |
| cannon | *pàw* |
| capital | *běn·chyán, *jīng* |
| captain | *shàng·wèy* |
| car | *chē* |
| card | *míng·pyàn* |
| careful | *shyǎw·shīn, yùng-shīn* |
| carry | *ná, táy* |
| cartridge | *dž·dàn* |
| carve | *kè* |
| casualties | *sž·shāng* |
| Catholic Church | *Tyān·jǔ·táng* |
| Catholicism | *Tyān·jǔ·jyàw* |
| cattle | *nyéw* |
| cavalry | **chí* |
| center | *dāng·jūng* |
| central | *jūng·yāng, dyàn·hwà·jywú* |
| certainly | *yí·dìng* |
| certificate | *jèng·shū* |
| chair | *yǐ·dz* |
| chairman | *jǔ·shí* |
| change | *byàn, hwàn-chyán, líng·chyán* |
| character | *dž̀* |
| charge | *jì-jàng* |
| chart | *tú* |
| cheap | *pyán·yì* |
| cheerful | *kwày·lwò* |
| chicken | *jī* |
| Chief-of-Staff | *tsān·méw·jǎng* |
| child | *háy·dz* |
| China | *Jūng·gwo, *Jūng, *hwá, *Hàn* |
| chopsticks | *kwày·dz* |
| Christ | *Jī·dū* |
| Christianity | *Jī·dū·jyàw* |
| church | *jyàw·táng* |
| cigarette | *jř·yān, yān, yān·jywǎr* |
| circle | *chywān·dz, chywār, wéy·je* |
| citizen | *mín·rén* |
| city | *chéng* |

clean *gān·jing, shēw·shr, tsā*
clear *chīng, jìng*
clerk *hwǒ·ji, shū·ji*
clock *jūng*
close *bì, gwān, hé*
cloth *bù*
clothing **yī, yī·shang*
club *jywù·lwò·bù*
coat *shàng·yī*
coffee *jyā·fēy*
cold *lěng, shāng-fēng*
collar *lǐng·dz*
college *dà·shywé*
colonel *shàng·shyàw*
color **sè, yán·sè*
come *láy*
commander-in-chief *dzǔng·sz̄·lìng*
command post *sz̄·lìng·bù*
commerce **shāng*
commission, committee
*wěy·ywán·hwèy*
communicate *tūng-shìn*
company *gūng·sz̄, lyán*
company officer **wèy*
compare *bǐ*

complete *wán, *chéng, *lyǎw*
concern *gwān·shì, shǔ-ywú,*
*shǔ . . . gwǎn*
concerning *gwān·ywú*
Confucius *Kǔng·dž*
connect *lyán*
connection *gwān·shì*
Consul General *dzǔng·lǐng·shr̀*
continent **jēw, dà·jēw*
control *gwǎn*
convenient *fāng·byan*
convert into *hé·chéng*
cook *dzwò-fàn*
cool *lyáng, lyáng·kwày*
corner **jyǎw*
corporal *shyà·shr̀*
correct *dwèy*
cotton *myán·hwā, yàw·myán·hwā*
country *gwó, gwó·jyā, shyāng·shya*
court *fǎ·ywàn, ywàn·dz*
cover *gày, gàr, gày·dz*
credentials *jèng·shū*
critical *wéy·shyǎn*
crops *jwāng·jya*
cross *gwò*

cup *bēy, bēy·dz, wǎn*
current *tūng·shíng*
curve *wān*

damp *shr̄*
dangerous *shyǎn, wéy·shyǎn*
dare *gǎn, màw-shyǎn*
dark *àn, hēy*
daughter *nywǔ·ér*
day **r̀, tyān*
daytime *báy·tyān*
dead *sž*
decide *jywé·dìng*
defeat **bày, dǎ·bày*
definite *yí·dìng*
dentist *yá-yī·sheng*
department **bù*
department store *bǎy·hwò-gūng·sz̄*
deposit *tswén*
desk *shū·jwō*
develop *shǐ-shyàng*
diagram *tú*
diary *r̀·jì*
dictionary *dz̀·dyǎn*
differ, *chà, bù-túng*

difficult *nán*
diplomat *wày·jyāw·gwān*
dismount *shyà-mǎ*
ditch *háw*
divide *chú, fēn*
division **bù, shī*
doctor *yī·sheng*
door *mén*
doubled *jyā·bèy·de*
down *shyà*
downstairs *léw-shyà*
draft *hwèy·pyàw*
drama *shì, dà-shì*
draw *hwà, dǎ-shwěy*
dream *mèng*
drink *hē*
drive *kāy-chē*
drop *dyàw*
drug *yàw*
drugstore *yàw·pù*
drum *gǔ*
dry *gān*
dry clean *gān·shǐ*
dynasty **cháw*

each *měy*
early *dzǎw, shyān*
earth *dì·chyéw*
east *dūng*
easy *rúng·yi*
eat *chī*
education *jyàw·ywù*
effect *shŕ·shíng*
egg *dàn, jī·dàn*
elect *shywǎn·chywǔ*
electricity *dyàn*
elevator *dyàn·tī*
embassy *dà·shǐ·gwǎn*
empire *dì·gwó*
employ *gù, yùng*
employees *háng·ywán*
empty *kūng*
end **téw*, **wán*
enemy **dí*
engine *jī·chi*
engineers *gūng·bīng, gūng·kē*
England *Yīng·gwo*, **Yīng*
English *Yīng·wén*
enlisted personnel *shì·bīng,*
  *bīng·shì*

enough *gèw*
enter *jìn*
envelope *shìn·fēng*
equally *túng·yàng*
Europe **Ēw*
even *jyèw·shr*
evening *wǎn·shang*
every *měy, swǒ·yěw·de*
example *bǐ·fang*
except *chú-le*
exchange *hwàn*
exit *chū*
expend *fèy, yùng*
expenditure *fèy·yùng*
expensive *gwèy, fèy-chyán*
eye **yǎn, yǎn·jing*

face *lyǎn, lyǎn·myàn, myàn,*
  *myàn·dz*
facing *shyàng*
factory *gūng·chǎng*
fall *dyàw, chyēw·tyan*
family *jyā*
famous *yěw-míng*
far away *ywǎn*

farm *jùng-dì, *jwāng, núng·chăng*
farmer *jùng-dì·de, núng·jyè, núng·rén*
fast *kwày*
fate *mìng*
father **fù, fù·chin*
fear *pà, kŭng·pà*
female *nywŭ*
fever *fā-shāw*
few *jĭ, shăw, shyē*
field **tyán*
field glasses *wàng·ywăn·jìng*
field officer **shyàw*
fight *dă-jàng*
figure *dă·swàn, swàn, swàn-jàng*
file *dwèy*
film *jyāw·jywăn, dyàn·yĭng*
finger *shěw·jŕ·tew*
Finland *Fēn·lán*
fire *fàng, hwŏ, kāy*
first *shyān, dì-yī*
first lieutenant *jūng·wèy*
fish *dă-ywú, ywú*
fit *hé-shr̀*
flashlight *shěw·dyàn·dēng*
flight *fēn·dwèy*
floor *dì, tséng*
flow *lyéw*
flowers *hwā(r)*
flush *túng·hwār*
fly *fēy*
following *gēn*
food *fàn, tsày*
foot *jyăw*
for *gěy, tì, *wèy*
foreign **yáng, *wày*
forest *lín·dz, shù·lín·dz*
forget *wàng, wàng·ji*
formation *dwèy*
formerly *yĭ·chyán*
Formosa *Táy·wān*
fortify *jù-chéng*
forward *jwăn·dàw, jwăn·jyāw*
fountain pen *dz·láy·shwěy·bĭ*
France *Fà·gwo, *Fà*
freeze *dùng*
frequent *cháng*
fresh *chīng, shīn*
friend *péng·yew*
from *lí, tsúng*
front *chyán, chyán·shyàn*
fruit *shwěy·gwŏ, gwŏ, gwěr*
fry *chăw*
fur **máw*
furniture *jwō·yĭ*

garden **ywán, *ywàn, ywàn·dz*
gas *chì*
gasoline *chì·yéw*
gate *mén*
general officer **jyàng*
general store *dzá·hwò·pù*
gentlemen *jū·wèy*
geography *dì·lĭ*
Germany *Dé·gwo, *Dé*
get *dé*
get off *shyà*
get on *shàng*
get up *chĭ*
gift *lĭ·wu*
give *gěy*
glass *bēy, bēy·dz, bwō·li*
glasses *yăn·jìng·dz*
go *chywù, dzěw, shíng*
God *Tyān·jŭ*

go down _shyà_
going to _yàw_
gold _jīn_
good _hăw_
goods _hwò_, _hwò·wù_
go to _shàng_, _dàw_
go up _shàng_
government _jèng·fŭ_
grade _chī_, _děng_, _jí_
graduate _bì-yè_
grandfather _dzŭ·fù_
grandson _swēn·dz_
grease _yéw_
Great Wall _Cháng·chéng_,
  _Wàn·lĭ-cháng·chéng_
ground _dì_
group _chywén_, _dà·dwèy_, _shyē_
grow _byàn·chéng_, _jăng_, _jăng·chéng_,
  _jăng·dà_
guarantee _băw·jèng_
guarantor _băw·jèng·rén_
guest *_kè_, _kè·rén_
guide _lĭng-lù_
gunpowder _hwŏ·yàw_

hair *_fă_, *_máw_, _téw·fa_
haircut _lĭ-fă_
half _bàr_, _èr·fēn·jř-yī_
hall *_táng_
hand _shĕw_, _jyāw·gĕy_, _gĕy_, _dì·gĕy_
handicraft industries _shĕw·gūng·yè_
hang _gwà_
harvest _shēw_
hat _màw·dz_
have _yĕw_
have to _dĕy_
head _téw_, *_jăng_
headache _téw-téng_
headquarters *_bù_, _sž·lìng·bù_
hear _tīng_
hear tell _tīng·shwō_
heart _shīn_
heavy _jùng_
Hello _nĭ hăw_, _ày_, _wèy_
helmet _kwēy_, _gāng·kwēy_
help _bāng_, _bāng-máng_, _jyèw-mìng_
here _jè·li_, _jèr_
hide _tsáng_
high _gāw_
hill _shyăw-shān_

hire _gù_
history _lì·shř_
hit _dă_
hold back _lyéw·shyà_
Holland '_Hé·lán_
home _jyā_
honorable *_gwèy_
hope _shī·wàng_
horizontal *_héng_
horse _mă_
hospital _yī·ywàn_
host _jŭ·rén_, _fáng·jŭ·rén_
hot _rè_
hotel _fàn·dyàn_, _jāw·dày·swŏ_,
  _lywŭ·gwăn_
hour _jūng_
house _fáng·dz_
how _dzĕm·me_
however _kĕ·shr_
how many _jĭ_, _dwō·shăw_
humble *_bì_
hundred _băy_
hungry _è_
hunt _jăw_
hurt _téng_, *_shāng_

ice *bīng*
idea *yì·sz*
if *rè·shr*
ignite *dyăn*
ill *yĕw-bìng, bìng*
illustrated *dày-tú·de, yĕw-tú·de*
immediately *jyèw, mă·shàng yī-kàn jyèw*
important *jùng·yàw, yàw·jĭn*
in *dzày*
including *lyán*
increase *jyā-dwō, jăng*
India *Yìn·du*
Industrial Cooperative Society *Gūng·yè-Hé·dzwò·shè, Gūng·hé*
industry *gūng·yè*
infantry **bù*
inform *tūng·jr̄*
inhale *chēw*
ink **mwò, mwò·shwĕy*
inside *lĭ, *nèy*
insignia *lĭng·jāng*
inspect *tsān·gwān*
insure *băw-shyăn*
interest *lì·chyán*
interesting *yĕw yì·sz*
intersection *jyē·kĕw(r)*
introduce *jyè·shàw*
invite *chĭng*
iron *tyĕ*
ironworks *tyĕ·gūng·chăng*
island *dăw*
Italy *Yì·dà·lì*

Japan *R̀·bĕn*
jar *gwàn*
Jesus *Yĕ·sū*
joke *shyàw·hwar*
judge *fă·gwān*
jump *tyàw*
just *jr̆, jyèw, tsáy*
just now *gāng, gāng·tsáy, jèng, jèng·dzày, jèng hăw*
just right *jèng hăw*

keep *lyéw, tswén*
kettle *hú*
kill *dă·sž*
kilogram *gūng·jīn*
kilometer *gūng lĭ*
kind *dĕng, jŭng, yàng*
king *gwó·wáng*
knife *dāw*
knock *dă-mén*
knock down *dă·shyà*
know *jr̄·dàw, rèn·shr*
know how *hwèy, jr̄·dàw*
Kuomintang *Gwó·mín·dăng*

laborer *gūng·rén*
ladder *tī·dz*
lake *hú*
Lama *Lă·ma*
lamb *shyăw-yáng, yáng·rèw*
lamp *dēng*
land *dì, *lù, lù·dì, tyán·dì*
late *wăn*
later *hèw, hèw·lay, yĭ·hèw*
laugh *dà-shyàw, shyàw, shyàw·hwa*
laundry *shĭ·yī·dyàn*
laundryman *shĭ-yī·de*
law *fă·gwēy, fă·lywù*
lawyer *lywù·shr̄*
lay an egg *shyà-dàn*
layer *tséng*
lead (metal) *chyān*

leader *lǐng·shyèw*
leaf *yè·dz, jǎng yè·dz*
learn *shywé*
leather *pí*
leave *dzěw, lí·kāy, lyéw, tswén*
left *dzwǒ*
leg *twěy*
leisure *gūng·fu*
lend *bāng, jyè*
lens *jìng, jìng·téw*
let *ràng, jyàw*
letter *dz̀·mǔ, shìn*
level *píng*
liable to *hwèy*
liaison *lyán·lwò*
library *tú·shū·gwǎn*
lid *gày·dz, gàr*
lie *tǎng*
lieutenant colonel *jūng·shyàw*
life *mìng, shēng·hwó*
light *báy, chīng, dēng, dyàn·dēng, lyàng*
like *ày, shyàng, ywàn·yi*
line *shyàn*
liquid *shwěy*

list *dān·dz*
listen *tīng*
literate *rèn-dz̀*
literature **wén, wén·shywé*
little *dyǎn, dyǎr, shǎw, shyǎw*
live *jù, hwó*
locality *dì·fang, běn·dì*
locomotive *hwǒ·chē·téw*
long *cháng, jyěw*
look *kàn*
loom *jr̄·bù·jī*
lose *dyàw, péy*
love *ày*
low *dī*
lower *shyà*

machine **jī, jī·chi*
machine gun *jī·gwān·chyāng*
Madame *tày·tay, fū·rén*
magazine *dzá·jr̀*
maid *lǎw-mā·dz*
mail *jì, shìn*
main *dà, *dzǔng*
mainland *dà·lù*
major *shàw·shyàw*

make *dzàw, dzwò*
Malaya *Mǎ·láy*
male *nán*
manage *bàn, gwǎn, jīng·lǐ*
manager *jīng·lǐ*
manufacture *dzàw*
many *dwō, wàn*
map *dì·tú*
marry *jyē-hwēn*
mat *shí*
matches *yáng·hwǒ, yáng·hwěr*
matters *shr̀*
may *ké·yi*
mayor *shr̀·jǎng, tswēn·jǎng*
meaning *yì·sz*
meat *rèw*
medical **yī*
medical corps *jywēn·yī*
medical supply room *yàw·fáng*
medicine *yàw, yī·shywé*
meet *jyàn, *jyāw, jyē, pèng*
melon *gwā*
member **ywán, hwèy·ywán*
merchants *shāng·jyè, shāng·rén*

method **fá, *fǎ, fá·dz, fāng·fa, bàn·fa*
middle *dāng·jūng, *jūng*
midwife *shēw-shēng·de*
mile *lǐ, Yīng·lǐ*
Military Police *shyàn·bīng*
milk *nǎy, nyéw·nǎy*
mind *shīn*
mine *kwàng*
ministry **bù*
minus *jyǎn*
mirror *jìng, jìng·dz*
Miss *shyǎw·jye*
mission *chwán·jyàw*
missionary *chwán-dàw·de, chwán·jyàw·shř*
mister *shyān·sheng*
model **shř, shř·yang, yàng·dz, yàng·shř*
modern *shīn-shř·de*
Mohammedan **Hwéy, Hwéy·hwey*
money *chyán*
month *ywè*
more *dwō, ywè . . . ywè*
morning *dzǎw·chen, shàng·ban·tyan, shàng·wǔ*
mosque *Hwéy·jyàw·táng*
most *dǐng, dzwèy*
mostly *yì·dwō·bàr*
mother **mǔ, mǔ·chin*
mountain *shān*
mouth *kěw*
move *bān, dùng, ná·dùng, twēy·dùng*
movies *dyàn·yǐng*
Mrs. *tày·tay*
much *dwō*
municipality *shř*
museum *bwó·wù·gwǎn*
music *yīn·ywè*
must *děy, yīng·gāy*

name **míng, míng·dz, shìng, shìng·míng*
navigate **háng*
near *jìn*
necktie *lǐng·dày*
need *yàw*
neighborhood *fù·jìn, páng·byān*
nevertheless *bú·gwò*
new *shīn*
news *shīn·wén*
newspaper *bàw, bàw·jř, shīn·wén·jř*
next **míng, shyà*
night *yè*
noise *shēng·yīn*
noodles *myàn*
noon *shǎng·wu, *wǔ*
north *běy*
nose *bí·dz*
notebook *jř·běn·dz*
now *shyàn·dzày, jèng·dzày*
number *hàw, hàw·shu, shù, shùr*
nurse *kàn·hu*
nuts *gwǒ, gwěr*

ocean *yáng*
o'clock *jūng*
office *gūng·shř·fáng, *jywú, *swǒ, *gwǎn, *chù, *shè, *ywàn*
officer, official *gwān*
oil *yéw*
old *jyèw, lǎw*
old-fashioned *jyèw-shř·de, lǎw-shř·de*
on *dzày*

once *yí·byàn, yí·tsz̀*
once upon a time *yěw-yì·tyān*
only *jř*
open *kāy*
opinion *yì·sz*
opposite *dwèy·mén, dwèy·myàn*
order *jyàw*
ordnance *bīng·gūng*
organization **hwèy, *shè*
originally *běn·láy*
other *byé*
otherwise *bù·rán*
ought *yīng·gāy*
out *chū, *wán*
outline *dà·gāng*
outside *wày*
outsider *wày·rén*
over *gwò*
overcoat *dà·yī*
overdue *gwò-chī*
overweight *gwò-jùng*

Pacific Ocean *Tày·píng·yáng*
pack *bāw, dǎ pū·gay*
package *bāw*

pad *běn·dz, jř·běn·dz*
pain *téng*
paint *hwà*
pair *dwèy, yí·dwèy, lyǎng·tung,*
  *shwāng*
pajamas *shwèy·yī*
paper *jř*
parents *fù·mǔ*
park *gūng·ywán*
part **bù, dwàn*
party **dǎng*
pass *dì·gěy, gwò, tūng,*
  *tūng·shíng·jèng*
pattern **shr̀, shr̀·yang, yàng·dz,*
  *yàng·shr*
peaceful *píng, píng·ān*
pen *bǐ, gāng·bǐ*
pencil *chyān·bǐ*
peninsula *bàn·dǎw*
per cent *bǎy·fēn·jř-*
perform *yǎn, yǎn-shì*
perhaps *yé·shywu*
permission *shywǔ·kě*
permit *ràng, shywǔ, shywǔ·kě·jèng*
person *rén.*

personal *dz̀-yùng·de*
personnel **ywán, rén*
Philippines *Fēy·lywù·bīn*
philosophy *jé·shywé*
phone *dǎ dyàn·hwà, jyàw dyàn·hwà*
phonograph *lyéw·shēng·jī*
photograph *jàw-shyàng, shyàng,*
  *shyàng·pyàn*
pick up *ná·chǐ, shēw·chǐ, shŕ, táy·chǐ*
picture *hwàr*
piece *kwày*
pig *jū*
pink *fěn·húng*
pipe *yān·děw, gwǎn·dz*
pitcher *gwàn, gwàn·dz*
place *dì·fang*
plan *fāng·fa, shyǎng, yàw*
plant *jùng, shyà jǔng·dz*
plate **pán, pán·dz, pén*
platform **táy, jàn·táy*
platoon *páy*
play *shì*
please *chǐng*
plus *jyā*
pneumonia *jùng·shāng·fēng*

point *jř*
police *jĭng·chá*
polish *tsā*
pool *hé·dzay yí·kwàr*
population *rén·kĕw*
porcelain *tsź, tsź·chì*
pork *jū·rèw*
possess *yèw*
postage stamp *yéw·pyàw*
post office *yéw·jèng·jywú*
pound *bàng*
powder *fĕn, *yàw*
powerful *chyáng*
power plant *fā·dyàn·chăng*
practice *shŕ·shí, yăn·shí*
president *dzŭng·tŭng, dà·dzŭng·tŭng*
price *jyà, jyà·chyán, chyán, wù·jyà*
priest *shén·fu*
principle *jŭ·yì*
print *yìn·shwā*
print shop *yìn·shwā·swŏ*
private *dz̀-yùng·de, èr·dĕng·bīng*
private first class *yī·dĕng·bīng,*
  *shàng·dĕng·bīng*
probably *dwō·bàn*

problem *wèn·tí*
produce *chū, *jyē, jyē-gwĕr*
products *hwò*
profit *jwàn*
pronunciation *fā·yīn, kĕw·yīn*
protect *băw*
Protestantism *Yĕ·sū·jyàw*
province *shĕng*
public **gūng, gūng-yùng·de*
pull *lā*
purple *dž*
purse *chyán·bāw*
push *twēy*
put on *chwān, dày, shàng*

quality *hăw·hwày*
quarter *sz̀·fēn·jr̄-yī, lyăng·máw-wŭ*
quartermaster *jywēn·shywū*
quarter of an hour *kè-jūng*
question *wèn·tí*
quite *hĕn*

race *rén·jŭng*
radio *wú·shyàn·dyàn*
railroad *tyĕ·lù, hwŏ·chē·dàw*
rain *ywŭ, shyà-ywŭ*

raincoat *ywŭ·yī*
rank *jyē·jí*
razor *gwā·lyăn·dāw*
read *kàn, nyàn*
really *jēn, shŕ·dzày*
rear *hèw*
receipt *shēw·tyáw*
receive *jāw·dày, jyē·dàw, shèw,*
  *shēw, shēw·dàw*
recognize *rèn, rèn·shr, *shr̀, jr̄·daw*
record **jì*
recover *shēw·hwéy*
recuperate *yăng*
red *húng*
reduce *dyàw-bàng*
reel *jywăn*
refreshments *chá·dyăn*
regiment *twán*
region **bù, dì·fang*
register *gwà-hàw*
religion *dzūng·jyàw, *jyàw*
remember *jì·de, shyăng·chĭ*
rent *dzū*
repair *shyēw, shyēw·li*
report **bàw, gàw·su*

reporter *jì·jě, shīn·wén-jì·jě*
represent *dày·byǎw*
representative *dày·byǎw*
Republic *Mín·gwó*
request *chǐng*
resemble *shyàng*
respectfully *gwēy·gwey·jywu·jywù·de*
restaurant *fàn·gwǎn·dz*
return *hwán, hwéy, jǎw*
rice **dàw, fàn, *mǐ*
rickshaw *yáng·chē*
ride *chí, dzwò*
rifle *bù·chyāng, chyāng*
right *yèw, dwèy*
rise *chǐ*
river *hé, *jyāng*
road *dàw, lù*
roast *shāw*
room *wū·dz, fáng·jyān*
rub *tsā*
rug *dì·tǎn*
rules *gwēy·jywu*
run *pǎw*
Russia **È*
safe **ān, píng·ān*
salt *yán*
salute *shíng jywūn·lǐ*
same *túng·yàng, yí·yàng*
San Francisco *Jyèw·jīn·shān*
save *jyèw*
say *shwō*
scales *bàng*
scalp *téw·pí*
scarlet *dà·húng*
school *shywé·shyàw, *shywé*
schoolmate *túng·shywé(·de)*
scrape *gwā, tsā*
sea *hǎy*
seal *tú·jāng*
seaport *hǎy·kěw*
seashore *hǎy·àn*
second lieutenant *shàw·wèy*
secretary *bàn·shr̀·ywán, shū·jì*
seed *jǔng·dz*
seek *jǎw*
seem *shyàng, hǎw shyàng*
segment *dwàn*
self *běn·rén, *dž, dž·jǐ*
sell *mày*
send *hwèy, sùng*
send out **fā*
sentence *hwà*
separate *fēn·kāy*
sergeant *jūng·shr̀, shàng·shr̀*
servant *dǐ·shyà·rén, shyà·rén,*
*yùng·rén*
serve as *dāng, dzwò*
set *tàw*
shake hands *lā-shěw*
shampoo *shǐ-téw*
sharp *kwày*
shave *gwā-lyǎn*
sheep *yáng*
shine *jàw*
ship *chwán, ywèn*
shirt *chèn·shān*
shoe *shyé*
shore *àn*
short *ǎy*
Siberia *Shī·bwó·lì·yà*
sick *bìng, dé-bìng, shēng-bìng*
side *byān*
silver *yín*
sing *chàng*

sister _jyě·jye, jyě·mey, mèy·mey_
sit _chí, dzwò_
size _dà·shyǎw_
skill _gūng·fu_
skin _pí_
sleeve _shyèw·dz_
slice *_pyàn_, *_sž_
slow _màn_
small _shyǎw_
smell _wén_
smoke _yān, chēw-yān_
smooth _píng_
snack _shyǎw·chr̄_
so _dwō·me, jè·me, nà·me_
soap _yí·dz_
socks _wà·dz_
sofa _shā·fā_
soldier _bīng_
solve _jyě·jywé_
some _yěw·de_
son _ér·dz_
song _gē_
soon _dzǎw·wǎn_
sound _shēng·yīn_
south _nán_
Soviet *_Sū_
Spain _Shī·bān·yá_
speak _shwō_
specialist _jwān·jyā_
specialty _kē_
speech _hwà, yǎn·shwō_, *_ywǔ_
speed _kwày·màn_
spend time _shyà gūng·fu_
sphere _chyéw_
spirit _shén_
spread *_chwán, pū_
spring _chwēn·tyan_
squad _bān_
squadron _jūng·dwèy_
staff officer _tsān·méw_
stage _wǔ·táy_
stairs _léw·tī_
stand _jàn_
start _chǐ, kāy·bàn, tsúng . . . chǐ_
stationery _shìn·jř_
steel _gāng_
still _háy_
stockings _wà·dz_
stone _shŕ·tew_
store *_gwǎn_, *_dyàn_, *_pù_
straddle _chí_
straight _yì·jŕ_
straight line _jŕ·shyàn_
street _dàw, jyē, lù_
streetcar _dyàn·chē_
strike _dǎ_
strong _chyáng_
student _shywé·shēng_
study _nyàn, shywé_
substitute _tì_
succeed *_jáw_, *_chéng_
suddenly _hū·rán_
suffer _chr̄-kǔ_
sugar _táng_
suit _tàw_
suitcase _shyāng·dz_
summer _shyà·tyan_
sun _r̀·tew, tày·yang_
surface _shàng_
sweater _máw·yī_
sweep _sǎw_
switch _dyàn·mén_
switchboard _fēn·jī_
Switzerland _Rwèy·shì_
sword _dà·dāw_

table *jwō·dz*
take *chywŭ, dày, ná, sùng, táy*
take off *twō*
talk *shwō, tán*
tall *gāw*
tank *jàn·chē, tăn·kè·chē*
Taoism *Dàw·jyàw*
tea *chá*
teach *jyāw*
teacher *jyāw-shū·de, jyàw·ywán, shyān·sheng*
telegram *dyàn·bàw*
telegraph *dă dyàn·bàw*
telephone *dyàn·hwà, dă dyàn·hwà*
telescope *wàng·ywăn·jìng*
tell *gàw·su, jyàw*
Thailand *Tày·gwó*
than *bĭ*
thanks *dwō-shyè, shyè·shye*
that *nà, nèy*
theater *dyàn·yĭng·ywàn, shì·ywán·dz*
then *jyèw, tsáy, yèw*
there *nà·li, nàr*
therefore *swó·yi*
thermos jug *nwăn·shwĕy·hú*
thigh *dà·twĕy*
thin *báw*
thing *dūng·shi, shr̀*
think *shyăng*
thirsty *kĕ*
this **bĕn, jè, jèy, *jīn*
thread *shyàn*
through *chwān*
thumb *dà-shĕw·jŕ·tew*
ticket *pyàw*
tight *jĭn*
till *jùng, dàw*
time *byàn, gūng·fu, shŕ·hew, tsż*
times *bèy, chéng*
tip *shyăw·fèy*
tired *lèy*
to *dàw, shàng*
tobacco *yān·yè·dz*
today *jīn·tyan*
together *hé, yí·kwàr, yì·túng, yí·gùng*
toilet *tsè·swŏ*
tone *shēng*
too *tày*
tooth *yá*
top *shàng*
towards *shyàng, wàng*
towel *shĕw·jīn*
trade *háng, măy·may*
train *hwŏ·chē*
translate *fān·yì*
transport *ywèn*
transportation corps *jyāw·tūng·bīng*
travel *lywŭ·shíng*
travel bureau *lywŭ·shíng·shè*
tray *pán·dz, pén*
treat *dày, jāw·dày*
tree *shù*
trench *jàn·háw*
triangle *sān·jyăw(r)*
trouble *shēng-shr̀*
trousers *kù·dz*
true *jēn*
trunk *shyāng·dz*
try *shr̀*
tube *gwăn·dz*
Turkey *Tŭ·ēr·chí*
turn *jwăn, jwàn*
turn off *gwān*
turn on *kāy*
twins *shwàng·sheng*

two pairs *lyǎng·dwèy*
typewrite *dǎ-dż*
typewriter *dǎ·dż·jī*

umbrella *ywǔ·sǎn*
underclothes *lǐ·yī*
underground *dì-'shyà*
underneath *dǐ·shya*
understand *dǔng, tīng·chīng·chu, tīng·chū*
understandable *chīng·chu*
uniform *jywēn·yī*
unify *tǔng·yī*
unit *bù, dwèy*
unite *tǔng·yī*
United Nations *Lyán·hé·gwó*
United States *Měy·gwo*
universe *shr̀·jyè, tyān·shyà*
university *dà·shywé*
until *dàw*
unwrap *dǎ-bāw, dǎ·kāy*
up *shàng*
upstairs *léw-shàng*
urgent *jǐn*
use *yùng*
useful *yěw-yùng*
usually *dwō·bàn, cháng·cháng·de*

variegated *dzá*
vase *píng·dz*
vegetables *chīng·tsày*
very *hěn, tày*
Vice-President *fù·dzǔng·tǔng*
victory *shèng·lì*
village *tswēn·dz*
volume *běn, běn·dz, běr*
vote *shywǎn·jywǔ*

wait *děng*.
waiter *hwǒ·ji, chá·fang*
wake *shǐng*
walk *dzěw*
wall **chéng, chyáng*
wallet *chyán·bāw*
war *dǎ-jàng, dà-jàn, jàn·shr̀*
ward *bìng·fáng, yǎng·bìng·fáng*
warm *nwǎn·he*
warship *bīng·chwán*
wash *shǐ*
washbowl *shǐ·lyǎn·pén*
Washington *Hwá·shèng·dwèn*
waste *fèy*
watch *byǎw*
water *shwěy, dż·láy·shwěy*
watermelon *shī·gwā*
weapons *chyāng·pàw*
weather *tyān·chi*
weave *jr̄*
week *lǐ·bày, shīng·chī*
weigh in *gwò-bàng*
weight *jùng·lyàng*
Welcome! *Hwān·yíng!*
well *hǎw, jǐng*
west *shī*
West Point *Shī·dyǎn*
what *shém·me*
wheat *mày·dz, shyǎw·mày*
where *nǎ·li, nǎr*
which *nǎ*
white *báy*
whole *chywán, yī*
why *'wèy-shém·me*
wife *tày·tay*
willing *ywàn·yì*
wind *fēng*
window *chwāng·hu*

windy _gwā-fēng_
wine _jyěw_
wing _lyán·dwèy_
winter _dūng·tyan_
wipe _tsā_
wire _dyàn·shyàn, shyàn_
with _hé, gēn, túng_
withdraw _chywŭ_
without *_wú, méy·yew, bú-yùng_
wood _mù·tew_
woolen *_máw_
word _dż,_ *_wén_
work _dzwò-shr̀, gūng, shíng_
world _dì·chyéw, shr̀·jyè_
worship *_bày_
wound _shāng, shèw-shāng_
wrap _bāw, dă-bāw, gwŏ_
wristwatch _shĕw·byăw_
write _shyě_
writing _wén·dż_
writing brush _bĭ_
year _nyán, swèy_
yellow _hwáng_
yet _háy_
young _nyán·chīng, shyăw_
zero *_líng_

# CHINESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

*-*a* final 10D8, 13B4

**ān* 'safe' (see *píng·ān*)

'*Ān·nán* N Annam (Indo-China)

*àn* A 'dark'

*àn* N 'bank, shore'

**Ăw* 'Australia'

'*Ăw·jēw* N 'the Australian continent'

*ăy* A 'short'

*Ăy!* 'Hello!' (telephone)

*ày* V 'love, like; like to (do something)' 8B5

*-*ba* 4B6

*bā* 'eight'

*Bā·shī* N 'Brazil'

*bă* M for chair, knife, and other things with handles or parts that can be grasped in the hand

*bă* K indicating the object to which something is done 5D4

*bān* N, M 'squad' (in military organization)

*bān·jăng* N 'squad leader'

*bān* V 'move' (a heavy object, or one's residence) 8D4

*bān·dùng* RC 'to move'

*bān·gwò* (*lc*) RC 'move something over'

*bān-jyā* VO 'move one's residence'

'*bān·shyà* (*lc*) RC 'move down, unload' (as baggage from a plane)

*băn·dz* N 'board' (of wood, for example) (M ***kwày***)

*bàn* 'half' 10D9

*bàn·dăw* N 'peninsula'

*bàn* V 'manage, administer, execute'

*bàn·fa* N 'way of doing something'

*bàn·lĭ* V 'manage, administer, execute'

*bàn-shr̀* VO 'take charge of affairs, manage affairs'

*bàn·shr̀·ywán* N 'secretaries' (not purely clerical)

*bāng* V 'help; lend (someone money)' 8D8

*bāng-máng* VO 'help, give assistance'

*bàng* M 'pound' (English weight); N 'a pound scale'

*bāw* V 'to broil without fat'

*bāw* M 'package of, pack of'; N 'package'; V 'to wrap up'

*bāwr* M 'small package of'; N 'small package'

*báw* A 'thin' (in dimension, not consistency)

*bǎw* V 'protect, give bond for'

*bǎw·jèng* N 'guarantee'

*bǎw·jèng·rén* N 'guarantor'

*bǎw-shyǎn* VO 'insure; get insurance' (including the insuring of mail)

*bǎw-shyǎn-gūng·sž* N 'insurance company'

*Bǎw·jī* N city in the southwestern part of Shǎn·shī province. Usually spelled as Paochi, Pao-chi, Paoki.

*bàw* N 'report; newspaper' (M *jāng*)

*bàw·gwǎn* N 'newspaper publishing company' (M *jyā*)

*bàw·jř* N 'newspaper' (M *jāng*)

*báy* A 'white, light'

*Báy·ē* N 'white Russian'

'*báy·jǔng*(*·rén*) N '(members of) the white race'

*báy·tsày* N 'celery-cabbage, cabbage' (M *téw*, *kē*)

*báy·tyan* N 'daytime'

*bǎy* 'hundred'

*bǎy·hwò-gūng·sž* N 'department store' (M *jyā*)

**bày* 'worship' (see *lǐ·bày*)

*bày-fwó* VO 'worship an image of Buddha'

**bày* 'defeat' (see *dǎ·bày*, *jàn·bày·gwó*)

*běn* M 'volume' for *shū* 'book'

*běn·dz* N 'volume; pad of paper; book of essential information like a city directory or telephone book'

*běr* M = *běn*; N = *běn·dz*

**běn* 'source'; with many periods of time means 'this, the present; thus *běn-lǐ·bày* 'this week', *běn-ywè* 'this month'.

'*běn·chyán* N 'capital (investment)'

*běn·dì* N 'this territory, right around here'

*běn·háng* N 'one's own line of business'

*běn·láy* H 'originally, in the first place, to start with'

*běn·rén* N 'oneself, in person'

**bēng* 'roll tightly'

*bēng·dày* N 'bandage' (M *tyáw*, *jywǎn*)

*bēy* M 'cupful, glassful'; N 'cup, glass'

*bēy·dz* N 'cup, glass'

*běy* N 'north'

*běy·àn* N 'north bank, north shore'

*běy·bù* N 'northern part, region'

'*běy·byān* N 'north side, edge, border'

'*běy·fāng* N 'the north'

*běy·mén* N 'north gate or door' (as of a city)

*Běy·jīng* N old name for the city of Peiping, reflected in the English form Peking.

*Běy·píng* N the city of Peiping.

*bèy* K 'by, at the hands of'

*bèy·pwò* V 'be forced to' (literary; occurs in the words of the song *Chĭ-láy*)

*bèy* M 'times as much' (see *jyā·'bèy·de*)

*bí·dz* N 'nose'

*bĭ* N 'pen, pencil, writing-brush' (M *gwăn*)

*bĭ* V 'compare'; K 'as compared with, than' 9D4

*bĭ·fang* N 'example'

'*bĭ·fang shwō* . . . 'for example . . .'

'*bĭ·shàng* RC 'be compared with something else' (usually with *de* or *bu*)

**bì* V 'finish'

*bì-yè* VO 'graduate'

*bì* V 'close' (as the eyes)

'*bì·shàng* RC 'close' (as the eyes)

*bì-yăn* VO 'close the eyes'

**bì* 'humble'

'*bì-gwó* N '(my) humble country'

'*bì-shìng* N '(my) humble name'

*bīng* N 'soldier; member of any of the armed forces'

*bīng·chwán* N 'warship' (M *jr̄*, *tyáw*)

*bīng·gūng* N 'ordnance'

*bīng·gūng·chăng* N 'arsenal'

*bīng·jŭng* N 'branch of service'

*bīng·kē* N 'branch of service; branch of study in a military school'

*bīng·shr̀* N 'enlisted personnel'

*bīng·yíng* N 'barracks' (M *dzwò*)

*bīng* N 'ice' (M *kwày*)

*bìng* N 'sickness'; A 'be sick' 7B5

*bìng·chwáng* N 'sickbed'

*bìng·fáng* N 'sickroom; ward' (M *jyān*, *swŏ*, *chù*)

*bū* (*bú*, *bù*) 'not'

*bú·gwò* J 'nevertheless; even so; although'

*bù·'rán* J 'otherwise'

*bù* N 'infantry'

'*bù·bīng* N 'infantry (soldiers)'

*bù·chyāng* N 'infantry rifle' (M *jr̄*)

'*bù·kē* N 'infantry' (as a branch of service or study)

**bù* 'place, region, part, division, command, ministry'. Added to the term for any military unit means headquarters of that unit. (see *sz̆·lìng·bù*). Added to point of the compass to indicate region of a country or territory, thus *bĕy·bù* 'northern region'. Added to form terms for the various ministries in government, thus *jywēn·jèng·bù* 'Ministry of War'.

*bù·dwèy* N 'unit' (of unspecified size or nature, but military)

*bù·fen* M 'part of a business' such as the photography part of the newspaper business 11D8

*bù·jăng* N 'head of a board or ministry' *bù* N 'cloth' (not wool) (see *jr̄-bù, yéw·bù*) (M *kwày*)

*bù·shyé* N 'shoes made of cloth' (customary in China) (M *jr̄, shwāng*)

*bù·yī* N 'cotton clothing' (or clothing of any cloth but wool) (M *jyàn, tàw*)

*bwō·li* N 'glass' (the material)

**bwó* 'of wide range, in space or in learning'

*bwó·wù·gwǎn* N 'museum' (M *dzwò, ge*)

*byān* M 'side'. Also added to points of the compass (*dūng·byan* 'east side, east'), 'left' and 'right', and so forth.

**byàn* 'convenience' (see *'fāng·byàn, chǐng-byàn*)

*byàn* M 'time, occasion' (as in sing a song *three times*)

*byàn* V 'change, alter'

*'byàn·chéng* RC 'become, grow into'

*byǎw* N 'watch' (timepiece); in compounds: 'chart, table; blank'

*byé* A 'other, others'. Used before nouns or noun expressions; except in the case of *'byé-rén* 'other people' usually adds *de*.

*chá* N 'tea' (in liquid form, ready to drink)

*chá·dyǎn* N 'refreshments'

*chá·fang* N 'waiter' (in a hotel or boat dining room)

*chá·hú* N 'teapot' M 'teapotful of' (M *bǎ, ge*)

*chá·wǎn* N 'teacup' (in China usually without a handle, which makes it more like a bowl, *wǎn*)

*chà* V 'differ, just miss'; K 'differing by' (especially 'by so-much time' in giving minutes before an hour)

*chà·bu·dwō* H 'almost, about, approximately'

*cháng* A 'long' in space; 'long, frequent' in time; H 'frequently'

*Cháng·ān* N a city in *Shǎn·shī* province, usually called *Shī·ān*. On English maps given as Ch'ang-an, Changan.

*cháng·cháng* H 'quite often'

*Cháng·chéng* N 'the Great Wall'

*Cháng·jyāng* N the Yangtze River. Given on some maps as Ch'ang Chiang

**chǎng* 'an enclosed space' (see *bīng·gūng·chǎng, fā·dyàn·chǎng, gūng·chǎng*)

**chǎng* 'an open space' (see *fēy·jī·chǎng, jàn·chǎng, núng·chǎng*)

*chàng* V 'sing'

*chàng-gē* VO 'sing a song' (with words)

*chàng-shì* VO 'play a part in a Chinese operetta drama'

*chàng-shì·de* N 'one who acts in Chinese drama'

**cháw* 'dynasty'. 29B2. The more important dynasties are:

*'Jēw·cháw* N the Chou dynasty; 1122–256 BC.

*'Hàn·cháw* N the Han dynasty; 206 BC–220 AD.

'*Táng·cháw* N the T'ang dynasty; 618–907 AD.

'*Sùng·cháw* N the Sung dynasty; 960–1279 AD.

'*Ywán·cháw* N the Yüan (Mongol) dynasty; 1206–1368 AD.

'*Míng·cháw* N the Ming dynasty; 1368–1644 AD.

'*Chīng·cháw* N the Ch'ing (Manchu) dynasty; 1644–1912 AD.

*chǎw* V 'fry with very little oil and much heat'

*chǎw-fàn* N 'fried rice'

*chǎw-myàn* N 'fried noodles'

*chē* N 'any wheeled vehicle' (M *lyàng*)

'*chē·chyán* N 'fare for a rickshaw (cart, train, or taxi) ride'

*chèn·shān* N 'shirt' (M *jyàn*)

*chéng* N 'city (with a wall); city wall; wall' (M *dzwò, ge*) 16B3

*chéng·chyáng* N 'city wall' (M *dzwò, byān, myàn*)

*chéng-'lǐ* N 'inside the city (wall); downtown, uptown'

*chéng·mén* N 'city gate'

*chéng-'wày* N 'outside the city (wall); out of town, in the suburbs, outsksirts'

*chéng* K 'multiplied by'

**chéng* used as postverb in several RC with the meaning 'complete, accomplish, finish'; for example, see '*jǎng·chéng*.

*chēw* V 'to inhale' 4B3

*chēw-yān* VO 'to smoke' (cigarettes, etc.)

*chī* 'seven'

**chī* 'date, time, period'; M 'grade in school'

*chí* V 'to sit on, straddling', as a bicycle or horse; N 'cavalry'

'*chí·bīng* N 'cavalry (soldiers)'

*chí-chē* VO 'to ride a bicycle'

'*chí·kē* N 'cavalry' (as a branch of service or study)

*chí-mǎ* VO 'ride a horse, go horseback riding'

*chǐ* V (1) 'get up, rise'; used as postverb: (1) freely with many verbs, meaning 'to start to do so-and-so'; (2) in certain specific combinations with the meaning 'up, rise'. (see *tsúng . . . chǐ*) 7D8

*chǐ·shyān* H 'in the beginning, at first'

**chì* 'a manufactured thing' (see *jī·chi, tsź·chi*)

*chì* N 'air, gas, atmosphere'

*chì·chē* N 'automobile' (M *lyàng*)

*chì·chē·jàn* N 'bus stop'

*chì·yéw* N 'gasoline'

**chīn* 'relatives, kin' (see *fù·chin, mǔ·chin*)

*chīng* A 'light' (in weight)

*chīng* A 'fresh, green' (see *nyán·chīng*)

*chīng·nyán* N 'young man or woman'

*chīng·nyán·hwèy* N 'youth association' (as the YMCA, YWCA) *chīng·tsày* N '(fresh) vegetables'

*chīng·tsày·pù* N 'vegetable market'

*chīng* A 'clear' (as of water)

*chīng·chu* A 'clear, understandable'; used as postverb in this sense

*chǐng* V 'request, invite; please' 7D5

*Chǐng-'byàn*. 'Do as you wish; suit yourself.'

*Chǐng·dzwò*. 'Please have a seat.'

*Chǐng-'wẹ̀n*. 'Please, may I ask you something?'

*chr̄* V 'eat'. One 'eats' medicine in pill or other solid form, or any liquid viscous enough to stick to a spoon held upside down, but one *hē* 'drinks' soup or liquid medicine. In compounds *chr̄* may mean 'food'; see *shyǎw·chr̄*.

*chr̄-fàn* VO 'eat'

*chr̄-kǔ* VO 'suffer, lead a bitter life'

*chū* I (*lc*) 'go out of, exit'; used in this sense, literally or figuratively, as postverb in RC. V 'yield, produce', as land produces crops.

*chū-shywě* VO 'bleed', without an obvious wound, as from the gums.

**chū* 'first, of the first group'

*chū-'yī, -'èr, . . . -'shŕ* N designations for the first ten days of the month in the lunar calendar.

*chú* K 'divided into'

*chú-le* K 'with the exception of, excepting'

**chǔ* 'distinct, one by one' (see *chīng·chu*)

*chù* M for *dì·fang* 'place'

*Chúng·chìng* N the city in Szechwan province, now capital of China; given on English maps as Ch'ung-ch'ing or as Chungking.

**chwān* an old (literary) word for 'river'; see *Sż·chwān*.

*chwān* V 'to pass through'; 'to put on' any article of clothing which part of the body passes through.

'*chwān·shàng* RC 'to put on' (same clothing as with *chwān*)

*chwán* N 'boat, ship' (M *jr̄*, *tyáw*)

**chwán* to spread'

*chwán-dàw* VO 'to spread a doctrine'

*chwán-dàw·de* N 'missionary'

*chwán-jyàw* VO 'do missionary work'

*chwán·jyàw·shr̀* N 'missionary'

*chwāng·hu* N 'window'

*chwáng* N 'bed'

**chwēn* 'Spring'

*chwēn·tyan* N 'spring(time)'

*chwēy* V 'to blow'

*chwēy·dùng* Rc 'to move something by blowing on it'

*chwēy·hwày* RC 'to break or spoil something by blowing on it' *chwēy·jìn* (*lc*) RC 'to blow in, into'

'*chwēy kāy* RC 'to blow open'

***chyān*** 'thousand'

***chyān*** N 'lead (the metal); graphite'

*chyān·bǐ* N 'pencil' (M *jr̄*)

***chyán*** N 'money'; with M *fēn*, 'cent'; with M *máw*, 'dime'; with M *kwày*, 'dollar'. Added to any name of an article or a service, means 'money paid for such-and-such as price, rent, or hire'; e. g., '*fàn·chyán* 'board'.

*chyán·bāw* N 'purse, wallet'

*chyán·pyàw·dz*, *chyán·pyàwr* N 'bill, paper money' (M *jāng; jywăn* 'roll of')

***chyán*** N 'front, front side'. After an expression of time, is the same as *yǐ·'chyán* 'ago'.

*chyán·byan* N 'front side'

'*chyán-jǐ·nyán*, '*chyán-jǐ·tyān* N 'a few years (days) ago'

*chyán·mén* N 'front *or* main door, gate'

*chyán·nyan* N 'year before last'

*chyán·tyan* N 'day before yesterday'

*chyán·shyàn* N 'front line' (military)

*chyán·tew* N 'front side, front end, front'

***chyāng*** N 'small arms, *especially* rifle' (M *jr̄*, *gēn*); M 'act of firing, shot'

*chyāng·pàw* N 'weapons'

*chyáng* N 'wall'

*chyáng* A 'powerful, strong' (of a country)

'*chyáng·gwó* N 'a powerful country, a Power'

**chyáw* 'people living abroad'

*chyáw·mín* N 'aliens'

**chyēw* 'autumn'

*chyēw·tyan* N 'autumn'

*chyéw* N 'ball, sphere'

*chyéwr* N 'ball'

**chywān* 'circle'

*chywān·dz* N 'circle'

*chywār* N 'circle'; M 'circuit, time around' (the world, for instance)

**chywán* 'power' (see *Mín·chywán-jŭ·yì*, *yěw-chywán*)

*chywán* H 'all, altogether'; put before measures and certain other nouns in the meaning 'the whole' or 'every': *chywán·gwó* 'the whole country', *chywán·tswēn* 'the whole village'

'*chywán·dēw* H 'all; altogether'; stronger than *dēw* or *chywán* alone

*chywén* M 'group of'—'flock of' sheep, birds, 'pack of' dogs, 'herd of' cattle, and so forth

*chywén·dăw* N 'archipelago'

*chywŭ* V 'take back out, withdraw', something left somewhere for repairs or for safe-keeping.

'*chywŭ·chū* (*lc*) RC 'take back *out*, withdraw'

599

*chywǔ-chyán* VO 'withdraw money' from a bank

'*chywǔ·hwéy* (*lc*) VO 'take *back* out, withdraw'

*chywù* I 'go'; indicates motion *not* towards the speaker, and found at or near the end of many sentences of motion or handling with that meaning. 3D4, 5B6

*chywù·nyan* N 'last year'

•*dá* 'reply' (see '*hwéy·dá*)

***dǎ*** V 'to hit, strike'; 'to obtain by normal means'; 'to do something to' with the precise meaning determined by the following word.

*dǎ-bāw* VO 'to wrap up a package' *or* 'to unwrap a package'

*dǎ·bày* V 'to defeat'

'*dǎ·dàw* RC 'to fight one's way up to' a place

*dǎ dyàn·bàw* VO 'to send a telegram'

*dǎ dyàn·hwà* VO 'to make a phone call'

*dǎ-dż* VO 'to typewrite'

*dǎ·dż·jī* N 'typewriter'

*dǎ gwān·hwà* VO 'to boast and give excuses like a politician'

*dǎ hwéy·dyàn* VO 'to send a return telegram, make an answering phone call'

*dǎ-jàng* VO 'to fight, be at war'

*dǎ-jyěw* VO 'to buy wine'

'*dǎ·kāy* RC 'to open' anything which, like a suitcase, has a part hinged to the rest and folds back

*dǎ-mén* VO 'to knock at a door'

*dǎ pū·gay* VO 'make up a bedding-roll'

*dǎ·pwò* RC 'break by striking' (see *pwò*)

*dǎ-shwěy* VO 'draw water from a well'

'*dǎ·shyà* (*lc*) RC 'knock down' (planes, for example)

*dǎ·swàn* V 'calculate, figure out'

*dǎ swàn·pan* VO 'to calculate with an abacus'

*dǎ·sż* RC 'to kill by striking'

*dǎ-ywú* VO 'to catch fish'

*dà* A 'big; adult'; used as postverb with the latter meaning.

'*dà-chyán·nyan* N 'year before year before last'

'*dà-chyán·tyan* N 'day before day before yesterday'

*dà·dāw* N 'sword' (M *bǎ*)

*dà·dwèy* N, M 'group' (in Air Forces organization)

*dà·dzǔng·tǔng* N 'president' (of a country)

*dà·gāng* N 'outline' (in writing)

*dà-gwān* N 'high official'

'*dà-hèw·nyan* N 'year after year after next'

'*dà-hèw·tyan* N 'day after day after tomorrow'

*dà·húng* A 'scarlet'

*dà·jàn* N 'a great war' (like one of the world wars) (M *tsż*)

*dà·jēw* N, M 'continent'

600

***dà-jyē*** **N** 'a main street' (M *tyáw*)

***dà-lù*** N 'main road' (M *tyáw*)

***dà·lù*** N 'mainland' (as contrasted with islands)

***dà-mén*** N 'main gate' in a city wall or to a house

'***dà·rén*** N 'adult'

*dà·shēng* H 'in a loud voice'

*dà-shĕw·'jř·tew* N 'thumb'

*Dà·shī·yáng* N the 'great western ocean', the Atlantic

*dà-shì* N 'an old-style Chinese drama', as contrasted with western or modern style drama

*dà·shř* N 'ambassador'

*dà·shř·gwăn* N 'embassy'

*dà·shyăw* N 'size; of what size?'

*dà-shyàw* I 'to laugh'

'*dà·shywé* N 'university, college'

*dà·shywé·shēng* N 'college student'

*dà·shywé·shyàw* N 'university, college'

*dà·twĕy* N 'the thigh, upper leg' (M *tyáw*)

*dà·yī* N 'overcoat' (M *jyàn*)

*dān·dz* N 'list' (M *jāng*)

**dàn* 'bomb, explosive' (see *dž·dàn, jà·dàn*)

*dàn·yàw* N 'ammunition, shells and powder'

*dàn* N 'egg' (see *jī·dàn, shyà-dàn*)

*dāng* V 'become, serve as'; except in *dāng-bìng* VO 'serve as a soldier', *dzwò* can be used instead of *dāng* in this meaning.

**dāng* 'at'

*dāng·jūng* N 'middle, center'

**dăng* 'political party'; in compounds usually refers to the Kuomintang, that being the chief party in present-day China.

*dăng·bù* N 'party headquarters' (in a village or province)

*dăng·gwó-'yàw·rén* N 'important people of party and country'

*dăng·ywán* N 'party member'

*dāw* N 'knife' (M *bă*)

*dāw·dz, dāwr* N 'knife'

*dăw* N 'island'

**dàw* 'rice' (the plant)

*dàw·dz* N 'the rice plant'

*dàw·mĭ* N 'rice grain' (M *jĭn, dĕw*)

*dàw·tyán* N 'rice field' (M *kwày, mŭ*)

*dàw* (*lc*) V 'go to, come to'; in this sense used as a postverb in many RC of motion. V 'arrive at, in'; I 'arrive', therefore 'be present'. K 'until, up to' a time; in this sense used as a postverb quite freely with verbs denoting states, e. g. '*máng·dàw* 'be busy until'. 3D5, 5B7, 5D6, 7D3 *dàw* N 'road'; M for *háw* 'ditch' or other long things along which one may move; in compounds also 'doctrine, way'. (See *chwán-dàw, 'jr̄·dàw*)

*Dàw jyàw* N 'Taoism'

*dàw·lù* N, 'road, street' (M *tyáw*)

*dày* V 'put on' such clothing as hats, gloves, ornaments.

*'dày·shàng* RC 'put on' (same things as *dày*).

*dày* V (*lc*) 'bring, take' (a person or a thing); K with same meaning. 10D3

*dày-tú·de* 'illustrated'

**dày* 'belt-like article' (see *kù·dày, lǐng·dày, bēng·dày*)

*dày·dz* N (M *tyáw*) 'belt'

*dày* V 'treat, deal with'; calls for adjective later saying in what way: *'dày tā·men kěn 'hǎw* 'treats them quite well'. (See *'jāw·dày*)

**dày* 'replace, substitute for'

*dày·byǎw* N 'representative'; V 'to represent' someone.

**de* 3D6, 4D5, 7D2

*dé* V 'attain, achieve' (see *jì·de*)

*'dé·dàw* RC 'attain, achieve'

*dé-lì* VO 'get interest' (on an investment)

*dé-shèng* VO 'attain victory'

**dé* 'German'

*Dé·gwo* N 'Germany'

*dēng* N 'lamp, (source of) light'

*děng* V 'wait for'; I 'wait'

*'děng-yi·děng* 'wait a minute'

*'děng yì·hwěr* 'wait a minute' (more used than the former in Peiping)

*děng* M 'grade, kind of' (used only in specific combinations)

*déng·děng(·de)* 'and so forth'

*dēw* H 'all, both, altogether'

*dēw·shr* 'altogether are' or H 'altogether, all in all'

*děw* M a dry measure, equal to about 10.9 quarts

*děw* N, M a bowl-like thing (see *yān·děw*)

*děy* V 'must, have to' (not used with *bū* before it)

*dī* A 'low'

**dí* 'enemy'

*'dí·gwó* N 'enemy country'

*'dí·rén* N 'enemy (people, person)'

**dǐ* 'bottom'

*dǐ·shya* N 'space underneath, below'

*'dǐ·shyà·rén* N 'servants'

*dì* N 'land, earth's surface; floor' (see *běn·dì, gwā·dì, jùng-dì, lù·dì, tyán·dì* )(M *kwày*)

*dì·chyéw* N 'the earth' (as a sphere)

*dì·fang* N 'place; locality' (M *chù, ge*)

*dì·fang-jèng·fu* N 'local government'

*dì·lǐ* N 'geography'

*dì·lǐ·shywé* N 'geography' (as a study)

*dì·shang* N 'on the ground'
*dì·shya* N 'on the ground' (*dì-'shyà* N 'under ground')
*dì·tǎn* N 'rugs' (M *kwày, tyáw*)
*dì·tú* N 'maps' (M *jāng*)
**dì* 'pass on'
'*dì·gěy* V 'pass something over to' a person 5D10
**dì* 'younger brother'
*dì·di* N 'younger brother'
*dì·shyung* N 'brothers'
**dì* 'emperor'
*dì·gwó* N 'empire'
**dì* before numerals forms 'first, second,' etc.
*dǐng* H 'most, topmost'
**dìng* 'settle, fix' (see *jywé·dìng, yí·'dìng*)
*dūng* N 'east'
*dūng·běy* N 'northeast'
*dūng·bù* N 'eastern region, part'
*dūng·byan* N 'eastern side'
*dūng·nán* N 'southeast'
*dūng·mén* N 'east door or gate', especially 'east city gate'
**dūng* 'winter'
*dūng·tyan* N 'winter'
*dūng·shi* N 'thing' (always refers to a concrete thing; compare *shr̀*) 7B10
*dǔng* V 'understand'; used as postverb in this sense.
*dùng* I 'freeze'
*dùng-bīng* VO 'freeze into ice'
*dùng·hǎw* RC 'freeze completely, solid'
'*dùng·shàng* RC 'freeze up, freeze over' (as of a river)
*dùng* I 'move around, be in motion'; used as postverb in this sense. 7D4
*dwàn* M 'consecutive part of' a ceremony or song or something that continues through a period of time; 'segment of' a long thin thing like a stick of wood.
*dwèy* A 'be correct'; V 'to match'; M 'matching pair of' 10B7
*dwèy·dz* N 'pair of matching ornaments'
*dwèy·chǐ* RC 'face as an equal'; particularly in *dwèy-bu·chǐ*, the usual phrase of apology.
*dwèy·mén* N 'the facing door, door or place directly across from where one is'
*dwèy·myàn* N 'opposite side'
*dwèy* M 'file of, formation of; unit of' (usually 'troops' or other military terms). Used as second element in many terms for different military units.
*dwèy·jǎng* N 'unit commander' (any military unit)
*dwō* A 'much, more, many'; H 'how much?, to what extent?' 8B4
'*dwō·bàn* H 'usually, probably'; *dà·dwō·bàr* H 'mostly'

*dwō·me* H 'to such an extent, how'

*dwō·shaw* N 'much; how much?'

*Dwō-'shyè!* 'Many thanks!'

*dyǎn* M 'a little of, a bit of'; with *jūng*, 'hour, o'clock'; *yī·'dyǎn* or *yī·'dyǎr* added to adjectives means 'a little, a little more'. (See *shī·dyǎn*)

*dyǎr* M same meaning; more used in Peiping, but not with *jūng*.

*dyǎn* V 'ignite'

*dyǎn-dēng* VO 'light a light' (not electric)

*dyǎn·jáw* RC 'ignite, succeed in igniting'

**dyǎn* 'rule, regulation, example' (see *dž·dyǎn*)

**dyàn* 'shop' (see *fàn·dyàn, shř·yī·dyàn*)

*dyàn* N 'electricity'; sometimes used to mean 'sent by wire'.

*dyàn·bàw* N 'telegram' (M *fēng, ge*)

*dyàn·bàw·jī* N 'telegraph apparatus'

*dyàn·bàw·jywú* N 'telegraph office'

*dyàn·bàw·jywú·jǎng* N 'manager of a telegraph office'

*dyàn·chē* N 'streetcar' (M *lyàng*)

*dyàn·chē·jàn* N 'streetcar stop'

*dyàn·chē·pyàw* N 'streetcar ticket' (M *jāng*)

'*dyàn·chyán* N 'payment for electrical services, current used'

*dyàn·dēng* N 'electric light'

*dyàn·dēng·pàwr* N 'electric light bulb'

*dyàn·hwà* N 'telephone (message)' (M *tsž*)

*dyàn·hwà-běn·dz* N 'telephone book'

*dyàn·hwà-fēn·jī* N 'telephone switchboard'

*dyàn·hwà-hàw·shu* N 'telephone number'

*dyàn·hwà·jī* N 'telephone (the apparatus)'

*dyàn·hwà·jywú* N 'telephone office, central'

*dyàn·mén* N 'electric switch'

*dyàn·shyàn* N 'electric wire' (M *tyáw*)

*dyàn·tī* N '(electric) elevator'

*dyàn·yǐng* N 'moving pictures'; with M *jywǎn* 'reel of film'

*dyàn·yǐng·pyàw* N 'movie theater ticket' (M *jāng*)

*dyàn·yǐng·ywàn* N 'movie theater' (M *dzwò, jyā, ge*)

*dyàw* V 'lose, drop'; I 'fall'

*dyàw-bàng* VO 'lose weight'

'*dyàw·chū* (*lc*) RC 'drop out, fall out of'

'*dyàw·dzày* V 'fall onto'

'*dyàw·shyà* (*lc*) RC 'drop down, fall down'

**dž* 'small thing'. Occurs toneless in such words as *fáng·dz, jwō·dz,* with no meaning except 'this word is a noun'. 9D8

*dž·dàn* N 'ammunition, cartridges'

*dz̆* A 'purple'

*dz̆·sè* N 'purple color'

*dz̀* N 'written words, characters'

*dz̀·dyăn* N 'dictionary' (M *bĕn*)

*dz̀·mŭ* N 'letters' of an alphabet, or 'alphabet'

**dz̀* 'self'

*dz̀·jĭ* N 'oneself' 5D8

*dz̀·láy·shwĕy* N 'tap water'; but in the following combination it means 'self-coming ink':

*dz̀·láy·shwĕy·bĭ* N 'fountain pen' (M *gwăn, jr̄*)

*dz̀·shíng·chē* N 'bicycle' (M *lyàng*)

*dz̀-yùng de* 'for private use, personal'

*dzán·men* 'we, us'; form used in Peiping; frequently used instead of *wŏ·men* to include the person or persons spoken to in the 'we'.

*dzá* A 'be variegated. of all kinds, miscellaneous'

*dzá·hwò·'pù* N 'general store'

*dzá·jr̀* N 'magazine' (periodical) (M *bĕn*)

*dzăw* A 'early'; H 'early' 9B2

*dzăw·bàw* N 'morning paper'

*dzăw·chen* N 'morning'

*dzăw·fàn* N 'breakfast'

*dzăw·wăn* H 'sooner or later'

**dzăw* 'bath' (see *shĭ-dzăw*)

*dzăw·táng·dz* N 'bath house' (M *jyā, ge*)

*dzàw* V 'make, manufacture' (something big, or on a big scale)

*dzày* V 'be at, on, in'; K 'at, on, in'; used as postverb in the same meaning, but the compounds with it are not RC (that is, no *de* or *bu* can be used). A 'be alive'. See also *jèng·dzày, shyàn·dzày.* 3D3, 4D8

*dzày-háng* VO 'be in a particular line of business', and therefore know about it.

*dzày* H 'again'

*Dzày 'jyàn!* 'See you later!'

*dzày shwō-ne*, . . . 'furthermore, . . .'

*dzĕm·me* H 'how?; how is it that?; how come?'

*dzĕm·me-yàng* 'what kind (of)'

*dzĕw* I 'go, depart, go along; walk'. In the following compounds the meaning is 'go' rather than 'walk'; to bring out the 'walk' meaning one adds *je* to *dzĕw.* 3D4, 5B5

*'dzĕw·chū* (*lc*) RC 'go out of, come out of'

*'dzĕw·dàw* (*lc*) RC 'go to, come to'

*dzĕw·dùng* RC (usually with *de, bu*) 'be able (unable) to walk', as of an old man.

*'dzĕw·gwò* (*lc*) RC 'walk *or* come over, across'

*'dzĕw·jìn* (*lc*) RC 'go into'

*dzĕw-lù* VO 'walk, walk along, go along'

*dzĕw léw·tī* VO 'go by the stairs' (rather than by elevator)

*dzū* V 'to rent' (*see fáng·dzū*)

**dzú* 'race, clan' (see *mín·dzú*)

**dzŭ* 'ancestor'

*dzŭ·fù* N 'father's father'

**dzūng* 'a school of thought'

*dzūng·jyàw* N 'a religion'

***dzŭng*** H 'always, normally'; in compounds, 'principal, chief, main'

*dzŭng·háng* N 'main office' of a firm or bank

*dzŭng·jywú* N 'main office' of a public utility, newspaper, or the like

*dzŭng·lĭ* N 'director general, general manager'

*dzŭng·lĭng·shr̀* N 'consul-general'

*dzŭng·lĭng·shr̀·gwăn* N 'consulate-general'

*dzŭng·sž·lìng* N 'commander-in-chief'

*dzŭng·tŭng* N 'president'

***dzwèy*** H 'most'

***dzwŏ*** N 'left'

*dzwŏ·byan* N 'left side'

*dzwŏ·twĕy* N 'left leg'

*dzwŏ·yăn* N 'left eye'

***dzwò*** V 'to make, prepare' a thing; 'to serve as' a kind of person (but not 'soldier', which is *dāng-bīng*)

*dzwò-fàn* VO 'cook food'

*dzwò-fàn·de* N 'a cook'

*dzwò-gwān* VO 'serve as an official, officer'

*dzwò măy·may* VO 'carry on trade, be in business'

*dzwò-măy·may·de* N 'trader, merchant'

*dzwò nú·lì* VO 'be a slave' (literary)

*dzwò-mèng* VO 'have a dream'

*dzwò-rén* VO 'be a man'—'act like a human being'

*dzwò-shr̀* VO 'work' (not physical labor)

*dzwò* I 'sit', V 'go by' (plane, boat, car, etc.)

'*dzwò·chĭ* (*l*) RC 'to sit up' (from a reclining position)

'*dzwò·dzày* V 'sit in, on'

'*dzwò·shyà* RC 'sit down'

*dzwò* M for *shān* 'mountain', *chéng* 'walled city'

*è* A 'be hungry'

**È* (or *Ē*, *É*); 'Russia' (extracted from the first longer term given)

*È·lwó·sž* N 'Russia'

*È·gwo* N 'Russia'

**ér* 'child' (see *nywŭ·ér*)

*ér·dz* N 'son'

*èr* 'two'; used only before certain M; most require *lyăng*.

*èr·dĕng·bīng* N lowest of three grades of private in the Chinese Army.

**Ēw* 'Europe'

'*Ēw·jēw* N 'the continent of Europe'

**fā* V 'send out, dispatch, issue forth'

*fā-bīng* VO 'send out troops'

'*fā·chū* RC 'send out, issue, dispatch'

*fā dyàn·bàw* VO 'send out telegrams'

*fā·dyàn·chăng* N 'power plant' (M *dzwò, ge*)

*fā-shāw* VO 'have fever'; N 'fever'

*fā-shìn* VO 'send out letters'

*fā·yīn* N 'pronunciation'

**fá, fă* 'way, method'; added to many verbs in the form *fă* or toneless to mean 'way of doing such-and-such'; e. g. '*bàn·fă* 'method of doing something'.

*fá·dz* N 'way, method, means'

*fă·gwān* N 'judge' (in a court of law)

*fă·gwēy* N 'the law' (as written and codified)

*fă·lywù* N 'law'

*fă·ywàn* N 'court of law'

**fă* 'hair on the head' (see *lĭ-fă*)

**fà* 'French'

*Fà·gwo* N 'France'

'*fān·yì* V 'to interpret, translate'; N 'interpreter, translator'

'*fān·yì·chū* (*l*) RC 'translate' (*out* of some other language)

*fàn* N 'rice (ready to eat); staple food; food in general'

'*fàn·chyán* N 'payment for board'

*fàn·dyàn* N 'hotel' (western style)

*fàn·gwăn·dz* N 'restaurant'

*fàn·wăn* N 'rice bowl'

**fāng* 'direction, position'

*fāng·fa* N 'method, way, plan, course of action'

*fāng·byan* A 'be convenient'

**fáng* 'house, room'

*fáng·dz, fángr* N 'house' (M *swŏ*)

'*fáng·chyán* N 'house rent, payment for a house purchased'

*fáng·dzū* N 'house rent'

*fáng·jŭ·ren* N 'master of the house, host'

'*fáng·jyān* N 'room *or* accommodations in a hotel'

*fáng·kè* N 'house guest'

*fáng·mén* N 'door to a house'

**fàng* V 'let go of, release'

*fàng-chyāng* VO 'fire a rifle *or* small arm'

*fàng-pàw* VO 'fire a large-caliber weapon'

*fēn* V 'divide; be divided into' (not mathematical term); M 'part of', with *chyán* 'cent', with *jūng* 'minute' (see *bù·fen*)

'*fēn·chéng* RC 'divide something into so-many parts'

*fēn·dwèy* N, M 'flight' (Air Force unit)

*fēn·háng* N 'branch office' of a bank or business

*fēn·jī* N 'switchboard'

- *fēn·jr̄* M in giving fractions and percentage: *X·fēn·jr̄-Y* is 'Y-Xths'
- *fēn-kē* VO 'to be divided up and assigned to various specialized branches of study after one's general introductory course'
- '*fēn·kāy* RC 'separate, divide up'
- *fēn·shyàw* N 'branch school', particularly of the Chinese Central Military Academy

- ***Fēn·lán*** N 'Finland'
- ***fěn*** N 'powder'
  - *fěn·húng* A 'pink'
  - *fěn·húng·sè* N 'pink color'
- ***fēng*** M for things in envelopes (see *shìn·fēng*)
- ***fēng*** N 'wind, breeze'
- ***fēy*** I (*lc*) 'fly'
  - '*fēy·chū* (*lc*) RC 'fly out'
  - '*fēy·dàw* (*lc*) RC 'fly to'
  - *fēy·jī* N 'airplane' (M *jyà, ge*)
    - *fēy·jī·chǎng* N 'airfield'
    - *fēy·jī·jàn* N 'airfield, airport'
  - '*fēy·jìn* (*lc*) RC 'fly into'
- ****Fēy*** 'Africa'
  - '*Fēy·jēw* N 'Africa' (the continent)
- ***Fēy·lywù·bīn*** N 'the Philippines'

- ***fèy*** V 'to expend'
  - *fèy-chyán* VN 'to pay out money'; 'to be expensive, costly'
  - '*fèy·yùng* N 'expenditure'
- '***fū·rén*** polite title for a wife of a high official; always used of Madame Chiang.
- ***Fú·jyàn*** N the province given as Fukien on English maps
- ****fù*** 'father'
  - *fù·chin* N 'father'
  - *fù·mǔ* N 'parents'
- ****fù*** 'vice-'
  - '*fù·dzǔng·tǔng* N 'vice-president'
- ****fù*** 'adhere'
  - *fù·jìn* N 'neighborhood, vicinity'
- ****fwó*** 'Buddha; an image of Buddha or of any god of the Buddhist or Taoist hierarchy' (see *bày-fwó*)
  - *fwó·jyàw* N 'Buddhism'
  - *fwó·shyàng* N 'an image of Buddha or another god' (as above) (M *dzwò, ge*)

- ***gān*** A 'dry'; used as postverb ('wipe dry' and the like)
  - **gār* 'dry stuff' (as in *nyéw·rèw·gār*)
  - '*gān·jìng* A 'clean'; used as postverb
  - *gān·shǐ* V 'to dryclean'; N 'dry cleaning'
- '***Gān·sù*** N the province given as Kansu on maps.

***găn*** V 'to dare, dare to'
  *Bù-găn dāng.* 'I couldn't dare to claim that I performed such an important function.'
***gāng*** H 'just now'
  *gāng·tsáy* H 'just now'
***gāng*** N 'steel'
  *gāng·kwēy* N 'steel helmet'
  *gāng·tyĕ* N 'iron and steel'
****gāng*** 'the main rope of a net; main principles' (see *dà·gāng*)
***gāw*** A 'high, tall'
  *gāw-shān* N 'high mountains' (*shān* also means 'hills'; this is the regular way of making specific reference to big ones)
***gàw·su*** V 'tell, inform' 10B6
***gày*** V 'to put on as a cover' (see *pū·gay*)
  *gày·dz, gàr* N 'top, lid'; the former only for a coffin or trunk
  '*gày·shàng* RC 'to cover, put on as a cover'
***gē*** V 5D10
  '*gē·dzày* V 'put something on, in, at'
  '*gē·shyà* RC 'put something down'
***gē*** N 'song' (with words)
***gē·be*** N 'arm' (of the body) (M *tyáw, jr̄*)
***gē·ge*** N 'older brother'
***gè*** (usually toneless, ***ge***) M
***gēn*** M for stick-like objects
***gēn*** K 'with, and; following' (in the latter meaning usually adds *je*) 11B4
***gèw*** A 'sufficient'; H 'sufficiently'
***gĕy*** V 'give' somebody something'; K 'for the sake of' someone, 'by' someone; H 'for someone's sake'; used as postverb in the meaning 'for, to' a person, but the compound verbs are not RC. 5D7, 13B4
  *gĕy-chyán* VO 'pay money'
  *gĕy-jyà* VO 'to name a price, offer a price' (in bargaining)
***gŭ*** N 'drum'
  *Gŭ·léw* N 'the Drum Tower', a prominent building in Sian and many other old cities
***gù*** V 'to hire' (a man, a rickshaw, etc.)
***gūng*** N 'work' (physical) (see *bīng·gūng, rén·gūng*)
  '*gūng·bīng* N 'engineers' (soldiers)
  *gūng·chăng* N 'factory' (M *jyā*)
  *Gūng·hé* N 'Industrial Cooperative Society' (abbreviation of the longer term given below)
  '*gūng·kē* N 'engineers' (as branch of military service)
  '*gūng·rén* N 'laborer'
  *gūng·yè* N 'industry'
    *Gūng·yè-Hé·dzwò·shè* N 'Industrial Cooperative Society'

609

******gūng* ‘public’

*gūng·gùng-* ‘public’ (used before other words)

*gūng·gùng-chì·chē* N ‘bus’ (within a city, or suburban, (M *lyàng*)

*gūng·gwăn* N ‘official residence’—used in asking where a person lives very politely.

*gūng·jĭn* M ‘kilogram’

*gūng·lĭ* M ‘kilometer’

*gūng·shr̀* N ‘(documents pertaining to) public affairs’

*gūng·shr̀·fáng* N ‘office’

*gūng·sž* N ‘company’ (business enterprise) (M *jyā*)

*gūng-yùng-dyàn·hwà* N ‘public telephone’

*gūng·ywán* N ‘public park’

*gūng·fu* N ‘time’, ‘leisure’, ‘time spent at a task’; the result of spending time on a task, ‘skill.’ 23B4

**gùng* ‘together’ (see *gūng·gùng, yí·'gùng*)

*gwā* V ‘to scrape’

*gwā-fēng* VO ‘to blow wind, be windy’

*gwā-lyăn* VO ‘to shave’

*gwā·lyăn·dāw* N ‘razor’

'*gwā·shyà* (*lc*) RC ‘blow something down’ (of the wind)

*gwā* N ‘melon’

*gwā·dì* N ‘melon field’

*gwà* V ‘hang something up’

'*gwà·chĭ* (*l*) RC ‘hang something up’

'*gwà·dzày* V ‘hang something up at *or* on’

'*gwà·shàng* RC ‘hang something up’

*gwà-hàw* VO ‘to hang up a number’—‘to register’ (mail, or in a hospital clinic). So called from the old system of writing one’s name or designation on something which was hung up in the proper place on a wall.

*gwān* V ‘to close’; in compounds may mean ‘control’ (see *jī·gwān*)

'*gwān·chĭ* (*l*) RC ‘to close up’ (as a store in the evening)

*gwān-dēng* VO ‘to turn off an electric light’

'*gwān·shàng* RC ‘to close’; ‘to turn off’

'*gwān·shì* N ‘connection, relation, relevance’

'*gwān·ywú* K ‘concerning’

*gwān* N ‘official, officer’

*gwān·hwà* N ‘official Chinese’ (Mandarin)—the variety of Chinese spoken by the officialdom

**gwān* ‘view’ (see *tsān·gwān*)

**gwăn* ‘manage’ (see *shŭ . . . gwăn*)

*gwăn-jàng·de* N ‘accountant’

**gwăn* ‘store, shop, establishment’

*gwăn·dz* N ‘store, shop, inn’ (M *jyā, ge*)

*gwăn* M for *bĭ* ‘pen’

*gwăn·dz* N ‘tube, pipe’ (M *gēn, tyáw*)

***gwàn*** N 'jar, mug, pitcher, canister'; M 'jarful, mugful, pitcherful, canisterful'

*gwàn·dz* N 'jar, mug, pitcher, canister'

*gwàn·teẁ* M 'can of' food; N 'canned food'

*****gwǎng*** a region in the southeast of China

*Gwǎng·dūng* N the province given as Kwangtung on maps

*Gwǎng·shī* N the province given as Kwangsi on maps

*****gwēy*** 'compasses' (for drawing circles) (see *fǎ·gwēy*)

'*gwēy·gwey·jywu·jywù·de* H 'respectfully, reverently, well-behaved'

*gwēy·jywu* N 'rules, regulations'

***gwèy*** A 'expensive' of things; 'honorable' of people

*Gwèy-gwó?* 'What is your honorable country?'

*Gwèy-shìng?* 'What is your honorable surname?'

***gwó*** M 'country'; in names of many specific countries is toneless.

*gwó·fù* N 'father of his country'—respectful title for Sun Yat-sen.

'*gwó·jyā* N 'country, nation, state'

*gwó·jyè* N 'national boundary'

*gwó·mín* N 'people of a country'

*gwó·mín·dǎng* N the Kuomintang, the 'Chinese Nationalist Party'

*gwó·mín-jèng·fǔ* N the national government of China under the Kuomintang.

*gwó·wáng* N 'king'

*gwó·ywǔ* N 'official national spoken Chinese language'

***gwǒ*** N 'nuts and fruits'

*gwěr* N 'fruits, nuts, berries'

***gwǒ*** V 'wrap around' (but not completely; like a bandage, not a package)

'*gwǒ·shàng* RC 'wrap up, bandage up'

***gwò*** V (*lc*) 'come (go) over, across, by, beyond'; used as postverb with that meaning. 9B8

*gwò-bàng* VO 'be weighed in' ('pass over the scales')

*gwò-chī* VO 'become overdue'

*gwò-jùng* VO 'become overweight'

*gwò-jyāng* VO 'cross a river'

*gwò-hé* VO 'cross a river'

*gwò-shān* VO 'pass beyond mountains'

*bú·gwò* J 'nevertheless; even so; although'

*****Hàn*** name of a river and of a dynasty

*Hàn·kěw* N the city given on maps as Hankow or Han-k'ou

*****Hàn*** a Chinese dynasty. China was so prosperous under this dynasty that the term *Hàn* is still frequently used to mean 'China'

'*Hàn·cháw* N 'the Han dynasty'

*Hàn·dż* N 'Chinese characters'

*háng* N 'trade, concern, business'

*háng·hwà* N 'trade talk'; the terminology and jargon of a particular profession

*háng·ywán* N 'employees in a business or bank'

**háng* V 'navigate in *or* on'

*háng-kūng* VO 'navigate in the air'; N 'aviation'

*háw* N 'ditch' (M *dàw*)

*hǎw* A 'be good, OK; be well (not sick)'; H 'quite, good and'; used as postverb with the meaning of 'do something well and completely.' 7B5

*hǎw·hwày* N 'quality; what quality?'

*Hǎw jyěw méy-'jyàn!* 'Long time no see!'

*hǎw shyàng* . . . (*shr̀·de*) 'it very much seems that . . .'

*hàw* M 'number', particularly of an ordered series: day of the month, house on a street.

*hàw·shu* N 'number, amount'

**háy* 'child'

*háy·dz*, (*shyǎw-*)*hár* N 'child

*háy* H 'still, yet' 8D7

*háy·shr* 'is still'; H 'still'

*Háy yěw-ne!* 'That isn't all!'

*hǎy* N 'sea'

*hǎy·àn* N 'seashore'

*hǎy·àn·shyàn* N 'coastline'

*Hǎy·jēw* N a city in Kiangsu province, given on maps as Haichow or as Tung-hai. In *Lúng·hǎy-Tyě·lù* the *hǎy* is an abbreviation for *Hǎy·jēw.*

*hǎy·kěw* N 'seaport'

*hǎy·yáng* N 'the oceans and seas'

*Hày!* 'well . . .'—exclamation showing regret or helplessness.

*hē* V 'to drink'; one 'drinks' soup in China, and medicine in liquid form; compare *chr̄*.

*hé* K 'together, with' 11B4

*hé* M 'boxful'; in compounds V 'close, fit; convert to'

*hé·dz, hér* N 'box' (ordinary or small)

*hé·dz-gàr* N 'box lid'

'*hé·chéng* RC 'convert into' a different system of measurement

'*hé·chǐ* (*l*) RC 'to heap together, add together'

'*hé·dzày* V 'put together'; particularly *hé·dzày yí·kwàr* 'put together, pool' (as capital, resources)

'*hé·shàng* RC 'to put on as a cover'; 'to close' 'to heap together'

*hé-shr̀* VO 'to fit (as clothes fit), or 'to be fitting, comfortable' 9D6

*hé* N 'river' (M *tyáw*)

*hé·àn* N 'river bank'

*Hé·běy* N the province given on maps as Hopeh

*Hé·nán* N the province given on maps as Honan

'*Hé·lán* N 'Holland, the Netherlands'

'*Hé·lán·gwo* N 'Holland, the Netherlands'

*hěn* H 'very, quite'

*héng* V 'make horizontal'

*héngr* N 'horizontal stroke' (particularly in writing Chinese characters)

*héng·shyàn* N 'horizontal line' (M *tyáw*)

**hěw* 'roar'

*hěw·shēng* N 'roar, roaring noise'

*hèw* N 'back, behind'; H 'later' (contrasted with *shyān* 'first') 7D7

*hèw·byan* N 'space behind, back of something'

*hèw·lay* N 'later on' 7D7

*hèw·mén* N 'back door'

*hèw·nyan* N 'year after next'

*hèw·tew* N 'rear end, side'

*hèw·tyan* N 'day after tomorrow'

**hèw* 'necessary time' (see *shŕ·hew*)

*hēy* A 'black, dark'

'*hēy·jǔng(·rén)* N '(members of) the Negro race'

*hēy-yè·li* N 'at night'

**hū* 'sudden'

'*hū·rán* 'suddenly'

*hú* N 'pot, kettle' (M *bǎ*)

*hú·dz* N 'beard, facial hair'

*hú* 'lake'

*Hú·běy* N the province given on maps as Hupeh

*Hú·nán* N the province given on maps as Hunan

*húng* A 'red'

*hwā* N 'flowers'

*hwār* N 'flowers' (M *jr̄*, *ge*)

**hwá* a term for China (see *Jūng·hwá*)

*hwá·chyáw* N Chinese settled in other countries, particularly the Pacific islands

*Hwá·shèng·dwèn* N 'Washington' (city, state, man)

*hwà* N 'speech, spoken language'. With M *jywù* 'phrase, sentence'

*hwà* V 'to draw, paint, depict'

*hwàr* N 'picture' (painted, not photographed) (M *jāng*)

*hwà-chywār* VO 'draw a circle'

*hwà-tú* VO 'draw a map or diagram'

*Hwān·yíng!* 'Welcome!'

*hwān·yíng·hwèy* N 'welcoming meeting, welcoming party'

***hwán*** V 'return' (give back)

*hwán-chyán* VO 'repay money'

'*hwán·gěy* V 'give something back to' a person

*hwán-jyà* VO 'to counter with another offered price' in bargaining

***hwàn*** V 'to change something for' something

*hwàn-chyán* VO 'to change money'—small change for bills, etc.

***hwáng*** A 'yellow' (most shades of brown, such as shoe-color browns, are called this also)

*Hwáng·hé* N the Yellow River, given on English maps as Huang Ho.

'*hwáng·jŭng*(*·rén*) N '(members of) the yellow race'

*hwáng·sè* N 'yellow color'

*hwáng·yéw* N 'butter'

***hwày*** A 'bad; broken, out of order'; used as postverb in the latter sense.

**hwēn* 'a marriage contract' (see *jyē-hwēn*)

**hwĕr* M 'a short while' (see '*dĕng yì·hwĕr*)

**hwéy* 'Mohammedan'

*Hwéy·hwey* N 'a Mohammedan'

*Hwéy·jyàw* N 'the Mohammedan religion'

*Hwéy·jyàw·táng* N 'a mosque'

***hwéy*** V (*lc*) 'go *or* come back to' a place; used as post-verb with the same meaning.

*hwéy·chĭng* V 'return an invitation'

'*hwéy·dá* V 'answer' someone

'*hwéy·dàw* (*lc*) RC 'go *or* come back to' a place

*hwéy·dyàn* N 'an answering telegram or telephone call' (M *fēng, tsz̀*)

*hwéy·shìn* N 'an answering letter' (M *Fēng*)

**hwèy* N 'an organization, society, meeting'

*hwèy·ywán* N 'members of an organization'

***hwèy*** V 'know how to, be liable to, have the habit of'; used as postverb with the first of these meanings.

*hwèy-kŭ* VO 'be liable to have bitter experience' (said of a man's fate or life, not of the man himself)

***hwèy*** V 'send', as money in the form of draft or check

*hwèy-chyán* VO 'send money' by draft, check, wire, money order

'*hwèy·dàw* (*lc*) RC 'send something to' a place

*hwèy·pyàw* N 'a draft' (for money) (M *jāng*)

***hwó*** A 'be alive' (see '*shēng·hwó*)

***hwŏ*** N 'fire'

*hwŏ·chē* N 'train'; with M *lyàng* 'train car'; with M *lyè* 'whole train'

*hwŏ·chē·dàw* N 'railroad' (tracks, route) (M *tyáw*)

*hwŏ·chē·jàn* N 'railroad station'

*hwǒ·chē·pyàw* N 'railroad ticket' (M *jāng, tyáw*)

*hwǒ·chē·téw* N 'locomotive'

*hwǒ·yàw* N 'gunpowder, explosives'

*hwǒ·ji* N 'clerk, waiter'

*hwò* N 'goods, products, manufactured articles'

'*hwò·wù* N 'goods, merchandise'

*jà* V 'to bomb'

*jà·dàn* N 'bomb'

*jà·hwày* RC 'to destroy by bombing'

*jàn* A 'be standing'; as final member of compounds means 'stop, stopping place'

'*jàn·chǐ* (*l*) RC 'stand up'

'*jàn·dzày* V 'stand on, at' a place

*jàn·táy* N 'platform' (as at a railroad station)

*jàn* N 'battle'

*jàn·bày·gwó* N 'defeated country'

*jàn·chǎng* N 'battlefield'

*jàn·chē* N 'tank' (armored) (M *lyàng*)

*jàn·háw* N 'trench' (M *dàw*)

*jàn·shèng·gwó* N 'victorious country'

*jàn·shr̀* N 'warfare; a war' (M *tsż*)

*jāng* M for flat things, 'sheet' of paper; 'table', etc.

**jāng* 'insignia' (see *lǐng·jāng, tú·jāng*)

*jǎng* V 'grow, increase'

'*jǎng·chéng* RC 'grow into, grow to be'

*jǎng·dà* RC 'grow up' (of a child becoming an adult)

*jǎng yè·dz* VO 'to produce leaves'

**jǎng* as last member of compounds, means 'person in charge of', through military or governmental appointment.

**jàng* N 'battle, war'; used only in *dǎ-jàng* 'to fight'

**jàng* N 'accounts'

*jàng·dān·dz* N 'a bill' (to be paid) (M *jāng*)

**jāw* 'to summon'

'*jāw·dày* V 'to treat as a guest, receive, be hospitable to'

*jāw·dày·swǒ* N 'guest house' (fancy name for a hotel)

*jāw-shěw* VO 'to beckon with the hand'

**jáw* used as postverb with the meaning 'succeed, establish contact'; for example, see *jǎw·jáw, shwèy·jáw.*

*jáw-hwǒ* VO 'to catch fire'

*jǎw* V 'to seek, hunt for'; 'to return' change due someone

'*jǎw·gěy* V 'to return change to' a person

'*jǎw*'*hwéy* (*lc*) RC 'give (change) back to someone'

*jǎw·jáw* RC 'to hunt and find'

_jàw_ V 'to shine on'

_jàw jìng·dz_ VO 'to look at one's reflection in the mirror'

'_jàw·shyà_ (_1_) 'to shoot up' some occurrence, make a photographic report on it

_jàw-shyàng_ VO 'to take pictures'

_jàw·shyàng·gwǎn_ N 'photographer's shop'

_jàw·shyàng·jī_ N 'camera' (M _jyà_)

*_je_ 8D9

*_jé_ 'deep learning; sage'

'_jé·shywé_ N 'philosophy'

*_jě_ 'one who does such-and-such' (see _jì·jě_)

_jè_ (_jèy_) 'this'

'_jè·byān_ (_jèy·byan_) N 'this side'

_jè·li_ (_jèr_) N 'here'

_jè·me_ H 'thus, this way' 8D3

_jè·me-yàng_ 'this way, this kind of'

_Jè·jyāng_ N the province given as Chekiang on maps

_jēn_ A (before nouns only) 'true'; H 'truly, really' 8D10

_jēn-hwà_ N 'true words; the truth'

'_jēng·ywè_ N the first month of the year by the lunar calendar

*_jèng_ 'certificate, credentials' (see _bǎw·jèng, shywǔ·kě·jèng, tūng·shíng·jèng_)

_jèng·shū_ N 'certificate, identification papers' (M _jāng_)

_jèng_ H 'just then, just now'

_jèng·dzày_ H 'right at this moment, right now'

_jèng hǎw_ H 'just right; when it's just right; just then'

*_jèng_ 'administration' (see _yéw·jèng_)

_jèng·fu_ N 'government'

'_jèng·jyè_ N 'government workers', as a class or social group

_Jèng·jēw_ N a city in central Honan province referred to as Chengchow or Cheng-hsien on maps

*_jēw_ an old geographical and administrative division more or less like a county in American government; see _Hǎy·jēw, Jèng·jēw._

_jēw_ M 'continent'

*_Jēw_ a Chinese dynasty

'_Jēw·cháw_ N 'the Chou dynasty'

_jī_ N 'chicken'

_jī·dàn_ N 'egg'

_jī·rèw_ N 'chicken (meat)'

_jī·sž_ N 'filament-like threads of chicken meat'

*_jī_ 'machine, machinery'

'_jī·chì_ N 'machine, engine' (M _jyà_)

_jī·gwān_ N 'controlling mechanism of a machine'; 'office, agency'

_jī·gwān·chyāng_ N 'machine gun' (M _jyà_)

***Jī·dū*** N 'Christ'

*Jī·dū·jyàw* N 'the Christian religion; protestantism'

***jí*** M 'grade in school'; in compounds may have a meaning stemming from 'steps'; see *nyán·jí, jyē·jí.*

***jí*** H 'exceedingly'; or used in the pattern *hǎw 'jí-le!* 'Extremely good!' 13B3

***jǐ*** 'a few'; 'how many?' expecting a small answer.

****jì*** 'remember, record' (see *r̀·jì, shū·ji, wàng·ji*)

*jì·de* V 'remember, keep in mind'

*jì-jàng* VO 'make an account' (charge something)

*jì·jě* N 'reporter, correspondent'

*'jì·shyà* (*1*) RC 'take something down in writing, make a written record of something'

***jì*** V 'mail'

*'jì·dàw* (*1c*) RC 'mail something to' a place

*jì-shìn* VO 'mail letters'

****jīn*** 'this, the present'

*jīn·nyan* N 'this year'

*jīn·tyan* N 'today'

***jīn*** M a unit of weight (sometimes called 'catty' in English) equal to about 1.33 pounds

***jīn*** N 'gold' (see *Jyèw·jīn·shān*)

*jīn·kwàng* N 'gold mine'

***jǐn*** A 'tight; urgent'

***jìn*** A 'near, nearby' (see *fù·jìn*)

***jìn*** V (*lc*) 'enter', used as postverb with the same meaning.

*'jìn·dòw* RC (*lc*) 'enter'

**jīng* 'capital'

*jīng·chéng* N 'capital city' of a country

*jīng·shì* N the style of Chinese drama developed in *Běy·jīng*

**jīng* 'manage; guiding principle' (see *Wǔ·jīng*)

*jīng·lǐ* N 'manager'; V 'to manage' (a store, an enterprise)

*jǐng* N 'well' (for water)

*jǐng·shwěy* N 'well water'

*jǐng·chá* N 'police'

*jìng* N 'lens, mirror' (M *myàn*)

*jìng·dz* N 'mirror' (sometimes 'lens') (M *myàn*)

*jìng·téw* N 'lens'

*jìng* 'clear', as of water (see *gān·jìng*)

**jr̄* literary form of *de*, marking that one thing modifies another; see *fēn·jr̄*

**jr̄* 'know' (see *'tūng·jr̄*) 5B3, 9B6

*'jr̄·dàw* V 'to know' (not 'be acquainted with')

'*Jr̄ nán shíng yì.*' 'To know how is difficult; to do is easy.' (literary form, with *jr̄* for *'jr̄·dàw, yì* for *'rúng·yì;* but often quoted in speaking.)

*jr̄* M for one of objects that come in pairs, when *shwāng* is the measure used for pairs. 10B7

*jr̄* V 'to weave'

*jr̄-bù* VO 'to weave cloth'

*jr̄·bù·jī* N 'loom' (M *jyà*)

**jŕ* 'straight' (see *yì·jŕ*)

*jŕ·shyàn* N 'straight line' (M *tyáw*)

*jř* H 'only, just'

*jř* N 'paper' (M *jāng* 'sheet')

*jř·běn·dz* N 'pad of paper, notebook'

*jř·yān* N 'cigarette' (M *gēn*)

*jř* V 'point'

'*jř·chū* (*l*) RC 'point something out'

*jř·je . . . shwō* 'to be speaking about . . .'

**jr̀* 'record' (see *dzá·jr̀*)

*jū* N 'pig, hog'

*jū·rèw* N 'pork'

**jū* 'all'

*jū·wèy* 'Gentlemen! Friends!' (formal form of address when speaking to a group.)

*jú·dz* N 'bamboo' 26B3

**jǔ* 'master, host, chief, owner'

'*jǔ·rén* N 'host; chief, person in charge'

*jǔ·shí* N 'chairman'

*jǔ·yì* N 'principle, guiding principle'

*jǔ* V 'to boil'

*jù* V 'to build'

*jù-chéng* VO 'to build fortifications around a city'

*jù* V 'live at, live'

'*jù·dzày* V 'live in, at'

*jù* V 'be stationed at' in expressions such as 'American Consul-General *at* Hankow'

**jūng* 'middle'; **Jūng* 'China', from *Jūng·gwo* N 'middle kingdom', the most usual expression for China.

*jūng·bù* N 'central region'

*jūng·dwèy* N, M 'squadron' (Air Force organization)

*Jūng·gwo* N 'China'

*Jūng·hwá* N 'China', especially in certain official terms

*jūng·jyàng* N general of the middle rank of the three ranks of general officers in the Chinese Army; admiral with equivalent rank

*Jūng·měy* N 'China and the United States'

*Jūng·shī* N 'China and the West'

*jūng·shr̀* N 'sergeant', middle of three ranks of non-coms in the Chinese Army.

*jūng·shyàw* N 'lieutenant colonel'

'*jūng·shywé* N 'middle school'

*jūng·shywé·shēng* N 'student in a middle school'

*jūng·shywé·shyàw* N 'middle school'

*jūng·wèy* 'first lieutenant' (Army)

*jūng·yāng* 'central' (before other nouns)

*jūng·yāng-jèng·fu* N 'central government'

*Jūng·yī* N 'Chinese herbal doctor'

*jūng* N 'clock'; with M *dyǎn* 'hour, o'clock'; with M *fēn* 'minute'; with M *kè* 'quarter of an hour'

*jūng·byǎw·pù* N 'clock and watch shop'

*jǔng* M 'kind of, sort of'

*jǔng·dz* N 'seed'

*jùng* V 'till (soil); plant' this crop or that

*jùng·dì* VO 'to farm, till the soil'

*jùng-dì·de* N 'farmer'

*jùng* A 'heavy'; H 'heavily'

*jùng·shāng·fēng* N 'pneumonia'

*jùng·lyàng* N 'weight'

*jùng·yàw* A 'be important'

**jwān* 'specialize'

*jwān·jyā* N 'specialist'

*jwǎn* I 'turn, change direction' (less than a full 360 degrees)

ˈ*jwǎn·dàw* (*lc*) RC 'forward something to' a place (mail, messages)

*jwǎn·gwò shēn* V(RC)N 'turn around, turn one's body'

*jwǎn·jyāw* V 'forward, transmit' a message

*jwǎn-wān*(*-wār*) VO 'turn, make a turn', as in driving

*jwàn* I 'turn a full 360 degrees'

*jwàn yì·chywār* VO 'make one circuit' of something

*jwàn* V 'make a profit' in business

*jwàn-chyán* VO 'make money' in business

ˈ*jwàn·jìn* (*lc*) RC 'take in' profits

**jwāng* 'farm' (house and land)

*jwāng·jya* N 'crops'

**jwō* 'table'

*jwō·dz* N 'table' (M *jāng*)

*jwō·dz-jyǎwr* N 'corner of a table'

*jwō·yǐ* N 'tables and chairs; furniture' (M *tàw*)

*jyā* K 'added to, plus'

*jyā·ˈbèy·de* 'doubled'

*jyā-dwō* VO 'add on more, increase'

ˈ*jyā·dzày* V 'add into'

*jyā·dzay yí·kwàr* VO 'add things together, add up'

*jyā-jyǎn-chéng-chú* N 'addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division'

ˈ*jyā·shàng* RC 'add something to something'

*jyā* N 'family, home'; M 'family of, household of' (people) (see ˈ*gwó·jyā*)

*jyā* M with shops

**jyā* in compounds means 'a specialist, expert' (see *jwān·jyā*)

*jyā·fēy* N 'coffee'

*Jyā·ná·dà* N 'Canada'

*jyà* N 'price' suggested for something, asked for something; as last element of compounds has same meaning: *mǐ·jyà* 'the price of rice'

'*jyà·chyán* N 'price' actually paid for something

**jyà* 'farm plants' (see *jwāng·jya*)

*jyān* M for *wū·dz* 'room'; see '*fáng·jyān*   8D10

*jyǎn* K 'less, minus'

'*jyǎn·chywù* K 'with such-and-such taken away'

*jyàn* M for *shr̀* 'business, affairs', and for many articles of clothing

*jyàn* V 'meet, recognize, perceive'; used as postverb with many verbs of seeing, hearing, and so forth.

*jyàn-myàn* VO 'meet someone' (face to-face)

'*jyàn-yi·jyàn* 'meet someone'

**jyāng* 'river'

*Jyāng·běy* N an administrative district in Szechwan province

*Jyāng·sū* N the province of China given on maps as Kiangsu

**jyàng* 'general officer' (any service)

*jyàng·gwān* N 'general, admiral'

**jyāw* 'meet, come in contact with' (see *jwǎn·jyāw*, *wày·jyāw*)

'*jyāw·gěy* V 'give or hand something to' a person

*jyāw·jàn·gwó* N 'belligerent powers'

*jyāw-jyè* VO 'to have a common border, come in contact'

*jyāw·tūng* N 'communication and transportation'

*jyāw·tūng·bīng* N 'transportation corps troops'

*jyāw·tūng·kē* N 'transportation corps' as a branch of service

**jyāw* 'glue, resin'

*jyāw·jywǎn* N 'film' (for cameras, in roll form)

*jyāw* V 'teach' a subject or a student

'*jyāw·gěy* V 'teach' a person

*jyāw-shū* VO 'teach'

*jyāw-shū·de* N 'teacher'

*jyǎw* N 'foot'

*jyǎw·tà·chē* N 'bicycle' (M *lyàng*)

**jyǎw* 'angle, corner'

*jyǎwr* N 'angle, corner'

*jyàw* V 'order, tell' someone to do something; K 'by, at the hands of'   7D5, 10B6

*jyàw dyàn·hwà* VO 'make a phone call'

'*jyàw·gwò* (*lc*) RC 'call someone over, order someone over'

*jyàw·shǐng* RC 'wake someone by calling'

*jyàw-tsày* VO 'order the dishes' in a restaurant

620

*_jyàw_ ‘teaching, doctrine, religion’

_jyàw·gwān_ N ‘officer who teaches in a military school’

_jyàw·táng_ N ‘church’

_jyàw·ywán_ N ‘teacher’

_jyàw·ywù_ N ‘education’

*_jyàw_ used in _shwèy-jyàw_ VO ‘sleep and wake’

_jyē_ N ‘street’ (M _tyáw_) (see _dà·jyē, shàng-jyē, shyǎw·jyē_)

_jyē·kěw_(_r_) N ‘street intersection’

*_jyē_ V ‘contract, produce’

_jyē-gwěr_ VO ‘bear fruit’ (of a plant)

_jyē-hwēn_ VO ‘get married’ 10B6

*_jyē_ ‘steps in front of a doorway’

_jyē·jí_ N ‘rank’ in military organization

_jyē_ V ‘meet’ someone arriving from a trip; in this meaning opposite of _sùng_. 15B1

ˈ_jyē·dàw_ RC ‘receive’ something from a distance

*_jyě_ ‘older sister’

_jyě·jye_ N ‘older sister’

_jyě·mèy_ N ‘sisters’

*_jyě_ ‘untie, loosen’

_jyě·jywé_ V ‘to solve’ a problem; N ‘solution’ to a problem

_jyè_ V ‘borrow’ something

ˈ_jyè·chū_ (_lc_) RC ‘borrow’ something out (e. g., of a bank)

_jyè-chyán_ VO ‘borrow money’

ˈ_jyè·dàw_ RC ‘borrow as much as’ a certain amount

ˈ_jyè·gěy_ V ‘to lend something to’ a person

*_jyè_ N ‘border, touching, coming together’; in some compounds means ‘those who come within such-and-such a border’—ˈ_shāng·jyè_ N ‘those within the borders of the merchant business—merchants as a class’. (See _shr̀·jyè_)

ˈ_jyè·shàw_ V ‘introduce’ people

_jyè·shàw·shìn_ N ‘letter of introduction’ (M _fēng_)

_jyěw_ H ‘for a long time’

_Jyěw yǎng!_ ‘(I have) long respected (your reputation).’—‘Pleased to meet you.’

_jyěw_ ‘nine’

_jyěw_ N ‘wine’

_jyèw_ A ‘old’

_Jyèw·jīn·shān_ N ‘old gold country’—San Francisco

ˈ_jyèw·rén_ N ‘an employee of long standing’

_jyèw-shì_ N ‘the classic Chinese drama’, in contrast with modern or western-style drama.

_jyèw-shr̀·de_ ‘old-style, old-fashioned’

_jyèw_ H ‘immediately, right away’ 8D6, 9B3

_jyèw·shr_ ‘then it is, then they are’; H ‘even, then’ 11B5, 21B1 *jyèw* V 'to save' (as a life)

'*jyèw·chǐ* (*l*) RC 'save someone' by pulling him up from a dangerous place to higher safe ground

*jyèw-mìng* VO 'save a life'; a cry for help in extreme danger

*jywǎn* M with *dyàn·yǐng* 'reel of film'

**jywé* 'decide, decidedly' (see *jyě·jywé*)

*jywé·dìng* RC 'fix definitely, arrange definitely'

*jywēn* N 'army, armed force'; 'army' as one part of the army ('fifth army' and so on); M in the latter sense.

*jywēn·dwèy* N 'the army' as a force in the field

*jywēn·gwān* N 'army officer' (also navy or marine when properly specified)

*jywēn·hwǒ* N 'arms and ammunition'

*jywēn·jǎng* N 'Army commander' ('fifth army' etc.)

*jywēn·jèng* N 'military administration'

*jywēn·jèng·bù* N 'Ministry of Military Affairs'

'*jywēn·jyè* N 'army people' as a social class

*jywēn·lǐ* N 'military courtesy'

'*jywēn·rén* N 'military personnel'

'*jywēn·shr̀* N 'military affairs'

*jywēn·shr̀* N 'non-commissioned personnel'

*jywēn·shyàw* N 'Central Military Academy' (abbreviation)

*jywēn·shywū* N 'quartermaster'

*jywēn·yī* N 'military uniform' (M *tàw*)

*jywēn·yī* N 'medical corps'

*jywēn-yùng·de* 'for army use'

**jywú* 'office'

**jywǔ* or **jywù* 'square' (for drawing straight-line figures) (see *gwēy·jywu*)

**jywù* 'assemble'

*jywù-hwèy* VO 'hold a get-together, assemble a meeting'

*jywù·lwò·bù* N 'recreation hall, club'

*jywù* M with *hwà* 'sentence, phrase'

*kàn* V 'look at, look; read' 7B4

*kàn-bìng* VO 'visit a patient; diagnose a case'

*kàn·chīng·chu* RC 'look and see clearly' (despite fog, for instance)

'*kàn·chū* (*lc*) RC 'look and make out' what something is

*kàn·dǔng* RC 'look and understand, read and understand'

*kàn·hu* N 'nurse'

*kàn-shì* VO 'attend a Chinese drama'

*kàn-shū* VO 'read (books)'

*kǎw* V 'bake'

*kāy* V 'open, start'; used as postverb in the meaning 'open, up'.

*kāy·bàn* V 'start to manage, start up'

*kāy-chē* VO 'drive a car'

*kōy-chyāng* VO 'open fire with small arms'

*kāy-dēng* VO 'turn on an (electric) light'

*kāy-hwār* VO 'blossom, bloom'

*kāy-hwèy* VO 'open a meeting, attend a meeting'

'*kāy·kāy* RC 'open'

*kāy-pàw* VO 'open fire with large weapons'

***kē*** M with *shù* 'tree'

***kē*** M 'branch of service; subject of study in military school'; in compounds also 'branch, specialty'

****kě*** 'but; able'. Put before a verb is about the same as English *-able, -ible: kě·'chywŭ* A 'obtainable, useful'. (see *shywŭ·kě*)

*Kě-bú-'shr̀-ma!* 'Isn't it the truth?'

*kě·shr* J 'but, however'

*ké·yi* V 'be able to, may, can'

***kě*** A 'be thirsty'

****kè*** 'guest' (see *fáng·kè*)

*kè·chi* A 'have the air of a guest'

*Bú-'kè·chi!* 'You're welcome.'

'*kè·rén* N 'guest'

***kè*** M with *jūng* 'quarter of an hour'

***kè*** V 'to carve'

***kěw*** N 'mouth' (human or figurative, as of a river); M for *rén* in giving population figures.

**kěwr* in some compounds (*jyē·kěwr*)

*kěw·yīn* N 'pronunciation'

***kŭ*** A 'bitter' (to the taste, or of experience)

****kù*** 'storage' (see *yàw·kù*)

****kù***

*kù·dz* N 'trousers' (M *tyáw*)

*kù·dày* N 'trousers belt' (M *tyáw*)

***kūng*** A 'empty'; N 'air, empty space'

*kūng·chì* N 'air'

*kūng·jywēn* N 'Air Force, Air Corps'

****kŭng*** 'astonish'

*kŭng·pà* V 'fear that, be afraid that' (way of talking, not actual fear)

****Kŭng*** a surname

*Kŭng·dž* 'Confucius'

*Kŭng·dž·myàw* N 'a temple of Confucius'

*Kŭng·jyàw* N 'Confucianism'

***kwàng*** N 'mine'; in compounds works just like 'mine' in English: *jīn·kwàng* 'gold mine' etc.

*kwàng·yè* N 'the mining industry'

***kwày*** A 'fast; sharp (like a knife)' (see '*lyáng·kwày*)

*kwày·dz* N 'chopsticks' (M *jr̄, gēn; shwāng*)

'*kwày·lwò* A 'cheerful'

*kwày·màn* N 'speed; what speed?'

***kwày*** M 'hunk, piece'

*yí·'kwàr* 'together', in putting things together, pooling things together, and the like

***kwēy*** N 'helmet'

***lā*** V 'pull'

*lā-chē* VO 'pull a rickshaw'; 'pull a cart' (of a horse, etc.)

*lā-chē·de* N 'rickshaw puller, rickshawman'

*'lā·chū* (*lc*) RC 'pull someone or something out'

*lā·dùng* RC 'move by pulling'

*lā·hwày* RC 'pull apart, break by pulling'

*'lā·kāy* RC 'open by pulling'

*lā-shěw* VO 'shake hands' (Western style)

***Lǎ·ma*** N 'Lama' (Tibetan priest)

*Lǎ·ma·jyàw* N 'Lamaism'

***'là·ywè*** N the last month of the year by the lunar calendar

***lán*** A 'blue'

*lán·sè* N 'blue color'

***lǎw*** A 'old, long-standing'; H 'always' (of something you wish didn't happen so often), 'habitually'; put before surname in addressing a male servant, schoolmate, or close friend.

*'lǎw·nyán·rén* N 'old person'

*lǎw-mā·dz* N 'maidservant, maid'

*lǎw·shr̀·de* 'old-fashioned'

*lǎw-téw·dz* N 'old man'

***láy*** I 'come', denotes motion towards the speaker, and occurs at the end of many sentences of motion with that meaning 3D4, 5B6

****le*** 4D7, 5D1, 8D9, 9D6, 26B6

***lěng*** A 'cold'

***léw*** N 'building' of more than one story (M *dzwò*, *ge*)

*léw·mén* N 'door of a building'

*léw-shàng* N 'upstairs'

*léw-shyà* N 'downstairs'

*léw·tī* N 'stairs, stairway'

***lèy*** *A* 'tired'

***lí*** K 'from' in giving distances 8B1

*'lí·kāy* RC 'leave' a place

****lǐ*** 'etiquette, ceremony' (see *jywēn·lǐ*)

*lǐ·bày* N 'week'

*lǐ·bày-r̀* N 'Sunday'

*lǐ·bày-yī, -èr, . . . -lyèw* N 'Monday, . . . Saturday'

*lǐ·wu* N 'gift'

****lǐ*** 'straighten out' (see *bàn·lǐ*, *jǐng·lǐ*, *dzǔng·lǐ*, *dì·lǐ*)

*lǐ-fǎ* VO 'get a haircut'

*lǐ-fǎ·de-rén* N 'barber'

*lǐ·fǎ·gwǎn* N 'barber shop'

***lǐ*** N 'inside'; added to nouns with loss of tone: *wū·dz·li* 'room's inside'

*lǐ·byan* N 'inside'

624

_lĭ·tew_ N 'inside'

_lĭ·yī_ N 'underclothes' (M _jyàn_)

_lĭ_ M a Chinese 'mile', about one third of an English mile (see _gūng·lĭ, Yīng·lĭ_)

*_lì_ 'go through successive periods of time' (see _shī·lì_)

_lì·shr̆_ N 'history'

*_lì_ 'profit, advantage' (see _shèng·lì, dé-lì_)

'_lì·chyán_ N 'interest' on an investment

*_lín_

_lín·dz_ N 'forest, woods' (M _dzwò_)

*_líng_ 'zero'; put into spoken numbers where one or more zeros occur in the written form: _yì·băy-líng-'yī_ '101'. 7D6

'_líng·chyán_ N 'small change'

*_lĭng_ 'collar'

_lĭng·dz_ N 'collar' (M _tyáw_)

_lĭng·dày_ N 'necktie' (M _tyáw_)

*_lĭng_ 'lead by the hand' (see _dzŭng·lĭng·shr̀_).

_lĭng-lù_ VO 'show the way, act as a guide'

_lĭng·shyèw_ N 'leader'

*_lìng_ 'command, order' (see _dzŭng·sz̄·lìng, sz̄·lìng·bù_)

_lù_ N 'road, way' (M _tyáw_)

*_lù_ 'land' (contrasted with sea) (see _dà·lù_)

_lù·dì_ N 'land' (contrasted with sea)

_lù·hăy·kūng·jywēn_ N 'Army, Navy, and Air Force'

_lù·jywēn_ N 'army'

_Lù·jywēn·bù_ N 'Ministry of War'

*_lŭng_ refers to the region which includes the provinces of Shensi and Kansu.

_Lúng·hăy-Tyĕ·lù_ N 'The _Lúng·hăy_ Railroad'

_Lwó·mă_ 'Roman'

*_lwò_ 'be merry' (see _jywù·lwò·bù, 'kwày·lwò_)

_lyán_ N, M 'company, troop, battery'

_lyán·jăng_ N 'company (troop, battery) commander'

_lyán_ K 'even including' (usually with _yĕ_ before verb) 9B5, 11B5

*_lyán_ 'join, connect'

_lyán·dwèy_ N, M 'wing' (Air Forces unit)

_lyán·hé·gwó_ N 'United Nations'

_lyán·je_ I 'be connected'

_lyán·lwò_ N 'liaison, connection'

_lyăn_ N 'face'

_lyăn-dwèy-lyăn_ 'face-to-face'

_lyăn·myàn_ N 'face'

_lyăn·sè_ N 'facial coloring'

_lyáng_ A 'be cool'

'_lyáng·kwày_ A 'be cool and comfortable'

_lyăng_ 'two; a couple'; most measures require this, rather than _èr;_ but for '12', '32', '172', and other numbers ending in '2' _èr_ is always used.

_lyǎng·dwèy_ N ‘two pairs’ (poker)

_lyàng_ M with _chē_ ‘wheeled vehicle’

_lyàng_ A ‘light, bright’

*_lyàng_ ‘amount of’ (see _jùng·lyàng_)

_lyǎw; de·lyǎw_ and _bu·lyǎw_ join freely to any verb to form RC with the meaning ‘will be able to, apt to, inclined to’, and ‘won’t be . . .’ 11B9

_lyéw_ V ‘keep, retain, leave behind’

'_lyéw·dzày_ V ‘retain at’ a place

_lyéw·shēng·jī_ N ‘phonograph’ (M _jyà_)

'_lyéw·shyà_ RC ‘retain, hold back, keep back’

_lyéw_ I ‘flow’, as water

'_lyéw·dzày_ V ‘flow into, onto’

_lyéw-shywě_ VO ‘bleed’, as from a wound

_lyèw_ ‘six’

*_lywǔ_ ‘travel’ (usually in a group)

_lywǔ·gwǎn_ N ‘hotel’ (Chinese style) (M _jyā, ge_)

_lywǔ·shíng·shè_ N ‘travel service, travel bureau’

_lywǔ_ N, M ‘brigade’

_lywǔ·jǎng_ N ‘brigade commander’

*_lywù_ ‘rules’ (see _fǎ·lywù_)

_lywù·shī_ N ‘lawyer’

*_-ma_ 4B6

*_mā_ put after the surname of a woman servant in addressing her

_mǎ_ N ‘horse’ (M _pǐ_)

_mǎ·shang_ (_mǎ-'shàng_) H ‘immediately, in a hurry’

_Mǎ·láy_ N ‘Malaya, Malay peninsular area’

_Mǎ·láy-bàn·dǎw_ N ‘Malay peninsula’

_màn_ A ‘be slow’

_máng_ A ‘be busy’ 8D8

'_máng·dàw_ RC ‘be busy until’ a time

_máw_ M with _chyán_ ‘dime’

*_máw_ ‘hair, fur; woolen’

_máw·bǐ_ N ‘Chinese writing brush’ (M _gwǎn_)

_máw·yī_ N ‘sweater’ (M _jyàn_)

_màw·dz_ N ‘hat’

_màw_ V ‘face, dare, brave’ dangers

_màw-shyǎn_ VO ‘to brave dangers’; _màw·shyǎn_ A ‘dangerous, adventurous’

_mǎy_ V ‘buy’

'_mǎy·dàw_ RC ‘buy as much as’ some amount, ‘buy until’ a time

_mǎy·jáw_ RC ‘succeed in buying’

'_mǎy·mày_ N ‘trade, business’

_mày_ V ‘sell’

_mày-shū·de_ N ‘bookseller’

*_mày_ ‘the wheat plant’ (see _shyǎw·mày_)

_mày·dz_ N ‘the wheat plant’

*_me_ forms various adverbs: _dzěm·me, jè·me, nà·me, dwō·me_ *_men_ forms plurals of the personal pronouns (_wŏ·men_ etc.); and is added with the same meaning to some nouns referring to people: _péng·yew·men_ 'one's friends' taken collectively 4B5

_mén_ N 'door, gate'

_mèng_ N 'dream'

'_mèng·jyàn_ RC 'dream that' such-and-such happens

*_méw_ 'scheme, plan' (see '_tsān·méw_)

_méy_ H 'not to have' done such-and-such 4D7, 9D6

_mĕy_ 'every, each'; followed by measure, or by numeral and measure 11B3

_mĕy_ A 'beautiful' (rare; usually one says _hăw-kàn_); *_Mĕy_ 'America, the United States'

_Mĕy·gwo_ N 'the United States'

_Mĕy·jēn_ N 'Beautiful Truth', a woman's given name

'_Mĕy·jēw_ N 'the American continent' (north)

*_mèy_ 'younger sister'

_mèy·mey_ N 'younger sister'

*_mĭ_ 'rice grains' (see _dàw·mĭ_)

_mĭ·fàn_ N 'staple food made of rice grain'

_mĭ·jyà_ N 'rice prices'

*_mín_ 'people'

_mín·dzú_ N 'the peoples of a country'

_mín·dzú-jŭ·yì_ N 'Principle of Nationalism'

_mín·chywán-jŭ·yì_ N 'Principle of People's Rights'

_Mín·gwó_ N 'Republic'

'_mín·rén_ N 'citizens'

_mín·shēng-jŭ·yì_ N 'Principle of People's Livelihood'

_Sān-Mín·jŭ·yì_ N 'the Three Principles of the People'

*_míng_ 'next' in series of time intervals

_míng·nyan_ N 'next year'

_míng·tyan_ (_myéngr, myéngr·ge_) N 'tomorrow'

*_míng_ 'name'

_míng·dz_ N 'name' of a thing; of a person means either full name or given name only

_míng·pyàn_ N 'calling card' (M _jāng, ge_)

_mìng_ N 'life, fortune, fate'

_mìng hăw_ '(one's) fate is good'; 'be lucky, blessed'

*_mŭ_ 'mother' (see _dż·mŭ, fù·mŭ_)

'_mŭ·chin_ N 'mother'

_mŭ_ M a unit of land measure, about one-sixth acre (see _Yīng·mŭ_)

*_mù_ 'wood'

_mù·tew_ N 'wood' (M _kwày_)

*_mwò_ 'ink, Chinese ink stick'

_mwò·shwĕy_ N '(liquid) ink'

*_myán_ 'cotton'

'_myán·hwā_ N 'cotton'

- ***Myǎn·dyàn*** N 'Burma'
- ***myàn*** N 'noodles; wheat-flour products'
  - *myàn·bāw* N 'bread' (M *kwày* 'loaf, piece', *pyàn* 'slice')
  - *myàn·fàn* N 'staple foods made of wheat'
- ***myàn*** N 'face'
  - *myàn·dz* N 'face, prestige'
  - *myàn-dwèy-myàn* 'face-to-face'
- ***myàw*** N 'a Buddhist or Taoist temple'

- ***ná*** (*lc*) V 'take, bring, carry', of something small which can be moved with the hands without effort 5D3, 5D4 · 10D3
  - '*ná·chǐ* (*l*) RC 'pick up something'
  - '*ná·chū* (*lc*) RC 'take' something 'out'
  - *ná·dùng* RC 'take something and move it'
  - '*ná·dàw* (*lc*) RC 'take something to' a place
  - '*ná·jìn* (*lc*) RC 'take something in' a place
  - '*ná·gwò* (*lc*) RC 'take something over, across' a place
- ***nǎ*** (*něy*) 'which?', 'which'
  - *nǎ·byan* (*něy·byan*) N 'which side of?'
  - *nǎ·li* (*nǎr*) N 'where?'
- ***nà*** (*nèy*) 'that'
  - *nà·byan* (*nèy·byàn*) N 'beyond, other side of'
  - *nà·li* (*nàr*) N 'there'
  - *nà·me* H 'so, thus, that way' 8D3
    - *nà·me-yàng* 'that way, that kind of'
- ***nán*** N 'south'
  - *nán·bù* N 'southern region'
  - *nán·byan* N 'south side, edge'
  - *nán·àn* N 'south bank, shore'
  - *Nán·jīng* N the city given on maps as Nanking.
  - *nán·mén* N 'the south gate' of a city
  - *Nán·měy·jēw* N 'South America'
  - *Nán·yáng* N 'the south seas'
    - *Nán·yáng-chywén·dàw* N 'the south-sea islands'
- ***nán*** A 'be difficult'
- ***nán*** A 'male' (of humans) 4D2
- ***nàw*** V 'to annoy, make noise and disturb' (see *rè·nàw*)
  - *nàw·jūng* N 'alarm clock'
  - *nàw·shǐng* RC 'wake up by making noise'
- ***nǎy*** N 'milk'
- ****-ne*** 5B1
- ***néng*** V 'be able to, be capable of'
- ****nèy*** 'inside'
  - *nèy-háng* VO 'be in a particular trade and know it'
  - '*nèy·kē* N 'the medical (versus the surgical) branch of medicine'

628

***nǐ*** ‘you’ in speaking to one person
*nǐ·men* ‘you’ in speaking to several people
*nín* ‘you’ in speaking to one person; polite form most used in Peiping. 9D2
*nú·lì* N ‘slave’
*_núng_ ‘agriculture’
*núng·bù* N ‘Department of Agriculture’ (USA)
*núng·chăng* N ‘a farm’
'*núng·jyè* N ‘farmers’ as a social class
'*núng·rén* N ‘farmers’
*núng·shāng·bù* N ‘Ministry of Agriculture and Commerce’
*núng·yè* N ‘agriculture’ as a phase of economic life
*_nwăn_ ‘warm’
*nwăn·he* A ‘be warm’
'*nwăn·he·gwò* (*l*) RC ‘warm up’
*nwăn·shwěy·hú* N ‘thermos jug’
*nyán* M ‘year’ 4D3, 5D2, 8B7
*nyán·chīng* A ‘be young’ (as a young man, not a child)
*nyán·jí* M ‘year in school’ or ‘successive graduating classes from a certain school’
*nyàn* V ‘read out loud; study’ 7B4
'*nyàn·chū* (*l*) RC ‘read out loud’ (for others to hear)
*nyàn-shū* VO ‘study’
*nyéw* N ‘cattle’
*nyéw·năy* N ‘(cow’s) milk’
*nyéw·rèw* N ‘beef’
*nyéw·rèw·gār* N ‘dried beef’
*nyéw·yéw* N ‘butter’
*nywŭ* A ‘female’ (of humans) 4D2
'*nywŭ·ér* N ‘daughter’

*pà* V ‘fear, be afraid of’
*_pán_ ‘plate, tray’
*pán·dz* N ‘plate, tray’
*_páng_ ‘side’
'*páng·byān* N ‘vicinity, neighborhood’
*păw* (*lc*) I ‘run, move fast’
'*păw·chū* (*lc*) RC ‘run out’
'*păw·dàw* (*lc*) RC ‘run to’ a place
'*păw·gwò* (*lc*) RC ‘run over, across’
'*păw·jìn* (*lc*) RC ‘run into’ a place
*_pàw_ ‘bubble-shaped object’
*_pàwr_ (see *dyàn·dēng·pàwr*)
*pàw* N ‘cannon; firearms of large caliber’
'*pàw·bīng* N ‘artillery’ (soldiers)
*pàw·chē* N ‘gun carriage’ (M *lyàng*)
'*pàw·kē* N ‘artillery’ as a branch of service
*pàw·hwŏ* N ‘gunfire’

***páy*** N, M 'platoon'

*páy·jǎng* N 'platoon leader'

***pén*** N 'tray, plate'; M 'trayful of, plateful of'

*péng·yew* N 'friend'

***pèng*** V 'bump into'

*pèng·jáw* RC 'meet by accident'

***péy*** V 'lose' money in business

'*péy·chū* (*lc*) RC 'lose' money in business

*péy-chyán* VO 'lose money'

***pí*** N 'skin; leather'

*pí·dz* N 'leather' (M *kwày, jāng*)

*pí·bāw* N 'a leather case'

*pí·chyán·bāw* N 'a leather wallet'

*pí·shū·bāw* N 'a leather briefcase'

*pí·shyé* N 'leather shoes' (most Chinese shoes are cloth) (M *jr̄, shwāng*)

*pí·shyé·pù* N 'store that sells leather shoes'

*pí·yī* N 'clothing made of skins with the fur left on' (M *jyàn, tàw*)

***pǐ*** M for *mǎ* 'horse'

****pīn*** 'to piece together'

*pīn-yīn* VO 'to spell out phonetically'

*pīn·yīn·dz* N 'phonetic writing system'

***píng*** A 'level, smooth; peaceful'

*píng·ān* A 'safe, peaceful'

***píng*** M 'vaseful, bottleful'

*píng·dz* N 'vase, bottle'

***pū*** V 'to smooth out'

*pū-chwáng* VO 'make a bed'

*pū·gay* N 'bedding, bedding roll' (M *ge, tàw*)

*pū·hǎw* RC 'make (a bed) completely, smooth something out well'

**pù* 'store'; occurs at the end of many compounds which name different kinds of stores

*pù·dz* N 'store, shop'

*pwò* A 'broken' as a plate, vase, or the skin

'*pyán·yì* A 'reasonable, cheap'

**pyàn* 'flat thing, slice, card' (see *míng·pyàn, rèw·pyàn, shyàng·pyàn, ywú·pyàn*). Also **pyàr*.

*pyàw* N 'ticket'

*pyàw·dz, pyàwr* N 'bill' (paper money) (M *jāng*)

**r̀* 'sun; day'

*R̀·běn* N 'Japan'

*r̀·jì* N 'diary' (the actual record)

*r̀·jì-běn·dz* N 'diary' (the notebook)

*r̀·tew* N 'sun'

**rán* 'be' (see *bù·rán,* '*hū·rán*)

*ràng* V 'let' someone do something'; K 'permitted by' someone

*rè* A 'hot'
ˈ*rè·nàw* A 'noisy and bustling'
*rè·shr* J 'if'
*rén* N 'person, people'
*rén·gūng* N 'human labor' as contrasted with machine-labor
*rén·jŭng* N 'race, kind of people'
*rén·kěw* N 'population' (in giving statistics)
*rén·rén* N 'everybody'
*rèn* 'recognize'
*rèn-dz̀* VO 'be literate'
ˈ*rèn·chū* (*l*) RC 'recognize, make out'
*rèn·shr* V 'recognize, know, be acquainted with' 10B6
*rèw* N 'meat, flesh'
*rèw·pù* N 'butcher shop'
*rèw·pyàn*, *rèw·pyàr* N 'slices of meat'
*rèw·sz̀* N 'thin filament-like slices of meat'
ˈ*rúng·yì* A 'easy'
**rwèn* 'intercalary'
*rwèn·ywè* N an intercalary month in the lunar calendar
*Rwèy·shr̀* N 'Switzerland'

*sān* 'three'
*sār* N term for the third child of a family
*sān·jyăw*(*r*) N 'triangle'
*Sān-Mín·jŭ·yì* N 'the Three Principles of the People'
*sān·túng* N 'three of a kind' (poker)
*săn* N 'umbrella, parasol'
*săw* V 'sweep'
*săw·gān·jing* RC 'sweep clean'
**sè* 'color'
*shā·fā* N 'sofa'
*shān* N 'mountain, hill' 16B2
*Shān·dūng* N the province given as Shantung on maps
*Shān·shĭ* N the province given as Shansi on maps
**shān* The Cantonese word for 'country', found in the terms *Jyèw·jīn·shān* and *Tán·shyāng·shān.*
**Shăn* name of a plateau
*Shăn·shī* N the province given as Shensi on maps
**shāng* 'commerce'
*shāng·bù* N 'Ministry of Commerce'
ˈ*shāng·jyè* N 'merchants', as a class
ˈ*shāng·rén* N 'merchant'
*shāng* N 'wound' (see *shèw-shāng*, *sž·shāng*)
*shāng-bīng* N 'wounded soldiers'
*shāng-fēng* VO 'catch cold'; *shāng·fēng* N 'a cold'
*shāng·kěw* N 'opening or face of a wound'

**shǎng* 'noon'

*shǎng·wu* N 'noon'

*shàng* V (*lc*) 'go, come to'; V 'climb onto, put on'; added to nouns (with tone lost) means 'surface of, space above'; used as postverb with the meaning 'up, together, down'; before periods of time means 'last one before this, the preceding one'. 11D2

*shàng·ban·tyan* N 'morning, AM'

*shàng-chē* VO 'board a vehicle'

*shàng·děng* (before a noun) 'of highest quality'

*shàng·děng·bīng* N 'superior private'—highest of three grades of private in the Chinese Army.

*Shàng·hǎy* N the city given as Shanghai or Shang-hai on maps.

*shàng·jyàng* N 'highest general of the three ranks in the Chinese Army'; properly modified, admiral of equivalent rank.

*shàng-jyē* VO 'go downtown, go to the business part of town'

*shàng lêw·tī* VO 'climb the stairs'

'*shàng-lǐ·bày* N 'last week'

*shàng-lǐ·bày-r̀* N 'Sunday of last week'

*shàng-lǐ·bày-yī,-èr, . . . -lyèw* N 'Monday, . . . Saturday of last week'

*shàng-mǎ* VO 'mount a horse'

*shàng-shān* VO 'climb mountains'

*shàng·shr̀* N highest of three ranks of non-coms in the Chinese Army

*shàng·shyàw* N 'colonel'

*shàng-shywé* VO 'go to school'

*shàng·tew* N 'top side or end or surface'

*shàng tī·dz* VO 'climb a ladder'

'*shàng-tsż*, '*shàng-lyǎng·tsż*, etc. N 'last time, last two times', etc.

*shàng·wèy* N 'captain' (Army)

*shàng·wǔ* N 'morning, AM'

*shàng-yàw* VO 'apply medication' (externally)

*shàng·yī* N 'coat' (clothes)

'*shàng-ywè* N 'last month'

*shāw* V 'to burn, heat up; roast with a high flame' (see '*fā-shāw*)

*shǎw* A 'few, small quantity'

**shàw* 'younger, junior'

*shàw·jyàng* N 'general of the lowest of the three ranks'

*shàw·shyàw* N 'lieutenant colonel'

*shàw·wèy* N 'second lieutenant'

**shè* 'society, organization' (see *lywǔ·shíng·shè*, *Hé·dzwò·shè*)

*shém·me* 'what?'

***shēn*** ‘body’ of an animal or human

*shēn·dz* N ‘body’; this is usually used instead of *shēn* except in a few combinations

*shēn·shang* ‘on the body’

***shén*** N ‘spirit’

*shén·fu* N ‘Catholic priest’

***shēng*** M ‘tone’ in Chinese (first, second, third, fourth) (see *dà·shēng, hěw·shēng, lyéw·shēng·jī*)

ˈ*shēng·yīn* N ‘noise, sound’

***shēng*** V ‘give birth to; be born’; from terms like *shyān·sheng* ‘earlier-born’, a polite term of address for a teacher or for any man, *shēng* has come to be used in the meaning ‘person who does such-and-such’.

*shēng-bìng* VO ‘get sick’

*shēng-chì* VO ‘get mad’

ˈ*shēng·dzày* V ‘be born at’ a place or time

*shēng háy·dz* VO ‘bear a child’

ˈ*shēng·hwó* N ‘life, existence’

ˈ*shēng·r̀* N ‘birthday’

*shēng-shr̀* VO ‘make trouble’

***shěng*** M, N ‘province’ in China, ‘state’ in the United States. 16B3

*shěng·chéng* N ‘capital city’ of a province or state

*shěng-dǎng·bù* N ‘provincial headquarters of the Kuomintang’

ˈ*shěng-jèng·fu* N ‘provincial (state) government’

****shèng*** ‘victory’ (see *dé-shèng, jàn·shèng·gwó*)

*shèng·lì* N ‘victory’

***shēw*** V ‘receive, take in’ what is due

ˈ*shēw·chǐ* (*l*) RC ‘pick up, find and pick up’

ˈ*shēw·dàw* RC ‘receive’

*shēw·hwéy* RC ‘get back, recover’

*shēw jwāng·jya* VO ‘harvest crops’

*shēw-shēng·de* N ‘midwife’

*shēw·shr* V ‘arrange, clean up and set in order’

*shēw·shr·gān·jing* RC ‘clean up thoroughly’

*shēw·shr·hǎw* RC ‘clean up completely’

*shēw·tyáw* N ‘receipt’ (M *jāng, ge*)

***shěw*** N ‘hand’ (M *jr̄*)

*shěw·byǎw* N ‘wristwatch’

*shěw·dyàn·dēng* N ‘flashlight’

*shěw·gūng·yè* N ‘handicraft industries’

ˈ*shěw·jīn* N ‘towel’ (M *tyáw*)

*shěw·jŕ·tew* N ‘finger’

***shèw*** V ‘receive’ unexpectedly and passively

*shèw jyàw·ywù* VO ‘get an education’

*shèw-shāng* VO ‘get wounded’

****shī*** ‘hope for’

ˈ*shī·wàng* V ‘hope that’ such-and-such will happen

***shī*** N ‘west’

*Shī·ān* N the city given as Sian or Ch’ang-an on maps

*shī·běy* N 'northwest'
*shī·bù* N 'western region'
*shī·byan* N 'western edge, border'
*Shī·dyăn* N 'West Point'
*shī·gwā* N 'watermelon'
*Shī·jīng* N the city given as Sian or Ch'ang-an on maps—another name
*shī·jyāng* N the West River, given as Hsi Chiang on maps
*shī·lì* N 'the western calendar'
*shī·mén* N 'western gate' of a city
*shī·nán* N 'southwest'
*shī-shr̀·de* 'western style'
*shī·yī* N 'western-style clothes' (M *jyàn, tàw*)
*shī·yī* N 'doctor trained in western medicine'
*Shī·bān·yá* N 'Spain'
*Shī·bwó·lì·yà(·yă)* N 'Siberia'
*shí* N 'mat' (see *jŭ·shí*) (M *jāng*)
**shí* 'practice' (see *shŕ·shĭ, yăn·shí*)
*shĭ* V 'wash, cleanse'
'*shĭ·chū* (*l*) RC 'develop' (the picture on a film)
*shĭ-dzăw* VO 'take a bath'
*shĭ·dzăw·fáng* N 'bathroom' (M *jyān, ge*)
*shĭ·dzăw·táng·dz* N 'bathhouse' (M *jyā, ge*)
*shĭ·hăw* RC 'wash thoroughly'
*shĭ-lyăn* VO 'wash one's face'
*shĭ·lyăn·pén* N 'wash basin, wash bowl'
*shĭ-téw* VO 'get a shampoo'
*shĭ-shěw* VO 'wash one's hands'
*shĭ-shyàng* VO 'develop films'
*shĭ shyàng·pyàn* VO 'develop films'
*shĭ-yī·de* N 'laundryman'
*shĭ·yī·dyàn* N 'laundry' (place, store) (M *jyā, ge*)
*shì* N 'play, drama, operetta, opera'
*shì·dz* N 'actor'
*shì·ywán·dz* N 'theater' (not for movies)
**shì* 'be attached to' (see '*gwan·shì*)
*shīn* A 'new'; H 'newly, recently'
*shīn·rén* N 'new employee'; 'bridegroom, bride'
*shīn-shì* N 'new-type drama with no singing'
*shīn-shr̀·de* 'modern, new-fashioned'
*shīn·wén* N 'news'
*shīn·wén-jì·jě* N 'reporter, news correspondent'
*shīn·wén·jř* N 'newspaper'
*shīn·wén·jyè* N 'newspaper people' as a class of society
*shīn* N 'heart, mind, attention'
*shīn tyàw* 'heart jumps'—'heart is beating'
*shīn·li* 'in one's heart'; thus, 'sincerely, really'

*shìn* V 'believe in, have faith in' a doctrine, or what someone says, or a person
*shìn* N 'letter' (M *fēng* if in an envelope)
*shìn·fēng* N 'letter envelope'
*shìn·jr̆* N 'letter paper' (M *jāng, bĕn*)
**shīng* 'star'
*shīng·chī* N 'week'
*shīng·chī-r̀* N 'Sunday'
*shīng·chī-yī, -èr, . . . -lyèw* N 'Monday, . . . Saturday'
*shíng* I 'go, work, be acceptable'
*shíng·chē* N 'a departure'—train posted to leave a station at such-and-such a time.
*shíng·li* N 'baggage'
*shíng jywēn·lĭ* VO 'to salute' ('observe military courtesy')
'*shíng·rén* N 'traveler'
*shĭng* A 'be awake'; used as postverb in this sense: *jyàw·shĭng* 'call someone so that he wakes'
*shìng* N 'name'; V 'be named' such-and-such.
*shìng·míng* N 'full name' of a person
**shr̄* 'teacher, professional man' (see *lywù·shr̄*)
*shr̄* A 'damp, wet'
*shr̄* N, M 'division' (military unit)
*shr̄·jăng* N 'division commander'
**shŕ* 'real'
*shŕ·dzày* H 'really'
*shŕ·shí* V 'practice, learn by participation'
*shŕ·shíng* V 'carry into effect'
*shŕ·shyàn* V 'realize, attain'
*shŕ* V 'pick up' (something from the ground, that one has found) (see '*shēw·shr*)
*shŕ* 'ten'
**shŕ* 'time' (see *túng·shŕ*)
*shŕ·hew* N 'time, point of time' 7D10
**shŕ* 'stone'
*shŕ·mă* N 'stone horses' (statues)
*shŕ·tew* N 'stone' (M *kwày*)
**shr̆* 'messenger' (see *dà·shr̆*)
**shr̆* 'history' (see *lĭ·shr̆*)
*shr̀* V 'be, be equal to, be the same as' 1D5, 4B7, 23B5
*shr̀* N 'business, matters, things' (but not touchable things, which is *dūng·shi*) (M *jyàn*) 7B10
**shr̀* 'model, pattern'
*shr̀·yang* N 'pattern, model'
**shr̀* 'recognize' (see *rèn·shr*)
*shr̀* V 'try' 10B6
'*shr̀-yi·shr̀* 'try, take a try'; 'try on' of clothes
**shr̀* 'period, epoch'
*shr̀·jyè* N 'the world, the universe'

**shr̀* 'non-commissioned officers; trained person, scholar' (see *chwán·jyàw·shr̀*)
*shr̀·bīng* N 'enlisted personnel'

*shr̀* N 'municipality'—a particular type of city from the governmental point of view
*shr̀·jǎng* N 'mayor' of a municipality

*shū* N 'book, document'
*shū·bāw* N 'briefcase'
'*shū·jì* N 'clerk, secretary'
*shū·jwō* N 'desk' (M *jāng*)
*shū·míng·dz* N 'name of a book'
*shū·pù* N 'bookstore'

**shǔ* 'belong'
*shǔ . . . gwǎn* 'be the concern of . . ., be under the control, jurisdiction of . . .'
'*shǔ·ywú* V 'pertain to, be the concern of'

*shù* N 'number, amount' (see '*hàw·shù*)
*shùr* N 'number, amount'

*shù* N 'tree' (M *kē*)
*shùr* N 'little tree'
*shù·lín·dz* N 'forest, woods'

*shwā* V 'to brush'
*shwā·dz* N 'brush'
*shwā-yá* VO 'brush one's teeth'

*shwāng* M 'pair of'—shoes, socks, chopsticks. 10B7
*shwàng·sheng* N 'twins' (notice tone) (M *dwèy* 'pair')

*shwéy* 'who'

*shwěy* N 'water'; in compounds sometimes 'liquid'
'*shwěy·chyán* N 'payment for water' (in a house)
*shwěy·gwǎn·dz* N 'water pipes' (M *gēn*)
*shwěy·gwǒ* N 'fruit'
*shwěy·gwǒ·shù* N 'fruit trees' (M *kē*)

*shwèy* A 'be asleep'
'*shwèy·dàw* RC 'sleep until' a time
*shwèy·jáw* RC 'get to sleep'
*shwèy-jyàw* VO 'sleep a sleep and then wake up'
*shwèy·yī* N 'nightclothes, pajamas' (M *jyàn*)

*shwō* V 'speak, say' 4B2
*shwō·chīng·chu* RC 'speak clearly'
*shwō-hwà* VO 'speak, talk, converse'

*shyà* V 'go down to *or* from; let down, lower'; added to nouns sometimes to mean 'space below'; as postverb means 'down'; before periods of time means 'the next' 11D2
*shyà·ban·tyan* N 'afternoon and evening, PM'
*shyà-chē* VO 'get off a car, bus, vehicle'
*shyà-dàn* VO 'lay an egg'
*shyà gūng·fu* VO 'spend time' (on a task)

636

*shyà jŭng·dz* VO ‘to plant seed’

*shyà-léw* VO ‘to go downstairs’

*shyà léw·tī* VO ‘walk downstairs’

'*shyà-lĭ·bày* N ‘next week’

*shyà-lĭ·bày-r̀* N ‘Sunday of next week’

*shyà-lĭ·bày-yī, -èr, . . . -lyèw* N ‘Monday, . . . Saturday of next week’

*shyà-mă* VO ‘dismount from a horse’

'*shyà·rén* N ‘servants’

*shyà-shān* VO ‘climb down a mountain’

*shyà·shr̀* N ‘corporal’

*shyà·tew* N ‘space below’

*shyà tī·dz* VO ‘climb down a ladder’

'*shyà-tsż*, '*shyà-lyăng·tsż*, etc. ‘next time, next two times’, etc.

*shyà·wŭ* N ‘afternoon, PM’

'*shyà-ywè* N ‘next month’

*shyà-ywŭ* VO ‘to rain’

**shyà* ‘summer’

*shyà·tyan* N ‘summer’

*shyān* H ‘first, earlier’ (in contrast with *hèw* ‘later’) (see *chĭ·shyān*) 7D7

*shyān·sheng* N ‘teacher’; form of address equivalent to ‘mister, sir’

*shyăn* A ‘dangerous’

*shyăn-lù* N ‘a dangerous road’ (M *tyáw*)

**shyàn* ‘appear’ (see *shŕ·shyàn*)

*shyàn·dzày* ‘right now, at present’

**shyàn* ‘law’

'*shyàn·bīng* N ‘Military Police’ (soldiers)

*shyàn* N ‘thread, wire; line’ (M *tyáw*)

*shyàn* N, M ‘district’—subdivision of a province.

*shyàn·jăng* N ‘head of a *shyàn*’

*Shyāng·găng* N the city given as Hongkong on maps

*shyāng·dz* N ‘box, suitcase, trunk’

**shyāng* ‘country, rural’

*shyāng·shya* N ‘the country’ (contrasted with city)

*shyăng* V ‘think, think of’ a person, or doing something, ‘plan to’ 8B5

'*shyăng·chĭ* (*l*) RC ‘recall’

*shyàng* V ‘face towards’; K ‘facing towards, towards’ 3D4, 21B3

*shyàng* N ‘photograph’ (M *jāng*); in compounds may mean ‘image, statue’

*shyàng·pyàn* N ‘photograph’ (M *jāng*)

*shyàng* V ‘resemble’ something or somebody, ‘seem to be, seem that’

*shyàng . . . shr̀·de* (same meaning) 21B2

*shyăw* A ‘small; young’

*shyăw·chī* N ‘snack, luncheon’

*shyăw·fèy* N ‘tip’

*shyăw-gwān* N ‘petty official’

*shyáw·jye* (original tones *shyǎw·jyě*) N 'young lady; miss'

*shyǎw-jyē* N 'side street' (M *tyáw*)

*shyǎw-lù* N 'side road' (M *tyáw*)

*shyǎw·mày* N 'wheat (plants)'

*shyǎw-shān* N 'hill' (M *dzwò, ge*)

'*shyǎw·shīn* A 'be careful'

'*shyǎw·shywé* N 'primary school'

*shyǎw·shywé·shēng* N 'primary school student'

*shyǎw·shywé·shyàw* N 'primary school'

*shyǎw-yáng* N 'lamb' (M *téw, jr̄*)

**shyàw* 'school, school buildings'

**shyàw* 'field officer'

*shyàw·gwān* N 'field officer'

*shyàw* V 'laugh, laugh at, be amused by'

*shyàw·hwa* V 'laugh at, make fun of'

*shyàw·hwar* N 'joke, funny story'

*shyē* M 'group of, few, number of'

*shyé* N 'shoe' (M *jr̄* for one, *shwāng* for a pair)

'*shyé·chyán* N 'money paid for shoes'

*shyé·pù* N 'shoestore'

*shyé·yéw* N 'shoepolish'

*shyě* V 'write'

'*shyě·dzày* V 'write something at *or* on'

'*shyě·gěy* V 'write to' a person

'*shyě·shàng* RC 'write something down'

'*shyě·shyà* (*l*) RC 'write something down'

**shyè* 'thanks' (See *dwō-'shyè*)

*Shyè·shye.* 'Thank you.'

*shyēw* V 'repair'

*shyēw-chē* VO 'fix a car'

*shyēw·li* V 'fix, repair'

*shyēw·li·hǎw* RC 'fix something up, repair something'

**shyèw* (see *lǐng·shyèw*)

*shyèw·dz* N 'sleeve' (M *jr̄*)

**shyūng* 'older brother' (see *dì·shyung*)

**shywǎn* 'to select'

*shywǎn·jywǔ* V 'elect, vote'; N 'election'

*shywé* V 'study, learn'; as last member of compounds may mean 'school' or '-ology' (special field of study)

*shywé·hwèy* RC 'learn how' to do something

'*shywé·jyè* N 'teachers and students' as a social class

*shywé·sheng* N 'student'

*shywé·shyàw* N 'school'

*shywě* N 'blood' (also *shyě* or *shyè*)

*shywě·rèw* N 'flesh and blood'

**shywū* 'need' (see *jywēn·shywū*)

***shywŭ*** V 'to permit; to be permitted' (see *yé·shywu*)
  ***shywŭ·kĕ*** N 'permission'
    *shywŭ·kĕ·jèng* N 'a permit'

**Sū* 'Soviet'
  *Sū·ē* N 'Soviet Russia'

**Sùng* a dynasty
  '*Sùng·cháw* N 'the Sung dynasty'

***sùng*** V (*lc*) 'send, take'; V 'see off' someone going on a trip (opposite of *jyē* in this meaning) 15B1
  '***sùng·dàw*** (*lc*) RC 'send, take something to' a place
  ***sùng·gěy*** V 'send something to' a person
  ***sùng-shíng*** VO 'give a send-off party' for someone leaving

***swàn*** V 'calculate, calculate something into' 8B10
  '*swàn·chéng* RC 'figure out the equivalent of something' in another system of measuring
  *swàn-jàng* VO 'figure out accounts'
  *swàn·pan* N 'abacus'
  *swàn·shr* V 'figure something as being' such-and-such

***swēn·dz*** N 'grandson'

***swèy*** M 'year of age'. When a person is *shŕ·swèy* he is in his tenth *calendar-year* of life; he may not be 'ten years old' in the English sense. Thus if one is born the last day of December, the next day he is *lyăng·swèy.* 4D3

*swŏ* M for *fáng·dz* 'house'; as last member of compounds means 'house, establishment' or 'little house, room'

**swŏ* 'that which . . .'
  *swŏ·yĕw·de* 'all, every'
  *swó·yi* J 'therefore'

**sz̄* 'a thin, thread-like slice'

**sz̄* 'control, deal with' (see *gūng·sz̄, dzŭng·sz̄·lìng*)
  *sz̄·lìng·bù* N 'command post'

*sž* A 'be dead'
  '*sž·dzày* V 'die at' a place or time
  *sž·shāng* N 'dead and wounded; casualties'

*sz̀* 'four'
  *Sz̀·chwān* N the province given as Szechwan on maps

*tā* 'he, him, she, her', sometimes 'it'
  *tā·men* 'they, them'

**tà* 'to press down with the foot' (see *jyăw·tà·chē*)

*tán* V 'talk, converse' 4B2
  *tán-hwà* VO 'talk, converse'

*tán·shyāng* N 'sandalwood'
    *Tán·shyāng·shān* N 'Sandalwood City', the term, originally Cantonese, for 'Honolulu'

**tăn* 'blanket, carpeting' (see *dì·tăn*)
  *tăn·dz* N 'blanket' (M *tyáw*)

**tăn·kè* 'tank'

*tăn·kè·chē* N 'tank' (armored car) (M *lyàng*)

**táng* 'hall, room in a building where something is done'

*táng·dz* N 'hall, establishment'

*táng* N 'sugar, candy' (M *kwày*)

**Táng* a Chinese dynasty

'*Táng·cháw* N 'the Tang dynasty'

*tăng* A 'be lying down', on side or back, not face down

'*tăng·dzày* V 'lie down at, on' a place

'*tăng·shyà* RC 'lie down'

*tàw* M 'suit of' clothes, 'set of' books, etc.

*táy* V (*lc*) 'bring, take, carry', when two or more people do it with their hands

'*táy·chĭ* (*l*) RC 'pick up and carry'; or 'pick up, raise' some part of the body

'*táy·dàw* (*lc*) RC 'carry to' a place

**táy* 'platform' (see *jàn·táy*, *wŭ·táy*)

*Táy·wān* N 'Taiwan, Formosa'

*tày* H 'too much; very'

*Tày·píng·yáng* N 'Pacific Ocean'

'*tày·yáng* N 'sun'

**Tày* 'Thai (Siamese)'

*Tày·gwó* N 'Thailand'

*tày·tay* N 'wife, Mrs.'

*téng* A 'hurt, have a pain'; with a part of the body as subject. 21B5

*téw* N 'head'; occurs in the form *téw*, *tew* (toneless), or *téwr* as the final member of many compounds with the meaning 'head, end', or merely as a noun-indicator.

'*téw·fa* N 'hair on the head' (M *gēn*)

*téw·pí* N 'scalp, skin on the head'

'*téw-téng* A 'have a headache'

*téw·téng·yàw* N 'headache medicine'

**tī* 'ladder'

*tī·dz* N 'ladder'

**tí* 'subject, title' (see *wèn·tí*)

*tì* K 'replacing, as substitute for' a person 10D5

*tīng* V 'listen, hear'

*tīng·chīng*·chu RC 'listen and hear clearly'

'*tīng·chū* (*l*) RC 'make out'—for example, what someone is saying

*tīng·dŭng* RC 'listen and understand'

'*tīng·jyàn* RC 'hear'

*tīng-shì* VO 'attend a play, a Chinese drama'

*tīng·shwō* V 'hear tell that' such-and-such has happened

*tsā* V 'rub, scrape, polish'

*tsā·gān* RC 'wipe something dry'

*tsā·gān·jing* RC 'wipe something clean, polish something clean'

******tsān*** 'take part in'

*tsān·gwān* V 'inspect, make a tour of inspection'

'*tsān·méw* N 'staff officer'
*tsān·méw·jǎng* N 'Chief-of-Staff'

***tsáng*** V 'hide, conceal'

'*tsáng·chǐ* (*l*) RC 'hide something away'

'*tsáng·dzày* V 'hide something (or oneself) at' a place

***tsáy*** H 'then and only then' 9B3

***tsày*** N 'food other than staples, eaten for pleasure'

******tsè*** 'side, on one side'

*tsè·swǒ* N 'toilet' (originally a separate structure, 'outhouse')

***tséng*** M 'layer'; 'floor' of a building

***tsúng*** K 'from' in sentences of motion, not distance 5B7, 5D5, 7D3, 8B1

*tsúng . . . (time) chǐ* 'starting at . . .'

******tswēn*** 'village'

*tswēn·dz* N 'village' (M *jyā, dzwò, ge*)

*tswēn·jǎng* N 'village chief'

*tswēn·jwāng* N 'village, country settlement'

***tswén*** V 'leave something at a place for safekeeping or repairs; deposit'

*tswén-chyán* VO 'deposit money'

'*tswén·dzày* V 'deposit something at a place'

***tsź*** N 'porcelain' (material)

'*tsź·chì* N 'porcelain ware' (M *jyàn, ge*)

***tsz̀*** M 'time, event, occurrence'

*tsz̀·jǎng* N Vice-Minister of a ministry in the Central Government; Under-Secretary of a Department in the U. S. Federal Government.

***tú*** N 'chart, diagram' (M *jāng*)

*tú·jāng* N 'a personal seal'

******tú·shū*** 'maps and books'

*tú·shū·gwǎn* N 'library'

***Tǔ·ěr·chí*** N 'Turkey'

***tūng*** V 'pass through, let pass through, be reachable or passable'

*tūng·chē* VO 'to permit the entry or passage of vehicles'—as a road, or a village with railroad tracks going by it. N 'through train'. As a road sign, means 'this route is open to traffic'.

*tūng dyàn·hwà* VO 'put through a phone call'

*tūng-shìn* VO 'to communicate' with someone, 'to permit the arrival of mail', as of a village to which mail can be sent. N 'communication'.

'*tūng·jr̄* V 'inform' someone

*tūng·shíng* A 'be current, in general use'

*tūng·shíng·jèng* N 'a pass' (permitting entry or passage)

641

*túng* K 'with, and'; *bù-'túng* 'be different, not the same'. 9B4

*túng·hwār* N 'flush' (poker)

*túng·shŕ* H 'at one time, at the same time'

*túng·yàng* A 'same'; H 'equally'

*túng·yì* A 'be in agreement'

*túng·shywé(·de)* N 'fellow student, classmate'

*Túng·gwān* N the city given as T'ung-kwan or Tungkwan on maps

**tŭng* 'control completely' (see *dzŭng·tŭng*)

*tŭng·yī* V 'unite, unify'

*twán* N, M 'regiment'

*twán·jăng* N 'regimental commander'

*twēy* V 'push'

*twēy·dùng* RC 'move by pushing'

*twēy·hwày* RC 'break, put out of order, by pushing'

'*twēy·kāy* RC 'push open'

*twēy·shĭng* RC 'awaken by pushing'

*twĕy* N 'leg' (M *tyáw*)

*twō* V 'take off' those clothes with which one uses the verb *chwān* for putting on

'*twō·shyà* (*lc*) RC 'take off'

*tyān* M 'day; heaven'; in compounds, 'sky, weather, season' 2D2, 5D2, 8B7

*tyān·chi* N 'weather'

*Tyān·jŭ* N 'God' (the Catholic term)

*Tyān·jŭ·jyàw* N 'Catholicism'

*Tyān·jŭ·táng* N 'Catholic church' (one church)

*tyān·shang* 'in the sky'

*tyān-'shyà* N 'anywhere in the world; the universe'

**tyán* 'field'

*tyán·dì* N 'cultivated land' (M *kwày*)

*tyáw* M for various long flexible things (see *shēw·tyáw*)

*tyàw* I 'jump'

'*tyàw·dàw* (*lc*) RC 'jump to, into' a place

'*tyàw·gwò* (*lc*) RC 'jump over' something

*tyàw·hé* VO 'jump into a river'—as sometimes in English, this means 'to commit suicide' by that method

*tyĕ* N 'iron' (M *kwày*)

*tyĕ·gūng·chăng* N 'ironworks'

*tyĕ·kwàng* N 'iron mine'

*tyĕ·lù* N 'railroad, railway' (M *tyáw, dàw*)

*wà·dz* N 'socks, stockings' (M *jr̄* for one, *shwāng* for pair)

*wān* N 'curve'; in compounds, 'bay' (see *jwăn-wān*)

*wán* A 'be done'; used as postverb freely with any main verb: *chr̄·wán-le* 'having finished eating'

*wăn* N 'bowl, handleless cup'; M 'bowl of, cup of'

*wăn* A 'late'; H 'late' 9B2

*wăn·bàw* N 'evening paper'

*wǎn·fàn* N 'evening meal'
*wǎn·shang* N 'evening'
*wàn* 'ten-thousand'; 'a great many'
*wàn·jùng* 'everybody, all', of a very large number (literary; in song *Chǐ-láy*)
*Wàn·lǐ-cháng·chéng* N 'the Great Wall'
**wáng* 'king' (see *gwó·wáng*)
*wàng* K 'looking towards; towards' (see '*shī·wàng*) 21B3
*wàng·ywǎn·jìng* N 'telescope, field glasses' (M *jyà, ge*)
*wàng* V 'forget, forget to'
*wàng·ji* V 'forget, forget to'
*wày* 'outside' 5B2
*wày·byan* N 'outside'
*wày·gwo* N 'foreign country'
*wày-háng* VO 'be outside a particular specialty, and thus not be in the know about it'
*wày·jyāw* N 'foreign affairs'
*Wày·jyāw·bù* N 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs'
*wày·jyāw·gwān* N 'diplomat'
*wày·jyāw·jyè* N 'people concerned with foreign affairs', as a class
'*wày·kē* N 'the surgical branch of medical science'
'*wày·rén* N 'outsider'
*wày·tew* N 'outside'
*wén* V 'smell, sniff'; in some compounds means 'hear, learn'
'*wén·jyàn* RC 'smell' (this and the above in the sense of 'a person smells something', not in the sense of 'something smells bad')
**wén* 'word, literature'
*wén·dž* N 'writing, writing system'
'*wén·shywé* N 'literature' as a subject of study
*wèn* V 'ask' a person, or a question
*wèn·tí* N 'a question, problem'
**wéy* 'critical'
'*wéy·shyǎn* A 'dangerous, critical, adventurous'
*wéy·je* K 'circling around'
**wěy* 'deputize, commission'
*wěy·ywán* N 'member of a committee'
*wěy·ywán·hwèy* N 'committee, commission'
*wèy* M replaces *ge* in referring to people and being polite. (See *jū·wèy*)
**wèy* 'company officer'
*wèy·gwān* N 'company officer'
*Wèy!* 'Hello!' (telephone)
*wèy* K 'because of'
'*wèy·de-shr̀* J 'the reason is that . . .; in order to . . .' 11B6
'*wèy-shém·me* 'why?'

*wŏ* ‘I, me’

*wŏ·men* ‘we, us’

**wū* ‘room’

*wū·dz* N ‘room’ (M *jyàn*)

*wū·mén* N ‘door to a room’

**wú* ‘without’

*wú·shyàn·dyàn* N ‘radio’

*wú·shyàn·dyàn·bàw* N ‘radio message, radiogram’

**wŭ* ‘noon’

*wŭ·bàw* N ‘newspaper that appears about noon’

*wŭ·fàn* N ‘noon meal’

*wŭ* ‘five’

*Wŭ·jīng* N the ‘Five Classics’ of Confucius (literary)

**wŭ* ‘dance, act’

*wŭ·táy* N ‘stage’ in a theater

**wù* ‘thing’ (see '*hwò·wù, lĭ·wu, bwó·wù·gwăn*)

*wù·jyà* N ‘prices’ in general’

*yá* N ‘tooth’

*yá·fĕn* N ‘tooth powder’

*yá·shwā·dz* N ‘toothbrush’

'*yá-téng* A ‘have a toothache’

*yá-yī·sheng* N ‘dentist’

**Yă* ‘Asia’

'*Yă·jēw* N ‘the continent of Asia’

*yān* N ‘smoke’; ‘cigarette’ (M *gēn*) 4B3

*yān·dĕw* N ‘pipe’ for smoking (M *jr̄, ge*)

*yān·jywăr* N ‘cigarette’ (M *gēn*)

*yān·yè·dz* N ‘tobacco’ (the leaves or the whole plant)

**yán* ‘color, facial color, facial expression’

'*yán·se* N ‘color’

*yán* N ‘salt’

*yán·jĭng* N ‘salt well, saline springs’ (M *kĕw*)

*yăn* V ‘perform’

*yăn·shwō* V ‘give a speech’

*yăn·shwō·hwèy* N ‘a meeting at which someone gives a speech’

*yăn·shí* V ‘practice’, such as on a target range, etc.

*yăn-shì* VO ‘to perform a play’

*yăn·ywán* N ‘actors, cast’

*yăn* N ‘eye’ (M *jr̄*)

*yăn·jing* N ‘eye’ (M *jr̄*)

*yăn·jìng·dz* N ‘glasses’

**yāng* ‘center’ (see *jūng·yāng*)

*yáng* N ‘ocean’; from the meaning ‘beyond the ocean’ comes the meaning ‘foreign’, which occurs in many compounds

*yáng·chē* ‘rickshaw’ (from Japan) (M *lyàng*)

*yáng·háng* N ‘a foreign firm’ doing business in China (M *jyā, ge*) *yáng·hwǒ, yáng·hwěr* N 'matches' (M *gēn*)

*yáng* N 'sheep'

*yáng·rèw* N 'mutton, lamb' (meat)

**yáng* 'the light or bright side of anything which contrasts regularly with the dark side' (see *tày·yang*)

*yǎng* V 'recuperate, rest up after an illness'

*yǎng-bìng* VO 'recuperate from an illness'

*yǎng·bìng·fáng* N 'sick room, ward in a hospital'

**yǎng* 'respect, look up to' (see *Jyěw 'yǎng!*)

*yàng* M 'kind of, sort of' 9B6

*yàng·dz* N 'model, pattern'

*yàng·shr* N 'model, pattern'

*yàw* V 'be going to, need to, plan to' 1D4, 8B5

*yàw·jǐn* A 'be important'

*yàw-lyǎn* VO 'to desire a reputation for correctness'

'*yàw·rén* 'important person' (see *dǎng·gwó-'yàw·rén*)

*yàw* N 'medicine'; in compounds sometimes has an extended meaning, such as is found in English in expressions like 'strong medicine' referring to something not connected at all with doctoring (see *dàn·yàw*).

*yàw·fáng* N 'medical supply room'

*yàw·kù* N 'storage space for medicines'

*yàw·pù* N 'drug store' (for medicines only, not for sodas and dishes and everything else)

*yàw·'myán·hwā* N 'medicinal cotton'

*yě* H 'also'

*yě·shywu* H 'perhaps'

*Yě·sū* N 'Jesus'

*Yě·sū·jyàw* N 'Protestantism'

*yè* N 'night'

*yè·li* N 'at night, nighttime'

**yè* 'business' (see *bì-yè, gūng·yè, núng·yè, kwàng·yè*)

*yè·dz* N 'leaf' (M *pyàn*)

*yéw* N 'oil, grease'

*yéw·bù* N 'oilcloth'

*yéw·dēng* N 'oil lamp'

*yéw·jř* N 'oiled paper'

**yéw* 'postal'

*yéw·jèng* N 'postal administration'

*yéw·jèng·jywú* N 'post office'

*yéw·pyàw* N 'postage stamp' (M *jāng*)

*yěw* V 'have, possess; exist, there is, there are' 3D3, 8B4, 8B6, 22B1

*yěw-bìng* VO 'be ill'

*yěw-chì* VO; said of *bí·dz* 'the nose', means 'be breathing'

*yěw-chywán* VO; 'be powerful'

- *yěw·de* (alone or before nouns) 'some'
- *yěw-míng* VO 'be famous'
- *yěw myàn·dz* VO 'have a reputation of correctness, have face'
- *yěw-tú* VO 'be illustrated' (as a book)
- *yěw yì·sz* VO 'have meaning; be interesting'
- *'yěw-yì·tyān* J 'once, one day, once upon a time'
- *yěw-yùng* VO 'be useful'

*yèw* A 'again, then, in turn'

*yèw* N 'right' (opposed to left)

- *yèw·byan* N 'right side'
- *yèw·twěy* N 'right leg'
- *yèw·yǎn* N 'right eye'

*yī* (*yí*, *yì*) 'one'; 'the whole, all'   8D6

- *yí·'byàn* 'once through, once'—such as singing a song once
- *yī·děng·bīng* N 'private first class'—intermediate of the three ranks of private in the Chinese Army
- *yí·'dìng* H 'certainly, definitely'; A 'certain, definite'
- *yí·'dwèy* N 'a pair' (poker)
- *yì·dwō·bàr* H 'mostly'
- *yí·'gùng* H 'altogether, all in all'   10B4
- *yì·'jŕ* H 'straight ahead'   7D3
- *yí-'kàn* H 'immediately, at one look'
- *yí-'lù* 'the whole way'
    - *Yī-'lù píng·'ān!* 'Bon voyage!'
- *yì-'shēn* 'all one's body'
- *yì-'shēng* 'all one's life'
- *yì-'shīn* 'with one heart; in perfect agreement'
- *yì·'tǔng* H 'together' (people doing something together)   10B4
- *yí·'yàng* A 'be the same'; H 'to the same degree, in the same way'

*_yī_ 'clothing'; occurs as second element of many compounds with this meaning

- *yī·shang* N 'clothes, clothing' (M *jyàn* for one piece, *tàw* for a suit)

*_yī_ 'medicine'

- *yī·gwān* N 'medical officer'
- *yī·sheng* N 'doctor'
- *'yī·shywé* N 'medicine' as a field of study
- *yī·shywé·shyàw* N 'medical school'
- *yī·ywàn* N 'hospital'

*yí·dz* 'soap' (M *kwày*)

*_yǐ_ like *de*, but limited to few combinations:

- *yǐ·'chyán* H 'formerly'; N 'the time before something'   7D10
- *yǐ·'hèw* H 'afterwards'; N 'the time after something'   7D10

*yǐ·jing* H 'already'

*_yǐ_ 'chair'

- *yǐ·dz* N 'chair' (M *bǎ*)

*_yì_ 'meaning' (see *jǔ·yì*, *túng·yì*, *'ywàn·yì*)

- *yì·sz* N 'meaning, idea, opinion'

_Yì·dà·lì_ N 'Italy'
*___yīn___ 'because of'
'_yīn·wèy_ J 'because'
*___yīn___ 'musical sound'
'_yīn·ywè_ N 'music'
___yín___ N 'silver'
_yín·dz_ N 'silver'
_yín·háng_ N 'bank' (M _jyā, ge_)
_yín·háng·jyè_ N 'bankers', as a social class
___yìn___ V 'press, print'
_yìn·shwā_ N 'printing'
_yìn·shwā·swǒ_ N 'print shop' (M _jyā, ge_)
_Yìn·du_ N 'India'
'_yīng·gāy_ V 'ought to, have to, must'
*_Yīng_ 'England'
_Yīng·gwo_ N 'England'
_Yīng·dì·gwó_ N 'the British Empire'
_Yīng·lǐ_ M 'mile'
_Yīng·mǔ_ M 'acre'
_Yīng·wén_ N 'English language, literature'
___yíng___ N, M 'battalion'
_yíng·jǎng_ N 'battalion commander'
*___yíng___ 'camp' (see _bīng·yíng_)
*___yǐng___ N 'picture, image' (see _dyàn·yǐng_)
*___yǔng___ 'brave'
_yǔng·gǎn_ A 'brave'

_yùng_ V 'use; expend' money; K 'using' 9B9
_yùng-chyán_ VO 'spend money'
'_yùng·rén_ N 'servant'
_yùng-shīn_ VO 'use care, be careful'
*_ywán_ 'garden, public place' (see _gūng·ywán, shì·ywán·dz._ A theater—_shì·ywán·dz_—has this name because at an earlier date plays were presented in the open air.)
*_ywán_ 'personnel'
_ywǎn_ A 'far away'
*_ywàn_ 'be willing' (use instead of '_ywàn·yì_, is literary or poetic)
'_ywàn·yì_ V 'be willing to' 8B5
*_ywàn_ 'garden, court, courtyard'
_ywàn·dz_ N 'garden, yard' of a house
_ywàn·jǎng_ N chief of any establishment the term for which ends in _ywàn._
_ywè_ N 'month'; M 'month-of the year'.
*_ywè_ 'music' (see _yīn·ywè_)
_ywè_ . . . _ywè_ . . . 'the more . . . the more . . .'
_ywèn_ V 'ship, transport'
'_ywèn·dàw_ (_lc_) RC 'ship something to' a place
*_ywú_ 'to' (see '_gwān·ywú_, '_shǔ·ywú_)
_ywú_ N 'fish' (M _tyáw_)
_ywú·pyàn_ (_·pyàr_) N 'slices of fish'
_ywǔ_ N 'rain'
_ywǔ·sǎn_ N 'umbrella' (M _bǎ_)